



PROJECT MANUAL

10 / 29 / 2024
Volume 2 of 2

Stony Brook University
Tabler Quad New Residence Hall
Stony Brook, NY

Page Project Number: 1018037.01

SEALS PAGE

DESIGN PROFESSIONALS OF RECORD



ARCHITECT:
DAVID L. CLEMENZI
PAGE SOUTHERLAND PAGE, INC.

SEALS PAGE

DESIGN PROFESSIONALS OF RECORD



CIVIL ENGINEER:
ALAN FOX
PAULUS, SOKOLOWSKI AND SARTOR ENGINEERING, P.C.

SEALS PAGE

DESIGN PROFESSIONALS OF RECORD

SITE STRUCTURAL ENGINEER:
GREGORY RANFT
PAULUS, SOKOLOWSKI AND SARTOR ENGINEERING, P.C.



SEALS PAGE

DESIGN PROFESSIONALS OF RECORD



LANDSCAPE ARCHITECT:
DANIEL MAHER, RLA
PAULUS, SOKOLOWSKI AND SARTOR ENGINEERING, P.C.

SEALS PAGE

DESIGN PROFESSIONALS OF RECORD

STRUCTURAL ENGINEER:
GERALD L. CRAIG
RYAN BIGGS CLARK DAVIS ENGINEERING & SURVEYING D.P.C.



SEALS PAGE

DESIGN PROFESSIONALS OF RECORD



FIRE PROTECTION ENGINEER,
PLUMBING ENGINEER,
HVAC ENGINEER,
ELECTRICAL ENGINEER:
RAJNISH B. SETTY
SETTY

TABLE OF CONTENTS

VOLUME 1

000108	SEALS PAGES
	Architect
	Civil Engineer
	Site Structural Engineer
	Landscape Architect
	Structural Engineer
	Fire Protection Engineer/Plumbing Engineer/HVAC Engineer/Electrical Engineer

DIVISION 00 – PROCUREMENT AND CONTRACTING REQUIREMENTS – by Campus

Additional Division 00 documents by Architect:

003100	INFORMATION AVAILABLE TO BIDDERS
003110	GEOTECHNICAL REPORT
003120	HYDRANT FLOW TESTS – FIRST REPORT
003130	HYDRANT FLOW TEST W51 – SECOND REPORT
003140	HYDRANT FLOW TEST W52 – SECOND REPORT

DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS – by Campus

Additional Division 01 sections by Architect:

01 3100	PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION
	Attachment: Request for Information (RFI) Form
01 3115	COORDINATION DRAWINGS
01 3300	SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES
	Attachment: Submittal Cover Sheet
	Attachment: Waiver, Release, and Indemnity Agreement for Electronic Documents Forwarded to Contractor
	Attachment: Electronic Data Order Form
01 4339	MOCKUPS
01 4533	SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND STRUCTURAL TESTING
01 7419	CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT AND DISPOSAL
01 8113	SUSTAINABLE DESIGN REQUIREMENTS
01 8119	SUSTAINABILITY IAQ MANAGEMENT
01 9107	BUILDING ENCLOSURE COMMISSIONING REQUIREMENTS
01 9113	COMMISSIONING REQUIREMENTS
01 9115	COMMISSIONING PLAN

DIVISION 02 - EXISTING CONDITIONS - not used

DIVISION 03 – CONCRETE

03 3000	CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE
03 3020	CONCRETE SLABS ON GRADE AND METAL DECK
03 3600	POLISHED CONCRETE
03 4113	PRECAST CONCRETE PLANKS
03 5416	HYDRAULIC CEMENT UNDERLAYMENT

DIVISION 04 - MASONRY

04 2200	CONCRETE UNIT MASONRY
04 2213	BRICK VENEER
04 7200	CAST STONE

DIVISION 05 - METALS

05 1200	STRUCTURAL STEEL
05 3000	METAL DECK
05 4000	COLD-FORMED METAL FRAMING
05 5000	METAL FABRICATIONS
05 5200	GALVANIZED STEEL HANDRAILS FOR SITEWORK
05 5813	METAL COLUMN COVERS

DIVISION 06 - WOOD, PLASTICS, AND COMPOSITES

06 1053	MISCELLANEOUS ROUGH CARPENTRY
06 1643	GYP SUM SHEATHING
06 4020	INTERIOR ARCHITECTURAL WOODWORK
06 6116	SOLID SURFACE MATERIAL FABRICATIONS

DIVISION 07 - THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION

07 1113	BITUMINOUS DAMPPROOFING
07 1619	METALLIC OXIDE WATERPROOFING
07 2100	THERMAL INSULATION
07 2726	FLUID-APPLIED MEMBRANE AIR AND MOISTURE BARRIERS
07 4213.13	FORMED METAL WALL PANELS
07 4213.53	COMPOSITE METAL WALL AND SOFFIT PANELS
07 4636	SOLID COMPOSITE ARCHITECTURAL WALL PANELS
07 5216	STYRENE-BUTADIENE-STYRENE (SBS) MODIFIED BITUMINOUS MEMBRANE ROOFING
07 6200	SHEET METAL FLASHING, FABRICATIONS AND TRIM
07 7200	ROOF ACCESSORIES
07 8100	APPLIED FIREPROOFING

07 8413	PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING
07 8446	FIRE-RESISTIVE JOINT SYSTEMS
07 9200	JOINT SEALANTS
07 9500	EXPANSION CONTROL

DIVISION 08 - OPENINGS

08 1113	HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES
08 1416	FLUSH WOOD DOORS
08 3113	ACCESS DOORS AND FRAMES
08 3450	ELEVATOR DOOR SMOKE CONTAINMENT SYSTEM
08 4113	ALUMINUM-FRAMED ENTRANCES AND STOREFRONTS
08 4126	ALL-GLASS ENTRANCES AND STOREFRONTS
08 4413	GLAZED ALUMINUM CURTAIN WALLS
08 5113	ALUMINUM WINDOWS
08 5656	SECURITY WINDOW SCREENS
08 7100	DOOR HARDWARE
08 7113	AUTOMATIC DOOR OPERATORS
08 8000	GLAZING
08 9000	LOUVERS AND VENTS

DIVISION 09 - FINISHES

09 2116.23	GYPSUM BOARD SHAFT WALL ASSEMBLIES
09 2216	NON-STRUCTURAL METAL FRAMING
09 2900	GYPSUM BOARD
09 3100	CERAMIC TILING
09 3116	CEMENT TILING
09 5113	ACOUSTICAL PANEL CEILINGS
09 5429	WOOD GRILLE AND PLANK CEILING SYSTEMS
09 6500	RESILIENT FLOORING AND ACCESSORIES
09 6723	RESINOUS FLOORING
09 7429	WOOD PANEL WALL SYSTEM
09 7750	FIBERGLASS REINFORCED PLASTIC PANELS
09 9100	PAINTING

DIVISION 10 - SPECIALTIES

10 1000	VISUAL DISPLAY SURFACES
10 1400	SIGNAGE
10 2213	WIRE MESH PARTITIONS
10 2600	WALL AND DOOR PROTECTION
10 2800	TOILET AND BATH ACCESSORIES
10 5200	FIRE PROTECTION SPECIALTIES
10 5213	AED SPECIALTIES

DIVISION 11 - EQUIPMENT

11 2429 ROOF FALL PROTECTION
11 3100 RESIDENTIAL APPLIANCES

DIVISION 12 - FURNISHINGS

12 2413 ROLLER WINDOW SHADES
12 3661 SIMULATED STONE COUNTERTOPS
12 4813 ENTRANCE FLOOR MATS AND FRAMES

DIVISION 13 - SPECIAL CONSTRUCTION – not used

DIVISION 14 - CONVEYING EQUIPMENT

14 2100 ELECTRIC TRACTION ELEVATOR

VOLUME 2

000108 SEALS PAGES
Architect
Civil Engineer
Site Structural Engineer
Landscape Architect
Structural Engineer
Fire Protection Engineer/Plumbing Engineer/HVAC Engineer/Electrical Engineer

DIVISIONS 15 – 20 – not used

DIVISION 21 - FIRE SUPPRESSION

21 0513 COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR FIRE SUPPRESSION EQUIPMENT
21 0517 SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING
21 0518 ESCUTCHEONS FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING
21 0553 IDENTIFICATION FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING AND EQUIPMENT
21 1313 COMBINATION SPRINKLER AND STANDPIPE SYSTEM
21 3113 ELECTRIC-DRIVE, CENTRIFUGAL FIRE PUMPS
21 3413 PRESSURE-MAINTENANCE PUMPS

DIVISION 22 - PLUMBING

22 0513 COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR PLUMBING EQUIPMENT

22 0516	EXPANSION FITTINGS AND LOOPS FOR PLUMBING PIPING
22 0517	SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR PLUMBING PIPING
22 0518	ESCUTCHEONS FOR PLUMBING PIPING
22 0519	METERS AND GAGES FOR PLUMBING PIPING
22 0523	GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING
22 0529	HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT
22 0553	IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT
22 0719	PLUMBING PIPING INSULATION
22 0800	COMMISSIONING OF PLUMBING
22 1113	FACILITY WATER DISTRIBUTION PIPING
22 1116	DOMESTIC WATER PIPING
22 1119	DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES
22 1123	DOMESTIC WATER PUMPS
22 1123.13	DOMESTIC-WATER PACKAGED BOOSTER PUMPS
22 1316	SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING
22 1319	SANITARY WASTE PIPING SPECIALTIES
22 1413	FACILITY STORM DRAINAGE PIPING
22 1423	STORM DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES
22 1429	SUMP PUMPS
22 3300	ELECTRIC, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS
22 3500	DOMESTIC-WATER HEAT EXCHANGERS
22 4213.13	COMMERCIAL WATER CLOSETS
22 4216.13	COMMERCIAL LAVATORIES
22 4216.16	COMMERCIAL SINKS
22 4223	COMMERCIAL SHOWERS

DIVISION 23 - HEATING, VENTILATING, AND AIR CONDITIONING (HVAC)

230513	COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT
230516	EXPANSION FITTINGS AND LOOPS FOR HVAC PIPING
230517	SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR HVAC PIPING
230518	ESCUTCHEONS FOR HVAC PIPING
230519	METERS AND GAGES FOR HVAC PIPING
230523	GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR HVAC PIPING
230529	HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT
230548	VIBRATION CONTROLS FOR HVAC
230553	IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT
230593	TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC
230713	DUCT INSULATION
230716	HVAC EQUIPMENT INSULATION
230719	HVAC PIPING INSULATION
230800	COMMISSIONING OF HVAC
230900	INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC
232113	HYDRONIC PIPING
232113.13	UNDERGROUND HYDRONIC PIPING
232116	HYDRONIC PIPING SPECIALTIES
232123	HYDRONIC PUMPS

232300	REFRIGERANT PIPING
232500	HVAC WATER TREATMENT
233113	METAL DUCTS
233300	AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES
233423	HVAC POWER VENTILATORS
233600	AIR TERMINAL UNITS
233713	DIFFUSERS, REGISTERS, AND GRILLES
235700	HEAT EXCHANGERS FOR HVAC
236426	ROTARY-SCREW WATER CHILLERS
237433	DEDICATED OUTDOOR-AIR UNITS
238126	SPLIT-SYSTEM AIR-CONDITIONERS
238216.11	HYDRONIC AIR COILS
238219	FAN COIL UNITS
238239	UNIT HEATERS

DIVISIONS 24 – 25 – not used

DIVISION 26 - ELECTRICAL

26 0513	MEDIUM-VOLTAGE CABLES
26 0519	LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES
26 0523	CONTROL-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CABLES
26 0526	GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS
26 0529	HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS
26 0533	RACEWAYS AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS
26 0543	UNDERGROUND DUCTS AND RACEWAYS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS
26 0544	SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR ELECTRICAL RACEWAYS AND CABLING
26 0548.16	SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS
26 0553	IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS
26 0573.13	SHORT-CIRCUIT STUDIES
26 0573.16	COORDINATION STUDIES
26 0573.19	ARC-FLASH HAZARD ANALYSIS
26 0923	LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICES
26 0943	DISTRIBUTED DIGITAL LIGHTING CONTROL SYSTEM
26 1116.12	SECONDARY UNIT SUBSTATIONS WITH SWITCHBOARDS SECONDARY
26 1329	MEDIUM-VOLTAGE, PAD-MOUNTED SWITCHGEAR
26 2416	PANELBOARDS
26 2726	WIRING DEVICES
26 2813	FUSES
26 2816	ENCLOSED SWITCHES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS
26 2913.06	SOFT-START MOTOR CONTROLLERS
26 2933	CONTROLLERS FOR FIRE-PUMP DRIVERS
26 3213.13	DIESEL EMERGENCY ENGINE GENERATORS
26 3600	TRANSFER SWITCHES
26 4113	LIGHTNING PROTECTION FOR STRUCTURES
26 4313	SURGE PROTECTION FOR LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CIRCUITS

26 5119	LED INTERIOR LIGHTING
26 5600	DECORATIVE LIGHT POLE AND FIXTURE
26 5619	LED EXTERIOR LIGHTING

DIVISION 27 - COMMUNICATIONS

27 0526	GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS
27 0528	PATHWAYS FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS
27 0529	HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS
27 0536	CABLE TRAYS FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS
27 0543	UNDERGROUND PATHWAYS AND STRUCTURES FOR COMMUNICATION SYSTEMS
27 0544	SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR COMMUNICATIONS PATHWAYS AND CABLING
27 0553	IDENTIFICATION FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS
27 1100	COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT ROOM FITTINGS
27 1116	COMMUNICATIONS RACKS, FRAMES, AND ENCLOSURES
27 1323	COMMUNICATIONS OPTICAL FIBER BACKBONE CABLING
27 1513	COMMUNICATIONS COPPER HORIZONTAL CABLING
27 3000	TWO-WAY COMMUNICATION SYSTEM

DIVISION 28 - ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY

28 1500	ACCESS CONTROL HARDWARE DEVICES
28 2000	VIDEO SURVEILLANCE
28 4621.11	ADDRESSABLE FIRE-ALARM SYSTEMS

DIVISIONS 29 - 30 – not used

DIVISION 31 – EARTHWORK

31 1000	SITE CLEARING
31 2000	EARTH MOVING OPERATIONS
31 2301	EXCAVATION BACKFILL AND COMPACTION (BUILDING AREA)
31 2500	EROSION AND SEDIMENT CONTROLS

DIVISION 32 - EXTERIOR IMPROVEMENTS

32 1216	ASPHALT PAVING
32 1313	CONCRETE PAVING
32 1413	PRECAST CONCRETE UNIT PAVING
32 1613	PORTLAND CEMENT CONCRETE CURBS
32 1623	SIDEWALKS
32 1723	PAVEMENT MARKINGS

32 3113	CHAIN LINK FENCE
32 3129	WOOD FENCES AND GATES
32 3200	LANDSCAPE BOULDERS
32 3216	PRECAST CONCRETE RETAINING WALLS
32 3223	SEGMENTAL RETAINING WALLS
32 3300	SITE FURNISHINGS
32 3913	IMPACT RESISTANT METAL BOLLARDS
32 9113	SOIL PREPARATION
32 9200	TURF AND GRASSES
32 9300	PLANTS

DIVISION 33 - UTILITIES

33 0132	MANHOLE REHABILITATION
33 1219	WATER UTILITY DISTRIBUTION HYDRANTS
33 1417	SITE WATER UTILITY DISTRIBUTION PIPING & VALVES
33 3113	SITE SANITARY SEWERAGE GRAVITY PIPING
33 4200	SITE STORMWATER CONVEYANCE
33 4236	TRENCH DRAINS

DIVISIONS 34 – 49 – not used

END OF TABLE OF CONTENTS

SECTION 21 0513 - COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR FIRE SUPPRESSION EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes general requirements for single-phase and polyphase, general-purpose, horizontal, small and medium, squirrel-cage induction motors for use on alternating-current power systems up to 600 V and installed at equipment manufacturer's factory or shipped separately by equipment manufacturer for field installation.

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:
 - 1. Motor controllers.
 - 2. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
 - 3. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
 - 4. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL MOTOR REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with requirements in this Section except when stricter requirements are specified in equipment schedules or Sections.
- B. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.

2.2 MOTOR CHARACTERISTICS

- A. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 40 deg C and at altitude of 3300 feet above sea level.
- B. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.

2.3 POLYPHASE MOTORS

- A. Description: NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction motor.
- B. Efficiency: Premium efficient, as defined in NEMA MG 1.
- C. Service Factor: 1.15.
- D. Multispeed Motors: Variable torque.
 - 1. For motors with 2:1 speed ratio, consequent pole, single winding.
 - 2. For motors with other than 2:1 speed ratio, separate winding for each speed.
- E. Multispeed Motors: Separate winding for each speed.
- F. Rotor: Random-wound, squirrel cage.
- G. Bearings: Regreasable, shielded, antifriction ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- H. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating.
- I. Insulation: Class F.
- J. Code Letter Designation:
 - 1. Motors 15 HP and Larger: NEMA starting Code F or Code G.
 - 2. Motors Smaller Than 15 HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.
- K. Enclosure Material: Cast iron for motor frame sizes 324T and larger; rolled steel for motor frame sizes smaller than 324T.

2.4 ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR POLYPHASE MOTORS

- A. Motors Used with Reduced-Voltage and Multispeed Controllers: Match wiring connection requirements for controller with required motor leads. Provide terminals in motor terminal box, suited to control method.

2.5 SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS

- A. Motors larger than 1/20 hp shall be one of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:
 - 1. Permanent-split capacitor.
 - 2. Split phase.
 - 3. Capacitor start, inductor run.
 - 4. Capacitor start, capacitor run.
- B. Multispeed Motors: Variable-torque, permanent-split-capacitor type.

- C. Bearings: Prelubricated, antifriction ball bearings or sleeve bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- D. Motors 1/20 HP and Smaller: Shaded-pole type.
- E. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation. Thermal-protection device shall automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION 21 0513

SECTION 21 0517 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Sleeves.
 - 2. Stack-sleeve fittings.
 - 3. Sleeve-seal systems.
 - 4. Sleeve-seal fittings.
 - 5. Grout.
 - 6. Silicone sealants.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SLEEVES

- A. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated of cast or ductile iron and equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop.
- B. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, anticorrosion coated or galvanized, with plain ends and integral welded waterstop collar.
- C. Galvanized-Steel Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
- D. PVC Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.
- E. Molded-PVC Sleeves: With nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- F. Molded-PE or -PP Sleeves: Removable, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

2.2 STACK-SLEEVE FITTINGS

- A. Description: Manufactured, Dura-coated or Duco-coated or galvanized cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange for use in waterproof floors and roofs. Include clamping ring, bolts, and nuts for membrane flashing.
 - 1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with setscrews.

2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. Description:
 - 1. Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space between piping and sleeve.
 - 2. Designed to form a hydrostatic seal of 20 psig minimum.
 - 3. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size.
 - 4. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel or Stainless steel.
 - 5. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating, ASTM B 633 or Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

2.4 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS

- A. Description: Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly made for imbedding in concrete slab or wall.
- B. Plastic or rubber waterstop collar with center opening to match piping OD.

2.5 GROUT

- A. Description: Nonshrink, for interior and exterior sealing openings in non-fire-rated walls or floors.
- B. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

2.6 SILICONE SEALANTS

- A. Silicone, S, NS, 25, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant, ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.
- B. Silicone, S, P, 25, T, NT: Single-component, pourable, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade P, Class 25, Uses T and NT. Grade P Pourable

(self-leveling) formulation is for opening in floors and other horizontal surfaces that are not fire rated.

- C. Silicone Foam: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, nonshrinking foam.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
- B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide 1-inch annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.
 - 1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.
 - 1. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes in slabs formed by molded-PE or -PP sleeves.
 - 2. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level.
 - 3. Using grout or silicone sealant, seal space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.
- D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.
 - 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 - 2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
 - 3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint.
- E. Fire-Resistance-Rated Penetrations, Horizontal Assembly Penetrations, and Smoke Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire or smoke rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with fire- and smoke-stop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping and fill materials specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.2 STACK-SLEEVE-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install stack-sleeve fittings in new slabs as slabs are constructed.

1. Install fittings that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
2. Secure flashing between clamping flanges for pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Comply with requirements for flashing specified in Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
3. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches above finished floor level.
4. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
5. Use silicone sealant to seal around the outside of stack-sleeve fittings.

- B. Fire-Resistance-Rated Penetrations, Horizontal Assembly Penetrations, and Smoke Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire or smoke rating of floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with fire- or smoke-stop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service piping entries into building.
- B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration, assemble sleeve-seal system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.

3.4 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal fittings in new walls and slabs as they are constructed.
- B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.
- C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.
- D. Use grout or silicone sealant, to seal the space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
1. Leak Test: After allowing for a full cure, test sleeves and sleeve seals for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
- B. Sleeves and sleeve seals will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.6 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL SCHEDULE

A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:

1. Exterior Concrete Walls above Grade:
 - a. Piping NPS 6 or Smaller: Cast-iron pipe sleeves or Steel pipe sleeves or Sleeve-seal fittings.
2. Exterior Concrete Walls below Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Cast-iron pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system or Steel pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system or Sleeve-seal fittings.
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
 - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Cast-iron pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system or Steel pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
3. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade:
 - a. Piping NPS 6 or smaller: Cast-iron pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system or Steel pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system or Sleeve-seal fittings.
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
4. Concrete Slabs above Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Steel pipe sleeves or PVC pipe sleeves or Stack-sleeve fittings or Sleeve-seal fittings or Molded-PE or -PP sleeves or Molded-PVC sleeves.
 - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Steel pipe sleeves or PVC pipe sleeves or Stack-sleeve fittings.
5. Interior Partitions:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Steel pipe sleeves or PVC pipe sleeves.
 - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Galvanized-steel sheet sleeves.

END OF SECTION 21 0517

SECTION 21 0518 - ESCUTCHEONS FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Escutcheons.
 - 2. Floor plates.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

2.2 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. One-Piece, Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and setscrew fastener.
- B. One-Piece, Stainless-Steel Type: With polished stainless-steel finish.
- C. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and setscrew fastener.
- D. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped steel or brass with polished, chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- E. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- F. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish; concealed and exposed-rivet hinge; and spring-clip fasteners.

2.3 FLOOR PLATES

- A. Split Floor Plates: Steel with concealed hinge.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.
- B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
 - 1. Escutcheons for New Piping:
 - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep pattern.
 - b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece steel or cast brass or split-plate steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - c. Insulated Piping: One-piece steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - d. Insulated Piping: One-piece stainless steel with polished stainless-steel finish.
 - e. Insulated Piping: One-piece cast brass with polished, chrome-plated polished brass finish.
 - f. Insulated Piping: One-piece stamped steel or split-plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge or split-plate, stamped steel with exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - g. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - h. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece cast brass with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - i. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece stamped steel or split-plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge or split-plate, stamped steel with exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - j. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - k. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece cast brass with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - l. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece stamped steel or split-plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge or split-plate, stamped steel with exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - m. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - n. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece cast brass with polished, chrome-plated or rough-brass finish.
 - o. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece stamped steel or split-plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge or split-plate, stamped steel with exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
- C. Install floor plates for piping penetrations of equipment-room floors.
- D. Install floor plates with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.

1. New Piping: One-piece, floor plate.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Using new materials, replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates.

END OF SECTION 21 0518

SECTION 21 0553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Equipment labels.
 - 2. Warning signs and labels.
 - 3. Pipe labels.
 - 4. Stencils.
 - 5. Valve tags.
 - 6. Warning tags.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples: For color, letter style, and graphic representation required for each identification material and device.
- C. Equipment-Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled and the proposed content for each label.
- D. Valve Schedules: Valve numbering scheme.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

- A. Metal Labels for Equipment:
 - 1. Material and Thickness: Brass, 0.032 inch or stainless steel, 0.025 inch or aluminum, 0.032 inch or anodized aluminum, 0.032 inch thick, with predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
 - 2. Letter Color: Red or White.
 - 3. Background Color: Red or White. Shall be contrasting with letter color.
 - 4. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
 - 5. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger

lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.

6. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
7. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

B. Plastic Labels for Equipment:

1. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16 inch or 1/8 inch thick, with predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
2. Letter Color: Red or White.
3. Background Color: Red or White. Shall be contrasting with letter color.
4. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
5. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
6. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
7. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
8. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

C. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.

D. Equipment-Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules) and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

2.2 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16 inch or 1/8 inch thick, with predrilled holes for attachment hardware.

B. Letter Color: Black.

C. Background Color: Yellow.

D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.

E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.

F. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger

lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.

- G. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
- H. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- I. Label Content: Include caution and warning information, plus emergency notification instructions.

2.3 PIPE LABELS.

- A. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service and showing flow direction according to ASME A13.1.
- B. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to partially cover or cover full circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.
- C. Self-adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.
- D. Pipe-Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings, pipe size, and an arrow indicating flow direction.
 - 1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping-system service lettering to accommodate both directions or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
 - 2. Lettering Size: Size letters according to ASME A13.1 for piping or at least 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances.
- E. Pipe-Label Colors:
 - 1. Background Color: Safety Red.
 - 2. Letter Color: White.

2.4 STENCILS

- A. Stencils for Piping:
 - 1. Lettering Size: Size letters according to ASME A13.1 for piping or at least 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances.
 - 2. Stencil Material: Aluminum or Brass or Fiberboard or metal.
 - 3. Stencil Paint: Safety Red, exterior, gloss, alkyd enamel or acrylic enamel. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.
 - 4. Identification Paint: White, exterior, alkyd enamel or acrylic enamel. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.

2.5 VALVE TAGS

- A. Description: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch letters for piping-system abbreviation and 1/2-inch numbers.
 - 1. Tag Material: Brass, 0.032 inch or stainless steel, 0.025 inch or aluminum, 0.032 inch or anodized aluminum, 0.032 inch thick, with predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
 - 2. Fasteners: Brass wire-link or chain beaded chain or S-hook.
 - 3. Valve-Tag Color: Safety Red.
 - 4. Letter Color: White.
- B. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.
 - 1. Valve-tag schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

2.6 WARNING TAGS

- A. Description: Preprinted or partially preprinted, accident-prevention tags, of plasticized card stock with matte finish suitable for writing.
 - 1. Size: 3 by 5-1/4 inches minimum or approximately 4 by 7 inches.
 - 2. Fasteners: Brass grommet and wire or Reinforced grommet and wire or string.
 - 3. Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption such as "DANGER," "CAUTION," or "DO NOT OPERATE."
 - 4. Color: Safety Yellow background with black lettering.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants, as well as dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and other substances that could impair bond of identification devices.

3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be installed.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.
- C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

3.3 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.

- B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

3.4 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Piping: Painting of piping is specified in Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
- B. Stenciled Pipe-Label Option: Stenciled labels may be provided instead of manufactured pipe labels, at Installer's option. Install stenciled pipe labels, complying with ASME A13.1, with painted, color-coded bands or rectangles on each piping system.
 - 1. Identification Paint: Use for contrasting background.
 - 2. Stencil Paint: Use for pipe marking.
- C. Pipe-Label Locations: Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
 - 1. Near each valve and control device.
 - 2. Near each branch connection excluding short takeoffs. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
 - 3. Near penetrations and on both sides of through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
 - 4. At access doors and similar access points that permit a view of concealed piping.
 - 5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
 - 6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 25 feet along each run. Reduce intervals to 15 feet in areas of congested piping and equipment.
 - 7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.
- D. Directional Flow Arrows: Arrows shall be used to indicate direction of flow in pipes including pipes where flow is allowed in both directions.

3.5 VALVE-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Install tags on valves and control devices in fire-suppression piping systems. List tagged valves in a valve-tag schedule.
- B. Valve-Tag Application Schedule: Tag valves according to size, shape, and with captions similar to those indicated in "Valve-Tag Size and Shape" Subparagraph below:
 - 1. Valve-Tag Size and Shape:
 - a. Fire-Suppression Standpipe: 1-1/2 inches or 2 inches, round or square.
 - b. Wet-Pipe Sprinkler System: 1-1/2 inches or 2 inches, round or square.
 - c. Dry-Pipe Sprinkler System: 1-1/2 inches or 2 inches, round or square.

3.6 HYDRAULIC DESIGN INFORMATION SIGN

- A. Install a permanently marked weatherproof metal or rigid plastic sign secured with corrosion-resistant wire, chain, or other approved means at the system riser that includes the following information:
1. Location of the design area or areas.
 2. Discharge densities over the design area or areas.
 3. Required flow and residual pressure demand at the base of the riser.
 4. Occupancy classification or commodity classification and maximum permitted storage height and configuration.
 5. Hose stream allowance included in addition to the sprinkler demand.
 6. The name of the installing contractor.

3.7 WARNING-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Write required message on, and attach warning tags to, equipment and other items where required.

END OF SECTION 21 0553

SECTION 21 1313 – COMBINATION AUTOMATIC SPRINKLER AND STANDPIPE SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Pipes, fittings, and specialties.
2. Specialty valves.
3. Valves.
4. Sprinklers.
5. Hose Connections.
6. Alarm devices.
7. Pressure gages.
8. Backflow preventers.
9. Fire department connections.
10. Hangers and supports.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 210517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Fire-Suppression Piping"
2. Section 210518 "Escutcheons for Fire-Suppression Piping"
3. Section 210553 "Identification for Fire-Suppression Piping and Equipment"
4. Section 210513 "Common Motor Requirements for Fire Suppression Equipment"
5. Section 213113 "Electric-Drive, Centrifugal Fire Pumps"
6. Section 213413 "Pressure-Maintenance Pumps"
7. Section 262933 "Controllers for Fire-Pump Drivers"
8. Section 284621.11 "Addressable Fire Alarm Systems"

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Standard-Pressure Sprinkler Piping: Wet-pipe sprinkler system piping designed to operate at working pressure of 175-psig maximum.
- B. Automatic Wet-Type, Class I Standpipe System combined with the building sprinkler system: Includes NPS 2-1/2 hose connections. Piping is wet but system demand must be supplied by the fire department.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings and hydraulic calculations:
 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details and hydraulic calculations in accordance with NFPA 13 "Plans and Calculations" Chapter. Hydraulic nodes shall be visibly shown on the drawings.
 2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For sprinkler/standpipe systems indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer or NICET III or IV technician responsible for their preparation.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Sprinkler/standpipe systems, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
 1. Domestic water piping.
 2. Compressed air piping.
 3. HVAC hydronic piping.
 4. Items penetrating finished ceiling include the following:
 - a. Lighting fixtures.
 - b. Air outlets and inlets.
 - c. Fire alarm devices.
 - d. Security/communications devices.
- B. Qualification Data:
 1. Qualified Installer
 2. Professional engineer or NICET III or IV technician responsible for the preparation of shop drawings, hydraulic calculations, and product data submittal package.
- C. Design Data:
 1. Approved Sprinkler/Standpipe Piping Drawings: Working plans, prepared according to NFPA 13 and NFPA 14, that have been approved by authorities having jurisdiction, including hydraulic calculations.
- D. Welding certificates.
- E. Field Test Reports:
 1. Indicate and interpret test results for compliance with performance requirements and as described in NFPA 13. Include "Contractor's Material and Test Certificate for Aboveground Piping."

2. Fire-hydrant flow test report, performed within 12 months of bid date and shall take place when the water supply system is under peak demand. Provide seasonal fluctuation data where available.

F. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For wet-pipe sprinkler systems and specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Sprinkler Cabinets: Finished, wall-mounted, steel cabinet with hinged cover, and with space for minimum of six spare sprinklers plus sprinkler wrench.. Include separate cabinet with sprinklers and wrench for each type of sprinkler used on Project. The stock of spare sprinklers shall include all types and ratings installed and shall be as follows:
 - a. Protected facilities having under 300 sprinklers – no fewer than six sprinklers.
 - b. Protected facilities having 300 to 1000 sprinklers – no fewer than 12 sprinklers.
 - c. Protected facilities having over 1000 sprinklers – no fewer than 24 sprinklers.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications:

1. Installer's responsibilities include designing, fabricating, and installing sprinkler systems and providing professional engineering services needed to assume engineering responsibility. Base calculations on results of fire-hydrant flow test not less than one year old from the date of shop drawing submittal.
 - a. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of working plans, calculations, and field test reports by a qualified NICET III or IV technician or professional engineer.

B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to 2010 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

C. All fire protection materials and equipment shall be UL listed and/or FM approved. Valve components (including valve trim, internal parts, gaskets, etc.) and other components as permitted by NFPA 13 shall not be required to be individually listed.

D. Piping materials shall bear label, stamps, or other markings of specified testing agency.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Preparation for Transport: Prepare valves and piping according to the following:
 - 1. Ensure that valves and piping are dry and internally protected against rust and corrosion.
 - 2. Protect valves against damage to threaded ends and flange faces.
 - 3. Set valves in best position for handling. Set valves closed to prevent rattling.
- B. During Storage: Use precautions for valves according to the following:
 - 1. Do not remove end protectors unless necessary for inspection; then reinstall for storage.
 - 2. Protect from weather, humidity, temperature, dust, dirt, and water damage. Store indoors and maintain temperature higher than ambient dew point temperature. Support off the ground or pavement in watertight enclosures when outdoor storage is necessary.
- C. Deliver piping with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe-end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
- D. Protect stored piping from moisture and dirt. Elevate above grade. Do not exceed structural capacity of floor when storing inside.
- E. Protect flanges, fittings, and specialties from moisture and dirt.
- F. Store plastic piping protected from direct sunlight. Support to prevent sagging and bending.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Sprinkler/standpipe system equipment, specialties, accessories, installation, and testing shall comply with the following:
 - 1. NFPA 13.
 - 2. NFPA 14.
 - 3. NFPA 24.
- B. Standard-Pressure Piping System Component: Listed for 175-psig minimum working pressure.
- C. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer or NICET III or IV technician, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design sprinkler/standpipe systems.
 - 1. Refer to fire protection drawings for fire-hydrant flow test records.

2. Sprinkler system design shall be approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
 - a. Margin of Safety for Available Water Flow and Pressure: 10 percent, including losses through water-service piping, valves, and backflow preventers.
 - b. Sprinkler Occupancy Hazard Classifications:
 - 1) Light Hazard Occupancy: Offices, lobbies, conference rooms, classrooms, restrooms, sleeping rooms, and similar spaces.
 - 2) Ordinary Hazard Group 1 Occupancy: Electrical, telecom, mechanical, parking garage, general storage rooms, kitchens, laundry rooms, and similar spaces.
 - 3) Ordinary Hazard Group 2 Occupancy: Retail spaces, trash compactor room, loading docks, and similar spaces.
3. Minimum Density for Automatic-Sprinkler Piping Design:
 - a. Light-Hazard Occupancy: 0.10 gpm over 1500-sq. ft. area.
 - b. Ordinary-Hazard, Group 1 Occupancy: 0.15 gpm over 1500-sq. ft. area.
 - c. Ordinary-Hazard, Group 2 Occupancy: 0.20 gpm over 1500-sq. ft. area.
4. Hose stream requirement:
 - a. Light Hazard Occupancy: 100 gpm.
 - b. Ordinary Hazard Occupancy: 250 gpm.
5. Maximum Protection Area per Sprinkler: According to UL listing and below.
 - a. Light Hazard Occupancy: 225 sq. ft..
 - b. Ordinary Hazard Group 1 and 2 Occupancy: 130 sq. ft..
6. The design area shall be increased by 30% for dry pipe systems.
7. The design area is permitted to be reduced for use of quick-response sprinklers in accordance with NFPA 13.
8. Special design approach for use of residential sprinklers shall be in accordance with NFPA 13 Section 11.3.
9. Minimum residual pressure at each hose connection outlet shall be 100 psig.

2.1 DUCTILE-IRON PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Mechanical-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe:

1. AWWA C151/A21.51, with mechanical-joint bell and plain spigot end unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
2. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111/A21.11, ductile-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.

B. Standard-Pattern, Mechanical-Joint Fittings:

1. AWWA C110/A21.10, ductile iron.
2. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111/A21.11, ductile-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.

C. Compact-Pattern, Mechanical-Joint Fittings:

1. AWWA C153/A21.53, ductile iron.
2. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111/A21.11, ductile-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.

2.2 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Standard-Weight, Galvanized- and Black-Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E or S, Grade A. Pipe ends may be factory or field formed to match joining method.
- B. Galvanized- and Black-Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of ASTM A 53/A 53M, standard-weight, seamless steel pipe with threaded ends.
- C. Galvanized- and Uncoated-Steel Couplings: ASTM A 865/A 865M, threaded.
- D. Galvanized and Uncoated, Ductile-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, Class 150, standard pattern.
- E. Malleable- or Ductile-Iron Unions: UL 860.
- F. Cast-Iron Flanges: ASME 16.1, Class 150.
- G. Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, Class 150.
 1. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick or EPDM rubber gasket.
 - a. Class 150 and Class 300, Ductile-Iron or -Steel, Raised-Face Flanges: Ring-type gaskets.
 2. Metal, Pipe-Flange Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Steel Welding Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M and ASME B16.9.
 1. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12M/D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
- I. Grooved-Joint, Steel-Pipe Appurtenances:
 1. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
 2. Galvanized, Painted, Uncoated, Grooved-End Fittings for Steel Piping: ASTM A 47/A 47M, malleable-iron casting or ASTM A 536, ductile-iron casting, with dimensions matching steel pipe.
 3. Grooved-End-Pipe Couplings for Steel Piping: AWWA C606 and UL 213 rigid pattern, unless otherwise indicated, for steel-pipe dimensions. Include ferrous housing sections, EPDM-rubber gasket, and bolts and nuts.

2.3 BACKFLOW PREVENTERS

- A. Double-Check, Detector-Assembly Backflow Preventers:

1. Standards: ASSE 1048 and UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" listing or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
2. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
3. Pressure Loss: per manufacturer's pressure loss graph.
4. Size: 6-inches.
5. Body Material: Cast iron with interior lining complying with AWWC C550 or that is FDA approved or steel with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved or stainless steel.
6. End connections: Flanged.
7. Configuration: Horizontal.
8. Accessories:
 - a. Valves: UL 262 and FM Global's "Approval Guide" listing; OS&Y gate type with flanged ends on inlet and outlet.
 - b. Bypass: with displacement-type water meter, shutoff valves, and reduced-pressure backflow preventer.

B. Backflow Preventer Test Kits:

1. Description: Factory calibrated, with gages, fittings, hoses,, and carrying case with test-procedure instructions.

2.4 VALVES

A. Two-piece ball valves with indicators

1. Standard: UL 1091, except with ball instead of disc and FM Global standard for indicating valves (butterfly or ball type), Class Number 1112.
2. Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum.
3. Body Design: Two piece.
4. Body Material: Forged brass or bronze.
5. Port Size: Full or standard.
6. Seats: PTFE.
7. Stem: Bronze or stainless steel.
8. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
9. Actuator: Worm gear or traveling nut.
10. End Connections: Threaded ends.

B. Globe valves

1. Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum.
2. Body Material: Bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
3. Stem: Bronze.
4. Disc Holder and Nut: Bronze.
5. Disc Seat: Nitrile.
6. Packing: Asbestos free.
7. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.
8. End Connections: Threaded ends.

C. Butterfly valves with indicators

1. Standard: UL 1091 and FM Global standard for indicating valves, Class Number 1112.
2. Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum.
3. Body Material: Bronze for NPS 1 through 2-1/2. Cast or ductile iron for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
4. Seat Material: EPDM.
5. Stem Material: Bronze for NPS 1 through 2-1/2. Stainless steel for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
6. Disc: Bronze for NPS 1 through 2-1/2. Ductile iron for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
7. Actuator: Worm gear or traveling nut.
8. Supervisory Switch: Internal or external.
9. Body Design: Threaded ends for NPS 1 through NPS 2. Grooved ends for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

D. Check valves

1. Standard: UL 262 and FM Global standard for swing check valves, Class Number 1210.
2. Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum.
3. Type: Single swing check.
4. Body Material: Cast iron, ductile iron, or bronze.
5. Clapper: Bronze, ductile iron, or stainless steel.
6. Hinge Shaft: Bronze or stainless steel.
7. Hinge Spring: Stainless steel.
8. End Connections: Flanged, grooved, or threaded.

E. OS&Y Gate Valves

1. Standard: UL 262 and FM Global standard for fire-service water control valves (OS&Y gate valves).
2. Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum.
3. Body and Bonnet Material: Cast or ductile iron.
4. Wedge: Cast or ductile iron.
5. Wedge Seat: Cast or ductile iron.
6. Stem: Brass or bronze.
7. Packing: Non-asbestos PTFE.
8. Supervisory Switch: External.
9. End connections: Flanged or grooved.

2.5 SPECIALTY VALVES

- A. Listed in UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
- B. Pressure Rating:
1. Standard-Pressure Piping Specialty Valves: 175-psig minimum.
- C. Body Material: Cast or ductile iron.

- D. Size: Same as connected piping.
- E. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.
- F. Riser Check Valve Assembly:
 - 1. Standard: UL listed HMER
 - 2. Design: For horizontal or vertical installation.
 - 3. Include trim sets for drain and pressure gages.
- G. Automatic (Ball Drip) Drain Valves:
 - 1. Standard: UL 1726.
 - 2. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
 - 3. Type: Automatic draining, ball check.
 - 4. Size: NPS 3/4.
 - 5. End Connections: Threaded.
- H. Pressure Relief Valve:
 - 1. Standard: UL listed or FM approved for use in fire protection systems.
 - 2. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
 - 3. Size: NPS 1/2 minimum.
- I. Automatic air venting valve:
 - 1. Standard: UL 2573
 - 2. Pressure rating: 175-psig minimum.
 - 3. Body Material: Brass construction
 - 4. Size: NPS 1/2 minimum.
 - 5. End Connections: Threaded.

2.6 SPRINKLER PIPING SPECIALTIES

- A. Branch Outlet Fittings:
 - 1. Standard: UL 213.
 - 2. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
 - 3. Body Material: Ductile-iron housing with EPDM seals and bolts and nuts.
 - 4. Type: Mechanical-tee and -cross fittings.
 - 5. Configurations: Snap-on and strapless, ductile-iron housing with branch outlets.
 - 6. Size: Of dimension to fit onto sprinkler main and with outlet connections as required to match connected branch piping.
 - 7. Branch Outlets: Grooved, plain-end pipe, or threaded.
- B. Sprinkler Inspector's Test Fittings:
 - 1. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
 - 2. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.

3. Body Material: Cast- or ductile-iron housing with sight glass.
4. Size: Same as connected piping.
5. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded.

C. Adjustable Drop Nipples:

1. Standard: UL 1474.
2. Pressure Rating: 250-psig minimum.
3. Body Material: Steel pipe with EPDM-rubber O-ring seals.
4. Size: Same as connected piping.
5. Length: Adjustable.
6. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded.

2.7 SPRINKLERS

- A. Listed in UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
- B. Pressure Rating for Residential Sprinklers: 175-psig maximum.
- C. Pressure Rating for Automatic Sprinklers: 175-psig minimum.
- D. Automatic Sprinklers with Heat-Responsive Element:
 1. Nonresidential Applications: UL 199.
 2. Residential Applications: UL 1626.
 3. Characteristics: Nominal 1/2-inch orifice with Discharge Coefficient K of 5.6, and for "Ordinary" temperature classification rating unless otherwise indicated or required by application.
 4. Nominal Orifice: 1/2 inch, with discharge coefficient K up to 5.8.
 5. Nominal Orifice: 1/2 inch or 3/4 inch with discharge coefficient K between 7.4 and 11.2.
- E. Sprinkler Finishes: Chrome plated, bronze, and painted. Refer to sprinkler schedule.
- F. Special Coatings: corrosion-resistant paint. Refer to sprinkler schedule.
- G. Sprinkler Escutcheons: Materials, types, and finishes for the following sprinkler mounting applications. Escutcheons for concealed, flush, and recessed-type sprinklers are specified with sprinklers.
 1. Ceiling Mounting: Chrome-plated steel, one piece, flat or Plastic, white finish, one piece, flat.
 2. Sidewall Mounting: Chrome-plated steel or Plastic, white finish, one piece, flat.
- H. Sprinkler Guards:
 1. Standard: UL 199.
 2. Type: Wire cage with fastening device for attaching to sprinkler.

2.8 ALARM DEVICES

- A. Alarm-device types shall match piping and equipment connections.
- B. Electrically Operated Alarm Bell:
 - 1. Standard: UL 464.
 - 2. Type: Vibrating, metal alarm bell.
 - 3. Size: 6-inch minimum- diameter.
 - 4. Finish: Red-enamel factory finish, suitable for outdoor use.
 - 5. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Water-Flow Indicators:
 - 1. Standard: UL 346.
 - 2. Water-Flow Detector: Electrically supervised.
 - 3. Components: Two single-pole, double-throw circuit switches for isolated alarm and auxiliary contacts, 7 A, 125-V ac and 0.25 A, 24-V dc; complete with factory-set, field-adjustable retard element to prevent false signals and tamperproof cover that sends signal if removed.
 - 4. Type: Paddle operated.
 - 5. Pressure Rating: 250 psig.
 - 6. Design Installation: Horizontal or vertical.
- D. Pressure Switches:
 - 1. Standard: UL 346.
 - 2. Type: Electrically supervised water-flow switch with retard feature.
 - 3. Components: Single-pole, double-throw switch with normally closed contacts.
 - 4. Design Operation: Rising pressure signals water flow.
- E. Valve Supervisory Switches:
 - 1. Standard: UL 346.
 - 2. Type: Electrically supervised.
 - 3. Components: Single-pole, double-throw switch with normally closed contacts.
 - 4. Design: Signals that controlled valve is in other than fully open position.
 - 5. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.9 PRESSURE GAGES

- A. Standard: UL 393.
- B. Dial Size: 3-1/2- to 4-1/2-inch diameter.

C. Pressure Gage Range: 0- to 250-psig minimum.

D. Label: Include "WATER" label on dial face.

2.10 HOSE CONNECTIONS

A. Nonadjustable-Valve Hose Connections:

1. Standard: UL 668 hose valve for connecting fire hose.
2. Pressure Rating: 300 psig minimum.
3. Material: Brass or bronze.
4. Size: NPS 2-1/2.
5. Inlet: Female pipe threads.
6. Outlet: Male hose threads with lugged cap, gasket, and chain. Include hose valve threads according to NFPA 1963 and matching local fire-department threads.
7. Pattern: Angle.
8. Finish: Polished chrome-plated or Rough brass or bronze or Rough chrome-plated.

2.11 FIRE DEPARTMENT CONNECTIONS

A. Exposed-type fire department connection

1. Standard: UL 405.
2. Type: Exposed, projecting, for wall mounting.
3. Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum.
4. Body Material: Corrosion-resistant metal.
5. Inlets: Brass with threads according to NFPA 1963 and matching local fire-department sizes and threads. Include extension pipe nipples, brass lugged swivel connections, and check devices or clappers.
6. Caps: Brass, lugged type, with gasket and chain.
7. Escutcheon Plate: Round, brass, wall type.
8. Outlet: Back, with pipe threads.
9. Number of Inlets: Indicate on the drawings.
10. Escutcheon Plate Marking: Similar to "AUTO SPKR"
11. Finish: Polished chrome plated.
12. Outlet Size: NPS 4

B. Flush-type fire department connection

1. Standard: UL 405.
2. Type: Flush, for wall mounting.
3. Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum.
4. Body Material: Corrosion-resistant metal.
5. Inlets: Brass with threads according to NFPA 1963 and matching local fire-department sizes and threads. Include extension pipe nipples, brass lugged swivel connections, and check devices or clappers.
6. Caps: Brass, lugged type, with gasket and chain.
7. Escutcheon Plate: Rectangular, brass, wall type.
8. Outlet: With pipe threads.

9. Body Style: Horizontal.
10. Number of Inlets: Indicate on the drawings.
11. Escutcheon Plate Marking: Similar to "AUTO SPKR"
12. Finish: Polished chrome plated.
13. Outlet Size: NPS 4.

2.12 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Hangers and supports for fire suppression piping shall be UL listed or FM approved and installed in accordance with NFPA 13.
- B. Components of hanger assemblies that directly attach to the pipe or to the building structure shall be listed unless the following requirements are met:
 1. Mild steel hanger rods and hangers formed from mild steel rods shall be permitted to be not listed.
 2. Fasteners in concrete, steel, or wood in accordance with NFPA 13.
- C. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports for general service applications.
- D. Use stainless-steel pipe hangers and supports or corrosion-resistant attachments for areas subject to corrosion including, but not limited to, dishwasher areas, shower rooms, pools, spa, and similar spaces.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Perform fire-hydrant flow test according to NFPA 13 and NFPA 291. Use results provided on fire protection design drawings. Contractor shall conduct a new flow test if the date of the flow test provided on fire protection design drawings exceed 12 months from the date of working plan submittal.
- B. Report test results promptly and in writing.

3.2 BACKFLOW PREVENTER INSTALLATION

- A. Install backflow preventers of type, size, and capacity indicated on the drawings. Include valves and test cocks. Install according to requirements of plumbing and health department and authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Do not install backflow preventers that have relief drain in vault or in other spaces subject to flooding.
- C. Do not install bypass piping around backflow preventers.
- D. Support NPS 2-1/2 and larger backflow preventers and piping on concrete piers. Comply with requirements for concrete piers in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

3.3 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping. Install piping as indicated on approved working plans.
 - 1. Deviations from approved working plans for piping require written approval from authorities having jurisdiction. File written approval with Architect before deviating from approved working plans.
 - 2. Coordinate layout and installation of sprinklers with other construction that penetrates ceilings, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, and partition assemblies.
- B. Piping Standard: Comply with NFPA 13 and NFPA 14 requirements for installation of sprinkler system and standpipe system piping.
- C. Use listed fittings to make changes in direction, branch takeoffs from mains, and reductions in pipe sizes.
- D. Install unions adjacent to each valve in pipes NPS 2 and smaller.
- E. Install flanges, flange adapters, or couplings for grooved-end piping on valves, apparatus, and equipment having NPS 2-1/2 and larger end connections.
- F. Install "Inspector's Test Connections" in sprinkler system piping, complete with shutoff valve, and sized and located according to NFPA 13.
- G. Install sprinkler piping with drains for complete system drainage. Where low points cannot be avoided, auxiliary drains shall be provided in accordance with NFPA 13.
- H. Install sprinkler control valves, test assemblies, and drain risers adjacent to standpipes when sprinkler piping is connected to standpipes.
- I. Install automatic (ball drip) drain valve at low point in the fire-department connection piping system, to drain piping between fire-department connection and check valve. Install drain piping to and spill over floor drain or to outside building.
- J. Install alarm devices in piping systems.
- K. Install pressure gages on riser or feed main and at each sprinkler test connection, and at top of each standpipe. Include pressure gages with connection not less than NPS 1/4 and with soft-metal seated globe valve, arranged for draining pipe between gage and valve. Install gages to permit removal, and install where they are not subject to freezing.
- L. Fill sprinkler system piping with water.
- M. Install electric heating cables and pipe insulation on sprinkler piping in areas subject to freezing. Comply with requirements for heating cables in Section 210533 "Heat Tracing

for Fire-Suppression Piping" and for piping insulation in Section 210700 "Fire-Suppression Systems Insulation."

- N. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 210517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Fire-Suppression Piping."
- O. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 210517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Fire-Suppression Piping."
- P. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 210518 "Escutcheons for Fire-Suppression Piping."

3.4 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Install couplings, flanges, flanged fittings, unions, nipples, and transition and special fittings that have finish and pressure ratings same as or higher than system's pressure rating for aboveground applications unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Install unions adjacent to each valve in pipes NPS 2 and smaller.
- C. Install flanges, flange adapters, or couplings for grooved-end piping on valves, apparatus, and equipment having NPS 2-1/2 and larger end connections.
- D. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- E. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.
- F. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for water service. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9.
- G. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
 - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads.
 - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.
- H. Steel-Piping, Roll-Grooved Joints: Roll rounded-edge groove in end of pipe according to AWWA C606. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join steel pipe and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for steel-pipe grooved joints.
- I. Dissimilar-Material Piping Joints: Make joints using adapters compatible with materials of both piping systems.

3.5 VALVE AND SPECIALTIES INSTALLATION

- A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.
- B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.
- C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.
- D. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.
- E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.
- F. Install listed fire-protection valves, trim and drain valves, specialty valves and trim, controls, and specialties according to NFPA 13 and authorities having jurisdiction.
- G. Install listed fire-protection shutoff valves supervised open, located to control sources of water supply except from fire-department connections. Install permanent identification signs indicating portion of system controlled by each valve.
- H. Install backflow preventers instead of check valves in potable-water-supply sources.
- I. Specialty Valves:
 - 1. Install valves in vertical position for proper direction of flow, in main supply to system.
 - 2. Install riser check valves with drain outlet and pressure gage trim assembly.
 - 3. Install NPS 1/2 minimum pressure relief valve at the riser or at floor control valve assemblies downstream of check valves.
 - 4. Install automatic NPS 1/2 minimum automatic air vent valve at a high point in the sprinkler system to allow air to be removed from that portion of the system.

3.6 HOSE CONNECTION INSTALLATION

- A. Install hose connections adjacent to standpipes.
- B. Install NPS 2-1/2 hose connections.

3.7 SPRINKLER INSTALLATION

- A. Install sprinklers in suspended ceilings in center of narrow dimension of acoustical ceiling panels.
- B. Install dry-type sprinklers with water supply from heated space. Do not install pendent or sidewall, wet-type sprinklers in areas subject to freezing.

- C. Install sprinklers into flexible, sprinkler hose fittings, and install hose into bracket on ceiling grid.

3.8 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Install labeling and pipe markers on equipment and piping according to requirements in NFPA 13.
- B. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 - 1. Hydrostatic test: After installation, all piping and attached appurtenances subjected to system working pressure shall be hydrostatically tested at 200 psi and shall maintain that pressure without loss for 2 hours. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
 - 3. Flush, test, and inspect sprinkler systems according to NFPA 13, "Systems Acceptance" Chapter.
 - 4. Main drain valve test shall be performed, and the resulting static and residual pressure recorded in accordance with NFPA 13.
 - 5. All control valves shall be fully closed and opened under system working pressure to ensure proper operation.
 - 6. Energize circuits to electrical equipment and devices.
 - 7. Coordinate with fire-alarm tests. Operate as required.
 - 8. Coordinate with fire-pump tests. Operate as required.
 - 9. Verify that equipment hose threads are same as local fire department equipment.
 - 10. Backflow prevention assembly shall be forward flow tested at sprinkler system demand including hose stream allowance where applicable to ensure proper operation.
- B. Sprinkler piping system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.10 CLEANING

- A. Clean dirt and debris from sprinklers.
- B. Only sprinklers with their original factory finish are acceptable. Remove and replace any sprinklers that are painted or have any other finish than their original factory finish.

3.11 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain installed sprinkler system.

3.12 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Piping between Fire Department Connections and Check Valves: Galvanized, standard-weight steel pipe with grooved ends, grooved-end fittings, grooved-end-pipe couplings, and grooved joints.
- B. Sprinkler specialty fittings may be used, downstream of control valves, instead of specified fittings.
- C. Buried, Standard-pressure, wet-pipe sprinkler systems, shall be the following:
 - 1. Ductile Iron, Class 52, Cement Lined Asphaltic Coating, AWWA C151, Ductile Iron Fittings, Mechanical Joint Lock with thrust blocks.
- D. Standard-pressure, wet-pipe sprinkler system, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Standard-weight, black-steel pipe with threaded ends; uncoated, ductile-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
 - 2. Standard-weight, galvanized-steel pipe with threaded ends; galvanized, ductile-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
 - 3. Standard-weight, black-steel pipe with roll-grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
 - 4. Standard-weight, galvanized-steel pipe with roll-grooved ends; galvanized, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
 - 5. Standard-weight, black-steel pipe with plain ends; steel welding fittings; and welded joints.
- E. Standard-pressure, wet-pipe sprinkler system, NPS 2-1/2 and larger, shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Standard-weight, black-steel pipe with roll-grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
 - 2. Standard-weight, galvanized-steel pipe with roll-grooved ends; galvanized, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
 - 3. Standard-weight, black-steel pipe with plain ends; steel welding fittings; and welded joints.

3.13 SPRINKLER SCHEDULE

- A. Use sprinkler types in subparagraphs below for the following applications:

1. Rooms without Ceilings: Upright sprinklers.
2. Rooms with Suspended Ceilings: Concealed sprinklers.
3. Wall Mounting: Sidewall sprinklers.
4. Spaces Subject to Freezing: Pendent, dry sprinklers, Sidewall, dry sprinklers.
5. Special Applications: Extended-coverage where indicated.

B. Provide sprinkler types in subparagraphs below with finishes indicated.

1. Concealed Sprinklers: Rough brass, with factory-painted white cover plate.
2. Recessed Sprinklers: Bright chrome, with bright chrome escutcheon.
3. Upright Pendent and Sidewall Sprinklers: Chrome plated in finished spaces exposed to view; rough bronze in unfinished spaces not exposed to view.
4. Sprinklers in areas subject to moisture/condensation shall be provided with corrosion resistant finish. This includes, but is not limited to, shower rooms, dishwashing areas, and similar spaces.

END OF SECTION 21 1313

SECTION 21 1313 – COMBINATION AUTOMATIC SPRINKLER AND STANDPIPE SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Pipes, fittings, and specialties.
2. Specialty valves.
3. Valves.
4. Sprinklers.
5. Hose Connections.
6. Alarm devices.
7. Pressure gages.
8. Backflow preventers.
9. Fire department connections.
10. Hangers and supports.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 210517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Fire-Suppression Piping"
2. Section 210518 "Escutcheons for Fire-Suppression Piping"
3. Section 210553 "Identification for Fire-Suppression Piping and Equipment"
4. Section 210513 "Common Motor Requirements for Fire Suppression Equipment"
5. Section 213113 "Electric-Drive, Centrifugal Fire Pumps"
6. Section 213413 "Pressure-Maintenance Pumps"
7. Section 262933 "Controllers for Fire-Pump Drivers"
8. Section 284621.11 "Addressable Fire Alarm Systems"

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Standard-Pressure Sprinkler Piping: Wet-pipe sprinkler system piping designed to operate at working pressure of 175-psig maximum.
- B. Automatic Wet-Type, Class I Standpipe System combined with the building sprinkler system: Includes NPS 2-1/2 hose connections. Has open water-supply valve with pressure maintained and is capable of supplying water demand.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings and hydraulic calculations:
 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details and hydraulic calculations in accordance with NFPA 13 "Plans and Calculations" Chapter. Hydraulic nodes shall be visibly shown on the drawings.
 2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For sprinkler/standpipe systems indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer or NICET III or IV technician responsible for their preparation.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Sprinkler/standpipe systems, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
 1. Domestic water piping.
 2. Compressed air piping.
 3. HVAC hydronic piping.
 4. Items penetrating finished ceiling include the following:
 - a. Lighting fixtures.
 - b. Air outlets and inlets.
 - c. Fire alarm devices.
 - d. Security/communications devices.
- B. Qualification Data:
 1. Qualified Installer
 2. Professional engineer or NICET III or IV technician responsible for the preparation of shop drawings, hydraulic calculations, and product data submittal package.
- C. Design Data:
 1. Approved Sprinkler/Standpipe Piping Drawings: Working plans, prepared according to NFPA 13 and NFPA 14, that have been approved by authorities having jurisdiction, including hydraulic calculations.
- D. Welding certificates.
- E. Field Test Reports:
 1. Indicate and interpret test results for compliance with performance requirements and as described in NFPA 13. Include "Contractor's Material and Test Certificate for Aboveground Piping."

2. Fire-hydrant flow test report, performed within 12 months of bid date and shall take place when the water supply system is under peak demand. Provide seasonal fluctuation data where available.

F. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For wet-pipe sprinkler systems and specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Sprinkler Cabinets: Finished, wall-mounted, steel cabinet with hinged cover, and with space for minimum of six spare sprinklers plus sprinkler wrench.. Include separate cabinet with sprinklers and wrench for each type of sprinkler used on Project. The stock of spare sprinklers shall include all types and ratings installed and shall be as follows:
 - a. Protected facilities having under 300 sprinklers – no fewer than six sprinklers.
 - b. Protected facilities having 300 to 1000 sprinklers – no fewer than 12 sprinklers.
 - c. Protected facilities having over 1000 sprinklers – no fewer than 24 sprinklers.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications:

1. Installer's responsibilities include designing, fabricating, and installing sprinkler systems and providing professional engineering services needed to assume engineering responsibility. Base calculations on results of fire-hydrant flow test not less than one year old from the date of shop drawing submittal.
 - a. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of working plans, calculations, and field test reports by a qualified NICET III or IV technician or professional engineer.

B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to 2010 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

C. All fire protection materials and equipment shall be UL listed and/or FM approved. Valve components (including valve trim, internal parts, gaskets, etc.) and other components as permitted by NFPA 13 shall not be required to be individually listed.

D. Piping materials shall bear label, stamps, or other markings of specified testing agency.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Preparation for Transport: Prepare valves and piping according to the following:
 - 1. Ensure that valves and piping are dry and internally protected against rust and corrosion.
 - 2. Protect valves against damage to threaded ends and flange faces.
 - 3. Set valves in best position for handling. Set valves closed to prevent rattling.
- B. During Storage: Use precautions for valves according to the following:
 - 1. Do not remove end protectors unless necessary for inspection; then reinstall for storage.
 - 2. Protect from weather, humidity, temperature, dust, dirt, and water damage. Store indoors and maintain temperature higher than ambient dew point temperature. Support off the ground or pavement in watertight enclosures when outdoor storage is necessary.
- C. Deliver piping with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe-end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
- D. Protect stored piping from moisture and dirt. Elevate above grade. Do not exceed structural capacity of floor when storing inside.
- E. Protect flanges, fittings, and specialties from moisture and dirt.
- F. Store plastic piping protected from direct sunlight. Support to prevent sagging and bending.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Sprinkler/standpipe system equipment, specialties, accessories, installation, and testing shall comply with the following:
 - 1. NFPA 13.
 - 2. NFPA 14.
 - 3. NFPA 20.
 - 4. NFPA 24.
- B. Standard-Pressure Piping System Component: Listed for 175-psig minimum working pressure.
- C. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer or NICET III or IV technician, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design sprinkler/standpipe systems.
 - 1. Refer to fire protection drawings for fire-hydrant flow test records.

2. Sprinkler system design shall be approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
 - a. Margin of Safety for Available Water Flow and Pressure: 10 percent, including losses through water-service piping, valves, and backflow preventers.
 - b. Sprinkler Occupancy Hazard Classifications:
 - 1) Light Hazard Occupancy: Offices, lobbies, conference rooms, classrooms, restrooms, sleeping rooms, and similar spaces.
 - 2) Ordinary Hazard Group 1 Occupancy: Electrical, telecom, mechanical, parking garage, general storage rooms, kitchens, laundry rooms, and similar spaces.
 - 3) Ordinary Hazard Group 2 Occupancy: Retail spaces, trash compactor room, loading docks, and similar spaces.
3. Minimum Density for Automatic-Sprinkler Piping Design:
 - a. Light-Hazard Occupancy: 0.10 gpm over 1500-sq. ft. area.
 - b. Ordinary-Hazard, Group 1 Occupancy: 0.15 gpm over 1500-sq. ft. area.
 - c. Ordinary-Hazard, Group 2 Occupancy: 0.20 gpm over 1500-sq. ft. area.
4. Hose stream requirement:
 - a. Light Hazard Occupancy: 100 gpm.
 - b. Ordinary Hazard Occupancy: 250 gpm.
5. Maximum Protection Area per Sprinkler: According to UL listing and below.
 - a. Light Hazard Occupancy: 225 sq. ft..
 - b. Ordinary Hazard Group 1 and 2 Occupancy: 130 sq. ft..
6. The design area shall be increased by 30% for dry pipe systems.
7. The design area is permitted to be reduced for use of quick-response sprinklers in accordance with NFPA 13.
8. Special design approach for use of residential sprinklers shall be in accordance with NFPA 13 Section 11.3.
9. Minimum residual pressure at each hose connection outlet shall be 100 psig.

2.1 DUCTILE-IRON PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Mechanical-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe:

1. AWWA C151/A21.51, with mechanical-joint bell and plain spigot end unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
2. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111/A21.11, ductile-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.

B. Standard-Pattern, Mechanical-Joint Fittings:

1. AWWA C110/A21.10, ductile iron.
2. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111/A21.11, ductile-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.

C. Compact-Pattern, Mechanical-Joint Fittings:

1. AWWA C153/A21.53, ductile iron.
2. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111/A21.11, ductile-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.

2.2 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Standard-Weight, Galvanized- and Black-Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E or S, Grade A. Pipe ends may be factory or field formed to match joining method.
- B. Galvanized- and Black-Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of ASTM A 53/A 53M, standard-weight, seamless steel pipe with threaded ends.
- C. Galvanized- and Uncoated-Steel Couplings: ASTM A 865/A 865M, threaded.
- D. Galvanized and Uncoated, Ductile-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, Class 150, standard pattern.
- E. Malleable- or Ductile-Iron Unions: UL 860.
- F. Cast-Iron Flanges: ASME 16.1, Class 150.
- G. Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, Class 150.
 1. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick or EPDM rubber gasket.
 - a. Class 150 and Class 300, Ductile-Iron or -Steel, Raised-Face Flanges: Ring-type gaskets.
 2. Metal, Pipe-Flange Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Steel Welding Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M and ASME B16.9.
 1. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12M/D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
- I. Grooved-Joint, Steel-Pipe Appurtenances:
 1. Pressure Rating: 250-psig minimum.
 2. Galvanized, Painted, Uncoated, Grooved-End Fittings for Steel Piping: ASTM A 47/A 47M, malleable-iron casting or ASTM A 536, ductile-iron casting, with dimensions matching steel pipe.
 3. Grooved-End-Pipe Couplings for Steel Piping: AWWA C606 and UL 213 rigid pattern, unless otherwise indicated, for steel-pipe dimensions. Include ferrous housing sections, EPDM-rubber gasket, and bolts and nuts.

2.3 BACKFLOW PREVENTERS

- A. Double-Check, Detector-Assembly Backflow Preventers:

1. Standards: ASSE 1048 and UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" listing or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
2. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
3. Pressure Loss: per manufacturer's pressure loss graph.
4. Size: 6-inches.
5. Body Material: Cast iron with interior lining complying with AWWC C550 or that is FDA approved or steel with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved or stainless steel.
6. End connections: Flanged.
7. Configuration: Horizontal.
8. Accessories:
 - a. Valves: UL 262 and FM Global's "Approval Guide" listing; OS&Y gate type with flanged ends on inlet and outlet.
 - b. Bypass: with displacement-type water meter, shutoff valves, and reduced-pressure backflow preventer.

B. Backflow Preventer Test Kits:

1. Description: Factory calibrated, with gages, fittings, hoses,, and carrying case with test-procedure instructions.

2.4 VALVES

A. Two-piece ball valves with indicators

1. Standard: UL 1091, except with ball instead of disc and FM Global standard for indicating valves (butterfly or ball type), Class Number 1112.
2. Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum.
3. Body Design: Two piece.
4. Body Material: Forged brass or bronze.
5. Port Size: Full or standard.
6. Seats: PTFE.
7. Stem: Bronze or stainless steel.
8. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
9. Actuator: Worm gear or traveling nut.
10. End Connections: Threaded ends.

B. Globe valves

1. Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum.
2. Body Material: Bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
3. Stem: Bronze.
4. Disc Holder and Nut: Bronze.
5. Disc Seat: Nitrile.
6. Packing: Asbestos free.
7. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.
8. End Connections: Threaded ends.

C. Butterfly valves with indicators

1. Standard: UL 1091 and FM Global standard for indicating valves, Class Number 1112.
2. Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum.
3. Body Material: Bronze for NPS 1 through 2-1/2. Cast or ductile iron for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
4. Seat Material: EPDM.
5. Stem Material: Bronze for NPS 1 through 2-1/2. Stainless steel for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
6. Disc: Bronze for NPS 1 through 2-1/2. Ductile iron for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
7. Actuator: Worm gear or traveling nut.
8. Supervisory Switch: Internal or external.
9. Body Design: Threaded ends for NPS 1 through NPS 2. Grooved ends for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

D. Check valves

1. Standard: UL 262 and FM Global standard for swing check valves, Class Number 1210.
2. Pressure Rating: 300 psig minimum.
3. Type: Single swing check.
4. Body Material: Cast iron, ductile iron, or bronze.
5. Clapper: Bronze, ductile iron, or stainless steel.
6. Hinge Shaft: Bronze or stainless steel.
7. Hinge Spring: Stainless steel.
8. End Connections: Flanged, grooved, or threaded.

E. OS&Y Gate Valves

1. Standard: UL 262 and FM Global standard for fire-service water control valves (OS&Y gate valves).
2. Pressure Rating: 300 psig minimum.
3. Body and Bonnet Material: Cast or ductile iron.
4. Wedge: Cast or ductile iron.
5. Wedge Seat: Cast or ductile iron.
6. Stem: Brass or bronze.
7. Packing: Non-asbestos PTFE.
8. Supervisory Switch: External.
9. End connections: Flanged or grooved.

2.5 SPECIALTY VALVES

- A. Listed in UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
- B. Pressure Rating:
1. Standard-Pressure Piping Specialty Valves: 175-psig minimum.
- C. Body Material: Cast or ductile iron.

- D. Size: Same as connected piping.
- E. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.
- F. Riser Check Valve Assembly:
 - 1. Standard: UL listed HMER
 - 2. Design: For horizontal or vertical installation.
 - 3. Include trim sets for drain and pressure gages.
- G. Automatic (Ball Drip) Drain Valves:
 - 1. Standard: UL 1726.
 - 2. Pressure Rating: 300-psig minimum.
 - 3. Type: Automatic draining, ball check.
 - 4. Size: NPS 3/4.
 - 5. End Connections: Threaded.
- H. Pressure Relief Valve:
 - 1. Standard: UL listed or FM approved for use in fire protection systems.
 - 2. Pressure Rating: 300-psig minimum.
 - 3. Size: NPS 1/2 minimum.
- I. Pressure Reducing Valve:
 - 1. Standard: UL listed or FM approved for use in fire protection systems.
 - 2. Design: For horizontal or vertical installation.
 - 3. Maximum inlet pressure: 250 psi.
 - 4. Outlet set pressure: Based on sprinkler contractor's final hydraulic calculations but no higher than 165 psi.
 - 5. End Connections: Grooved or flanged.
- J. Automatic air venting valve:
 - 1. Standard: UL 2573
 - 2. Pressure rating: 175-psig minimum.
 - 3. Body Material: Brass construction
 - 4. Size: NPS 1/2 minimum.
 - 5. End Connections: Threaded.

2.6 SPRINKLER PIPING SPECIALTIES

- A. Branch Outlet Fittings:
 - 1. Standard: UL 213.
 - 2. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
 - 3. Body Material: Ductile-iron housing with EPDM seals and bolts and nuts.
 - 4. Type: Mechanical-tee and -cross fittings.
 - 5. Configurations: Snap-on and strapless, ductile-iron housing with branch outlets.

6. Size: Of dimension to fit onto sprinkler main and with outlet connections as required to match connected branch piping.
7. Branch Outlets: Grooved, plain-end pipe, or threaded.

B. Sprinkler Inspector's Test Fittings:

1. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
2. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
3. Body Material: Cast- or ductile-iron housing with sight glass.
4. Size: Same as connected piping.
5. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded.

C. Adjustable Drop Nipples:

1. Standard: UL 1474.
2. Pressure Rating: 250-psig minimum.
3. Body Material: Steel pipe with EPDM-rubber O-ring seals.
4. Size: Same as connected piping.
5. Length: Adjustable.
6. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded.

2.7 SPRINKLERS

A. Listed in UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."

B. Pressure Rating for Residential Sprinklers: 175-psig maximum.

C. Pressure Rating for Automatic Sprinklers: 175-psig minimum.

D. Automatic Sprinklers with Heat-Responsive Element:

1. Nonresidential Applications: UL 199.
2. Residential Applications: UL 1626.
3. Characteristics: Nominal 1/2-inch orifice with Discharge Coefficient K of 5.6, and for "Ordinary" temperature classification rating unless otherwise indicated or required by application.
4. Nominal Orifice: 1/2 inch, with discharge coefficient K up to 5.8.
5. Nominal Orifice: 1/2 inch or 3/4 inch with discharge coefficient K between 7.4 and 11.2.

E. Sprinkler Finishes: Chrome plated, bronze, and painted. Refer to sprinkler schedule.

F. Special Coatings: corrosion-resistant paint. Refer to sprinkler schedule.

G. Sprinkler Escutcheons: Materials, types, and finishes for the following sprinkler mounting applications. Escutcheons for concealed, flush, and recessed-type sprinklers are specified with sprinklers.

1. Ceiling Mounting: Chrome-plated steel, one piece, flat or Plastic, white finish, one piece, flat.
2. Sidewall Mounting: Chrome-plated steel or Plastic, white finish, one piece, flat.

H. Sprinkler Guards:

1. Standard: UL 199.
2. Type: Wire cage with fastening device for attaching to sprinkler.

2.8 ALARM DEVICES

A. Alarm-device types shall match piping and equipment connections.

B. Electrically Operated Alarm Bell:

1. Standard: UL 464.
2. Type: Vibrating, metal alarm bell.
3. Size: 6-inch minimum- diameter.
4. Finish: Red-enamel factory finish, suitable for outdoor use.
5. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

C. Water-Flow Indicators:

1. Standard: UL 346.
2. Water-Flow Detector: Electrically supervised.
3. Components: Two single-pole, double-throw circuit switches for isolated alarm and auxiliary contacts, 7 A, 125-V ac and 0.25 A, 24-V dc; complete with factory-set, field-adjustable retard element to prevent false signals and tamperproof cover that sends signal if removed.
4. Type: Paddle operated.
5. Pressure Rating: 250 psig.
6. Design Installation: Horizontal or vertical.

D. Pressure Switches:

1. Standard: UL 346.
2. Type: Electrically supervised water-flow switch with retard feature.
3. Components: Single-pole, double-throw switch with normally closed contacts.
4. Design Operation: Rising pressure signals water flow.

E. Valve Supervisory Switches:

1. Standard: UL 346.
2. Type: Electrically supervised.
3. Components: Single-pole, double-throw switch with normally closed contacts.
4. Design: Signals that controlled valve is in other than fully open position.

5. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.9 PRESSURE GAGES

- A. Standard: UL 393.
- B. Dial Size: 3-1/2- to 4-1/2-inch diameter.
- C. Pressure Gage Range: 0- to 250-psig minimum.
- D. Label: Include "WATER" label on dial face.

2.10 HOSE CONNECTIONS

- A. Nonadjustable-Valve Hose Connections:
 1. Standard: UL 668 hose valve for connecting fire hose.
 2. Pressure Rating: 300 psig minimum.
 3. Material: Brass or bronze.
 4. Size: NPS 2-1/2.
 5. Inlet: Female pipe threads.
 6. Outlet: Male hose threads with lugged cap, gasket, and chain. Include hose valve threads according to NFPA 1963 and matching local fire-department threads.
 7. Pattern: Angle.
 8. Finish: Polished chrome-plated or Rough brass or bronze or Rough chrome-plated.

2.11 FIRE DEPARTMENT CONNECTIONS

- A. Exposed-type fire department connection
 1. Standard: UL 405.
 2. Type: Exposed, projecting, for wall mounting.
 3. Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum.
 4. Body Material: Corrosion-resistant metal.
 5. Inlets: Brass with threads according to NFPA 1963 and matching local fire-department sizes and threads. Include extension pipe nipples, brass lugged swivel connections, and check devices or clappers.
 6. Caps: Brass, lugged type, with gasket and chain.
 7. Escutcheon Plate: Round, brass, wall type.
 8. Outlet: Back, with pipe threads.
 9. Number of Inlets: Indicate on the drawings.
 10. Escutcheon Plate Marking: Similar to "AUTO SPKR"
 11. Finish: Polished chrome plated.
 12. Outlet Size: NPS 6
- B. Flush-type fire department connection

1. Standard: UL 405.
2. Type: Flush, for wall mounting.
3. Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum.
4. Body Material: Corrosion-resistant metal.
5. Inlets: Brass with threads according to NFPA 1963 and matching local fire-department sizes and threads. Include extension pipe nipples, brass lugged swivel connections, and check devices or clappers.
6. Caps: Brass, lugged type, with gasket and chain.
7. Escutcheon Plate: Rectangular, brass, wall type.
8. Outlet: With pipe threads.
9. Body Style: Horizontal.
10. Number of Inlets: Indicate on the drawings.
11. Escutcheon Plate Marking: Similar to "AUTO SPKR"
12. Finish: Polished chrome plated.
13. Outlet Size: NPS 6.

2.12 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Hangers and supports for fire suppression piping shall be UL listed or FM approved and installed in accordance with NFPA 13.
- B. Components of hanger assemblies that directly attach to the pipe or to the building structure shall be listed unless the following requirements are met:
 1. Mild steel hanger rods and hangers formed from mild steel rods shall be permitted to be not listed.
 2. Fasteners in concrete, steel, or wood in accordance with NFPA 13.
- C. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports for general service applications.
- D. Use stainless-steel pipe hangers and supports or corrosion-resistant attachments for areas subject to corrosion including, but not limited to, dishwasher areas, shower rooms, pools, spa, and similar spaces.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Perform fire-hydrant flow test according to NFPA 13 and NFPA 291. Use results provided on fire protection design drawings. Contractor shall conduct a new flow test if the date of the flow test provided on fire protection design drawings exceed 12 months from the date of working plan submittal.
- B. Report test results promptly and in writing.

3.2 BACKFLOW PREVENTER INSTALLATION

- A. Install backflow preventers of type, size, and capacity indicated on the drawings. Include valves and test cocks. Install according to requirements of plumbing and health department and authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Do not install backflow preventers that have relief drain in vault or in other spaces subject to flooding.
- C. Do not install bypass piping around backflow preventers.
- D. Support NPS 2-1/2 and larger backflow preventers and piping on concrete piers. Comply with requirements for concrete piers in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

3.3 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping. Install piping as indicated on approved working plans.
 - 1. Deviations from approved working plans for piping require written approval from authorities having jurisdiction. File written approval with Architect before deviating from approved working plans.
 - 2. Coordinate layout and installation of sprinklers with other construction that penetrates ceilings, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, and partition assemblies.
- B. Piping Standard: Comply with NFPA 13 and NFPA 14 requirements for installation of sprinkler system and standpipe system piping.
- C. Use listed fittings to make changes in direction, branch takeoffs from mains, and reductions in pipe sizes.
- D. Install unions adjacent to each valve in pipes NPS 2 and smaller.
- E. Install flanges, flange adapters, or couplings for grooved-end piping on valves, apparatus, and equipment having NPS 2-1/2 and larger end connections.
- F. Install "Inspector's Test Connections" in sprinkler system piping, complete with shutoff valve, and sized and located according to NFPA 13.
- G. Install sprinkler piping with drains for complete system drainage. Where low points cannot be avoided, auxiliary drains shall be provided in accordance with NFPA 13.
- H. Install sprinkler control valves, test assemblies, and drain risers adjacent to standpipes when sprinkler piping is connected to standpipes.

- I. Install automatic (ball drip) drain valve at low point in the fire-department connection piping system, to drain piping between fire-department connection and check valve. Install drain piping to and spill over floor drain or to outside building.
- J. Install alarm devices in piping systems.
- K. Install pressure gages on riser or feed main and at each sprinkler test connection, and at top of each standpipe. Include pressure gages with connection not less than NPS 1/4 and with soft-metal seated globe valve, arranged for draining pipe between gage and valve. Install gages to permit removal, and install where they are not subject to freezing.
- L. Fill sprinkler system piping with water.
- M. Install electric heating cables and pipe insulation on sprinkler piping in areas subject to freezing. Comply with requirements for heating cables in Section 210533 "Heat Tracing for Fire-Suppression Piping" and for piping insulation in Section 210700 "Fire-Suppression Systems Insulation."
- N. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 210517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Fire-Suppression Piping."
- O. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 210517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Fire-Suppression Piping."
- P. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 210518 "Escutcheons for Fire-Suppression Piping."

3.4 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Install couplings, flanges, flanged fittings, unions, nipples, and transition and special fittings that have finish and pressure ratings same as or higher than system's pressure rating for aboveground applications unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Install unions adjacent to each valve in pipes NPS 2 and smaller.
- C. Install flanges, flange adapters, or couplings for grooved-end piping on valves, apparatus, and equipment having NPS 2-1/2 and larger end connections.
- D. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- E. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.
- F. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for water service. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9.

- G. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
 - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads.
 - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.
- H. Steel-Piping, Roll-Grooved Joints: Roll rounded-edge groove in end of pipe according to AWWA C606. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join steel pipe and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for steel-pipe grooved joints.
- I. Dissimilar-Material Piping Joints: Make joints using adapters compatible with materials of both piping systems.

3.5 VALVE AND SPECIALTIES INSTALLATION

- A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.
- B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.
- C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.
- D. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.
- E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.
- F. Install listed fire-protection valves, trim and drain valves, specialty valves and trim, controls, and specialties according to NFPA 13 and authorities having jurisdiction.
- G. Install listed fire-protection shutoff valves supervised open, located to control sources of water supply except from fire-department connections. Install permanent identification signs indicating portion of system controlled by each valve.
- H. Install backflow preventers instead of check valves in potable-water-supply sources.
- I. Specialty Valves:
 - 1. Install valves in vertical position for proper direction of flow, in main supply to system.
 - 2. Install riser check valves with drain outlet and pressure gage trim assembly.
 - 3. Install NPS 1/2 minimum pressure relief valve at the riser or at floor control valve assemblies downstream of check valves.

4. Install automatic NPS 1/2 minimum automatic air vent valve at a high point in the sprinkler system to allow air to be removed from that portion of the system.

3.6 HOSE CONNECTION INSTALLATION

- A. Install hose connections adjacent to standpipes.
- B. Install NPS 2-1/2 hose connections.

3.7 SPRINKLER INSTALLATION

- A. Install sprinklers in suspended ceilings in center of narrow dimension of acoustical ceiling panels.
- B. Install dry-type sprinklers with water supply from heated space. Do not install pendent or sidewall, wet-type sprinklers in areas subject to freezing.

3.8 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Install labeling and pipe markers on equipment and piping according to requirements in NFPA 13.
- B. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 1. Hydrostatic test: After installation, all piping and attached appurtenances subjected to system working pressure shall be hydrostatically tested at 200 psi and shall maintain that pressure without loss for 2 hours. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
 3. Flush, test, and inspect sprinkler systems according to NFPA 13, "Systems Acceptance" Chapter.
 4. Main drain valve test shall be performed, and the resulting static and residual pressure recorded in accordance with NFPA 13.
 5. All control valves shall be fully closed and opened under system working pressure to ensure proper operation.
 6. Energize circuits to electrical equipment and devices.
 7. Coordinate with fire-alarm tests. Operate as required.
 8. Coordinate with fire-pump tests. Operate as required.
 9. Verify that equipment hose threads are same as local fire department equipment.
 10. Backflow prevention assembly shall be forward flow tested at sprinkler system demand including hose stream allowance where applicable to ensure proper operation.

- B. Sprinkler piping system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.10 CLEANING

- A. Clean dirt and debris from sprinklers.
- B. Only sprinklers with their original factory finish are acceptable. Remove and replace any sprinklers that are painted or have any other finish than their original factory finish.

3.11 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain installed sprinkler system.

3.12 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Piping between Fire Department Connections and Check Valves: Galvanized, standard-weight steel pipe with grooved ends, grooved-end fittings, grooved-end-pipe couplings, and grooved joints.
- B. Sprinkler specialty fittings may be used, downstream of control valves, instead of specified fittings.
- C. Buried, Standard-pressure, wet-pipe sprinkler systems, shall be the following:
 - 1. Ductile Iron, Class 52, Cement Lined Asphaltic Coating, AWWA C151, Ductile Iron Fittings, Mechanical Joint Lock with thrust blocks.
- D. Standard-pressure, wet-pipe sprinkler system, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Standard-weight, black-steel pipe with threaded ends; uncoated, ductile-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
 - 2. Standard-weight, galvanized-steel pipe with threaded ends; galvanized, ductile-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
 - 3. Standard-weight, black-steel pipe with roll-grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
 - 4. Standard-weight, galvanized-steel pipe with roll-grooved ends; galvanized, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
 - 5. Standard-weight, black-steel pipe with plain ends; steel welding fittings; and welded joints.
- E. Standard-pressure, wet-pipe sprinkler system, NPS 2-1/2 and larger, shall be one of the following:

1. Standard-weight, black-steel pipe with roll-grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
2. Standard-weight, galvanized-steel pipe with roll-grooved ends; galvanized, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
3. Standard-weight, black-steel pipe with plain ends; steel welding fittings; and welded joints.

3.13 SPRINKLER SCHEDULE

A. Use sprinkler types in subparagraphs below for the following applications:

1. Rooms without Ceilings: Upright sprinklers.
2. Rooms with Suspended Ceilings: Concealed sprinklers.
3. Wall Mounting: Sidewall sprinklers.
4. Spaces Subject to Freezing: Pendent, dry sprinklers, Sidewall, dry sprinklers.
5. Special Applications: Extended-coverage where indicated.

B. Provide sprinkler types in subparagraphs below with finishes indicated.

1. Concealed Sprinklers: Rough brass, with factory-painted white cover plate.
2. Recessed Sprinklers: Bright chrome, with bright chrome escutcheon.
3. Upright Pendent and Sidewall Sprinklers: Chrome plated in finished spaces exposed to view; rough bronze in unfinished spaces not exposed to view.
4. Sprinklers in areas subject to moisture/condensation shall be provided with corrosion resistant finish. This includes, but is not limited to, shower rooms, dishwashing areas, and similar spaces.

END OF SECTION 21 1313

SECTION 21 3413 - PRESSURE-MAINTENANCE PUMPS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Regenerative-turbine, pressure-maintenance pumps.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 262933 "Controllers for Fire-Pump Drivers" for pressure-maintenance-pump controllers.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, performance curves, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: For pumps, accessories, and specialties.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
 - 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For pumps to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 REGENERATIVE-TURBINE, PRESSURE-MAINTENANCE PUMPS

- A. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, close-coupled, single-stage, regenerative-turbine centrifugal pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3; with pump and motor mounted horizontally.
- B. Pump Construction:
 - 1. Casing: Radially split, cast iron, with threaded inlet and outlet.
 - 2. Impeller: Bronze, balanced, and keyed to shaft.
 - 3. Pump Shaft: Stainless steel with deflector.
 - 4. Shaft Sleeve: Bronze.
 - 5. Seal: Mechanical type with spring-loaded rotating head.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- D. Motor: Single speed with permanently lubricated ball bearings. Comply with requirements in Section 210513 "Common Motor Requirements for Fire Suppression Equipment."
 - 1. Power Cord: Factory-connected to motor for field connection to controller and at least 10 feet long.
- E. Nameplate: Permanently attached to pump and indicating capacity and characteristics.

2.2 MOTORS

- A. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 210513 "Common Motor Requirements for Fire Suppression Equipment."
 - 1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated; if not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION

- A. NFPA Standard: Comply with NFPA 20 for installation of pressure-maintenance pumps.
- B. Equipment Mounting:
 - 1. Install multistage and regenerative-turbine, pressure-maintenance pumps according to HI 1.4.
 - 2. Install base-mounted pumps on cast-in-place concrete equipment base(s). Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Div 03.

- a. In seismic rated areas, the pressure-maintenance pump shall be protected from damage from earthquakes in accordance with NFPA 13 and NFPA 20.
 - b. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
 - c. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 - d. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
 - e. Attach pumps to equipment base using anchor bolts.
 - f. Shim pumps as needed to make them level.
3. Install isolation valves in both inlet and outlet pipes near the pump. Comply with requirements for valves specified in Section 211313 "Wet-Pipe Sprinkler Systems."

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
 1. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
 3. Pressure-maintenance pumps will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Lubricate pumps as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Set field-adjustable pressure-switch ranges as indicated.

END OF SECTION 21 3413

SECTION 22 0513 - COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR PLUMBING EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes general requirements for single-phase and polyphase, general-purpose, horizontal, small and medium, squirrel-cage induction motors for use on ac power systems up to 600 V and installed at equipment manufacturer's factory or shipped separately by equipment manufacturer for field installation.

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:
 - 1. Motor controllers.
 - 2. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
 - 3. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
 - 4. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL MOTOR REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Comply with IEEE 841 for severe-duty motors.

2.2 MOTOR CHARACTERISTICS

- A. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 40 deg C and at altitude of 3300 feet above sea level.
- B. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.

2.3 POLYPHASE MOTORS

- A. Description: NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction motor.

- B. Efficiency: Energy efficient, as defined in NEMA MG 1.
- C. Service Factor: 1.15.
- D. Multispeed Motors: Variable torque.
 - 1. For motors with 2:1 speed ratio, consequent pole, single winding.
 - 2. For motors with other than 2:1 speed ratio, separate winding for each speed.
- E. Multispeed Motors: Separate winding for each speed.
- F. Rotor: Random-wound, squirrel cage.
- G. Bearings: Regreasable, shielded, antifriction ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- H. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating.
- I. Insulation: Class F.
- J. Code Letter Designation:
 - 1. Motors 15 HP and Larger: NEMA starting Code F or Code G.
 - 2. Motors Smaller than 15 HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.
- K. Enclosure Material: Cast iron for motor frame sizes 324T and larger; rolled steel for motor frame sizes smaller than 324T.

2.4 POLYPHASE MOTORS WITH ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Motors Used with Reduced-Voltage and Multispeed Controllers: Match wiring connection requirements for controller with required motor leads. Provide terminals in motor terminal box, suited to control method.
- B. Motors Used with Variable Frequency Controllers: Ratings, characteristics, and features coordinated with and approved by controller manufacturer.
 - 1. Windings: Copper magnet wire with moisture-resistant insulation varnish, designed and tested to resist transient spikes, high frequencies, and short time rise pulses produced by pulse-width modulated inverters.
 - 2. Energy- and Premium-Efficient Motors: Class B temperature rise; Class F insulation.
 - 3. Inverter-Duty Motors: Class F temperature rise; Class H insulation.
 - 4. Thermal Protection: Comply with NEMA MG 1 requirements for thermally protected motors.
- C. Severe-Duty Motors: Comply with IEEE 841, with 1.15 minimum service factor.

2.5 SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS

- A. Motors larger than 1/20 hp shall be one of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:
 - 1. Permanent-split capacitor.
 - 2. Split phase.
 - 3. Capacitor start, inductor run.
 - 4. Capacitor start, capacitor run.
- B. Multispeed Motors: Variable-torque, permanent-split-capacitor type.
- C. Bearings: Prelubricated, antifriction ball bearings or sleeve bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- D. Motors 1/20 HP and Smaller: Shaded-pole type.
- E. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation. Thermal-protection device shall automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION 22 0513

SECTION 22 0516 - EXPANSION FITTINGS AND LOOPS FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Rubber union connector packless expansion joints.
 - 2. Flexible-hose packless expansion joints.
 - 3. Metal-bellows packless expansion joints.
 - 4. Externally pressurized metal-bellows packless expansion joints.
 - 5. Rubber packless expansion joints.
 - 6. Grooved-joint expansion joints.
 - 7. Alignment guides and anchors.
 - 8. Pipe loops and swing connections.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Delegated-Design Submittal: For each anchor and alignment guide, including analysis data, signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
 - 1. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for thermal expansion of piping systems and for selecting and designing expansion joints, loops, and swing connections.
 - 2. Anchor Details: Detail fabrication of each anchor indicated. Show dimensions and methods of assembly and attachment to building structure.
 - 3. Alignment Guide Details: Detail field assembly and attachment to building structure.
 - 4. Schedule: Indicate type, manufacturer's number, size, material, pressure rating, end connections, and location for each expansion joint.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For expansion joints to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:

1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
2. ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- #### A. Compatibility: Products shall be suitable for piping service fluids, materials, working pressures, and temperatures.
- #### B. Capability: Products to absorb 200 percent of maximum axial movement between anchors.

2.2 PACKLESS EXPANSION JOINTS

A. Flexible-Hose Packless Expansion Joints:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Flex-Hose Co., Inc.
 - b. Flexicraft Industries.
 - c. Flex Pression Ltd.
2. Description: Manufactured assembly with inlet and outlet elbow fittings and two flexible-metal-hose legs joined by long-radius, 180-degree return bend or center section of flexible hose.
3. Flexible Hose: Corrugated-metal inner hoses and braided outer sheaths.
4. Expansion Joints for Copper Tubing NPS 2 and Smaller: Copper-alloy fittings with solder-joint end connections.
 - a. Bronze hoses and single-braid bronze sheaths with 450 psig at 70 deg F and 340 psig at 450 deg F ratings.
5. Expansion Joints for Copper Tubing NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Copper-alloy fittings with threaded end connections.
 - a. Stainless-steel hoses and single-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 300 psig at 70 deg F and 225 psig at 450 deg F ratings.
6. Expansion Joints for Steel Piping NPS 2 and Smaller: Carbon-steel fittings with threaded end connections.
 - a. Stainless-steel hoses and single-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 450 psig at 70 deg F and 325 psig at 600 deg F ratings.
7. Expansion Joints for Steel Piping NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 6: Carbon-steel fittings with flanged end connections.

- a. Stainless-steel hoses and single-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 200 psig at 70 deg F and 145 psig at 600 deg F ratings.
 8. Expansion Joints for Steel Piping NPS 8 to NPS 12: Carbon-steel fittings with flanged end connections.
 - a. Stainless-steel hoses and single-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 125 psig at 70 deg F and 90 psig at 600 deg F ratings.
- B. Metal-Bellows Packless Expansion Joints:
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Adesco Manufacturing LLC.
 - b. American BOA, Inc.
 - c. Badger Industries, Inc.
 2. Standards: ASTM F 1120 and EJMA's "Standards of the Expansion Joint Manufacturers Association, Inc."
 3. Type: Circular, corrugated bellows with external tie rods.
 4. Minimum Pressure Rating: 150 psig, unless otherwise indicated.
 5. Configuration: Single joint class(es), unless otherwise indicated.
 6. Expansion Joints for Copper Tubing: Single- ply phosphor-bronze bellows, copper pipe ends, and brass shrouds.
 - a. End Connections for Copper Tubing NPS 2 and Smaller: Solder joint or threaded.
 - b. End Connections for Copper Tubing NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Solder joint or threaded.
 - c. End Connections for Copper Tubing NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged.
- C. Rubber Packless Expansion Joints:
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Amber/Booth Company, Inc.; a div. of Vibration Isolation Products of Texas, Inc.
 - b. Flex-Hose Co., Inc.
 - c. Flexicraft Industries.
 2. Standards: ASTM F 1123 and FSA's "Technical Handbook: Non-Metallic Expansion Joints and Flexible Pipe Connectors."
 3. Material: Fabric-reinforced rubber complying with FSA-PSJ-703.
 4. Arch Type: Single or multiple arches with external control rods.
 5. Spherical Type: Single or multiple spheres with external control rods.
 6. Minimum Pressure Rating for NPS 1-1/2 to NPS 4: 150 psig at 220 deg F.
 7. Minimum Pressure Rating for NPS 5 and NPS 6: 140 psig at 200 deg F.
 8. Minimum Pressure Rating for NPS 8 to NPS 12: 140 psig at 180 deg F.
 9. Material for Fluids Containing Gas, Hydrocarbons, or Oil: Buna-N.
 10. Material for Water: Butyl rubber.

11. End Connections: Full-faced, integral steel flanges with steel retaining rings.

2.3 GROOVED-JOINT EXPANSION JOINTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 1. Anvil International, Inc.
 2. Shurjoint Piping Products.
 3. Victaulic Company.
- B. Description: Factory-assembled expansion joint made of several grooved-end pipe nipples, couplings, and grooved joints.
- C. Standard: AWWA C606, for grooved joints.
- D. Nipples: Galvanized, ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, Type E or S, steel pipe with grooved ends.
- E. Couplings: Five, flexible type for steel-pipe dimensions. Include ferrous housing sections, Buna-N gasket suitable for diluted acid, alkaline fluids, and cold and hot water, and bolts and nuts.

2.4 ALIGNMENT GUIDES AND ANCHORS

- A. Alignment Guides:
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Adsco Manufacturing LLC.
 - b. Advanced Thermal Systems, Inc.
 - c. Flex-Hose Co., Inc.
 2. Description: Steel, factory-fabricated alignment guide, with bolted two-section outer cylinder and base for attaching to structure; with two-section guiding slider for bolting to pipe.
- B. Anchor Materials:
 1. Steel Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
 2. Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.10 or ASTM A 183, steel hex head.
 3. Washers: ASTM F 844, steel, plain, flat washers.
 4. Mechanical Fasteners: Insert-wedge-type stud with expansion plug anchor for use in hardened portland cement concrete, with tension and shear capacities appropriate for application.
 - a. Stud: Threaded, zinc-coated carbon steel.
 - b. Expansion Plug: Zinc-coated steel.
 - c. Washer and Nut: Zinc-coated steel.

5. Chemical Fasteners: Insert-type stud, bonding-system anchor for use with hardened portland cement concrete, with tension and shear capacities appropriate for application.
 - a. Bonding Material: ASTM C 881/C 881M, Type IV, Grade 3, two-component epoxy resin suitable for surface temperature of hardened concrete where fastener is to be installed.
 - b. Stud: ASTM A 307, zinc-coated carbon steel with continuous thread on stud, unless otherwise indicated.
 - c. Washer and Nut: Zinc-coated steel.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXPANSION JOINT INSTALLATION

- A. Install expansion joints of sizes matching sizes of piping in which they are installed.
- B. Install metal-bellows expansion joints according to EJMA's "Standards of the Expansion Joint Manufacturers Association, Inc."
- C. Install rubber packless expansion joints according to FSA-PSJ-703.
- D. Install grooved-joint expansion joints to grooved-end steel piping.

3.2 PIPE LOOP AND SWING CONNECTION INSTALLATION

- A. Install pipe loops cold-sprung in tension or compression as required to partly absorb tension or compression produced during anticipated change in temperature.
- B. Connect risers and branch connections to mains with at least five pipe fittings, including tee in main.
- C. Connect risers and branch connections to terminal units with at least four pipe fittings, including tee in riser.
- D. Connect mains and branch connections to terminal units with at least four pipe fittings, including tee in main.

3.3 ALIGNMENT-GUIDE AND ANCHOR INSTALLATION

- A. Install alignment guides to guide expansion and to avoid end-loading and torsional stress.
- B. Install one guide(s) on each side of pipe expansion fittings and loops. Install guides nearest to expansion joint not more than four pipe diameters from expansion joint.
- C. Attach guides to pipe, and secure guides to building structure.
- D. Install anchors at locations to prevent stresses from exceeding those permitted by ASME B31.9 and to prevent transfer of loading and stresses to connected equipment.

E. Anchor Attachments:

1. Anchor Attachment to Steel Pipe: Attach by welding. Comply with ASME B31.9 and ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
2. Anchor Attachment to Copper Tubing: Attach with pipe hangers. Use MSS SP-69, Type 24; U bolts bolted to anchor.

F. Fabricate and install steel anchors by welding steel shapes, plates, and bars. Comply with ASME B31.9 and AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

1. Anchor Attachment to Steel Structural Members: Attach by welding.
2. Anchor Attachment to Concrete Structural Members: Attach by fasteners. Follow fastener manufacturer's written instructions.

G. Use grout to form flat bearing surfaces for guides and anchors attached to concrete.

END OF SECTION 22 0516

SECTION 22 0517 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Sleeves.
 - 2. Stack-sleeve fittings.
 - 3. Sleeve-seal systems.
 - 4. Sleeve-seal fittings.
 - 5. Grout.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SLEEVES

- A. Cast-Iron Wall Pipes: Cast or fabricated of cast or ductile iron and equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Galvanized-Steel Wall Pipes: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, with plain ends and welded steel collar; zinc coated.
- C. Galvanized-Steel-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, with plain ends.
- D. PVC-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.
- E. Galvanized-Steel-Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
- F. Molded-PE or -PP Sleeves: Removable, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- G. Molded-PVC Sleeves: With nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

2.2 STACK-SLEEVE FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
 - 2. Zurn Specification Drainage Operation; Zurn Plumbing Products Group.
- B. Description: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring, bolts, and nuts for membrane flashing.
 - 1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with setscrews.

2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
 - 2. CALPICO, Inc.
 - 3. Metraflex Company (The).
- B. Description: Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space between piping and sleeve.
 - 1. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
 - 2. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel.
 - 3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating, of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

2.4 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Presealed Systems.
- B. Description: Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly made for imbedding in concrete slab or wall. Unit has plastic or rubber waterstop collar with center opening to match piping OD.

2.5 GROUT

- A. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.

- B. Characteristics: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
- B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide 1-inch annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.
 - 1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.
 - 1. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes in slabs formed by molded-PE or -PP sleeves.
 - 2. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level.
 - 3. Using grout, seal the space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.
- D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.
 - 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 - 2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
 - 3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements for sealants specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
- E. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.2 STACK-SLEEVE-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install stack-sleeve fittings in new slabs as slabs are constructed.
 - 1. Install fittings that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.

2. Secure flashing between clamping flanges for pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Comply with requirements for flashing specified in Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
3. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches above finished floor level.
4. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
5. Using grout, seal the space around outside of stack-sleeve fittings.

- B. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service piping entries into building.
- B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration, assemble sleeve-seal system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.

3.4 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal fittings in new walls and slabs as they are constructed.
- B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.
- C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.
- D. Using grout, seal the space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

3.5 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL SCHEDULE

- A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:
1. Exterior Concrete Walls above Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Cast-iron wall sleeves.
 - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Cast-iron wall sleeves.
 2. Exterior Concrete Walls below Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
 - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.

- 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
3. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
 - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
4. Concrete Slabs above Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves.
 - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves.
5. Interior Partitions:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves.
 - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Galvanized-steel-sheet sleeves.

END OF SECTION 22 0517

SECTION 22 0518 - ESCUTCHEONS FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Escutcheons.
 - 2. Floor plates.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and setscrew fastener.
- B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- C. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- D. Split-Casting Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and with concealed hinge and setscrew.
- E. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With chrome-plated finish, concealed hinge, and spring-clip fasteners.

2.2 FLOOR PLATES

- A. One-Piece Floor Plates: Cast-iron flange with holes for fasteners.
- B. Split-Casting Floor Plates: Cast brass with concealed hinge.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.

- B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
 - 1. Escutcheons for New Piping:
 - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
 - b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - c. Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge.
 - d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - e. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge.
 - f. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - g. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge.
 - h. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - i. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge.
 - j. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - k. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge.
- C. Install floor plates for piping penetrations of equipment-room floors.
- D. Install floor plates with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
 - 1. New Piping: One-piece, floor-plate type.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates using new materials.

END OF SECTION 22 0518

SECTION 22 0519 - METERS AND GAGES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Bimetallic-actuated thermometers.
2. Filled-system thermometers.
3. Liquid-in-glass thermometers.
4. Dial-type pressure gages.
5. Gage attachments.
6. Test plugs.
7. Test-plug kits.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 22 1113 "Facility Water Distribution Piping" for domestic water meters and combined domestic and fire-protection water-service meters outside the building.
2. Section 22 1119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for water meters.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For each type of meter and gage.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For meters and gages to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 BIMETALLIC-ACTUATED THERMOMETERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Ashcroft Inc.
2. Ernst Flow Industries.

Marsh Bellofram.

- B. Standard: ASME B40.200.
- C. Case: Liquid-filled and sealed type(s); stainless steel with 3-inch nominal diameter.
- D. Dial: Non-reflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings and scales in deg F.
- E. Connector Type(s): Union joint, adjustable angle, with unified-inch screw threads.
- F. Connector Size: 1/2 inch, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
- G. Stem: 0.25 or 0.375 inch in diameter; stainless steel.
- H. Window: Plain glass.
- I. Ring: Stainless steel.
- J. Element: Bimetal coil.
- K. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
- L. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range.

2.2 FILLED-SYSTEM THERMOMETERS

A. Direct-Mounted, Metal-Case, Vapor-Actuated Thermometers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Ashcroft Inc.
 - b. Marsh Bellofram.
 - c. Miljoco Corporation.
2. Standard: ASME B40.200.
3. Case: Sealed type, cast aluminum or drawn steel; 4-1/2-inch nominal diameter.
4. Element: Bourdon tube or other type of pressure element.
5. Movement: Mechanical, dampening type, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
6. Dial: Non--reflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F.
7. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
8. Window: Glass.
9. Ring: Metal.

10. Connector Type(s): Union joint, adjustable, 180 degrees in vertical plane, 360 degrees in horizontal plane, with locking device; with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
11. Thermal System: Liquid-filled bulb in copper-plated steel, aluminum, or brass stem and of length to suit installation.
 - a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
12. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range.

B. Remote-Mounted, Metal-Case, Vapor-Actuated Thermometers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. AMETEK, Inc.; U.S. Gauge.
 - b. Ashcroft Inc.
 - c. Marsh Bellofram.
2. Standard: ASME B40.200.
3. Case: Sealed type, cast aluminum or drawn steel; 4-1/2-inch nominal diameter with back flange and holes for panel mounting.
4. Element: Bourdon tube or other type of pressure element.
5. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
6. Dial: Non-reflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F.
7. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
8. Window: Glass.
9. Ring: Metal.
10. Connector Type(s): Union joint, back; with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
11. Thermal System: Liquid-filled bulb in copper-plated steel, aluminum, or brass stem and of length to suit installation.
 - a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
12. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range.

2.3 LIQUID-IN-GLASS THERMOMETERS

A. Metal-Case, Compact-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Terice, H. O. Co.
2. Standard: ASME B40.200.
3. Case: Cast aluminum; 6-inch nominal size.
4. Case Form: Back angle unless otherwise indicated.
5. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue organic liquid.
6. Tube Background: Non-reflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F.
7. Window: Glass or plastic.

8. Stem: Aluminum or brass and of length to suit installation.
 - a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
9. Connector: 3/4 inch, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
10. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.

B. Metal-Case, Industrial-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Flo Fab Inc.
 - b. Miljoco Corporation.
 - c. Palmer Wahl Instrumentation Group.
2. Standard: ASME B40.200.
3. Case: Cast aluminum; 7-inch nominal size unless otherwise indicated.
4. Case Form: Adjustable angle unless otherwise indicated.
5. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue organic liquid.
6. Tube Background: Non-reflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F.
7. Window: Glass.
8. Stem: Aluminum and of length to suit installation.
 - a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
9. Connector: 1-1/4 inches, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
10. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.

2.4 PRESSURE GAGES

A. Direct-Mounted, Metal-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. AMETEK, Inc.; U.S. Gauge.
 - b. Ashcroft Inc.
 - c. Ernst Flow Industries.
2. Standard: ASME B40.100.
3. Case: Liquid-filled type(s); cast aluminum or drawn steel; 4-1/2-inch nominal diameter.
4. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
5. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
6. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
7. Dial: Non-reflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi.

8. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
9. Window: Glass.
10. Ring: Metal.
11. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of Grade B, plus or minus 2 percent of middle half of scale range.

B. Remote-Mounted, Metal-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. AMETEK, Inc.; U.S. Gauge.
 - b. Ashcroft Inc.
 - c. Ernst Flow Industries.
2. Standard: ASME B40.100.
3. Case: Liquid-filled type; cast aluminum or drawn steel; 4-1/2-inch nominal diameter with back flange and holes for panel mounting.
4. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
5. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
6. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
7. Dial: Non-reflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi.
8. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
9. Window: Glass.
10. Ring: Metal.
11. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of scale range.

2.5 GAGE ATTACHMENTS

- A. Snubbers: ASME B40.100, brass; with NPS 1/4, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and piston-type surge-dampening device. Include extension for use on insulated piping.
- B. Valves: Brass ball, with NPS 1/4, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.

2.6 TEST PLUGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 1. Flow Design, Inc.
 2. Miljoco Corporation.
 3. National Meter, Inc.
- B. Description: Test-station fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.
- C. Body: Brass or stainless steel with core inserts and gasketed and threaded cap. Include extended stem on units to be installed in insulated piping.

- D. Thread Size: NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
- E. Minimum Pressure and Temperature Rating: 500 psig at 200 deg F.
- F. Core Inserts: Chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic and EPDM self-sealing rubber.

2.7 TEST-PLUG KITS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Flow Design, Inc.
 - 2. Miljoco Corporation.
 - 3. National Meter, Inc.
- B. Furnish one test-plug kit(s) containing one thermometer(s), one pressure gage and adapter, and carrying case. Thermometer sensing elements, pressure gage, and adapter probes shall be of diameter to fit test plugs and of length to project into piping.
- C. Low-Range Thermometer: Small, bimetallic insertion type with 1- to 2-inch-diameter dial and tapered-end sensing element. Dial range shall be at least 25 to 125 deg F.
- D. High-Range Thermometer: Small, bimetallic insertion type with 1- to 2-inch-diameter dial and tapered-end sensing element. Dial range shall be at least 0 to 220 deg F.
- E. Pressure Gage: Small, Bourdon-tube insertion type with 2- to 3-inch-diameter dial and probe. Dial range shall be at least 0 to 200 psig.
- F. Carrying Case: Metal or plastic, with formed instrument padding.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install direct-mounted thermometers in thermowells and adjust vertical and tilted positions.
- B. Install remote-mounted thermometer bulbs in thermowells and install cases on panels; connect cases with tubing and support tubing to prevent kinks. Use minimum tubing length.
- C. Install direct-mounted pressure gages in piping tees with pressure gage located on pipe at the most readable position.
- D. Install remote-mounted pressure gages on panel.
- E. Install valve and snubber in piping for each pressure gage for fluids.
- F. Install test plugs in piping tees.

G. Install thermometers in the following locations:

1. Inlet and outlet of each water heater.
2. Inlets and outlets of each domestic water heat exchanger.
3. Inlet and outlet of each domestic hot-water storage tank.
4. Inlet and outlet of each remote domestic water chiller.

H. Install pressure gages in the following locations:

1. Building water service entrance into building.
2. Inlet and outlet of each pressure-reducing valve.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Install meters and gages adjacent to machines and equipment to allow service and maintenance of meters, gages, machines, and equipment.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust faces of meters and gages to proper angle for best visibility.

3.4 THERMOMETER SCHEDULE

- A. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each domestic water heater shall be one of the following:

1. Liquid-filled, bimetallic-actuated type.
2. Direct-mounted, metal-case, vapor-actuated type.
3. Industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.
4. Direct-mounted, light-activated type.
5. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic self-sealing rubber inserts.

- B. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each domestic hot-water storage tank shall be one of the following:

1. Liquid-filled, bimetallic-actuated type.
2. Direct-mounted, metal-case, vapor-actuated type.
3. Industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.
4. Direct-mounted, light-activated type.
5. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic self-sealing rubber inserts.

- C. Thermometer stems shall be of length to match thermowell insertion length.

3.5 THERMOMETER SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

- A. Scale Range for Domestic Cold-Water Piping: 0 to 100 deg F.
- B. Scale Range for Domestic Cold-Water Piping: 30 to 240 deg F.
- C. Scale Range for Domestic Hot-Water Piping: 0 to 250 deg F.

3.6 PRESSURE-GAGE SCHEDULE

- A. Pressure gages at discharge of each water service into building shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Liquid-filled Open-front, pressure-relief, direct-mounted, metal case.
 - 2. Sealed, direct-mounted, plastic case.
 - 3. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic self-sealing rubber inserts.
- B. Pressure gages at inlet and outlet of each water pressure-reducing valve shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Liquid-filled Open-front, pressure-relief, direct-mounted, metal case.
 - 2. Sealed, direct-mounted, plastic case.
 - 3. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic self-sealing rubber inserts.
- C. Pressure gages at suction and discharge of each domestic water pump shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Liquid-filled Open-front, pressure-relief, direct-mounted, metal case.
 - 2. Sealed, direct-mounted, plastic case.
 - 3. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic self-sealing rubber inserts.

3.7 PRESSURE-GAGE SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

- A. Scale Range for Water Service Piping: 0 to 160 psi.

END OF SECTION 22 0519

SECTION 22 0523 - GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Bronze angle valves.
2. Brass ball valves.
3. Bronze ball valves.
4. Iron ball valves.
5. Iron, single-flange butterfly valves.
6. Iron, grooved-end butterfly valves.
7. Bronze lift check valves.
8. Bronze swing check valves.
9. Iron swing check valves.
10. Iron swing check valves with closure control.
11. Iron, grooved-end swing check valves.
12. Iron, center-guided check valves.
13. Iron, plate-type check valves.
14. Bronze gate valves.
15. Iron gate valves.
16. Bronze globe valves.
17. Iron globe valves.

- B. Related Sections:

1. Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules.
2. Section 221113 "Facility Water Distribution Piping" for valves applicable only to this piping.
3. Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping" for valves applicable only to this piping.
4. Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties" for valves applicable only to this piping.
5. Section 221423 "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties" for valves applicable only to this piping.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CWP: Cold working pressure.
- B. EPDM: Ethylene propylene copolymer rubber.

- C. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene, Buna-N, or nitrile rubber.
- D. NRS: Nonrising stem.
- E. OS&Y: Outside screw and yoke.
- F. RS: Rising stem.
- G. SWP: Steam working pressure.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve indicated.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. ASME Compliance:
 - 1. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
 - 2. ASME B31.1 for power piping valves.
 - 3. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.
- C. NSF Compliance: NSF 61 for valve materials for potable-water service.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:
 - 1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
 - 2. Protect threads, flange faces, grooves, and weld ends.
 - 3. Set angle, gate, and globe valves closed to prevent rattling.
 - 4. Set ball and plug valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.
 - 5. Set butterfly valves closed or slightly open.
 - 6. Block check valves in either closed or open position.
- B. Use the following precautions during storage:
 - 1. Maintain valve end protection.
 - 2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher than ambient dew point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.
- C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use handwheels or stems as lifting or rigging points.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

- A. Refer to valve schedule articles for applications of valves.
- B. Valve Pressure and Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.
- C. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Valve Actuator Types:
 - 1. Gear Actuator: For quarter-turn valves NPS 8 and larger.
 - 2. Handwheel: For valves other than quarter-turn types.
 - 3. Handlever: For quarter-turn valves NPS 6 and smaller.
 - 4. Wrench: For plug valves with square heads. Furnish Owner with 1 wrench for every 5 plug valves, for each size square plug-valve head.
- E. Valves in Insulated Piping: With 2-inch stem extensions and the following features:
 - 1. Gate Valves: With rising stem.
 - 2. Ball Valves: With extended operating handle of non-thermal-conductive material, and protective sleeve that allows operation of valve without breaking the vapor seal or disturbing insulation.
 - 3. Butterfly Valves: With extended neck.
- F. Valve-End Connections:
 - 1. Flanged: With flanges according to ASME B16.1 for iron valves.
 - 2. Grooved: With grooves according to AWWA C606.
 - 3. Solder Joint: With sockets according to ASME B16.18.
 - 4. Threaded: With threads according to ASME B1.20.1.
- G. Valve Bypass and Drain Connections: MSS SP-45.

2.2 BRONZE ANGLE VALVES

- A. Class 125, Bronze Angle Valves with Bronze Disc:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Hammond Valve.
 - b. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - 2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.

- d. Ends: Threaded.
- e. Stem and Disc: Bronze.
- f. Packing: Asbestos free.
- g. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

B. Class 125, Bronze Angle Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. American Valve, Inc.
 - b. NIBCO INC.
- 2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
 - d. Ends: Threaded.
 - e. Stem: Bronze.
 - f. Disc: PTFE or TFE.
 - g. Packing: Asbestos free.
 - h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

2.3 BRASS BALL VALVES

A. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Brass Trim:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
 - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
 - c. DynaQuip Controls.
- 2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
 - b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
 - c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
 - d. Body Design: Two piece.
 - e. Body Material: Forged brass.
 - f. Ends: Threaded.
 - g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
 - h. Stem: Brass.
 - i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
 - j. Port: Full.

B. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Stainless-Steel Trim:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
 - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
 - c. Flow-Tek, Inc.; a subsidiary of Bray International, Inc.
2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
 - b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
 - c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
 - d. Body Design: Two piece.
 - e. Body Material: Forged brass.
 - f. Ends: Threaded.
 - g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
 - h. Stem: Stainless steel.
 - i. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
 - j. Port: Full.

2.4 BRONZE BALL VALVES

A. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. American Valve, Inc.
 - b. NIBCO INC.
 - c. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
 - b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
 - c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
 - d. Body Design: Two piece.
 - e. Body Material: Bronze.
 - f. Ends: Threaded.
 - g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
 - h. Stem: Bronze.
 - i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
 - j. Port: Full.

2.5 IRON BALL VALVES

A. Class 125, Iron Ball Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. American Valve, Inc.

- b. Sure Flow Equipment Inc.
 - c. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Description:
- a. Standard: MSS SP-72.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Split body.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
 - e. Ends: Flanged.
 - f. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
 - g. Stem: Stainless steel.
 - h. Ball: Stainless steel.
 - i. Port: Full.

2.6 IRON, SINGLE-FLANGE BUTTERFLY VALVES

A. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with EPDM Seat and Aluminum-Bronze Disc:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- a. ABZ Valve and Controls; a division of ABZ Manufacturing, Inc.
 - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
 - c. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Description:
- a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
 - e. Seat: EPDM.
 - f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
 - g. Disc: Aluminum bronze.
3. Description:
- a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
 - e. Seat: EPDM.
 - f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
 - g. Disc: Aluminum bronze.

2.7 IRON, GROOVED-END BUTTERFLY VALVES

A. 175 CWP, Iron, Grooved-End Butterfly Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Kennedy Valve; a division of McWane, Inc.
 - b. Tyco Fire Products LP; Grinnell Mechanical Products.
 - c. Victaulic Company.
2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
 - b. CWP Rating: 175 psig.
 - c. Body Material: Coated, ductile iron.
 - d. Stem: Two-piece stainless steel.
 - e. Disc: Coated, ductile iron.
 - f. Seal: EPDM.

2.8 BRONZE LIFT CHECK VALVES

A. Class 125, Lift Check Valves with Bronze Disc:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
 - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
 - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Vertical flow.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM B 61 or ASTM B 62, bronze.
 - e. Ends: Threaded.
 - f. Disc: Bronze.

B. Class 125, Lift Check Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Flo Fab Inc.
 - b. Hammond Valve.
 - c. Kitz Corporation.
2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Vertical flow.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM B 61 or ASTM B 62, bronze.
 - e. Ends: Threaded.
 - f. Disc: NBR, PTFE, or TFE.

2.9 BRONZE SWING CHECK VALVES

A. Class 125, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Bronze Disc:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. American Valve, Inc.
 - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
 - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 3.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
 - e. Ends: Threaded.
 - f. Disc: Bronze.

B. Class 125, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
 - b. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - c. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 4.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
 - e. Ends: Threaded.
 - f. Disc: PTFE or TFE.

2.10 IRON SWING CHECK VALVES

A. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Metal Seats:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
 - b. NIBCO INC.
 - c. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.

- c. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
- d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
- e. Ends: Flanged.
- f. Trim: Bronze.
- g. Gasket: Asbestos free.

B. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic-to-Metal Seats:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
 - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
- 2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
 - e. Ends: Flanged.
 - f. Trim: Composition.
 - g. Seat Ring: Bronze.
 - h. Disc Holder: Bronze.
 - i. Disc: PTFE or TFE.
 - j. Gasket: Asbestos free.

2.11 IRON SWING CHECK VALVES WITH CLOSURE CONTROL

A. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Lever- and Spring-Closure Control:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. NIBCO INC.
- 2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
 - e. Ends: Flanged.
 - f. Trim: Bronze.
 - g. Gasket: Asbestos free.
 - h. Closure Control: Factory-installed, exterior lever and spring.

2.12 IRON, GROOVED-END SWING CHECK VALVES

A. 300 CWP, Iron, Grooved-End Swing Check Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Anvil International, Inc.
 - b. Shurjoint Piping Products.
 - c. Tyco Fire Products LP; Grinnell Mechanical Products.
 - d. Victaulic Company.
2. Description:
 - a. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
 - b. Body Material: ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
 - c. Seal: EPDM.
 - d. Disc: Spring-operated, ductile iron or stainless steel.

2.13 IRON, CENTER-GUIDED CHECK VALVES

A. Class 125, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Anvil International, Inc.
 - b. APCO Willamette Valve and Primer Corporation.
 - c. Crispin Valve.
 - d. DFT Inc.
 - e. Flo Fab Inc.
 - f. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
 - d. Style: Compact wafer.
 - e. Seat: Bronze.

2.14 IRON, PLATE-TYPE CHECK VALVES

A. Class 125, Iron, Dual-Plate Check Valves with Metal Seat:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. APCO Willamette Valve and Primer Corporation.
 - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
 - c. Flomatic Corporation.
 - d. Mueller Steam Specialty; a division of SPX Corporation.
2. Description:
 - a. Standard: API 594.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.

- c. Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plates.
- d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
- e. Seat: Bronze.

2.15 BRONZE GATE VALVES

A. Class 125, NRS Bronze Gate Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. American Valve, Inc.
 - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
 - c. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
 - d. Ends: Threaded or solder joint.
 - e. Stem: Bronze.
 - f. Disc: Solid wedge; bronze.
 - g. Packing: Asbestos free.
 - h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

B. Class 125, RS Bronze Gate Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. American Valve, Inc.
 - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
 - c. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
 - d. Ends: Threaded or solder joint.
 - e. Stem: Bronze.
 - f. Disc: Solid wedge; bronze.
 - g. Packing: Asbestos free.
 - h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

2.16 IRON GATE VALVES

A. Class 125, NRS, Iron Gate Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
 - b. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - c. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-70, Type I.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
 - d. Ends: Flanged.
 - e. Trim: Bronze.
 - f. Disc: Solid wedge.
 - g. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

B. Class 125, OS&Y, Iron Gate Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
 - b. NIBCO INC.
 - c. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-70, Type I.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
 - d. Ends: Flanged.
 - e. Trim: Bronze.
 - f. Disc: Solid wedge.
 - g. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

2.17 BRONZE GLOBE VALVES

A. Class 125, Bronze Globe Valves with Bronze Disc:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
 - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
 - c. Hammond Valve.
 - d. Kitz Corporation.
 - e. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - f. NIBCO INC.
 - g. Powell Valves.
 - h. Red-White Valve Corporation.
 - i. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

- j. Zy-Tech Global Industries, Inc.
- 2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
 - d. Ends: Threaded.
 - e. Stem and Disc: Bronze.
 - f. Packing: Asbestos free.
 - g. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

2.18 IRON GLOBE VALVES

A. Class 125, Iron Globe Valves:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
 - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
 - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
 - d. Hammond Valve.
 - e. Kitz Corporation.
 - f. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - g. NIBCO INC.
 - h. Powell Valves.
 - i. Red-White Valve Corporation.
 - j. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 - k. Zy-Tech Global Industries, Inc.
- 2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-85, Type I.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
 - d. Ends: Flanged.
 - e. Trim: Bronze.
 - f. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.
- B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.
- C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.

- D. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.
- E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

3.2 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
- B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.
- C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.
- D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
- E. Install check valves for proper direction of flow and as follows:
 - 1. Swing Check Valves: In horizontal position with hinge pin level.
 - 2. Center-Guided and Plate-Type Check Valves: In horizontal or vertical position, between flanges.
 - 3. Lift Check Valves: With stem upright and plumb.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

3.4 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. If valve applications are not indicated, use the following:
 - 1. Shutoff Service: Ball, butterfly, or gate valves.
 - 2. Butterfly Valve Dead-End Service: Single-flange (lug) type.
 - 3. Pump-Discharge Check Valves:
 - a. NPS 2 and Smaller: Bronze swing check valves with bronze or nonmetallic disc.
 - b. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger for Domestic Water: Iron swing check valves with lever and weight or with spring or iron, center-guided, metal or resilient-seat check valves.
 - c. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger for Sanitary Waste and Storm Drainage: Iron swing check valves with lever and weight or spring.
- B. If valves with specified SWP classes or CWP ratings are not available, the same types of valves with higher SWP classes or CWP ratings may be substituted.
- C. Select valves, except wafer types, with the following end connections:

1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends except where solder-joint valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
2. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
3. For Copper Tubing, NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged ends.
4. For Steel Piping, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends.
5. For Steel Piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
6. For Steel Piping, NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged ends.
7. For Grooved-End Copper Tubing and Steel Piping: Valve ends may be grooved.

3.5 DOMESTIC, HOT- AND COLD-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller:

1. Bronze and Brass Valves: May be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.
2. Bronze Angle Valves: Class 125, bronze disc.
3. Ball Valves: Two piece, full port, brass or bronze with brass trim.
4. Bronze Swing Check Valves: Class 125, bronze or nonmetallic disc.
5. Bronze Gate Valves: Class 125, NRS.

B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:

1. Iron Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: May be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
2. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves: 200 CWP, EPDM seat, aluminum-bronze disc.
3. Iron, Grooved-End Butterfly Valves: 175 CWP.
4. Iron Swing Check Valves: Class 125, nonmetallic-to-metal seats.
5. Iron Swing Check Valves with Closure Control: Class 125, lever and spring.
6. Iron, Grooved-End Swing Check Valves: 300 CWP.
7. Iron, Center-Guided Check Valves: Class 125, metal seat.
8. Iron Gate Valves: Class 125, OS&Y.

3.6 SANITARY-WASTE AND STORM-DRAINAGE VALVE SCHEDULE

A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller:

1. Bronze and Brass Valves: May be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.
2. Bronze Angle Valves: Class 125, bronze disc.
3. Ball Valves: Two piece, full port, brass or bronze with brass trim.
4. Bronze Swing Check Valves: Class 125, nonmetallic disc.
5. Bronze Gate Valves: Class 125, NRS.

B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:

1. Iron Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: May be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.

2. Iron Ball Valves: Class 150.
3. Iron Swing Check Valves: Class 125, nonmetallic-to-metal seats.
4. Iron Swing Check Valves with Closure Control: Class 125, lever and spring.
5. Iron, Grooved-End Swing Check Valves: 300 CWP.
6. Iron Gate Valves: Class 125, OS&Y.

END OF SECTION 22 0523

SECTION 22 0529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
3. Metal framing systems.
4. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
5. Fastener systems.
6. Pipe stands.
7. Pipe positioning systems.
8. Equipment supports.

- B. Related Sections:

1. Section 220516 "Expansion Fittings and Loops for Plumbing Piping" for pipe guides and anchors.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. MSS: Manufacturers Standardization Society of The Valve and Fittings Industry Inc.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Design trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- B. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports for plumbing piping and equipment shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7.
 1. Design supports for multiple pipes, including pipe stands, capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.
 2. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.
 3. Design seismic-restraint hangers and supports for piping and equipment and obtain approval from authorities having jurisdiction.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer. Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following; include Product Data for components:
 - 1. Trapeze pipe hangers.
 - 2. Metal framing systems.
 - 3. Pipe stands.
 - 4. Equipment supports.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For trapeze hangers indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
 - 1. Detail fabrication and assembly of trapeze hangers.
 - 2. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for designing trapeze hangers.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Structural Steel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:
 - 1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
 - 2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized, hot-dip galvanized, or electro-galvanized.
 - 3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coated or epoxy powder coated.
 - 4. Padded Hangers: Hanger with pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
 - 5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
- B. Stainless-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:
 - 1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.

2. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
3. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of stainless steel.

C. Copper Pipe and Tube Hangers:

1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, copper-coated-steel, factory-fabricated components.

2.2 Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of copper-coated steel.

2.3 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

- A. Description: MSS SP-69, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural carbon-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

2.4 METAL FRAMING SYSTEMS

A. MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Allied Tube & Conduit.
 - b. Cooper B-Line, Inc.
 - c. Flex-Strut Inc.
2. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly, made of steel channels, accessories, fittings, and other components for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
3. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4, factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
4. Channels: Continuous slotted carbon-steel channel with intumed lips.
5. Channel Width: Selected for applicable load criteria.
6. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
7. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
8. Metallic Coating: Electroplated zinc or Hot-dip galvanized.
9. Paint Coating: Vinyl.
10. Plastic Coating: PVC.

B. Non-MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Anvil International; a subsidiary of Mueller Water Products Inc.
 - b. Empire Industries, Inc.
 - c. ERICO International Corporation.

2. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly, made of steel channels, accessories, fittings, and other components for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
3. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4, factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
4. Channels: Continuous slotted carbon-steel channel within turned lips.
5. Channel Width: Select for applicable load criteria.
6. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
7. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
8. Coating: Zinc

2.5 THERMAL-HANGER SHIELD INSERTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 1. Carpenter & Paterson, Inc.
 2. Clement Support Services.
 3. ERICO International Corporation
- B. Insulation-Insert Material for Cold Piping: ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psig or ASTM C 591, Type VI, Grade 1 polyisocyanurate with 125-psig minimum compressive strength and vapor barrier.
- C. Insulation-Insert Material for Hot Piping: Water-repellent treated, ASTM C 533, Type I calcium silicate with 100-psig minimum compressive strength.
- D. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.
- E. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.
- F. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

2.6 FASTENER SYSTEMS

- A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
- B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type anchors, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

2.7 PIPE STANDS

- A. General Requirements for Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated assemblies made of manufactured corrosion-resistant components to support roof-mounted piping.
- B. Compact Pipe Stand: One-piece plastic unit with integral-rod roller, pipe clamps, or V-shaped cradle to support pipe, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
- C. Low-Type, Single-Pipe Stand: One-piece stainless-steel base unit with plastic roller, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
- D. High-Type, Single-Pipe Stand:
 - 1. Description: Assembly of base, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe support, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
 - 2. Base: Stainless steel.
 - 3. Vertical Members: Two or more cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel, continuous-thread rods.
 - 4. Horizontal Member: Cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel rod with plastic or stainless-steel, roller-type pipe support.
- E. High-Type, Multiple-Pipe Stand:
 - 1. Description: Assembly of bases, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe supports, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
 - 2. Bases: One or more; plastic.
 - 3. Vertical Members: Two or more protective-coated-steel channels.
 - 4. Horizontal Member: Protective-coated-steel channel.
 - 5. Pipe Supports: Galvanized-steel, clevis-type pipe hangers.
- F. Curb-Mounting-Type Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe supports made from structural-steel shapes, continuous-thread rods, and rollers, for mounting on permanent stationary roof curb.

2.8 PIPE POSITIONING SYSTEMS

- A. Description: IAPMO PS 42, positioning system of metal brackets, clips, and straps for positioning piping in pipe spaces; for plumbing fixtures in commercial applications.

2.9 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural carbon-steel shapes.

2.10 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.

- B. Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
 - 1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
 - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from the building structure.
- B. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.
 - 1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
 - 2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- C. Metal Framing System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping, and support together on field-assembled metal framing systems.
- D. Thermal-Hanger Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.
- E. Fastener System Installation:
 - 1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches thick in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual.
 - 2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Pipe Stand Installation:
 - 1. Pipe Stand Types except Curb-Mounted Type: Assemble components and mount on smooth roof surface. Do not penetrate roof membrane.
 - 2. Curb-Mounted-Type Pipe Stands: Assemble components or fabricate pipe stand and mount on permanent, stationary roof curb. See Section 077200 "Roof Accessories" for curbs.
- G. Pipe Positioning-System Installation: Install support devices to make rigid supply and waste piping connections to each plumbing fixture.

- H. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- I. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.
- J. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- K. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.
- L. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.
- M. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- N. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
- O. Insulated Piping:
 - 1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
 - a. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
 - b. Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
 - c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
 - 2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
 - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
 - 3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
 - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
 - 4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
 - a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2: 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.
 - b. NPS 4: 12 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
 - c. NPS 5 and NPS 6: 18 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
 - d. NPS 8 to NPS 14: 24 inches long and 0.075 inch thick.
 - e. NPS 16 to NPS 24: 24 inches long and 0.105 inch thick.

5. Pipes NPS 8 and Larger: Include wood or reinforced calcium-silicate-insulation inserts of length at least as long as protective shield.
6. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

3.2 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.
- B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make bearing surface smooth.
- C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

3.3 METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.
- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:
 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
 4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
- B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches.

3.5 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.
- B. Touchup: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal are specified in Exterior Painting.

- C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
- B. Comply with MSS SP-58 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finishes.
- D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
- E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports and attachments for general service applications.
- F. Use stainless-steel pipe hangers and attachments for hostile environment applications.
- G. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper or stainless-steel attachments for copper piping and tubing.
- H. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.
- I. Use thermal hanger-shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.
- J. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 - 1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
 - 2. Yoke-Type Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 2): For suspension of up to 1050 deg F, pipes NPS 4 to NPS 24, requiring up to 4 inches of insulation.
 - 3. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 36, requiring clamp flexibility and up to 4 inches of insulation.
 - 4. Steel Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 4): For suspension of cold and hot pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 24 if little or no insulation is required.
 - 5. Pipe Hangers (MSS Type 5): For suspension of pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 4, to allow off-center closure for hanger installation before pipe erection.
 - 6. Adjustable, Swivel Split- or Solid-Ring Hangers (MSS Type 6): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 8.
 - 7. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
 - 8. Adjustable Band Hangers (MSS Type 9): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.

9. Adjustable, Swivel-Ring Band Hangers (MSS Type 10): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
 10. Split Pipe Ring with or without Turnbuckle Hangers (MSS Type 11): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 8.
 11. Extension Hinged or Two-Bolt Split Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 12): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 3.
 12. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
 13. Clips (MSS Type 26): For support of insulated pipes not subject to expansion or contraction.
 14. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate.
 15. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate, and with U-bolt to retain pipe.
 16. Adjustable Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 38): For stanchion-type support for pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 36 if vertical adjustment is required, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
 17. Single-Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes NPS 1 to NPS 30, from two rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
 18. Adjustable Roller Hangers (MSS Type 43): For suspension of pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 24, from single rod if horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
 19. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 42 if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur but vertical adjustment is not necessary.
 20. Pipe Roll and Plate Units (MSS Type 45): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 24 if small horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur and vertical adjustment is not necessary.
 21. Adjustable Pipe Roll and Base Units (MSS Type 46): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 30 if vertical and lateral adjustment during installation might be required in addition to expansion and contraction.
- K. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24.
 2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 if longer ends are required for riser clamps.
- L. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches for heavy loads.
 2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
 3. Swivel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 15): For use with MSS Type 11, split pipe rings.

4. Malleable-Iron Sockets (MSS Type 16): For attaching hanger rods to various types of building attachments.
 5. Steel Weldless Eye Nuts (MSS Type 17): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
- M. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel or Malleable-Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
 2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joint construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.
 3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
 4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
 5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
 6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
 7. Top-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 25): For top of beams if hanger rod is required tangent to flange edge.
 8. Side-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 27): For bottom of steel I-beams.
 9. Steel-Beam Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 28): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads.
 10. Linked-Steel Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 29): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads, with link extensions.
 11. Malleable-Beam Clamps with Extension Pieces (MSS Type 30): For attaching to structural steel.
 12. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:
 - a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb.
 - b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb.
 - c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb.
 13. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
 14. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
 15. Horizontal Travelers (MSS Type 58): For supporting piping systems subject to linear horizontal movement where headroom is limited.
- N. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
 2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
 3. Thermal Hanger-Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.

- O. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Restraint-Control Devices (MSS Type 47): Where indicated to control piping movement.
 2. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4 inches.
 3. Spring-Cushion Roll Hangers (MSS Type 49): For equipping Type 41 roll hanger with springs.
 4. Spring Sway Braces (MSS Type 50): To retard sway, shock, vibration, or thermal expansion in piping systems.
 5. Variable-Spring Hangers (MSS Type 51): Preset to indicated load, and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from hanger.
 6. Variable-Spring Base Supports (MSS Type 52): Preset to indicated load, and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from base support.
 7. Variable-Spring Trapeze Hangers (MSS Type 53): Preset to indicated load, and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from trapeze support.
 8. Constant Supports: For critical piping stress and if necessary to avoid transfer of stress from one support to another support, critical terminal, or connected equipment. Include auxiliary stops for erection, hydrostatic test, and load-adjustment capability. These supports include the following types:
 - a. Horizontal (MSS Type 54): Mounted horizontally.
 - b. Vertical (MSS Type 55): Mounted vertically.
 - c. Trapeze (MSS Type 56): Two vertical-type supports and one trapeze member.
- P. Comply with MSS SP-58 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- Q. Comply with MFMA-103 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- R. Use powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.
- S. Use pipe-positioning systems in pipe spaces behind plumbing fixtures to support supply and waste piping for plumbing fixtures.

END OF SECTION 22 0529

SECTION 22 0553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Equipment labels.
 - 2. Warning signs and labels.
 - 3. Pipe labels.
 - 4. Stencils.
 - 5. Valve tags.
 - 6. Warning tags.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Samples: For color, letter style, and graphic representation required for each identification material and device.
- C. Equipment Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled with the proposed content for each label.
- D. Valve numbering scheme.
- E. Valve Schedules: For each piping system to include in maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

- A. Metal Labels for Equipment:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. Brady Corporation.
 - b. Brimar Industries, Inc.
 - c. Carlton Industries, LP.

1. Material and Thickness: Brass, 0.032-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
2. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch
3. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
4. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
5. Adhesive:
 - a. VOC content not to exceed 250 g/L.
 - b. Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

B. Plastic Labels for Equipment:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. Brady Corporation.
 - b. Brimar Industries, Inc.
 - c. Carlton Industries, LP.
2. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
3. Letter Color: Black.
4. Background Color: White.
5. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
6. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
7. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
8. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
9. Adhesive:
 - a. VOC content not to exceed 250 g/L.
 - b. Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

C. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.

D. Equipment Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number, and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules) and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

2.2 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - 1. Brady Corporation.
 - 2. Brimar Industries, Inc.
 - 3. Carlton Industries, LP.
- B. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- C. Letter Color: Black.
- D. Background Color: White.
- E. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
- F. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
- G. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
- H. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
- I. Adhesive:
 - 1. VOC content not to exceed 250 g/L.
 - 2. Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- J. Label Content: Include caution and warning information, plus emergency notification instructions.

2.3 PIPE LABELS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - 1. Actioncraft Products, Inc.; a division of Industrial Test Equipment Co., Inc.
 - 2. Brady Corporation.
 - 3. Brimar Industries, Inc.
- B. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction.

- C. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to partially cover circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.
- D. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.
- E. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings; also include pipe size and an arrow indicating flow direction.
 - 1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping-system service lettering to accommodate both directions, or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
 - 2. Lettering Size: At least 1-1/2 inches high.

2.4 STENCILS

- A. Stencils for Piping:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. Brimar Industries, Inc.
 - b. Carlton Industries, LP.
 - c. Champion America.
- B. Stencils: Prepared with letter sizes according to ASME A13.1 for piping; and minimum letter height of 3/4 inch for access panel and door labels, equipment labels, and similar operational instructions.
 - 1. Stencil Material: Aluminum.
 - 2. Stencil Paint: Exterior, gloss, alkyd enamel black unless otherwise indicated. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.
 - 3. Identification Paint: Exterior, alkyd enamel in colors according to ASME A13.1 unless otherwise indicated.

2.5 VALVE TAGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - 1. Actioncraft Products, Inc.; a division of Industrial Test Equipment Co., Inc.
 - 2. Brady Corporation.
 - 3. Brimar Industries, Inc.
- B. Valve Tags: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2-inch numbers.

1. Tag Material: Brass, 0.032-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
 2. Fasteners: Brass wire-link or beaded chain; or S-hook.
- C. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.
1. Valve-tag schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

2.6 WARNING TAGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
1. Brady Corporation.
 2. Brimar Industries, Inc.
 3. Carlton Industries, LP.
- B. Description: Preprinted or partially preprinted accident-prevention tags of plasticized card stock with matte finish suitable for writing.
1. Size: 3 by 5-1/4 inches minimum.
 2. Fasteners: Brass grommet and wire.
 3. Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption such as "DANGER," "CAUTION," or "DO NOT OPERATE."
 4. Color: Safety yellow background with black lettering.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.
- C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

3.3 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.

- B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

3.4 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Piping Color Coding: Painting of piping is specified in Interior Painting.
- B. Retain "Stenciled Pipe Label Option" Paragraph below only if stenciled labels are permitted.
- C. Stenciled Pipe Label Option: Stenciled labels may be provided instead of manufactured pipe labels, at Installer's option. Install stenciled pipe labels, complying with ASME A13.1, with painted, color-coded bands or rectangles on each piping system.
 - 1. Identification Paint: Use for contrasting background.
 - 2. Stencil Paint: Use for pipe marking.
- D. Pipe Label Locations: Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
 - 1. Near each valve and control device.
 - 2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
 - 3. Near penetrations through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
 - 4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
 - 5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
 - 6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet in areas of congested piping and equipment.
 - 7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.
- E. Directional Flow Arrows: Arrows shall be used to indicate direction of flow in pipes, including pipes where flow is allowed in both directions.
- F. Pipe Label Color Schedule:
 - 1. Domestic Water Piping
 - a. Background: Blue.
 - b. Letter Colors: Black.
 - 2. Sanitary Waste and Storm Drainage Piping:
 - a. Background Color: Green.
 - b. Letter Color: Black.

3.5 VALVE-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Install tags on valves and control devices in piping systems, except check valves, valves within factory-fabricated equipment units, shutoff valves, faucets, convenience and lawn-watering hose connections, and similar roughing-in connections of end-use fixtures and units. List tagged valves in a valve schedule.
- B. Valve-Tag Application Schedule: Tag valves according to size, shape, and color scheme and with captions similar to those indicated in the following subparagraphs:
 - 1. Valve-Tag Size and Shape:
 - a. Cold Water: 1-1/2 inches, round.
 - b. Hot Water: 1-1/2 inches, round.
 - 2. Valve-Tag Colors:
 - a. Cold Water: Natural.
 - b. Hot Water: Natural.
 - 3. Letter Colors:
 - a. Cold Water: Black.
 - b. Hot Water: Black.

3.6 WARNING-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Write required message on, and attach warning tags to, equipment and other items where required.

END OF SECTION 22 0553

SECTION 22 0719 - PLUMBING PIPING INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following plumbing piping services:
 - 1. Domestic cold-water piping.
 - 2. Domestic hot-water piping.
 - 3. Domestic recirculating hot-water piping.
 - 4. Roof drains and rainwater leaders.
 - 5. Supplies and drains for handicap-accessible lavatories and sinks.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory- and field-applied, if any).
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
 - 2. Detail attachment and covering of heat tracing inside insulation.
 - 3. Detail insulation application at pipe expansion joints for each type of insulation.
 - 4. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each type of insulation.
 - 5. Detail removable insulation at piping specialties, equipment connections, and access panels.
 - 6. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
 - 7. Detail application at linkages of control devices.
- C. Samples: For each type of insulation and jacket indicated. Identify each Sample, describing product and intended use. Sample sizes are as follows:
 - 1. Preformed Pipe Insulation Materials: 12 inches long by NPS 2.
 - 2. Jacket Materials for Pipe: 12 inches long by NPS 2.
 - 3. Sheet Jacket Materials: 12 inches square.
 - 4. Manufacturer's Color Charts: For products where color is specified, show the full range of colors available for each type of finish material.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
 - 2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.
- C. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for miscellaneous components:
 - 1. Supply and Drain Protective Shielding Guards: ICC A117.1.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application. Before preparing piping Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.
- C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

1.8 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Piping Insulation Schedule," "Outdoor, Aboveground Piping Insulation Schedule," and "Outdoor, Underground Piping Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
- E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- F. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation:
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Fibrex Insulations Inc.; Coreplus 1200.
 - b. Johns Manville; Micro-Lok.
 - c. Knauf Insulation; 1000-Degree Pipe Insulation.
 - 2. Type I, 850 Deg F Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A, with factory-applied ASJ. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

2.2 INSULATING CEMENTS

- A. Mineral-Fiber Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C 195.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Ramco Insulation, Inc.; Super-Stik.
- B. Expanded or Exfoliated Vermiculite Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C 196.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Ramco Insulation, Inc.; Thermokote V.
- C. Mineral-Fiber, Hydraulic-Setting Insulating and Finishing Cement: Comply with ASTM C 449.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Ramco Insulation, Inc.; Ramcote 1200 and Quik-Cote.

2.3 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-127.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-60/85-70.
 - 2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- A. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-82.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-20.
 - 2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

- B. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Dow Corning Corporation; 739, Dow Silicone.
 - 2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

2.4 MASTICS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.
 - 1. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-80/30-90.
 - b. Vimasco Corporation; 749.
 - 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm at 43-mil dry film thickness.
 - 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
 - 4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
 - 5. Color: White.
- C. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.
 - 1. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm at 35-mil dry film thickness.
 - 2. Service Temperature Range: 0 to 180 deg F.
 - 3. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 44 percent by volume and 62 percent by weight.
 - 4. Color: White.
- D. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for outdoor use on below-ambient services.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Encacel.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 570.

- c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 60-95/60-96.
 - 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm at 30-mil dry film thickness.
 - 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 220 deg F.
 - 4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 33 percent by volume and 46 percent by weight.
 - 5. Color: White.
- E. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above-ambient services.
- 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-10.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 550.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 46-50.
 - 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 1.8 perms at 0.0625-inch dry film thickness.
 - 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
 - 4. Solids Content: 60 percent by volume and 66 percent by weight.
 - 5. Color: White.

2.5 LAGGING ADHESIVES

- A. Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A, and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
- 1. For indoor applications, use lagging adhesives that have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - 2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-50 AHV2.
 - b. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-36.
 - 3. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over pipe insulation.
 - 4. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F.
 - 5. Color: White.

2.6 SEALANTS

A. Joint Sealants:

1. Joint Sealants for Cellular-Glass and Phenolic Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 405.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-45.
2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 100 to plus 300 deg F.
5. Color: White or gray.
6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

B. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 405.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 95-44.
2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
5. Color: Aluminum.
6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

C. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl, PVDC, and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.
2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
5. Color: White.

6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

2.7 SEALANTS

A. Joint Sealants:

1. Joint Sealants for Cellular-Glass and Phenolic Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 405.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-45.
2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 100 to plus 300 deg F.
5. Color: White or gray.
6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

B. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 405.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 95-44.
2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
5. Color: Aluminum.
6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

C. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl, PVDC, and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.

2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
5. Color: White.
6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

2.8 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
 2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
 3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.

2.9 FIELD-APPLIED FABRIC-REINFORCING MESH

- A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Approximately 2 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. in. for covering pipe and pipe fittings.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Chil-Glas Number 10.
- B. Woven Polyester Fabric: Approximately 1 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. in., in a Leno weave, for pipe.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Mast-A-Fab.
 - b. Vimasco Corporation; Elastafab 894.

2.10 FIELD-APPLIED CLOTHS

- A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Comply with MIL-C-20079H, Type I, plain weave, and presized a minimum of 8 oz./sq. yd..
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Alpha Associates, Inc.; Alpha-Maritex 84215 and 84217/9485RW, Luben 59.

2.11 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Johns Manville; Zeston.
 - b. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; FG Series.
 - c. Proto Corporation; LoSmoke.
 2. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer. VOC content not to exceed 250 g/L.
 3. Color: White.
 4. Factory-fabricated fitting covers to match jacket if available; otherwise, field fabricate.
 - a. Shapes: 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows, tees, valves, flanges, unions, reducers, end caps, soil-pipe hubs, traps, mechanical joints, and P-trap and supply covers for lavatories.
- C. Metal Jacket:
 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Metal Jacketing Systems.
 - b. ITW Insulation Systems; Aluminum and Stainless Steel Jacketing.
 2. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.
 - a. Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing.
 - b. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
 - c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 1-mil- thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
 - d. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:
 - 1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.

- 2) Preformed 2-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
- 3) Tee covers.
- 4) Flange and union covers.
- 5) End caps.
- 6) Beveled collars.
- 7) Valve covers.
- 8) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.

3. Stainless-Steel Jacket: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M.

- a. Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing.
- b. Material, finish, and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
- c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 1-mil- thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
- d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil- thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
- e. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:
 - 1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
 - 2) Preformed 2-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
 - 3) Tee covers.
 - 4) Flange and union covers.
 - 5) End caps.
 - 6) Beveled collars.
 - 7) Valve covers.
 - 8) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.

D. Underground Direct-Buried Jacket: 125-mil- thick vapor barrier and waterproofing membrane consisting of a rubberized bituminous resin reinforced with a woven-glass fiber or polyester scrim and laminated aluminum foil.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Pittsburgh Corning Corporation; Pittwrap.
 - b. Polyguard Products, Inc.; Insulrap No Torch 125.

2.12 TAPES

A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 428 AWF ASJ.
 - b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0836.
 - c. Compac Corporation; 104 and 105.
 2. Width: 3 inches.
 3. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
 4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
 5. Elongation: 2 percent.
 6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
 7. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.
- B. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 491 AWF FSK.
 - b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0827.
 - c. Compac Corporation; 110 and 111.
 2. Width: 3 inches.
 3. Thickness: 6.5 mils.
 4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
 5. Elongation: 2 percent.
 6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
 7. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.
- C. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive; suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 370 White PVC tape.
 - b. Compac Corporation; 130.
 - c. Venture Tape; 1506 CW NS.
 2. Width: 2 inches.
 3. Thickness: 6 mils.
 4. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch in width.
 5. Elongation: 500 percent.
 6. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch in width.
- D. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 488 AWF.

- b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0800.
- c. Compac Corporation; 120.
- 2. Width: 2 inches.
- 3. Thickness: 3.7 mils.
- 4. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch in width.
- 5. Elongation: 5 percent.
- 6. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch in width.

2.13 SECUREMENTS

A. Bands:

- 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. ITW Insulation Systems; Gerrard Strapping and Seals.
 - b. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate Strapping and Seals.
- 2. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304; 0.015 inch thick, 1/2 inch wide with wing seal or closed seal.
- 3. Aluminum: ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch thick, 1/2 inch wide with wing seal or closed seal.

B. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch- wide, stainless steel or Monel.

C. Wire: 0.080-inch nickel-copper alloy.

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. C & F Wire.

2.14 PROTECTIVE SHIELDING GUARDS

A. Protective Shielding Pipe Covers:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Engineered Brass Company.
 - b. Insul-Tect Products Co.; a subsidiary of MVG Molded Products.
 - c. McGuire Manufacturing.

2. Description: Manufactured plastic wraps for covering plumbing fixture hot- and cold-water supplies and trap and drain piping. Comply with Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) requirements.

B. Protective Shielding Piping Enclosures:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Truebro; a brand of IPS Corporation.
 - b. Zurn Industries, LLC; Tubular Brass Plumbing Products Operation.
2. Description: Manufactured plastic enclosure for covering plumbing fixture hot- and cold-water supplies and trap and drain piping. Comply with ADA requirements.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
 1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.
- B. Surface Preparation: Clean and prepare surfaces to be insulated. Before insulating, apply a corrosion coating to insulated surfaces as follows:
 1. Stainless Steel: Coat 300 series stainless steel with an epoxy primer 5 mils thick and an epoxy finish 5 mils thick if operating in a temperature range between 140 and 300 deg F. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
 2. Carbon Steel: Coat carbon steel operating at a service temperature between 32 and 300 deg F with an epoxy coating. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
- C. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.

- D. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.
- B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
- G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
 - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
 - 4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.
- K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:

1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at [2 inches] [4 inches] o.c.
 - a. For below-ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
 4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to pipe flanges and fittings.
- M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.
- P. For above-ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
1. Vibration-control devices.
 2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
 3. Nameplates and data plates.
 4. Cleanouts.

3.4 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
 4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.

2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
 4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- D. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.
1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
- E. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
 2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.5 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.
- B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:
1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
 3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
 4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.

5. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below-ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
 6. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker.
 7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below-ambient services and a breather mastic for above-ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
 8. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.
 9. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "union." Match size and color of pipe labels.
- C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.
- D. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:
1. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as adjoining pipe insulation.
 2. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union long at least two times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.
 3. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges, except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.
 4. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless-steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.
 5. Unless a PVC jacket is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules, finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
3. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
4. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.7 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

- #### A.
- Where glass-cloth jackets are indicated, install directly over bare insulation or insulation with factory-applied jackets.

1. Draw jacket smooth and tight to surface with 2-inch overlap at seams and joints.
2. Embed glass cloth between two 0.062-inch- thick coats of lagging adhesive.
3. Completely encapsulate insulation with coating, leaving no exposed insulation.

B. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:

1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch- wide joint strips at end joints.
5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.

C. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.

1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.

D. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.

3.8 FINISHES

A. Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."

1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.
 - a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.

B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.

C. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.

D. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: [Owner will engage] [Engage] a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Perform tests and inspections.

C. Tests and Inspections:

1. Inspect pipe, fittings, strainers, and valves, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to three locations of straight pipe, three locations of threaded fittings, three locations of welded fittings, two locations of threaded strainers, two locations of welded strainers, three locations of threaded valves, and three locations of flanged valves for each pipe service defined in the "Piping Insulation Schedule, General" Article.

- D. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

3.10 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- B. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not install insulation on the following:
1. Drainage piping located in crawl spaces.
 2. Underground piping.
 3. Chrome-plated pipes and fittings unless there is a potential for personnel injury.

3.11 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Domestic Cold Water:

1. NPS 1 and Smaller: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1/2 inch thick.
2. NPS 1-1/4 and Larger: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.

B. Domestic Hot and Recirculated Hot Water:

1. NPS 1-1/4 and Smaller: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.
2. NPS 1-1/2 and Larger: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1-1/2 inch thick.

C. Stormwater and Overflow:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.

D. Roof Drain and Overflow Drain Bodies:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.

E. Exposed Sanitary Drains, Domestic Water, Domestic Hot Water, and Stops for Plumbing Fixtures for People with Disabilities:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1/2 inch thick.

F. Floor Drains, Traps, and Sanitary Drain Piping within 10 Feet of Drain Receiving Condensate and Equipment Drain Water below 60 Deg F:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1/2 inch thick.

3.12 UNDERGROUND, FIELD-INSTALLED INSULATION JACKET

- A. For underground direct-buried piping applications, install underground direct-buried jacket over insulation material.

END OF SECTION 22 0719

SECTION 22 0800 - COMMISSIONING OF PLUMBING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes commissioning process requirements for Plumbing systems, assemblies, and equipment.
- B. Commissioning requires the participation of Division 22 to ensure that all systems are operating in a manner consistent with the Contract Documents.
- C. The contractor shall execute all commissioning responsibilities assigned to them described in Section 01 75 00 "General Commissioning Requirements", the Contract Documents, and in the Commissioning, Plan issued by the CxA.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Commissioning Plan: A document that outlines the organization, schedule, allocation of resources, and documentation requirements of the commissioning process.
- B. CxA: Commissioning Authority.
- C. Systems, Subsystems, Equipment, and Components: Where these terms are used together or separately, they shall mean "as-built" systems, subsystems, equipment, and components.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Certificates of readiness.
- B. Certificates of completion of installation, prestart, and startup activities.

1.4 CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITIES

- A. Perform commissioning tests at the direction of the CxA.
- B. Attend construction phase controls coordination meeting.
- C. Participate in orientation and inspection for Plumbing systems, assemblies, equipment, and component maintenance as directed by the CxA.
- D. Provide approved submittals and information requested by the CxA for final commissioning documentation.
- E. Provide measuring instruments and logging devices to record test data, and provide data acquisition equipment to record data for the complete range of testing for the required test period.

1.5 CxA'S RESPONSIBILITIES

- A. Provide Project-specific construction checklists and commissioning process test procedures for actual Plumbing systems, assemblies, equipment, and components to be furnished and installed as part of the construction contract.
- B. Direct commissioning testing.
- C. Provide test data, inspection reports, and certificates in Systems Manual.

1.6 COMMISSIONING DOCUMENTATION

- A. Contractor to provide the following information to the CxA for inclusion in the commissioning plan:
 - 1. Plan for delivery and review of submittals, systems manuals, and other documents and reports.
 - 2. Identification of installed systems, assemblies, equipment, and components including design changes that occurred during the construction phase.
 - 3. Process and schedule for completing construction checklists and manufacturer's prestart and startup checklists for Plumbing systems, assemblies, equipment, and components to be verified and tested.
 - 4. Certificate of completion certifying that installation, prestart checks, and startup procedures have been completed.
 - 5. Certificate of readiness certifying that Plumbing systems, subsystems, equipment, and associated controls are ready for testing.
 - 6. Test and inspection reports and certificates.
 - 7. Corrective action documents.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 TESTING PREPARATION

- A. Certify that Plumbing systems, subsystems, and equipment have been installed, calibrated, and started and are operating according to the Contract Documents.
- B. Certify that Plumbing instrumentation and control systems have been completed and calibrated, that they are operating according to the Contract Documents, and that pretest set points have been recorded.
- C. Set systems, subsystems, and equipment into operating mode to be tested (e.g., normal shutdown, normal auto position, normal manual position, unoccupied cycle, emergency power, and alarm conditions).
- D. Inspect and verify the position of each device and interlock identified on checklists.
- E. Check safety cutouts, alarms, and interlocks with smoke control and life-safety systems during each mode of operation.

- F. Testing Instrumentation: Provide and install measuring instruments and logging devices to record test data as directed by the CxA.

3.2 GENERAL TESTING REQUIREMENTS

- A. Provide technicians, instrumentation, and tools to perform commissioning test at the direction of the CxA.
- B. Scope of Plumbing testing shall include entire Plumbing installation. Testing shall include measuring capacities and effectiveness of operational and control functions.
- C. Test all operating modes, interlocks, control responses, and responses to abnormal or emergency conditions, and verify proper response of building automation system controllers and sensors.
- D. The CxA along with the Plumbing Contractor shall prepare detailed testing plans, procedures, and checklists for Plumbing systems, subsystems, and equipment.
- E. Tests will be performed using design conditions whenever possible.
- F. Simulated conditions may need to be imposed using an artificial load when it is not practical to test under design conditions. Before simulating conditions, calibrate testing instruments. Provide equipment to simulate loads. Set simulated conditions as directed by the CxA and document simulated conditions and methods of simulation. After tests, return settings to normal operating conditions.
- G. The CxA may direct that set points be altered when simulating conditions is not practical.
- H. The CxA may direct that sensor values be altered with a signal generator when design or simulating conditions and altering set points are not practical.
- I. If tests cannot be completed because of a deficiency outside the scope of the Plumbing system, document the deficiency and report it to the Owner. After deficiencies are resolved, reschedule tests.
- J. If the testing plan indicates specific seasonal testing, complete appropriate initial performance tests and documentation and schedule seasonal tests.

3.3 Plumbing systems and equipment Testing Procedures

- A. Provide submittals, test data, inspector record, and boiler certification to the CxA.
- B. Plumbing Instrumentation and Control System Testing: Perform field testing following testing plans and requirements. Assist the CxA with preparation of testing plans.
- C. Plumbing Distribution System Testing: Provide technicians, instrumentation, tools, and equipment to test performance of domestic hot water distribution systems.

3.4 SYSTEMS TO BE COMMISSIONED

SECTION	SYSTEM DESCRIPTION	SAMPLING
223500	Domestic Water Heat Exchangers	
223300	Electric Domestic - Water Heaters	

END OF SECTION 22 0800

SECTION 22 1113 - FACILITY WATER DISTRIBUTION PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes water-distribution piping and related components outside the building for water service and fire-service mains.
- B. Utility-furnished products include water meters that will be furnished to the site, ready for installation.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. EPDM: Ethylene propylene diene terpolymer rubber.
- B. LLDPE: Linear, low-density polyethylene plastic.
- C. PA: Polyamide (nylon) plastic.
- D. PE: Polyethylene plastic.
- E. PP: Polypropylene plastic.
- F. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Detail precast concrete vault assemblies and indicate dimensions, method of field assembly, and components.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: For piping and specialties including relation to other services in same area, drawn to scale. Show piping and specialty sizes and valves, meter and specialty locations, and elevations.
- B. Field quality-control test reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For water valves and specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Regulatory Requirements:
 - 1. Comply with requirements of utility company supplying water.
 - 2. Comply with standards of authorities having jurisdiction for potable-water-service piping, including materials, installation, testing, and disinfection.
 - 3. Comply with standards of authorities having jurisdiction for fire-suppression water-service piping, including materials, hose threads, installation, and testing.
- B. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- D. Comply with ASTM F 645 for selection, design, and installation of thermoplastic water piping.
- E. Comply with FMG's "Approval Guide" or UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" for fire-service-main products.
- F. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 24 for materials, installations, tests, flushing, and valve and hydrant supervision for fire-service-main piping for fire suppression.
- G. NSF Compliance:
 - 1. Comply with NSF 61 for materials for water-service piping and specialties for domestic water.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Preparation for Transport: Prepare valves, including fire hydrants, according to the following:
 - 1. Ensure that valves are dry and internally protected against rust and corrosion.
 - 2. Protect valves against damage to threaded ends and flange faces.
 - 3. Set valves in best position for handling. Set valves closed to prevent rattling.
- B. During Storage: Use precautions for valves, including fire hydrants, according to the following:
 - 1. Do not remove end protectors unless necessary for inspection; then reinstall for storage.

2. Protect from weather. Store indoors and maintain temperature higher than ambient dew-point temperature. Support off the ground or pavement in watertight enclosures when outdoor storage is necessary.
- C. Handling: Use sling to handle valves and fire hydrants if size requires handling by crane or lift. Rig valves to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use handwheels or stems as lifting or rigging points.
- D. Deliver piping with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe-end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
- E. Protect stored piping from moisture and dirt. Elevate above grade. Do not exceed structural capacity of floor when storing inside.
- F. Protect flanges, fittings, and specialties from moisture and dirt.
- G. Store plastic piping protected from direct sunlight. Support to prevent sagging and bending.

1.9 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate connection to water main with Campus.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 DUCTILE-IRON PIPE

- A. Ductile iron pipe cement lined class 52

2.2 SPECIAL PIPE FITTINGS

- A. Ductile-Iron Rigid Expansion Joints:

1. Description: Three-piece, ductile-iron assembly consisting of telescoping sleeve with gaskets and restrained-type, ductile-iron, bell-and-spigot end sections complying with AWWA C110 or AWWA C153. Select and assemble components for expansion indicated. Include AWWA C111, ductile-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.

- B. Ductile-Iron Flexible Expansion Joints:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. EBAA Iron, Inc.
 - b. Hays Fluid Controls; a division of ROMAC Industries Inc.
 - c. Star Pipe Products.

2. Description: Compound, ductile-iron fitting with combination of flanged and mechanical-joint ends complying with AWWA C110 or AWWA C153. Include two gasketed ball-joint sections and one or more gasketed sleeve sections. Assemble components for offset and expansion indicated. Include AWWA C111, ductile-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
 - a. Pressure Rating: 250 psig minimum.

C. Ductile-Iron Deflection Fittings:

1. Description: Compound, ductile-iron coupling fitting with sleeve and 1 or 2 flexing sections for up to 15-degree deflection, gaskets, and restrained-joint ends complying with AWWA C110 or AWWA C153. Include AWWA C111, ductile-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
 - a. Pressure Rating: 250 psig minimum.

2.3 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Refer to Section 330500 "Common Work Results for Utilities" for commonly used joining materials.
- B. Plastic Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.

2.4 PIPING SPECIALTIES

- A. Transition Fittings: Manufactured fitting or coupling same size as, with pressure rating at least equal to and ends compatible with, piping to be joined.
- B. Tubular-Sleeve Pipe Couplings:
 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Cascade Waterworks Manufacturing.
 - b. Dresser, Inc.; Dresser Piping Specialties.
 - c. Ford Meter Box Company, Inc. (The); Pipe Products Div.
 2. Description: Metal, bolted, sleeve-type, reducing or transition coupling, with center sleeve, gaskets, end rings, and bolt fasteners and with ends of same sizes as piping to be joined.
 - a. Standard: AWWA C219.
 - b. Center-Sleeve Material: Manufacturer's standard.
 - c. Gasket Material: Natural or synthetic rubber.
 - d. Pressure Rating: 150 psig minimum.
- C. Split-Sleeve Pipe Couplings:
 1. Description: Metal, bolted, split-sleeve-type, reducing or transition coupling with sealing pad and closure plates, O-ring gaskets, and bolt fasteners.
 - a. Standard: AWWA C219.

- b. Sleeve Material: Manufacturer's standard.
- c. Sleeve Dimensions: Of thickness and width required to provide pressure rating.
- d. Gasket Material: O-rings made of EPDM rubber, unless otherwise indicated.
- e. Pressure Rating: 150 psig minimum.
- f. Metal Component Finish: Corrosion-resistant coating or material.

D. Flexible Connectors:

- 1. Nonferrous-Metal Piping: Bronze hose covered with bronze wire braid; with copper-tube, pressure-type, solder-joint ends or bronze flanged ends brazed to hose.
- 2. Ferrous-Metal Piping: Stainless-steel hose covered with stainless-steel wire braid; with ASME B1.20.1, threaded steel pipe nipples or ASME B16.5, steel pipe flanges welded to hose.

E. Dielectric Fittings:

- 1. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
- 2. Dielectric Unions:
 - a. Description:
 - 1) Standard: ASSE 1079.
 - 2) Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
 - 3) End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
- 3. Dielectric Flanges:
 - a. Description:
 - 1) Standard: ASSE 1079.
 - 2) Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
 - 3) Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
 - 4) End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
- 4. Dielectric-Flange Insulating Kits:
 - a. Description:
 - 1) Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.
 - 2) Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
 - 3) Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
 - 4) Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
 - 5) Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.
- 5. Dielectric Nipples:
 - a. Description:
 - 1) Standard: IAPMO PS 66
 - 2) Electroplated steel nipple. complying with ASTM F 1545.
 - 3) Pressure Rating: 300 psig at 225 deg F.

- 4) End Connections: Male threaded or grooved.
- 5) Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, propylene.

2.5 CORROSION-PROTECTION PIPING ENCASEMENT

A. Encasement for Underground Metal Piping:

1. Standards: ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
2. Form: Sheet or tube.
3. Material: LLDPE film of 0.008-inch minimum thickness, or high-density, crosslaminated PE film of 0.004-inch minimum thickness.

2.6 VACUUM BREAKERS

A. Pressure Vacuum Breaker Assembly:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Ames Fire & Waterworks; a division of Watts Regulator Co.
 - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - c. FEBCO; SPX Valves & Controls.
2. Standard: ASSE 1020.
3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
4. Pressure Loss: 5 psig maximum, through middle 1/3 of flow range.

2.7 BACKFLOW PREVENTERS

A. Reduced-Pressure-Principle Backflow Preventers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Watts.
 - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - c. FEBCO; SPX Valves & Controls.
2. Standard: ASSE 1013.
3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
4. Pressure Loss: 12 psig maximum, through middle 1/3 of flow range.
5. Size: Refer to Plumbing drawings.
6. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 and smaller; cast iron with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
7. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
8. Configuration: Designed horizontal, straight through.
9. Accessories:

- a. Valves: Ball type with threaded ends on inlet and outlet of NPS 2 and smaller; OS&Y gate type with flanged ends on inlet and outlet of NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
 - b. Air-Gap Fitting: ASME A112.1.2, matching backflow preventer connection.
- B. Backflow Preventer Test Kits:
 - 1. Description: Factory calibrated, with gages, fittings, hoses, and carrying case with test-procedure instructions.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EARTHWORK

- A. Refer to Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

3.2 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. General: Use pipe, fittings, and joining methods for piping systems according to the following applications.
 - 1. Transition couplings and special fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping pressure rating may be used, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Do not use flanges or unions for underground piping.
 - 3. Flanges, unions, grooved-end-pipe couplings, and special fittings may be used, instead of joints indicated, on aboveground piping and piping in vaults.
 - 4. Underground water-service piping NPS 2-1/2" and larger:
 - a. Cement lined asphaltic coating Ductile-iron, Class 52, AWWA C151, mechanical joint lock with thrust blocks, ductile iron fittings.

3.3 VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. Drawings indicate valve types to be used. Where specific valve types are not indicated, the following requirements apply:
 - 1. Detector Check Valves: Use for water-service piping in vaults and aboveground to detect unauthorized use of water.

3.4 PIPING SYSTEMS - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. See Section 330500 "Common Work Results for Utilities" for piping-system common requirements.

3.5 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Water-Main Connection: Arrange with utility company for tap of size and in location indicated in water main.
- B. Water-Main Connection: Tap water main according to requirements of water utility company and of size and in location indicated.

- C. Make connections larger than NPS 2 with tapping machine according to the following:
 - 1. Install tapping sleeve and tapping valve according to MSS SP-60.
 - 2. Install tapping sleeve on pipe to be tapped. Position flanged outlet for gate valve.
 - 3. Use tapping machine compatible with valve and tapping sleeve; cut hole in main. Remove tapping machine and connect water-service piping.
 - 4. Install gate valve onto tapping sleeve. Comply with MSS SP-60. Install valve with stem pointing up and with valve box.
- D. Comply with NFPA 24 for fire-service-main piping materials and installation.
 - 1. Install PE corrosion-protection encasement according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
- E. Install ductile-iron, water-service piping according to AWWA C600 and AWWA M41.
 - 1. Install PE corrosion-protection encasement according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
- F. Bury piping with depth of cover over top at least 48 inches, with top at least 12 inches below level of maximum frost penetration, and according to the following:
- G. Install piping by tunneling or jacking, or combination of both, under streets and other obstructions that cannot be disturbed.
- H. Extend water-service piping and connect to water-supply source and building-water-piping systems at outside face of building wall in locations and pipe sizes indicated.
 - 1. Terminate water-service piping at building wall until building-water-piping systems are installed. Terminate piping with caps, plugs, or flanges as required for piping material. Make connections to building-water-piping systems when those systems are installed.
- I. Sleeves are specified in Section Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping.
- J. Mechanical sleeve seals are specified in Section Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping.
- K. Install underground piping with restrained joints at horizontal and vertical changes in direction. Use restrained-joint piping, thrust blocks, anchors, tie-rods and clamps, and other supports.
- L. See Section Domestic Water Piping for potable-water piping inside the building.

3.6 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. See Section 330500 "Common Work Results for Utilities" for basic piping joint construction.
- B. Make pipe joints according to the following:

1. Ductile-Iron Piping, Gasketed Joints for Water-Service Piping: AWWA C600 and AWWA M41.
2. Ductile-Iron Piping, Gasketed Joints for Fire-Service-Main Piping: UL 194.
3. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
 - a. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2and Smaller: Use dielectric unions.
 - b. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Use dielectric flanges.
 - c. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 5and Larger: Use dielectric flange kits.

3.7 ANCHORAGE INSTALLATION

- A. Anchorage, General: Install water-distribution piping with restrained joints. Anchorages and restrained-joint types that may be used include the following:
 1. Concrete thrust blocks.
 2. Locking mechanical joints.
 3. Set-screw mechanical retainer glands.
 4. Bolted flanged joints.
 5. Heat-fused joints.
 6. Pipe clamps and tie rods.
- B. Install anchorages for tees, plugs and caps, bends, crosses, valves, and hydrant branches. Include anchorages for the following piping systems:
 1. Gasketed-Joint, Ductile-Iron, Water-Service Piping: According to AWWA C600.
 2. Gasketed-Joint, PVC Water-Service Piping: According to AWWA M23.
 3. Bonded-Joint Fiberglass, Water-Service Piping: According to AWWA M45.
 4. Fire-Service-Main Piping: According to NFPA 24.
- C. Apply full coat of asphalt or other acceptable corrosion-resistant material to surfaces of installed ferrous anchorage devices.

3.8 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. AWWA Gate Valves: Comply with AWWA C600 and AWWA M44. Install each underground valve with stem pointing up and with valve box.
- B. AWWA Valves Other Than Gate Valves: Comply with AWWA C600 and AWWA M44.
- C. UL/FMG, Gate Valves: Comply with NFPA 24. Install each underground valve and valves in vaults with stem pointing up and with vertical cast-iron indicator post.
- D. UL/FMG, Valves Other Than Gate Valves: Comply with NFPA 24.
- E. MSS Valves: Install as component of connected piping system.
- F. Corporation Valves and Curb Valves: Install each underground curb valve with head pointed up and with service box.

3.9 WATER METER INSTALLATION

- A. Water Meters: Install campus standard pulsed output Senus or Invernsys water meter.
 - 1. Water meter to be connected to the building main electric meter digital input via a communication wire. This will enable the water meter to be read without entering the building.

3.10 VACUUM BREAKER ASSEMBLY INSTALLATION

- A. Install pressure vacuum breaker assemblies of type, size, and capacity indicated. Include valves and test cocks. Install according to requirements of plumbing and health department and authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Do not install pressure vacuum breaker assemblies in vault or other space subject to flooding.

3.11 BACKFLOW PREVENTER INSTALLATION

- A. Install backflow preventers of type, size, and capacity indicated. Include valves and test cocks. Install according to requirements of plumbing and health department and authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Do not install backflow preventers that have relief drain in vault or in other spaces subject to flooding.
- C. Do not install bypass piping around backflow preventers.
- D. Support NPS 2-1/2 and larger backflow preventers, valves, and piping near floor and on brick or concrete piers.
- E. Testing shall be performed by a certified backflow prevention device tester.

3.12 CONNECTIONS

- A. See Section 330500 "Common Work Results for Utilities" for piping connections to valves and equipment.
- A. Connect water-distribution piping to existing water main. Use.
- B. Connect water-distribution piping to interior domestic water and fire-suppression piping.

3.13 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Piping Tests: Conduct piping tests before joints are covered and after concrete thrust blocks have hardened sufficiently. Fill pipeline 24 hours before testing and apply test pressure to stabilize system. Use only potable water.
- B. Hydrostatic Tests: Test at not less than one-and-one-half times working pressure for two hours.

1. Increase pressure in 50-psig increments and inspect each joint between increments. Hold at test pressure for 1 hour; decrease to 0 psig. Slowly increase again to test pressure and hold for 1 more hour. Maximum allowable leakage is 2 per hour per 100 joints. Remake leaking joints with new materials and repeat test until leakage is within allowed limits.

C. Prepare reports of testing activities.

3.14 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Install continuous underground detectable warning tape during backfilling of trench for underground water-distribution piping. Locate below finished grade, directly over piping. Underground warning tapes are specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."
- B. Permanently attach equipment nameplate or marker indicating plastic water-service piping, on main electrical meter panel. See Section 330500 "Common Work Results for Utilities" for identifying devices.

3.15 CLEANING

1. Purge new water-distribution piping systems and parts of existing systems that have been altered, extended, or repaired before use.
2. Use purging and disinfecting procedure prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction or, if method is not prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction, use procedure described in NFPA 24 for flushing of piping. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at points of outlet.
3. Use purging and disinfecting procedure prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction or, if method is not prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction, use procedure described in AWWA C651 or do as follows:
 - a. Fill system or part of system with water/chlorine solution containing at least 50 ppm of chlorine; isolate and allow to stand for 24 hours.
 - b. Drain system or part of system of previous solution and refill with water/chlorine solution containing at least 200 ppm of chlorine; isolate and allow to stand for 3 hours.
 - c. After standing time, flush system with clean, potable water until no chlorine remains in water coming from system.
 - d. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction. Repeat procedure if biological examination shows evidence of contamination.

B. Prepare reports of purging and disinfecting activities.

END OF SECTION 22 1113

SECTION 22 1116 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Under-building-slab and aboveground domestic water pipes, tubes, and fittings inside buildings.
 - 2. Encasement for piping.

1.1 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For transition fittings and dielectric fittings.

1.2 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. System purging and disinfecting activities report.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

1.3 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Water Service: Do not interrupt water service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary water service according to requirements indicated:
 - 1. Notify Architect, Construction Manager OR Owner no fewer than two Insert number days in advance of proposed interruption of water service.
 - 2. Do not interrupt water service without Architect's, Construction Manager's or Owner's written permission.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.

- B. Potable-water piping and components shall comply with NSF 14, NSF 61, and NSF 372. Include marking "NSF-pw" on piping.

2.2 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L water tube, drawn temper.
- B. Soft Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L water tube, annealed temper.
- C. Wrought-Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.22, wrought-copper pressure fittings.
- D. Copper Unions:
 - 1. MSS SP-123.
 - 2. Cast-copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body.
 - 3. Ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces.
 - 4. Solder-joint.

2.3 DUCTILE-IRON PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Mechanical-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe:
 - 1. AWWA C151/A21.51, with mechanical-joint bell and plain spigot end unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
 - 2. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111/A21.11, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
- B. Standard-Pattern, Mechanical-Joint Fittings:
 - 1. AWWA C110/A21.10, ductile or gray iron.
 - 2. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111/A21.11, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
- C. Compact-Pattern, Mechanical-Joint Fittings:
 - 1. AWWA C153/A21.53, ductile iron.
 - 2. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111/A21.11, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.

2.4 PIPING JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials:
 - 1. AWWA C110/A21.10, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick or ASME B16.21, nonmetallic and asbestos free unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Full-face or ring type unless otherwise indicated.

- B. Metal, Pipe-Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys.
- D. Flux: ASTM B 813, water flushable.

2.5 TRANSITION FITTINGS

- A. General Requirements:
 - 1. Same size as pipes to be joined.
 - 2. Pressure rating at least equal to pipes to be joined.
 - 3. End connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
- B. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.
- C. Sleeve-Type Transition Coupling: AWWA C219.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Cascade Waterworks Mfg. Co.
 - b. Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co.
 - c. JCM Industries, Inc.
 - d. Viking Johnson.

2.6 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
- B. Dielectric Unions:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. WATTS.
 - b. Wilkins.
 - c. Zurn Industries, LLC.
 - 2. Standard: ASSE 1079.
 - 3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
 - 4. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
- C. Dielectric Nipples:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Grinnell G-Fire by Johnson Controls Company.
 - b. Precision Plumbing Products.

- c. Victaulic Company.
- 2. Standard: IAPMO PS 66.
- 3. Electroplated steel nipple complying with ASTM F 1545.
- 4. Pressure Rating and Temperature: 300 psig at 225 deg F.
- 5. End Connections: Male threaded or grooved.
- 6. Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, propylene.

2.7 ENCASEMENT FOR PIPING

- A. Standard: ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105/A21.5.
- B. Form: Sheet or tube.
- C. Color: Black or natural.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EARTHWORK

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of domestic water piping. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.
- B. Install ductile-iron piping under building slab with restrained joints according to AWWA C600 and AWWA M41.
- C. Install shutoff valve, hose-end drain valve, strainer, pressure gage, and test tee with valve inside the building at each domestic water-service entrance. Comply with requirements for drain valves and strainers in Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
- D. Install shutoff valve immediately upstream of each dielectric fitting.
- E. Install water-pressure-reducing valves downstream from shutoff valves. Comply with requirements for pressure-reducing valves in Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
- F. Install domestic water piping level without pitch and plumb.
- G. Rough-in domestic water piping for water-meter installation according to utility company's requirements.

- H. Install piping concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- I. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- J. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal, and coordinate with other services occupying that space.
- K. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- L. Install nipples, unions, special fittings, and valves with pressure ratings the same as or higher than the system pressure rating used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
- M. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- N. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- O. Install unions in copper tubing at final connection to each piece of equipment, machine, and specialty.
- P. Install pressure gages on suction and discharge piping for each plumbing pump and packaged booster pump. Comply with requirements for pressure gages in Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping.
- Q. Install thermostats in hot-water circulation piping.
- R. Install thermometers on outlet piping from each water heater. Comply with requirements for thermometers in Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping.
- S. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- T. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- U. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.

- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.
- C. Soldered Joints for Copper Tubing: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux to end of tube. Join copper tube and fittings according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- D. Joints for Dissimilar-Material Piping: Make joints using adapters compatible with materials of both piping systems.

3.4 TRANSITION FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install transition couplings at joints of dissimilar piping.
- B. Transition Fittings in Underground Domestic Water Piping:
 - 1. Fittings for NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Fitting-type coupling.
 - 2. Fittings for NPS 2 and Larger: Sleeve-type coupling.

3.5 DIELECTRIC FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
- B. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 and Smaller: Use dielectric couplings or unions.
- C. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Use dielectric flanges.

3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements for pipe hanger, support products, and installation in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
 - 1. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or 42, clamps.
 - 2. Individual, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs:
 - a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
 - b. Longer Than 100 Feet: MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
 - c. Longer Than 100 Feet if Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
 - 3. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
 - 4. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
- B. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.
- C. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, to a minimum of 3/8 inch.
- D. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:

1. NPS 3/4 and Smaller: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
2. NPS 1 and NPS 1-1/4: 72 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
3. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 96 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
4. NPS 2-1/2: 108 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
5. NPS 3 to NPS 5: 10 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
6. NPS 6: 10 feet with 5/8-inch rod.
7. NPS 8: 10 feet with 3/4-inch rod.

- E. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet.
- F. Support piping and tubing not listed in this article according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

3.7 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. When installing piping adjacent to equipment and machines, allow space for service and maintenance.
- C. Connect domestic water piping to exterior water-service piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- D. Connect domestic water piping to water-service piping with shutoff valve; extend and connect to the following:
 1. Water Heaters: Cold-water inlet and hot-water outlet piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than sizes of water heater connections.
 2. Plumbing Fixtures: Cold- and hot-water-supply piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than that required by plumbing code.
 3. Equipment: Cold- and hot-water-supply piping as indicated, but not smaller than equipment connections. Provide shutoff valve and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

3.8 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification materials and installation in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Label pressure piping with system operating pressure.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 1. Piping Inspections:
 - a. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it has been inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.

- b. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least one day before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction:
 - 1) Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing in after roughing in and before setting fixtures.
 - 2) Final Inspection: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified in "Piping Tests" Subparagraph below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
 - c. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass tests or inspections, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
 - d. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 2. Piping Tests:
 - a. Fill domestic water piping. Check components to determine that they are not air bound and that piping is full of water.
 - b. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit a separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
 - c. Leave new, altered, extended, or replaced domestic water piping uncovered and unconcealed until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
 - d. Cap and subject piping to static water pressure of 50 psig above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow it to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
 - e. Repair leaks and defects with new materials, and retest piping or portion thereof until satisfactory results are obtained.
 - f. Prepare reports for tests and for corrective action required.
 - B. Domestic water piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
 - C. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- 3.10 ADJUSTING
- A. Perform the following adjustments before operation:
 - 1. Close drain valves, hydrants, and hose bibbs.
 - 2. Open shutoff valves to fully open position.
 - 3. Open throttling valves to proper setting.
 - 4. Adjust balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide adequate flow.
 - a. Manually adjust ball-type balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide hot-water flow in each branch.
 - b. Adjust calibrated balancing valves to flows indicated.

5. Remove plugs used during testing of piping and for temporary sealing of piping during installation.
6. Remove and clean strainer screens. Close drain valves and replace drain plugs.
7. Remove filter cartridges from housings and verify that cartridges are as specified for application where used and are clean and ready for use.
8. Check plumbing specialties and verify proper settings, adjustments, and operation.

3.11 CLEANING

A. Clean and disinfect potable domestic water piping as follows:

1. Purge new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.
2. Use purging and disinfecting procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction; if methods are not prescribed, use procedures described in either AWWA C651 or AWWA C652 or follow procedures described below:
 - a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.
 - b. Fill and isolate system according to either of the following:
 - 1) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 50 ppm of chlorine. Isolate with valves and allow to stand for 24 hours.
 - 2) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 200 ppm of chlorine. Isolate and allow to stand for three hours.
 - c. Flush system with clean, potable water until no chlorine is in water coming from system after the standing time.
 - d. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.
 - e. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Clean non-potable domestic water piping as follows:

1. Purge new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.
2. Use purging procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction or; if methods are not prescribed, follow procedures described below:
 - a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.
 - b. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.

C. Prepare and submit reports of purging and disinfecting activities. Include copies of water-sample approvals from authorities having jurisdiction.

D. Clean interior of domestic water piping system. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.

3.12 PIPING SCHEDULE

A. Transition and special fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.

- B. Flanges and unions may be used for aboveground piping joints unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Fitting Option: Extruded-tee connections may be used on aboveground copper tubing.
- D. Under-building-slab, domestic water, building-service piping, NPS 4, shall be the following:
 - 1. Mechanical-joint, ductile-iron pipe class 52, cement lined asphaltic coating, AWWA C151; standard-or compact-pattern, mechanical-joint fittings; and mechanical joints, mechanical joint lock with thrust blocks.
- E. Under-building-slab, domestic water piping, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be the following:
 - 1. Soft copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type K; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.
- F. Aboveground domestic water piping, shall be the following:
 - 1. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and soldered joints.

3.13 VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Drawings indicate valve types to be used. Where specific valve types are not indicated, the following requirements apply:
 - 1. Shutoff Duty: Use ball or gate valves for piping NPS 2 and smaller. Use butterfly, ball, or gate valves with flanged ends for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
 - 2. Throttling Duty: Use ball or globe valves for piping NPS 2 and smaller.
 - 3. Hot-Water Circulation Piping, Balancing Duty: Calibrated Memory-stop balancing valves.
 - 4. Drain Duty: Hose-end drain valves.
- B. Use check valves to maintain correct direction of domestic water flow to and from equipment.

END OF SECTION 22 1116

SECTION 22 1119 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Vacuum breakers.
 - 2. Backflow preventers.
 - 3. Water pressure-reducing valves.
 - 4. Balancing valves.
 - 5. Temperature-actuated, water mixing valves.
 - 6. Strainers.
 - 7. Outlet boxes.
 - 8. Hose bibbs.
 - 9. Wall hydrants.
 - 10. Drain valves.
 - 11. Water-hammer arresters.
 - 12. Air vents.
 - 13. Specialty valves.
 - 14. Flexible connectors.
 - 15. Water meters.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For domestic water piping specialties.
 - 1. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For domestic water piping specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR PIPING SPECIALTIES

- A. Potable-water piping and components shall comply with NSF 61 and NSF 14. Comply with NSF 372 for low lead.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Minimum Working Pressure for Domestic Water Piping Specialties: 125 psig unless otherwise indicated.

2.3 VACUUM BREAKERS

- A. Hose-Connection Vacuum Breakers:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Arrowhead Brass Products.
 - b. Cash Acme; a division of Reliance Worldwide Corporation.
 - c. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
- 2. Standard: ASSE 1011.
- 3. Body: Bronze, nonremovable, with manual drain.
- 4. Outlet Connection: Garden-hose threaded complying with ASME B1.20.7.
- 5. Finish: Chrome or nickel plated.

- B. Pressure Vacuum Breakers:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Ames Fire & Waterworks; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - c. FEBCO; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
- 2. Standard: ASSE 1020.
- 3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
- 4. Pressure Loss: 5 psig maximum, through middle third of flow range.
- 5. Size: 3/4".
Valves: Ball type, on inlet and outlet.

2.4 BACKFLOW PREVENTERS

- A. Reduced-Pressure-Principle Backflow Preventers:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Watts.
 - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - c. FEBCO; SPX Valves & Controls.

2. Standard: ASSE 1013.
3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
4. Pressure Loss: 12 psig maximum, through middle 1/3 of flow range.
5. Size: Refer to Plumbing drawings.
6. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 and smaller; cast iron with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
7. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
8. Configuration: Designed horizontal, straight through.
9. Accessories:
 - a. Valves: Ball type with threaded ends on inlet and outlet of NPS 2 and smaller; OS&Y gate type with flanged ends on inlet and outlet of NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
 - b. Air-Gap Fitting: ASME A112.1.2, matching backflow preventer connection.

B. Backflow Preventer Test Kits:

1. Description: Factory calibrated, with gages, fittings, hoses, and carrying case with test-procedure instructions.

2.5 WATER PRESSURE-REDUCING VALVES

A. Water Regulators:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Cash Acme; a division of Reliance Worldwide Corporation.
 - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - c. Honeywell International Inc.
2. Standard: ASSE 1003.

Pressure Rating: Initial working pressure of 150 psig. End Connections: Threaded for

2.6 BALANCING VALVES

A. Copper-Alloy Calibrated Balancing Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Apollo Valves
 - b. NIBCO
2. Type: Ball valve with two readout ports and memory-setting indicator.
3. Body: Brass.
4. Size: Same as connected piping, but not larger than NPS 2.
5. Accessories: Meter hoses, fittings, valves, differential pressure meter, and carrying case.

2.7 TEMPERATURE-ACTUATED, WATER MIXING VALVES

A. Primary, Thermostatic, Water Mixing Valves (Water Heater, Storage Tanks):

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Armstrong International, Inc.
 - b. Lawler Manufacturing Company, Inc.
 - c. Leonard Valve Company.
2. Standard: ASSE 1017.
3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.
4. Type: Exposed-mounted, electronically controlled, water mixing valve.
5. Material: Bronze body with corrosion-resistant interior components.
6. Connections: Threaded union inlets and outlet.
7. Accessories: Manual temperature control, check stops on hot- and cold-water supplies, and adjustable, temperature-control handle.
8. Tempered-Water Setting: 140 Maximum, refer to Plumbing Drawings.

B. Individual-Fixture, Water Tempering Valves (Showers, Tubs):

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Armstrong International, Inc.
 - b. Lawler Manufacturing Company, Inc.
 - c. Leonard Valve Company.
2. Standard: ASSE 1016, thermostatically controlled, water tempering valve.
3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.
4. Body: Bronze body with corrosion-resistant interior components.
5. Temperature Control: Adjustable.
6. Inlets and Outlet: Threaded.
7. Finish: Rough or chrome-plated bronze.
8. Tempered-Water Setting: 120.
9. Tempered-Water Design Flow Rate: Refer to Plumbing Drawings.

C. Individual-Fixture, Water Tempering Valves (Sinks, Lavatories):

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Armstrong International, Inc.
 - b. Lawler Manufacturing Company, Inc.
 - c. Leonard Valve Company.
2. Standard: ASSE 1070, thermostatically controlled, water tempering valve.
3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.
4. Body: Bronze body with corrosion-resistant interior components.
5. Temperature Control: Adjustable.
6. Inlets and Outlet: Threaded.
7. Finish: Rough or chrome-plated bronze.

8. Tempered-Water Setting: 120.
9. Tempered-Water Design Flow Rate: Refer to Plumbing Drawings.

2.8 STRAINERS FOR DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

A. Y-Pattern Strainers:

1. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.
2. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 and smaller; cast iron with interior lining that complies with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved, epoxy coated and for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
3. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
4. Screen: Stainless steel with round perforations unless otherwise indicated.
5. Perforation Size:
 - a. Strainers NPS 2 and Smaller: 0.020inch.
 - b. Strainers NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: 0.045inch.
 - c. Strainers NPS 5 and Larger: 0.10 inch.
6. Drain: Pipe plug.

2.9 OUTLET BOXES

A. Clothes Washer Outlet Boxes:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Acorn Engineering Company.
 - b. Guy Gray Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - c. Oatey.
2. Mounting: Recessed.
3. Material and Finish: Enameled-steel or epoxy-painted-steel box and faceplate.
4. Faucet: Combination valved fitting or separate hot- and cold-water valved fittings complying with ASME A112.18.1. Include garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 on outlets.
5. Supply Shutoff Fittings: NPS 1/2 gate, globe, or ball valves and NPS 1/2 copper, water tubing.
6. Drain: NPS 2 standpipe and P-trap for direct waste connection to drainage piping.
7. Inlet Hoses: Two 60-inch- long, rubber household clothes washer inlet hoses with female, garden-hose-thread couplings. Include rubber washers.
8. Drain Hose: One 48-inch- long, rubber household clothes washer drain hose with hooked end.

2.10 HOSE BIBBS

A. Hose Bibbs

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co.
 - b. WATTS.
 - c. Zurn Industries, LLC.

B. Standard: ASME A112.18.1 for sediment faucets.

1. Body Material: Bronze.
2. Seat: Bronze, replaceable.
3. Supply Connections: NPS 1/2 or NPS 3/4 threaded or solder-joint inlet.
4. Outlet Connection: Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
5. Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
6. Vacuum Breaker: Integral or field-installation, nonremovable, drainable, hose-connection vacuum breaker complying with ASSE 1011.
7. Finish for Equipment Rooms: Rough bronze, or chrome or nickel plated.
8. Finish for Service Areas: Chrome or nickel plated.
9. Finish for Finished Rooms: Chrome or nickel plated.
10. Operation for Equipment Rooms: Wheel handle or operating key.
11. Operation for Service Areas: Operating key.
12. Operation for Finished Rooms: Operating key.
13. Include operating key with each operating-key hose bibb.
14. Include integral wall flange with each chrome- or nickel-plated hose bibb.

2.11 WALL HYDRANTS

A. Nonfreeze Wall Hydrants:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Josam Company.
 - b. MIFAB, Inc.
 - c. Prier Products, Inc.
2. Standard: ASME A112.21.3M for concealed-outlet, self-draining wall hydrants.
3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
4. Operation: Loose key.
5. Casing and Operating Rod: Of length required to match wall thickness. Include wall clamp.
6. Inlet: NPS 3/4 or NPS 1.
7. Outlet: Concealed, with integral vacuum breaker and garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
8. Box: Deep, flush mounted with cover.
9. Box and Cover Finish: Polished nickel bronze.
10. Outlet: Exposed, with integral vacuum breaker and garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
11. Nozzle and Wall-Plate Finish: Polished nickel bronze.
12. Operating Keys(s): One with each wall hydrant.

2.12 DRAIN VALVES

A. Ball-Valve-Type, Hose-End Drain Valves :

1. Standard: MSS SP-110 for standard-port, two-piece ball valves.
2. Pressure Rating: 400-psig minimum CWP.
3. Size: NPS 3/4.
4. Body: Copper alloy.
5. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
6. Seats and Seals: Replaceable.
7. Handle: Vinyl-covered steel.
8. Inlet: Threaded or solder joint.
9. Outlet: Threaded, short nipple with garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 and cap with brass chain.

B. Gate-Valve-Type, Hose-End Drain Valves:

1. Standard: MSS SP-80 for gate valves.
2. Pressure Rating: Class 125.
3. Size: NPS 3/4.
4. Body: ASTM B 62 bronze.
5. Inlet: NPS 3/4 threaded or solder joint.
6. Outlet: Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 and cap with brass chain.

2.13 WATER-HAMMER ARRESTERS

A. Water-Hammer Arresters :

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. AMTROL, Inc.
 - b. Josam Company.
 - c. MIFAB, Inc.
2. Standard: ASSE 1010 or PDI-WH 201.
3. Type: Metal bellows.
4. Size: ASSE 1010, Sizes AA and A through F, or PDI-WH 201, Sizes A through F.

2.14 AIR VENTS

A. Bolted-Construction Automatic Air Vents :

1. Body: Bronze.
2. Pressure Rating and Temperature: 125-psig minimum pressure rating at 140 deg F.
3. Float: Replaceable, corrosion-resistant metal.
4. Mechanism and Seat: Stainless steel.
5. Size: NPS 1/2 minimum inlet.
6. Inlet and Vent Outlet End Connections: Threaded.

2.15 SPECIALTY VALVES

- A. Comply with requirements for general-duty metal valves in General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping.

2.16 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Flex-Hose Co., Inc.
 - 2. Flexicraft Industries.
 - 3. Flex Pression, Ltd.
- B. Bronze-Hose Flexible Connectors: Corrugated-bronze tubing with bronze wire-braid covering and ends brazed to inner tubing.
 - 1. Working-Pressure Rating: Minimum 200 psig.
 - 2. End Connections NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded copper pipe or plain-end copper tube.
 - 3. End Connections NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged copper alloy.
- C. Stainless-Steel-Hose Flexible Connectors: Corrugated-stainless-steel tubing with stainless-steel wire-braid covering and ends welded to inner tubing.
 - 1. Working-Pressure Rating: Minimum 200 psig.
 - 2. End Connections NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded steel-pipe nipple.
 - 3. End Connections NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged steel nipple.

2.17 WATER METERS

- A. Displacement-Type Water Meters:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Badger.
 - b. Mueller.
 - c. Neptune.
 - 2. Description:
 - a. Standard: AWWA C700.
 - b. Pressure Rating: 150-psig working pressure.
 - c. Body Design: Nutating disc; totalization meter.
 - d. Registration: In gallons or cubic feet as required by utility company.
 - e. Case: Bronze.
 - f. End Connections: Threaded.
- B. Turbine-Type Water Meters:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Badger.
 - b. Neptune
 - c. Sensus.
 2. Description:
 - a. Standard: AWWA C701.
 - b. Pressure Rating: 150-psig working pressure.
 - c. Body Design: Turbine; totalization meter.
 - d. Registration: In gallons or cubic feet as required by utility company.
 - e. Case: Bronze.
 - f. End Connections for Meters NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded.
 - g. End Connections for Meters NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged.
- C. Compound-Type Water Meters:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. ABB.
 - b. Elster.
 - c. Sensus.
 2. Description:
 - a. Standard: AWWA C702.
 - b. Pressure Rating: 150-psig working pressure.
 - c. Body Design: With integral mainline and bypass meters; totalization meter.
 - d. Registration: In gallons or cubic feet as required by utility company.
 - e. Case: Bronze.
 - f. Pipe Connections: Flanged.
- D. Remote Registration System: Direct-reading type complying with AWWA C706; modified with signal-transmitting assembly, low-voltage connecting wiring, and remote register assembly as required by utility company.
- E. Remote Registration System: Encoder type complying with AWWA C707; modified with signal-transmitting assembly, low-voltage connecting wiring, and remote register assembly as required by utility company.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install backflow preventers in each water supply to mechanical equipment and systems and to other equipment and water systems that may be sources of contamination. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction.
 1. Locate backflow preventers in same room as connected equipment or system.

2. Install drain for backflow preventers with atmospheric-vent drain connection with air-gap fitting, fixed air-gap fitting, or equivalent positive pipe separation of at least two pipe diameters in drain piping and pipe-to-floor drain. Locate air-gap device attached to or under backflow preventer. Simple air breaks are unacceptable for this application.
 3. Do not install bypass piping around backflow preventers.
 4. Testing shall be performed by a certified backflow prevention device tester.
- B. Install water regulators with inlet and outlet shutoff valves. Install pressure gages on inlet and outlet.
- C. Install water-control valves with inlet and outlet shutoff valves. Install pressure gages on inlet and outlet.
- D. Install balancing valves in locations where they can easily be adjusted.
- E. Install temperature-actuated, water mixing valves with check stops or shutoff valves on inlets and with shutoff valve on outlet.
1. Install cabinet-type units recessed in or surface mounted on wall as specified.
- F. Install Y-pattern strainers for water on supply side of each water pressure-reducing valve and pump.
- G. Install outlet boxes recessed in wall or surface mounted on wall. Install 2-by-4-inch fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking, wall reinforcement between studs. Comply with requirements for fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking in Section 06 10 00 "Rough Carpentry."
- H. Install water-hammer arresters in water piping according to PDI-WH 201.
- I. Install air vents at high points of water piping.
- J. Install supply-type, trap-seal primer valves with outlet piping pitched down toward drain trap a minimum of 1 percent, and connect to floor-drain body, trap, or inlet fitting. Adjust valve for proper flow.
- K. Install trap-seal primer systems with outlet piping pitched down toward drain trap a minimum of 1 percent, and connect to floor-drain body, trap, or inlet fitting. Adjust system for proper flow.
- 3.2 CONNECTIONS
- A. Comply with requirements for ground equipment in Section 26 05 26 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- B. Fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking is specified in Section 26 05 19 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" for electrical connections.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for ground equipment in Section 26 05 26 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- B. Fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking is specified in Section 26 05 19 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" for electrical connections.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 - 1. Test each pressure vacuum breaker, reduced-pressure-principle backflow preventer, double-check backflow-prevention assembly according to authorities having jurisdiction and the device's reference standard.
- B. Domestic water piping specialties will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Set field-adjustable pressure set points of water pressure-reducing valves.
- B. Set field-adjustable flow set points of balancing valves.
- C. Set field-adjustable temperature set points of temperature-actuated, water mixing valves.

END OF SECTION 22 1119

SECTION 22 1123 - DOMESTIC WATER PUMPS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Horizontally mounted, in-line, close-coupled centrifugal pumps.
 - 2. Vertically mounted, in-line, close-coupled centrifugal pumps.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control, signaling power-limited circuits.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include materials of construction, rated capacities, certified performance curves with operating points plotted on curves, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. LEED Submittals:
 - 1. Product Data for Prerequisite EA 2: Documentation indicating that units comply with applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, without amendments, Section 7 - "Service Water Heating."

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For domestic water pumps to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 778 for motor-operated water pumps.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Retain shipping flange protective covers and protective coatings during storage.
- B. Protect bearings and couplings against damage.
- C. Comply with pump manufacturer's written rigging instructions for handling.

1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 HORIZONTALLY MOUNTED, IN-LINE, CLOSE-COUPLED CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Alyan Pump Co.
 - 2. Armstrong Pumps Inc.
 - 3. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump; ITT Corporation.
- B. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, in-line, single-stage, close-coupled, overhung-impeller centrifugal pumps designed for installation with pump and motor shaft mounted horizontal.
- C. Pump Construction:
 - 1. Casing: Radially split with threaded companion-flange connections for pumps with NPS 2 pipe connections and flanged connections for pumps with NPS 2-1/2 pipe connections.
 - 2. Impeller: Statically and dynamically balanced, closed, and keyed to shaft.
 - 3. Shaft and Shaft Sleeve: Steel shaft with deflector, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve. Include water slinger on shaft between motor and seal.
 - 4. Seal: Mechanical, with carbon-steel rotating ring, stainless-steel spring, ceramic seat, and rubber bellows and gasket.

5. Bearings: Oil-lubricated; bronze-journal or ball type.
 6. Shaft Coupling: Flexible, capable of absorbing torsional vibration and shaft misalignment.
- D. Motor: Single speed, with grease-lubricated ball bearings; and resiliently or rigidly mounted to pump casing.
- E. Capacities and Characteristics:
1. See Drawings for Capacity and Characteristics.

2.2 VERTICALLY MOUNTED, IN-LINE, CLOSE-COUPLED CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Alyan Pump Co.
 2. Armstrong Pumps Inc.
 3. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump; ITT Corporation.
- B. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, in-line, single-stage, close-coupled, overhung-impeller centrifugal pumps designed for installation with pump and motor shaft mounted vertical.
- C. Pump Construction:
1. Casing: Radially split, cast iron, with wear rings and threaded companion-flange connections for pumps with NPS 2 pipe connections and flanged connections for pumps with NPS 2-1/2 pipe connections. Include pump manufacturer's base attachment for mounting pump on concrete base.
 2. Impeller: Statically and dynamically balanced, closed, and keyed to shaft.
 3. Shaft and Shaft Sleeve: Stainless-steel or steel shaft, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve.
 4. Seal: Mechanical, with carbon-steel rotating ring, stainless-steel spring, ceramic seat, and rubber bellows and gasket. Include water slinger on shaft between motor and seal.
 5. Bearings: Oil-lubricated; bronze-journal or ball type.
 6. Shaft Coupling: Flexible or rigid type if pump is provided with coupling.
- D. Motor: Single speed, with grease-lubricated ball bearings; and rigidly mounted to pump casing.
- E. Capacities and Characteristics:
1. See Drawings for Capacity and Characteristics.

2.3 MOTORS

- A. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Common Motor Requirements for Plumbing Equipment.
 - 1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.

2.4 CONTROLS

- A. Thermostats: Electric; adjustable for control of hot-water circulation pump.
 - 1. Range: As indicated on construction documents.
 - 2. Enclosure: NEMA 250.
 - 3. Power Requirement: 120 V, ac.
 - 4. Settings: As indicated on construction documents.
- B. Timers: Electric, for control of hot-water circulation pump.
 - 1. Type: Programmable, seven-day clock with manual override on-off switch.
 - 2. Enclosure: NEMA 250, suitable for wall mounting.
 - 3. Operation of Pump: On or off.
 - 4. Power Requirement: 120-V ac.
 - 5. Programmable Sequence of Operation: Up to two on-off cycles each day for seven days.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in of domestic-water-piping system to verify actual locations of connections before pump installation.

3.2 PUMP INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with HI 1.4.
- B. Install horizontally mounted, in-line, close-coupled centrifugal pumps with shaft(s) horizontal.
- C. Install vertically mounted, in-line, close-coupled centrifugal pumps with shaft vertical.
- D. Pump Mounting: Install vertically mounted, in-line, close-coupled centrifugal pumps with cast-iron base mounted on concrete base using elastomeric pads. Comply with requirements for concrete base specified in Cast-in-Place Concrete.

1. Minimum Deflection: 1/4 inch.
 2. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
 3. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
 4. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 5. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
- E. Install continuous-thread hanger rods and spring hangers of size required to support pump weight.
1. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Vibration Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment. Fabricate brackets or supports as required.
 2. Comply with requirements for hangers and supports specified in Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment.
- F. Install pressure switches in water supply piping.
- G. Install thermostats in hot-water return piping.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Domestic Water Piping. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to pumps to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Connect domestic water piping to pumps. Install suction and discharge piping equal to or greater than size of pump nozzles.
1. Install flexible connectors adjacent to pumps in suction and discharge piping of the following pumps:
 - a. Horizontally mounted, in-line, close-coupled centrifugal pumps.
 - b. Vertically mounted, in-line, close-coupled centrifugal pumps.
 - c. Comply with requirements for flexible connectors specified in Domestic Water Piping.
 2. Install shutoff valve and strainer on suction side of each pump, and check, shutoff, and throttling valves on discharge side of each pump. Install valves same size as connected piping. Comply with requirements for valves specified in General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping and comply with requirements for strainers specified in Domestic Water Piping Specialties.
 3. Install pressure gage and snubber at suction of each pump and pressure gage and snubber at discharge of each pump. Install at integral pressure-gage tappings where provided or install pressure-gage connectors in suction and

discharge piping around pumps. Comply with requirements for pressure gages and snubbers specified in Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping.

- D. Connect pressure switches and thermostats to pumps that they control.
- E. Interlock pump between water heater and hot-water storage tank with water heater burner and time-delay relay.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment for identification of pumps.

3.5 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
 - 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 2. Check piping connections for tightness.
 - 3. Clean strainers on suction piping.
 - 4. Set pressure switches and thermostats for automatic starting and stopping operation of pumps.
 - 5. Perform the following startup checks for each pump before starting:
 - a. Verify bearing lubrication.
 - b. Verify that pump is free to rotate by hand and that pump for handling hot liquid is free to rotate with pump hot and cold. If pump is bound or drags, do not operate until cause of trouble is determined and corrected.
 - c. Verify that pump is rotating in the correct direction.
 - 6. Prime pump by opening suction valves and closing drains, and prepare pump for operation.
 - 7. Start motor.
 - 8. Open discharge valve slowly.
 - 9. Adjust temperature settings on thermostats.
 - 10. Adjust timer settings.

3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust domestic water pumps to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Adjust initial temperature set points.
- C. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.

END OF SECTION 22 1123

SECTION 22 1123.13 - DOMESTIC-WATER PACKAGED BOOSTER PUMPS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Triplex, variable-speed booster pumps.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. VFC: Variable-frequency controller(s).

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: For booster pumps. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 2. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For booster pumps to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

- B. ASME Compliance: Comply with ASME B31.9 for piping.
- C. UL Compliance for Packaged Pumping Systems:
 - 1. UL 508, "Industrial Control Equipment."
 - 2. UL 508A, "Industrial Control Panels."
 - 3. UL 778, "Motor-Operated Water Pumps."
 - 4. UL 1995, "Heating and Cooling Equipment."
- D. Booster pumps shall be listed and labeled as packaged pumping systems by testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Retain protective coatings and flange's protective covers during storage.

1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 Triplex, VARIABLE-SPEED BOOSTER PUMPS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Armstrong Pumps Inc.
 - 2. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump; ITT Corporation.
 - 3. Tigerflow Inc.
- B. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, fluid-handling system for domestic water, with pumps, piping, valves, specialties, and controls, and mounted on base.
- C. Pumps:
 - 1. Type: Triplex Cast Iron, stainless fitted, mechanically sealed, vertical In-line, multi-staged pumps each close-coupled to an ODP Premium Efficient Motor NSF-61.
 - 2. Casing: Radially split; bronze.
 - 3. Impeller: Closed, ASTM B 584 cast bronze; statically and dynamically balanced and keyed to shaft.
 - 4. Shaft and Shaft Sleeve: Stainless-steel or steel shaft, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve and deflector.
 - 5. Seal: Mechanical.

6. Bearing: Grease-lubricated or pre-greased, permanently shielded ball type.
 7. Coupling: Flexible, with metal guard.
- D. Capacity and Characteristics:
1. Rated Flow: 130GPM per pump
 2. Rated Total Dynamic Head: 184 Ft. Hd.
 3. Motor Horsepower: 10-HP per pump
 4. Electrical Characteristics:
 - a. Volts: 208-V
 - b. Phases: 3
 - c. Hertz: 60-Hz
- E. Motors: Single speed, with grease-lubricated or pre-greased, permanently shielded, ball-type bearings. Select motors that will not overload through full range of pump performance curve.
- F. Piping: Copper tube and copper fittings.
- G. Valves:
1. Shutoff Valves NPS 2 and Smaller: Gate valve or two-piece, full-port ball valve, in each pump's suction and discharge piping.
 2. Shutoff Valves NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Gate valve or lug-type butterfly valve, in each pump's suction and discharge piping.
 3. Check Valves NPS 2 and Smaller: Silent type in each pump's discharge piping.
 4. Check Valves NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Silent type in each pump's discharge piping.
 5. Thermal-Relief Valve: Temperature-and-pressure relief type in pump's discharge header piping.
- H. Dielectric Fittings: With insulating material isolating joined dissimilar metals.
- I. Control Panel: Factory installed and connected as an integral part of booster pump; automatic for multiple-pump, variable-speed operation, with load control and protection functions.
1. Control Logic: Solid-state system with transducers, programmable microprocessor, VFC, and other devices in controller. Install VFC for pump motors larger than 25 hp in separate panel; same type as motor control panel enclosure.
 2. Motor Controller: NEMA ICS 2, variable-frequency, solid-state type.
 - a. Control Voltage: 120-V ac, with integral control-power transformer.
 3. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1.
 4. Motor Overload Protection: Overload relay in each phase.
 5. Starting Devices: Hand-off-automatic selector switch for each pump in cover of control panel, plus pilot device for automatic control.
 - a. Triplex, Sequence (Lead-Lag-Lag) Starter: Switches lead pump to one lag main pump and to three-pump operation.

6. Pump Operation and Sequencing: Pressure-sensing method.
 - a. Time Delay: Controls pump on-off operation; adjustable from 1 to 300 seconds.
 7. VFC: Voltage-source, pulse-width, modulating-frequency converter for each pump.
 8. Manual Bypass: Magnetic contactor arranged to transfer to constant-speed operation upon VFC failure.
 9. Instrumentation: Suction and discharge pressure gages.
 10. Lights: Running light for each pump.
 11. Alarm Signal Device: Sounds alarm when backup pumps are operating.
 - a. Time Delay: Controls alarm operation; adjustable from 1 to 300 seconds, with automatic reset.
 12. Thermal-bleed cutoff.
 13. Low-suction-pressure cutout.
 14. High-suction-pressure cutout.
 15. Low-discharge-pressure cutout.
 16. High-discharge-pressure cutout.
 17. Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC: Provide auxiliary contacts for interface to BACnet DDC system. DDC systems are specified in Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC." Include the following:
 - a. On-off status of each pump.
 - b. Alarm status.
- J. Base: Structural steel.
- K. Capacities and Characteristics:
1. See Drawings for Basis of Design, Capacities and Characteristics.

2.2 MOTORS

- A. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors.
1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
 2. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in NFPA 70.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in for booster pumps to verify actual locations of piping connections before booster-pump installation.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Equipment Mounting: Install booster pumps on concrete base using elastomeric pads elastomeric mounts. Comply with requirements for concrete base specified in Cast-in-Place Concrete.
 - 1. Minimum Deflection: 1/4 inch.
 - 2. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
 - 3. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
 - 4. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 - 5. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
- B. Equipment Mounting: Install booster pumps using elastomeric pads. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment.
 - 1. Minimum Deflection: 1/4 inch.
- C. Support connected domestic-water piping so weight of piping is not supported by booster pumps.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Domestic Water Piping. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Connect domestic-water piping to booster pumps. Install suction and discharge pipe equal to or greater than size of system suction and discharge headers.
 - 1. Install shutoff valves on piping connections to booster-pump suction and discharge headers. Install ball, butterfly, or gate valves same size as suction and discharge headers. Comply with requirements for general-duty valves specified in General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping.

2. Install union, flanged, or grooved-joint connections on suction and discharge headers at connection to domestic-water piping. Comply with requirements for unions and flanges specified in Domestic Water Piping.
3. Install valved bypass, same size as and between piping, at connections to booster-pump suction and discharge headers. Comply with requirements for domestic-water piping specified in Domestic Water Piping.
4. Install flexible connectors, same size as piping, on piping connections to booster-pump suction and discharge headers. Comply with requirements for flexible connectors specified in Domestic Water Piping.
5. Install piping adjacent to booster pumps to allow service and maintenance.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
 1. Perform visual and mechanical inspection.
 2. Leak Test: After installation, charge booster pump and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start booster pumps to confirm proper motor rotation and booster-pump operation.
 4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- D. Pumps and controls will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.6 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.

1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.7 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust booster pumps to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Adjust pressure set points.
- C. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting booster pump to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

3.8 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain booster pumps.

END OF SECTION 221123.13

SECTION 22 1316 - SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Pipe, tube, and fittings.
 - 2. Specialty pipe fittings.
 - 3. Encasement for underground metal piping.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Soil, Waste, and Vent Piping: 10-foot head of water.
 - 2. Waste, Force-Main Piping: 100 psig.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. LEED Submittals:
 - 1. Product Data for Credit IEQ 4.1: For solvent cements and adhesive primers, documentation including printed statement of VOC content.
- C. Shop Drawings: For hubless, single-stack drainage system. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Comply with NSF/ANSI 14, "Plastics Piping Systems Components and Related Materials," for plastic piping components. Include marking with "NSF-dwv" for plastic drain, waste, and vent piping and "NSF-sewer" for plastic sewer piping.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.

2.2 HUB-AND-SPIGOT, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 74, Service and Extra Heavy class(es).
- B. Gaskets: ASTM C 564, rubber.
- C. Calking Materials: ASTM B 29, pure lead and oakum or hemp fiber.

2.3 HUBLESS, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 888 or CISPI 301.
- B. Heavy-Duty, Hubless-Piping Couplings:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. ANACO-Husky.
 - 2. Standards: ASTM C 1277 and ASTM C 1540.
 - 3. Description: Stainless-steel shield with stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.

2.4 DUCTILE-IRON PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Ductile-Iron, Mechanical-Joint Piping:
 - 1. Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151/A21.51, with mechanical-joint bell and plain spigot end unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
 - 2. Ductile-Iron Fittings: AWWA C110/A21.10, mechanical-joint, ductile- or gray-iron standard pattern or AWWA C153/A21.53, ductile-iron compact pattern.
 - 3. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111/A21.11, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
- B. Ductile-Iron, Grooved-Joint Piping:
 - 1. Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151/A21.51 with round-cut-grooved ends according to AWWA C606.
 - 2. Ductile-Iron-Pipe Appurtenances:

- a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1) Anvil International.
 - 2) Shurjoint Piping Products.
 - 3) Star Pipe Products.
 - 4) Victaulic Company.
- b. Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron Fittings: ASTM A 536 ductile-iron castings with dimensions matching AWWA C110/A 21.10 ductile-iron pipe or AWWA C153/A 21.53 ductile-iron fittings and complying with AWWA C606 for grooved ends.
- c. Grooved Mechanical Couplings for Ductile-Iron Pipe: ASTM F 1476, Type I. Include ferrous housing sections with continuous curved keys; EPDM-rubber center-leg gasket suitable for hot and cold water; and bolts and nuts.

2.5 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Copper DWV Tube: ASTM B 306, drainage tube, drawn temper.
- B. Copper Drainage Fittings: ASME B16.23, cast copper or ASME B16.29, wrought copper, solder-joint fittings.
- C. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L and Type M, water tube, drawn temper.
- D. Soft Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L, water tube, annealed temper.
- E. Copper Pressure Fittings:
 - 1. Copper Fittings: ASME B16.18, cast-copper-alloy or ASME B16.22, wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings. Furnish wrought-copper fittings if indicated.
 - 2. Copper Unions: MSS SP-123, copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces, and solder-joint or threaded ends.
- F. Copper Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, cast copper with solder-joint end.
 - 1. Flange Gasket Materials: ASME B16.21, full-face, flat, nonmetallic, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
 - 2. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Solder: ASTM B 32, lead free with ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux.

2.6 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTINGS

- A. Transition Couplings:
 - 1. General Requirements: Fitting or device for joining piping with small differences in OD's or of different materials. Include end connections same size as and compatible with pipes to be joined.

2. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.
3. Unshielded, Nonpressure Transition Couplings:
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1) Dallas Specialty & Mfg. Co.
 - 2) Fernco Inc.
 - 3) Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.
 - 4) Plastic Oddities; a division of Diverse Corporate Technologies, Inc.
 - b. Standard: ASTM C 1173.
 - c. Description: Elastomeric, sleeve-type, reducing or transition pattern. Include shear ring and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
 - d. Sleeve Materials:
 - 1) For Cast-Iron Soil Pipes: ASTM C 564, rubber.
 - 2) For Plastic Pipes: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seal or ASTM D 5926, PVC.
 - 3) For Dissimilar Pipes: ASTM D 5926, PVC or other material compatible with pipe materials being joined.
4. Shielded, Nonpressure Transition Couplings:
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1) Cascade Waterworks Mfg. Co.
 - 2) Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.
 - b. Standard: ASTM C 1460.
 - c. Description: Elastomeric or rubber sleeve with full-length, corrosion-resistant outer shield and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
5. Pressure Transition Couplings:
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1) Cascade Waterworks Mfg. Co.
 - 2) Dresser, Inc.
 - 3) EBAA Iron, Inc.
 - b. Standard: AWWA C219.
 - c. Description: Metal, sleeve-type same size as, with pressure rating at least equal to, and ends compatible with, pipes to be joined.
 - d. Center-Sleeve Material: Manufacturer's standard.
 - e. Gasket Material: Natural or synthetic rubber.
 - f. Metal Component Finish: Corrosion-resistant coating or material.
1. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
2. Dielectric Unions:

- a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1) Capitol Manufacturing Company.
 - 2) Central Plastics Company.
 - 3) Hart Industries International, Inc.
 - b. Description:
 - 1) Standard: ASSE 1079.
 - 2) Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
 - 3) End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
3. Dielectric Flanges:
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1) Capitol Manufacturing Company.
 - 2) Central Plastics Company.
 - 3) Matco-Norca, Inc.
 - b. Description:
 - 1) Standard: ASSE 1079.
 - 2) Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
 - 3) Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
 - 4) End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
4. Dielectric-Flange Insulating Kits:
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1) Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
 - 2) Calpico, Inc.
 - 3) Central Plastics Company.
 - b. Description:
 - 1) Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.
 - 2) Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
 - 3) Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
 - 4) Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
 - 5) Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.
5. Dielectric Nipples:
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1) Elster Perfection.
 - 2) Grinnell Mechanical Products.
 - 3) Matco-Norca, Inc.
 - 4) Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
 - 5) Victaulic Company.
 - b. Description:
 - 1) Standard: IAPMO PS 66
 - 2) Electroplated steel nipple.

- 3) Pressure Rating: 300 psig at 225 deg F.
- 4) End Connections: Male threaded or grooved.
- 5) Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, propylene.

2.7 ENCASEMENT FOR UNDERGROUND METAL PIPING

- A. Standard: ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105/A 21.5.
- B. Material: Linear low-density polyethylene film of 0.008-inch or high-density, cross-laminated polyethylene film of 0.004-inch minimum thickness.
- C. Form: Sheet or tube.
- D. Color: Black or natural.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EARTH MOVING

- A. Comply with requirements for excavating, trenching, and backfilling specified in Section "Earth Moving."

3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems.
 - 1. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations.
 - 2. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.
- B. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- E. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- F. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

- I. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- J. Make changes in direction for soil and waste drainage and vent piping using appropriate branches, bends, and long-sweep bends.
 - 1. Sanitary tees and short-sweep 1/4 bends may be used on vertical stacks if change in direction of flow is from horizontal to vertical.
 - 2. Use long-turn, double Y-branch and 1/8-bend fittings if two fixtures are installed back to back or side by side with common drain pipe.
 - a. Straight tees, elbows, and crosses may be used on vent lines.
 - 3. Do not change direction of flow more than 90 degrees.
 - 4. Use proper size of standard increasers and reducers if pipes of different sizes are connected.
 - a. Reducing size of waste piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
- K. Lay buried building waste piping beginning at low point of each system.
 - 1. Install true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Place hub ends of piping upstream.
 - 2. Install required gaskets according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements.
 - 3. Maintain swab in piping and pull past each joint as completed.
- L. Install soil and waste and vent piping at the following minimum slopes unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Building Sanitary Waste: 2 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 3 and smaller; 1 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 4 and larger.
 - 2. Horizontal Sanitary Waste Piping: 2 percent downward in direction of flow.
 - 3. Vent Piping: 1 percent down toward vertical fixture vent or toward vent stack.
- M. Install cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook," Chapter IV, "Installation of Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings."
 - 1. Install encasement on underground piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105/A 21.5.
- N. Install aboveground copper tubing according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- O. Install underground, ductile-iron, force-main piping according to AWWA C600.
 - 1. Install buried piping inside building between wall and floor penetrations and connection to sanitary sewer piping outside building with restrained joints.
 - 2. Anchor pipe to wall or floor. Install thrust-block supports at vertical and horizontal offsets.
 - 3. Install encasement on piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105/A 21.5.
- P. Install underground, copper, force-main tubing according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."

1. Install encasement on piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105/A 21.5.
 - Q. Install force mains at elevations indicated.
 - R. Plumbing Specialties:
 1. Install backwater valves in sanitary waster gravity-flow piping. Comply with requirements for backwater valves specified in Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties.
 2. Install cleanouts at grade and extend to where building sanitary drains connect to building sanitary sewers in sanitary drainage gravity-flow piping. Install cleanout fitting with closure plug inside the building in sanitary drainage force-main piping. Comply with requirements for cleanouts specified in Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties.
 3. Install drains in sanitary drainage gravity-flow piping. Comply with requirements for drains specified in Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties.
 - S. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
 - T. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.
 1. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
 - U. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs.
 1. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
 - V. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.
 1. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."
- ### 3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION
- A. Join hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping with gasket joints according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for compression joints.
 - B. Join hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping with calked joints according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for lead-and-oakum calked joints.
 - C. Join hubless, cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI 310 and CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for hubless-piping coupling joints.
 - D. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1.
 1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies.

2. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
 - a. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
 - b. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.
 - c. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- E. Join copper tube and fittings with soldered joints according to ASTM B 828. Use ASTM B 813, water-flushable, lead-free flux and ASTM B 32, lead-free-alloy solder.
- F. Grooved Joints: Cut groove ends of pipe according to AWWA C606. Lubricate and install gasket over ends of pipes or pipe and fitting. Install coupling housing sections, over gasket, with keys seated in piping grooves. Install and tighten housing bolts.
- G. Flanged Joints: Align bolt holes. Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads. Torque bolts in cross pattern.

3.4 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTING INSTALLATION

A. Transition Couplings:

1. Install transition couplings at joints of piping with small differences in ODs.
2. In Waste Drainage Piping: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
3. In Aboveground Force Main Piping: Fitting-type transition couplings.
4. In Underground Force Main Piping:
 - a. NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Fitting-type transition couplings.
 - b. NPS 2 and Larger: Pressure transition couplings.

B. Dielectric Fittings:

1. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
2. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 and Smaller: Use dielectric nipples or unions.
3. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Use dielectric flanges.
4. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 5 and Larger: Use dielectric flange kits.

3.5 VALVE INSTALLATION

- #### A.
- Comply with requirements in Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping," Section 220523.13 "Butterfly Valves for Plumbing Piping," Section 220523.14 "Check Valves for Plumbing Piping," and Section 220523.15 "Gate Valves for Plumbing Piping" for general-duty valve installation requirements.

B. Shutoff Valves:

1. Install shutoff valve on each sewage pump discharge.
2. Install gate or full-port ball valve for piping NPS 2 and smaller.
3. Install gate valve for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

- C. Check Valves: Install swing check valve, between pump and shutoff valve, on each sewage pump discharge.
- D. Backwater Valves: Install backwater valves in piping subject to backflow.
 - 1. Horizontal Piping: Horizontal backwater valves.
 - 2. Floor Drains: Drain outlet backwater valves unless drain has integral backwater valve.
 - 3. Install backwater valves in accessible locations.
 - 4. Comply with requirements for backwater valve specified in Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties.

3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Comply with requirements for pipe hanger and support devices and installation specified in Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment.
 - 1. Install carbon-steel pipe hangers for horizontal piping in noncorrosive environments.
 - 2. Install stainless-steel pipe hangers for horizontal piping in corrosive environments.
 - 3. Install carbon-steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in noncorrosive environments.
 - 4. Install stainless-steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in corrosive environments.
 - 5. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or Type 42, clamps.
 - 6. Install individual, straight, horizontal piping runs:
 - a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
 - b. Longer Than 100 Feet: MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
 - c. Longer Than 100 Feet if Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
 - 7. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
 - 8. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
- C. Support horizontal piping and tubing within 12 inches of each fitting, valve, and coupling.
- D. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.
- E. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, with 3/8-inch minimum rods.
- F. Install hangers for cast-iron soil piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
 - 1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 - 2. NPS 3: 60 inches with 1/2-inch rod.

3. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 60 inches with 5/8-inch rod.
 4. NPS 6 and NPS 8: 60 inches with 3/4-inch rod.
- G. Install supports for vertical cast-iron soil piping every 15 feet.
- H. Install hangers for steel piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
1. NPS 1-1/4: 84 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 2. NPS 1-1/2: 108 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 3. NPS 2: 10 feet with 3/8-inch rod.
 4. NPS 2-1/2: 11 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
 5. NPS 3: 12 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
 6. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 12 feet with 5/8-inch rod.
 7. NPS 6 and NPS 8: 12 feet with 3/4-inch rod.
- I. Install supports for vertical steel piping every 15 feet.
- J. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
1. NPS 1-1/4: 72 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 2. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 96 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 3. NPS 2-1/2: 108 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
 4. NPS 3 and NPS 5: 10 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
 5. NPS 6: 10 feet with 5/8-inch rod.
 6. NPS 8: 10 feet with 3/4-inch rod.
- K. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet.
- L. Support piping and tubing not listed above according to MSS SP-58 and manufacturer's written instructions.

3.7 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Connect soil and waste piping to exterior sanitary sewerage piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- C. Connect drainage and vent piping to the following:
1. Plumbing Fixtures: Connect drainage piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
 2. Plumbing Fixtures and Equipment: Connect atmospheric vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by authorities having jurisdiction.
 3. Plumbing Specialties: Connect drainage and vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
 4. Install test tees (wall cleanouts) in conductors near floor and floor cleanouts with cover flush with floor.

5. Install horizontal backwater valves with cleanout cover flush with floor.
 6. Comply with requirements for backwater valves cleanouts and drains specified in Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties.
 7. Equipment: Connect drainage piping as indicated. Provide shutoff valve if indicated and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for connections NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
- D. Connect force-main piping to the following:
1. Sanitary Sewer: To exterior force main.
 2. Sewage Pump: To sewage pump discharge.
- E. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance of equipment.
- F. Make connections according to the following unless otherwise indicated:
1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
 2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.

3.8 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify exposed sanitary waste and vent piping.
- B. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction.
1. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in and before setting fixtures.
 2. Final Inspection: Arrange for final inspection by authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
- B. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass test or inspection, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
- C. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Test sanitary waste and vent piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:

1. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired.
 - a. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
2. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced waste and vent piping until it has been tested and approved.
 - a. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
3. Roughing-in Plumbing Test Procedure: Test waste and vent piping except outside leaders on completion of roughing-in.
 - a. Close openings in piping system and fill with water to point of overflow, but not less than 10-foot head of water.
 - b. From 15 minutes before inspection starts to completion of inspection, water level must not drop.
 - c. Inspect joints for leaks.
4. Finished Plumbing Test Procedure: After plumbing fixtures have been set and traps filled with water, test connections and prove they are gastight and watertight.
 - a. Plug vent-stack openings on roof and building drains where they leave building. Introduce air into piping system equal to pressure of 1-inch wg.
 - b. Use U-tube or manometer inserted in trap of water closet to measure this pressure.
 - c. Air pressure must remain constant without introducing additional air throughout period of inspection.
 - d. Inspect plumbing fixture connections for gas and water leaks.
5. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
6. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.

3.10 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean interior of piping. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.
- B. Protect sanitary waste and vent piping during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt and debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.
- C. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of day and when work stops.
- D. Exposed PVC Piping: Protect plumbing vents exposed to sunlight with two coats of water-based latex paint.

3.11 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Flanges and unions may be used on aboveground pressure piping unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Aboveground, soil and waste and vent piping NPS 6 and smaller shall be any of the following:

1. Service class, Asphaltic Coating cast-iron bell and spigot soil piping; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
 2. Hubless, Asphaltic Coating cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; heavy duty cast-iron stainless steel hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
 3. Copper DWV tube, copper drainage fittings, and soldered joints.
 4. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- C. Underground, soil, waste, and vent piping NPS 6 and smaller shall be any of the following:
1. Service class, Asphaltic Coating, cast-iron bell and spigot soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
 2. Copper DWV tube, copper drainage fittings, and soldered joints.
 3. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- D. Aboveground sanitary-sewage force mains NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2 shall be any of the following:
1. Hard copper tube, Type L; copper pressure fittings; and soldered joints.
- E. Aboveground sanitary-sewage force mains NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 6 shall be any of the following:
1. Hard copper tube, Type L; copper pressure fittings; and soldered joints.
- F. Underground sanitary-sewage force mains NPS 4 and smaller shall be any of the following:
1. Hard copper tube, Type L; wrought-copper pressure fittings; and soldered joints.
 2. Ductile-iron, Asphaltic Coating mechanical-joint piping and mechanical joints.
 3. Ductile-iron, Asphaltic Coating push-on-joint piping and push-on joints.
 4. Fitting-type transition coupling for piping smaller than NPS 1-1/2 and pressure transition coupling for NPS 1-1/2 and larger if dissimilar pipe materials.
- G. Underground sanitary-sewage force mains NPS 5 and larger shall be any of the following:
1. Hard copper tube, Type L; wrought-copper pressure fittings; and soldered joints.
 2. Ductile-iron, Asphaltic Coating mechanical-joint piping and mechanical joints.
 3. Ductile-iron, Asphaltic Coating push-on-joint piping and push-on joints.
 4. Pressure transition couplings if dissimilar pipe materials.

END OF SECTION 22 1316

SECTION 22 1319 - SANITARY WASTE PIPING SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Backwater valves.
 - 2. Cleanouts.
 - 3. Floor drains.
 - 4. Air-admittance valves.
 - 5. Through-penetration firestop assemblies.
 - 6. Miscellaneous sanitary drainage piping specialties.
 - 7. Flashing materials.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. FRP: Fiberglass-reinforced plastic.
- B. HDPE: High-density polyethylene plastic.
- C. PE: Polyethylene plastic.
- D. PP: Polypropylene plastic.
- E. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for frost-resistant vent terminals.
 - 1. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For drainage piping specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Drainage piping specialties shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- C. Comply with NSF 14, "Plastics Piping Components and Related Materials," for plastic sanitary piping specialty components.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Cast-in-Place Concrete.
- B. Coordinate size and location of roof penetrations.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 BACKWATER VALVES

- A. Horizontal, Cast-Iron Backwater Valves:
 - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
 - b. MIFAB, Inc.
 - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfr. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
 - 2. Standard: ASME A112.14.1.
 - 3. Size: Same as connected piping.
 - 4. Body: Cast iron.
 - 5. Cover: Cast iron with bolted or threaded access check valve.
 - 6. End Connections: Hub and spigot or no hub.
 - 7. Type Check Valve: Removable, bronze, swing check, factory assembled or field modified to hang closed.
 - 8. Extension: ASTM A 74, Service class; full-size, cast-iron, soil-pipe extension to field-installed cleanout at floor; replaces backwater valve cover.

2.2 CLEANOUTS

- A. Exposed Metal Cleanouts:
 - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
 - b. MIFAB, Inc.
 - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
 - 2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M for cast iron for cleanout test tee.

3. Size: Same as connected drainage piping
4. Body Material: Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
5. Closure: Countersunk, plug.
6. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.
7. Closure: Stainless-steel plug with seal.

B. Metal Floor Cleanouts:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
 - b. Oatey.
 - c. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M for adjustable housing cleanout.
3. Size: Same as connected branch.
4. Type: Adjustable housing.
5. Body or Ferrule: Cast iron.
6. Clamping Device: Not required.
7. Outlet Connection: Inside calk.
8. Closure: Brass plug with straight threads and gasket.
9. Adjustable Housing Material: Cast iron with threads.
10. Frame and Cover Material and Finish: Nickel-bronze, copper alloy.
11. Frame and Cover Shape: Round.
12. Top Loading Classification: Heavy Duty.
13. Riser: ASTM A 74, Service class, cast-iron drainage pipe fitting and riser to cleanout.
14. Standard: ASME A112.3.1.
15. Size: Same as connected branch.
16. Housing: Stainless steel.
17. Closure: Stainless steel with seal.
18. Riser: Stainless-steel drainage pipe fitting to cleanout.

C. Cast-Iron Wall Cleanouts:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
 - b. MIFAB, Inc.
 - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; d of Smith Industries, Inc.
2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M. Include wall access.
3. Size: Same as connected drainage piping.
4. Body: Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
5. Closure: Countersunk, cast-iron plug.
6. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.
7. Wall Access: Round, deep, chrome-plated bronze cover plate with screw.
8. Wall Access: Round wall-installation frame and cover.

2.3 FLOOR DRAINS

A. Cast-Iron Floor Drains:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Commercial Enameling Co.
 - b. Josam Company; Josam Div.
 - c. MIFAB, Inc.
2. Standard: ASME A112.6.3.
3. Pattern: Floor drain.
4. Body Material: Gray iron.
5. Seepage Flange: Not required.
6. Anchor Flange: Not required.
7. Clamping Device: Required.
8. Outlet: Bottom.
9. Top or Strainer Material: Nickel bronze.
10. Top of Body and Strainer Finish: Nickel bronze.
11. Top Shape: Round.
12. Top Loading Classification: Medium Duty.
13. Trap Material: Cast iron.
14. Trap Pattern: Standard P-trap with integral trap seal device.

2.4 AIR-ADMITTANCE VALVES

A. Fixture Air-Admittance Valves:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Durgo, Inc.
 - b. Oatey.
 - c. ProSet Systems Inc.
2. Standard: ASSE 1051, Type A for single fixture or Type B for branch piping.
3. Housing: Plastic.
4. Operation: Mechanical sealing diaphragm.
5. Size: Same as connected fixture or branch vent piping.

2.5 THROUGH-PENETRATION FIRESTOP ASSEMBLIES

A. Through-Penetration Firestop Assemblies:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. ProSet Systems Inc.
2. Standard: UL 1479 assembly of sleeve and stack fitting with firestopping plug.
3. Size: Same as connected soil, waste, or vent stack.
4. Sleeve: Molded PVC plastic, of length to match slab thickness and with integral nailing flange on one end for installation in cast-in-place concrete slabs.

5. Stack Fitting: ASTM A 48/A 48M, gray-iron, hubless-pattern, wye branch with neoprene O-ring at base and gray-iron plug in thermal-release harness. Include PVC protective cap for plug.
6. Special Coating: Corrosion resistant on interior of fittings.

2.6 MISCELLANEOUS SANITARY DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Open Drains:

1. Description: Shop or field fabricate from ASTM A 74, Service class, hub-and-spigot, cast-iron, soil-pipe fittings. Include P-trap, hub-and-spigot riser section; and where required, increaser fitting joined with ASTM C 564, rubber gaskets.
2. Size: Same as connected waste piping.

B. Air-Gap Fittings:

1. Standard: ASME A112.1.2, for fitting designed to ensure fixed, positive air gap between installed inlet and outlet piping.
2. Body: Bronze or cast iron.
3. Inlet: Opening in top of body.
4. Outlet: Larger than inlet.
5. Size: Same as connected waste piping and with inlet large enough for associated indirect waste piping.

C. Sleeve Flashing Device:

1. Description: Manufactured, cast-iron fitting, with clamping device, that forms sleeve for pipe floor penetrations of floor membrane. Include galvanized-steel pipe extension in top of fitting that will extend 1 inch above finished floor and galvanized-steel pipe extension in bottom of fitting that will extend through floor slab.
2. Size: As required for close fit to riser or stack piping.

D. Stack Flashing Fittings:

1. Description: Counterflashing-type, cast-iron fitting, with bottom recess for terminating roof membrane, and with threaded or hub top for extending vent pipe.
2. Size: Same as connected stack vent or vent stack.

E. Vent Caps:

1. Description: Cast-iron body with threaded or hub inlet and vandal-proof design. Include vented hood and setscrews to secure to vent pipe.
2. Size: Same as connected stack vent or vent stack.

F. Frost-Resistant Vent Terminals:

1. Description: Manufactured or shop-fabricated assembly constructed of copper, lead-coated copper, or galvanized steel.
2. Design: To provide 1-inch enclosed air space between outside of pipe and inside of flashing collar extension, with counterflashing.

G. Expansion Joints:

1. Standard: ASME A112.21.2M.
2. Body: Cast iron with bronze sleeve, packing, and gland.
3. End Connections: Matching connected piping.

4. Size: Same as connected soil, waste, or vent piping.

2.7 FLASHING MATERIALS

- A. Lead Sheet: ASTM B 749, Type L51121, copper bearing, with the following minimum weights and thicknesses, unless otherwise indicated:
 1. General Use: 4.0-lb/sq. ft., 0.0625-inch thickness.
 2. Vent Pipe Flashing: 3.0-lb/sq. ft., 0.0469-inch thickness.
 3. Burning: 6-lb/sq. ft., 0.0938-inch thickness.
- B. Copper Sheet: ASTM B 152/B 152M, of the following minimum weights and thicknesses, unless otherwise indicated:
 1. General Applications: 12 oz./sq. ft.
 2. Vent Pipe Flashing: 8 oz./sq. ft.
- C. Zinc-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, with 0.20 percent copper content and 0.04-inch minimum thickness, unless otherwise indicated. Include G90 hot-dip galvanized, mill-phosphatized finish for painting if indicated.
- D. Elastic Membrane Sheet: ASTM D 4068, flexible, chlorinated polyethylene, 40-mil minimum thickness.
- E. Fasteners: Metal compatible with material and substrate being fastened.
- F. Metal Accessories: Sheet metal strips, clamps, anchoring devices, and similar accessory units required for installation; matching or compatible with material being installed.
- G. Solder: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloy.
- H. Bituminous Coating: SSPC-Paint 12, solvent-type, bituminous mastic.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install backwater valves in building drain piping. For interior installation, provide cleanout deck plate flush with floor and centered over backwater valve cover, and of adequate size to remove valve cover for servicing.
- B. Install cleanouts in aboveground piping and building drain piping according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
 1. Size same as drainage piping up to NPS 4. Use NPS 4 for larger drainage piping unless larger cleanout is indicated.
 2. Locate at each change in direction of piping greater than 45 degrees.
 3. Locate at minimum intervals of 50 feet for piping NPS 4 and smaller and 100 feet for larger piping.
 4. Locate at base of each vertical soil and waste stack.

- C. For floor cleanouts for piping below floors, install cleanout deck plates with top flush with finished floor.
- D. For cleanouts located in concealed piping, install cleanout wall access covers, of types indicated, with frame and cover flush with finished wall.
- E. Install floor drains at low points of surface areas to be drained. Set grates of drains flush with finished floor, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Position floor drains for easy access and maintenance.
 - 2. Set floor drains below elevation of surrounding finished floor to allow floor drainage.
 - 3. Install floor-drain flashing collar or flange so no leakage occurs between drain and adjoining flooring. Maintain integrity of waterproof membranes where penetrated.
 - 4. Install individual traps for floor drains connected to sanitary building drain, unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Install fixture air-admittance valves on fixture drain piping.
- G. Install roof flashing assemblies on sanitary stack vents and vent stacks that extend through roof.
- H. Install flashing fittings on sanitary stack vents and vent stacks that extend through roof.
- I. Install through-penetration firestop assemblies in plastic conductors and stacks at floor penetrations.
- J. Assemble open drain fittings and install with top of hub 1 inch above floor.
- K. Install air-gap fittings on draining-type backflow preventers and on indirect-waste piping discharge into sanitary drainage system.
- L. Install sleeve flashing device with each riser and stack passing through floors with waterproof membrane.
- M. Install vent caps on each vent pipe passing through roof.
- N. Install frost-resistant vent terminals on each vent pipe passing through roof. Maintain 1-inch clearance between vent pipe and roof substrate.
- O. Install expansion joints on vertical stacks and conductors. Position expansion joints for easy access and maintenance.
- P. Install frost-proof vent caps on each vent pipe passing through roof. Maintain 1-inch clearance between vent pipe and roof substrate.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements in Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping for piping installation requirements. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to equipment to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Ground equipment according to Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems.
- D. Connect wiring according to Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables.

3.3 FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. Fabricate flashing from single piece unless large pans, sumps, or other drainage shapes are required. Join flashing according to the following if required:
 - 1. Lead Sheets: Burn joints of lead sheets 6.0-lb/sq. ft., 0.0938-inch thickness or thicker. Solder joints of lead sheets 4.0-lb/sq. ft., 0.0625-inch thickness or thinner.
 - 2. Copper Sheets: Solder joints of copper sheets.
- B. Install sheet flashing on pipes, sleeves, and specialties passing through or embedded in floors and roofs with waterproof membrane.
 - 1. Pipe Flashing: Sleeve type, matching pipe size, with minimum length of 10 inches, and skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around pipe.
 - 2. Sleeve Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around sleeve.
 - 3. Embedded Specialty Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around specialty.
- C. Set flashing on floors and roofs in solid coating of bituminous cement.
- D. Secure flashing into sleeve and specialty clamping ring or device.
- E. Install flashing for piping passing through roofs with counterflashing or commercially made flashing fittings, according to Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim.
- F. Extend flashing up vent pipe passing through roofs and turn down into pipe, or secure flashing into cast-iron sleeve having calking recess.
- G. Fabricate and install flashing and pans, sumps, and other drainage shapes.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt or debris and to prevent damage from traffic or construction work.
- B. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.

END OF SECTION 22 1319

SECTION 22 1413 - FACILITY STORM DRAINAGE PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Pipe, tube, and fittings.
 - 2. Specialty pipe fittings.
 - 3. Encasement for underground metal piping.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Storm Drainage Piping: 10-foot head of water.
 - 2. Storm Drainage, Force-Main Piping: 100 psig.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. LEED Submittals:
 - 1. Product Data for Credit IEQ 4.1: For solvent cements and adhesive primers, documentation including printed statement of VOC content.
 - 2. Laboratory Test Reports for Credit IEQ 4: For solvent cements and adhesive primers, documentation indicating that products comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- C. Shop Drawings: For controlled-flow roof drainage system. Include calculations, plans, and details.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For storm drainage piping, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
2. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

B. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Comply with NSF/ANSI 14, "Plastics Piping System Components and Related Materials," for plastic piping components. Include marking with "NSF-drain" for plastic drain piping and "NSF-sewer" for plastic sewer piping.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.

2.2 HUB-AND-SPIGOT, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 74, Service and Extra Heavy classes.
- B. Gaskets: ASTM C 564, rubber.
- C. Calking Materials: ASTM B 29, pure lead and oakum or hemp fiber.

2.3 HUBLESS, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 888 or CISPI 301.
- A. Heavy-Duty, Hubless-Piping Couplings:
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. ANACO-Husky.
 2. Standards: ASTM C 1277 and ASTM C 1540.
 3. Description: Stainless-steel shield with stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.
- B. Cast-Iron, Hubless-Piping Couplings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. MG Piping Products Company.
2. Standard: ASTM C 1277.
3. Description: Two-piece ASTM A 48/A 48M, cast-iron housing; stainless-steel bolts and nuts; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.

2.4 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Copper DWV Tube: ASTM B 306, drainage tube, drawn temper.
- B. Copper Drainage Fittings: ASME B16.23, cast-copper fittings or ASME B16.29, wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings.
- C. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L, water tube, drawn temper.
- D. Soft Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L, water tube, annealed temper.
- E. Copper Pressure Fittings:
 1. Copper Fittings: ASME B16.18, cast-copper-alloy fittings or ASME B16.22, wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings. Furnish wrought-copper fittings if indicated.
 2. Copper Unions: MSS SP-123, copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces, and solder-joint or threaded ends.
- F. Copper Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, cast copper with solder-joint end.
 1. Flange Gasket Materials: ASME B16.21, full-face, flat, nonmetallic, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
 2. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Solder: ASTM B 32, lead free with ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux.

2.5 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTINGS

- A. Transition Couplings:
 1. General Requirements: Fitting or device for joining piping with small differences in OD's or of different materials. Include end connections same size as and compatible with pipes to be joined.
 2. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified-piping-system fitting.
 3. Unshielded, Nonpressure Transition Couplings:
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1) Dallas Specialty & Mfg. Co.

- 2) Fernco Inc.
 - 3) Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.
 - 4) Plastic Oddities; a division of Diverse Corporate Technologies, Inc.
 - b. Standard: ASTM C 1173.
 - c. Description: Elastomeric, sleeve-type, reducing or transition pattern. Include shear ring and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
 - d. Sleeve Materials:
 - 1) For Cast-Iron Soil Pipes: ASTM C 564, rubber.
 - 2) For Plastic Pipes: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seal or ASTM D 5926, PVC.
 - 3) For Dissimilar Pipes: ASTM D 5926, PVC or other material compatible with pipe materials being joined.
4. Shielded, Nonpressure Transition Couplings:
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1) Cascade Waterworks Mfg. Co.
 - 2) Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.
 - b. Standard: ASTM C 1460.
 - c. Description: Elastomeric or rubber sleeve with full-length, corrosion-resistant outer shield and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
5. Pressure Transition Couplings:
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1) Cascade Waterworks Mfg. Co.
 - 2) Dresser, Inc.
 - 3) EBAA Iron, Inc.
 - 4) Ford Meter Box Company, Inc. (The)
 - 5) JCM Industries, Inc.
 - 6) Romac Industries, Inc.
 - 7) Smith-Blair, Inc.; a Sensus company.
 - 8) Viking Johnson; c/o Mueller Co.
 - b. Standard: AWWA C219.
 - c. Description: Metal, sleeve-type couplings same size as, with pressure rating at least equal to and ends compatible with, pipes to be joined.
 - d. Center-Sleeve Material: Manufacturer's standard.
 - e. Gasket Material: Natural or synthetic rubber.
 - f. Metal Component Finish: Corrosion-resistant coating or material.

B. Dielectric Fittings:

1. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
2. Dielectric Unions:

- a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1) Capitol Manufacturing Company.
 - 2) Central Plastics Company.
 - 3) Hart Industries International, Inc.
 - 4) Jomar International Ltd.
 - 5) Matco-Norca, Inc.
 - 6) McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
 - 7) Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 - 8) Wilkins; a Zurn company.
- b. Description:
 - 1) Standard: ASSE 1079.
 - 2) Pressure Rating: 150 psigat 180 deg F.
 - 3) End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
- 3. Dielectric Flanges:
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1) Capitol Manufacturing Company.
 - 2) Central Plastics Company.
 - 3) Matco-Norca, Inc.
 - 4) Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 - 5) Wilkins; a Zurn company.
 - b. Description:
 - 1) Standard: ASSE 1079.
 - 2) Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
 - 3) Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
 - 4) End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
- 4. Dielectric-Flange Insulating Kits:
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1) Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
 - 2) Calpico, Inc.
 - 3) Central Plastics Company.
 - 4) Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
 - b. Description:
 - 1) Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.
 - 2) Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
 - 3) Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
 - 4) Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
 - 5) Washers: Phenolic with steel-backing washers.
- 5. Dielectric Nipples:
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- 1) Elster Perfection.
- 2) Grinnell Mechanical Products.
- 3) Matco-Norca, Inc.
- 4) Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
- 5) Victaulic Company.

b. Description:

- 1) Electroplated steel nipple complying with ASTM F 1545.
- 2) Pressure Rating: 300 psig at 225 deg F.
- 3) End Connections: Male threaded or grooved.
- 4) Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, propylene.

2.6 ENCASEMENT FOR UNDERGROUND METAL PIPING

- A. Standard: ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
- B. Material: High-density, cross laminated PE film of 0.004-inch or LLDPE film of 0.008-inch minimum thickness.
- C. Form: Sheet or tube.
- D. Color: Black or natural.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EARTH MOVING

- A. Comply with requirements for excavating, trenching, and backfilling specified in Earth Moving.

3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations from layout are approved on coordination drawings.
- B. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- E. Install piping to permit valve servicing.

- F. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- J. Install seismic restraints on piping. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment.
- K. Make changes in direction for storm drainage piping using appropriate branches, bends, and long-sweep bends. Do not change direction of flow more than 90 degrees. Use proper size of standard increasers and reducers if pipes of different sizes are connected. Reducing size of drainage piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
- L. Lay buried building storm drainage piping beginning at low point of each system. Install true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Place hub ends of piping upstream. Install required gaskets according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements. Maintain swab in piping and pull past each joint as completed.
- M. Install storm drainage piping at the following minimum slopes unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Building and Horizontal Storm Drain: 2 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 3 and smaller; 1 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 4 and larger.
- N. Install cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook," Chapter IV, "Installation of Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings."
 - 1. Install encasement on underground piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
- O. Install aboveground copper tubing according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- P. Install engineered controlled-flow drain specialties and storm drainage piping in locations indicated.
- Q. Install underground, force-main piping according to AWWA C600. Install buried piping inside building between wall and floor penetrations and connection to storm sewer piping outside building with restrained joints. Anchor pipe to wall or floor. Install thrust-block supports at vertical and horizontal offsets.
 - 1. Install encasement on piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
- R. Install underground, copper, force-main tubing according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."

1. Install encasement on piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
 - S. Install force mains at elevations indicated.
 - T. Plumbing Specialties:
 1. Install backwater valves in storm drainage gravity-flow piping. Comply with requirements for backwater valves specified in Storm Drainage Piping Specialties.
 2. Install cleanouts at grade and extend to where building storm drains connect to building storm sewers in storm drainage gravity-flow piping. Install cleanout fitting with closure plug inside the building in storm drainage force-main piping. Comply with requirements for cleanouts specified in Storm Drainage Piping Specialties.
 3. Install drains in storm drainage gravity-flow piping. Comply with requirements for drains specified in Storm Drainage Piping Specialties.
 - U. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
 - V. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping.
 - W. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping.
 - X. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping.
- ### 3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION
- A. Hub-and-Spigot, Cast-Iron Soil Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for compression joints.
 - B. Hub-and-Spigot, Cast-Iron Soil Piping Calked Joints: Join according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for lead-and-oakum calked joints.
 - C. Hubless, Cast-Iron Soil Piping Coupled Joints: Join according to CISPI 310 and CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for hubless-piping coupling joints.
 - D. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.

- E. Join copper tube and fittings with soldered joints according to ASTM B 828 procedure. Use ASTM B 813, water-flushable, lead-free flux and ASTM B 32, lead-free-alloy solder.
- F. Grooved Joints: Cut groove ends of pipe according to AWWA C606. Lubricate and install gasket over ends of pipes or pipe and fittings. Install coupling housing sections, over gasket, with keys seated in piping grooves. Install and tighten housing bolts.
- G. Flanged Joints: Align bolt holes. Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads. Torque bolts in cross pattern.

3.4 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTING INSTALLATION

A. Transition Couplings:

- 1. Install transition couplings at joints of piping with small differences in OD's.
- 2. In Drainage Piping: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- 3. In Aboveground Force-Main Piping: Fitting-type transition couplings.
- 4. In Underground Force-Main Piping:
 - a. NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Fitting-type transition couplings.
 - b. NPS 2 and Larger: Pressure transition couplings.

B. Dielectric Fittings:

- 1. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
- 2. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 and Smaller: Use dielectric nipples.
- 3. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Use dielectric flanges.
- 4. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 5 and Larger: Use dielectric flange kits.

3.5 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. General valve installation requirements are specified in General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping.
- B. Shutoff Valves: Install shutoff valve on each sump pump discharge.
 - 1. Install gate or full-port ball valve for piping NPS 2 and smaller.
 - 2. Install gate valve for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
- C. Check Valves: Install swing-check valve, between pump and shutoff valve, on each sump pump discharge.
- D. Backwater Valves: Install backwater valves in piping subject to backflow.
 - 1. Horizontal Piping: Horizontal backwater valves. Use normally closed type unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Install backwater valves in accessible locations.

3. Comply with requirements for backwater valves specified in Storm Drainage Piping Specialties.

3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment.
- B. Comply with requirements for pipe hanger and support devices and installation specified in Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment.
 1. Install carbon-steel pipe hangers for horizontal piping in noncorrosive environments.
 2. Install stainless-steel pipe hangers for horizontal piping in corrosive environments.
 3. Install carbon-steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in noncorrosive environments.
 4. Install stainless-steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in corrosive environments.
 5. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or Type 42, clamps.
 6. Individual, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs:
 - a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
 - b. Longer Than 100 Feet: MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
 - c. Longer Than 100 Feet if Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
 7. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
 8. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
- C. Support horizontal piping and tubing within 12 inches of each fitting, valve, and coupling.
- D. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.
- E. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, with 3/8-inch minimum rods.
- F. Install hangers for cast-iron soil piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
 1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 2. NPS 3: 60 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
 3. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 60 inches with 5/8-inch rod.
 4. NPS 6 and NPS 8: 60 inches with 3/4-inch rod.
- G. Install supports for vertical cast-iron soil piping every 15 feet.
- H. Install hangers for steel piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
 1. NPS 1-1/4: 84 inches with 3/8-inch rod.

2. NPS 1-1/2: 108 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
3. NPS 2: 10 feet with 3/8-inch rod.
4. NPS 2-1/2: 11 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
5. NPS 3: 12 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
6. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 12 feet with 5/8-inch rod.
7. NPS 6 and NPS 8: 12 feet with 3/4-inch rod.

- I. Install supports for vertical steel piping every 15 feet.
- J. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
 1. NPS 1-1/4: 72 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 2. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 96 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 3. NPS 2-1/2: 108 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
 4. NPS 3 to NPS 5: 10 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
 5. NPS 6: 10 feet with 5/8-inch rod.
 6. NPS 8: 10 feet with 3/4-inch rod.
- K. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet.
- L. Support piping and tubing not listed above according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

3.7 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Connect interior storm drainage piping to exterior storm drainage piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- C. Connect storm drainage piping to roof drains and storm drainage specialties.
 1. Install test tees (wall cleanouts) in conductors near floor, and floor cleanouts with cover flush with floor.
 2. Install horizontal backwater valves with cleanout cover flush with floor or in pit with pit cover flush with floor.
 3. Comply with requirements for backwater valves cleanouts and drains specified in Storm Drainage Piping Specialties.
- D. Connect force-main piping to the following:
 1. Storm Sewer: To exterior force main.
 2. Sump Pumps: To sump pump discharge.
- E. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance of equipment.
- F. Make connections according to the following unless otherwise indicated:

1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.

3.8 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify exposed storm drainage piping. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction.
 1. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in.
 2. Final Inspection: Arrange for final inspection by authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
- B. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass test or inspection, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
- C. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Test storm drainage piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
 1. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
 2. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced storm drainage piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
 3. Test Procedure: Test storm drainage piping on completion of roughing-in. Close openings in piping system and fill with water to point of overflow, but not less than 10-foot head of water. From 15 minutes before inspection starts until completion of inspection, water level must not drop. Inspect joints for leaks.
 4. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
 5. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.
- E. Test force-main piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
 1. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced force-main piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.

2. Cap and subject piping to static-water pressure of 50 psig above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
3. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
4. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.

3.10 CLEANING

- A. Clean interior of piping. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.
- B. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt and debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.
- C. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of day and when work stops.

3.11 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Flanges and unions may be used on aboveground pressure piping unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Aboveground, storm drainage piping shall be any of the following:
 1. Service class, Asphaltic Coating cast-iron bell and spigot soil piping; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
 2. Hubless, Asphaltic Coating cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; heavy duty cast-iron stainless steel hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
 3. Copper DWV tube, copper drainage fittings, and soldered joints.
 4. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- C. Underground storm drainage piping shall be any of the following:
 1. Service class, Asphaltic Coating, cast-iron bell and spigot soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
 2. Copper DWV tube, copper drainage fittings, and soldered joints.
 3. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- D. Aboveground storm drainage force mains NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2 shall be any of the following:
 1. Hard copper tube, copper pressure fittings, and soldered joints.
- E. Aboveground storm drainage force mains NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 6 shall be any of the following:
 1. Hard copper tube, copper pressure fittings, and soldered joints.
 2. Fitting-type transition couplings if dissimilar pipe materials.

- F. Underground storm drainage force mains NPS 4 and smaller shall be any of the following:
1. Soft copper tube; wrought-copper pressure fittings; and soldered joints.
 2. Fitting-type transition coupling for piping smaller than NPS 1-1/2 and pressure transition coupling for NPS 1-1/2 and larger if dissimilar pipe materials.

END OF SECTION 22 1413

SECTION 22 1423 - STORM DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Roof drains.
 - 2. Miscellaneous storm drainage piping specialties.
 - 3. Cleanouts.
 - 4. Backwater valves.
 - 5. Through-penetration firestop assemblies.
 - 6. Flashing materials.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Drainage piping specialties shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL ROOF DRAINS

- A. Cast-Iron, Medium-Sump, General-Purpose Roof Drains:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Josam Company.
 - b. Jay R Smith.
 - c. MIFAB, Inc.
 - 2. Standard: ASME A112.6.4, for general-purpose roof drains.
 - 3. Body Material: Cast iron.
 - 4. Dimension of Body: 12-inch diameter.
 - 5. Dome Material: Aluminum.

2.2 MISCELLANEOUS STORM DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Conductor Nozzles:

1. Description: Bronze body with threaded inlet and bronze wall flange with mounting holes.
2. Size: Same as connected conductor.

2.3 CLEANOUTS

A. Floor Cleanouts:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Josam Company.
 - b. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
 - c. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Products Operation.
2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M, for adjustable housing cleanouts.
3. Size: Same as connected branch.
4. Type: Adjustable housing.
5. Body or Ferrule Material: Cast iron.
6. Outlet Connection: Inside calk.
7. Closure: Brass plug with straight threads and gasket].
8. Adjustable Housing Material: Cast iron with threads.
9. Frame and Cover Material and Finish: Nickel-bronze, copper alloy.
10. Frame and Cover Shape: Round.
11. Top-Loading Classification: Heavy Duty.
12. Riser: ASTM A 74, Service class, cast-iron drainage pipe fitting and riser to cleanout.

B. Test Tees :

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Josam Company.
 - b. MIFAB, Inc.
 - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M and ASTM A 74, ASTM A 888, or CISPI 301, for cleanout test tees.
3. Size: Same as connected drainage piping.
4. Body Material: Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil-pipe T-branch or hubless, cast-iron soil-pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
5. Closure Plug: Countersunk or raised head.
6. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.

C. Wall Cleanouts :

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Josam Company.
 - b. MIFAB, Inc.
 - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M, for cleanouts. Include wall access.
3. Size: Same as connected drainage piping.
4. Body Material: Hubless, cast-iron soil-pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
5. Closure: Countersunk plug.
6. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.
7. Wall Access: Round, deep, chrome-plated bronze cover plate with screw.
8. Wall Access: Round wall-installation frame and cover.

2.4 BACKWATER VALVES

A. Horizontal, Cast-Iron Backwater Valves:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
 - b. MIFAB, Inc.
 - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfr. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
2. Standard: ASME A112.14.1.
3. Size: Same as connected piping.
4. Body: Cast iron.
5. Cover: Cast iron with bolted or threaded access check valve.
6. End Connections: Hub and spigot or no hub.
7. Type Check Valve: Removable, bronze, swing check, factory assembled or field modified to hang closed.
8. Extension: ASTM A 74, Service class; full-size, cast-iron, soil-pipe extension to field-installed cleanout at floor; replaces backwater valve cover.

2.5 THROUGH-PENETRATION FIRESTOP ASSEMBLIES

A. Through-Penetration Firestop Assemblies:

1. Standard: ASTM E 814, for through-penetration firestop assemblies.
2. Certification and Listing: Intertek Testing Service NA for through-penetration firestop assemblies.
3. Size: Same as connected pipe.

4. Sleeve: Molded PVC plastic, of length to match slab thickness and with integral nailing flange on one end for installation in cast-in-place concrete slabs.
5. Stack Fitting: ASTM A 48/A 48M, gray-iron, hubless-pattern, wye branch with neoprene O-ring at base and gray-iron plug in thermal-release harness. Include PVC protective cap for plug.
6. Special Coating: Corrosion resistant on interior of fittings.

2.6 FLASHING MATERIALS

- A. Copper Sheet: ASTM B 152/B 152M, 12 oz./sq. ft..
- B. Zinc-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, with 0.20 percent copper content and 0.04-inch minimum thickness unless otherwise indicated. Include G90 hot-dip galvanized, mill-phosphatized finish for painting if indicated.
- C. Elastic Membrane Sheet: ASTM D 4068, flexible, chlorinated polyethylene, 40-mil minimum thickness.
- D. Fasteners: Metal compatible with material and substrate being fastened.
- E. Metal Accessories: Sheet metal strips, clamps, anchoring devices, and similar accessory units required for installation; matching or compatible with material being installed.
- F. Solder: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloy.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install roof drains at low points of roof areas according to roof membrane manufacturer's written installation instructions.
 1. Install flashing collar or flange of roof drain to prevent leakage between drain and adjoining roofing. Maintain integrity of waterproof membranes where penetrated.
 2. Install expansion joints, if indicated, in roof drain outlets.
 3. Position roof drains for easy access and maintenance.
- B. Install downspout adapters on outlet of back-outlet parapet roof drains and connect to sheet metal downspouts.
- C. Install conductor nozzles at exposed bottom of conductors where they spill onto grade.
- D. Install cleanouts in aboveground piping and building drain piping according to the following instructions unless otherwise indicated:
 1. Use cleanouts the same size as drainage piping up to NPS 4. Use NPS 4 for larger drainage piping unless larger cleanout is indicated.
 2. Locate cleanouts at each change in direction of piping greater than 45 degrees.

3. Locate cleanouts at minimum intervals of 50 feet for piping NPS 4 and smaller and 100 feet for larger piping.
4. Locate cleanouts at base of each vertical soil and waste stack.
- E. For floor cleanouts for piping below floors, install cleanout deck plates with top flush with finished floor.
- F. For cleanouts located in concealed piping, install cleanout wall access covers, of types indicated, with frame and cover flush with finished wall.
- G. Install horizontal backwater valves in floor with cover flush with floor.
- H. Install drain-outlet backwater valves in outlet of drains.
- I. Install test tees in vertical conductors and near floor.
- J. Install wall cleanouts in vertical conductors. Install access door in wall if indicated.
- K. Install trench drains at low points of surface areas to be drained. Set grates of drains flush with finished surface unless otherwise indicated.
- L. Assemble channel drainage system components according to manufacturer's written instructions. Install on support devices so that top will be flush with adjacent surface.
- M. Install through-penetration firestop assemblies in plastic conductors at concrete floor penetrations.
- N. Install sleeve flashing device with each conductor passing through floors with waterproof membrane.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Facility Storm Drainage Piping. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

3.3 FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. Fabricate flashing from single piece of metal unless large pans, sumps, or other drainage shapes are required. Join flashing according to the following if required:
 1. Lead Sheets: Burn joints of 6.0-lb/sq. ft. lead sheets, 0.0938-inch thickness or thicker. Solder joints of 4.0-lb/sq. ft. lead sheets, 0.0625-inch thickness or thinner.
 2. Copper Sheets: Solder joints of copper sheets.
- B. Install sheet flashing on pipes, sleeves, and specialties passing through or embedded in floors and roofs with waterproof membrane.
 1. Pipe Flashing: Sleeve type, matching the pipe size, with a minimum length of 10 inches and with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around pipe.

2. Sleeve Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around sleeve.
 3. Embedded Specialty Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around specialty.
- C. Set flashing on floors and roofs in solid coating of bituminous cement.
 - D. Secure flashing into sleeve and specialty clamping ring or device.
 - E. Fabricate and install flashing and pans, sumps, and other drainage shapes.

3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt or debris and to prevent damage from traffic or construction work.
- B. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.

END OF SECTION 22 1423

SECTION 22 1429 - SUMP PUMPS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Submersible sump pumps.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles.
- B. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For pumps and controls, to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 778 for motor-operated water pumps.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Retain shipping flange protective covers and protective coatings during storage.
- B. Protect bearings and couplings against damage.
- C. Comply with pump manufacturer's written rigging instructions for handling.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SUBMERSIBLE SUMP PUMPS

A. Submersible, Fixed-Position, Double-Seal Sump Pumps, with Oil Minder:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Weil Inc.
 - b. Stancor.
 - c. PACO Pumps; Grundfos Pumps Corporation, U.S.A.
2. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested sump-pump unit.
3. Pump Type: Submersible, end-suction, single-stage, close-coupled, overhung-impeller, centrifugal sump pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3.
4. Pump Casing: Cast iron, with strainer inlet, legs that elevate pump to permit flow into impeller, and vertical discharge for piping connection.
5. Impeller: Statically and dynamically balanced, ASTM A 48/A 48M, Class No. 25 A cast iron design for clear wastewater handling, and keyed and secured to shaft.
6. Pump and Motor Shaft: Stainless steel or steel, with factory-sealed, grease-lubricated ball bearings.
7. Seals: Mechanical.
8. Moisture-Sensing Probe: Internal moisture sensor and moisture alarm.
9. Motor: Hermetically sealed, capacitor-start type; with built-in overload protection; lifting eye or lug; and three-conductor, waterproof power cable of length required and with grounding plug and cable-sealing assembly for connection at pump.
 - a. Motor Housing Fluid: Oil.
10. Controls:
 - a. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4X.
 - b. Switch Type: Pedestal-mounted float switch with float rods and rod buttons.
 - c. Automatic Alternator: Start pumps on successive cycles and start multiple pumps if one cannot handle load.
 - d. Float Guides: Pipe or other restraint for floats and rods in basins of depth greater than 60 inches.
 - e. High-Water Alarm: Cover-mounted, compression-probe alarm, with electric bell; 120-V ac, with transformer and contacts for remote alarm bell.
 - f. Oil detection
11. Control-Interface Features:
 - a. Remote Alarm Contacts: For remote alarm interface.
 - b. Building Automation System Interface: Auxiliary contacts in pump controls for interface to building automation system and capable of providing the following:

- 1) On-off status of pump.
- 2) Alarm status.
- 3) Oil detection

2.2 MOTORS

- A. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Common Motor Requirements for Plumbing Equipment.
 1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
- B. Motors for submersible pumps shall be hermetically sealed.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EARTHWORK

- A. Excavation and filling are specified in Earth Moving.

3.2 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in for plumbing piping to verify actual locations of storm drainage piping connections before sump pump installation.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Pump Installation Standards: Comply with HI 1.4 for installation of sump pumps.

3.4 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Facility Storm Drainage Piping. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to equipment to allow service and maintenance.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.

1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.

C. Tests and Inspections:

1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection.
2. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

- D. Pumps and controls will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.6 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.

1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.7 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust pumps to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Adjust control set points.

3.8 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain controls and pumps.

END OF SECTION 221429

SECTION 22 3300 - ELECTRIC, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Residential, electric, storage, domestic-water heaters.
 - 2. Domestic-water heater accessories.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type and size of domestic-water heater indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For commercial domestic-water heaters, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
 - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of residential, electric, domestic-water heater, from manufacturer.
- C. Domestic-Water Heater Labeling: Certified and labeled by testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Source quality-control reports.
- E. Field quality-control reports.
- F. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For electric, domestic-water heaters to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2007 Section 7.4.
- C. ASME Compliance: Where ASME-code construction is indicated, fabricate and label commercial, domestic-water heater storage tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
- D. NSF Compliance: Fabricate and label equipment components that will be in contact with potable water to comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects.
- E. Water heaters must be Energy Star certified or 0.93 Energy Factor.
- F. Fuel-fired water heaters must have a minimum Energy Factor of 0.62 where applicable.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of electric, domestic-water heaters that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures including storage tank and supports.
 - b. Faulty operation of controls.
 - c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal use.
 - 2. Warranty Periods: From date of Substantial Completion.
 - a. Residential, Electric, Storage, Domestic-Water Heaters:
 - 1) Storage Tank: Five years.
 - 2) Controls and Other Components: Two years.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 RESIDENTIAL, ELECTRIC, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS

A. Residential, Electric, Storage, Domestic-Water Heaters:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Bradford White Corporation.
 - b. Smith, A. O. Water Products Co.; a division of A. O. Smith Corporation.
 - c. State Industries.
2. Standard: UL 174.
3. Storage-Tank Construction: Steel.
 - a. Tappings: ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
 - b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
 - c. Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending lining material into tappings.
4. Factory-Installed Storage-Tank Appurtenances:
 - a. Anode Rod: Replaceable magnesium.
 - b. Dip Tube: Required unless cold-water inlet is near bottom of tank.
 - c. Drain Valve: ASSE 1005.
 - d. Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE 90.2.
 - e. Jacket: Steel, cylindrical, with enameled finish.
 - f. Heat-Trap Fittings: Inlet type in cold-water inlet and outlet type in hot-water outlet.
 - g. Heating Elements: Two; electric, screw-in immersion type; wired for nonsimultaneous operation unless otherwise indicated. Limited to 12 kW total.
 - h. Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat.
 - i. Safety Control: High-temperature-limit cutoff device or system.
 - j. Relief Valve: ASME rated and stamped for combination temperature-and-pressure relief valves. Include relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than domestic-water heater working-pressure rating. Select relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.

B. Capacity and Characteristics:

1. Capacity: 38-Gal Storage.
2. Recovery: 23-gph @ 80° ΔT.
3. Temperature Setting: 120 deg F.
4. Power Demand: 4.5-kW.
5. Heating Elements: 1.
6. Electrical Characteristics:
 - a. Volts: 240 V.
 - b. Phases: Single.

- c. Hertz: 60.

2.2 DOMESTIC-WATER HEATER ACCESSORIES

A. Domestic-Water Compression Tanks:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. AMTROL Inc.
 - b. Flexcon Industries.
 - c. Honeywell International Inc.
2. Description: Steel pressure-rated tank constructed with welded joints and factory-installed butyl-rubber diaphragm. Include air precharge to minimum system-operating pressure at tank.
3. Construction:
 - a. Tappings: Factory-fabricated steel, welded to tank before testing and labeling. Include ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
 - b. Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
 - c. Air-Charging Valve: Factory installed.
4. Capacity and Characteristics:
 - a. Working-Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
 - b. Capacity Acceptable: 2 gal. minimum.

- B. Drain Pans: Corrosion-resistant metal with raised edge. Comply with ANSI/CSA LC 3. Include dimensions not less than base of domestic-water heater, and include drain outlet not less than NPS 3/4 with ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads or with ASME B1.20.7 garden-hose threads.

- C. Piping-Type Heat Traps: Field-fabricated piping arrangement according to ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.

- D. Electronic Mixing Valve: ASSE 1017

- E. Heat-Trap Fittings: ASHRAE 90.2.

- F. Combination Temperature-and-Pressure Relief Valves: ASME rated and stamped. Include relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than domestic-water heater working-pressure rating. Select relief valves with sensing element that extends into storage tank.

- G. Pressure Relief Valves: ASME rated and stamped. Include pressure setting less than domestic-water heater working-pressure rating.

- H. Vacuum Relief Valves: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4.

- I. Shock Absorbers: ASSE 1010 or PDI-WH 201, Size A water hammer arrester.

2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Factory Tests: Test and inspect domestic-water heaters specified to be ASME-code construction, according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
- B. Hydrostatically test domestic-water heaters to minimum of one and one-half times pressure rating before shipment.
- C. Electric, domestic-water heaters will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections. Comply with requirements in Quality Requirements for retesting and reinspecting requirements and Execution for requirements for correcting the Work.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 DOMESTIC-WATER HEATER INSTALLATION

- A. Residential, Electric, Domestic-Water Heater Mounting: Install residential, electric, domestic-water heaters below ceiling on mounting bracket.
 1. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances.
 2. Arrange units so controls and devices that require servicing are accessible.
 3. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 4. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
 5. Anchor domestic-water heaters to substrate.
- B. Install electric, domestic-water heaters level and plumb, according to layout drawings, original design, and referenced standards. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units so controls and devices needing service are accessible.
 1. Install shutoff valves on domestic-water-supply piping to domestic-water heaters and on domestic-hot-water outlet piping. Comply with requirements for shutoff valves specified in General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping.
- C. Install combination temperature-and-pressure relief valves in water piping for electric, domestic-water heaters. Extend commercial-water-heater relief-valve outlet, with drain piping same as domestic-water piping in continuous downward pitch, and discharge by positive air gap onto closest floor drain.
- D. Install water-heater drain piping as indirect waste to spill by positive air gap into open drains or over floor drains. Install hose-end drain valves at low points in water piping for electric, domestic-water heaters that do not have tank drains. Comply with requirements for hose-end drain valves specified in other sections.

- E. Install thermometers on outlet piping of electric, domestic-water heaters. Comply with requirements for thermometers specified in Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping.
- F. Install piping-type heat traps on inlet and outlet piping of electric, domestic-water heater storage tanks without integral or fitting-type heat traps.
- G. Fill electric, domestic-water heaters with water.
- H. Charge domestic-water compression tanks with air.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Domestic Water Piping. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Where installing piping adjacent to electric, domestic-water heaters, allow space for service and maintenance of water heaters. Arrange piping for easy removal of domestic-water heaters.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
 - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
 - 2. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - 3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper operation.
 - 4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- B. Electric, domestic-water heaters will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections. Comply with requirements in Quality Requirements for retesting and reinspecting requirements and Execution for requirements for correcting the Work.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain, electric, domestic-water heaters.

END OF SECTION 22 3300

SECTION 22 3500 - DOMESTIC-WATER HEAT EXCHANGERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Circulating, storage, domestic-water heat exchangers.
 - 2. Domestic-water, heat-exchanger accessories.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Domestic-water heat exchangers shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
 - 1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type and size of domestic-water heat exchanger indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For domestic-water heat exchangers, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
 - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of shell-and-tube, domestic-water heat exchanger, from manufacturer.

- C. Domestic-Water, Heat-Exchanger Labeling: Certified and labeled by testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Source quality-control reports.
- E. Field quality-control reports.
- F. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For domestic-water heat exchangers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
- C. ASME Compliance: Where ASME-code construction is indicated, fabricate and label heat-exchanger storage tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
- D. NSF Compliance: Fabricate and label equipment components that will be in contact with potable water to comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects."

1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of domestic-water heat exchangers that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures including heat exchanger, storage tank, and supports.
 - b. Faulty operation of controls.
 - c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal use.
 - 2. Warranty Periods: From date of Substantial Completion.
 - a. Shell-and-Tube, Domestic-Water Heat Exchangers:
 - 1) Tube Coil: One year(s).

2) Controls and Other Components: One year(s).

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CIRCULATING, DOMESTIC-WATER HEAT EXCHANGERS

A. Circulating, Storage, Domestic-Water Heat Exchangers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Grundfos
 - b. Patterson-Kelley; a division of Harsco Corporation.
 - c. Smith, A. O. Water Products Co.; a division of A. O. Smith Corporation.
2. Description: Packaged, large-capacity, hot-water storage tank with heat-exchanger coil; circulator; controls; and specialties for heating domestic water with heating hot water in coil.
3. Flow Pattern: Standard-flow arrangement, with water from bottom of storage tank circulated across heat-exchanger coil and returned to tank. Include hot-water outlet located at top of tank and temperature sensor in tank.
4. Flow Pattern: Reverse-flow arrangement, with water from storage tank drawn across heat-exchanger coil and returned to bottom of tank. Include hot-water outlet and temperature sensor located in or at coil shell.
5. Storage-Tank Construction: ASME-code steel with 125-psig working-pressure rating. Include nozzle and head for heat-exchanger tube coil.
 - a. Configuration: Vertical.
 - b. Manhole: 11 by 15 inches in sidewall of vertical storage-tank shell.
 - c. Tappings: Factory fabricated of materials compatible with tank. Attach tappings to tank before testing and labeling.
 - 1) NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends according to ASME B1.20.1.
 - 2) NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged ends according to ASME B16.5 for steel and stainless-steel flanges and according to ASME B16.24 for copper and copper-alloy flanges.
 - d. Lining: Glass complying with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending lining into and through tank fittings and outlets.
 - e. Insulation: Complying with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, unless otherwise indicated, and suitable for operating temperature. Surround entire storage tank and nozzle except connections and controls.
 - f. Anode Rods: Factory installed, magnesium.
6. Heat-Exchanger Coil: NPS 3/4 diameter, vented, double-wall, copper or copper-alloy U tubes with tube sheet and supporting baffles. Include heat-exchanger pressure rating equal to or greater than heating-fluid supply pressure.
7. Temperature Control: Adjustable temperature aquastat, mounted in storage-tank shell head unless otherwise indicated.

8. Safety Control: Automatic, high-temperature-limit cutoff device or system. Include automatic low-water cutoff device or system.
9. Relief Valves: ASME rated and stamped for combination temperature-and-pressure relief valves. Include one or more relief valves with total relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than working-pressure rating of heat exchanger. Select one relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
10. Gages: Factory-mounted thermometer and pressure gage.
11. Circulating Pump: UL 778, all-bronze, centrifugal, overhung-impeller, separately coupled in-line pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3. Include mechanical seals, 125-psig minimum working-pressure rating, and 225 deg F continuous-water-temperature rating.
 - a. Pump Control: Sensor for operating pump and control valve.
12. Support: Factory mounted on skids.
13. Energy Management System Interface: Normally closed dry contacts for enabling and disabling heat exchanger.

B. Capacity and Characteristics:

1. Flow Rate: 36 gpm at 400 deg F temperature rise.
2. Hot-Water Temperature Setting: 140 deg F.
3. Domestic-Water Pipe Size: 4".
4. Heating Hot-Water Supply:
 - a. Inlet Temperature: 400 deg F.
 - b. Outlet Temperature: 293 deg F.
 - c. Pipe Size: As indicated.
5. Electrical Characteristics:
 - a. Volts: 120.
 - b. Phases: 1.
 - c. Hertz: 60.
 - d. Full-Load Amperes: 15.

2.2 DOMESTIC-WATER, HEAT-EXCHANGER ACCESSORIES

A. Domestic-Water Compression Tanks:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. AMTROL, Inc.
 - b. AO Smith.
 - c. Flexcon Industries.
2. Description: Steel pressure-rated tank constructed with welded joints and factory-installed butyl-rubber diaphragm. Include air precharge to minimum system-operating pressure at tank.
3. Construction:
 - a. Tappings: Factory-fabricated steel, welded to tank before testing and labeling. Include ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.

- b. Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
 - c. Air-Charging Valve: Factory installed.
 - 4. Capacity and Characteristics:
 - a. Working-Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
 - b. Capacity Acceptable: 65 Gallons.
 - c. Air Precharge Pressure: 80 PSI.
 - B. Piping-Type Heat Traps: Field-fabricated piping arrangement according to ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 or ASHRAE 90.2.
 - C. Heat-Trap Fittings: ASHRAE 90.2.
 - D. Combination Temperature-and-Pressure Relief Valves: ASME rated and stamped. Include relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than heat-exchanger working-pressure rating. Select relief valves with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
 - E. Pressure Relief Valves: ASME rated and stamped. Include pressure setting less than heat-exchanger working-pressure rating.
 - F. Vacuum Relief Valves: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4-M.
- 2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL
- A. Factory Tests: Test and inspect domestic-water heat exchangers specified to be ASME-code construction, according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
 - B. Hydrostatically test domestic-water heat exchangers to minimum of one and one-half times pressure rating before shipment.
 - C. Domestic-water heat exchangers will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections. Comply with requirements in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements" for retesting and reinspecting requirements and Section 017300 "Execution" for requirements for correcting the Work.
 - D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 DOMESTIC-WATER, HEAT-EXCHANGER INSTALLATION

- A. Domestic-Water, Heat-Exchanger Mounting: Install domestic-water heat exchangers on concrete base. Comply with requirements for concrete bases specified in Cast-in-Place Concrete.

1. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
 2. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
 3. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 4. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
 5. Anchor heat exchangers to substrate.
- B. Install domestic-water heat exchangers level and plumb, according to layout drawings, original design, and referenced standards. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units so controls and devices needing service are accessible.
1. Install shutoff valves on domestic-water-supply piping to heat exchangers and on domestic-hot-water outlet piping. Comply with requirements for shutoff valves specified in General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping.
 2. Install shutoff valves on heating hot-water piping to heat exchangers. Comply with requirements for shutoff valves specified in General-Duty Valves for HVAC Piping.
- C. Install domestic-water heat exchangers with seismic-restraint devices. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- D. Install temperature and pressure relief valves in top portion of storage-tank shells of domestic-water heat exchangers with domestic-water storage. Use relief valves with sensing elements that extend into shells. Extend relief-valve outlet, with drain piping same as domestic-water piping in continuous downward pitch, and discharge by positive air gap onto closest floor drain.
- E. Install pressure relief valves in water piping for domestic-water heat exchangers without storage. Extend relief-valve outlet, with drain piping same as domestic-water piping in continuous downward pitch, and discharge by positive air gap onto closest floor drain.
- F. Install heat-exchanger drain piping as indirect waste to spill by positive air gap into open drains or over floor drains. Install hose-end drain valves at low points in water piping for domestic-water heat exchangers that do not have tank drains. Comply with requirements for hose-end drain valves specified in Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
- G. Install thermometer on each domestic-water, heat-exchanger, inlet and outlet piping, and install thermometer on each domestic-water, heat-exchanger, heating-fluid inlet and outlet piping. Comply with requirements for thermometers specified in Section 220519 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."

- H. Install pressure gages on domestic-water, heat-exchanger, heating-fluid piping. Comply with requirements for pressure gages specified in Section 220519 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."
- I. Fill domestic-water heat exchangers with water.
- J. Charge domestic-water compression tanks with air.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
- B. Comply with requirements for heating hot-water piping specified in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping" and Section 232116 Hydronic Piping Specialties."
- C. Comply with requirements for steam and condensate piping specified in Section 232213 "Steam and Condensate Heating Piping" and Section 232216 Steam and Condensate Piping Specialties."
- D. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- E. Where installing piping adjacent to domestic-water heat exchangers, allow space for service and maintenance of heat exchangers. Arrange piping for easy removal of domestic-water heat exchangers.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
 - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
 - 2. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - 3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper operation.
 - 4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- B. Domestic-water heat exchangers will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections. Comply with requirements in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements" for retesting and reinspecting requirements and Section 017300 "Execution" for requirements for correcting the Work.

- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain shell-and-tube domestic-water heat exchangers.

END OF SECTION 22 3500

SECTION 22 4213.13 - COMMERCIAL WATER CLOSETS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Water closets.
 - 2. Flushometer valves.
 - 3. Toilet seats.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for water closets.
 - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For flushometer valves and electronic sensors to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Flushometer-Valve Repair Kits: Equal to 10 percent of amount of each type installed, but no fewer than one of each type.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 WALL-MOUNTED WATER CLOSETS

- A. Water Closets : Wall mounted, top spud, accessible.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements [available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. American Standard America.
 - b. Briggs Plumbing Products, Inc.
 - c. Capizzi.
 - d. Crane Plumbing, L.L.C.
 - e. Ferguson Enterprises, Inc.; ProFlo Brand.
 - f. Gerber Plumbing Fixtures LLC.
 - g. Kohler Co.
 - h. Mansfield Plumbing Products LLC.
 - i. Peerless Pottery Sales, Inc.
 - j. TOTO USA, INC.
 - k. Zurn Industries, LLC; Commercial Brass and Fixtures.
3. Bowl:
 - a. Standards: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1 and ASME A112.19.5.
 - b. Material: Vitreous china.
 - c. Type: Siphon jet.
 - d. Style: Flushometer valve.
 - e. Height: Standard.
 - f. Rim Contour: Elongated.
 - g. Water Consumption: As specified in construction drawings .
 - h. Spud Size and Location: NPS 1-1/2; top.
4. Flushometer Valve: Manual FlowWise
5. Toilet Seat: Open front.
6. Support:
 - a. Standard: ASME A112.6.1M.
 - b. Description: Waste-fitting assembly as required to match drainage piping material and arrangement with faceplates, couplings gaskets, and feet; bolts and hardware matching fixture. Include additional extension coupling, faceplate, and feet for installation in wide pipe space.
 - c. Water-Closet Mounting Height: Standard Copy "Water Closets" Paragraph below and re-edit for each type of wall-mounted, back-spud water closet required.

2.2 FLUSHOMETER VALVES

A. Lever-Handle, Diaphragm Flushometer Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Coyne & Delany Co.
 - b. Gerber Plumbing Fixtures LLC.

- c. Sloan Valve Company.
 - d. Zurn Industries, LLC; Commercial Brass and Fixtures.
- 3. Standard: ASSE 1037.
 - 4. Minimum Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
 - 5. Features: Include integral check stop and backflow-prevention device.
 - 6. Material: Brass body with corrosion-resistant components.
 - 7. Exposed Flushometer-Valve Finish: Chrome plated.
 - 8. Panel Finish: Chrome plated or stainless steel.
 - 9. Style: Exposed.
 - 10. Consumption: As specified in construction drawings.
 - 11. Minimum Inlet: NPS 1.
 - 12. Minimum Outlet: NPS 1-1/4.

2.3 TOILET SEATS

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- 2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. American Standard America.
 - b. Bemis Manufacturing Company.
 - c. Centoco Manufacturing Corporation.
 - d. Church Seats.
 - e. Jones Stephens Corp.; Comfort Seat Brand.
 - f. Kohler Co.
 - g. Olsonite Seat Co.
 - h. Sanderson Plumbing Products, Inc.
 - i. Sperzel of Lexington.
 - j. TOTO USA, INC.
 - k. Zurn Industries, LLC; Commercial Brass and Fixtures.
- 3. Standard: IAPMO/ANSI Z124.5.
- 4. Material: Plastic.
- 5. Type: Commercial (Standard).
- 6. Shape: Elongated rim, open front.
- 7. Hinge: Check.
- 8. Hinge Material: Noncorroding metal.
- 9. Seat Cover: Required.
- 10. Color: White.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in of water supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before water-closet installation.
- B. Examine walls and floors for suitable conditions where water closets will be installed.

- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Water-Closet Installation:

1. Install level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
2. Install floor-mounted water closets on bowl-to-drain connecting fitting attachments to piping or building substrate.
3. Install accessible, wall-mounted water closets at mounting height for handicapped/elderly, according to ICC/ANSI A117.1.

B. Support Installation:

1. Install supports, affixed to building substrate, for floor-mounted, back-outlet water closets.
2. Use carrier supports with waste-fitting assembly and seal.
3. Install floor-mounted, back-outlet water closets attached to building floor substrate, onto waste-fitting seals; and attach to support.
4. Install wall-mounted, back-outlet water-closet supports with waste-fitting assembly and waste-fitting seals; and affix to building substrate.

C. Flushometer-Valve Installation:

1. Install flushometer-valve, water-supply fitting on each supply to each water closet.
2. Attach supply piping to supports or substrate within pipe spaces behind fixtures.
3. Install lever-handle flushometer valves for accessible water closets with handle mounted on open side of water closet.
4. Install actuators in locations that are easy for people with disabilities to reach.
5. Install fresh batteries in battery-powered, electronic-sensor mechanisms.

D. Install toilet seats on water closets.

E. Wall Flange and Escutcheon Installation:

1. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations and within cabinets and millwork.
2. Install deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings.
3. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

F. Joint Sealing:

1. Seal joints between water closets and walls and floors using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant.
2. Match sealant color to water-closet color.
3. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect water closets with water supplies and soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match water closets.
- B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
- C. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."
- D. Where installing piping adjacent to water closets, allow space for service and maintenance.

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Operate and adjust water closets and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning water closets, fittings, and controls.
- B. Adjust water pressure at flushometer valves to produce proper flow.
- C. Install fresh batteries in battery-powered, electronic-sensor mechanisms.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean water closets and fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.
- B. Install protective covering for installed water closets and fittings.
- C. Do not allow use of water closets for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 22 4213.13

SECTION 22 4216.13 - COMMERCIAL LAVATORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Lavatories.
- 2. Faucets.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for lavatories.
- 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

- B. Shop Drawings: Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring of automatic faucets.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Counter cutout templates for mounting of counter-mounted lavatories.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For lavatories and faucets to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

- 1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
 - a. Servicing and adjustments of automatic faucets.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Faucet Washers and O-Rings: Equal to 10 percent of amount of each type and size installed.
2. Faucet Cartridges and O-Rings: Equal to 5 percent of amount of each type and size installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 VITREOUS-CHINA, COUNTER-MOUNTED LAVATORIES

- A. Lavatory: Round, self-rimming, vitreous china, counter mounted.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. American Standard America.
 - b. Briggs Plumbing Products, Inc.
 - c. Capizzi.
 - d. Crane Plumbing, L.L.C.
 - e. Ferguson Enterprises, Inc.; ProFlo Brand.
 - f. Gerber Plumbing Fixtures LLC.
 - g. Kohler Co.
 - h. Mansfield Plumbing Products LLC.
 - i. Peerless Pottery Sales, Inc.
 - j. TOTO USA, INC.
 - k. Zurn Industries, LLC; Commercial Brass and Fixtures.
 3. Fixture:
 - a. Standard: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1.
 - b. Type: Self-rimming for above-counter mounting.
 - c. Nominal Size: Round, 19 inches.
 - d. Faucet-Hole Punching: One hole.
 - e. Color: White.
 - f. Mounting Material: Sealant.
 4. Faucet: Solid-Brass, Manually Operated Faucets.

2.2 VITREOUS-CHINA, WALL-MOUNTED LAVATORIES

- A. Lavatory: Vitreous china, wall mounted, with back.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. American Standard America.
 - b. Briggs Plumbing Products, Inc.
 - c. Crane Plumbing, L.L.C.
 - d. Ferguson Enterprises, Inc.; ProFlo Brand.
 - e. Gerber Plumbing Fixtures LLC.
 - f. Kohler Co.

- g. Mansfield Plumbing Products LLC.
 - h. Peerless Pottery Sales, Inc.
 - i. Zurn Industries, LLC; Commercial Brass and Fixtures.
 - 2. Fixture:
 - a. Standard: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1.
 - b. Type: For wall hanging.
 - c. Nominal Size: Oval, 20½" by 18 ¼" inches.
 - d. Faucet-Hole Punching: One hole.
 - e. Faucet-Hole Location: Top.
 - f. Color: Whit.
 - g. Mounting Material: Chair carrier.
 - 3. Faucet: Solid-Brass, Manually Operated Faucets.
 - 4. Support: ASME A112.6.1M.
- B. Lavatory: Ledge back, vitreous china, wall mounted.
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. American Standard America.
 - b. Acorn Engineering.
 - c. Bradley Corporation.
 - d. Crane Plumbing, L.L.C.
 - e. Commercial Enameling Co.
 - f. Eljer.
 - g. Kohler Co.
 - h. Elkay Manufacturing Co.
 - i. Haws Corp., Just Co.
 - j. Zurn Industries, LLC; Commercial Brass and Fixtures.
 - 2. Fixture:
 - a. Standard: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1.
 - b. Type: For wall hanging.
 - c. Nominal Size: Oval, 19 by 16 inches.
 - d. Faucet-Hole Punching: One hole.
 - e. Faucet-Hole Location: Top.
 - f. Color: White.
 - g. Mounting Material: Chair carrier.
 - 3. Faucet: Solid-Brass, Manually Operated Faucets.
 - 4. Support: ASME A112.6.1M
- C. Lavatory: Wheelchair, vitreous china, wall mounted.
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. American Standard America.
 - b. Acorn Engineering.

- c. Bradley Corporation.
 - d. Crane Plumbing, L.L.C.
 - e. Commercial Enameling Co.
 - f. Eljer.
 - g. Kohler Co.
 - h. Elkay Manufacturing Co.
 - i. Haws Corp., Just Co.
 - j. Zurn Industries, LLC; Commercial Brass and Fixtures.
2. Fixture:
- a. Standard: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1.
 - b. Type: Slab or wheelchair.
 - c. Nominal Size: Rectangular, 27 by 20 inches.
 - d. Faucet-Hole Punching: Three holes.
 - e. Faucet-Hole Location: Top.
 - f. Color: White.
 - g. Mounting: For concealed-arm carrier.
3. Faucet: Solid-Brass, Manually Operated Faucets.
4. Support: ASME A112.6.1M, Type II, concealed-arm lavatory carrier with rectangular, steel uprights.

2.3 SOLID-BRASS, MANUALLY OPERATED FAUCETS

- A. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF/ANSI 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects," for faucet materials that will be in contact with potable water.
- B. Lavatory Faucets: Manual-type, single-control mixing ,general-duty, solid-brass valve.
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. American Standard America.
 - b. Bradley Corporation.
 - c. Chicago Faucets.
 - d. Delta Faucet Company.
 - e. Elkay Manufacturing Co.
 - f. Grohe America, Inc.
 - g. Just Manufacturing.
 - h. Kohler Co.
 - i. Moen Incorporated.
 - j. Speakman Company.
 - k. T & S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc.
 - l. Zurn Industries, LLC; Commercial Brass and Fixtures.
 - 3. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.

4. General: Include hot- and cold-water indicators; coordinate faucet inlets with supplies and fixture hole punchings; coordinate outlet with spout and fixture receptor.
5. Body Type: Centerset.
6. Body Material: Commercial, solid brass.
7. Finish: Polished chrome plate.
8. Maximum Flow Rate: 1.0 gpm.
9. Mounting Type: Deck, exposed.
10. Valve Handle(s): Single lever.
11. Spout: Rigid] type.

2.4 SUPPLY FITTINGS

- A. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF/ANSI 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects," for supply-fitting materials that will be in contact with potable water.
- B. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.
- C. Supply Piping: Chrome-plated-brass pipe or chrome-plated copper tube matching water-supply piping size. Include chrome-plated-brass or stainless-steel wall flange.
- D. Supply Stops: Chrome-plated-brass, one-quarter-turn, ball-type or compression valve with inlet connection matching supply piping.
- E. Operation: Loose key.
- F. Risers:
 1. NPS 1/2.
 2. Chrome-plated, soft-copper flexible tube ASME A112.18.6, braided- or corrugated-stainless-steel, flexible hose riser.

2.5 WASTE FITTINGS

- A. Standard: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2.
- B. Drain: Grid type with NPS 1-1/4 offset and straight tailpiece.
- C. Trap:
 1. Size: NPS 1-1/2 by NPS 1-1/4.
 2. Material: Stainless-steel, two-piece trap and swivel elbow with 0.012-inch- thick stainless-steel tube to wall; and stainless-steel wall flange.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in of water supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before lavatory installation.

- B. Examine counters and walls for suitable conditions where lavatories will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install lavatories level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
- B. Install supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-mounted lavatories.
- C. Install accessible wall-mounted lavatories at handicapped/elderly mounting height for people with disabilities or the elderly, according to ICC/ANSI A117.1.
- D. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."
- E. Seal joints between lavatories, counters, and walls using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
- F. Install protective shielding pipe covers and enclosures on exposed supplies and waste piping of accessible lavatories. Comply with requirements in Section 220719 "Plumbing Piping Insulation."

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect fixtures with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.
- B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
- C. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Operate and adjust lavatories and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning lavatories, fittings, and controls.
- B. Adjust water pressure at faucets to produce proper flow.
- C. Install fresh batteries in battery-powered, electronic-sensor mechanisms.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. After completing installation of lavatories, inspect and repair damaged finishes.

- B. Clean lavatories, faucets, and other fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.
- C. Provide protective covering for installed lavatories and fittings.
- D. Do not allow use of lavatories for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 22 4216.13

SECTION 22 4216.16 - COMMERCIAL SINKS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Service basins.
- 2. Pantry/Kitchen sinks.
- 3. Sink faucets.
- 4. Supply fittings.
- 5. Waste fittings.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 224100 "Residential Plumbing Fixtures" for residential sinks.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for sinks.
- 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Counter cutout templates for mounting of counter-mounted lavatories.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For sinks to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Faucet Washers and O-Rings: Equal to 10 percent of amount of each type and size installed.
2. Faucet Cartridges and O-Rings: Equal to 5 percent of amount of each type and size installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SERVICE BASINS

A. Service Basins : Terrazzo, floor mounted.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Acorn Engineering Company.
 - b. Crane Plumbing, L.L.C.
 - c. Florestone Products Co., Inc.
 - d. Stern-Williams Co., Inc.
3. Fixture:
 - a. Standard: IAPMO PS 99.
 - b. Shape: Five sided.
 - c. Nominal Size: 32 x 32x12 inches.
 - d. Height: 12 inches.
 - e. Tiling Flange: On one side.
 - f. Color: Not applicable].
 - g. Drain: Grid with NPS 3 outlet.
4. Mounting: On floor and flush to wall.
5. Faucet: As indicated on construction document.

2.2 PANTRY/KITCHEN SINKS

A. Pantry/Kitchen Sinks: Stainless steel, wall mounted.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. American Standard America.
 - b. Acorn Engineering.
 - c. Bradley Corporation.
 - d. Crane Plumbing, L.L.C.
 - e. Commercial Enameling Co.
 - f. Eljer.
 - g. Kohler Co.
 - h. Elkay Manufacturing Co.
 - i. Haws Corp., Just Co.

- j. Zurn Industries, LLC; Commercial Brass and Fixtures.
- 2. Fixture:
 - a. Standards: ASME A112.19.3/CSA B45.4 and NSF/ANSI 2.
 - b. Type: Basin with radius corners, back for faucet, and support brackets.
 - c. Nominal Size: As indicated.
- 3. Faucet: As indicated on construction document
- 4. Supply Fittings: Comply with requirements in "Supply Fittings" Article.
- 5. Waste Fittings: Comply with requirements in "Waste Fittings" Article.
- 6. Support: ASME A112.6.1M, Type II, sink carrier.

2.3 SINK FAUCETS

- A. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF/ANSI 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects," for faucet-spout materials that will be in contact with potable water.
- B. Sink Faucets

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

Chicago Faucets.

Speakman Company.

- a. T & S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc.
- b. Zurn Industries, LLC; Commercial Brass and Fixtures.

Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.

- 2. General: Include hot- and cold-water indicators; coordinate faucet inlets with supplies and fixture hole punchings; coordinate outlet with spout and sink receptor.
- 3. Body Type: Widespread.
- 4. Body Material: Commercial, solid brass.
- 5. Finish: Polished chrome plate.
- 6. Maximum Flow Rate: As indicated on construction document.
- 7. Handle(s): Lever.
- 8. Mounting Type: Deck, exposed Back/wall, exposed.
- 9. Spout Type: Swivel gooseneck.
- 10. Vacuum Breaker: Required for hose outlet.
- 11. Spout Outlet: Aerator.

2.4 SUPPLY FITTINGS

- A. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF/ANSI 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects," for supply-fitting materials that will be in contact with potable water.

- B. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.
- C. Supply Piping: Chrome-plated brass pipe or chrome-plated copper tube matching water-supply piping size. Include chrome-plated brass or stainless-steel wall flange.
- D. Supply Stops: Chrome-plated brass, one-quarter-turn, ball-type or compression valve with inlet connection matching supply piping.
- E. Operation: Wheel handle.
- F. Risers:
 - 1. NPS 1/2
 - 2. Chrome-plated, soft-copper flexible tube.

2.2 WASTE FITTINGS

- A. Standard: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2.
- B. Drain: Grid type with NPS 1-1/2 offset and straight tailpiece.
- C. Trap:
 - 1. Size: NPS 1-1/2.
 - 2. Material: Chrome-plated, two-piece, cast-brass trap and ground-joint swivel elbow with 0.032-inch-thick brass tube to wall; and chrome-plated brass or steel wall flange.
 - 3. Material: Stainless-steel, two-piece trap and swivel elbow with 0.012-inch-thick stainless-steel tube to wall; and stainless-steel wall flange.

2.3 GROUT

- A. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- B. Characteristics: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in of water supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before sink installation.
- B. Examine walls, floors, and counters for suitable conditions where sinks will be installed.

- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install sinks level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
- B. Install supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-hung sinks.
- C. Install accessible wall-mounted sinks at handicapped/elderly mounting height according to ICC/ANSI A117.1.
- D. Set floor-mounted sinks in leveling bed of cement grout.
- E. Install water-supply piping with stop on each supply to each sink faucet.
 - 1. Exception: Use ball, gate, or globe valves if supply stops are not specified with sink. Comply with valve requirements specified in Section 220523 "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."
 - 2. Install stops in locations where they can be easily reached for operation.
- F. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."
- G. Seal joints between sinks and counters, floors, and walls using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
- H. Install protective shielding pipe covers and enclosures on exposed supplies and waste piping of accessible sinks. Comply with requirements in Section 220719 "Plumbing Piping Insulation."

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect sinks with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.
- B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
- C. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Operate and adjust sinks and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning sinks, fittings, and controls.

- B. Adjust water pressure at faucets to produce proper flow.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. After completing installation of sinks, inspect and repair damaged finishes.
- B. Clean sinks, faucets, and other fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.
- C. Provide protective covering for installed sinks and fittings.
- D. Do not allow use of sinks for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 22 4216.16

SECTION 22 4223 - COMMERCIAL SHOWERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Shower faucets.
- 2. Shower basins.
- 3. Grout.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for showers.
 - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For shower faucets to include in maintenance manuals.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Faucet Washers and O-Rings: Equal to 10 percent of amount of each type and size installed.
 - 2. Faucet Cartridges and O-Rings: Equal to 5 percent of amount of each type and size installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SHOWER FAUCETS

- A. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF 61 Annex G, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects," for shower materials that will be in contact with potable water.
- B. Shower Faucets :

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. American Standard.
 - b. Chicago Faucets; Geberit Company.
 - c. Kohler Co.
 - d. Moen Incorporated.
2. Description: Single-handle, pressure-balance mixing valve with hot- and cold-water indicators; check stops; and shower head.
3. Faucet:
 - a. Standards: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1 and ASSE 1016.
 - b. Body Material: Solid brass.
 - c. Finish: Polished chrome plate.
 - d. Maximum Flow Rate: As indicated on construction documents.
 - e. Mounting: Concealed.
 - f. Operation: Single-handle, push-pull] or twist or rotate control.
 - g. Antiscald Device: Integral with mixing valve].
 - h. Check Stops: Check-valve type, integral with or attached to body; on hot- and cold-water supply connections.
4. Supply Connections: NPS 1/2.
5. Shower Head:
 - a. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.
 - b. Type: Ball joint with arm and flange].
 - c. Shower Head Material: Metallic with chrome-plated finish.
 - d. Spray Pattern: Adjustable].
 - e. Integral Volume Control: Required.
 - f. Shower-Arm, Flow-Control Fitting: As indicated on construction documents.
 - g. Temperature Indicator: Not required.

2.2 SHOWER BASINS

A. Shower Basins Cast-polymer shower basin.

1. Cast-Polymer Shower Basins:
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - 1) Crane Plumbing, L.L.C.
 - 2) Florestone Products Co., Inc.
 - 3) Inpro Corporation.

2.3 GROUT

- A. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- B. Characteristics: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.

- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in of water-supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before shower installation.
- B. Examine walls and floors for suitable conditions where showers will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Assemble shower components according to manufacturers' written instructions.
- B. Install showers level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
- C. Install water-supply piping with stop on each supply to each shower faucet.
 - 1. Exception: Use ball or gate valves if supply stops are not specified with shower. Comply with valve requirements specified in Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping" and Section 220523.15 "Gate Valves for Plumbing Piping."
 - 2. Install stops in locations where they can be easily reached for operation.
- D. Install shower flow-control fittings with specified maximum flow rates in shower arms.
- E. Set shower basins in leveling bed of cement grout.
- F. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings. Comply with escutcheons requirements specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."
- G. Seal joints between showers and floors and walls using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect fixtures with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.
- B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."

- C. Comply with traps and soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Operate and adjust showers and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning showers, fittings, and controls.
- B. Adjust water pressure at faucets to produce proper flow.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. After completing installation of showers and basins, inspect and repair damaged finishes.
- B. Clean showers and basins, faucets, and other fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.
- C. Provide protective covering for installed fixtures and fittings.
- D. Do not allow use of showers and basins for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 22 4223

SECTION 23 0513 - COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes general requirements for single-phase and polyphase, general-purpose, horizontal, small and medium, squirrel-cage induction motors for use on ac power systems up to 600 V and installed at equipment manufacturer's factory or shipped separately by equipment manufacturer for field installation.

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:
 - 1. Motor controllers.
 - 2. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
 - 3. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
 - 4. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL MOTOR REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.

2.2 MOTOR CHARACTERISTICS

- A. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 40 deg C and at altitude of 3300 feet above sea level.
- B. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.

2.3 POLYPHASE MOTORS

- A. Description: NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction motor.
- B. Efficiency: Energy efficient, as defined in NEMA MG 1.
- C. Service Factor: 1.15.

D. Multispeed Motors: Variable torque.

1. For motors with 2:1 speed ratio, consequent pole, single winding.
2. For motors with other than 2:1 speed ratio, separate winding for each speed.

E. Multispeed Motors: Separate winding for each speed.

F. Rotor: Random-wound, squirrel cage.

G. Bearings: Regreasable, shielded, antifriction ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.

H. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating.

I. Insulation: Class F

J. Code Letter Designation:

1. Motors Smaller than 15 HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.

K. Enclosure Material: Cast iron for motor frame sizes 324T and larger; rolled steel for motor frame sizes smaller than 324T

2.4 POLYPHASE MOTORS WITH ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS

A. Motors Used with Reduced-Voltage and Multispeed Controllers: Match wiring connection requirements for controller with required motor leads. Provide terminals in motor terminal box, suited to control method.

B. Motors Used with Variable Frequency Controllers: Ratings, characteristics, and features coordinated with and approved by controller manufacturer.

1. Windings: Copper magnet wire with moisture-resistant insulation varnish, designed and tested to resist transient spikes, high frequencies, and short time rise pulses produced by pulse-width modulated inverters.
2. Energy- and Premium-Efficient Motors: Class B temperature rise; Class F insulation.
3. Inverter-Duty Motors: Class F temperature rise; Class H insulation.
4. Thermal Protection: Comply with NEMA MG 1 requirements for thermally protected motors.

2.5 SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS

A. Motors larger than 1/20 hp shall be one of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:

1. Permanent-split capacitor.
2. Split phase.
3. Capacitor start, inductor run.
4. Capacitor start, capacitor run.

- B. Multispeed Motors: Variable-torque, permanent-split-capacitor type.
- C. Bearings: Prelubricated, antifriction ball bearings or sleeve bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- D. Motors 1/20 HP and Smaller: Shaded-pole type.
- E. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation. Thermal-protection device shall automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION 23 0513

SECTION 23 0516 - EXPANSION FITTINGS AND LOOPS FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Flexible-hose packless expansion joints.
 - 2. Externally pressurized metal-bellows packless expansion joints.
 - 3. Alignment guides and anchors.
 - 4. Pipe loops and swing connections.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For expansion joints to include in maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Compatibility: Products shall be suitable for piping service fluids, materials, working pressures, and temperatures.
- B. Capability: Products to absorb 200 percent of maximum axial movement between anchors.

2.2 PACKLESS EXPANSION JOINTS

- A. Flexible-Hose Packless Expansion Joints:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Flex-Hose Co., Inc.
 - b. Flexicraft Industries.
 - c. Unisource Manufacturing, Inc.

- d. Metaflex-Metraloop.
- 2. Description: Manufactured assembly with inlet and outlet elbow fittings and two flexible-metal-hose legs joined by long-radius, 180-degree return bend or center section of flexible hose.
- 3. Flexible Hose: Corrugated-metal inner hoses and braided outer sheaths.
- 4. Expansion Joints for Copper Tubing NPS 2 and Smaller: Copper-alloy fittings with solder-joint end connections.
 - a. Bronze hoses and single-braid bronze sheaths with 450 psig at 70 deg F and 340 psig at 450 deg F ratings.
- 5. Expansion Joints for Copper Tubing NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Copper-alloy fittings with threaded end connections.
 - a. Stainless-steel hoses and single-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 300 psig at 70 deg F and 225 psig at 450 deg F ratings.
- 6. Expansion Joints for Steel Piping NPS 2 and Smaller: Carbon-steel fittings with threaded end connections.
 - a. Stainless-steel hoses and double-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 700 psig at 70 deg F and 515 psig at 600 deg F ratings.
- 7. Expansion Joints for Steel Piping NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 6: Carbon-steel fittings with welded end connections.
 - a. Stainless-steel hoses and double-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 275 psig at 70 deg F and 200 psig at 600 deg F ratings.

2.3 ALIGNMENT GUIDES AND ANCHORS

A. Alignment Guides:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Flex-Hose Co., Inc.
 - b. Flexicraft Industries.
 - c. Unisource Manufacturing, Inc.
- 2. Description: Steel, factory-fabricated alignment guide, with bolted two-section outer cylinder and base for attaching to structure; with two-section guiding slider for bolting to pipe.

B. Anchor Materials:

- 1. Steel Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
- 2. Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.10 or ASTM A 183, steel hex head.
- 3. Washers: ASTM F 844, steel, plain, flat washers.

4. Mechanical Fasteners: Insert-wedge-type stud with expansion plug anchor for use in hardened portland cement concrete, with tension and shear capacities appropriate for application.
 - a. Stud: Threaded, zinc-coated carbon steel.
 - b. Expansion Plug: Zinc-coated steel.
 - c. Washer and Nut: Zinc-coated steel.
5. Chemical Fasteners: Insert-type stud, bonding-system anchor for use with hardened portland cement concrete, with tension and shear capacities appropriate for application.
 - a. Bonding Material: ASTM C 881/C 881M, Type IV, Grade 3, two-component epoxy resin suitable for surface temperature of hardened concrete where fastener is to be installed.
 - b. Stud: ASTM A 307, zinc-coated carbon steel with continuous thread on stud, unless otherwise indicated.
 - c. Washer and Nut: Zinc-coated steel.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXPANSION JOINT INSTALLATION

- A. Install expansion joints of sizes matching sizes of piping in which they are installed.

3.2 PIPE LOOP AND SWING CONNECTION INSTALLATION

- A. Connect risers and branch connections to mains with at least five pipe fittings, including tee in main.
- B. Connect risers and branch connections to terminal units with at least four pipe fittings, including tee in riser.
- C. Connect mains and branch connections to terminal units with at least four pipe fittings, including tee in main.

3.3 ALIGNMENT-GUIDE AND ANCHOR INSTALLATION

- A. Install alignment guides to guide expansion and to avoid end-loading and torsional stress.
- B. Install one guide(s) on each side of pipe expansion fittings and loops. Install guides nearest to expansion joint not more than four pipe diameters from expansion joint.
- C. Attach guides to pipe, and secure guides to building structure.

- D. Install anchors at locations to prevent stresses from exceeding those permitted by ASME B31.9 and to prevent transfer of loading and stresses to connected equipment.
- E. Anchor Attachments:
 - 1. Anchor Attachment to Steel Pipe: Attach by welding. Comply with ASME B31.9 and ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
 - 2. Anchor Attachment to Copper Tubing: Attach with pipe hangers. Use MSS SP-69, Type 24; U bolts bolted to anchor.
- F. Fabricate and install steel anchors by welding steel shapes, plates, and bars. Comply with ASME B31.9 and AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
 - 1. Anchor Attachment to Steel Structural Members: Attach by welding.
 - 2. Anchor Attachment to Concrete Structural Members: Attach by fasteners. Follow fastener manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 23 0516

SECTION 230517 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Sleeves.
 - 2. Sleeve-seal systems.
 - 3. Sleeve-seal fittings.
 - 4. Grout.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SLEEVES

- A. Cast-Iron Wall Pipes: Cast or fabricated of cast or ductile iron and equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Galvanized-Steel-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, with plain ends.
- C. Galvanized-Steel-Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.

2.2 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. Description: Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space between piping and sleeve.
 - 1. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
 - 2. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel or Stainless steel.
 - 3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating, of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS

- A. Description: Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly made for imbedding in concrete slab or wall. Unit has plastic or rubber waterstop collar with center opening to match piping OD.

2.4 GROUT

- A. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- B. Characteristics: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
- B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide 1-inch annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.
 - 1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.
 - 1. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes in slabs formed by molded-PE or -PP sleeves.
 - 2. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level.
 - 3. Using grout, seal the space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.
- D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.
 - 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 - 2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
 - 3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements for sealants specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

- E. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.2 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service piping entries into building.
- B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration, assemble sleeve-seal system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.

3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal fittings in new walls and slabs as they are constructed.
- B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.
- C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.
- D. Using grout, seal the space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

3.4 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL SCHEDULE

- A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:
 - 1. Exterior Concrete Walls above Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Sleeve-seal fittings.
 - 2. Exterior Concrete Walls below Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
 - 2) For High Temperature Hot Water piping, provide watertight link seal and pipe sleeve at exterior HTHW wall penetration.
 - 3. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
 - 4. Concrete Slabs above Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves.

5. Interior Partitions:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves.

END OF SECTION 23 0517

SECTION 23 0518 - ESCUTCHEONS FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Escutcheons.
 - 2. Floor plates.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and setscrew fastener.
- B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- C. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- D. Split-Casting Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and with concealed hinge and setscrew.
- E. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With chrome-plated finish, concealed and exposed-rivet hinge, and spring-clip fasteners.

2.2 FLOOR PLATES

- A. One-Piece Floor Plates: Cast-iron flange with holes for fasteners.
- B. Split-Casting Floor Plates: Cast brass with concealed hinge.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.

- B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.

1. Escutcheons for New Piping:

- a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
- b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
- c. Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge.
- d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
- e. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
- f. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
- g. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.

- C. Install floor plates for piping penetrations of equipment-room floors.

- D. Install floor plates with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.

1. New Piping: One-piece, floor-plate type.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates using new materials.

END OF SECTION 23 0518

SECTION 230519 - METERS AND GAGES FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Bimetallic-actuated thermometers.
 - 2. Filled-system thermometers.
 - 3. Thermowells.
 - 4. Dial-type pressure gages.
 - 5. Gage attachments.
 - 6. Test plugs.
 - 7. Thermal-energy meters.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For each type of meter and gage, from manufacturer.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For meters and gages to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 BIMETALLIC-ACTUATED THERMOMETERS

- A. Standard: ASME B40.200.
- B. Case: sealed type; stainless steel with 5-inch nominal diameter.
- C. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings and scales in deg F.
- D. Connector Type(s): Union joint, adjustable angle, with unified-inch screw threads.
- E. Connector Size: 1/2 inch, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.

- F. Stem: 0.25 or 0.375 inch in diameter; stainless steel.
- G. Window: Plain glass.
- H. Ring: Stainless steel.
- I. Element: Bimetal coil.
- J. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
- K. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1.5 percent of scale range.

2.2 FILLED-SYSTEM THERMOMETERS

A. Direct-Mounted, Metal-Case, Vapor-Actuated Thermometers:

- 1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
- 2. Case: Sealed type, cast aluminum or drawn steel 5-inch nominal diameter.
- 3. Element: Bourdon tube or other type of pressure element.
- 4. Movement: Mechanical, dampening type, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
- 5. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F.
- 6. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
- 7. Window: Glass
- 8. Ring: Stainless steel.
- 9. Connector Type(s): Union joint, adjustable, 180 degrees in vertical plane, 360 degrees in horizontal plane, with locking device]; with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
- 10. Thermal System: Liquid-filled bulb in copper-plated steel, aluminum, or brass stem and of length to suit installation.
 - a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
- 11. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range.

2.3 THERMOWELLS

A. Thermowells:

- 1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
- 2. Description: Pressure-tight, socket-type fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.
- 3. Material for Use with Copper Tubing: CNR or CUNI.
- 4. Material for Use with Steel Piping: Stainless Steel.
- 5. Type: Stepped shank unless straight or tapered shank is indicated.
- 6. External Threads: NPS 3/4, or NPS 1, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.
- 7. Internal Threads: 3/4", with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
- 8. Bore: Diameter required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
- 9. Insertion Length: Length required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
- 10. Lagging Extension: Include on thermowells for insulated piping and tubing.
- 11. Bushings: For converting size of thermowell's internal screw thread to size of thermometer connection.

- B. Heat-Transfer Medium: Mixture of graphite and glycerin.

2.4 PRESSURE GAGES

- A. Direct-Mounted, Metal-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:

1. Standard: ASME B40.100.
2. Case: Liquid-filled Solid-front, pressure relief type(s); cast aluminum or drawn steel; 6-inch nominal diameter.
3. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
4. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4, NPS 1/2, or NPS 3/4, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
5. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
6. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi.
7. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
8. Window: Glass.
9. Ring: Stainless steel.
10. Accuracy: Grade B, plus or minus 2 percent of middle half of scale range.

2.5 GAGE ATTACHMENTS

- A. Snubbers: ASME B40.100, brass; with NPS 1/4, NPS 1/2, or NPS 3/4, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and piston-type surge-dampening device. Include extension for use on insulated piping.

2.6 TEST PLUGS

- A. Description: Test-station fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.
- B. Body: Brass or stainless steel with core inserts and gasketed and threaded cap. Include extended stem on units to be installed in insulated piping.
- C. Thread Size: NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
- D. Minimum Pressure and Temperature Rating: 500 psig at 200 deg F.
- E. Core Inserts: Chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic and EPDM self-sealing rubber.

2.7 THERMAL-ENERGY METERS

- A. Ultrasonic, Thermal-Energy Meters:

1. Flexim Dual Ultrasonic Flow and Energy Meter with RS485 modbus RTU output option.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install thermowells with socket extending to center of pipe for pipe size 2-1/2" and smaller, and 1/4 to 1/2 pipe diameter for pipe size 2-1/2" and larger and in vertical position in piping tees.
- B. Install thermowells of sizes required to match thermometer connectors. Include bushings if required to match sizes.
- C. Install thermowells with extension on insulated piping.
- D. Fill thermowells with heat-transfer medium.
- E. Install direct-mounted thermometers in thermowells and adjust vertical and tilted positions.
- F. Install direct-mounted pressure gages in piping tees with pressure gage located on pipe at the most readable position.
- G. Install valve and snubber in piping for each pressure gage for fluids (except steam).
- H. Install test plugs in piping tees.
- I. Assemble and install connections, tubing, and accessories between flow-measuring elements and flowmeters according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- J. Install thermometers in the following locations:
 - 1. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic zone.
 - 2. Two inlets and two outlets of each chiller evaporator.
 - 3. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic coil in air-handling units.
 - 4. Two inlets and two outlets of each hydronic heat exchanger.
 - 5. Building entrance and exit of high temperature hot water service.
 - 6. As indicated on drawings, plans, diagrams, and details.
- K. Install pressure gages in the following locations:
 - 1. Two Inlet and outlet of each chiller evaporator.
 - 2. Suction and discharge of each pump.
 - 3. Two inlets and two outlets of each hydronic heat exchanger.
 - 4. Building entrance and exit of high temperature hot water service.
 - 5. As indicated on drawings, plans, diagrams, and details.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Install meters and gages adjacent to machines and equipment to allow service and maintenance of meters, gages, machines, and equipment.

- B. Connect flowmeter-system to building main electrical meter comm port via communication wire to enable the meter to be read without entering the building.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. After installation, calibrate meters according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Adjust faces of meters and gages to proper angle for best visibility.

3.4 THERMOMETER SCHEDULE

- A. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each hydronic zone shall be the following:
 - 1. Sealed, bimetallic-actuated type.
- B. Thermometers at inlets and outlets of each chiller evaporator shall be the following:
 - 1. Sealed, bimetallic-actuated type.
- C. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each hydronic coil in air-handling units, fan coil units, and reheat coils shall be the following:
 - 1. Sealed, bimetallic-actuated type.
- D. Thermometers at low temperature hydronic system inlets and outlets of each hydronic heat exchanger shall be the following:
 - 1. Sealed, bimetallic-actuated type.
- E. Thermometers at high temperature hydronic system inlets and outlets of each hydronic heat exchanger and at building entrance and exit shall be the following:
 - 1. Direct-mounted, metal-case, vapor-actuated type.
- F. Thermometer stems shall be of length to match thermowell insertion length.

3.5 THERMOMETER SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

- A. Scale Range for Chilled-Water Piping: 0 to 100 deg F.
- B. Scale Range for High Temperature Heating Hot-Water Piping: 50 to 600 deg F.
- C. Scale Range for Low Temperature Heating Hot-Water Piping: 50 to 300 deg F.

3.6 PRESSURE-GAGE SCHEDULE

- A. Pressure gages at inlet and outlet of each chiller evaporator, pump, heat exchanger, and high temperature hot water service entrance and exit shall be the following:
 - 1. Liquid-filled Solid-front, pressure-relief, direct-mounted, metal case.

3.7 PRESSURE-GAGE SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

- A. Scale Range for Chilled-Water Piping and Low Temperature Hot Water Piping: 0 to 200 psi.
- B. Scale Range for High Temperature Hot-Water Piping: 0 to 600 psi.

END OF SECTION 23 0519

SECTION 23 0523 - GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Bronze ball valves.
 - 2. High-performance butterfly valves.
 - 3. Bronze swing check valves.
 - 4. Iron swing check valves.
 - 5. Steel gate valves.
 - 6. Chainwheels.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CWP: Cold working pressure.
- B. EPDM: Ethylene propylene copolymer rubber.
- C. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene, Buna-N, or nitrile rubber.
- D. NRS: Nonrising stem.
- E. OS&Y: Outside screw and yoke.
- F. RS: Rising stem.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve indicated.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. ASME Compliance:

1. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
2. ASME B31.1 for power piping valves.
3. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:

1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
2. Protect threads, flange faces, grooves, and weld ends.
3. Set angle, gate, and globe valves closed to prevent rattling.
4. Set ball and plug valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.
5. Set butterfly valves closed or slightly open.
6. Block check valves in either closed or open position.

B. Use the following precautions during storage:

1. Maintain valve end protection.
2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher than ambient dew point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.

C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use handwheels or stems as lifting or rigging points.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

A. Refer to HVAC valve schedule articles for applications of valves.

B. Valve Pressure and Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.

C. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.

D. Valve Actuator Types:

1. Gear Actuator: For quarter-turn valves NPS 8 and larger.
2. Handwheel: For valves other than quarter-turn types.
3. Handlever: For quarter-turn valves NPS 6 and smaller.
4. Chainwheel: Device for attachment to valve handwheel, stem, or other actuator; of size and with chain for mounting height, as indicated in the "Valve Installation" Article.

E. Valves in Insulated Piping: With 2-inch stem extensions and the following features:

1. Gate Valves: With rising stem.

2. Ball Valves: With extended operating handle of non-thermal-conductive material, and protective sleeve that allows operation of valve without breaking the vapor seal or disturbing insulation.
3. Butterfly Valves: With extended neck.

F. Valve-End Connections:

1. Solder Joint: With sockets according to ASME B16.18.
2. Threaded: ASME B16.4
3. Flanged: 300lb ASTM A-105

G. Valve Bypass and Drain Connections: MSS SP-45.

2.2 BRONZE BALL VALVES

A. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim:

1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
 - b. Rating: Class 150
 - c. Body Design: Two piece.
 - d. Body Material: Bronze.
 - e. Ends: Threaded or soldered
 - f. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
 - g. Stem: Bronze.
 - h. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
 - i. Port: Full.

2.3 HIGH-PERFORMANCE BUTTERFLY VALVES

A. Single-Flange, High-Performance Butterfly Valves:

1. Description:
 - a. Butterfly triple offset.
 - b. Size range: 2" or larger.
 - c. Rating: Designed to meet ANSI 150 or 300 Class depending on valve application schedule.
 - d. End Connection: Flanged.
 - e. Body: Steel ASTM 216 Grade WCB.
 - f. Stem: 316 stainless steel ASTM A276.
 - g. Disc: ASTM A216 Nickle plated.
 - h. Seat: Stellite.
 - i. Bearing: AISI 304 Nitrite.
 - j. Packing: Graphite.
 - k. Pin: ASTM A182
 - l. Furnish with gear operator

2.4 BRONZE SWING CHECK VALVES

A. Bronze Swing Check Valves with Bronze Disc:

1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 3.
 - b. Rating: 150 Class.
 - c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
 - e. Ends: Soldered or threaded
 - f. Disc: Bronze.

2.5 IRON SWING CHECK VALVES

A. Iron Swing Check Valves with Metal Seats:

1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
 - b. Rating: 150 Class.
 - c. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
 - e. Ends: Flanged.
 - f. Trim: Bronze.
 - g. Gasket: Asbestos free.

2.6 STEEL GATE VALVES

A. Steel Gate Valves NPS 2 and smaller:

1. Description:
 - a. Bolted bonnet, OS&Y ANSI B16.34.
 - b. Rating: 150 or 300 Class depending on valve application schedule.
 - c. Body Material: Carbon steel, ASTM A105 Forged.
 - d. Bonnet/Cover: Carbon steel, ASTM A105 Forged.
 - e. Ends: Socket weld.
 - f. Trim: Full stellite facing.
 - g. Wedge/Disc: Carbon steel with stellite facing.
 - h. Seat: Carbon steel with stellite facing.
 - i. Stem: 13% Cr. Stainless Steel, A-582 Type 410
 - j. Bonnet/Cover Gasket: Spiral wound 316 SS + Graphite
 - k. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

B. Steel Gate Valves NPS 2-1/2 and larger:

1. Description:
 - a. Bolted bonnet, OS&Y ANSI B16.34.
 - b. Rating: 150 or 300 Class depending on valve application schedule.
 - c. Body Material: Carbon steel, ASTM A216 Gr. WCB cast.
 - d. Bonnet/Cover: Carbon steel, ASTM A216 Gr. WCB cast.
 - e. Ends: Butt weld, bore to match pipe.
 - f. Trim: Full stellite facing.
 - g. Wedge/Disc: Carbon steel with stellite facing.
 - h. Seat: Carbon steel with stellite facing.
 - i. Stem: 13% Cr. Stainless Steel, A-582 Type 410

- j. Bonnet/Cover Gasket: Spiral wound 316 SS + Graphite
- k. Packing and Gasket: Compressed graphoil ring
- l. Packing bolt pin: Steel

2.7 CHAINWHEELS

- A. Description: Valve actuation assembly with sprocket rim, brackets, and chain.
 - 1. Brackets: Type, number, size, and fasteners required to mount actuator on valve.
 - 2. Attachment: For connection to gate and butterfly valve stems.
 - 3. Sprocket Rim with Chain Guides: Cast iron, of type and size required for valve.
 - 4. Chain: Stainless steel, of size required to fit sprocket rim.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.
- B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.
- C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.
- D. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.
- E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

3.2 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
- B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.
- C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.
- D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
- E. Install chainwheels on operators for butterfly and gate valves NPS 4 and larger and more than 96 inches above floor. Extend chains to 60 inches above finished floor.
- F. Install check valves for proper direction of flow and as follows:

1. Swing Check Valves: In horizontal position with hinge pin level.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

3.4 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. If valve applications are not indicated, use the following:
 1. Shutoff Service: Ball for low temperature hot water, or gate valves for high temperature hot water.
 2. Throttling Service: ball for low temperature hot water and butterfly for high temperature hot water.
 3. Pump-Discharge Check Valves:
 - a. NPS 2 and Smaller: Bronze swing check valves with bronze disc.
 - b. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Iron swing check valves with lever and weight or with spring or iron, center-guided, metal-seat check valves.
- B. If valves with specified SWP classes or CWP ratings are not available, the same types of valves with higher SWP classes or CWP ratings may be substituted.

3.5 CHILLED-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller:
 1. Bronze Ball Valves: Ends to match service pipe schedule.
 2. Bronze Swing Check Valves: Class 150, ends to match service pipe schedule.
 3. Steel gate valves: Class 150, ends to match service pipe schedule.
- B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:
 1. High-Performance Butterfly Valves: Class 150, single flange.
 2. Iron Swing Check Valves: Class 150, flanged
 3. Steel gate valves: Class 150, flanged.

3.6 HEATING-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller:
 1. Bronze Ball Valves: Ends to match service pipe schedule.
 2. Bronze Swing Check Valves: Class 150, ends to match service pipe schedule.
 3. Steel gate valves: Class 150, ends to match service pipe schedule.
- B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:
 1. High-Performance Butterfly Valves: Class 150, single flange.
 2. Iron Swing Check Valves: Class 150, flanged
 3. Steel gate valves: Class 150, flanged.

3.7 HIGH TEMPERATURE HOT-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller:

1. Steel gate valves: Class 300, socket weld.

B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:

1. High-Performance Butterfly Valves: Class 300, single flange.
2. Steel gate valves: Class 300, butt weld.

END OF SECTION 23 0523

SECTION 23 0529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
3. Metal framing systems.
4. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
5. Pipe stands.
6. Equipment supports.

- B. Related Sections:

1. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for structural-steel shapes and plates for trapeze hangers for pipe and equipment supports.
2. Section 230516 "Expansion Fittings and Loops for HVAC Piping" for pipe guides and anchors.
3. Section 230548 "Vibration Controls for HVAC" for vibration isolation devices.
4. Section 233113 "Metal Ducts" for duct hangers and supports.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. MSS: Manufacturers Standardization Society of The Valve and Fittings Industry Inc.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Design trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- B. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports for HVAC piping and equipment shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7.
 1. Design supports for multiple pipes, including pipe stands, capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.
 2. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following; include Product Data for components:
 - 1. Trapeze pipe hangers.
 - 2. Metal framing systems.
 - 3. Pipe stands.
 - 4. Equipment supports.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For trapeze hangers indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
 - 1. Detail fabrication and assembly of trapeze hangers.
 - 2. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for designing trapeze hangers.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Structural Steel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:
 - 1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
 - 2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized or hot dipped.
 - 3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner, plenum rated.
 - 4. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of stainless steel.

2.2 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

- A. Description: MSS SP-69, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural carbon-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 stainless-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

2.3 METAL FRAMING SYSTEMS

A. MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:

1. Description: Shop or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
2. Standard: MFMA-4.
3. Channels: Continuous slotted steel channel with inturned lips.
4. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped steel nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of stainless steel.
6. Metallic Coating: Hot-dipped galvanized.

2.4 THERMAL-HANGER SHIELD INSERTS

- A. Insulation-Insert Material for Cold Piping: ASTM C 591, Type VI, Grade 1 polyisocyanurate with 125-psig minimum compressive strength and vapor barrier.
- B. Insulation-Insert Material for Hot Piping: Water-repellent treated, ASTM C 533, Type I calcium silicate with 100-psig minimum compressive strength.
- C. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.
- D. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.
- E. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

2.5 PIPE STANDS

- A. General Requirements for Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated assemblies made of manufactured corrosion-resistant components to support roof-mounted piping.
- B. Compact Pipe Stand: One-piece plastic unit with integral-rod roller, pipe clamps, or V-shaped cradle to support pipe, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
- C. Low-Type, Single-Pipe Stand: One-piece stainless-steel base unit with plastic roller, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
- D. High-Type, Single-Pipe Stand:
 1. Description: Assembly of base, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe support, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
 2. Base: Stainless steel.
 3. Vertical Members: Two or more cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel, continuous-thread rods.
 4. Horizontal Member: Cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel rod with plastic or stainless-steel, roller-type pipe support.

E. High-Type, Multiple-Pipe Stand:

1. Description: Assembly of bases, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe supports, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
2. Bases: One or more; plastic.
3. Vertical Members: Two or more protective-coated-steel channels.
4. Horizontal Member: Protective-coated-steel channel.
5. Pipe Supports: Galvanized-steel, clevis-type pipe hangers.

F. Curb-Mounted-Type Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe supports made from structural-steel shapes, continuous-thread rods, and rollers, for mounting on permanent stationary roof curb.

2.6 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural carbon-steel shapes.

2.7 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- B. Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from the building structure.
- B. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.
1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
 2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- C. Metal Framing System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping, and support together on field-assembled metal framing systems.

- D. Thermal-Hanger Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.
- E. Pipe Stand Installation:
 - 1. Pipe Stand Types except Curb-Mounted Type: Assemble components and mount on smooth roof surface. Do not penetrate roof membrane.
 - 2. Curb-Mounted-Type Pipe Stands: Assemble components or fabricate pipe stand and mount on permanent, stationary roof curb. See Section 077200 "Roof Accessories" for curbs.
- F. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- G. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.
- H. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- I. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.
- J. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.
- K. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- L. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
- M. Insulated Piping:
 - 1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
 - a. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
 - b. Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
 - c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
 - 2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
 - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
 - 3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.

- a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
- 4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
 - a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2: 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.
 - b. NPS 4: 12 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
 - c. NPS 5 and NPS 6: 18 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
 - d. NPS 8 to NPS 14: 24 inches long and 0.075 inch thick.
 - e. NPS 16 to NPS 24: 24 inches long and 0.105 inch thick.
- 5. Pipes NPS 8 and Larger: Include wood or reinforced calcium-silicate-insulation inserts of length at least as long as protective shield.
- 6. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

3.2 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.
- B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make bearing surface smooth.
- C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

3.3 METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.
- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:
 - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
 - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
 - 4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
- B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1 inches

3.5 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
 - 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.
- B. Touchup: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal are specified in Section 099123 "Interior Painting"
- C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
- B. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.
- D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
- E. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.
- F. Use thermal-hanger shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.
- G. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 - 1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
 - 2. Single-Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes NPS 1 to NPS 30, from two rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
 - 3. Adjustable Roller Hangers (MSS Type 43): For suspension of pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 24, from single rod if horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
- H. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 - 1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24.

2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 if longer ends are required for riser clamps.
- I. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 1. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
 2. Malleable-Iron Sockets (MSS Type 16): For attaching hanger rods to various types of building attachments.
 3. Steel Weldless Eye Nuts (MSS Type 17): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
- J. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
 2. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
 3. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:
 - a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb.
 - b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb.
 - c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb.
 4. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
 5. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
 6. Horizontal Travelers (MSS Type 58): For supporting piping systems subject to linear horizontal movement where headroom is limited.
- K. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
 2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
 3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.
- L. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 1. Restraint-Control Devices (MSS Type 47): Where indicated to control piping movement.
 2. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4 inches.
- M. Comply with MSS SP-69 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.

- N. Comply with MFMA-103 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- O. Use mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.
- P. Tack nuts to threaded rods after all height adjustment is complete.

END OF SECTION 23 0529

SECTION 23 0548 - VIBRATION CONTROLS FOR HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Elastomeric isolation pads.
 - 2. Open-spring isolators.
 - 3. Pipe-riser resilient supports.
 - 4. Resilient pipe guides.
 - 5. Spring hangers.
 - 6. Vibration isolation equipment bases.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include rated load, rated deflection, and overload capacity for each vibration isolation device.
 - 2. Illustrate and indicate style, material, strength, fastening provision, and finish for each type and size of vibration isolation device type required.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Detail fabrication and assembly of equipment bases. Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.
 - 2. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For each vibration isolation device.
 - 1. Include design calculations for selecting vibration isolators and for designing vibration isolation bases.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Show coordination of vibration isolation device installation for HVAC piping and equipment with other systems and equipment in the vicinity, including other supports and restraints, if any.
- B. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
- C. Welding certificates.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: Include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ELASTOMERIC ISOLATION PADS

- A. Elastomeric Isolation Pads:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
 - b. Mason Industries, Inc.
 - c. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
 - 2. Fabrication: Single or multiple layers of sufficient durometer stiffness for uniform loading over pad area.
 - 3. Size: Factory or field cut to match requirements of supported equipment.
 - 4. Pad Material: Oil and water resistant with elastomeric properties.
 - 5. Surface Pattern: Smooth pattern.
 - 6. Infused nonwoven cotton or synthetic fibers.
 - 7. Load-bearing metal plates adhered to pads.

2.2 OPEN-SPRING ISOLATORS

- A. Freestanding, Laterally Stable, Open-Spring Isolators:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
 - b. Mason Industries, Inc.
 - c. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.

2. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
6. Baseplates: Factory-drilled steel plate for bolting to structure with an elastomeric isolator pad attached to the underside. Baseplates shall limit floor load to 500 psig.
7. Top Plate and Adjustment Bolt: Threaded top plate with adjustment bolt and cap screw to fasten and level equipment.

2.3 PIPE-RISER RESILIENT SUPPORT

- A. Description: All-directional, acoustical pipe anchor consisting of two steel tubes separated by a minimum 1/2-inch-thick neoprene.
1. Vertical-Limit Stops: Steel and neoprene vertical-limit stops arranged to prevent vertical travel in both directions.
 2. Maximum Load Per Support: 500 psig on isolation material providing equal isolation in all directions.

2.4 RESILIENT PIPE GUIDES

- A. Description: Telescopic arrangement of two steel tubes or post and sleeve arrangement separated by a minimum 1/2-inch-thick neoprene.
1. Factory-Set Height Guide with Shear Pin: Shear pin shall be removable and reinsertable to allow for selection of pipe movement. Guides shall be capable of motion to meet location requirements.

2.5 SPRING HANGERS

- A. Combination Coil-Spring and Elastomeric-Insert Hanger with Spring and Insert in Compression:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
 - b. Mason Industries, Inc.
 - c. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
 2. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded hanger rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
 3. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
 4. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.

5. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
6. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
7. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene. Steel-washer-reinforced cup to support spring and bushing projecting through bottom of frame.
8. Adjustable Vertical Stop: Steel washer with neoprene washer "up-stop" on lower threaded rod.
9. Self-centering hanger rod cap to ensure concentricity between hanger rod and support spring coil.

2.6 VIBRATION ISOLATION EQUIPMENT BASES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
 2. Mason Industries, Inc.
 3. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
- B. Steel Rails: Factory-fabricated, welded, structural-steel rails.
 1. Design Requirements: Lowest possible mounting height with not less than 1-inch clearance above the floor. Include equipment anchor bolts and auxiliary motor slide rails.
 - a. Include supports for suction and discharge elbows for pumps.
 2. Structural Steel: Steel shapes, plates, and bars complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M. Rails shall have shape to accommodate supported equipment.
 3. Support Brackets: Factory-welded steel brackets on frame for outrigger isolation mountings and to provide for anchor bolts and equipment support.
- C. Steel Bases: Factory-fabricated, welded, structural-steel bases and rails.
 1. Design Requirements: Lowest possible mounting height with not less than 1-inch clearance above the floor. Include equipment anchor bolts and auxiliary motor slide bases or rails.
 2. Structural Steel: Steel shapes, plates, and bars complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M. Bases shall have shape to accommodate supported equipment.
 3. Support Brackets: Factory-welded steel brackets on frame for outrigger isolation mountings and to provide for anchor bolts and equipment support.
- D. Concrete Inertia Base: Factory-fabricated, welded, structural-steel bases and rails ready for placement of cast-in-place concrete.

1. Design Requirements: Lowest possible mounting height with not less than 1-inch clearance above the floor. Include equipment anchor bolts and auxiliary motor slide bases or rails.
2. Structural Steel: Steel shapes, plates, and bars complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M. Bases shall have shape to accommodate supported equipment.
3. Support Brackets: Factory-welded steel brackets on frame for outrigger isolation mountings and to provide for anchor bolts and equipment support.
4. Fabrication: Fabricate steel templates to hold equipment anchor-bolt sleeves and anchors in place during placement of concrete. Obtain anchor-bolt templates from supported equipment manufacturer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and equipment to receive vibration isolation control devices for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in of reinforcement and cast-in-place anchors to verify actual locations before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 VIBRATION CONTROL DEVICE INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate the location of embedded connection hardware with supported equipment attachment and mounting points and with requirements for concrete reinforcement and formwork specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- B. Installation of vibration isolators must not cause any change of position of equipment, piping, or ductwork resulting in stresses or misalignment.

3.3 VIBRATION ISOLATION EQUIPMENT BASES INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate the location of embedded connection hardware with supported equipment attachment and mounting points and with requirements for concrete reinforcement and formwork specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

END OF SECTION 23 0548

SECTION 230553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Equipment labels.
 - 2. Warning signs and labels.
 - 3. Pipe labels.
 - 4. Duct labels.
 - 5. Valve tags.
 - 6. Warning tags.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples: For color, letter style, and graphic representation required for each identification material and device.
- C. Equipment Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled with the proposed content for each label.
- D. Valve numbering scheme.
- E. Valve Schedules: For each piping system to include in maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

- A. Metal Labels for Equipment:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Brady Corporation.
 - b. Brimar Industries, Inc.
 - c. Carlton Industries, LP.
 - d. Champion America.
 - e. Craftmark Pipe Markers.

2. Material and Thickness: Brass, 0.032-inch thickness and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
3. Letter Color: Black
4. Background Color: White
5. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
6. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches and Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
7. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets
8. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

B. Plastic Labels for Equipment:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Brady Corporation.
 - b. Brimar Industries, Inc.
 - c. Carlton Industries, LP.
 - d. Champion America.
2. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
3. Letter Color: Black
4. Background Color: White
5. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg .
6. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
7. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
8. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets
9. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

C. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation.

D. Equipment Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number, and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules) and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

2.2 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Brady Corporation.

2. Brimar Industries, Inc.
 3. Carlton Industries, LP.
 4. Champion America.
- B. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- C. Letter Color: Black
- D. Background Color: Yellow
- E. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
- F. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
- G. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
- H. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets
- I. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- J. Label Content: Include caution and warning information plus emergency notification instructions.

2.3 PIPE LABELS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Actioncraft Products, Inc.; a division of Industrial Test Equipment Co., Inc.
 2. Brady Corporation.
 3. Brimar Industries, Inc.
 4. Carlton Industries, LP.
- B. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction according to ASME A13.1.
- C. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.
- D. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings; also include pipe size and an arrow indicating flow direction.

1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
2. Lettering Size: Size letters according to ASME A13.1 for piping for viewing distances up to 72 inches and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances.

2.4 DUCT LABELS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Brady Corporation.
 2. Brimar Industries, Inc.
 3. Carlton Industries, LP.
 4. Champion America.
- B. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- C. Letter Color: Blue.
- D. Background Color: White.
- E. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
- F. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
- G. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches , 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
- H. Fasteners: Stainless-steel
- I. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- J. Duct Label Contents: Include identification of duct service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings; also include duct size and an arrow indicating flow direction.
 1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with duct system service lettering to accommodate both directions or as separate unit on each duct label to indicate flow direction.

2.5 VALVE TAGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Actioncraft Products, Inc.; a division of Industrial Test Equipment Co., Inc.
 2. Brady Corporation.
 3. Brimar Industries, Inc.
 4. Carlton Industries, LP.
- B. Description: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2-inch numbers.
1. Tag Material: Brass, 0.032-inch thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
 2. Fasteners: Brass wire-link chain
- C. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.
1. Valve-tag schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

2.6 WARNING TAGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Brady Corporation.
 2. Brimar Industries, Inc.
 3. Carlton Industries, LP.
 4. Champion America.
- B. Description: Preprinted or partially preprinted accident-prevention tags of plasticized card stock with matte finish suitable for writing.
1. Size: 3 by 5-1/4 inches minimum.
 2. Fasteners: Brass grommet and wire.
 3. Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption such as "DANGER," "CAUTION," or "DO NOT OPERATE."
 4. Color: Safety-yellow background with black lettering.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.

- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.
- C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

3.3 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.
- B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

3.4 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Piping Color Coding: Painting of piping is specified in Div 09
- B. Pipe Label Locations: Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
 - 1. Near each valve and control device.
 - 2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
 - 3. Near penetrations and on both sides of through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
 - 4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
 - 5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
 - 6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet in areas of congested piping and equipment.
 - 7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.
- C. Directional Flow Arrows: Arrows shall be used to indicate direction of flow in pipes, including pipes where flow is allowed in both directions.
- D. Pipe Label Color Schedule:
 - 1. Chilled-Water Piping: White letters on a safety-blue background.
 - 2. Heating Water Piping: White letters on a safety-green background.
 - 3. High Temperature Heating Water Piping: White letters on a safety-red background.
 - 4. Refrigerant Piping: Black letters on a safety-orange background.

3.5 DUCT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install plastic-laminated duct labels with permanent adhesive on air ducts in the following color codes:
 - 1. Blue: For cold-air supply ducts.
 - 2. Yellow: For hot-air supply ducts.
 - 3. Green: For exhaust-, outside-, relief-, return-, and mixed-air ducts.

- B. Locate labels near points where ducts enter into and exit from concealed spaces and at maximum intervals of 50 feet in each space where ducts are exposed or concealed by removable ceiling system.

3.6 VALVE-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Install tags on valves and control devices in piping systems, except check valves, valves within factory-fabricated equipment units, shutoff valves, faucets, convenience and lawn-watering hose connections, and HVAC terminal devices and similar roughing-in connections of end-use fixtures and units. List tagged valves in a valve schedule.
- B. Valve-Tag Application Schedule: Tag valves according to size, shape, and color scheme and with captions similar to those indicated in the following subparagraphs:
 - 1. Valve-Tag Size and Shape:
 - a. Chilled Water: 1-1/2 inches, round.
 - b. Refrigerant: 1-1/2 inches, round.
 - c. Hot Water: 1-1/2 inches round.
 - 2. Valve-Tag Colors:
 - a. Toxic and Corrosive Fluids: Black letters on a safety-orange background.
 - b. Flammable Fluids: Black letters on a safety-yellow background.
 - c. Combustible Fluids: White letters on a safety-brown background.
 - d. Potable and Other Water: White letters on a safety-green background.
 - e. Compressed Air: White letters on a safety-blue background.
 - f. Defined by User: White letters on a safety-purple background, black letters on a safety-white background, white letters on a safety-gray background, and white letters on a safety-black background

3.7 WARNING-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Write required message on, and attach warning tags to, equipment and other items where required.

END OF SECTION 23 0553

SECTION 23 0593 - TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Balancing Air Systems:
 - a. Constant-volume air systems.
 - b. Variable-air-volume systems.
- 2. Balancing Hydronic Piping Systems:
 - a. Variable-flow hydronic systems.
- 3. Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Equipment:
 - a. Heat exchangers.
 - b. Motors.
 - c. Pumps.
 - d. Fan Coil Units.
 - e. DOAS Unit
 - f. Chillers.
 - g. Heat-transfer coils.
- 4. Duct leakage tests.
- 5. Control system verification.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. AABC: Associated Air Balance Council.
- B. BAS: Building automation systems.
- C. NEBB: National Environmental Balancing Bureau.
- D. TAB: Testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- E. TABB: Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Bureau.
- F. TAB Specialist: An independent entity meeting qualifications to perform TAB work.
- G. TDH: Total dynamic head.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. TAB Conference: If requested by the Owner, conduct a TAB conference at Project site after approval of the TAB strategies and procedures plan to develop a mutual understanding of the details. Provide a minimum of 14 days' advance notice of scheduled meeting time and location.
 - 1. Minimum Agenda Items:
 - a. The TAB plan.
 - b. Needs for coordination and cooperation of trades and subcontractors.
 - c. Proposed procedures for documentation and communication flow.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: Submit documentation that the TAB specialist and this Project's TAB team members meet the qualifications specified in "Quality Assurance" Article.
- B. Strategies and Procedures Plan: Submit TAB strategies and step-by-step procedures as specified in "Preparation" Article.
- C. System Readiness Checklists: Submit system readiness checklists as specified in "Preparation" Article.
- D. Examination Report: Submit a summary report of the examination review required in "Examination" Article.
- E. Certified TAB reports.
- F. Sample report forms.
- G. Instrument calibration reports, to include the following:
 - 1. Instrument type and make.
 - 2. Serial number.
 - 3. Application.
 - 4. Dates of use.
 - 5. Dates of calibration.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. TAB Specialists Qualifications: Certified by AABC NEBB or TABB.
 - 1. TAB Field Supervisor: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by AABC NEBB or TABB.
 - 2. TAB Technician: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by AABC NEBB or TABB as a TAB technician.
- B. Instrumentation Type, Quantity, Accuracy, and Calibration: Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 111, Section 4, "Instrumentation."

- C. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 7.2.2 - "Air Balancing."
- D. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6.7.2.3 - "System Balancing."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine the Contract Documents to become familiar with Project requirements and to discover conditions in systems designs that may preclude proper TAB of systems and equipment.
- B. Examine installed systems for balancing devices, such as test ports, gage cocks, thermometer wells, flow-control devices, balancing valves and fittings, and manual volume dampers. Verify that locations of these balancing devices are applicable for intended purpose and are accessible.
- C. Examine the approved submittals for HVAC systems and equipment.
- D. Examine design data including HVAC system descriptions, statements of design assumptions for environmental conditions and systems output, and statements of philosophies and assumptions about HVAC system and equipment controls.
- E. Examine ceiling plenums and underfloor air plenums used for supply, return, or relief air to verify that they are properly separated from adjacent areas. Verify that penetrations in plenum walls are sealed and fire-stopped if required.
- F. Examine equipment performance data including fan and pump curves.
 - 1. Relate performance data to Project conditions and requirements, including system effects that can create undesired or unpredicted conditions that cause reduced capacities in all or part of a system.
 - 2. Calculate system-effect factors to reduce performance ratings of HVAC equipment when installed under conditions different from the conditions used to rate equipment performance. To calculate system effects for air systems, use tables and charts found in AMCA 201, "Fans and Systems," or in SMACNA's "HVAC Systems - Duct Design." Compare results with the design data and installed conditions.
- G. Examine system and equipment installations and verify that field quality-control testing, cleaning, and adjusting specified in individual Sections have been performed.
- H. Examine test reports specified in individual system and equipment Sections.
- I. Examine HVAC equipment and verify that bearings are greased, belts are aligned and tight, filters are clean, and equipment with functioning controls is ready for operation.

- J. Examine terminal units, such as variable-air-volume boxes, and verify that they are accessible and their controls are connected and functioning.
- K. Examine strainers. Verify that startup screens have been replaced by permanent screens with indicated perforations.
- L. Examine control valves for proper installation for their intended function of throttling, diverting, or mixing fluid flows.
- M. Examine heat-transfer coils for correct piping connections and for clean and straight fins.
- N. Examine system pumps to ensure absence of entrained air in the suction piping.
- O. Examine operating safety interlocks and controls on HVAC equipment.
- P. Report deficiencies discovered before and during performance of TAB procedures. Observe and record system reactions to changes in conditions. Record default set points if different from indicated values.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare a TAB plan that includes the following:
 - 1. Equipment and systems to be tested.
 - 2. Strategies and step-by-step procedures for balancing the systems.
 - 3. Instrumentation to be used.
 - 4. Sample forms with specific identification for all equipment.
- B. Perform system-readiness checks of HVAC systems and equipment to verify system readiness for TAB work. Include, at a minimum, the following:
 - 1. Airside:
 - a. Verify that leakage and pressure tests on air distribution systems have been satisfactorily completed.
 - b. Duct systems are complete with terminals installed.
 - c. Volume, smoke, and fire dampers are open and functional.
 - d. Clean filters are installed.
 - e. Fans are operating, free of vibration, and rotating in correct direction.
 - f. Variable-frequency controllers' startup is complete and safeties are verified.
 - g. Automatic temperature-control systems are operational.
 - h. Ceilings are installed.
 - i. Windows and doors are installed.
 - j. Suitable access to balancing devices and equipment is provided.
 - 2. Hydronics:
 - a. Verify leakage and pressure tests on water distribution systems have been satisfactorily completed.
 - b. Piping is complete with terminals installed.
 - c. Water treatment is complete.

- d. Systems are flushed, filled, and air purged.
- e. Strainers are pulled and cleaned.
- f. Control valves are functioning per the sequence of operation.
- g. Shutoff and balance valves have been verified to be 100 percent open.
- h. Pumps are started and proper rotation is verified.
- i. Pump gage connections are installed directly at pump inlet and outlet flanges or in discharge and suction pipe prior to valves or strainers.
- j. Variable-frequency controllers' startup is complete and safeties are verified.
- k. Suitable access to balancing devices and equipment is provided.

3.3 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR TESTING AND BALANCING

- A. Perform testing and balancing procedures on each system according to the procedures contained in AABC's "National Standards for Total System Balance", ASHRAE 111, NEBB's "Procedural Standards for Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Environmental Systems", SMACNA's "HVAC Systems - Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing", and in this Section.
- B. Cut insulation, ducts, pipes, and equipment cabinets for installation of test probes to the minimum extent necessary for TAB procedures.
 - 1. After testing and balancing, patch probe holes in ducts with same material and thickness as used to construct ducts.
 - 2. After testing and balancing, install test ports and duct access doors that comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
 - 3. Install and join new insulation that matches removed materials. Restore insulation, coverings, vapor barrier, and finish according to Section 230713 "Duct Insulation," Section 230716 "HVAC Equipment Insulation," and Section 230719 "HVAC Piping Insulation."
- C. Mark equipment and balancing devices, including damper-control positions, valve position indicators, fan-speed-control levers, and similar controls and devices, with paint or other suitable, permanent identification material to show final settings.
- D. Take and report testing and balancing measurements in inch-pound (IP) units.

3.4 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR BALANCING AIR SYSTEMS

- A. Prepare test reports for both fans and outlets. Obtain manufacturer's outlet factors and recommended testing procedures. Cross-check the summation of required outlet volumes with required fan volumes.
- B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" duct layouts.
- C. For variable-air-volume systems, develop a plan to simulate diversity.
- D. Determine the best locations in main and branch ducts for accurate duct-airflow measurements.

- E. Check airflow patterns from the outdoor-air louvers and dampers and the return- and exhaust-air dampers through the supply-fan discharge and mixing dampers.
- F. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor starters.
- G. Verify that motor starters are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.
- H. Check dampers for proper position to achieve desired airflow path.
- I. Check for airflow blockages.
- J. Check condensate drains for proper connections and functioning.
- K. Check for proper sealing of air-handling-unit components.
- L. Verify that air duct system is sealed as specified in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts."

3.5 PROCEDURES FOR CONSTANT-VOLUME AIR SYSTEMS

- A. Adjust fans to deliver total indicated airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.
 - 1. Measure total airflow.
 - a. Set outside-air, return-air, and relief-air dampers for proper position that simulates minimum outdoor-air conditions.
 - b. Where duct conditions allow, measure airflow by Pitot-tube traverse. If necessary, perform multiple Pitot-tube traverses to obtain total airflow.
 - c. Where duct conditions are not suitable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, a coil traverse may be acceptable.
 - d. If a reliable Pitot-tube traverse or coil traverse is not possible, measure airflow at terminals and calculate the total airflow.
 - 2. Measure fan static pressures as follows:
 - a. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
 - b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan inlet or through the flexible connection.
 - c. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up the air-handling system.
 - d. Report artificial loading of filters at the time static pressures are measured.
 - 3. Review Record Documents to determine variations in design static pressures versus actual static pressures. Calculate actual system-effect factors. Recommend adjustments to accommodate actual conditions.
 - 4. Obtain approval from commissioning authority for adjustment of fan speed higher or lower than indicated speed. Comply with requirements in HVAC Sections for air-handling units for adjustment of fans, belts, and pulley sizes to achieve indicated air-handling-unit performance.
 - 5. Do not make fan-speed adjustments that result in motor overload. Consult equipment manufacturers about fan-speed safety factors. Modulate dampers and

measure fan-motor amperage to ensure that no overload occurs. Measure amperage in full-cooling, full-heating, economizer, and any other operating mode to determine the maximum required brake horsepower.

- B. Adjust volume dampers for main duct, submain ducts, and major branch ducts to indicated airflows.
 - 1. Measure airflow of submain and branch ducts.
 - 2. Adjust submain and branch duct volume dampers for specified airflow.
 - 3. Re-measure each submain and branch duct after all have been adjusted.
- C. Adjust air inlets and outlets for each space to indicated airflows.
 - 1. Set airflow patterns of adjustable outlets for proper distribution without drafts.
 - 2. Measure inlets and outlets airflow.
 - 3. Adjust each inlet and outlet for specified airflow.
 - 4. Re-measure each inlet and outlet after they have been adjusted.
- D. Verify final system conditions.
 - 1. Re-measure and confirm that minimum outdoor, return, and relief airflows are within design. Readjust to design if necessary.
 - 2. Re-measure and confirm that total airflow is within design.
 - 3. Re-measure all final fan operating data, rpms, volts, amps, and static profile.
 - 4. Mark all final settings.
 - 5. Test system in economizer mode. Verify proper operation and adjust if necessary.
 - 6. Measure and record all operating data.
 - 7. Record final fan-performance data.

3.6 PROCEDURES FOR VARIABLE-AIR-VOLUME SYSTEMS

- A. Adjust the variable-air-volume systems as follows:
 - 1. Verify that the system static pressure sensor is located two-thirds of the distance down the duct from the fan discharge.
 - 2. Verify that the system is under static pressure control.
 - 3. Select the terminal unit that is most critical to the supply-fan airflow. Measure inlet static pressure, and adjust system static pressure control set point so the entering static pressure for the critical terminal unit is not less than the sum of the terminal-unit manufacturer's recommended minimum inlet static pressure plus the static pressure needed to overcome terminal-unit discharge system losses.
 - 4. Calibrate and balance each terminal unit for maximum and minimum design airflow as follows:
 - a. Adjust controls so that terminal is calling for maximum airflow. Some controllers require starting with minimum airflow. Verify calibration procedure for specific project.
 - b. Measure airflow and adjust calibration factor as required for design maximum airflow. Record calibration factor.

- c. When maximum airflow is correct, balance the air outlets downstream from terminal units.
 - d. Adjust controls so that terminal is calling for minimum airflow.
 - e. Measure airflow and adjust calibration factor as required for design minimum airflow. Record calibration factor. If no minimum calibration is available, note any deviation from design airflow.
 - f. When in full cooling or full heating, ensure that there is no mixing of hot-deck and cold-deck airstreams unless so designed.
 - g. On constant volume terminals, in critical areas where room pressure is to be maintained, verify that the airflow remains constant over the full range of full cooling to full heating. Note any deviation from design airflow or room pressure.
- 5. After terminals have been calibrated and balanced, test and adjust system for total airflow. Adjust fans to deliver total design airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.
 - a. Set outside-air, return-air, and relief-air dampers for proper position that simulates minimum outdoor-air conditions.
 - b. Set terminals for maximum airflow. If system design includes diversity, adjust terminals for maximum and minimum airflow so that connected total matches fan selection and simulates actual load in the building.
 - c. Where duct conditions allow, measure airflow by Pitot-tube traverse. If necessary, perform multiple Pitot-tube traverses to obtain total airflow.
 - d. Where duct conditions are not suitable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, a coil traverse may be acceptable.
 - e. If a reliable Pitot-tube traverse or coil traverse is not possible, measure airflow at terminals and calculate the total airflow.
- 6. Measure fan static pressures as follows:
 - a. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
 - b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan inlet or through the flexible connection.
 - c. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up the air-handling system.
 - d. Report any artificial loading of filters at the time static pressures are measured.
- 7. Set final return and outside airflow to the fan while operating at maximum return airflow and minimum outdoor airflow.
 - a. Balance the return-air ducts and inlets the same as described for constant-volume air systems.
 - b. Verify that terminal units are meeting design airflow under system maximum flow.
- 8. Re-measure the inlet static pressure at the most critical terminal unit and adjust the system static pressure set point to the most energy-efficient set point to maintain the optimum system static pressure. Record set point and give to controls contractor.
- 9. Verify final system conditions as follows:

- a. Re-measure and confirm that minimum outdoor, return, and relief airflows are within design. Readjust to match design if necessary.
- b. Re-measure and confirm that total airflow is within design.
- c. Re-measure final fan operating data, rpms, volts, amps, and static profile.
- d. Mark final settings.
- e. Test system in economizer mode. Verify proper operation and adjust if necessary. Measure and record all operating data.
- f. Verify tracking between supply and return fans.

3.7 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

- A. Prepare test reports for pumps, coils, and heat exchangers. Obtain approved submittals and manufacturer-recommended testing procedures. Crosscheck the summation of required coil and heat exchanger flow rates with pump design flow rate.
- B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" piping layouts.
- C. In addition to requirements in "Preparation" Article, prepare hydronic systems for testing and balancing as follows:
 1. Check liquid level in expansion tank.
 2. Check highest vent for adequate pressure.
 3. Check flow-control valves for proper position.
 4. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor starters.
 5. Verify that motor starters are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.
 6. Check that air has been purged from the system.

3.8 PROCEDURES FOR VARIABLE-FLOW HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

- A. Balance systems with automatic two- and three-way control valves by setting systems at maximum flow through heat-exchange terminals, and proceed as specified above for hydronic systems.
- B. Adjust the variable-flow hydronic system as follows:
 1. Verify that the differential-pressure sensor is located as indicated.
 2. Determine whether there is diversity in the system.
- C. For systems with no diversity:
 1. Adjust pumps to deliver total design gpm.
 - a. Measure total water flow.
 - 1) Position valves for full flow through coils.
 - 2) Measure flow by main flow meter, if installed.
 - 3) If main flow meter is not installed, determine flow by pump TDH or exchanger pressure drop.
 - b. Measure pump TDH as follows:

- 1) Measure discharge pressure directly at the pump outlet flange or in discharge pipe prior to any valves.
 - 2) Measure inlet pressure directly at the pump inlet flange or in suction pipe prior to any valves or strainers.
 - 3) Convert pressure to head and correct for differences in gage heights.
 - 4) Verify pump impeller size by measuring the TDH with the discharge valve closed. Note the point on manufacturer's pump curve at zero flow and verify that the pump has the intended impeller size.
 - 5) With valves open, read pump TDH. Adjust pump discharge valve until design water flow is achieved.
- c. Monitor motor performance during procedures and do not operate motor in an overloaded condition.
2. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed in mains and branches to design water flows.
 - a. Measure flow in main and branch pipes.
 - b. Adjust main and branch balance valves for design flow.
 - c. Re-measure each main and branch after all have been adjusted.
3. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed at terminals for each space to design water flows.
 - a. Measure flow at terminals.
 - b. Adjust each terminal to design flow.
 - c. Re-measure each terminal after it is adjusted.
 - d. Position control valves to bypass the coil and adjust the bypass valve to maintain design flow.
 - e. Perform temperature tests after flows have been balanced.
4. For systems with pressure-independent valves at terminals:
 - a. Measure differential pressure and verify that it is within manufacturer's specified range.
 - b. Perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.
5. For systems without pressure-independent valves or flow-measuring devices at terminals:
 - a. Measure and balance coils by either coil pressure drop or temperature method.
 - b. If balanced by coil pressure drop, perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.
6. Prior to verifying final system conditions, determine the system differential-pressure set point.
7. If the pump discharge valve was used to set total system flow with variable-frequency controller at 60 Hz, at completion open discharge valve 100 percent and allow variable-frequency controller to control system differential-pressure set point. Record pump data under both conditions.
8. Mark final settings and verify that all memory stops have been set.
9. Verify final system conditions as follows:
 - a. Re-measure and confirm that total water flow is within design.

- b. Re-measure final pumps' operating data, TDH, volts, amps, and static profile.
 - c. Mark final settings.
- 10. Verify that memory stops have been set.
- D. For systems with diversity:
 - 1. Determine diversity factor.
 - 2. Simulate system diversity by closing required number of control valves, as approved by the design engineer.
 - 3. Adjust pumps to deliver total design gpm.
 - a. Measure total water flow.
 - 1) Position valves for full flow through coils.
 - 2) Measure flow by main flow meter, if installed.
 - 3) If main flow meter is not installed, determine flow by pump TDH or exchanger pressure drop.
 - b. Measure pump TDH as follows:
 - 1) Measure discharge pressure directly at the pump outlet flange or in discharge pipe prior to any valves.
 - 2) Measure inlet pressure directly at the pump inlet flange or in suction pipe prior to any valves or strainers.
 - 3) Convert pressure to head and correct for differences in gage heights.
 - 4) Verify pump impeller size by measuring the TDH with the discharge valve closed. Note the point on manufacturer's pump curve at zero flow and verify that the pump has the intended impeller size.
 - 5) With valves open, read pump TDH. Adjust pump discharge valve until design water flow is achieved.
 - c. Monitor motor performance during procedures and do not operate motor in an overloaded condition.
 - 4. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed in mains and branches to design water flows.
 - a. Measure flow in main and branch pipes.
 - b. Adjust main and branch balance valves for design flow.
 - c. Re-measure each main and branch after all have been adjusted.
 - 5. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed at terminals for each space to design water flows.
 - a. Measure flow at terminals.
 - b. Adjust each terminal to design flow.
 - c. Re-measure each terminal after it is adjusted.
 - d. Position control valves to bypass the coil, and adjust the bypass valve to maintain design flow.
 - e. Perform temperature tests after flows have been balanced.
 - 6. For systems with pressure-independent valves at terminals:

- a. Measure differential pressure, and verify that it is within manufacturer's specified range.
 - b. Perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.
7. For systems without pressure-independent valves or flow-measuring devices at terminals:
 - a. Measure and balance coils by either coil pressure drop or temperature method.
 - b. If balanced by coil pressure drop, perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.
8. Open control valves that were shut. Close a sufficient number of control valves that were previously open to maintain diversity, and balance terminals that were just opened.
9. Prior to verifying final system conditions, determine system differential-pressure set point.
10. If the pump discharge valve was used to set total system flow with variable-frequency controller at 60 Hz, at completion open discharge valve 100 percent and allow variable-frequency controller to control system differential-pressure set point. Record pump data under both conditions.
11. Mark final settings and verify that memory stops have been set.
12. Verify final system conditions as follows:
 - a. Re-measure and confirm that total water flow is within design.
 - b. Re-measure final pumps' operating data, TDH, volts, amps, and static profile.
 - c. Mark final settings.
13. Verify that memory stops have been set.

3.9 PROCEDURES FOR HEAT EXCHANGERS

- A. Adjust water flow to within specified tolerances.
- B. Measure inlet and outlet water temperatures.
- C. Measure inlet steam pressure.
- D. Check settings and operation of safety and relief valves. Record settings.

3.10 PROCEDURES FOR MOTORS

- A. Motors 1/2 HP and Larger: Test at final balanced conditions and record the following data:
 1. Manufacturer's name, model number, and serial number.
 2. Motor horsepower rating.
 3. Motor rpm.
 4. Phase and hertz.
 5. Nameplate and measured voltage, each phase.
 6. Nameplate and measured amperage, each phase.

7. Starter size and thermal-protection-element rating.
8. Service factor and frame size.

- B. Motors Driven by Variable-Frequency Controllers: Test manual bypass of controller to prove proper operation.

3.11 PROCEDURES FOR CHILLERS

- A. Balance water flow through each evaporator[and condenser] to within specified tolerances of indicated flow with all pumps operating. With only one chiller operating in a multiple chiller installation, do not exceed the flow for the maximum tube velocity recommended by the chiller manufacturer. Measure and record the following data with each chiller operating at design conditions:

1. Evaporator-water entering and leaving temperatures, pressure drop, and water flow.
2. For water-cooled chillers, condenser-water entering and leaving temperatures, pressure drop, and water flow.
3. Evaporator and condenser refrigerant temperatures and pressures, using instruments furnished by chiller manufacturer.
4. Power factor if factory-installed instrumentation is furnished for measuring kilowatts.
5. Kilowatt input if factory-installed instrumentation is furnished for measuring kilowatts.
6. Capacity: Calculate in tons of cooling.
7. For air-cooled chillers, verify condenser-fan rotation and record fan and motor data including number of fans and entering- and leaving-air temperatures.

3.12 PROCEDURES FOR CONDENSING UNITS

- A. Verify proper rotation of fans.
- B. Measure entering- and leaving-air temperatures.
- C. Record fan and motor operating data.

3.13 PROCEDURES FOR HEAT-TRANSFER COILS

- A. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each water coil:
1. Entering- and leaving-water temperature.
 2. Water flow rate.
 3. Water pressure drop for major (more than 20 gpm) equipment coils, excluding unitary equipment such as reheat coils, unit heaters, and fan-coil units.
 4. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
 5. Wet-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air for cooling coils.
 6. Airflow.
- B. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each electric heating coil:

1. Nameplate data.
2. Airflow.
3. Entering- and leaving-air temperature at full load.
4. Voltage and amperage input of each phase at full load.
5. Calculated kilowatt at full load.
6. Fuse or circuit-breaker rating for overload protection.

C. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each steam coil:

1. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
2. Airflow.
3. Inlet steam pressure.

D. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each refrigerant coil:

1. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
2. Wet-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
3. Airflow.

3.14 DUCT LEAKAGE TESTS

- A. Witness the duct pressure testing performed by Installer.
- B. Verify that proper test methods are used and that leakage rates are within specified tolerances.
- C. Report deficiencies observed.

3.15 CONTROLS VERIFICATION

- A. In conjunction with system balancing, perform the following:
 1. Verify temperature control system is operating within the design limitations.
 2. Confirm that the sequences of operation are in compliance with Contract Documents.
 3. Verify that controllers are calibrated and function as intended.
 4. Verify that controller set points are as indicated.
 5. Verify the operation of lockout or interlock systems.
 6. Verify the operation of valve and damper actuators.
 7. Verify that controlled devices are properly installed and connected to correct controller.
 8. Verify that controlled devices travel freely and are in position indicated by controller: open, closed, or modulating.
 9. Verify location and installation of sensors to ensure that they sense only intended temperature, humidity, or pressure.
- B. Reporting: Include a summary of verifications performed, remaining deficiencies, and variations from indicated conditions.

3.16 TOLERANCES

- A. Set HVAC system's airflow rates and water flow rates within the following tolerances:
 - 1. Supply, Return, and Exhaust Fans and Equipment with Fans: Plus or minus 10 percent.
 - 2. Air Outlets and Inlets: Plus or minus 10 percent.
 - 3. Heating-Water Flow Rate: Plus or minus 10 percent.
 - 4. Cooling-Water Flow Rate: Plus or minus 10 percent.
- B. Maintaining pressure relationships as designed shall have priority over the tolerances specified above.

3.17 PROGRESS REPORTING

- A. Initial Construction-Phase Report: Based on examination of the Contract Documents as specified in "Examination" Article, prepare a report on the adequacy of design for systems balancing devices. Recommend changes and additions to systems balancing devices to facilitate proper performance measuring and balancing. Recommend changes and additions to HVAC systems and general construction to allow access for performance measuring and balancing devices.
- B. Status Reports: Prepare weekly progress reports to describe completed procedures, procedures in progress, and scheduled procedures. Include a list of deficiencies and problems found in systems being tested and balanced. Prepare a separate report for each system and each building floor for systems serving multiple floors.

3.18 FINAL REPORT

- A. General: Prepare a certified written report; tabulate and divide the report into separate sections for tested systems and balanced systems.
 - 1. Include a certification sheet at the front of the report's binder, signed and sealed by the certified testing and balancing engineer.
 - 2. Include a list of instruments used for procedures, along with proof of calibration.
 - 3. Certify validity and accuracy of field data.
- B. Final Report Contents: In addition to certified field-report data, include the following:
 - 1. Pump curves.
 - 2. Fan curves.
 - 3. Manufacturers' test data.
 - 4. Field test reports prepared by system and equipment installers.
 - 5. Other information relative to equipment performance; do not include Shop Drawings and Product Data.
- C. General Report Data: In addition to form titles and entries, include the following data:
 - 1. Title page.
 - 2. Name and address of the TAB specialist.

3. Project name.
 4. Project location.
 5. Architect's name and address.
 6. Engineer's name and address.
 7. Contractor's name and address.
 8. Report date.
 9. Signature of TAB supervisor who certifies the report.
 10. Table of Contents with the total number of pages defined for each section of the report. Number each page in the report.
 11. Summary of contents including the following:
 - a. Indicated versus final performance.
 - b. Notable characteristics of systems.
 - c. Description of system operation sequence if it varies from the Contract Documents.
 12. Nomenclature sheets for each item of equipment.
 13. Data for terminal units, including manufacturer's name, type, size, and fittings.
 14. Notes to explain why certain final data in the body of reports vary from indicated values.
 15. Test conditions for fans and pump performance forms including the following:
 - a. Settings for outdoor-, return-, and exhaust-air dampers.
 - b. Conditions of filters.
 - c. Cooling coil, wet- and dry-bulb conditions.
 - d. Face and bypass damper settings at coils.
 - e. Fan drive settings including settings and percentage of maximum pitch diameter.
 - f. Inlet vane settings for variable-air-volume systems.
 - g. Settings for supply-air, static-pressure controller.
 - h. Other system operating conditions that affect performance.
- D. System Diagrams: Include schematic layouts of air and hydronic distribution systems. Present each system with single-line diagram and include the following:
1. Quantities of outdoor, supply, return, and exhaust airflows.
 2. Water and steam flow rates.
 3. Duct, outlet, and inlet sizes.
 4. Pipe and valve sizes and locations.
 5. Terminal units.
 6. Balancing stations.
 7. Position of balancing devices.
- E. Air-Handling-Unit Test Reports: For air-handling units with coils, include the following:
1. Unit Data:
 - a. Unit identification.
 - b. Location.
 - c. Make and type.
 - d. Model number and unit size.
 - e. Manufacturer's serial number.
 - f. Unit arrangement and class.

- g. Discharge arrangement.
 - h. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
 - i. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.
 - j. Number, make, and size of belts.
 - k. Number, type, and size of filters.
- 2. Motor Data:
 - a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
 - b. Horsepower and rpm.
 - c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
 - d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
 - e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
 - f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.
- 3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
 - a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
 - b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
 - c. Fan rpm.
 - d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg.
 - e. Filter static-pressure differential in inches wg.
 - f. Preheat-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
 - g. Cooling-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
 - h. Heating-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
 - i. Outdoor airflow in cfm.
 - j. Return airflow in cfm.
 - k. Outdoor-air damper position.
 - l. Return-air damper position.
 - m. Vortex damper position.

F. Apparatus-Coil Test Reports:

- 1. Coil Data:
 - a. System identification.
 - b. Location.
 - c. Coil type.
 - d. Number of rows.
 - e. Fin spacing in fins per inch o.c.
 - f. Make and model number.
 - g. Face area in sq. ft..
 - h. Tube size in NPS.
 - i. Tube and fin materials.
 - j. Circuiting arrangement.
- 2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
 - a. Airflow rate in cfm.
 - b. Average face velocity in fpm.
 - c. Air pressure drop in inches wg.
 - d. Outdoor-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.

- e. Return-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
 - f. Entering-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
 - g. Leaving-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
 - h. Water flow rate in gpm.
 - i. Water pressure differential in feet of head or psig.
 - j. Entering-water temperature in deg F.
 - k. Leaving-water temperature in deg F.
 - l. Refrigerant expansion valve and refrigerant types.
 - m. Refrigerant suction pressure in psig.
 - n. Refrigerant suction temperature in deg F.
 - o. Inlet steam pressure in psig.
- G. Electric-Coil Test Reports: For electric furnaces, duct coils, and electric coils installed in central-station air-handling units, include the following:
- 1. Unit Data:
 - a. System identification.
 - b. Location.
 - c. Coil identification.
 - d. Capacity in Btu/h.
 - e. Number of stages.
 - f. Connected volts, phase, and hertz.
 - g. Rated amperage.
 - h. Airflow rate in cfm.
 - i. Face area in sq. ft..
 - j. Minimum face velocity in fpm.
 - 2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
 - a. Heat output in Btu/h.
 - b. Airflow rate in cfm.
 - c. Air velocity in fpm.
 - d. Entering-air temperature in deg F.
 - e. Leaving-air temperature in deg F.
 - f. Voltage at each connection.
 - g. Amperage for each phase.
- H. Fan Test Reports: For supply, return, and exhaust fans, include the following:
- 1. Fan Data:
 - a. System identification.
 - b. Location.
 - c. Make and type.
 - d. Model number and size.
 - e. Manufacturer's serial number.
 - f. Arrangement and class.
 - g. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
 - h. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.
 - 2. Motor Data:

- a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
 - b. Horsepower and rpm.
 - c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
 - d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
 - e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
 - f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches.
 - g. Number, make, and size of belts.
- 3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
 - a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
 - b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
 - c. Fan rpm.
 - d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg.
 - e. Suction static pressure in inches wg.
- I. Round, Flat-Oval, and Rectangular Duct Traverse Reports: Include a diagram with a grid representing the duct cross-section and record the following:
 - 1. Report Data:
 - a. System and air-handling-unit number.
 - b. Location and zone.
 - c. Traverse air temperature in deg F.
 - d. Duct static pressure in inches wg.
 - e. Duct size in inches.
 - f. Duct area in sq. ft..
 - g. Indicated airflow rate in cfm.
 - h. Indicated velocity in fpm.
 - i. Actual airflow rate in cfm.
 - j. Actual average velocity in fpm.
 - k. Barometric pressure in psig.
- J. Air-Terminal-Device Reports:
 - 1. Unit Data:
 - a. System and air-handling unit identification.
 - b. Location and zone.
 - c. Apparatus used for test.
 - d. Area served.
 - e. Make.
 - f. Number from system diagram.
 - g. Type and model number.
 - h. Size.
 - i. Effective area in sq. ft..
 - 2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
 - a. Airflow rate in cfm.
 - b. Air velocity in fpm.
 - c. Preliminary airflow rate as needed in cfm.
 - d. Preliminary velocity as needed in fpm.

- e. Final airflow rate in cfm.
 - f. Final velocity in fpm.
 - g. Space temperature in deg F.
- K. System-Coil Reports: For reheat coils and water coils of terminal units, include the following:
 - 1. Unit Data:
 - a. System and air-handling-unit identification.
 - b. Location and zone.
 - c. Room or riser served.
 - d. Coil make and size.
 - e. Flowmeter type.
 - 2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
 - a. Airflow rate in cfm.
 - b. Entering-water temperature in deg F.
 - c. Leaving-water temperature in deg F.
 - d. Water pressure drop in feet of head or psig.
 - e. Entering-air temperature in deg F.
 - f. Leaving-air temperature in deg F.
- L. Pump Test Reports: Calculate impeller size by plotting the shutoff head on pump curves and include the following:
 - 1. Unit Data:
 - a. Unit identification.
 - b. Location.
 - c. Service.
 - d. Make and size.
 - e. Model number and serial number.
 - f. Water flow rate in gpm.
 - g. Water pressure differential in feet of head or psig.
 - h. Required net positive suction head in feet of head or psig.
 - i. Pump rpm.
 - j. Impeller diameter in inches.
 - k. Motor make and frame size.
 - l. Motor horsepower and rpm.
 - m. Voltage at each connection.
 - n. Amperage for each phase.
 - o. Full-load amperage and service factor.
 - p. Seal type.
 - 2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
 - a. Static head in feet of head or psig.
 - b. Pump shutoff pressure in feet of head or psig.
 - c. Actual impeller size in inches.
 - d. Full-open flow rate in gpm.
 - e. Full-open pressure in feet of head or psig.
 - f. Final discharge pressure in feet of head or psig.

- g. Final suction pressure in feet of head or psig.
- h. Final total pressure in feet of head or psig.
- i. Final water flow rate in gpm.
- j. Voltage at each connection.
- k. Amperage for each phase.

M. Instrument Calibration Reports:

- 1. Report Data:
 - a. Instrument type and make.
 - b. Serial number.
 - c. Application.
 - d. Dates of use.
 - e. Dates of calibration.

3.19 VERIFICATION OF TAB REPORT

- A. The TAB specialist's test and balance engineer shall conduct the inspection in the presence of commissioning authority.
- B. Commissioning authority shall randomly select measurements, documented in the final report, to be rechecked. Rechecking shall be limited to either 10 percent of the total measurements recorded or the extent of measurements that can be accomplished in a normal 8-hour business day.
- C. If rechecks yield measurements that differ from the measurements documented in the final report by more than the tolerances allowed, the measurements shall be noted as "FAILED."
- D. If the number of "FAILED" measurements is greater than 10 percent of the total measurements checked during the final inspection, the testing and balancing shall be considered incomplete and shall be rejected.
- E. If TAB work fails, proceed as follows:
 - 1. TAB specialists shall recheck all measurements and make adjustments. Revise the final report and balancing device settings to include all changes; resubmit the final report and request a second final inspection.
 - 2. If the second final inspection also fails, Owner may contract the services of another TAB specialist to complete TAB work according to the Contract Documents and deduct the cost of the services from the original TAB specialist's final payment.
 - 3. If the second verification also fails, Owner may contact AABC Headquarters regarding the AABC National Performance Guaranty.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.20 ADDITIONAL TESTS

- A. Within 90 days of completing TAB, perform additional TAB to verify that balanced conditions are being maintained throughout and to correct unusual conditions.
- B. Seasonal Periods: If initial TAB procedures were not performed during near-peak summer and winter conditions, perform additional TAB during near-peak summer and winter conditions.

END OF SECTION 23 0593

SECTION 23 0713 - DUCT INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following duct services:
 - 1. Indoor, concealed supply and outdoor air.
 - 2. Indoor, exposed supply and outdoor air.
 - 3. Indoor, concealed return air in unconditioned attic.
 - 4. Indoor, concealed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
 - 5. Indoor, exposed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Section 230716 "HVAC Equipment Insulation."
 - 2. Section 230719 "HVAC Piping Insulation."
 - 3. Section 233113 "Metal Ducts".

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory- and field-applied if any).
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
 - 1. Laboratory Test Report: For adhesives, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.
 - 2. Product Data: For coating, indicating VOC content.
 - 3. Laboratory Test Reports: For coatings, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.
 - 4. Product Data: For sealants, indicating VOC content.
 - 5. Laboratory Test Reports: For sealants, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.

- C. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
 - 2. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, dampers, specialties and flanges for each type of insulation.
 - 3. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
 - 4. Detail application at linkages of control devices.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
 - 2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with duct Installer for duct insulation application. Before preparing ductwork Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance

requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.

1.8 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Duct Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Duct and Plenum Insulation Schedule," articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
- E. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II and ASTM C 1290, Type I, 0.29 K value at 75degF. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements:
 - a. Johns Manville
 - b. Knauf Insulation
 - c. Manson Insulation, Inc.
 - d. Owens Corning
- F. Mineral-Fiber Board Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 612, Type IA or Type IB, 0.24 K value at 75degF. For duct and plenum applications, provide insulation with factory-applied ASJ. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements:
 - a. Johns Manville
 - b. Knauf Insulation
 - c. Manson Insulation, Inc.

- d. Owens Corning

2.2 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements:
 - a. Childers Brand
 - b. Eagle Bridges – Marathon Industries
 - c. Foster Brand
 - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.
- C. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements:
 - a. Childers Brand
 - b. Eagle Bridges – Marathon Industries
 - c. Foster Brand
 - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.

2.3 MASTICS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.
 - 1. VOC Content: 300 g/L or less.
 - 2. Low-Emitting Materials: Mastic coatings shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below ambient services.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements:
 - a. Childers Brand
 - b. Foster Brand
 - c. Knauf Insulation
 - d. Vimasco Corporation
 - 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 at 43-mil dry film thickness.
 - 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
 - 4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.

5. Color: White.

C. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for indoor use on below ambient services.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements:
 - a. Childers Brand
 - b. Eagle Bridges – Marathon Industries
 - c. Foster Brand
 - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.
2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm at 35-mildry film thickness.
3. Service Temperature Range: 0 to 180 deg F
4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 44 percent by volume and 62 percent by weight.
5. Color: White.

D. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for outdoor use on below ambient services.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements:
 - a. Childers Brand
 - b. Eagle Bridges – Marathon Industries
 - c. Foster Brand
2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm at 30-mildry film thickness.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 220 deg F
4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 33 percent by volume and 46 percent by weight.
5. Color: White.

2.4 LAGGING ADHESIVES

A. Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements:
 - a. Childers Brand
 - b. Foster Brand
 - c. Vimasco Corporation
2. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over duct insulation.
3. Flame Spread Rate: 15
4. Smoke Development: 5
5. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F.
6. Color: White.

2.5 SEALANTS

A. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements:
 - a. Childers Brand
 - b. Eagle – Bridges – Marathon Industries
 - c. Foster Brand
 - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.
2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F
5. Color: Aluminum.
6. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

2.6 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil-face, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing.
 1. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.
 - a. Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing.
 - b. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
 - c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 1-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
 - d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
- C. Self-Adhesive Outdoor Jacket: 60-mil-thick, laminated vapor barrier and waterproofing membrane for installation over insulation located aboveground outdoors; consisting of a rubberized bituminous resin on a cross laminated polyethylene film covered with white aluminum-foil facing.

2.7 TAPES

- A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements:
 - a. Avery Dennison Corporation
 - b. Compac Corporation

- c. Ideal Tape Co., Inc.
 - d. Knauf Insulation
 - 2. Width: 3 inches.
 - 3. Thickness: 11.5 mils
 - 4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
 - 5. Elongation: 2 percent.
 - 6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
 - 7. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.
- B. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements:
 - a. Avery Dennison Corporation
 - b. Compac Corporation
 - c. Ideal Tape Co., Inc.
 - d. Knauf Insulation
 - 2. Width: 3 inches.
 - 3. Thickness: 6.5 mils.
 - 4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
 - 5. Elongation: 2 percent.
 - 6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
 - 7. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.
- C. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements:
 - a. Avery Dennison Corporation
 - b. Compac Corporation
 - c. Ideal Tape Co., Inc.
 - d. Knauf Insulation
 - 2. Width: 2 inches
 - 3. Thickness: 3.7 mils
 - 4. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch in width.
 - 5. Elongation: 5 percent.
 - 6. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch in width.

2.8 SECUREMENTS

- A. Bands:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements:
 - a. ITW Insulation Systems
 - b. RPR Products, Inc.
 - c. GLT Products

2. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304 or Type 316; 0.015 inch thick, 1/2 inch wide with wing seal or closed seal.
3. Aluminum: ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch thick, 1/2 inch wide with wing seal or closed seal.
4. Springs: Twin spring set constructed of stainless steel with ends flat and slotted to accept metal bands. Spring size determined by manufacturer for application.

B. Insulation Pins and Hangers:

1. Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements:
 - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.
 - 2) Gemco
 - 3) Hardcast, Inc.
 - 4) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.
2. Metal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements:
 - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.
 - 2) Gemco
 - 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.
 - b. Baseplate: Perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 2 inches square.
 - c. Spindle: Aluminum or Stainless steel, fully annealed, 0.106-inch-diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
 - d. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.
3. Self-Sticking-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements:
 - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.
 - 2) Gemco
 - 3) Hardcast, Inc.
 - 4) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.
 - b. Baseplate: Galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 2 inches square.
 - c. Spindle: Aluminum or Stainless steel, fully annealed, 0.106-inch-diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
 - d. Adhesive-backed base with a peel-off protective cover.

- 4. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch-thick, galvanized-steel or aluminum sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements:
 - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.
 - 2) Gemco
 - 3) Hardcast, Inc.
 - 4) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.
 - b. Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in exposed locations.
- C. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch-wide, stainless steel or Monel.
- D. Wire: 0.062-inch soft-annealed, stainless steel.

2.9 CORNER ANGLES

- A. Aluminum Corner Angles: 0.040thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch aluminum according to ASTM B 209 Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
 - 1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
 - 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of ducts and fittings.
- B. Install insulation materials, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of duct system as specified in insulation system schedules.

- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- G. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- H. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- I. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
 - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- J. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- K. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
 - 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
 - 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch-wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
 - 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 2 inches o.c.
 - a. For below ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
 - 4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
 - 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to duct flanges and fittings.
- L. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.

- M. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- N. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

3.4 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
 - 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 - 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 - 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
 - 4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
 - 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 - 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 - 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches
 - 4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- D. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves for fire-rated wall and partition penetrations. Externally insulate damper sleeves to match adjacent insulation and overlap duct insulation at least 2 inches
 - 1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."
- E. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
 - 1. Duct: For penetrations through fire-rated assemblies, terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves and externally insulate damper sleeve beyond floor to match adjacent duct insulation. Overlap damper sleeve and duct insulation at least 2 inches.

2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.5 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

- A. Blanket Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.
 1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
 2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
 3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:
 - a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c.
 - b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches place pins 16o.c. each way, and 3 inches maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
 - c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
 - d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
 - e. Impale insulation over pins and attach speed washers.
 - f. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
 4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inchoutward-clinching staples, 1 inch o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.
 - a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
 - b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg Fat 18-footintervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches
 5. Overlap unfaced blankets a minimum of 2 inches on longitudinal seams and end joints. At end joints, secure with steel bands spaced a maximum of 18 inches o.c.
 6. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.

7. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch-wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.
- B. Board Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.
1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 50 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
 2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
 3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:
 - a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c.
 - b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches, space pins 16 inches o.c. each way, and 3 inches maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
 - c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
 - d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
 - e. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
 4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch outward-clinching staples, 1 inch o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.
 - a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
 - b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F at 18-foot intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches.
 5. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Groove and score insulation to fit as closely as possible to outside and inside radius of elbows. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
 6. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch-wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.

3.6 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

- A. Where glass-cloth jackets are indicated, install directly over bare insulation or insulation with factory-applied jackets.
 - 1. Draw jacket smooth and tight to surface with 2-inch overlap at seams and joints.
 - 2. Embed glass cloth between two 0.062-inch thick coats of lagging adhesive.
 - 3. Completely encapsulate insulation with coating, leaving no exposed insulation.
- B. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:
 - 1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
 - 2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
 - 3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
 - 4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch-wide joint strips at end joints.
 - 5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.
- C. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.

3.7 FIRE-RATED INSULATION SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Where fire-rated insulation system is indicated, secure system to ducts and duct hangers and supports to maintain a continuous fire rating.
- B. Insulate duct access panels and doors to achieve same fire rating as duct.
- C. Install firestopping at penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Fire-stop systems are specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.8 FINISHES

- A. Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.
- C. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.
- D. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.

3.10 DUCT INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Plenums and Ducts Requiring Insulation:

1. Indoor, concealed supply and outdoor air.
2. Indoor, exposed supply and outdoor air.
3. Indoor, concealed return air in unconditioned attic.
4. Indoor, concealed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
5. Indoor, exposed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.

- B. Items Not Insulated:

1. Metal ducts with duct liner of sufficient thickness to comply with energy code and ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
2. Factory-insulated flexible ducts.
3. Factory-insulated plenums and casings.
4. Flexible connectors.
5. Vibration-control devices.
6. Factory-insulated access panels and doors.

3.11 INDOOR DUCT AND PLENUM INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Concealed round supply-air duct insulation shall be the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

- B. Exposed round supply-air duct insulation shall be the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

- C. Concealed rectangular, supply-air duct insulation shall be the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches thick and 1.5-lb/cu. Ft nominal density.

- D. Exposed, rectangular, supply-air duct insulation shall be the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 3-lb/cu. Ft nominal density.

- E. Concealed, rectangular, return-air duct & exhaust duct within unconditioned attic insulation shall be the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches thick and 1.5-lb/cu. Ft nominal density.

- F. Concealed or exposed, rectangular, outdoor-and exhaust air duct insulation between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior insulation shall be the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Board: 3 inches thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

END OF SECTION 23 0713

SECTION 23 0716 - HVAC EQUIPMENT INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following HVAC equipment that is not factory insulated:
 - 1. Chillers.
 - 2. Heat exchangers.
 - 3. Chilled-water pumps.
 - 4. Heating, hot-water pumps.
 - 5. Expansion/compression tanks.
 - 6. Air separators.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Section 230713 "Duct Insulation."
 - 2. Section 230719 "HVAC Piping Insulation."

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory- and field-applied if any).
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
 - 2. Detail attachment and covering of heat tracing inside insulation.
 - 3. Detail removable insulation at equipment connections.
 - 4. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
 - 5. Detail application at linkages of control devices.
 - 6. Detail field application for each equipment type.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of

insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.

- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
 - 2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.
- C. Mockups: Before installing insulation, build mockups for each type of insulation and finish listed below to demonstrate quality of insulation application and finishes. Build mockups in the location indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect. Use materials indicated for the completed Work.
 - 1. Equipment Mockups:
 - a. One chilled-water pump and one heating-hot-water pump.
 - b. One tank or vessel.
 - 2. For each mockup, fabricate cutaway sections to allow observation of application details for insulation materials, adhesives, mastics, attachments, and jackets.
 - 3. Notify Architect seven days in advance of dates and times when mockups will be constructed.
 - 4. Obtain Architect's approval of mockups before starting insulation application.
 - 5. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
 - 6. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
 - 7. Demolish and remove mockups when directed.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with equipment Installer for equipment insulation application.

1.8 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Equipment Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
- E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- F. Mineral-Fiber Board Insulation: Glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 612, Type IA or Type IB. Provide insulation without factory-applied jacket.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. CertainTeed Corporation.
 - b. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
 - c. Knauf Insulation.
- G. High-Temperature, Mineral-Fiber Board Insulation: Glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 612, Type III, without factory-applied jacket.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.

- b. Rockwool International.
- c. Thermafiber, Inc.; an Owens Corning company.

H. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
 - b. Knauf Insulation.
 - c. Manson Insulation Inc.
2. Type I, 850 Deg F Materials: Glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A, without factory-applied jacket.

I. Mineral-Fiber, Pipe and Tank Insulation: Glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Semirigid board material with factory-applied ASJ complying with ASTM C 1393, Type II or Type IIIA Category 2, or with properties similar to ASTM C 612, Type IB. Nominal density is 2.5 lb/cu. ft. or more. Thermal conductivity (k-value) at 100 deg F is 0.29 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F or less. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
 - b. Knauf Insulation.
 - c. Manson Insulation Inc.

2.2 INSULATING CEMENTS

- A. Mineral-Fiber Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C 195.
- B. Mineral-Fiber, Hydraulic-Setting Insulating and Finishing Cement: Comply with ASTM C 449.

2.3 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
 1. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 2. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- C. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK and PVDC Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
 - b. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
 - c. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.
2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

2.4 MASTICS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.
 1. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on below ambient services.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
 - b. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
 - c. Knauf Insulation.
 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm at 43-mildry film thickness.
 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
 4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
 5. Color: White.

2.5 LAGGING ADHESIVES

- A. Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
 1. For indoor applications, use lagging adhesives that have a VOC content of 30 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
 - b. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
 - c. Vimasco Corporation.

3. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over equipment insulation.
4. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F.
5. Color: White.

2.6 SEALANTS

A. ASJ Flashing Sealants:

1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
2. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
4. Color: White.
5. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
6. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

2.7 FIELD-APPLIED CLOTHS

- A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Comply with MIL-C-20079H, Type I, plain weave, and presized a minimum of 8 oz./sq. yd.

2.8 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil-face, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing.
- C. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
 - b. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.
 - c. Proto Corporation.
 2. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
 3. Color: White.
 4. Factory-fabricated tank heads and tank side panels.

2.9 TAPES

- A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. 3M.
 - b. Ideal Tape Co., Inc., an American Biltrite Company.
 - c. Knauf Insulation.
 2. Width: 3 inches.
 3. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
 4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
 5. Elongation: 2 percent.
 6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
 7. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.
- B. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. 3M.
 - b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division.
 - c. Knauf Insulation.
 2. Width: 3 inches.
 3. Thickness: 6.5 mils.
 4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
 5. Elongation: 2 percent.
 6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
 7. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.

2.10 SECUREMENTS

- A. Bands:
1. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304, 1/2 inch wide with wing seal.
 2. Aluminum: ASTM B 209 Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch thick, 1/2 inch wide with wing seal.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
1. Verify that systems and equipment to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.
- B. Surface Preparation: Clean and prepare surfaces to be insulated. Before insulating, apply a corrosion coating to insulated surfaces as follows:
 - 1. Carbon Steel: Coat carbon steel operating at a service temperature between 32 and 300 deg F with an epoxy coating. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
- C. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of equipment.
- B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of equipment as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- G. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- H. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- I. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
 - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.

4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.
- J. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- K. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch-wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 2 inches o.c.
 - a. For below ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
 4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints.
- L. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- M. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- N. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.
- O. For above ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
 1. Vibration-control devices.
 2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
 3. Nameplates and data plates.
 4. Manholes.
 5. Handholes.
 6. Cleanouts.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF EQUIPMENT, TANK, AND VESSEL INSULATION

- A. Mineral-Fiber, Pipe and Tank Insulation Installation for Tanks and Vessels: Secure insulation with adhesive and anchor pins and speed washers.
 1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 percent coverage of tank and vessel surfaces.

2. Groove and score insulation materials to fit as closely as possible to equipment, including contours. Bevel insulation edges for cylindrical surfaces for tight joints. Stagger end joints.
3. Protect exposed corners with secured corner angles.
4. Install adhesively attached or self-sticking insulation hangers and speed washers on sides of tanks and vessels as follows:
 - a. Do not weld anchor pins to ASME-labeled pressure vessels.
 - b. Select insulation hangers and adhesive that are compatible with service temperature and with substrate.
 - c. On tanks and vessels, maximum anchor-pin spacing is 3 inches from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c. in both directions.
 - d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
 - e. Cut and miter insulation segments to fit curved sides and domed heads of tanks and vessels.
 - f. Impale insulation over anchor pins and attach speed washers.
 - g. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
5. Secure each layer of insulation with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation materials.
6. Where insulation hangers on equipment and vessels are not permitted or practical and where insulation support rings are not provided, install a girdle network for securing insulation. Stretch prestressed aircraft cable around the diameter of vessel and make taut with clamps, turnbuckles, or breather springs. Place one circumferential girdle around equipment approximately 6 inches from each end. Install wire or cable between two circumferential girdles 12 inches o.c. Install a wire ring around each end and around outer periphery of center openings, and stretch prestressed aircraft cable radially from the wire ring to nearest circumferential girdle. Install additional circumferential girdles along the body of equipment or tank at a minimum spacing of 48 inches o.c. Use this network for securing insulation with tie wire or bands.
7. Stagger joints between insulation layers at least 3 inches.
8. Install insulation in removable segments on equipment access doors, manholes, handholes, and other elements that require frequent removal for service and inspection.
9. Bevel and seal insulation ends around manholes, handholes, ASME stamps, and nameplates.
10. For equipment with surface temperatures below ambient, apply mastic to open ends, joints, seams, breaks, and punctures in insulation.

B. Insulation Installation on Pumps:

1. Fabricate metal boxes lined with insulation. Fit boxes around pumps and coincide box joints with splits in pump casings. Fabricate joints with outward bolted flanges. Bolt flanges on 6-inch centers, starting at corners. Install 3/8-inch-diameter fasteners with wing nuts. Alternatively, secure the box sections together using a latching mechanism.
2. Fabricate boxes from galvanized steel at least 0.040 inch thick.

3. For below ambient services, install a vapor barrier at seams, joints, and penetrations. Seal between flanges with replaceable gasket material to form a vapor barrier.

3.5 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

- A. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:
 1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
 2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
 3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
 4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch-wide joint strips at end joints.
 5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.

3.6 FINISHES

- A. Equipment Insulation with ASJ or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
 1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.
 - a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.
- C. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.
- D. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
- C. Tests and Inspections: Inspect field-insulated equipment, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to one location(s) for each type of equipment defined in the "Equipment Insulation Schedule" Article. For large equipment, remove only a portion adequate to determine compliance.
- D. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

3.8 EQUIPMENT INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Insulation materials and thicknesses are identified below. If more than one material is listed for a type of equipment, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- B. Insulate indoor and outdoor equipment that is not factory insulated.
- C. Chillers: Insulate cold surfaces on chillers, including, but not limited to, evaporator bundles, condenser bundles suction piping, compressor inlets, tube sheets, water boxes, and nozzles with the following:
 - 1. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1 inch thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- D. Heat-exchanger (water-to-water for heating service) insulation shall be the following:
 - 1. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- E. Chilled-water pump insulation shall be the following:
 - 1. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- F. Heating-hot-water pump insulation shall be the following:
 - 1. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- G. Chilled-water expansion/compression tank insulation shall be the following:
 - 1. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1 inch thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- H. Heating-hot-water expansion/compression tank insulation shall be the following:
 - 1. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inch thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- I. Chilled-water air-separator insulation shall be the following:
 - 1. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1 inch thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- J. Heating-hot-water air-separator insulation shall be the following:
 - 1. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

3.9 INDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- C. Equipment, Concealed:
 - 1. Aluminum, Smooth: 0.016 inch thick.

- D. Equipment, Exposed, up to 48 Inches in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces up to 72 Inches:
 - 1. Aluminum, Smooth: 0.016 inch thick.
- E. Equipment, Exposed, Larger Than 48 Inches in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces Larger Than 72 Inches:
 - 1. Aluminum, Smooth with 1-1/4-Inch thick.

END OF SECTION 23 0716

SECTION 23 0719 - HVAC PIPING INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following HVAC piping systems:
 - 1. Heating hot-water piping, indoors.
 - 2. Refrigerant suction and hot-gas piping, indoors and outdoors.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Section 230713 "Duct Insulation."

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory and field applied if any).
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
 - 1. Adhesives, Mastic Coatings, Sealants
- C. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
 - 2. Detail insulation application at pipe expansion joints for each type of insulation.
 - 3. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each type of insulation.
 - 4. Detail removable insulation at piping specialties.
 - 5. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
 - 6. Detail application at linkages of control devices.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84, by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
 - 2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application. Before preparing piping Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.

1.8 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Piping Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.

- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
- E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- F. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials, 0.25 K value at 75degF.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements:
 - a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.
 - b. Airex Manufacturing
 - c. Armacell LLC
 - d. K-Flex USA
- G. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements:
 - a. Johns Manville
 - b. Knauf Insulation
 - c. Manson Insulation, Inc.
 - d. Owens Corning
 - 2. Type I, 850 deg F Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A, with factory-applied ASJ. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article, 0.23 K value at 75degF.
- H. Mineral-Wool, Preformed Pipe Insulation:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements:
 - a. Johns Manville
 - b. Knauf Insulation
 - c. Manson Insulation, Inc.
 - d. Owens Corning
 - 2. Type III, 1200 deg F Materials: Mineral wool made of inorganic fibers derived from basalt, bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type III, 0.33 K value at 250degF.

2.2 INSULATING CEMENTS

- A. Mineral-Fiber Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C 195.
- B. Expanded or Exfoliated Vermiculite Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C 196.
- C. Mineral-Fiber, Hydraulic-Setting Insulating and Finishing Cement: Comply with ASTM C 449.

2.3 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements:
 - a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.
 - b. Armcell LLC
 - c. Foster Brand
 - d. K-Flex USA
 - 2. Adhesives shall have VOC content of 50g/L or less.
- C. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements:
 - a. Chilers Brand
 - b. Foster Brand
 - c. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.
- D. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK and PVDC Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements:
 - a. Chilers Brand
 - b. Foster Brand
 - c. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.

2.4 MASTICS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.
 - 1. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less.
- B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements:
 - a. Chilers Brand
 - b. Foster Brand
 - c. Knauf Insulation
 - d. Vimasco Corporation
 - 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm at 43-mildry film thickness.
 - 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
 - 4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.

5. Color: White.

C. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements:

- a. Childers Brand
- b. Foster Brand
- c. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.

2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm at 35-mil dry film thickness.

3. Service Temperature Range: 0 to 180 deg F

4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 44 percent by volume and 62 percent by weight.

5. Color: White.

2.5 SEALANTS

A. Cellular-Glass, Phenolic, and Polyisocyanurate Joint Sealants:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements:

- a. Childers Brand
- b. Foster Brand
- c. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.
- d. Pittsburgh Corning Corporation

B. Polystyrene Joint Sealants:

1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.

2. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.

3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 100 to plus 300 deg F

4. Color: White or gray.

C. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl, PVDC, and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.

2. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.

3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.

4. Color: White.

2.6 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.

B. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil-face, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing.

C. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C; Plenum Rated, thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements:
 - a. Airex Manufacturing
 - b. Johns Manville
 - c. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.
 - d. Proto Corporation
2. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
3. Color: White
4. Factory-fabricated fitting covers to match jacket if available; otherwise, field fabricate.
 - a. Shapes: 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows, tees, valves, flanges, unions, reducers, end caps, soil-pipe hubs, traps, mechanical joints, and P-trap and supply covers for lavatories.

D. Metal Jacket:

1. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.
 - a. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
 - b. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 1-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
 - c. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:
 - 1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
 - 2) Preformed 2-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
 - 3) Tee covers.
 - 4) Flange and union covers.
 - 5) End caps.
 - 6) Beveled collars.
 - 7) Valve covers.
 - 8) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.

2.7 SECUREMENTS

A. Bands:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements:
 - a. ITW Insulation Systems
 - b. RPR Products, Inc.
 - c. GLT Products
2. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304 or Type 316; 0.015 inch thick, 1/2 inch wide with wing seal or closed seal.
3. Aluminum: ASTM B 209 Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch thick, 1/2 inch wide with wing seal or closed seal.
4. Springs: Twin spring set constructed of stainless steel with ends flat and slotted to accept metal bands. Spring size determined by manufacturer for application.

- B. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch-wide, stainless steel or Monel.
- C. Wire: 0.062-inch soft-annealed, stainless steel

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
 - 1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
 - 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
 - 3. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.
- B. Surface Preparation: Clean and prepare surfaces to be insulated. Before insulating, apply a corrosion coating to insulated surfaces as follows:
 - 1. Carbon Steel: Coat carbon steel operating at a service temperature between 32 and 300 deg F with an epoxy coating. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
- C. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.
- D. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.
- B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.

- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
- G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
 - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
 - 4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.
- K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
 - 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
 - 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch-wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
 - 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 2 inches o.c.
 - a. For below-ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
 - 4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
 - 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to pipe flanges and fittings.

- M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.
- P. For above-ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
 - 1. Vibration-control devices.
 - 2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
 - 3. Nameplates and data plates.
 - 4. Manholes.
 - 5. Handholes.
 - 6. Cleanouts.

3.4 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
 - 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 - 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 - 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
 - 4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- C. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.
 - 1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
- D. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
 - 1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
 - 2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.5 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.
- B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:
1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
 3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
 4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
 5. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below-ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
 6. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker.
 7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below-ambient services and a breather mastic for above-ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
 8. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.
 9. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "union." Match size and color of pipe labels.
 10. Any insulation or jacketing materials in plenum areas to be plenum rated.

- C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.
- D. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:
 - 1. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as adjoining pipe insulation.
 - 2. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union long at least two times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.
 - 3. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges, except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.
 - 4. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless-steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.
 - 5. Unless a PVC jacket is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules, finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION

- A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
 - 1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
 - 2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
 - 3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
 - 4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
 - 1. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.

2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed valve covers manufactured of same material as pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed valve covers are not available, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3.7 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward-clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
3. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
4. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.8 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

A. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints; for horizontal applications. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.

1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.

B. Where PVDC jackets are indicated, install as follows:

1. Apply three separate wraps of filament tape per insulation section to secure pipe insulation to pipe prior to installation of PVDC jacket.
2. Wrap factory-pre-sized jackets around individual pipe insulation sections with one end overlapping the previously installed sheet. Install presized jacket with an approximate overlap at butt joint of 2 inches over the previous section. Adhere lap seal using adhesive or SSL, and then apply 1-1/4 circumferences of appropriate PVDC tape around overlapped butt joint.
3. Continuous jacket can be spiral-wrapped around a length of pipe insulation. Apply adhesive or PVDC tape at overlapped spiral edge. When electing to use adhesives, refer to manufacturer's written instructions for application of adhesives along this spiral edge to maintain a permanent bond.
4. Jacket can be wrapped in cigarette fashion along length of roll for insulation systems with an outer circumference of 33-1/2 inches or less. The 33-1/2-inch-circumference limit allows for 2-inch-overlap seal. Using the length of roll allows for longer sections of jacket to be installed at one time. Use adhesive on the lap seal. Visually inspect lap seal for "fishmouthing," and use PVDC tape along lap seal to secure joint.
5. Repair holes or tears in PVDC jacket by placing PVDC tape over the hole or tear and wrapping a minimum of 1-1/4 circumferences to avoid damage to tape edges.

C. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.

3.9 FINISHES

- A. Pipe Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.
- C. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.

3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Inspect pipe, fittings, strainers, and valves, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to three locations of straight pipe, three locations of threaded fittings, three locations of welded fittings, two locations of threaded strainers, two locations of welded strainers, three locations of threaded valves, and three locations of flanged valves for each pipe service defined in the "Piping Insulation Schedule, General" Article.
- C. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

3.11 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- B. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not install insulation on the following:
 - 1. Drainage piping located in crawl spaces.
 - 2. Underground piping.
 - 3. Chrome-plated pipes and fittings unless there is a potential for personnel injury.

3.12 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Condensate and Equipment Drain Water below 60 Deg F
 - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
 - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 3/4 inch thick.
- B. Chilled Water Supply and Return:

1. NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller:
 - a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I: 1 inch thick.
 2. NPS 1-1/2 to NPS 8:
 - a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I: 1 inch thick.
 3. NPS 1-1/2 to NPS 8:
 - a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I: 1-1/2 inch thick.
- C. Heating-Hot-Water Supply and Return, 200 Deg F and Below:
1. NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Insulation shall be the following:
 - a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I: 1-1/2 inch thick.
 2. NPS 2 and Larger: Insulation shall be the following:
 - a. Mineral-Fiber Preformed Pipe, Type I: 2 inch thick.
- D. High Temperature Heating-Hot-Water Supply and Return, 200 Deg F and Above:
1. NPS 3/4 and Smaller: Insulation shall be the following:
 - a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type III: 4-1/2 inch thick.
 2. NPS 1 and Larger: Insulation shall be the following:
 - a. Mineral-Fiber Preformed Pipe, Type III: 5 inch thick.
- E. Refrigerant Suction Piping:
1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
 - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
- 3.13 OUTDOOR, ABOVEGROUND PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE
- A. Refrigerant Suction Piping:
1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
 - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 2 inches thick.
- 3.14 INDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE
- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- C. Piping, Concealed:
1. Piping service below 200 deg F: PVC 30 mils thick.
 2. Piping service above 200 deg F: Aluminum Metal Jacket.
- D. Piping, Exposed:
1. Piping service below 200 deg F: PVC 30 mils thick.

2. Piping service above 200 deg F: Aluminum Metal Jacket

3.15 OUTDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- C. Piping, Exposed:
 1. PVC: 30 mils thick.
 2. Must contain UV inhibitor.

END OF SECTION 23 0719

SECTION 23 0800 - COMMISSIONING OF HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes commissioning process requirements for the following HVAC&R systems, assemblies, and equipment:
 - 1. Energy supply systems, including central-plant hot-water supply.
 - 2. Cooling generation systems, including chilled-water systems, direct-expansion systems.
 - 3. Distribution systems, including air distribution (heating and cooling) systems, hot-water distribution systems, glycol distribution systems, exhaust systems, air-handling units.
 - 4. Terminal and packaged units, including unit heaters, fan-coil units.
 - 5. Vibration and sound systems, including vibration isolation devices.
 - 6. Controls and instrumentation, including BAS.
 - 7. Systems testing and balancing verification, including heating-water piping systems chilled-water piping systems domestic hot-water circulating systems supply-air systems return-air systems exhaust-air systems.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 019113 "General Commissioning Requirements" for general commissioning process requirements and Commissioning Coordinator responsibilities.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. BAS: Building automation system.
- B. DDC: Direct digital controls.
- C. HVAC&R: Heating, Ventilating, Air Conditioning, and Refrigeration.
- D. "Systems," "Subsystems," "Equipment," and "Components": Where these terms are used together or separately, they shall mean "as-built" systems, subsystems, equipment, and components.
- E. TAB: Testing, adjusting, and balancing.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For BAS and HVAC&R Testing Technician.
- B. Construction Checklists: See related Sections for technical requirements for the following construction checklists:
 - 1. Vibration and controls for HVAC&R piping and equipment.
 - 2. Instrumentation and control for HVAC&R.
 - 3. Heating-water piping and accessories.
 - 4. Cooling-water piping and accessories.
 - 5. Refrigerant piping.
 - 6. Metal ducts and accessories.
 - 7. Fans.
 - 8. Air-handling units.
 - 9. Chillers.
 - 10. Pumps.
 - 11. Heat exchangers.
 - 12. Laundry ventilation systems.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. BAS Testing Technician Qualifications: Technicians to perform BAS construction checklist verification tests, construction checklist verification test demonstrations, commissioning tests, and commissioning test demonstrations shall have the following minimum qualifications:
 - 1. Journey-level or equivalent skill level with knowledge of BAS, HVAC&R, electrical concepts, and building operations.
 - 2. Minimum three years' experience installing, servicing, and operating systems manufactured by approved manufacturer.
 - 3. International Society of Automation (ISA) Certified Control Systems Technician (CCST) Level I.
- B. HVAC&R Testing Technician Qualifications: Technicians to perform HVAC&R construction checklist verification tests, construction checklist verification test demonstrations, commissioning tests, and commissioning test demonstrations shall have the following minimum qualifications:
 - 1. Journey-level or equivalent skill level. Vocational School four-year program graduate or an Associates degree in mechanical systems, air conditioning, or similar field. Degree may be offset by three years' experience in servicing mechanical systems in the HVAC industry. Generally, required knowledge includes HVAC&R systems, electrical concepts, building operations, and application and use of tools and instrumentation to measure performance of HVAC&R equipment, assemblies, and systems.
 - 2. Minimum three years' experience installing, servicing, and operating systems manufactured by approved manufacturer.
 - 3. One of the following:

- a. National Environmental Balancing Bureau (NEBB) Certified Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Technician.
 - b. Associated Air Balance Council (AABC) Certified Test and Balance Technician.
 - c. Owner retains the right to waive NEBB or AABC Certification.
- C. Testing Equipment and Instrumentation Quality and Calibration: For test equipment and instrumentation required to perform HVAC&R commissioning work, perform the following:
 1. Submit test equipment and instrumentation list. For each equipment or instrument, identify the following:
 - a. Equipment/instrument identification number.
 - b. Planned commissioning application or use.
 - c. Manufacturer, make, model, and serial number.
 - d. Calibration history, including certificates from agencies that calibrate the equipment and instrumentation.
 2. Test equipment and instrumentation shall meet the following criteria:
 - a. Capable of testing and measuring performance within the specified acceptance criteria.
 - b. Be calibrated at the manufacturer's recommended intervals with current calibration tags permanently affixed to the instrument being used.
 - c. Be maintained in good repair and operating condition throughout the duration of use on this Project.
 - d. Be recalibrated/repared if dropped or damaged in any way since last calibrated.
- D. Proprietary Test Instrumentation and Tools:
 1. Equipment Manufacturer's Proprietary Instrumentation and Tools: For installed equipment included in the commissioning process, test instrumentation and tools manufactured or prescribed by equipment manufacturer to service, calibrate, adjust, repair, or otherwise work on its equipment or required as a condition of equipment warranty, perform the following:
 - a. Submit proprietary instrumentation and tools list. For each instrument or tool, identify the following:
 - 1) Instrument or tool identification number.
 - 2) Equipment schedule designation of equipment for which the instrument or tool is required.
 - 3) Manufacturer, make, model, and serial number.
 - 4) Calibration history, including certificates from agencies that calibrate the instrument or tool, where appropriate.
 - b. Include a separate list of proprietary test instrumentation and tools in the operation and maintenance manuals.
 - c. HVAC&R proprietary test instrumentation and tools become the property of Owner at the time of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL TESTING REQUIREMENTS

- A. Certify that HVAC&R systems, subsystems, and equipment have been installed, calibrated, and started and are operating according to the Contract Documents and approved Shop Drawings and submittals.
- B. Certify that HVAC&R instrumentation and control systems have been completed and calibrated, that they are operating according to the Contract Documents and approved Shop Drawings and submittals, and that pretest set points have been recorded.
- C. Certify that TAB procedures have been completed and that TAB reports have been submitted, discrepancies corrected, and corrective work approved.
- D. Set systems, subsystems, and equipment into operating mode to be tested according to approved test procedures (e.g., normal shutdown, normal auto position, normal manual position, unoccupied cycle, emergency power, and alarm conditions).
- E. Measure capacities and effectiveness of systems, assemblies, subsystems, equipment, and components, including operational and control functions to verify compliance with acceptance criteria.
- F. Test systems, assemblies, subsystems, equipment, and components operating modes, interlocks, control responses, and responses to abnormal or emergency conditions, and response according to acceptance criteria.
- G. Construction Checklists: Prepare and submit detailed construction checklists for HVAC&R systems, subsystems, equipment, and components.
 - 1. Contributors to the development of construction checklists shall include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. HVAC&R systems and equipment installers.
 - b. TAB technicians.
 - c. HVAC&R instrumentation and controls installers.
- H. Perform tests using design conditions, whenever possible.
 - 1. Simulated conditions may, with approval of Architect, be imposed using an artificial load when it is impractical to test under design conditions. Before simulating conditions, calibrate testing instruments. Provide equipment to simulate loads. Set simulated conditions as directed by Commissioning Coordinator and document simulated conditions and methods of simulation. After tests, return configurations and settings to normal operating conditions.
 - 2. Commissioning test procedures may direct that set points be altered when simulating conditions is impractical.

3. Commissioning test procedures may direct that sensor values be altered with a signal generator when design or simulating conditions and altering set points are impractical.
- I. If tests cannot be completed because of a deficiency outside the scope of the HVAC&R system, document the deficiency and report it to Owner. After deficiencies are resolved, reschedule tests.
- J. If seasonal testing is specified, complete appropriate initial performance tests and documentation and schedule seasonal tests.
- K. Coordinate schedule with, and perform the following activities at the direction of, Commissioning Coordinator.
- L. Comply with construction checklist requirements, including material verification, installation checks, start-up, and performance tests requirements specified in Sections specifying HVAC systems and equipment.
- M. Provide technicians, instrumentation, tools, and equipment to complete and document the following:
 1. Performance tests.
 2. Demonstration of a sample of performance tests.
 3. Commissioning tests.
 4. Commissioning test demonstrations.

3.2 TAB COMMISSIONING TESTS

- A. TAB Verification:
 1. Prerequisites: Completion of "Examination" Article requirements and correction of deficiencies, as specified in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC."
 2. Completion of "Preparation" Article requirements for preparation of a TAB plan that includes strategies and step-by-step procedures, and system-readiness checks and reports, as specified in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC."
 3. Scope: HVAC&R air systems and hydronic piping systems.
 4. Purpose: Differential flow relationships intended to maintain air pressurization differentials between the various areas of Project.
 5. Conditions of the Test:
 - a. Commissioning Test Demonstration Sampling Rate: As specified in "Inspections" Article in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC."
 - b. Systems operating in full heating mode with minimum outside-air volume.
 - c. Systems operating in full cooling mode with minimum outside-air volume.
 6. Acceptance Criteria:
 - a. Under all conditions, rechecked measurements comply with "Inspections" Article in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC."

- b. Additionally, no rechecked measurement shall differ from measurements documented in the final report by more than two times the tolerances allowed.
- c. Under all conditions, where the Contract Documents indicate a differential in airflow between supply and exhaust and/or return in a space, the differential relationship shall be maintained.

3.3 HEATING CONTROL SYSTEM COMMISSIONING TESTS

A. Heating-Water Supply Temperature Reset:

1. Prerequisites: Installation verification of the following:
 - a. Startup of HTHW heat exchanger
 - b. Startup of heating-water pump(s).
 - c. TAB of heating-water flow and pressure.
 - d. Input Device: Heating-water supply temperature; temperature sensor
 - e. Input Device: Outdoor-air temperature; outdoor-air sensor.
 - f. Output Device: Control valve.
 - g. Display the following at the operator's workstation:
 - 1) Outdoor-air temperature.
 - 2) Heating-water supply temperature.
 - 3) Heating-water supply temperature set point.
 - 4) Control-valve position.
2. Scope: Heating-water system.
3. Purpose: Control of heating-water supply temperature at heating-water supply temperature input device in response to variable outdoor-air temperature input; outdoor-air sensor.
4. Conditions of the Test: Outdoor-air temperature input value may be overridden for this test.
 - a. Low Temperature: Outdoor-air temperature between minus 30 and 10 deg F.
 - b. High Temperature: Outdoor-air temperature between 10 and 55 deg F.
5. Acceptance Criteria: Heating-water supply temperature resets in straight-line relationship with outdoor-air temperature for the following reset schedule. Under all conditions, heating-water supply temperature is within 2.0 deg F of set point.
 - a. 160 deg F heating water when outdoor-air temperature is minus 30 deg F.
 - b. 140 deg F heating water when outdoor-air temperature is 55 deg F.
 - c. Under all conditions, heating-water supply temperature is within plus or minus 2.0 deg F of set point.

B. Control Primary Circulating Pump(s):

1. Prerequisites: Installation verification of the following:
 - a. Startup of heating-water pumps.
 - b. Input Device: Outdoor-air temperature; outdoor-air sensor.
 - c. Output Device: Heating-water pump; DDC system command to starter relay.

- d. Display the following at the operator's workstation:
 - 1) Outdoor-air temperature.
 - 2) Operating status of primary circulating pumps.
2. Scope: Heating-water pumps and associated controls.
3. Purpose: On-off control of heating-water pumps in response to variable outdoor-air temperature input; outdoor-air sensor.
4. Conditions of the Test:
 - a. High Temperature: Outdoor-air temperature above 55 deg F.
 - b. Low Temperature: Outdoor-air temperature below 55 deg F.
5. Acceptance Criteria:
 - a. High Temperature: Pump(s) are off when outside-air temperature is above 55 deg F.
 - b. Low Temperature: Pump(s) are on when outside-air temperature is below 55 deg F.

3.4 CENTRAL REFRIGERATION SYSTEM COMMISSIONING TESTS

A. Start and Stop Chilled-Water Pumps:

1. Prerequisites: Installation verification of the following:
 - a. Startup of chilled-water pumps.
 - b. Input Device: Outdoor air sensor.
 - c. Output Device: DDC system command to starter relay.
 - d. Display of the following at the operator's workstation:
 - 1) Chilled-water flow indication.
 - 2) Chilled-water pumps on-off status.
 - 3) Chilled-water pumps on-off indication.
2. Scope: Chilled-water system, including chilled-water pumps, associated controls, and condenser-water system controls.
3. Purpose:
 - a. Chilled-water pumps start.
 - b. Chilled-water pumps shutdown.
4. Conditions of the Test:
 - a. Verify Start: Start with chilled-water pump enable-input device in the "disable" state to prevent pump start. Place the enable-input device in the "enable" state.
 - b. Verify Shutdown: Start with the enable-input device in the "enable" state to allow the pumps to run. Then place the enable-input device to the "disable" state.
5. Acceptance Criteria:
 - a. Start: Chilled-water pumps start when and only when the enable-input device is in the "enable" state.
 - b. Shutdown: The enable-input device stops the chilled-water pump(s) when placed in the "disable" state.

3.5 TERMINAL UNIT EQUIPMENT COMMISSIONING TESTS

A. Fan Coil Units:

1. Prerequisites: Installation verification of the following:
 - a. Occupancy Input Device: Occupancy sensor.
 - b. Occupancy Output Device: DDC system binary output.
 - c. Room Temperature Input Device: Room thermostat .
 - d. Room Temperature Output Device: Electronic damper actuators and control-valve operators.
 - e. Display the following at the operator's workstation:
 - 1) Room/area served.
 - 2) Room occupied/unoccupied.
 - 3) Room temperature indication.
 - 4) Room temperature set point.
 - 5) Room temperature set point, occupied.
 - 6) Room temperature set point, unoccupied.
 - 7) Air-damper position as percentage open.
 - 8) Control-valve position as percentage open.
2. Scope: Fan coil units with hydronic coils in supply-air systems, and associated controls.
3. Purpose:
 - a. Occupancy-dependent room temperature set-point reset.
 - b. Room temperature control.
4. Conditions of the Test:
 - a. Commissioning Test Demonstration Sampling Rate: 10 percent of each model/size unit.
 - b. Temperature Control - Occupied: Start with the room unoccupied. Occupy the room and observe the change to occupied status. Observe temperature control until room temperature is stable at occupied set point plus or minus 1.0 deg F.
 - c. Temperature Control - Unoccupied: Start with the room occupied. Vacate the room and observe the change to unoccupied status. Observe temperature control until room temperature is stable at unoccupied set point plus or minus 1.0 deg F.
5. Acceptance Criteria:
 - a. Temperature Control - Occupied:
 - 1) Control system status changes from "occupied" to "unoccupied" after the specified time.
 - 2) Room temperature is stable at occupied set point plus or minus 1.0 deg F within 10 minutes of occupancy. Room temperature does not overshoot or undershoot set point by more than 2.0 deg F during transition.
 - b. Temperature Control - Unoccupied:
 - 1) Control system status changes from "unoccupied" to "occupied" after five minutes of continuous occupancy.

- 2) Room temperature is stable at unoccupied set point plus or minus 1.0 deg F within 30 minutes of occupancy.

B. VAV Boxes:

1. Prerequisites: Installation verification of the following:
 - a. Occupancy Input Device: Occupancy sensor.
 - b. Occupancy Output Device: DDC system binary output.
 - c. Display the following at the operator's workstation:
 - 1) Room/area served.
 - 2) Room occupied/unoccupied.
 - 3) Air-damper position as percentage open.
2. Scope: Variable-air-volume terminal air units in outside-air systems, and associated controls.
3. Purpose:
 - a. Demand control ventilation
4. Conditions of the Test:
 - a. Commissioning Test Demonstration Sampling Rate: 10 percent of each model/size unit.
 - b. Ventilation Control - Occupied: Start with the room unoccupied. Occupy the room and observe the change to occupied status. Observe ventilation rate control until room airflow rate is stable at occupied set point plus or minus 10%.
 - c. Ventilation Control - Unoccupied: Start with the room occupied. Vacate the room and observe the change to unoccupied status. Observe ventilation rate control until room ventilation rate is stable at unoccupied set point plus or minus 10%.
5. Acceptance Criteria:
 - a. Ventilation Control - Occupied:
 - 1) Control system status changes from "occupied" to "unoccupied" after the specified time.
 - 2) Room ventilation rate is stable at occupied set point plus or minus 10% within 10 minutes of occupancy.
 - b. Ventilation Control - Unoccupied:
 - 1) Control system status changes from "unoccupied" to "occupied" after five minutes of continuous occupancy.
 - 2) Room ventilation rate is stable at unoccupied set point plus or minus 10% within 30 minutes of occupancy.

C. CAV Boxes:

1. Prerequisites: Installation verification of the following:
 - a. Occupancy Input Device: Occupancy sensor.
 - b. Occupancy Output Device: DDC system binary output.
 - c. Display the following at the operator's workstation:
 - 1) Room/area served.
 - 2) Room occupied/unoccupied.

- 3) Air-damper position as percentage open.
2. Scope: Constant-air-volume terminal air units in outside-air systems, and associated controls.
3. Purpose:
 - a. Constant ventilation
4. Conditions of the Test:
 - a. Commissioning Test Demonstration Sampling Rate: 10 percent of each model/size unit.
 - b. Ventilation Control: Start with the DOAS system off. Energize the system and observe the ventilation rate until room airflow rate is stable at set point plus or minus 10%.
5. Acceptance Criteria:
 - a. Ventilation Control:
 - 1) Control system status changes from "occupied" to "unoccupied" after the specified time.
 - 2) Room ventilation rate is stable at set point plus or minus 10% within 10 minutes of DOAS operation.

3.6 AIR-HANDLING SYSTEM COMMISSIONING TESTS

A. Laundry Supply Fan Variable-Volume Control:

1. Prerequisites: Installation verification of the following:
 - a. Volume Control Input Device: Static-pressure transmitter sensing supply-duct static pressure referenced to conditioned-space static pressure.
 - b. Volume Control Output Device: DDC system analog output to motor speed controller. Set variable-speed drive to minimum speed when fan is stopped.
 - c. High-Pressure Input Device: Static-pressure transmitter sensing supply-duct static pressure referenced to static pressure outside the duct.
 - d. High-Pressure Output Device: DDC system binary output to alarm panel
 - e. Occupancy Input Device: Building Schedule.
 - f. Supply air Temperature Input Device: Duct thermostat .
 - g. Supply air Temperature Output Device: control-valve operators and DX compressor.
 - h. Display the following at the operator's workstation:
 - 1) Supply-fan-discharge static-pressure indication.
 - 2) Supply-fan-discharge static-pressure set point.
 - 3) Supply-fan airflow rate.
 - 4) Supply-fan speed.
2. Scope: Variable-air-volume supply fan units and associated controls.
3. Purpose:
 - a. Supply-air discharge static pressure control.
 - b. Response to excess supply-air discharge static pressure condition.
4. Conditions of the Test:

- a. Minimum supply-air flow.
 - b. Midrange Supply-Air Flow: 50 to 60 percent of maximum.
 - c. Maximum supply-air flow.
 - d. Excess supply-air discharge static pressure.
5. Acceptance Criteria:
 - a. At all supply-air flow rates, and during changes in supply-air flow, discharge air static pressure is at set point plus or minus 2 percent.
 - b. Fan stops and an alarm is initiated at the operator's workstation when supply-air discharge static pressure is at the excess static pressure plus or minus 2 percent.

B. DOAS Control:

1. Prerequisites: Installation verification of the following:
 - a. Volume Control Input Device: Static-pressure transmitter sensing supply-duct static pressure referenced to conditioned-space static pressure.
 - b. Volume Control Output Device: DDC system analog output to motor speed controller. Set variable-speed drive to minimum speed when fan is stopped.
 - c. High-Pressure Input Device: Static-pressure transmitter sensing supply-duct static pressure referenced to static pressure outside the duct.
 - d. High-Pressure Output Device: DDC system binary output to alarm panel
 - e. Display the following at the operator's workstation:
 - 1) Supply-fan-discharge static-pressure indication.
 - 2) Supply-fan-discharge static-pressure set point.
 - 3) Supply-fan airflow rate.
 - 4) Supply-fan speed.
 - 5) Building occupied/unoccupied.
 - 6) Supply air temperature indication.
 - 7) Supply air temperature set point.
 - 8) Control-valve position as percentage open.
 - 9) DX refrigerant compressor status
2. Scope: DOAS units and associated controls.
3. Purpose:
 - a. Supply-air discharge static pressure control.
 - b. Response to excess supply-air discharge static pressure condition.
 - c. Supply air temperature control
4. Conditions of the Test:
 - a. Minimum supply-air flow.
 - b. Midrange Supply-Air Flow: 50 to 60 percent of maximum.
 - c. Maximum supply-air flow.
 - d. Excess supply-air discharge static pressure.
5. Acceptance Criteria:
 - a. At all supply-air flow rates, and during changes in supply-air flow, discharge air static pressure is at set point plus or minus 2 percent.

- b. Fan stops and an alarm is initiated at the operator's workstation when supply-air discharge static pressure is at the excess static pressure plus or minus 2 percent.
- c. Supply air temperature discharge at set point plus or minus 2 percent.

END OF SECTION 23 0800

SECTION 23 0900 - HVAC INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROLS

PART 1- GENERAL

1.1 Products Not Furnished or Installed but integrated with the Work of this Section

A. General:

1. Coordination Meeting: The Installer furnishing the DDC network shall meet with the Installer(s) furnishing each of the following products to coordinate details of the interface between these products and the DDC network. The Owner or his designated representative shall be present at this meeting. Each Installer shall provide the Owner and all other Installers with details of the proposed interface including PICS for BACnet equipment, hardware and software identifiers for the interface points, network identifiers, wiring requirements, communication speeds, and required network accessories. The purpose of this meeting shall be to ensure there are no unresolved issues regarding the integration of these products into the DDC network. Submittals for these products shall not be approved prior to the completion of this meeting.

B. Variable frequency drives:

1. The equipment vendor shall furnish VFDs with an interface to the control and monitoring points specified in Section 230900 and on the drawings. These specified points shall be the minimum acceptable interface to the VFD. The connection to these points shall be by one of the following methods:
 - a. Hardwired connection such as relay, 0-10VDC, or 4-20mA.
 - b. BACnet/IP network connection.
 - c. BACnet over ARCNET network connection.
 - d. BACnet MS/TP network connection.

C. HVAC Equipment

1. Dedicated outside air systems.
2. Hot water and electric unit heaters.
3. Split air cooled chiller.
4. Exhaust and supply fans.
5. Constant air volume (CAV) boxes.
6. Fan coil units.
7. Split air conditioning systems.

D. Communications with Third Party Equipment:

1. Any additional integral control systems included with the products integrated with the work of this section shall be furnished with a BACnet interface for integration into the Direct Digital Control System described in this section.

1.2 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. The General Conditions of the Contract, Supplementary Conditions, and General Requirements are part of this specification and shall be used in conjunction with this section as part of the contract documents.
- B. All work of this Division shall be coordinated and provided by the single Building Automation System (BAS) Contractor.
- C. The work of this Division shall be scheduled, coordinated, and interfaced with the associated work of other trades. Reference the Division 23 and 26 Sections for details.
- D. The work of this Division shall be as required by the specifications, point lists and drawings.
- E. If the Contractor believes there are conflicts or missing information in the project documents, the Contractor shall promptly request clarification and instruction from the design team.
- F. All work shall be subject to the General Conditions and shall comply with applicable requirements of the Contract. The General Conditions of the Contract, Supplementary Conditions, and General Requirements are a part of this specification and shall be used in conjunction with this section as a part of the contract documents. Consult them for further instructions pertaining to this work. The Contractor is bound by the provisions of Division 1.

1.3 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. General: The control system shall consist of a high-speed, peer-to-peer network of native BACnet DDC controllers, a control system server, and a web-based operator interface.
- B. System shall use the BACnet protocol for communication to the building control panel or web server and for communication between control modules. I/O points, schedules, setpoints, trends and alarms specified in Section 230910 – “Sequence of Operations for HVAC Controls” shall be BACnet objects.
- C. System software shall be based on a server/thin client architecture, designed around the open standards of web technology. The control system server shall be accessed using a Web browser over the control system network, the owner's local area network, and (at the owner's discretion) over the Internet. The intent of the thin-client architecture is to provide operators complete access to the control system via a Web browser. No special software other than a web browser shall be required to access graphics, point displays, and trends, configure trends, configure points and controllers, or to download programming into the controllers.
- D. The BAS shall be a complete system designed for use with the enterprise IT systems. This functionality shall extend into the equipment rooms. Devices residing on the automation network located in equipment rooms and similar shall be fully IT compatible devices that mount and communicate directly on the IT infrastructure in the facility. Contractor shall be responsible for coordination with the owner's IT staff to ensure that the BAS will perform in the owner's environment without disruption to any of the other activities taking place on that LAN.

- E. All points of user interface shall be on standard PCs that do not require the purchase of any special software from the BAS manufacturer for use as a building operations terminal. The primary point of interface on these PCs will be a standard Web Browser.
- F. Where necessary and as dictated elsewhere in these Specifications, server(s) shall be used for the purpose of providing a location for extensive archiving of system configuration data, and historical data such as trend data and operator transactions. All data stored will be through the use of a standard data base platform: Microsoft SQL Server Express or Microsoft SQL Server as dictated elsewhere in this specification.
- G. The contractor shall provide a system that will allow a minimum of at least 10 users to simultaneously operate the system.
- H. The BAS user shall be able to log into the system and then access all residence quads, buildings and systems through that single login. Systems that require a separate login for different buildings or systems will not be acceptable.
- I. The BAS work shall consist of the provision of all labor, materials, tools, equipment, software, software licenses, software configurations and database entries, interfaces, line and low voltage power, wiring, tubing, installation, labeling, engineering, calibration, documentation, samples, submittals, testing, commissioning, training services, permits and licenses, transportation, shipping, handling, administration, supervision, management, insurance, temporary protection, cleaning, cutting and patching, warranties, services, and items, even though these may not be specifically mentioned in these Division documents which are required for the complete, fully functional and commissioned BAS.
- J. Provide a complete, neat and workmanlike installation. Use only employees who are skilled, experienced, trained, and familiar with the specific equipment, software, standards and configurations to be provided for this Project.
- K. Manage and coordinate the work in a timely manner in consideration of the Project schedules.
Coordinate with the associated work of other trades so as to not impede or delay the work of associated trades.
- L. The BAS as provided shall incorporate, at minimum, the following integrated features, functions and services:
 - 1. Operator information, alarm management and control functions.
 - 2. Enterprise-level information and control access.
 - 3. Information management including monitoring, transmission, archiving, retrieval, and reporting functions.
 - 4. Diagnostic monitoring and reporting of BAS functions.
 - 5. Offsite monitoring and management access.
 - 6. Energy management
 - 7. Standard applications for terminal HVAC systems.
- M. The building control panel shall have LAN connection ports to allow the building operator connection of a portable laptop to serve as an operator workstation with all

shall allow operators to interface with system via dynamic color graphics. Depict each mechanical system and building floor plan by a point-and-click graphic. A web server with a network interface card shall gather data from this system and generate web pages accessible through a conventional web browser on each PC connected to the network. Operators shall be able to perform all normal operator functions through the web browser interface. "Operator workstation" shall refer to the LAN connection of a portable laptop to the building control panel.

- N. The contractor shall provide full graphics with the new system. The graphic screens will, at a minimum include the contractor's normal graphics screens plus custom graphics as dictated by the circumstances of this project.
- O. The new system shall have the capability of exhibiting a building energy dashboard as part of the graphics. Each building's dashboard will at a minimum include the current energy use (kW, HTHW Btu/hr,) cumulative energy use month to date and year to date, plus local degree-day information.
- P. System shall use the BACnet protocol for communication to the operator workstation or web server and for communication between control modules. Schedules, setpoints, trends, and alarms specified in the Sequences of Operation shall be BACnet objects, and all points need to be released as BACNet objects to facilitate integration.
- Q. The system will directly control the HVAC equipment as specified in the sequences of operation. Each zone controller shall provide occupied and unoccupied modes of operation by individual zone. Energy conservation features such as optimal start/stop, night setback; request-based logic, demand level adjustment of setpoints, etc. shall be provided as described in the sequences of operation.
- R. The system will provide for future expansion. Each new input/output panel shall be sized with at least 20% extra capacity for additional points. The system shall also include future capability of monitoring the card access, fire alarm, and lighting control systems.

1.4 SCOPE OF WORK

- A. The specified work shall be performed in concurrence and coordinated with the full scope of construction of a new dormitory building, and with the campus control system and standards.
- B. The EMS/BAS installation shall consist of all new Ethernet/data communication wiring, network controllers, standalone digital control units, software, sensors, transducers, relays, valves, dampers, damper operators, PE and EP switches, control panels, dryer, filter drains, air pressure reducing stations, and other accessory equipment, along with a complete system of electrical interlocking wiring to fill the intent of the specification and provide for a complete and operable system.
- C. For any equipment that requires electrical power, including but not limited to panels, controllers, and actuators, the contractor shall be responsible for providing power from the nearest suitable source.

- D. Prior to starting work, the Contractor shall make a record of all existing system set points.
Unless noted otherwise or adjusted during the commissioning phase, the new control system will utilize these set points.
- E. The Contractor shall provide controllers for terminal equipment as specified within and as noted on the drawings. These controllers will be field-installed by the Contractor. The Contractor will then complete necessary field wiring.
- F. The work shall include programming sequences of operation, graphics, reporting, etc. for the new controls. Refer to the Sequences of Operation and Graphics sections of this Specification (Appendices) and the drawings.
- G. Most of the graphics will be programmed for use by maintenance staff. As such, they will contain links to various floors, buildings, systems and other equipment. The Contractor shall also be responsible for creating custom web pages for use by other authorized facility staff who will not have access to anything other than one or more particular room temperature set points and conditions.
- H. The work shall also include programming trends for the various points listed in the specification and on the drawings for commissioning and on-going operation purposes. Trends shall be set up by the Contractor to record at the requested intervals, and shall be readily downloaded in a .csv file format to a spreadsheet program such as Microsoft Excel. Trends downloaded in a file format that cannot be manipulated will not be acceptable.
- I. The EMS/BAS contractor shall review and study all drawings and the entire specification to familiarize himself with the equipment and system operation and to verify the quantities and types of valves, operators, alarms, etc. to be provided.
- J. The system shall be integrated with other, existing BAS at the campus. This includes the Carrier i-Vu system at the recently completed Toll Drive dormitory. The proposed system shall be capable of seamlessly accessing all points on the Carrier system, for the purpose of monitoring operation as well as changing parameters and programming.
- K. Contractor shall include all necessary materials, equipment and labor to execute the intent of the scope of new work as shown on the drawings, points lists, schematics, sequences of operation and specifications.
- L. All interlocking, wiring and installation of new control devices associated with the equipment noted in the drawings and specifications shall be provided under this Contract. When the EMS/BAS system is fully installed and operational, this Contractor and representatives of Engineer/Owner will review and commission the system. At that time, this contractor shall demonstrate the operation of the system and prove that it complies with the intent of the drawings and specifications. Final payment will be contingent upon successful commissioning to the satisfaction of the Engineer and the Owner.
- M. Provide services and manpower necessary for commissioning of system in coordination with Engineer/Owner. Refer to Specification Section 230800 for the

Contractor's commissioning responsibilities.

- N. Provide services and equipment for completely integrating the campus with this proposed system.
- O. The work shall also include providing spare parts to the Owner upon completion of the work.
- P. All work performed under this section of the specifications will comply with all codes, laws and governing bodies. If the drawings and/or specifications are in conflict with governing codes, the Contractor shall submit a proposal with appropriate modifications to the project to meet code restrictions. If this specification and associated drawings exceed governing code requirements, the specification will govern. The Contractor shall obtain and pay for all necessary construction permits and licenses.

1.5 QUALIFICATIONS (APPROVED EMS/BAS MANUFACTURERS)

- A. The contractor must use an energy management and building automation system (EMS/BAS) from a manufacturer that is in the business of manufacturing direct digital control (DDC) for at least 15 years.
- B. The Contractor must have branch office or have an authorized distributor within 75 miles of the project site.
- C. The Contractor must have a trained staff of application engineers, who have been certified by the manufacturer in the configuration, programming and service of the automation system.
- D. All control system hardware and software must meet the requirements of this specification, regardless of manufacturer. The Contractor may use any vendor's control system hardware and software providing it complies with this specification.
 - 1. The Contractor shall use only operator workstation software, controller software, custom application programming language, and controllers from the corresponding manufacturer and product line unless Owner approves use of multiple manufacturers.
 - 2. Other products specified herein (such as sensors, valves, dampers, and actuators) need not be manufactured by the specified manufacturers.
- E. The following are the only approved EMS/BAS manufacturers for this project:

MANUFACTURER
Siemens
Carrier
Honeywell
Johnson Controls
Siemens
Approved Equal

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Contractor/Manufacturer Qualifications:

1. The installer/authorized distributor shall have at least five installations of the proposed product line, at least three of which shall have been in a university environment.
2. The installer/authorized distributor shall be able to demonstrate successful on-going relationships with his clients, from installation/commissioning as well as on-going maintenance and service perspectives.
3. If the Contractor is a franchised dealer, the dealer must provide a letter written by a minimum Vice President of Operations for the specific automatic temperature control manufacturer with the following verbiage; "should the Franchise Dealer fail to provide a complete and operational system (as judged by the owner/engineer), the Manufacturer will complete the project to the Engineer's satisfaction at no additional cost to the Owner". This letter must be provided to the engineer along with the other supporting documentation at the time of request for equivalence.
4. Designate a competent and experienced employee to provide BAS Project Management. The designated Project Manager shall be empowered to make technical, scheduling and related decisions on behalf of the BAS Contractor. At minimum, the Project Manager shall:
 - a. Manage the scheduling of the work to ensure that adequate materials, labor and other resources are available as needed.
 - b. Manage the financial aspects of the BAS Contract.
 - c. Coordinate as necessary with other trades.
 - d. Be responsible for the work and actions of the BAS workforce on site.
5. All products used in this installation shall be new, currently under manufacture, and shall be applied in standard "off the shelf" products. This installation shall not be used as a beta-test site for any new products unless explicitly approved by the Engineer and Owner in writing. Spare parts shall be available for at least 10 years after completion of this contract. Under no circumstances shall materials or equipment no longer being manufactured be used for any aspect of this project

1.7 REFERENCE STANDARDS AND CODE COMPLIANCE

- A. Material and installation shall comply with latest editions of applicable codes, recommended practices and standards of BOCA, ANSI, NEC, IEEE, EIA, UL and ASHRAE.
- B. All work, materials, and equipment shall comply with the rules and regulations of all codes and ordinances of the local, state, and federal authorities. Such codes, when more restrictive, shall take precedence over these plans and specifications. As a minimum, the installation shall comply with the current editions in effect 30 days prior to receipt of bids of the following codes:
 1. ASHRAE/ANSI 195-2008: Data Communication Protocol for Building Automation and Control Systems (BACNET)
 2. International Mechanical Code (IMC)
 3. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA)

4. National Electric Code (NEC)
5. Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA).
6. FCC Regulation, Part 15- Governing Frequency Electromagnetic Interference
7. Underwriters Laboratories UL916 PATZ and UL864 UDTZ
8. Uniform Building Code (UBC)
 - a. Section 719 Ducts and Air Transfer Openings
 - b. Section 608, Shutoff for Smoke Control
 - c. Section 403.3, Smoke Detection Group B Office Buildings and Group R
 - d. Section 710.5, Wiring in Plenums
 - e. Section 1120, Detection and Alarm Systems

1.8 SYSTEM PERFORMANCE

- A. Performance standards. The system shall conform to the following minimum standards.
Information transmission and display times are based upon network rather than modem connections. Systems shall be tested using the manufacturer's recommended hardware and software for the operator workstation (server and browser for web-based systems).
1. Graphic Display: The system shall display a graphic with 20 dynamic points with all current data within 10 seconds.
 2. Graphic Refresh: The system shall update a graphic with 20 dynamic points with all current data within 8 seconds and shall automatically refresh every 15 seconds.
 3. Configuration and Tuning Screens: Any special screens used for configuring, calibrating, or tuning points, PID loops, and similar control logic shall refresh every 5 seconds.
 4. Object Command: The maximum time between the command of a binary object by the operator and the reaction by the device shall be less than 2 seconds. Analog objects should start to adjust within 2 seconds.
 5. Object Scan: All changes of state and change of analog values will be transmitted over the high-speed Ethernet network such that any data used or displayed at a controller or workstation will have been current within the previous 2 seconds
 6. Alarm Response Time: The maximum time from when an object goes into alarm to when it is annunciated at the workstation shall not exceed 15 seconds.
 7. Program Execution Frequency. Custom and standard applications shall be capable of running as often as once every 5 seconds. The Contractor shall be responsible for selecting execution times consistent with the mechanical process under control.
 8. Performance: Programmable controllers shall be able to execute DDC PID control loops at a selectable frequency adjustable down to once per second. The controller shall scan and update the process value and output generated by this calculation at this same time frequency.
 9. Multiple Alarm Annunciation: All workstations on the network must receive alarms within 5 seconds of each other.

10. Reporting Accuracy: The system shall report all values with an end-to-end accuracy as listed as or better than those listed in Table 1.
11. Stability of Control: Control loops shall maintain measured variable at set point within the tolerances listed in Table 2.

Table 1 - Reporting Accuracy	
Measured Variable	Reported Accuracy
Space Temperature	±1.0°
Ducted Air	(±1°F
Outside Air	±2°
Dew Point	±1°
Water Temperature	±1.0°F
Delta-T	±1.0°
Relative Humidity	±5% RH
Water Flow	±5% of full scale
Airflow (terminal)	±10% of full scale (see Note

Airflow (measuring	±5% of full scale
Airflow (pressurized	±3% of full scale
Air Pressure (ducts)	±0.1 in. w.g.
Air Pressure (space)	±0.05 in. w.g.
Water Pressure	±2% of full scale (see Note
Electrical (A, V, W, Power	2% of reading (see Note 3)
Carbon Monoxide (CO)	±5% of reading
Carbon Dioxide (CO2)	±50 ppm

Note 1: 10%-100% of scale

Note 2: For both absolute and differential pressure

Note 3: Not including utility-supplied meters

Table 2 - Control Stability and Accuracy		
Controlled	Control Accuracy	Range of Medium
Air Pressure	±0.2 in. w.g., ±0.01 in.	0-6 in. w.g., -0.1 to 0.1 in. w.g.
Airflow	±10% of full scale	
Space	±2.0°F	
Duct Temperature	±3°F	
Humidity	±5% RH	
Fluid Pressure	±1.5 psi, ±1.0 in. w.g.	1-150 psi, 0-50 in. w.g.

1.9 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data and Shop Drawings: Meet requirements on Shop Drawings, Product Data, and Samples. Contractor shall provide shop drawings or other submittals on all hardware, software, and installation to be provided. No work may begin on any segment of this project until submittals have been successfully reviewed for conformity with the design intent. Copies shall be submitted electronically through the Procore® cloud-based project management system. All drawings shall be prepared on a CAD system that produces drawing files that are either compatible

with or may be converted to AutoCAD Version 2009 or higher format. Provide drawings on magnetic/optical disk. Where manufacturer's cut sheets apply to a product series rather than a specific product, the data specifically applicable to the project shall be highlighted or clearly indicated by other means. Each submitted piece of literature and drawings shall clearly reference the specification and/or drawing that the submittal is to cover. General catalogs shall not be accepted as cut sheets to fulfill submittal requirements. Submittals shall be provided within 8 weeks of contract award. Submittals shall include:

1. Direct Digital Control System Hardware:
 - a. A complete bill of materials of equipment to be used indicating quantity, manufacturer, model number, and other relevant technical data.
 - b. Manufacturer's description and technical data, such as performance curves, product specification sheets, and installation/maintenance instructions for the items listed below and other relevant items not listed below:
 - 1) Direct Digital Controller (controller panels)
 - 2) Transducers/Transmitters
 - 3) Sensors (including accuracy data)
 - 4) Actuators
 - 5) Valves
 - 6) Dampers
 - 7) Relays/Switches
 - 8) Control Panels
 - 9) Network Devices
 - 10) Power Supply
 - 11) Batteries
 - 12) Operator Interface Equipment
 - 13) Wiring
 - c. Wiring diagrams and layouts for each control panel. Show all termination numbers.
 - d. Schematic diagrams for all field sensors and controllers. Provide floor plans of all sensor locations and control hardware.
 - e. List of spare parts provided with quantities.
2. Central System Hardware and Software:
 - a. A complete bill of material of equipment used, indicating quantity, manufacturer, model number, and other relevant technical data.
 - b. Manufacturer's description and technical data, such as product specification sheets and installation/maintenance instructions for the items listed below and other relevant items not listed below if provided under this contract:
 - 1) Central Processing Unit or Web Server
 - 2) Monitors
 - 3) Printers
 - 4) Keyboard

- 5) Power Supply
 - 6) Battery Backup
 - 7) Interface Equipment Between CPU/Server and Control Panels
 - 8) Operating System Software
 - 9) Operator Interface Software
 - 10) Color Graphic Software
 - 11) Third-Party Software
- c. Schematic diagrams for all control, communication, and power wiring. Provide a schematic drawing of the central system installation. Show all interface wiring to the control system.
 - d. Riser diagrams of wiring between central control unit and all control panels.
3. Controlled Systems:
- a. Riser diagrams showing control network layout, communication protocol, and wire types.
 - b. A schematic diagram of each controlled system. The schematics shall have
all control points labeled with point names shown or listed. The schematics shall graphically show the location of all control elements in the system. One schematic shall be prepared for each individual system – do not show 'generic' schematics that apply to more than one system.
 - c. A schematic wiring diagram for each controlled system. Each schematic shall have all elements labeled. Where a control element is the same as that shown on the control system schematic, it shall be labeled with the same name.
 - d. An instrumentation list (Bill of Materials) for each controlled system. Each element of the controlled system shall be listed in table format. The table shall show element name, type of device, manufacturer, model number, and product data sheet number.
 - e. Control Damper Schedule including a separate line for each damper provided under this section and a column for each of the damper attributes, including: code number, fail position, damper type, damper operator, duct size, damper size, mounting, and actuator type.
 - f. Control Valve Schedules including a separate line for each valve provided under this section and a column for each of the valve attributes: code number, configuration, fail position, pipe size, valve size, body configuration, close off pressure, capacity, valve Cv, design pressure, and actuator type.
 - g. Room Schedule including a separate line for each terminal unit indicating location and address.
 - h. A point list for each control system. List I/O points and software points as specified. Indicate alarmed and trended points.
 - i. A complete description of the operation of the control system, including sequences of operation. The description shall include and reference a schematic diagram of the controlled system. The description shall also include a list of all I/O points and software

points as required (refer to attached points lists). This list shall indicate which points are alarmed.

4. Graphics: A sample graphics screen (in full color) shall be submitted for each level of the system tree, including campus, building, floor, and equipment (one screen for each unique type of equipment such as AHUs, heat exchangers, pumps, exhaust fans, fan coil units, miscellaneous equipment). Graphic shall show appropriate data for that level, and as specified within. Graphics shall be submitted and approved by the Owner/Engineer prior to Contractor's self-commissioning activities. Refer to the sample graphics screens in the appendix of this specification. At a minimum, the new graphics will include the contractor's normal graphics screens plus any custom graphics dictated by the circumstances of this project.
 5. Quantities of items submitted shall be reviewed but are the responsibility of the Contractor.
 6. A description of the proposed process along with all report formats and checklists to be used in Part 3: "Control System Demonstration and Acceptance."
 7. BACnet Protocol Implementation Conformance Statement (PICS) for each submitted type of controller and operator interface
- B. Project Record Documents: Upon completion of installation, submit three copies of record (as-built) documents. The documents shall be submitted for approval prior to final completion and shall include:
1. Project Record Drawings. These shall be record versions of the submittal shop drawings. One set of electronic media drawing files shall also be provided, in a format compatible with or convertible to AutoCAD Version 2009 or higher. (.DWG, .DXF, .VSD, etc.) Further, one plastic laminated set of schematics shall be mounted on or near each control panel. The wiring diagrams, corresponding points list and final sequence of operation (if not on the schematic drawing itself) shall be left in a water-resistant envelope inside the local control panel nearest to the system controlled.
 2. Testing and Commissioning Reports and Checklists. Completed versions of all reports and checklists, along with all trend logs, used to meet the requirements of Part 3: "Control System Demonstration and Acceptance."
 3. Operation and Maintenance (O&M) Manual. This shall include record versions of the submittal product data. In addition to the information required for submittals, the O&M manual shall include printed, electronic, or on-line help documentation of the following:
 - a. Names, addresses, and telephone numbers of contractors installing equipment and the control systems and service representatives of each.
 - b. Operators manual with procedures for operating the control systems, including logging on/off, alarm handling, producing point reports,

trending data, overriding computer control, and changing set points and other variables.

Either printed or electronic documentation (help files or training materials) are acceptable.

- c. One set of programming manuals with a description of the programming language (including syntax), statement descriptions (including algorithms and calculations used), point database creation and modification, program creation and modification, and use of the editor.
 - d. Engineering, installation, and maintenance manual(s) that explain how to design and install new points, panels, and other hardware; preventive maintenance and calibration procedures; how to debug hardware problems; and how to repair or replace hardware.
 - e. A listing and documentation of all custom software created using the programming language, including the set points, tuning parameters, and object database. Electronic copies of the actual programs may be used for this purpose, if the control logic, set points, tuning parameters, and other objects can be viewed through the supplied programming tools. One set of magnetic/optical media containing files of the software and database also shall be provided.
 - f. One set of magnetic/optical media containing files of all color graphic screens created for the project, if not included in the magnetic/optical media containing the software and database.
 - g. A list of recommended spare parts with part numbers and suppliers.
 - h. Complete original issue documentation, installation, and maintenance information for all third-party hardware provided, including computer equipment and sensors.
 - i. Complete original issue CDs for all software provided, including operating systems, programming language, operator workstation software, and graphics software.
 - j. Licenses, guarantees, and warranty documents for all equipment and systems.
Each computer supplied shall have valid software licenses for all software installed.
 - k. Recommended preventive maintenance procedures for all system components, including a schedule of tasks (inspection, cleaning, calibration, etc.), time between tasks, and task descriptions.
- C. Training Materials: The contractor shall provide a course outline and training materials for all training classes at least six weeks prior to the first class. Training shall be conducted via instructor-led sessions, computer-based training, and/or web-based training. The engineer may modify any or all of the training course outline and training materials to meet the needs of the Owner. Review and approval by the engineer/Owner shall be completed at least three weeks prior to the first class.

1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Warrant all work as follows:

1. Labor and materials for the control system specified shall be warranted free from defects for a period of 12 months after final commissioning and acceptance. Control system failures during the warranty period shall be adjusted, repaired, or replaced at no additional cost or reduction in service to the Owner. The Contractor shall respond to Owner's request for warranty service within 24 hours during normal business hours.
2. All work shall have a single warranty date, even when Owner has received beneficial use due to an early system start-up. If the work specified is split into multiple contracts or a multi-phase contract, then each contract or phase shall have a separate warranty start date and period
3. At the end of the final start-up, testing, and commissioning phase, if equipment and systems are operating satisfactorily to the Owner and the Engineer, the Engineer shall sign certificates certifying that the control system's operation has been tested and accepted in accordance with the terms of this specification. The date of acceptance shall be the start of warranty.
4. Operator workstation software, project-specific software, graphic software, database software, and firmware updates which resolve known software deficiencies as identified by the Contractor shall be provided at no charge during the warranty period. Any upgrades or functional enhancements associated with the above mentioned items also can be provided during the warranty period for an additional charge to Owner by purchasing an in-warranty service agreement from the Contractor. Written authorization by Owner must, however, be granted prior to the installation of any of the above mentioned items.

1.11 OWNERSHIP OF PROPRIETARY MATERIALS

- A. All project-developed software and documentation shall become the property of Owner.

These include, but are not limited to:

1. Project graphic images
2. Record drawings
3. Project database
4. Project-specific application programming code
5. Training materials
6. Operations and maintenance manuals
7. All documentation

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. The BAS shall use an open architecture and fully support a multi-vendor environment. To accomplish this effectively, the BAS shall support open communication protocol standards and integrate a wide variety of third-party devices and applications. The system shall be designed for use on the Internet, or intranets using off-the-shelf,

industry standard technology compatible with other owner provided networks.

- B. All products used in this project installation shall be new and currently under manufacture and shall be the version currently being sold by the manufacturer for use in new installations. This installation shall not be used as a beta-test site for any new products. Spare parts shall be available for at least 10 years after completion of this contract.
- C. The system shall be modular in nature, and shall permit expansion of both capacity and functionality through the addition of sensors, actuators, controllers and operator devices, while re-using existing controls equipment.
- D. System architectural design shall eliminate dependence upon any single device for alarm reporting and control execution.
 - 1. The failure of any single component or network connection shall not interrupt the execution of control strategies at other operational devices.
 - 2. The System shall maintain all settings and overrides through a system reboot.

2.2 Air Compressor

- A. Air compressor shall be duplex, high-pressure, electric motor driven, air-cooled, and two rotary compressors shall be base mounted with a separate vertical air receiver. Provide separate inertia base and vibration isolation devices as Contract Documents require. Provide service and relief valves at the discharge of each compressor prior to entering the air receiver.
- B. Each air compressor shall be factory-packaged and shall include air compressor, electric motor, lubrication system, regulation and control systems, air-cooled aftercooler with moisture separator and condensate trap, mounted on a common base frame and fully-enclosed in a steel sound-dampening canopy. Coolers shall be capable of satisfactory performance at ambient temperatures up to 104 degrees F.
- C. Each air compressor shall be sized for 100 percent of projected peak load of building and to provide total necessary compressed air for control operations such that a combination of both compressing units shall not operate more than 1/3 of total run-time.
- D. Compressors shall be complete with necessary pressure switches; safety relief valves; unloaders; gages; intake filters; totally-enclosed belt guards; air-cooled aftercooler; combination unit-mounted starter (for each motor) with run-time indicators, auxiliary contacts, [dual electric feed,] automatic alternator, and control panel. Control system shall be full-load, partial-load to eliminate excessive cycling, or no-load type, governed by an air pressure switch which senses pressure variations at compressor discharge and keeps it within an adjustable range. Control system shall also provide for automatic shut-off of compressor during periods of low demand and excessive idling.
- E. Controls shall operate via two (2) double-pole, single-throw (DPST) pressure switches for automatic starting and stopping through magnetic starters. Each starter shall have an independent electric feed.

- F. Automatic alternator shall operate to switch lead compressor unit with each succeeding operation. Alternator shall also permit standby operation if first compressor fails or is unable to keep up with load.
- G. Provide air receiver storage tank sized for required capacity. Air receiver storage tank shall be fabricated for a working pressure of not less than 200 psi, and shall be constructed in accordance with ANSI/ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code for Unfired Pressure Vessels. Tank certification shall be provided in duplicate with each unit. Tank shall be of sufficient volume so that no more than six (6) starts per hour (combination of both compressors) are required.
- H. Discharge air lines [at discharge of each compressor (for base-mounted units) or at receiver tank discharge (for tank-mounted units)] shall be connected to air receiver storage tank with flexible connectors to prevent transmission of vibration to control-air piping.
- I. Provide automatic drain traps at each receiver tank, dryer and filter as indicated on Instrumentation Drawings.
- J. Magnetic motor starters shall be combination type, with fused disconnects, circuit breakers and undervoltage and thermal overload protection for each phase. Front cover shall be complete with reset pushbutton, and run pilot light. Starters shall be in accordance with Individual Motor Starters: Division 16, except that Hand-Off-Auto switch shall be omitted.
- K. Provide, in discharge line of air receiver storage tank, a refrigerated air dryer as indicated on Drawings. Air dryer shall be of size required for full capacity and pressure of one (1) compressor. Air dryer shall be complete with bucket trap, sediment trap, automatic drain valve and required piping; condensate line shall be piped to nearest drain. Air dryer shall be provided with a set of normally-open contacts to signal a unit malfunction. Air dryer shall bring air dewpoint at line pressure 100 psig down to 35 degrees F.
- L. Provide, where indicated on Drawings, individual afterfilters and pressure-reducing valves (PRVs); pressure-reducing valves of relieving type are not acceptable. Filters shall be 100 percent efficient for particles down to [0.5 micron] {0.0005 mm} diameter. Filters shall be sized for a pressure drop of no more than [2 psig] {115 kPa} at full flow of one (1) compressor. Bowl shall be polycarbonate or steel for [150 psig] {1100 kPa} maximum working pressure. Provide a high filter differential-pressure alarm device for each filter. PRVs shall be sized for full flow of one (1) compressor.
- M. Provide a coalescing filter, in addition to afterfilters, upstream of air dryer to remove liquid/oil particles. Filters shall be sized for a pressure drop of no more than [2 psig] {115 kPa} at full flow of one (1) compressor. Filters shall be 98 percent efficient for removal of liquids/oils and particles [0.9 micron] {0.0009 mm} diameter and greater. [Provide a coalescing filter downstream of desiccant air dryers.]
- N. Provide in-line type compressed air flow meter suitable for horizontal or vertical mounting in compressed air systems up to [600 psig] {4250 kPa}. A moving indicator on

flow meter shall provide direct reading of flow in [scfm] {L/s}. Flow meter shall operate under variable-area principle where piston movement gradually increases flow area until piston movement against a spring is balanced by pressure drop of incoming flow. Maximum operating conditions shall be [210 degrees F] {99 degrees C} and [600 psig] {4250 kPa}.

- O. Controls installer shall size air compressors to handle additional load of all [for example, terminal boxes, boilers, steam pressure-reducing valves, chillers and fans with variable capacity control provided under Mechanical: Division 15. Coordinate with Paragraph 3.1 DD.].
- P. Compressed air quality shall meet ANSI/ISA S7.3.
- Q. Approved Manufacturers:
 - 1. Rotary Screw Air Compressors: Kobelco, Atlas-Copco.
 - 2. Refrigerated Air Dryers: Hankison Corporation, Ingersoll-Rand Corporation, Arrow Pneumatics, Van Air Systems.
 - 3. Filters: Pall Corporation, Hankison Corporation, Arrow Pneumatics.
 - 4. Pressure-Reducing Valves: Norgren, Arrow Pneumatics, Moore Products, Johnson Controls, Honeywell, Landis & Gyr Powers, Barber-Colman, Robertshaw.
 - 5. Flow Meters: 670-870 Series by Hedland Division of Racine Federated, Inc.

2.3 Compressed-Air Refrigerant Dryer

- A. Where compressed-air lines run through unheated areas or serve equipment located outdoors, provide a heatless regenerative desiccant dryer to bring dewpoint down to 35 degrees F at 100 psig pressure.
- B. Dryer shall have two (2) chambers for moisture absorption. Only one (1) chamber shall be utilized at a time, while other chamber is reactivated with a small fraction of air. An integral timer powered by 120 V ac shall operate to alternate chambers at preset time intervals.
- C. The Dryer shall be constructed to operate at a maximum pressure of 150 psig and shall have a normally open valve design to prevent flow restriction due to a loss of power.
- D. Provide a means to indicate failure of dryer to remove moisture remotely.

2.4 Compressed-Air Filter Alarm

- A. Provide a differential-pressure alarm device to transmit a signal to DDC system for sensing either clogged or dirty filter elements. Provide integral or separately mounted indicator for visually reading "clean/change/dirty" status.

- B. Filter alarm shall be constructed to operate at 250 psig maximum pressure and 120 degrees F maximum temperature.
- C. Alarm setpoint shall be adjustable and set in accordance with filter manufacturer's written recommendations. Unit shall operate a set of dry contacts for remote signaling purposes.

2.5 Control-Air Piping

- A. Control-air piping shall be copper tubing with sweated fittings and valves, or flame-retardant plastic tubing (where indicated) with burning characteristics of low-density polyethylene equal to Dekoron FR tubing as manufactured by Fluorocarbon/Samuel Moore Company as specified. Plastic tubing shall be self-extinguished when tested per ASTM D 635, have UL 94 V-2 flammability classification, and withstand stress cracking when tested in accordance with ASTM D 1693.
- B. Control-air piping installed in plenum ceilings shall be [copper] [flame-retardant plastic where allowed by code]. [Plastic tubing used in air plenums shall be UL-listed for such use.] Control-air piping in concealed spaces shall be copper.
- C. In mechanical rooms, piping carrying air at less than 30 psig may be flame-retardant plastic tubing; all tubing below 10 feet above finished floor shall be placed in conduit or raceways. All exposed tubing in unfinished spaces shall be bundled and shall follow routing of other piping and conduit, and shall be hung only from pipe hangers and beam clamps.
- D. All control-air piping distributing compressed air equal to or greater than 30 psig shall be copper. All control-air piping installed outdoors shall be copper. All control-air piping greater than 3/8 inch diameter (O.D.) shall be copper. All vertical runs of control-air piping more than one (1) story or which penetrate floor(s) shall be copper for entire vertical run.
- E. All air lines and pneumatic actuators subjected to outdoor temperatures shall be electrically heat traced and insulated. Provide a temperature controller with its sensor bulb exposed to outside air temperature. Controller shall energize control-air piping's heat tracing on a fall in temperature below controller setpoint.
- F. No control-air piping shall be installed exposed in occupied spaces.
- G. Copper tubing shall meet ASTM B 88, and shall be hard-drawn Type M copper where exposed and soft Type M copper where concealed. Piping between air compressor discharge and final regulators shall be hard-drawn.
- H. Control-air piping hangers shall be separated from piping material by permanent non-hygroscopic material or shall be copper-clad to prevent corrosion. Hangers shall be arranged to prevent sagging of tubing between hangers. Hangers shall meet specifications and support spacing requirements of Pipe Hangers and Supports: Division 15.

- I. Control air piping and tubing leaving control panels shall pass through bulkhead fittings or rubber grommets in panel wall.
- J. Control-air piping shall be sized for a minimum pressure drop of 1 psig at maximum flow and to allow operation of pneumatic actuators at maximum speed of stroke.

2.6 Current-To-Pressure (I/P) Transducers

- A. Current-to-pressure (I/P) transducer shall meet the following requirements:
- B. Input: 4 to 20 mA dc.
- C. Output: 3 to 15 psig.
- D. Supply Pressure: 20 psig plus or minus 2 psig.
- E. Accuracy: Plus or minus 0.5 percent of reading.
- F. Ambient Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 150 degrees F.
- G. Maximum Air Consumption: 0.08 scfm.
- H. Maximum Air Capacity: 0.15 scfm.
- I. Direct-acting or reverse-acting as required.
- J. Capable of being made intrinsically-safe where specified.
- K. I/P transducer shall have independent zero and span adjustments as necessary to accomplish sequences of operation.
- L. Approved Manufacturers: VDO Instruments, Inc., Fairchild, Moore Industries.

2.7 Pressure-To-Current (P/I) Transducers

- A. Pressure-to-current (P/I) transducer shall be of the 2-wire design, and shall be capable of transducing a pneumatic pressure signal to an electric signal.
- B. P/I transducer shall meet the following requirements:
- C. Input: 3 to 15 psig.
- D. Output: 4 to 20 mA dc into 500 ohm (minimum) load at 24 V dc supply.
- E. Accuracy: Plus or minus 0.25 percent of reading.
- F. Overrange Limit: 30 psig.
- G. Approved Manufacturer: Moore Products Company.

2.8 Valve Actuator:

- A. Actuator shall be pneumatic, diaphragm operated, spring return and be of the air-to-open (normally-closed) type.
- B. Provide actuator with a cam-type positive positioner which shall provide an linear valve characteristic from a 3 to 8 psig instrument air signal and a 25 psig supply air pressure.
- C. Actuator and positive positioner shall also provide a maximum shut-off pressure differential of no less than 100 psig.
- D. Actuator shall have an enclosed cast iron or aluminum alloy spring barrel and integral linkage housing.
- E. Provide actuator with an integral handwheel (side mounted, normal disengaged) for manual operation and travel rotation adjustment. Handwheel shall be a minimum of 8 inches in diameter.
- F. All control valves (and accessories) shall be provided with required air supply regulators and/or positioners as required to control actuator pressure where air supply pressure is greater than that required by actuator or positioner.

2.9 COMMUNICATION

- A. Control products, communication media, connectors, repeaters, hubs, and routers shall comprise a BACnet internetwork. Controller and operator interface communication shall conform to ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 135, BACnet.
- B. Install new wiring and network devices as required to provide a complete and workable control network.
- C. The Contractor shall provide all communication media, connectors, repeaters, hubs, and routers necessary for the internet work. The existing Ethernet backbone may be used for the network segments if shown as "existing" on the project drawings.
- D. All controllers shall have a communication port for temporary connection to a laptop computer or other operator interface device. This connection shall support memory downloads and other operations needed for commissioning and troubleshooting.
- E. Integration
 - 1. Direct Protocol (Integrator Panel)
 - a. The BAS system shall include appropriate hardware equipment and software to allow bi-directional data communications between the BAS system and 3rd party manufacturers' control panels. The BAS shall receive, react to, and return information from multiple building systems, including but not limited to variable frequency drives and power monitoring systems.
 - b. All data required by the application shall be mapped into the

- Automation
Engine's database, and shall be transparent to the operator.
 - c. Point inputs and outputs from the third party controllers shall have real time interoperability with BAS software features such as: control software, energy management, custom process programming, alarm management, historical data and trend analysis, totalization, and local area network communications.
 - 2. BACnet Protocol Integration - BACnet
 - a. The neutral protocol used between systems will be BACnet over Ethernet and comply with the ASHRAE BACnet standard 135.
 - b. A complete Protocol Implementation Conformance Statement (PICS) shall be provided for all BACnet system devices.
 - c. The ability to command, share point object data, change of state (COS) data and schedules between the host and BACnet systems shall be provided.
 - F. Internetwork operator interface and value passing shall be transparent to internetwork architecture.
 - 1. An operator interface connected to a controller shall allow the operator to interface with each internetwork controller as if directly connected. Controller information such as data, status, and control algorithms shall be viewable and editable from each internetwork controller.
 - 2. Inputs, outputs, and control variables used to integrate control strategies across multiple controllers shall be readable by each controller on the internetwork. Program and test all cross-controller links required to execute control strategies specified in Division 23 Section Sequences of Operation. An authorized operator shall be able to edit cross-controller links by typing a standard object address or by using a point- and-click interface.
 - G. Controllers with real-time clocks shall use the BACnet Time Synchronization service. System shall automatically synchronize system clocks daily from an operator-designated controller via the internetwork. If applicable, system shall automatically adjust for daylight saving and standard time.
 - H. System shall be expandable to at least twice the required input and output objects with additional controllers, associated devices, and wiring.
- 2.10 OPERATOR INTERFACE
- A. The Operator Workstation or server shall conform to the BACnet Operator Workstation (B- OWS) or BACnet Advanced Workstation (B-AWS) device profile as specified in ASHRAE/ANSI 135 BACnet Annex L.
 - B. Operator Interface. Web server or PC-based workstations shall reside on high-speed network with building controllers. Each workstation or each standard browser connected to server shall be able to access all system information.
 - C. In addition to the primary operator interface, the system shall include a secondary interface compatible with a locally available commercial wireless network and viewable on a commercially available wireless device such as a Wireless Access Protocol (WAP) enabled cellular telephone. This secondary interface may be text-based and

shall provide a summary of the most important data. As a minimum, the following capabilities shall be provided through this interface:

1. An operator authentication system that requires an operator to log in before viewing or editing any data, and which can be configured to limit the privileges of an individual operator.
 2. The ability to view and acknowledge any alarm in the system. Alarms or links to alarms shall be provided on a contiguous list so the operator can quickly view all alarms.
 3. A summary page or pages for each piece of equipment in the system. This page shall include the current values of all critical I/O points and shall allow the operator to lock binary points on or off and to lock analog points to any value within their range.
 4. Navigation links that allow the operator to quickly navigate from the home screen to any piece of equipment in the system, and then return to the home screen. These links may be arranged in a hierarchical fashion, such as navigating from the home screen to a particular building, then to a specific floor in the building, and then to a specific room or piece of equipment
- D. Dedicated User Interface Architecture – The architecture of the computer shall be implemented to conform to industry standards, so that it can accommodate applications provided by the BAS Contractor and by other third party applications suppliers, including but not limited to Microsoft Office Applications. Specifically it must be implemented to conform to the following interface standards.
1. Microsoft Internet Explorer for user interface functions
 2. Microsoft Office Professional for creation, modification and maintenance of reports, sequences other necessary building management functions
 3. Microsoft Outlook or other e-mail program for supplemental alarm functionality and communication of system events, and reports
 4. Required network operating system for exchange of data and network functions such as printing of reports, trends and specific system summaries
- E. Communication. Web server or workstation and controllers shall communicate using BACnet protocol. Web server or workstation and control network backbone shall communicate using ISO 8802-3 (Ethernet) Data Link/Physical layer protocol and BACnet/IP addressing as specified in ANSI/ASHRAE 135, BACnet Annex J.
- F. Hardware. Each workstation or web server shall consist of the following:
1. Portable Operator's Terminal. Provide all necessary software to configure an IBM-compatible laptop computer for use as a Portable Operator's Terminal. The laptop shall be the functional equivalent of the fixed workstation computer. Operator shall be able to connect configured Terminal to the system network or directly to each controller for programming, setting up, and troubleshooting.
 2. Hardware Base. Industry-standard hardware shall meet or exceed DDC system manufacturer's recommended specifications and shall meet response times specified in Section 230900 Paragraph 1.8. Hard disk shall have sufficient memory to store system software, one year of data for trended

points specified in Appendix A, and a system database at least twice the size of the existing database at system acceptance. Configure computers and network connections if multiple computers are required to meet specified memory and performance. Web server or workstations/laptop shall be IBM-compatible PCs with a minimum of:

3. Dual or Quad Core processor
4. 6 GB RAM
5. 500 GB free hard disk space providing data at 3.0 GB/sec
6. Hard drive backup system –network backup software provided by IT department
7. 16x DVD/RW drive
8. Keyboard (include for workstations only)
9. Mouse (include for each workstation and laptop)
10. 17-inch 24-bit color monitor with at least 1280 x 1024 resolution (include for workstation only)
11. Two serial, one parallel, two USB and network communication ports and cables required for proper system operation

G. Operator Functions. Operator interface shall allow each authorized operator to execute the following functions at a minimum:

1. Log In and Log Out. System shall require user name and password to log in to operator interface.
 - a. Multiple-level password access protection shall be provided to allow the user/manager to user interface control, display, and database manipulation capabilities deemed appropriate for each user, based on an assigned password.
 - b. Each user shall have the following: a user name (accept 24 characters minimum), a password (accept 12 characters minimum), and access levels.
 - c. The system shall allow each user to change his or her password at will.
 - d. When entering or editing passwords, the system shall not echo the actual characters for display on the monitor.
 - e. A minimum of six levels of access shall be supported individually or in any combination as follows:
 - 1) Level 1 = View Data
 - 2) Level 2 = Command
 - 3) Level 3 = Operator Overrides
 - 4) Level 4 = Database Modification
 - 5) Level 5 = Database Configuration
 - 6) Level 6 = All privileges, including Password Add/Modify
 - f. A minimum of 100 unique passwords shall be supported.
 - g. Operators shall be able to perform only those commands available for their respective passwords. Display of menu selections shall be limited to only those items defined for the access level of the password used to log-on.
 - h. Operators shall be further limited to only access, command, and

- modify those buildings, systems, and subsystems for which they have responsibility. Provide a minimum of 100 categories of systems to which individual operators may be assigned.
- i. The operator shall be able to access all buildings and systems for which he has responsibility from a single log in action. Systems that require a log in for different systems or buildings will not be acceptable.
 - j. Automatic Log Out. Automatically log out each operator if no keyboard or mouse activity is detected. Operators shall be able to adjust automatic log out delay.
 - k. Encrypted Security Data. Store system security data including operator passwords in an encrypted format. System shall not display operator passwords.
 - l. The system shall automatically generate a report of log-on/log-off and system activity for each user. Any action that results in a change in the operation or configuration of the control system shall be recorded, including: modification of point values, schedules or history collection parameters, and all changes to the alarm management system, including the acknowledgment and deletion of alarms.
2. Point-and-click Navigation. Operator interface shall be graphically based and shall allow operators to access graphics for equipment and geographic areas using point- and-click navigation.
- a. The system will have the capability to display multiple navigation trees that will aid the operator in navigating throughout all systems and points connected. At minimum provide a tree that identifies all systems on the networks.
 - b. Provide the ability for the operator to add custom trees. The operator will be
able to define any logical grouping of systems or points and arrange them on the tree in any order. It shall be possible to nest groups within other groups. Provide at minimum 5 levels of nesting.
 - c. The navigation trees shall be "dockable" to other displays in the user interface such as graphics. This means that the trees will appear as part of the display, but can be detached and then minimized to the Windows task bar. A simple keystroke will reattach the navigation to the primary display of the user interface.
3. View and Adjust Equipment Properties. Operators shall be able to view controlled equipment status and to adjust operating parameters such as setpoints, PID gains, on and off controls, and sensor calibration.
4. View and Adjust Operating Schedules. Operators shall be able to view scheduled operating hours of each schedulable piece of equipment on a graphical schedule display, to select and adjust each schedule and time period, and to simultaneously schedule related equipment.
- a. A graphical display for time-of-day scheduling and override scheduling of building operations shall be provided. At a minimum, the following functions shall be provided:
 - 1) Weekly schedules

- 2) Exception Schedules
 - 3) Monthly calendars
 - b. Weekly schedules shall be provided for each group of equipment with a specific time use schedule.
 - c. It shall be possible to define one or more exception schedules for each schedule including references to calendars. System shall clearly show exception schedules and holidays on the schedule display.
 - d. Monthly calendars shall be provided that allow for simplified scheduling of holidays and special days for a minimum of five years in advance. Holidays and special days shall be user-selected with the pointing device or keyboard, and shall automatically reschedule equipment operation as previously defined on the exception schedules.
 - e. Changes to schedules made from the User Interface shall directly modify the Network Automation Engine schedule database.
 - f. Schedules and Calendars shall comply with ASHRAE SP135/2008 BACnet Standard.
 - g. Selection of a single menu item or tool bar button shall print any displayed schedule on the system printer for use as a building management and diagnostics tool.
 - h. Software shall be provided to configure and implement optimal start and stop programming based on existing indoor and outdoor environmental conditions as well as equipment operating history
- 5. View and Respond to Alarms. Operators shall be able to view a list of currently active system alarms, to acknowledge each alarm, and to clear (delete) unneeded alarms.
 - a. Alarms shall be routed directly from controllers to PCs and servers. It shall be possible for specific alarms from specific points to be routed to specific PCs and servers. The alarm management portion of the user interface shall, at the minimum, provide the following functions:
 - 1) Log date and time of alarm occurrence.
 - 2) Generate a "Pop-Up" window, with audible alarm, informing a user that an alarm has been received.
 - 3) Allow a user, with the appropriate security level, to acknowledge, temporarily silence, or discard an alarm.
 - 4) Provide an audit trail on hard drive for alarms by recording user acknowledgment, deletion, or disabling of an alarm. The audit trail shall include the name of the user, the alarm, the action taken on the alarm, and a time/date stamp.
 - 5) Provide the ability to direct alarms to an e-mail address or alphanumeric pager. This must be provided in addition to the pop up window described above. Systems that use e-mail and pagers as the exclusive means of annunciating alarms are not acceptable.
 - 6) Any attribute of any object in the system may be

designated to report an alarm.

- b. The BAS shall annunciate diagnostic alarms indicating system failures and non-normal operating conditions.
 - c. The BAS shall allow a minimum of 4 categories of alarm sounds customizable through user defined wav.files.
 - d. The BAS shall annunciate application alarms at minimum, as required by Part 3.
6. View and Configure Trends. Operators shall be able to view a trend graph of each trended point and to edit graph configuration to display a specific time period or data range. Operator shall be able to create custom trend graphs to display on the same page data from multiple trended points.
- a. Store trend and point history data for all analog and digital inputs and outputs, as follows:
 - 1) Any point, physical or calculated, may be designated for trending.
Two methods of collection shall be allowed:
 - a) Defined time interval
 - b) Upon a change of value
 - b. The system shall have the capability to store multiple samples for each physical point and software variable based upon available memory, including an individual sample time/date stamp. Points may be assigned to multiple history trends with different collection parameters.
 - c. Trend and change of value data shall be stored within the controller and uploaded to a dedicated trend database or exported in a selectable data format via a provided data export utility. Uploads to a dedicated database shall occur based upon one of the following: user-defined interval, manual command, or when the trend buffers are full. Exports shall be as requested by the user or on a time scheduled basis.
 - d. The system shall provide a configurable data storage subsystem for the collection of historical data. Data can be stored in SQL database format.
7. Trend data viewing and analysis
- a. Provide a trend viewing utility that shall have access to all database points.
 - b. It shall be possible to retrieve any historical database point for use in displays and reports by specifying the point name and associated trend name.
 - c. The trend viewing utility shall have the capability to define trend study displays to include multiple trends.
 - d. Displays shall be able to be single or stacked graphs with on-line selectable display characteristics, such as ranging, color, and plot style.
 - e. Display magnitude and units shall both be selectable by the

- operator at any time without reconfiguring the processing or collection of data. This is a zoom capability.
- f. Display magnitude shall automatically be scaled to show full graphic resolution of the data being displayed.
 - g. The Display shall support the user's ability to change colors, sample sizes, and types of markers.

8. Database Management

- a. Where a separate SQL database is utilized for information storage the System shall provide a Database Manager that separates the database monitoring and managing functions by supporting two separate windows.
- b. Database secure access shall be accomplished using standard SQL authentication including the ability to access data for use outside of the Building Automation application.
- c. The database managing function shall include summarized information on trend, alarm, event, and audit for the following database management actions:
 - 1) Backup
 - 2) Purge
 - 3) Restore
- d. The Database Manager shall support four tabs:
 - 1) Statistics – shall display Database Server information and Trend, Alarm (Event), and Audit information on the Databases.
 - 2) Maintenance – shall provide an easy method of purging records from the Server trend, alarm (event), and audit databases by supporting separate screens for creating a backup prior to purging, selecting the database, and allowing for the retention of a selected number of day's data.
 - 3) Backup – Shall provide the means to create a database backup file and select a storage location.
 - 4) Restore – shall provide a restricted means of restoring a database by requiring the user to log into an Expert Mode in order to view the Restore screen.
- e. The Status Bar shall appear at the bottom of all Database Manager Tabs and shall provide information on the current database activity. The following icons shall be provided:
 - 1) Ready
 - 2) Purging Record from a database
 - 3) Action Failed
 - 4) Refreshing Statistics
 - 5) Restoring database
 - 6) Shrinking a database

- 7) Backing up a database
 - 8) Resetting internet information Services
 - 9) Starting the Device Manager
 - 10) Shutting down the Device Manager
 - 11) Action successful
- f. The Database Manager monitoring functions shall be accessed through the Monitoring Settings window and shall continuously read database information once the user has logged in.
- g. The System shall provide user notification via taskbar icons and e-mail messages when a database value has exceeded a warning or alarm limit.
- h. The Monitoring Settings window shall have the following sections:
- 1) General – Shall allow the user to set and review scan intervals and start times.
 - 2) Email – Shall allow the user to create and review e-mail and phone text messages to be delivered when a Warning or Alarm is generated.
 - 3) Warning – shall allow the user to define the Warning limit parameters, set the Reminder Frequency, and link the e-mail message.
 - 4) Alarm – shall allow the user to define the Alarm limit parameters, set the Reminder Frequency, and link the e-mail message.
 - 5) Database login – Shall protect the system from unauthorized database manipulation by creating a Read Access and a Write Access for each of the Trend, Alarm (Event) and Audit databases as well as an Expert Mode required to restore a database.
- i. The Monitoring Settings Taskbar shall provide the following informational icons:
- 1) Normal – Indicates by color and size that all databases are within their limits.
 - 2) Warning - Indicates by color and size that one or more databases have exceeded their Warning limit.
 - 3) Alarm - Indicates by color and size that one or more databases have exceeded their Alarm limit.
 - 4) The System shall provide user notification via Taskbar icons and e-mail messages when a database value has exceeded a warning or alarm limit.
9. View and Configure Reports. Operators shall be able to run preconfigured reports, to view and print report results, and to customize report configuration to show data of interest.
- a. Reports and Summaries shall be generated and directed to the user interface displays, with subsequent assignment to printers, or disk. As

a minimum, the system shall provide the following reports:

- 1) All points in the BAS
 - 2) All points in each BAS application
 - 3) All points in a specific controller
 - 4) All points in a user-defined group of points
 - 5) All points currently in alarm
 - 6) All points locked out
 - 7) All user defined and adjustable variables, schedules, interlocks and the like.
- b. Summaries and Reports shall be accessible via standard UI functions and not dependent upon custom programming or user defined HTML pages.
- c. Selection of a single menu item, tool bar item, or tool bar button shall print any displayed report or summary on the system printer for use as a building management and diagnostics tool.
- d. Provide the capability to view, command and modify large quantities of similar data in tailored summaries created online without the use of a secondary application like a spreadsheet. Summary definition shall allow up to seven user defined columns describing attributes to be displayed including custom column labels. Up to 100 rows per summary shall be supported. Summary viewing shall be available over the network using a standard Web browser.
- e. Energy Reports. System shall include an easily configured energy reporting tool ("dashboard") that provides the capabilities described in this section.
- f. The energy reporting tool shall be accessible through the same user interface (Web browser or operator workstation software) as is used to manage the BAS.
- g. The energy reporting tool shall be preconfigured by the Contractor to gather and store energy demand and consumption data from each energy source that provides metered data to the BAS. Meter data shall be stored at 5 minute intervals unless otherwise specified in the Sequence of Operation provided in Appendix B. This data shall be maintained in an industry standard SQL database for a period of not less than five years.
- h. The basic dashboard graphic screen for each building shall be pre-configured by the contractor. Each building's basic dashboard graphic screen will at a minimum include the current energy use (kW, steam lbs/hr, HW gpm and Btu/hr, CHW gpm and Btu/hr and tons/hr) cumulative energy use month to date and year to date, plus local degree-day information.
- i. The energy reporting tool shall allow the operator to select an energy source and a time period of interest (day, week, month, year, or date range) and shall provide options to view the data in a table, line graph, bar graph, or pie chart. The tool shall also allow the operator to select two or more data sources and display a comparison of the energy used over this period in any of the listed graph formats, or to total the

- energy used by the selected sources and display that data in the supported formats.
- j. The energy reporting tool shall allow the operator to select an energy source and two time periods of interest (day, week, month, year, or date range) and display a graph that compares the energy use over the two time periods in any of the graph formats listed in the previous paragraph. The tool shall also allow the operator to select multiple energy sources and display a graph that compares the total energy used by these sources over the two time periods.
 - k. The energy reporting tool shall allow the operator to easily generate the previously described graphs "on the fly," and shall provide an option to store the report format so the operator can select that format to regenerate the graph at a future date. The tool shall also allow the user to schedule these reports to run on a recurring basis using relative time periods, such as automatically generating a consumption report on the first Monday of each month showing consumption over the previous month. Automatically generated reports shall be archived on the server in a common industry format such as Adobe PDF or Microsoft Excel with copies e-mailed to a user-editable list of recipients.
 - l. The energy reporting tool shall be capable of collecting and displaying data from the following types of meters:
 - 1) Electricity
 - 2) Gas
 - 3) Steam
 - 4) Chilled Water
 - 5) Hot Water
 - 6) Potable Water
 - m. Heating and cooling degree days. (May be calculated from sensor data or retrievable from a local weather station rather than metered.)
 - n. The user shall have the option of using Kw (Kwh) or Btu/hr (Btu) as the units for demand and consumption reports. Multiples of these units (MWH, kBtu, etc.) shall be used as appropriate. All selected sources shall be automatically converted to the selected units. The user shall similarly have the option of entering facility area and occupancy hours and creating reports that are normalized on an area basis, an annual use basis, or an occupied hour basis.
 - o. The user shall have the option of entering benchmark data for an individual facility or a group of facilities.
 - p. The user shall have the option of displaying any or all of the following data on any chart, line, or bar graph generated by the energy reporting tool:
 - 1) Low/High/Average value of the metered value being displayed.
 - 2) Heating and/or Cooling Degree Days for the time period(s) being displayed.
 - 3) The Environmental Index for the facilities and time periods being displayed.

- q. Custom Reports. Operator shall be able to create custom reports that retrieve data, including archived trend data, from the system, that analyze data using common algebraic calculations, and that present results in tabular or graphical format. Reports shall be launched from the operator interface.
- r. Graphics Generation. Graphically based tools and documentation shall allow Operator to edit system graphics, to create graphics, and to integrate graphics into the system. Operator shall be able to add analog and binary values, dynamic text, static text, and animation files to a background graphic using a mouse.
- s. Graphics Library. Complete library of standard HVAC equipment graphics shall include equipment such as chillers, boilers, air handlers, terminals, fan coils, and unit ventilators. Library shall include standard symbols for other equipment including fans, pumps, coils, valves, piping, dampers, and ductwork. Library graphic file format shall be compatible with graphics generation tools.
- t. Custom Application Programming. Operator shall be able to create, edit, debug, and download custom programs. System shall be fully operable while custom programs are edited, compiled, and downloaded. Programming language shall have the following features:
 - u. Language. Language shall be graphically based and shall use function blocks arranged in a logic diagram that clearly shows control logic flow. Function blocks shall directly provide functions listed below, and operators shall be able to create custom or compound function blocks.
 - v. Programming Environment. Tool shall provide a full-screen, cursor-and- mouse-driven programming environment that incorporates word processing features such as cut and paste. Operators shall be able to insert, add, modify, and delete custom programming code, and to copy blocks of code to a file library for reuse in other control programs.
 - w. Independent Program Modules. Operator shall be able to develop independently executing program modules that can disable, enable and exchange data with other program modules.
 - x. Debugging and Simulation. Operator shall be able to step through the program observing intermediate values and results. Operator shall be able to adjust input variables to simulate actual operating conditions. Operator shall be able to adjust each step's time increment to observe operation of delays, integrators, and other time-sensitive control logic. Debugger shall provide error messages for syntax and for execution errors.
 - y. Conditional Statements. Operator shall be able to program conditional logic using compound Boolean (AND, OR, and NOT) and relational (EQUAL, LESS THAN, GREATER THAN, NOT EQUAL) comparisons.
 - z. Mathematical Functions. Language shall support floating-point

addition, subtraction, multiplication, division, and square root operations, as well as absolute value calculation and programmatic selection of minimum and maximum values from a list of values.

- aa. Variables: Operator shall be able to use variable values in program conditional statements and mathematical functions.
 - bb. Time Variables. Operator shall be able to use predefined variables to represent time of day, day of the week, month of the year, and date. Other predefined variables or simple control logic shall provide elapsed time in seconds, minutes, hours, and days. Operator shall be able to start, stop, and reset elapsed time variables using the program language.
 - cc. System Variables. Operator shall be able to use predefined variables to represent status and results of Controller Software and shall be able to enable, disable, and change setpoints of Controller Software as described in Controller Software section.
- 10. Manage Control System Hardware. Operators shall be able to view controller status, to restart (reboot) each controller, and to download new control software to each controller.
 - 11. Manage Operator Access. Typically, only a few operators are authorized to manage operator access. Authorized operators shall be able to view a list of operators with system access and of functions they can perform while logged in. Operators shall be able to add operators, to delete operators, and to edit operator function authorization. Operator shall be able to authorize each operator function separately.

H. System Software.

- 1. Operating System. Web server or workstation/laptop shall have an industry-standard professional-grade operating system. Acceptable systems include Microsoft Windows XP Professional, or Windows 7.
- 2. System Graphics. Operator interface shall be graphically based and shall include at least one graphic per piece of equipment or occupied zone, graphics for each chilled water and hot water system, and graphics that summarize conditions on each floor of each building included in this contract. Indicate thermal comfort on floor plan summary graphics using dynamic colors to represent zone temperature relative to zone set point.
 - a. Functionality. Graphics shall allow operator to monitor system status, to view a summary of the most important data for each controlled zone or piece of equipment, to use point-and-click navigation between zones or equipment, and to edit set points and other specified parameters.
 - b. Animation. Graphics shall be able to animate by displaying different image files for changed object status.
 - c. Alarm Indication. Indicate areas or equipment in an alarm condition using color or other visual indicator.
 - d. Format. Graphics shall be saved in an industry-standard format such as BMP, JPEG, PNG, or GIF. Web-based system graphics shall be viewable on browsers compatible with World Wide Web Consortium browser standards. Web graphic format shall require no plug-in (such

as HTML and JavaScript) or shall only require widely available no-cost plug-ins (such as Active-X and Adobe Flash).

3. Custom Graphics. Custom graphic files shall be created with the use of a graphics generation package furnished with the system. The graphics generation package shall be a graphically based system that uses the mouse to create and modify graphics that are saved in the same formats as are used for system graphics.
4. Graphics Library. Furnish a complete library of standard HVAC equipment graphics such as chillers, boilers, air handlers, terminals, fan coils, and unit ventilators. This library also shall include standard symbols for other equipment including fans, pumps, coils, valves, piping, dampers, and ductwork. The library shall be furnished in a file format compatible with the graphics generation package program.
- I. BACnet. Web server or workstation shall have demonstrated interoperability during at least one BMA Interoperability Workshop and shall substantially conform to BACnet Operator Workstation (B-OWS) device profile as specified in ASHRAE/ANSI 135, BACnet Annex L.

2.11 CONTROLLER SOFTWARE

- A. Furnish the following applications software for building and energy management, as required by the upgrade. All software applications shall reside and operate in the system controllers. Editing of applications shall be done through the operator workstation/browser interface or at other engineering workstations.
- B. System Security
 1. User access shall be secured using individual security passwords and user names.
 2. Passwords shall restrict the user to the objects, applications, and system functions as assigned by the system manager. The system supervisor shall also have the ability to vary the functions accessible to each user depending on the equipment or geographic location, and to restrict an operator to only viewing and/or editing certain areas or pieces of equipment.
 3. User Log On/Log Off attempts shall be recorded.
 4. The system shall protect itself from unauthorized use by automatically logging off if there is a period of no activity following the last keystroke. The delay time between the last keystroke and automatic logoff shall be user-definable.
- C. Scheduling. Provide the capability to schedule each object or group of objects in the system.
Scheduling options shall include the following:
 1. Weekly Schedule. Provide separate schedules for each day of the week. Each of these schedules shall include up to five start/stop pairs. (10 events)
 2. Exception Schedules. Provide the ability for the operator to designate any day of the year as an exception schedule. Exception schedules may be defined up to a year in advance. Once an exception schedule has executed,

- it will be discarded and replaced by the standard schedule for that day of the week.
3. Holiday Schedules. Provide the capability for the operator to define up to 24 special or holiday schedules. These schedules may be placed on the scheduling calendar and will be repeated each year. The operator shall be able to define the length of each holiday period.
 4. Global Schedules. Provide the capability for the operator to change all system schedules within a building with a single command from the building graphics screen, or change all schedules individually.
- D. System Coordination. Provide a standard application for the proper coordination of equipment. This application shall provide the operator with a method of grouping together equipment based on function and location. This group may then be used for scheduling and other applications.
- E. Binary Alarms. Each binary input and binary value object shall be capable of generating an alarm based on an operator-specified state. Provide the capability to enable or disable this alarm. The system shall be delivered with alarms enabled as listed in the Sequence of Operations.
- F. Analog Alarms. Each analog object shall be capable of generating an alarm based on an operator-specified high and low alarm limit. . Provide the capability to enable or disable this alarm. The system shall be delivered with alarms enabled as listed in the sequence of operation.
- G. Alarm Reporting. The operator shall be able to configure the actions the system will take when an alarm is received.
- H. Remote Communication. The system shall have the ability to automatically contact an operator workstation or server when a critical alarm is received, using either a network connection or, if no network connection is available, a dial out connection over a modem.
- I. Demand Limiting.
1. The system shall be capable of monitoring power consumption from signals generated by a pulse generator mounted at the building power meter or from a watt transducer or current transformer attached to the building feeder lines.
 2. If the power consumption exceeds operator definable levels, the system shall be capable of automatically adjusting setpoints, de-energizing low priority equipment, and taking other pre-programmed actions as described in the specification section Sequence of Operations to reduce demand. As the demand drops below the operator defined levels, action will be taken to restore loads in a predetermined manner.
- J. Maintenance Management. The system shall be able to monitor equipment status and generate maintenance alarms based upon user-designated run-time, starts, or performance limits. The system shall be configured to deliver maintenance alarms based upon the sequences of operation.

- K. Sequencing. Provide application software based upon the sequences of operation specified to properly sequence all specified equipment.
- L. PID Control. A PID (proportional-integral-derivative) algorithm with direct or reverse action and anti-windup shall be supplied. The algorithm shall calculate a time-varying analog value that is used to position an output or stage a series of outputs. The controlled variable, set point, and PID gains shall be user-selectable.
- M. Staggered Start. This application shall prevent all controlled equipment from simultaneously restarting after a power outage or when switching from unoccupied to occupied mode. The order in which equipment (or groups of equipment) is started, along with the time delay between starts, shall be user-selectable.
- N. Energy Calculations.
 - 1. Provide software to allow instantaneous power (e.g., kW) or flow rates (e.g., gpm) to be accumulated and converted to energy usage data.
 - 2. Provide an algorithm that calculates a sliding window average (e.g., rolling average).
The algorithm shall be flexible to allow window intervals to be user specified (e.g., 15 minutes, 30 minutes, 60 minutes).
 - 3. Provide an algorithm that calculates a fixed-window average. A digital input signal will define the start of the window period (e.g., signal from utility meter) to synchronize the fixed-window average with that used by the utility.
- O. Anti-Short Cycling. All binary output objects shall be protected from short cycling. This feature shall allow minimum on-time and off-time to be selected.
- P. On/Off Control with Differential. Provide an algorithm that allows a binary output to be cycled based on a controlled variable and set point. The algorithm shall be direct-acting or reverse-acting and incorporate an adjustable differential.
- Q. Run-Time Totalization. Provide software that can totalize run-times for any binary input or object. A high runtime alarm shall be assigned, if required, by the operator. The system shall be delivered with run time totalization and alarms configured as specified in the Sequence of Operations.

2.12 BUILDING CONTROLLERS

- A. General. Provide Building Controllers (BC), Advanced Application Controllers (AAC), Application Specific Controllers (ASC), Smart Actuators (SA), and Smart Sensors (SS) as required to achieve performance specified in Section 230900 article System Performance. Every device in the system which executes control logic and directly controls HVAC equipment must conform to a standard BACnet Device profile as specified in ANSI/ASHRAE 135, BACnet Annex L. Unless otherwise specified, hardwired actuators and sensors may be used in lieu of BACnet Smart Actuators and Smart Sensors.
- B. BACnet.

1. Building Controllers (BCs). Each BC shall conform to BACnet Building Controller (B-BC) device profile as specified in ANSI/ASHRAE 135, BACnet Annex L and shall be listed as a certified B-BC in the BACnet Testing Laboratories (BTL) Product Listing.
2. Advanced Application Controllers (AACs). Each AAC shall conform to BACnet Advanced Application Controller (B-AAC) device profile as specified in ANSI/ASHRAE 135, BACnet Annex L and shall be listed as a certified B-AAC in the BACnet Testing Laboratories (BTL) Product Listing.
3. Application Specific Controllers (ASCs). Each ASC shall conform to BACnet Application Specific Controller (B-ASC) device profile as specified in ANSI/ASHRAE 135, BACnet Annex L and shall be listed as a certified B-ASC in the BACnet Testing Laboratories (BTL) Product Listing.
4. Smart Actuators (SAs). Each SA shall conform to BACnet Smart Actuator (B-SA) device profile as specified in ANSI/ASHRAE 135, BACnet Annex L and shall be listed as a certified B-SA in the BACnet Testing Laboratories (BTL) Product Listing.
5. Smart Sensors (SSs). Each SS shall conform to BACnet Smart Sensor (B-SS) device profile as specified in ANSI/ASHRAE 135, BACnet Annex L and shall be listed as a certified B-SS in the BACnet Testing Laboratories (BTL) Product Listing.
6. BACnet Communication.
 - a. Each BC shall reside on or be connected to a BACnet network using ISO 8802-3 (Ethernet) Data Link/Physical layer protocol and BACnet/IP addressing.
 - b. BACnet routing shall be performed by BCs or other BACnet device routers as necessary to connect BCs to networks of AACs and ASCs.
 - c. Each AAC shall reside on a BACnet network using ISO 8802-3 (Ethernet) Data Link/Physical layer protocol with BACnet/IP addressing, or it shall reside on a BACnet network using the ARCNET or MS/TP Data Link/Physical layer protocol.
 - d. Each ASC shall reside on a BACnet network using the ARCNET or MS/TP Data Link/Physical layer protocol.
 - e. Each SA shall reside on a BACnet network using the ARCNET or MS/TP Data Link/Physical layer protocol.
 - f. Each SS shall reside on a BACnet network using ISO 8802-3 (Ethernet) Data Link/Physical layer protocol with BACnet/IP addressing, or it shall reside on a BACnet network using ARCNET or MS/TP Data Link/Physical layer protocol.

C. Communication.

1. Service Port. Each controller shall provide a service communication port for connection to a Portable Operator's Terminal. Connection shall be extended to space temperature sensor ports where shown on drawings.
 2. Signal Management. BC and ASC operating systems shall manage input and output communication signals to allow distributed controllers to share real and virtual object information and to allow for central monitoring and alarms.
 3. Data Sharing. Each BC and AAC shall share data as required with each networked BC and AAC.
 4. Stand-Alone Operation. Each piece of equipment specified in Section 230900 Appendix A shall be controlled by a single controller to provide stand-alone control in the event of communication failure. All I/O points specified for a piece of equipment shall be integral to its controller. Provide stable and reliable stand-alone control using default values or other method for values normally read over the network.
- D. Environment. Controller hardware shall be suitable for the anticipated ambient conditions.
1. Controllers used outdoors and/or in wet ambient conditions shall be mounted within waterproof enclosures and shall be rated for operation at -29°C to 60°C (-20°F to 140°F).
 2. Controllers used in conditioned space shall be mounted in dust-protective enclosures and shall be rated for operation at 0°C to 50°C (32°F to 120°F).
- E. Keypad. A local keypad and display or a connection for a portable operator terminal shall be provided for each controller. The keypad shall be provided for interrogating and editing data. An optional system security password shall be available to prevent unauthorized use of the keypad and display. If the manufacturer does not provide this keypad and display, provide a portable operator terminal.
- F. Real-Time Clock. Controllers that perform scheduling shall have a real-time clock.
- G. Serviceability.
1. Provide diagnostic LEDs for power, communication, and processor.
 2. All wiring connections shall be made to field-removable, modular terminal strips or to a termination card connected by a ribbon cable.
 3. Each BC and AAC shall continually check its processor and memory circuit status and shall generate an alarm on abnormal operation. System shall continuously check controller network and generate alarm for each controller that fails to respond.
- H. Memory.
1. The building controller shall maintain all BIOS and programming information in the event of a power loss for at least 72 hours.

2. Each BC and AAC shall retain BIOS and application programming for at least 72 hours in the event of power loss.
3. Each ASC and SA shall use nonvolatile memory and shall retain BIOS and application programming in the event of power loss. System shall automatically download dynamic control parameters following power loss.
- I. Immunity to power and noise. Controller shall be able to operate at 90% to 110% of nominal voltage rating and shall perform an orderly shutdown below 80% nominal voltage. Operation shall be protected against electrical noise of 5 to 120 Hz and from keyed radios up to 5 W at 3 ft.
- J. Transformer. ASC power supply shall be fused or current limiting and shall be rated at a minimum of 125% of ASC power consumption.
- K. Spare parts: provide a quantity of spare network, supervisory, field and equipment controllers equal to 5% of the total installed quantity of each unique model, but no less than two spares.

2.13 INPUT/OUTPUT INTERFACE

- A. Hardwired inputs and outputs may tie into the system through building controllers, advanced application controllers, application specific controllers, or smart actuators.
- B. All input points and output points shall be protected such that shorting of the point to itself, to another point, or to ground will cause no damage to the controller. All input and output points shall be protected from voltage up to 24 V of any duration, such that contact with this voltage will cause no damage to the controller.
- C. Binary inputs shall allow the monitoring of On/Off signals from remote devices. The binary inputs shall provide a wetting current of at least 12 mA to be compatible with commonly available control devices and shall be protected against the effects of contact bounce and noise. Binary inputs shall sense "dry contact" closure without external power (other than that provided by the controller) being applied.
- D. Pulse accumulation input objects. This type of object shall conform to all the requirements of binary input objects and also accept up to 10 pulses per second for pulse accumulation.
- E. Analog inputs shall allow the monitoring of low-voltage (0 to 10 VDC), current (4 to 20 mA), or resistance signals (thermistor). Analog inputs shall be compatible with - and field configurable to - commonly available sensing devices.
- F. Binary outputs shall provide for On/Off operation or a pulsed low-voltage signal for pulse width modulation control. Binary outputs on building controllers shall have three-position (On/Off/Auto) override switches and status lights. Outputs shall be selectable for either normally open or normally closed operation.
- G. Analog outputs shall provide a modulating signal for the control of end devices. Outputs shall provide either a 0 to 10 VDC or a 4 to 20 mA signal as required to provide proper control of the output device. Analog outputs on building controllers

shall have status lights and a two position (AUTO/MANUAL) switch and manually adjustable potentiometer for manual override. Analog outputs shall not exhibit a drift of greater than 0.4% of range per year.

- H. Tri-State Outputs. Provide tri-state outputs (two coordinated binary outputs) for control of three point floating type electronic actuators without feedback. Use of three-point floating devices shall be limited to zone control and terminal unit control applications (VAV terminal units, duct-mounted heating coils, zone dampers, radiation, etc.).
- I. Input/Output points may be of a universal type, i.e., controller input or output may be designated (in software) as either a binary or analog type point with appropriate properties. Application specific controllers are exempted from this requirement.
- J. System Object Capacity. The system size shall be expandable to at least 120% of the number of input/ output objects required for this project. Additional controllers (along with associated devices and wiring) shall be all that is necessary to achieve this capacity requirement. The operator interfaces installed for this project shall not require any hardware additions software revisions in order to expand the system.

2.14 POWER SUPPLIES AND LINE FILTERING

- A. Contractor shall provide all necessary power to all controls components, including but not limited to power distribution panel circuit breakers, conduit, line and low-voltage wiring, and transformers. Provide dedicated circuits from existing 120V distribution panels.
- B. Control transformers shall be UL listed. Furnish Class 2 current-limiting type or furnish over- current protection in both primary and secondary circuits for Class 2 service in accordance with NEC requirements. Limit connected loads to 80% of rated capacity.
 - 1. DC power supply output shall match output current and voltage requirements. Unit shall be full-wave rectifier type with output ripple of 5.0 mV maximum peak-to-peak. Regulation shall be 1.0% line and load combined, with 100-microsecond response time for 50% load changes. Unit shall have built-in over-voltage and over-current protection and shall be able to withstand a 150% current overload for at least three seconds without trip-out or failure.
 - a. Unit shall operate between 32°F and 120°F. EM/RF shall meet FCC Class B and VDE 0871 for Class B and MILSTD 810C for shock and vibration.
 - b. Line voltage units shall be UL recognized and CSA approved.
- C. Power line filtering.
 - 1. Provide transient voltage and surge suppression for all workstations and controllers either internally or as an external component. Surge protection shall have the following at a minimum:
 - a. Dielectric strength of 1000 volts minimum

- b. Response time of 10 nanoseconds or less
 - c. Transverse mode noise attenuation of 65 dB or greater
 - d. Common mode noise attenuation of 150 dB or better at 40 Hz to 100 Hz
- D. Spare parts: provide one of each unique model of spare power supplies.

2.15 AUXILIARY CONTROL DEVICES

- A. Motorized control dampers, unless otherwise specified elsewhere, shall be as follows:
- 1. Control dampers shall be the parallel or opposed blade type as below or as scheduled on drawings.
 - a. Outdoor and/or return air mixing dampers and face and bypass (F&BP) dampers shall be parallel blade, arranged to direct airstreams toward each other.
 - b. Other modulating dampers shall be the opposed blade type.
 - c. Two-position shutoff dampers may be parallel or opposed blade type with blade and side seals.
 - 2. Damper frames shall be 12 gauge galvanized steel channel or 1/8 in. extruded aluminum with reinforced corner bracing.
 - 3. Damper blades shall not exceed 8 in. in width or 48 in. length. Blades are to be suitable for medium velocity performance (2000 fpm). Blades shall be not less than 16 gauge.
 - 4. Damper shaft end shall be slotted to indicate position of damper blades.
 - 5. Damper shaft bearings shall be as recommended by manufacturer for application, oil impregnated sintered bronze or better.
 - 6. All blade edges and top and bottom of the frame shall be provided with replaceable butyl rubber or neoprene seals. Side seals shall be spring-loaded stainless steel. The blade seals shall provide for a maximum leakage rate of 10 cfm per ft² at 4 in. w.g. differential pressure. Provide air foil blades suitable for a wide-open face velocity of 1500 fpm. Outside air dampers shall have a wide-open face velocity of 500 fpm.
 - 7. Individual damper sections shall not be larger than 48 in. x 60 in. Provide a minimum of one damper actuator per section. Damper sections shall be sized based on actuator manufacturer's recommendations for face velocity, differential pressure and damper type.
 - 8. Modulating dampers shall provide a linear flow characteristic where possible. Dampers shall have exposed linkages.
- B. Electric Damper and Valve Actuators.

1. Manufacturers: Belimo or approve equal.
2. Stall Protection. Mechanical or electronic stall protection shall prevent actuator damage throughout the actuator's rotation.
3. Spring-return Mechanism. Actuators used for power-failure and safety applications shall have an internal mechanical spring-return mechanism or an uninterruptible power supply (UPS).
4. Signal and Range. Proportional actuators shall accept a 2-10 Vdc or a 4-20 mA control signal and shall have a 2-10 Vdc or 4-20 mA operating range. (Floating motor actuators may be substituted for proportional actuators in terminal unit applications as described in paragraph 2.6H.) The actuator shall provide a clamp position feedback signal of 2-10 VDC. The feedback signal shall be independent of the input signal and may be used to parallel other actuators and provide true position indication. The feedback signal of one damper actuator for each separately controlled damper shall be wired back to a terminal strip in the control panel for trouble- shooting purposes. The feedback signal of each valve actuator (except terminal valves) shall be wired back to a terminal strip in the control panel for trouble- shooting purposes.
5. Wiring. 24 Vac and 24 Vdc actuators shall operate on Class 2 wiring.
6. Manual Positioning. Operators shall be able to manually position each actuator when
the actuator is not powered. Non-spring-return actuators shall have an external manual gear release. Spring-return actuators with more than 7 N·m (60 in.-lb) torque capacity shall have a manual crank.
7. Visual position indication. Face of the actuator shall provide clear visual indication of the actuator position, from fully closed to fully open. Open and closed positions shall be labeled as such.
8. Dampers incorporating multiple sections shall be controlled in unison. Where more than one actuator serves a damper then the actuator shall be driven in unison and the control wiring shall be provided accordingly.
9. Where practical, actuators shall be factory-mounted by the damper manufacturer.
10. Dampers incorporating multiple sections shall be designed in such a way that the actuators are easily accessible. Under no circumstance shall it be necessary to remove damper sections or structural or other fixtures to remove the damper actuator. Mechanical Contractor shall provide access doors wherever necessary to meet this requirement.
11. Spare parts: provide a quantity of spare actuators equal to 5% of the total installed quantity of each unique model, but no less than two spares.

C. Pneumatic Damper and Valve Actuators and Positioners.

1. Type. Pneumatic actuators shall be piston-rolling diaphragm type or diaphragm type.
Diaphragm shall be easily replaceable, beaded, molded neoprene.
2. Housing. Actuator housings shall be molded or die-cast zinc or aluminum.
Exception: Actuator housings for terminal unit zone control dampers or valves may be of high- impact plastic construction with a minimum ambient temperature rating of 10°C- 60°C (50°F-140°F). Isolate plastic devices from return air plenums in an auxiliary metal enclosure with a quick-opening access panel.
3. Selection. Size actuators and select spring ranges suitable for intended application and in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.
 - a. Actuators shall have sufficient reserve power to operate related control damper or valve with smooth modulating or two-position action.
 - b. Actuators shall have proper response speed at design velocity and pressure.
 - c. Actuators shall be rated for a minimum 140 kPa (20 psig).
 - d. Actuator close-off force shall effectively seal damper or valve at maximum design system pressure. At design flow and pressure actuator shall modulate smoothly.
 - e. For sequencing applications, size valve and damper actuators for a maximum of 14 kPa (2 psi) shift in nominal spring range. Select spring ranges to prevent overlap or provide positive positioners.
4. Positive Positioners. Provide positive positioners on actuators as required to provide smooth modulation or proper sequencing.
 - a. Positive positioners shall be high-capacity force balance relay type with suitable mounting provisions and shall have a position feedback linkage tailored for its actuator.
 - b. Positive positioners shall use full control air pressure at any point in stem travel to initiate stem movement or to maintain stem position. Positioners shall operate on a 20-100 kPa (3-15 psig) input signal unless otherwise required to satisfy specified sequences of operation.
 - c. Positive positioners shall have the following performance characteristics.
 - 1) Linearity: $\pm 10\%$ of output signal span.
 - 2) Hysteresis: 3% of span.
 - 3) Response: 1.7 kPa ($\frac{1}{4}$ psig) input change.

- 4) Maximum Pilot Signal Pressure: 140 kPa (20 psig).
- 5) Maximum Control Air Supply Pressure: 420 kPa (60 psig).

D. Control valves.

- 1. Provide automatic control valves suitable for the specified controlled media. Provide valves that mate and match the material of the connected piping. Equip control valves with the actuators of required input power type and control signal type to accurately position the flow control element and provide sufficient force to achieve required leakage specification. Actuators for normally closed/normally open applications shall be spring return.
- 2. Control valves shall meet the heating and cooling loads specified, and close off against the differential pressure conditions within the application. Valves shall be sized to operate accurately and with stability from 10 to 100% of the maximum design flow. Calculate C_v and select valve with closest C_v above required. Coordinate with mechanical contractor so that necessary reducing fittings are installed. Trim material shall be stainless steel for steam and high differential pressure applications. Electric actuation should be provided on all terminal unit reheat applications.
- 3. Control valves shall be two-way or three-way type for two-position or modulating service as shown on the schematic diagrams.
- 4. Body Pressure Class: minimum ANSI 125 psi (600 psi for ball valves).
- 5. Close-off (differential) Pressure Rating: Valve actuator and trim shall be furnished to provide the following minimum close-off pressure ratings:
 - a. Water Valves:
 - 1) Two-way: 150% of total system (pump) head.
 - 2) Three-way: 300% of pressure differential between ports A and B at design flow or 100% of total system (pump) head.
 - b. Steam Valves: 150% of operating (inlet) pressure, minimum 100 psi.
- 6. Water Valves:
 - a. Acceptable Manufacturers:
 - 1) Honeywell
 - 2) Johnson Controls
 - 3) Delta Controls
 - 4) Dodge Engineering and Controls
 - 5) Approved equal

- b. Body and trim style and materials shall be in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations for design conditions and service shown, with equal percentage ports for modulating service.
- c. Sizing Criteria:
 - 1) Two-position service: Line size.
 - 2) Two-way modulating service: Pressure drop shall be equal to twice the pressure drop through heat exchanger (load), 50% of the pressure difference between supply and return mains, or 5 psi, whichever is greater.
 - 3) Three-way modulating service: Pressure drop equal to twice the pressure drop through the coil exchanger (load), 5 psi maximum.
 - 4) Valves ½ in. through 2 in. shall be bronze body or cast brass ANSI Class 250, spring-loaded, PTFE packing, quick opening for two-position service. Two-way valves to have replaceable composition disc or stainless steel ball.
 - 5) Valves 2½ in. and larger shall be cast iron ANSI Class 125 with guided plug and PTFE packing.
- d. Water valves shall fail normally open or closed, as scheduled on plans, or as follows:
 - 1) Water zone valves - normally open preferred.
 - 2) Heating coils in air handlers - normally open.
 - 3) Chilled water control valves - normally closed.
 - 4) Other applications - as scheduled or as required by sequences of operation.
- e. Spare parts: provide a quantity of spare, common valve parts equal to 5% of the total installed quantity of each unique model in sizes 1" and less, but no less than two spares. No spares are required for valve sizes greater than 1".

E. Binary Temperature Devices

- 1. Low-voltage space thermostat shall be 24 V, bimetal-operated, with either adjustable or fixed anticipation heater, concealed setpoint adjustment, 55°F to 85°F set point range, 2°F maximum differential, and vented ABS plastic cover.
- 2. Line-voltage space thermostat shall be bimetal-actuated, open contact type, or bellows- actuated, enclosed, snap-switch type or equivalent solid-state type, with heat anticipator, UL listed for electrical rating, concealed setpoint adjustment, 55°F to 85°F setpoint range, 2°F maximum differential, and

vented ABS plastic cover.

3. Low-limit thermostats. Low-limit airstream thermostats shall be UL listed, vapor pressure type, with an element of 20 ft minimum length. Element shall respond to the lowest temperature sensed by any 1 ft section. The low-limit thermostat shall be manual reset only.

F. Temperature sensors.

1. All temperature sensors shall be precision thermistors accurate to $\pm 1^{\circ}\text{F}$ over a range of -30 to 230°F . Space temperature sensors shall be accurate to $\pm 0.5^{\circ}\text{F}$ over a range of 40 to 100°F .
2. Standard, wired space sensors shall be sensor only, or equipped with set point adjustment, and/or 4-hour (adj) override push-button (only where indicated on the drawings and points lists), display, and/or communication port as shown. Sensors shall be available in an off-white enclosure for mounting on a standard electrical box or surface mounted box.
 - a. Where manual overrides are required, the sensor housing shall feature both an optional sliding mechanism for adjusting the space temperature setpoint, as well as a push button for selecting after hours operation.
 - b. Where a local display is specified, the sensor shall incorporate either an LED or LCD display for viewing the space temperature, setpoint and other operator selectable parameters. Using built-in buttons, operators shall be able to adjust setpoints directly from the sensor.
3. Wireless space sensors shall be sensor only, or equipped with set point adjustment, and/or 4-hour (adj) override push-button (only where indicated on the drawings and points lists), display, and/or communication port as shown. Sensors shall be available in an off-white enclosure for surface mounting.
 - a. Battery life shall be a minimum of five years.
 - b. Where manual overrides are required, the sensor housing shall feature both an optional sliding mechanism for adjusting the space temperature setpoint, as well as a push button for selecting after hours operation.
 - c. Where a local display is specified, the sensor shall incorporate either an LED or LCD display for viewing the space temperature, setpoint and other operator selectable parameters. Using built-in buttons, operators shall be able to adjust setpoints directly from the sensor.
 - d. Contractor shall provide required transceivers/routers and antennae necessary for adequate sensor communication with the BAS. Provide power to equipment as required.
4. Humidity sensors.

- a. Duct and room sensors shall have a sensing range of 20%–80%.
 - b. Duct sensors shall have a sampling chamber.
 - c. Outdoor air humidity sensors shall have a sensing range of 20%–95% RH and shall be suitable for ambient conditions of -40°C–75°C (-40°F–170°F).
 - d. Humidity sensors shall not drift more than 1% of full scale annually.
5. Duct temperature sensors shall be single point or averaging as shown. Sensors shall incorporate a thermistor bead embedded at the tip of a stainless steel tube. Probe style duct sensors are useable in air-handling applications where the coil or duct area is less than 14 square feet. Averaging sensors shall be employed in ducts which are larger than 14 square feet. The average sensor tube must contain at least one thermistor for every 3 feet, with a minimum tube length of 12 feet.
6. Immersion sensors shall be provided with a separable brass or stainless steel well if existing well cannot be used. Pressure rating of well is to be consistent with the system pressure in which it is to be installed. The well must withstand the flow velocities in the pipe. Sensors shall be employed for measurement of temperature in all chilled and hot water applications as well as refrigerant applications. Thermal well shall be brass or stainless steel for non-corrosive fluids below 250 °F and 300 series stainless steel for all other applications.
7. Provide matched temperature sensors for differential temperature measurement.
8. A pneumatic signal shall not be allowed for sensing temperature.
9. Spare parts: provide a quantity of space temperature sensors equal to 2% of the total installed quantity of each unique model, but no less than two spares.
- G. Pressure Sensors
 1. Air pressure measurements in the range of 0 to 10" water column will be accurate to +/- 1% of full scale using a solid state, glass-on-silicon sensing element. Acceptable manufacturers include Modus Instruments and Mamac.
 2. Operating range of measured variable shall be from 10% to 50% of instrument's full scale.
 3. Differential pressure measurements of liquids or gases shall be accurate to +/- 0.5% of the range. The housing shall be NEMA 4 rated.
- H. Current and KW Sensors/Transducers
 1. Current status sensors shall be used to monitor fans, pumps, motors and electrical loads. Current switches shall be available in solid and split core

models, and offer either a digital or an analog signal to the automation system. Acceptable manufacturer is Veris or approved equal.

2. Measurement of three phase power shall be accomplished with a kW/kWH transducer. This device shall utilize direct current transformer inputs to calculate the instantaneous value (kW) and a pulsed output proportional to the energy usage (kWH).

I. Flow switches.

1. Flow-proving switches shall be either paddle or differential pressure type, as shown.
2. Paddle type switches (water service only) shall be UL listed, SPDT snap-acting with pilot duty rating (125 VA minimum) and shall have adjustable sensitivity with NEMA 1 enclosure unless otherwise specified.
3. Differential pressure type switches (air or water service) shall be UL listed, SPDT snap acting, pilot duty rated (125 VA minimum), NEMA 1 enclosure, with scale range and differential suitable for intended application or as specified.

J. Relays.

1. Control relays shall be UL listed plug-in type with dust cover and LED "energized" indicator. Contact rating, configuration, and coil voltage shall be suitable for application.
2. Time delay relays shall be UL listed solid-state plug-in type with adjustable time delay. Delay shall be adjustable $\pm 200\%$ (minimum) from set point shown on plans. Contact rating, configuration, and coil voltage shall be suitable for application. Provide NEMA 1 enclosure when not installed in local control panel.
3. Spare parts: provide a quantity of spare relays equal to 5% of the total installed quantity of each unique model, but no less than two spares

K. Override timers.

1. Unless implemented in control software, override timers shall be spring-wound line voltage, UL Listed, with contact rating and configuration as required by application. Provide 0-to-6-hour calibrated dial unless otherwise specified. Timer shall be suitable for flush mounting on control panel face and located on local control panels or where shown.

L. Current transmitters.

1. AC current transmitters shall be the self-powered, combination split-core current transformer type with built-in rectifier and high-gain servo amplifier with 4 to 20 mA two-wire output. Unit ranges shall be 10 A, 20 A, 50 A, 100 A, 150 A, and 200 A full scale, with internal zero and span adjustment and $\pm 1\%$ full-scale accuracy at 500 ohm maximum burden.

2. Transmitter shall meet or exceed ANSI/ISA S50.1 requirements and shall be UL/CSA Recognized.
 3. Unit shall be split-core type for clamp-on installation on existing wiring.
- M. Current transformers.
1. AC current transformers shall be UL/CSA Recognized and completely encased (except for terminals) in approved plastic material.
 2. Transformers shall be available in various current ratios and shall be selected for $\pm 1\%$ accuracy at 5 A full-scale output.
 3. Transformers shall be fixed-core or split-core type for installation on new or existing wiring, respectively.
- N. Voltage transmitters.
1. AC voltage transmitters shall be self-powered single-loop (two-wire) type, 4 to 20 mA output with zero and span adjustment.
 2. Ranges shall include 100 to 130 VAC, 200 to 250 VAC, 250 to 330 VAC, and 400 to 600 VAC full-scale, adjustable, with $\pm 1\%$ full-scale accuracy with 500 ohm maximum burden.
 3. Transmitters shall be UL/CSA Recognized at 600 VAC rating and meet or exceed ANSI/ISA S50.1 requirements.
- O. Voltage transformers.
1. AC voltage transformers shall be UL/CSA Recognized, 600 VAC rated, complete with built-in fuse protection.
 2. Transformers shall be suitable for ambient temperatures of 4°C to 55°C (40°F to 130°F) and shall provide $\pm 0.5\%$ accuracy at 24 VAC and a 5 VA load.
 3. Windings (except for terminals) shall be completely enclosed with metal or plastic material.
- P. Power monitors.
1. Power monitors shall be the three-phase type furnished with three-phase disconnect/shorting switch assembly, UL Listed voltage transformers, and UL Listed split-core current transformers.
 2. Power monitors shall provide a selectable rate pulse output for kWh reading and a 4 to 20 mA output for kW reading. They shall operate with 5 A current inputs with a maximum error of $\pm 2\%$ at 1.0 power factor or $\pm 2.5\%$ at 0.5 power factor.
- Q. Current switches

1. Current-operated switches shall be self-powered, solid-state with adjustable trip current. The switches shall be selected to match the current of the application and output requirements of the DDC system.
- R. Pressure transducers.
1. Transducer shall have linear output signal. Zero and span shall be field adjustable.
 2. Transducer sensing elements shall withstand continuous operating conditions of positive or negative pressure 50% greater than calibrated span without damage.
 3. Water pressure transducer shall have stainless steel diaphragm construction, proof pressure of 150 psi minimum. Transducer shall be complete with 4 to 20 mA output, required mounting brackets, and block and bleed valves.
 4. Water differential pressure transducer shall have stainless steel diaphragm construction, proof pressure of 150 psi minimum. Over-range limit (differential pressure) and maximum static pressure shall be 300 psi. Transducer shall be complete with 4 to 20 mA output, required mounting brackets, and five valve manifold.
 5. Spare parts: provide a quantity of spare transducers equal to 5% of the total installed quantity of each unique model, but no less than two spares.
- S. Differential pressure type switches (air or water service) shall be UL listed, SPDT snap-acting, pilot duty rated (125 VA minimum), NEMA 1 enclosure, with scale range and differential suitable for intended application or as shown.
- T. Pressure-Electric (PE) Switches.
1. Shall be metal or neoprene diaphragm actuated, operating pressure rated for 0–175 kPa (0–25 psig), with calibrated scale minimum setpoint range of 14–125 kPa (2–18 psig) minimum, UL listed.
 2. Provide one- or two-stage switch action (SPDT, DPST, or DPDT) as required by application. Electrically rated for pilot duty service (125 VA minimum) and/or for motor control.
 3. Switches shall be open type (panel-mounted) or enclosed type for remote installation.
Enclosed type shall be NEMA 1 unless otherwise specified.
 4. Each pneumatic signal line to PE switches shall have permanent indicating gauge.
- U. Electro-Pneumatic (E/P) Transducers.
1. E/P transducers shall proportionally convert a 4–20 mA or 0–10 Vdc analog control input to a 20–100 kPa (3–15 psig) output signal.
 2. E/P transducers shall have the following features:
 - a. Separate span and zero adjustments.
 - b. Manual output adjustments.
 - c. Pressure gauge assembly.
 - d. Feedback loop control.

- e. Mid-range air consumption of 0.05 L/s (0.1 scfm).

V. Local control panels.

1. Existing panels may be re-used if adequate for the services to be provided. It will be the Contractor's responsibility to make this determination. No additional charges may be made if, during installation, existing panels are inadequate.
2. All new indoor control cabinets shall be fully enclosed NEMA 1 construction with (hinged door) key-lock latch and removable subpanels. A single key shall be common to all field panels and subpanels.
3. Interconnections between internal and face mounted devices shall be prewired with color coded stranded conductors neatly installed. Terminals for field connections shall be UL listed for 600 volt service, individually identified per control/ interlock drawings, with adequate clearance for field wiring. Control terminations for field connection shall be individually identified per control drawings.
4. All I/O connections on the DDC controller shall be provide via removable or fixed screw terminals.
5. Low and line voltage wiring shall be segregated. All wiring shall be neatly installed in plastic trays or tie-wrapped.
6. A 120 volt convenience outlet, fused on/off power switch, and required transformers shall be provided in each enclosure.
7. Provide ON/OFF power switch with overcurrent protection for control power sources to each local panel.

2.16 WIRING AND RACEWAYS

- A. General: Provide copper power wiring, plenum cable, and raceways as specified in the applicable sections of this specification. The Contractor shall be responsible for providing all permanent power supplies to his equipment. Power shall be obtained from the nearest code- complying source.
- B. All insulated wire to be copper conductors, UL labeled for 90°C minimum service.

2.17 FIBER OPTIC CABLE SYSTEM

- C. Optical cable: Optical cables shall be duplex 900 mm tight-buffer construction designed for intra-building environments. The sheath shall be UL Listed OFNP in accordance with NEC Article 770. The optical fiber shall meet the requirements of FDDI, ANSI X3T9.5 PMD for 62.5/125mm.
- D. Connectors: All optical fibers shall be field-terminated with ST type connectors. Connectors shall have ceramic ferrules and metal bayonet latching bodies.

PART 3.00 - EXECUTION

3.2 EXAMINATION

- A. The project plans shall be thoroughly examined for control device and equipment locations.
Any discrepancies, conflicts, or omissions shall be reported to the Engineer for resolution before rough-in work is started.
- B. The Contractor shall inspect the site to verify that equipment may be installed as shown. Any discrepancies, conflicts, or omissions shall be reported to the Engineer for resolution before rough-in work is started.
- C. The Contractor shall examine the drawings and specifications for other parts of the work. If head room or space conditions appear inadequate - or if any discrepancies occur between the plans and the contractor's work and the plans and the work of others - the contractor shall report these discrepancies to the Engineer and shall obtain written instructions for any changes necessary to accommodate the contractor's work with the work of others. Any changes in the work covered by this specification made necessary by the failure or neglect of the contractor to report such discrepancies shall be made by - and at the expense of - this contractor.

3.3 PROTECTION

- A. The Contractor shall protect all work and material from damage by his/her work or employees and shall be liable for all damage thus caused.
- B. The Contractor shall be responsible for his/her work and equipment until finally inspected, tested, and accepted. The Contractor shall protect any material that is not immediately installed. The Contractor shall close all open ends of work with temporary covers or plugs during storage and construction to prevent entry of foreign objects.

3.4 COORDINATION

- A. Site
 - 1. Where the mechanical work will be installed in close proximity to, or will interfere with, work of other trades or other projects, the Contractor shall assist in working out space conditions to make a satisfactory adjustment. If the Contractor installs his/her work before coordinating with other trades, so as to cause any interference with work of other trades, the Contractor shall make the necessary changes in his/her work to correct the condition without extra charge.
 - 2. Coordinate and schedule work with all other work in the same area, or with work that is dependent upon other work, to facilitate mutual progress.
- B. Submittals. Refer to the "Submittals" article in Part 1 of this specification for requirements.
- C. Test and Balance
 - 1. The Contractor shall furnish to the Test and Balance Contractor a single set of all tools necessary to interface to the control system for test and balance purposes.
 - 2. The Contractor shall provide training to the Test and Balance Contractor in

the use of these tools. This training will be planned for a minimum of 4 hours.

3. In addition, the contractor shall provide a qualified technician to assist in the test and balance process, until the first 20 terminal units are balanced.
4. The tools used during the test and balance process by the Test and Balance Contractor will be returned in good working condition at the completion of the testing and balancing.

D. Life Safety

1. Existing duct smoke detectors required for air handler shutdown shall be reused and the existing connections to the FACP shall be retained. The contractor shall maintain smoke detector interlocks to air handlers for shutdown as described in the sequences of operation.
2. Coordinate with electrical contractor on installation of new VSDs to ensure functionality of smoke detector and FACP is not compromised.

E. Coordination with Other Controls. Integrate with and coordinate controls and control devices furnished or installed by others as follows.

1. Communication media and equipment shall be provided as specified in Section Communication.
2. Each supplier of a controls product shall configure, program, start up, and test that product to meet the sequences of operation regardless of where within the contract documents those products are described.
3. Coordinate and resolve incompatibility issues that arise between control products provided under this section and those provided under other sections or divisions of this specification.
4. Controls Contractor shall be responsible for integration of control products provided by multiple suppliers regardless of where integration is described within the contract documents.

3.5 GENERAL WORKMANSHIP

- A. Install equipment, piping, and wiring/raceway parallel to building lines (i.e., horizontal, vertical, and parallel to walls) wherever possible.
- B. Provide sufficient slack and flexible connections to allow for vibration isolation of piping and equipment.
- C. Install all equipment in readily accessible locations as defined by Chapter 1, Article 100, Part A of the National Electrical Code (NEC).
- D. Verify integrity of all wiring to ensure continuity and freedom from shorts and grounds.
- E. All equipment, installation, and wiring shall comply with acceptable industry specifications and standards for performance, reliability, and compatibility and be executed in strict

adherence to local codes and standard practices.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. All work, materials, and equipment shall comply with the rules and regulations of applicable local, state, and federal codes and ordinances as identified in Part 1 of this specification.
- B. Contractor shall continually monitor the field installation for code compliance and quality of workmanship.
- C. Contractor shall have work inspected by local and/or state authorities having jurisdiction over the work.

3.7 EXISTING EQUIPMENT AND SYSTEMS

- A. Unless otherwise noted in the drawings and specifications, the contractor is not responsible for the repairs or replacement of existing equipment and systems, valves, dampers, or actuators. Should the contractor find existing equipment that requires maintenance, the Engineer is to be notified in writing immediately. All existing components must be verified to be operable in the field.
- B. Wiring. Unless noted otherwise on the drawings, abandoned wires may be reused provided that the reused wiring system meets requirements of current codes. Check wire integrity and ensure proper application to installation. Identify and test reused wires according to this specification. Properly identify unused or redundant wiring.
- C. Wiring: Interconnecting control wiring not needed for the new work and abandoned shall be removed and become the property of the contractor, unless specifically noted or shown to be reused.
- D. Local Control Panels. Existing local control panels may be used to locate new equipment.
- E. Remove and deliver redundant and unused equipment to Owner. Patch panel face cover to fill holes caused by removal of unused equipment. Relocate panels as shown.
- F. Pneumatic Tubing. Existing pneumatic tubing may be reused. Check tubing integrity and ensure proper application to installation. Identify and test reused tubing according to this specification. Remove redundant tubing. Properly identify redundant tubing that cannot be removed. Cap tubing that has been disconnected from equipment that is removed.
- G. Damper Actuators, Linkages, Valves Actuators, Control Valves and Appurtenances: Existing actuators, dampers, linkages and valves shall be reused unless they are stated otherwise to be repaired or replaced.
- H. Temperature Sensor Wells. Existing temperature sensor wells in piping may be reused.
- I. Modify wells as required for proper fit of new sensors.
- J. Control Valves. Existing control valves may be reused unless specifically noted otherwise.
- K. Control Compressed Air Systems. Existing control compressed air systems may be reused unless specifically noted otherwise.

- L. Existing System Operating Schedule. Mechanical system shall remain in operation and shall maintain space comfort at all times. Modifications to the system shall not affect space comfort conditions or cause mechanical system to be shut down without prior written permission, at least seven days in advance. Perform cut-over of controls that cannot meet these conditions outside of operational hours.
- M. Maintain fan scheduling using existing or temporary time clocks or control systems throughout the control system installation.
- N. Modify existing starter control circuits if necessary to provide hand-off-auto control of each controlled starter. Furnish new starters or starter control packages as required
- O. Life and Fire Safety Devices: All life and fire safety devices shall remain in their operable conditions.

3.8 EXISTING SYSTEM SETPOINTS

- A. Except where noted on the schematics, sequences of operation, and the proposed equipment schedule provided in the appendix, the Contractor shall note existing setpoints and program the proposed BAS with the same setpoints.
- B. Contractor shall note position of outside air dampers in their intended 'minimum open' position for each system. Unless noted otherwise, these same positions shall be retained when referenced in the proposed sequences of operation. Where outside air dampers are non- functioning, coordinate minimum open position with Owner's facility representatives. Contractor shall verify the percent of outside air delivered by each system by using the trend logs during commissioning (outside, return and mixed air temperatures method).

3.9 CONTROL WIRING

- A. All control and interlock wiring shall comply with national and local electrical codes and other applicable sections of this specification. Where the requirements of this section differ from those in other sections, the requirements of this section shall take precedence.
- B. All NEC Class 1 (line voltage) wiring shall be UL Listed in approved raceway according to NEC requirements.
- C. All low-voltage wiring shall meet NEC Class 2 requirements. (Low-voltage power circuits shall be sub-fused when required to meet Class 2 current limit.)
- D. Where NEC Class 2 (current-limited) wires are in concealed and accessible locations, including ceiling return air plenums, approved cables not in raceway may be used provided that cables are UL Listed for the intended application. For example, cables used in ceiling plenums shall be UL Listed specifically for that purpose.
- E. All wiring in mechanical, electrical, or service rooms - or where subject to mechanical damage - shall be installed in raceway at levels below 10 ft.
- F. Do not install Class 2 wiring in raceway containing Class 1 wiring. Boxes and panels containing high voltage wiring and equipment may not be used for low-voltage wiring except for the purpose of interfacing the two (e.g., relays and transformers).

- G. Do not install wiring in raceway containing tubing. Where Class 2 wiring is run exposed, wiring is to be run parallel along a surface or perpendicular to it and neatly tied at 10 ft intervals.
- H. Where plenum cables are used without raceway, they shall be supported from or anchored to structural members. Cables shall not be supported by or anchored to ductwork, electrical raceways, piping, or ceiling suspension systems.
- I. All wire-to-device connections shall be made at a terminal block or terminal strip. All wire-to-wire connections shall be at a terminal block.
- J. All wiring within enclosures shall be neatly bundled and anchored to permit access and prevent restriction to devices and terminals.
- K. Maximum allowable voltage for control wiring shall be 120 V. If only higher voltages are available, the contractor shall provide step-down transformers.
- L. All wiring shall be installed as continuous lengths, with no splices permitted between termination points.
- M. Install plenum wiring in sleeves where it passes through walls and floors. Maintain fire rating at all penetrations.
- N. Size of raceway and size and type of wire shall be the responsibility of the contractor, in keeping with the manufacturer's recommendations and NEC requirements, except as noted elsewhere.
- O. Include one pull string in each raceway 1 in. or larger.
- P. Use coded conductors throughout with conductors of different colors.
- Q. Control and status relays are to be located in designated enclosures only. These enclosures include packaged equipment control panel enclosures unless they also contain Class 1 starters.
- R. Conceal all raceways, except within mechanical, electrical, or service rooms. Install raceway to maintain a minimum clearance of 6 in. from high-temperature equipment (e.g., steam pipes or flues).
- S. Secure raceways with raceway clamps fastened to the structure and spaced according to code requirements. Raceways and pull boxes may not be hung on flexible duct strap or tie rods. Raceways may not be run on or attached to ductwork.
- T. Adhere to applicable NEC and other code requirements where raceway crosses building expansion joints.
- U. Install insulated bushings on all raceway ends and openings to enclosures. Seal top end of all vertical raceways.
- V. The Contractor shall terminate all control and/or interlock wiring related to the scope of work of this section and shall maintain updated (as-built) wiring diagrams with terminations identified at the job site.

- W. Flexible metal raceways and liquid-tight, flexible metal raceways shall not exceed 3 ft in length and shall be supported at each end. Flexible metal raceway less than ½ in. electrical trade size shall not be used. In areas exposed to moisture, including chiller and boiler rooms, liquid-tight, flexible metal raceways shall be used.
- X. Raceway must be rigidly installed, adequately supported, properly reamed at both ends, and left clean and free of obstructions. Raceway sections shall be joined with couplings (according to code). Terminations must be made with fittings at boxes, and ends not terminating in boxes shall have bushings installed.

3.10 COMMUNICATION WIRING

- A. Communication wiring shall be low-voltage Class 2 wiring and shall comply with Article 3.7 (Wiring).
- B. Install communication wiring in separate raceways and enclosures from other Class 2 wiring.
- C. During installation do not exceed maximum cable pulling, tension, or bend radius specified by the cable manufacturer.
- D. Verify entire network's integrity following cable installation using appropriate tests for each cable.
- E. Install lightning arrestor according to manufacturer's recommendations between cable and ground where a cable enters or exits a building.
- F. Each run of communication wiring shall be a continuous length without splices when that length is commercially available. Runs longer than commercially available lengths shall have as few splices as possible using commercially available lengths.
- G. Label communication wiring to indicate origination and destination.
- H. Ground coaxial cable according to NEC regulations article on "Communications Circuits, Cable, and Protector Grounding."
- I. BACnet MS/TP communications wiring shall be installed in accordance with ASHRAE/ANSI Standard 135. This includes but is not limited to:
 - 1. The network shall use shielded, twisted-pair cable with characteristic impedance between 100 and 120 ohms. Distributed capacitance between conductors shall be less than 100 pF per meter (30 pF per foot.)
 - 2. The maximum length of an MS/TP segment is 4000 ft with AWG 18 cable. The use of greater distances and/or different wire gauges shall comply with the electrical specifications of EIA-485.
 - 3. The maximum number of nodes per segment shall be 32, as specified in the EIA 485 standard. Additional nodes may be accommodated by the use of repeaters.
 - 4. An MS/TP EIA-485 network shall have no T connections.

3.11 FIBER OPTIC CABLE

- A. Maximum pulling tensions as specified by the cable manufacturer shall not be exceeded during installation. Post-installation residual cable tension shall be within cable manufacturer's specifications.
- B. All cabling and associated components shall be installed in accordance with manufacturers' instructions. Minimum cable and unjacketed fiber bend radii, as specified by cable manufacturer, shall be maintained.

3.12 INSTALLATION OF SENSORS

- A. Install sensors according to manufacturer's recommendations.
- B. Mount sensors rigidly and adequately for operating environment.
- C. Install room temperature sensors on concealed junction boxes properly supported by wall framing. Do not mount sensors on exterior walls.
- D. Air seal wires attached to sensors in their raceways or in the wall to prevent sensor readings from being affected by air transmitted from other areas.
- E. Use averaging sensors in mixing plenums and hot and cold decks. Install averaging sensors in a serpentine manner vertically across duct. Support each bend with a capillary clip.
- F. Install mixing plenum low-limit sensors in a serpentine manner horizontally across duct. Support each bend with a capillary clip. Provide 1 ft of sensing element for each 1 ft² of coil area.
- G. Install pipe-mounted temperature sensors in wells. Install liquid temperature sensors with heat-conducting fluid in thermal wells.
- H. Install outdoor air temperature sensors on north wall at designated location with sun shield.
- I. Differential Air Static Pressure.
 - 1. Supply Duct Static Pressure. Pipe high-pressure tap to duct using a pitot tube. Make pressure tap connections according to manufacturer's recommendations.
 - 2. Return Duct Static Pressure. Pipe high-pressure tap to duct using a pitot tube. Make pressure tap connections according to manufacturer's recommendations.
 - 3. Building Static Pressure. Pipe pressure sensor's low-pressure port to the static pressure port located on the outside of the building through a high-volume accumulator. Pipe high-pressure port to a location behind a thermostat cover.
 - 4. Piping to pressure transducer pressure ports shall contain a capped test

port adjacent to transducer.

5. Pressure transducers, except those controlling VAV boxes, shall be located in control panels, not on monitored equipment or on ductwork. Mount transducers in a vibration-free location accessible for service without use of ladders or special equipment.
- J. Mount gauge tees adjacent to air and water differential pressure taps. Install shut-off valves before tee for water gauges.
- K. Smoke detectors, freezestats, high-pressure cut-offs, and other safety switches shall be hard-wired to de-energize equipment as described in the sequence of operation. Switches shall require manual reset. Provide contacts that allow DDC software to monitor safety switch status.

3.13 FLOW SWITCH INSTALLATION

- A. Use correct paddle for pipe diameter.
- B. Adjust flow switch according to manufacturer's instructions.

3.14 ACTUATORS

- A. General. Mount actuators and adapters according to manufacturer's recommendations.
- B. Electric and Electronic Damper Actuators. Mount actuators directly on damper shaft or jackshaft unless shown as a linkage installation. Link actuators according to manufacturer's recommendations.
 1. For low-leakage dampers with seals, mount actuator with a minimum 5° travel available for damper seal tightening.
 2. To compress seals when spring-return actuators are used on normally closed dampers, power actuator to approximately 5° open position, manually close the damper, then tighten linkage.
 3. Check operation of damper-actuator combination to confirm that actuator modulates damper smoothly throughout stroke to both open and closed positions.
 4. Provide necessary mounting hardware and linkages for actuator installation.
- C. Pneumatic Damper Actuators.
 1. Mount positive pilot positioners directly to pneumatic actuators with pressure gauges for supply input and output pressures.
 2. Total damper area operated by each actuator shall not exceed 80% of manufacturer's maximum area rating.
 3. For axially aligned damper sections, use line shafting or line shaft couplings (jackshafting).
- D. Valve Actuators. Connect actuators to valves with adapters approved by actuator manufacturer.

E. Pneumatic Actuators.

1. Size pneumatic damper actuator to operate the related control damper(s) with sufficient reserve power to provide smooth modulating action or two-position action. Actuator also shall be sized for proper speed of response at the velocity and pressure conditions to which the control damper is subject.
2. Pneumatic damper actuators shall produce sufficient torque to close off against the maximum system pressures encountered. Size the pneumatic damper actuator to close off against the fan shutoff pressure, as a minimum.
3. Where two or more pneumatic damper actuators are installed for interrelated operation in unison, such as dampers used for mixing, provide the dampers with a positive pilot positioner. The positive pilot positioner shall be directly mounted to the pneumatic damper actuator and have pressure gauges for supply input and output pressures.
4. The total damper area operated by an actuator shall not exceed 80% of the manufacturer's maximum area rating. Provide at least one actuator for each damper section. Each damper actuator shall not power more than 2 m²(20 ft²) of damper.
5. Use line shafting or shaft couplings (jackshafting) in lieu of blade-to-blade linkages or shaft coupling when driving axially aligned damper sections.

3.15 CONTROL VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Valve submittals shall be coordinated for type, quantity, size, and piping configuration to ensure compatibility with pipe design.
- B. Slip-stem control valves shall be installed so that the stem position is not more than 60 degrees from the vertical up position. Ball type control valves shall be installed with the stem in the horizontal position.
- C. Valves shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.
- D. Control valves shall be installed so that they are accessible and serviceable and so that actuators may be serviced and removed without interference from structure or other pipes and/or equipment.
- E. Isolation valves shall be installed so that the control valve body may be serviced without draining the supply/return side piping system. Unions shall be installed at all connections to screw-type control valves.
- F. Provide tags for all control valves indicating service and number. Tags shall be as specified in Div. 23 section Mechanical Identification. Securely fasten to valve. Match identification numbers as shown on approved controls shop drawings. Where control valves are concealed above a ceiling, provide an identification label on the ceiling surface as specified in Div. 23 section Mechanical Identification.

3.16 CONTROL DAMPER INSTALLATION

- A. Damper submittals shall be coordinated for type, quantity, and size to ensure compatibility with sheet metal design.

- B. Duct openings shall be free of any obstruction or irregularities that might interfere with blade or linkage rotation or actuator mounting. Duct openings shall measure $\frac{1}{4}$ in. larger than damper dimensions and shall be square, straight, and level.
- C. Individual damper sections, as well as entire multiple section assemblies, must be completely square and free from racking, twisting, or bending. Measure diagonally from upper corners to opposite lower corners of each damper section. Both dimensions must be within 0.3 cm (1/8 in.) of each other.
- D. Follow the manufacturer's instructions for field installation of control dampers. Unless specifically designed for vertical blade application, dampers must be mounted with blade axis horizontal.
- E. Install extended shaft or jackshaft according to manufacturer's instructions. (Typically, a sticker on the damper face shows recommended extended shaft location. Attach shaft on labeled side of damper to that blade.)
- F. Damper blades, axles, and linkage must operate without binding. Before system operation, cycle damper after installation to ensure proper operation. On multiple section assemblies, all sections must open and close simultaneously.
- G. Provide a visible and accessible indication of damper position on the drive shaft end.
- H. Support ductwork in area of damper when required to prevent sagging due to damper weight.
- I. After installation of low-leakage dampers with seals, caulk between frame and duct or opening to prevent leakage around perimeter of damper.

3.17 CONTROLS COMMUNICATION PROTOCOL

- A. General. The electronic controls packaged with this equipment shall communicate with the building direct digital control (DDC) system. The DDC system shall communicate with these controls to read the information and change the control setpoints as shown in the points list, sequences of operation, and control schematics. The information to be communicated between the DDC system and these controls shall be in the standard object format as defined in ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 135 (BACnet). Controllers shall communicate with other BACnet objects on the internetwork using the Read (Execute) Property service as defined in Clause 15.5 of Standard 135.
- B. Distributed Processing. The controller shall be capable of stand-alone operation and shall continue to provide control functions if the network connection is lost.
- C. I/O Capacity. The controller shall contain sufficient I/ O capacity to control the target system.
- D. The Controller shall have a physical connection for a laptop computer or a portable operator's stool.
- E. Environment. The hardware shall be suitable for the anticipated ambient conditions.

1. Controllers used outdoors and/or in wet ambient conditions shall be mounted within waterproof enclosures and shall be rated for operation at 40°C to 60°C (40°F to 140°F).
 2. Controllers used in conditioned space shall be mounted in dust-proof enclosures and shall be rated for operation at 0°C to 50°C (32°F to 120°F).
- F. Serviceability. Provide diagnostic LEDs for power, communication, and processor. All wiring connections shall be made to field removable, modular terminal strips or to a termination card connected by a ribbon cable.
- G. Memory. The Controller shall maintain all BIOS and programming information in the event of a power loss for at least 30 days.
- H. Power. Controller shall be able to operate at 90% to 110% of nominal voltage rating.
- I. Transformer. Power supply for the Controller must be rated at minimum of 125% of ASC power consumption and shall be fused or current limiting type.

3.18 WARNING LABELS

- A. Permanent warning labels shall be affixed to all equipment that can be automatically started by the DDC system.
1. Labels shall use white lettering (12-point type or larger) on a red background.
 2. Warning labels shall read as follows:

C A U T I O N

This equipment is operating under automatic control and may start or stop at any time without warning. Switch disconnect to "Off" position before servicing.

- B. Permanent warning labels shall be affixed to all motor starters and all control panels that are connected to multiple power sources utilizing separate disconnects.
1. Labels shall use white lettering (12-point type or larger) on a red background.
 2. Warning labels shall read as follows:

C A U T I O N

This equipment is fed from more than one power source with separate disconnects. Disconnect all power sources before servicing.

3.19 IDENTIFICATION OF HARDWARE AND WIRING

- A. All wiring and cabling, including that within factory fabricated panels, shall be labeled at each end within 2 in. of termination with the DDC address or termination number.
- B. All pneumatic tubing shall be labeled at each end within 2 in. of termination with a descriptive identifier.
- C. Permanently label or code each point of field terminal strips to show the instrument or item served.
- D. Identify control panels with minimum ½ in. letters on laminated plastic nameplates. See

Div.

23 section Mechanical Identification.

- E. Identify all other control components (sensors, transmitters, transducers, switches, control valves, etc) with permanent labels. Labels should include point address and an English language descriptor. See Div. 23 section Mechanical Identification for labeling requirements for control valves or other components located above ceilings.
- F. All plug-in components shall be labeled such that removal of the component does not remove the label.
- G. Identify room sensors relating to terminal box or valves with nameplates.
- H. Manufacturers' nameplates and UL or CSA labels are to be visible and legible after equipment is installed.
- I. Label identifiers shall match record documents.

3.20 CONTROLLERS

- A. Provide a separate controller for each AHU or other HVAC system. A DDC controller may control more than one system provided that all points associated with the system are assigned to the same DDC controller. Control of an AHU or other mechanical equipment item will not be split between multiple controllers. Points used for control loop reset, such as outside air or space temperature, are exempt from this requirement.
- B. When noted in the plans, schematics and specifications, the Contractor shall select a controller and ship the controller to the terminal equipment manufacturer for installation at the terminal equipment manufacturer's factory.
- C. Building Controllers and Custom Application Controllers shall be selected to provide a minimum of 20% spare I/O point capacity for each point type found at each location. If input points are not universal, 20% of each type is required. If outputs are not universal, 20% of each type is required. A minimum of one spare is required for each type of point used.
 - 1. Future use of spare capacity shall require providing the field device, field wiring, point database definition, and custom software. No additional controller boards or point modules shall be required to implement use of these spare points.

3.21 PROGRAMMING

- A. Provide sufficient internal memory for the specified sequences of operation and trend logging. There shall be a minimum of 25% of available memory free for future use.
- B. Point Naming: Point names shall be as shown on the equipment Points List provided with each sequence of operation. Where multiple points with the same name reside in the same device, the point name may be customized by appending its associated Program Object to the name. (eg: "Zone Temp 1" for Zone 1, "Zone Temp 2" for Zone 2, etc.)

C. Software Programming

1. Provide programming for the system and adhere to the sequences of operation provided. All other system programming necessary for the operation of the system, but not specified in this document, also shall be provided by the contractor. Imbed into the control program sufficient comment statements to clearly describe each section of the program.

The comment statements shall reflect the language used in the sequences of operation. Use the appropriate technique based on the following programming types:

- a. Text-based:
 - 1) Must provide actions for all possible situations
 - 2) Must be modular and structured
 - 3) Must be commented
- b. Graphic-based:
 - 1) Must provide actions for all possible situations
 - 2) Must be documented
- c. Parameter-based:
 - 1) Must provide actions for all possible situations
 - 2) Must be documented

D. Operator Interface

1. Refer to Appendix E for representative graphics.
2. Standard graphics - Provide graphics for all mechanical systems and floor plans of the building. This includes each chilled water system, hot water system, chiller, boiler, air handler, and all terminal equipment. Point information on the graphic displays shall dynamically update. Show on each graphic all input and output points for the system as specified in the points lists, plus calculated values such as flow and Btu/hr (where applicable). Also show relevant calculated points such as set points.
3. Units: All points illustrated on the graphics shall be shown with the correct units in the Inch/Pound system (gallons per minute, cubic feet per minute, etc). Valve and damper positions shall be shown as percent open only, not with respect to their normal position. For mixed air dampers/economizer position, percent open shall refer to the outdoor air damper position.
4. Graphics structure/sequence: The hierarchy of graphics shall be as follows: campus; building; floor plans; systems. For each building, provide a summary graphic screen that lists in tabular form each system with its operating status and major system parameters. Refer to the sample graphics drawings for a representation of what shall be included on the system summary graphic screens.
5. The contractor shall provide all the labor necessary to install, initialize, start up, and troubleshoot all operator interface software and its functions as described in this section. This includes any operating system software, the operator interface database, and any third party software installation and integration required for successful operation of the operator interface.

3.22 CONTROL SYSTEM CHECKOUT AND TESTING

- A. Start-up Testing: All testing listed in this article shall be performed by the contractor and shall make up part of the necessary verification and commissioning of an operating control system. This testing shall be completed and any deficiencies corrected before Engineer/Owner's representative is notified of the system demonstration. Coordinate with Section 230990.
1. The contractor shall furnish all labor and test apparatus required to calibrate and prepare for service of all instruments, controls, and accessory equipment furnished under this specification.
 2. Prepare a log documenting startup testing of each input and output device, with technician's initials certifying each device has been tested and calibrated.
 3. Verify that all control wiring is properly connected and free of all shorts and ground faults. Verify that terminations are tight.
 4. Enable the control systems and verify calibration of all input devices individually.
Perform calibration procedures according to manufacturers' recommendations.
 5. Verify that all binary output devices (relays, solenoid valves, two-position actuators and control valves, magnetic starters, etc.) operate properly and that the normal positions are correct.
 6. Verify that all analog output devices (I/Ps, actuators, etc.) are functional, that start and span are correct, and that direction and normal positions are correct. The contractor shall check all control valves and automatic dampers to ensure proper action and closure. The contractor shall make any necessary adjustments to valve stem and damper blade travel.
 7. Verify that the system operation adheres to the sequences of operation. Simulate and observe all modes of operation by overriding and varying inputs and schedules. Tune all PID loops and any other control routines that require tuning.
 8. Alarms and Interlocks:
 - a. Check each alarm separately by including an appropriate signal at a value that will trip the alarm.
 - b. Interlocks shall be tripped using field contacts to check the logic, as well as to ensure that the fail-safe condition for all actuators is in the proper direction.
 - c. Interlock actions shall be tested by simulating alarm conditions to check the initiating value of the variable and interlock action.
 - d. Nuisance alarms shall be identified and corrected by programming, relocation of sensors, etc.

3.23 CONTROL SYSTEM DEMONSTRATION AND ACCEPTANCE

- A. Demonstration (Refer to schematics and Appendix C for additional details on system trends)
1. Prior to final system acceptance, the control system shall undergo a series of functional performance tests as part of the commissioning process to verify operation and compliance with this specification. These tests shall occur after

- the Contractor has completed the installation, started up the system, performed his/her own tests and corrected any deficiencies. Refer to Section 230990 for Contractor's commissioning responsibilities.
2. Should the Commissioning Agent begin functional performance tests and it is found that the Contractor has not completed the installation and his system checkout and testing as described in Section 3.18 CONTROL SYSTEM CHECKOUT AND TESTING, the Contractor shall be back-charged for all time and reasonable travel expensed incurred by the Commissioning Agent associated with the testing of incomplete systems.
 3. The tests described in this section and in Section 230990 are to be performed in addition to the tests that the Contractor performs as a necessary part of the installation, start-up, and debugging process and as specified in the "Control System Checkout and Testing" article in Part 3 of this specification. The Owner's representative(s) will be present to observe and review these tests. The Owner's representative(s) shall be notified at least 10 days in advance of the start of the testing procedures.
 4. The demonstration process shall follow that approved in Part 1, "Submittals." The approved checklists and forms shall be completed for all systems as part of the demonstration.
 5. The Contractor shall provide at least two persons equipped with two-way communication and shall demonstrate actual field operation of each control and sensing point for all modes of operation including day, night, occupied, unoccupied, fire/smoke alarm, seasonal changeover, and power failure modes. The purpose is to demonstrate the calibration, response, and action of every point and system. Any test equipment required to prove the proper operation shall be provided by and operated by the contractor.
 6. As each control input and output is checked, a log shall be completed showing the date, technician's initials, and any corrective action taken or needed.
 7. Demonstrate compliance with Part 1, "System Performance."
 8. Demonstrate compliance with sequences of operation through all modes of operation.
 9. Demonstrate complete operation of operator interface.
 10. Additionally, the following items shall be demonstrated:
 - a. DDC loop response. The contractor shall supply trend data output in a graphical form showing the step response of each DDC loop. The test shall show the loop's response to a change in set point, which represents a change of actuator position of at least 25% of its full range. The sampling rate of the trend shall be from 10 seconds to 3 minutes, depending on the speed of the loop. The trend data shall show for each sample the set point, actuator position, and controlled variable values. Any loop that yields unreasonably under-damped or overdamped control shall require further tuning by the Contractor.
 - b. Demand limiting. The contractor shall supply a trend data output showing the action of the demand limiting algorithm. The data shall document the action on a minute-by-minute basis over at least a 30-minute period. Included in the trend shall be building kW, demand

limiting set point, and the status of setpoints and other affected equipment parameters.

- c. Interface to the building fire alarm system, if required by the specification and plans.
- d. Trend logs for each system that indicate set points, operating points, valve positions, and other data as specified in the points list provided with each sequence of operation. These logs shall be as specified in the appendix and/or the schematics. The logs shall be accessible through the system's user interface and retrievable for use in spreadsheets etc. as specified in Part 2 of this specification.

- 11. Any tests that fail to demonstrate the operation of the system shall be repeated at a later date. The Contractor shall be responsible for any necessary repairs or revisions to the hardware or software to successfully complete all tests.

B. Acceptance

- 1. All tests described in this specification shall have been performed to the satisfaction of both Engineer and the Owner prior to the acceptance of the control system as meeting the requirements of completion. Any tests that cannot be performed due to circumstances beyond the control of the contractor may be exempt from the completion requirements if stated as such in writing by the Owner or Engineer. Such tests shall then be performed as part of the warranty.
- 2. The system shall not be accepted until all forms and checklists completed as part of the demonstration are submitted and approved as required in Part 1, "Submittals."

3.24 CLEANING

- A. The contractor shall, on a daily basis, clean up all debris resulting from his/her activities. The contractor shall remove all cartons, containers, crates, personal waste such as food and beverage containers, etc., under his/her control as soon as their contents have been removed. Waste shall be collected and placed in a designated location.
- B. At the completion of work in any area, the contractor shall clean all work, equipment, etc., keeping it free from dust, dirt, and debris, etc.
- C. At the completion of work, all equipment furnished under this section shall be checked for paint damage, and any factory-finished paint that has been damaged shall be repaired to match the adjacent areas. Any cabinet or enclosure that has been deformed shall be replaced with new material and repainted to match the adjacent areas.

3.25 TRAINING

- A. Provide training for a designated staff of the Owner's representatives. Training shall be provided via a combination of control vendor's classroom, on-site, and

self-paced training (Web-based, or Computer-Based Training). Refer to Section 1.03 of this specification for other details.

1. Training:

- a. The Contractor shall provide competent, certified instructors to give full instruction to designated personnel in the adjustment, operation and maintenance of the system installed rather than a general training course. Instructors shall be thoroughly familiar with all aspects of the subject matter they are to teach. All training shall be held during normal work hours of 8:00 a.m. to 4:30 p.m. weekdays.
- b. Provide a minimum of 16 hours (per person) of training for the operating and maintenance personnel and 8 hours (per person) of training for the management personnel. Training shall include:
 - 1) Explanation of drawings, operation and maintenance manuals.
 - 2) Walk-through of the job to locate all control components.
 - 3) Control panel operation/function
 - 4) Operator control functions including graphic generation, if design includes color graphics, and field panel programming.
 - 5) Explanation of adjustment, calibration and replacement procedures
 - 6) Management reports and summary logs, including trend set up and downloading.
 - 7) Data integration into Excel spreadsheets
 - 8) Provide 8 hours (per person) of additional training quarterly during warranty period for the operating and maintenance personnel and 4 hours (per person) of additional training quarterly during warranty period for the management personnel.
 - 9) Since the Owner may require personnel to have more comprehensive understanding of the hardware and software, additional training must be available from the Contractor. If the Owner requires such training, it will be contracted at a later date. Provide description of available local and factory customer training. Provide costs associated with performing training at an off-site classroom facility and detail what is included in the manufacturer's standard pricing such as transportation, meals, etc.

B. The training shall enable the students to do the following:

Day-to-day Operators:

1. Proficiently operate the system
2. Understand control system architecture and configuration
3. Understand DDC system components
4. Understand system operation, including DDC system control and optimizing

- routines (algorithms)
- 5. Operate the workstation and peripherals
- 6. Log on and off the system
- 7. Access graphics, point reports, and logs
- 8. Adjust and change system set points, time schedules, and holiday schedules
- 9. Recognize common HVAC system malfunctions by observation of the system graphics, trend graphs, and other system tools.
- 10. Understand system drawings and Operation and Maintenance manual
- 11. Understand the job layout and location of control components
- 12. Access data from the DDC controllers
- 13. Operate portable operator's terminals

Advanced Operators:

- 1. Create and change system graphics
 - 2. Create, delete, and modify alarms, including configuring alarm reactions
 - 3. Create, delete, and modify point trend logs (graphs) and multi-point trend graphs
 - 4. Configure and run reports
 - 5. Add, remove, and modify system's physical points
 - 6. Create, modify, and delete programming
 - 7. Add operator interface stations
 - 8. Add a new control module to the system
 - 9. Perform DDC system field checkout procedures
 - 10. Perform DDC controller unit operation and maintenance procedures
 - 11. Perform workstation and peripheral operation and maintenance procedures
 - 12. Perform DDC system diagnostic procedures
 - 13. Configure hardware including PC boards, switches, communication, and I/O points
 - 14. Maintain, calibrate, troubleshoot, diagnose, and repair hardware
 - 15. Adjust, calibrate, and replace system components
 - 16. Download OS and custom applications programming to a control module
 - 17. Configure and calibrate I/O points
- System Managers/Administrators:
- 1. Maintain software and prepare backups
 - 2. Interface with job-specific, third-party operator software
 - 3. Add new users and understand password security procedures

- C. Provide course outline and materials in accordance with the "Submittals" article in Part 1 of this specification. The instructor(s) shall provide one copy of training material per student.
- D. The instructor(s) shall be factory-trained instructors experienced in presenting this material.
- E. Classroom training shall be done using a network of working controllers representative of the installed hardware.

3.26 SPARE PARTS

- A. Provide to the Owner one full set of spare parts per manufacturer's recommendations for each unique panel component, sensor, actuator, etc. Parts that are identical for different size components do not need to be duplicated.

3.27 GLOSSARY OF TERMS

[See Appendix A]

3.28 POINTS LIST

[Refer to the drawings]

3.29 SEQUENCES OF OPERATION

[Refer to the drawings]

3.30 TREND EXECUTION REQUIREMENTS

[See Appendix C]

3.31 PROPOSED EQUIPMENT OPERATING SCHEDULES

[See Appendix D]

3.32 SAMPLE GRAPHICS SCREENS

[See Appendix E]

END OF SECTION 23 0900

Appendix A

Glossary of Terms

Terms used within the Specification

Text:

- **Advanced Application Controller (AAC):**

A fully programmable control module. This control module may be capable of some of the advanced features found in Building Controllers (storing trends, initiating read and write requests, etc.) but it does not serve as a master controller. Advanced Application Controllers may reside on either the Ethernet/IP backbone or on a subnet.

- **Application Specific Controller (ASC):**

A pre-programmed control module which is intended for use in a specific application. ASCs may be configurable, in that the user can choose between various pre-programmed options, but it does not support full custom programming. ASCs are often used on terminal equipment such as VAV boxes or fan coil units. In many vendors' architectures ASCs do not store trends or schedules but instead rely upon a Building Controller to provide those functions.

- **BACnet/IP:**

An approved BACnet network type which uses an Ethernet carrier and IP addressing.

- **BACnet MS/TP:**

An approved BACnet network type which uses a Master-Slave Token Passing configuration. MS/TP networks are unique to BACnet and utilize EIA485 twisted pair topology running at 9600 to 76,800 bps.

- **BACnet over ARCNET:**

An approved BACnet network type which uses an ARCNET (attached resource computer network) carrier. ARCNET is an industry standard that can utilize several speeds and wiring standards. The most common configuration used by BACnet controllers is an EIA485 twisted pair topology running at 156,000 bps.

- **Building Controller (BC):**

A fully programmable control module which is capable of storing trends and schedules, serving as a router to devices on a subnet, and initiating read and write requests to other controllers. Typically this controller is located on the Ethernet/IP backbone of the BAS. In many vendors' architectures a Building Controller will serve as a master controller, storing schedules and trends for controllers on a subnet underneath the Building Controller.

- **Direct Digital Control (DDC):**

A control system in which a digital computer or microprocessor is directly connected to the valves, dampers, and other actuators which control the system, as opposed to indirectly controlling a system by resetting setpoints on an analog pneumatic or electronic controller.

- **PICS - Protocol Implementation Conformance Statement:**

A written document, created by the manufacturer of a device, which identifies the particular options specified by BACnet that are implemented in the device.

- **Smart Actuator (SA):**

An actuator which is controlled by a network connection rather than a binary or analog signal. (0- 10v, 4-20mA, relay, etc.)

- **Smart Sensor (SS):**

A sensor which provides information to the BAS via network connection rather than a binary or analog signal. (0-10000 ohm, 4-20mA, dry contact, etc.)

- **Web services:**

Web services are a standard method of exchanging data between computer systems using the XML (extensible markup language) and SOAP (simple object access protocol) standards. Web services can be used at any level within a Building Automation System (BAS), but most commonly they are used to transfer data between BAS using different protocols or between a BAS and a non-BAS system such as a tenant billing system or a utility management system.

Control Terms used within the Sequences of Operation:

- adj. Adjustable by the end user, through the supplied user interface.
- AI, AO, etc. (Column Headings on Points List)

AI (Analog Input): A physical input to the control module.

AO (Analog Output): A physical output from the control module.

AV (Analog Value): An intermediate (software) point that may be editable or read-only. Editable AVs are typically used to allow the user to set a fixed control parameter, such as a setpoint. Read Only AVs are typically used to display the status of a control operation.

DI or BI (Digital or Binary Input): A physical input to the control module.

DO or BI (Digital or Binary Output): A physical output from the control module.

DV or BI (Digital or Binary Value): An intermediate (software) point that may be editable or read-only. Editable DVs are typically used to allow the user to set a fixed control parameter, such as a setpoint. Read Only DVs are typically used to display the status of

a control operation.

Sched (Schedule): The control algorithm for this equipment shall include a user editable schedule. Trend: The control system shall be configured to collect and display a trend log of this object. The trending interval shall be no less than one sample every 5 minutes. (Change of Value trending, where a sample is taken every time the value changes by more than a user-defined minimum, is an acceptable alternative only for status points, for example, fan on/off.)

Alarm: The control system shall be configured to generate an alarm when this object exceeds user definable limits, as described in the sequences of operation.

Note: If the specifications require use of the BACnet protocol, all of the above shall be provided as BACnet objects.

- KW Demand Limiting: *

An energy management strategy that reduces energy consumption when a system's electric power meter exceeds an operator-defined threshold.

When power consumption exceeds defined levels, the system automatically adjust setpoints, de-energizes low priority equipment, and takes other pre-programmed actions to avoid peak demand charges. As the demand drops, the system restores loads in a predetermined manner.

- Occupant Override Switch, or Timed Local Override:

A control option that allows building occupants to override the programmed HVAC schedule for a limited period of time.

When the override time expires, the zone returns to its unoccupied state.

- Occupant Setpoint Adjustment:

A control option that allows building occupants to adjust - within limits set by the HVAC control system - the heating and cooling setpoints of selected zones. Typically the user interface for this function is built into the zone sensor.

- Optimal Start-Up: *

A control strategy that automatically starts an HVAC system at the latest possible time yet ensures comfort conditions by the time the building becomes occupied.

A controller measures the temperature of the zone and the outside air. Then, using design heating or cooling capacity at the design outside air temperature, the system computes how long a unit must run at maximum capacity to bring the zone temperature to its occupied setpoint.

The optimal start algorithm often includes a self-learning feature to adjust for variations from design capacity.

A distributed system must use Run on Request with Optimal Start. (See below.)

- Requested, or Run on Request: *

A control strategy that optimizes the runtime of a source piece of equipment that supplies one or more receiving units - such as an air handler unit supplying zone terminal units with heating, cooling, ventilation, or similar service. Source equipment runs only when needed, not on a fixed schedule.

The source equipment runs when one or more receiving units request its services. An operator determines how many requests are required to start the source equipment.

For example, if all the zones in a building are unoccupied and the zone terminal units do not need heating or cooling, the AHU will shut down. However, if a zone becomes occupied or needs cooling, the terminal unit will send a run request to the AHU to initiate the start-up sequence. If this AHU depends on a central chiller, it can send a run request to the chiller.

The run on request algorithm also allows an operator to schedule occupancy for individual zones based on the needs of the occupants without having to adjust the schedules of related AHUs and chillers.

- Setpoint Optimization, or Trim and Respond: *

A control strategy that optimizes the setpoint of a source piece of equipment that supplies one or more receiving units - such as an air handler unit supplying zone terminal units with heating, cooling, ventilation, or similar service.

The source unit communicates with receiving units to determine heating, cooling, and other requirements, and then adjusts its setpoint.

For example, if all zones are comfortable and do not request cooling, the AHU will gradually increase (trim) its supply air setpoint. When a zone requests cooling, the AHU responds by dropping its setpoint. The more zones that request cooling, the more it drops the setpoint. The AHU repeats this process throughout the day to keep zones cool, but no cooler than necessary.

Contracting Terms:

- Furnished or Provided:

The act of supplying a device or piece of equipment, as required, meeting the scope of work specified and making that device or equipment operational. All costs required to furnish the specified device or equipment and make it operational are borne by the division specified to be responsible for providing the device or equipment.

- Install or Installed:

The physical act of mounting, piping or wiring a device or piece of equipment in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and the scope of work, as specified. All costs required to complete the installation are borne by the division specified to include labor and any ancillary materials.

- Interface:

The physical device required to provide integration capabilities from an equipment vendor's product to the control system. The equipment vendor most normally furnishes the interface device. An example of an interface is the chilled water temperature reset interface card provided by the chiller manufacturer in order to allow the control system to integrate the chilled water temperature reset function into the control system.

- Integrate:

The physical connections from a control system to all specified equipment through an interface as required to allow the specified control and monitoring functions of the equipment to be performed via the control system.

* Energy saving option that may not be a standard feature for all vendors, and which may be implemented differently by those vendors who support it.

APPENDIX B

Sequences of Operation General

Information

(See Also Plans and Specification Section 230910 Sequences)

Outside Air Temperature Sensors:

The proposed DDC energy management system will include installation of outside air temperature sensors. The sensors shall be located in an area that is permanently shaded from the sun and has constant air flow that is representative of ambient conditions. The controllers will take the average of the sensor readings. The readings shall be used as the outside air temperature point for each building and system.

Setpoints:

Whenever in the sequences an unoccupied mode is described, an unoccupied setback temperature setpoint shall be user selectable, distinct from the occupied setpoint. The unoccupied heating setpoint shall not be higher than the occupied setpoint, and the unoccupied cooling setpoint shall not be lower than the occupied setpoint. The occupied heating setpoint shall also be a minimum of 2°F lower than the occupied cooling setpoint for any given space or system. Should the user attempt to change a cooling setpoint to below the occupied heating setpoint (subject to low limit), the system shall alert the user and require a change to the heating setpoint first. The same shall apply when the user attempts to raise a heating setpoint above the cooling setpoint.

Setpoint Adjustments:

Whenever in the sequences a setpoint is noted as being adjustable (ie, 'adj'), the following limits to adjustments shall apply (the facility staff must be able to modify the adjustment range when conditions warrant):

- Space heating occupied temperature: +/- 2° from 72°, unless otherwise noted
- Space cooling occupied temperature: +/- 2° from 76°, unless otherwise noted
- Space heating unoccupied temperature: +5°, -7° from 60°, unless otherwise noted
- Space cooling unoccupied temperature: +5°, -3° from 80°, unless otherwise noted
- Discharge air temperature: +/- 5°
- Reset schedules: +/- 10°
- Freezestat: +5°, -0° from 38°
- Low limit control (mixed air temperature): +5°, -0° from 45°
- Humidity: +/- 10%
- Duct static pressure: + 0.2, -0.3" WC
- Pump differential pressure: + 10, -5 psi

- VFD speeds (scheduled): + 5 (not to exceed 95% maximum speed), -15%

These limits may be changed only by personnel with highest level access privileges. Changes may be made on a system-by-system basis only. No global changes will be allowed.

Setpoint Deadbands:

Whenever in the sequences a pump, fan, or other equipment is noted as being switched from heating to cooling (or vice-versa), or enabled or disabled at a certain setpoint temperature, a minimum 2°F deadband shall be a programmed part of the sequence so that rapid on/off or system mode switching operation is avoided. As an illustrative example, a preheat coil pump is to be enabled when the outside air temperature is 45°F. The sequence shall be programmed so that as the temperature falls to 45°F, the pump shall turn on, but then the temperature must rise to at least 47°F before it is allowed to turn off.

APPENDIX C

Trend Requirements

The ultimate purpose of the proposed EMS/BAS is to improve system operations and occupant comfort. It will also be used to capture significant energy cost savings, which will be used to help defray the system cost. The Engineer and the Owner have agreed that certain systems, including other energy conservation measures will require verification that the energy savings are being realized. Verification will also be required for utility rebate administration purposes.

Trending will be the primary vehicle by which system operators will observe and troubleshoot system operation over an extended period, and by which the Owner will demonstrate savings. It is imperative that the trending activities outlined herein be fully understood and accurately executed so that whatever information is recorded and displayed is truthful to the extent possible, and usable in the savings verification calculations.

The contractor shall program, set up and execute trends on equipment and systems as specified herein and on the plans. **The trends shall be fully functioning and reliably collecting data prior to the commissioning phase of this project.** The trends shall be available in tabular form (Excel spreadsheet). Systems and points that will be required to be trended under this project for monitoring and verification purposes are outlined in the points lists on the plans.

All points (except devices such as freezestats, fire/smoke detection, filter status and high limits) shall be trended at 15 minute intervals, and shall be set to record continuously for the Owner's monitoring and verification purposes. Points lists on the drawings indicate which points are to be trended.

APPENDIX D

Proposed Equipment Operation Schedules

The Contractor shall coordinate with the campus facilities staff for the occupied/unoccupied schedules that shall be initially programmed under this contract. It is the Contractor's responsibility to verify all schedules prior to starting the work and programming the new equipment. Deviations to these schedules must be approved in writing by the Owner and the Engineer.

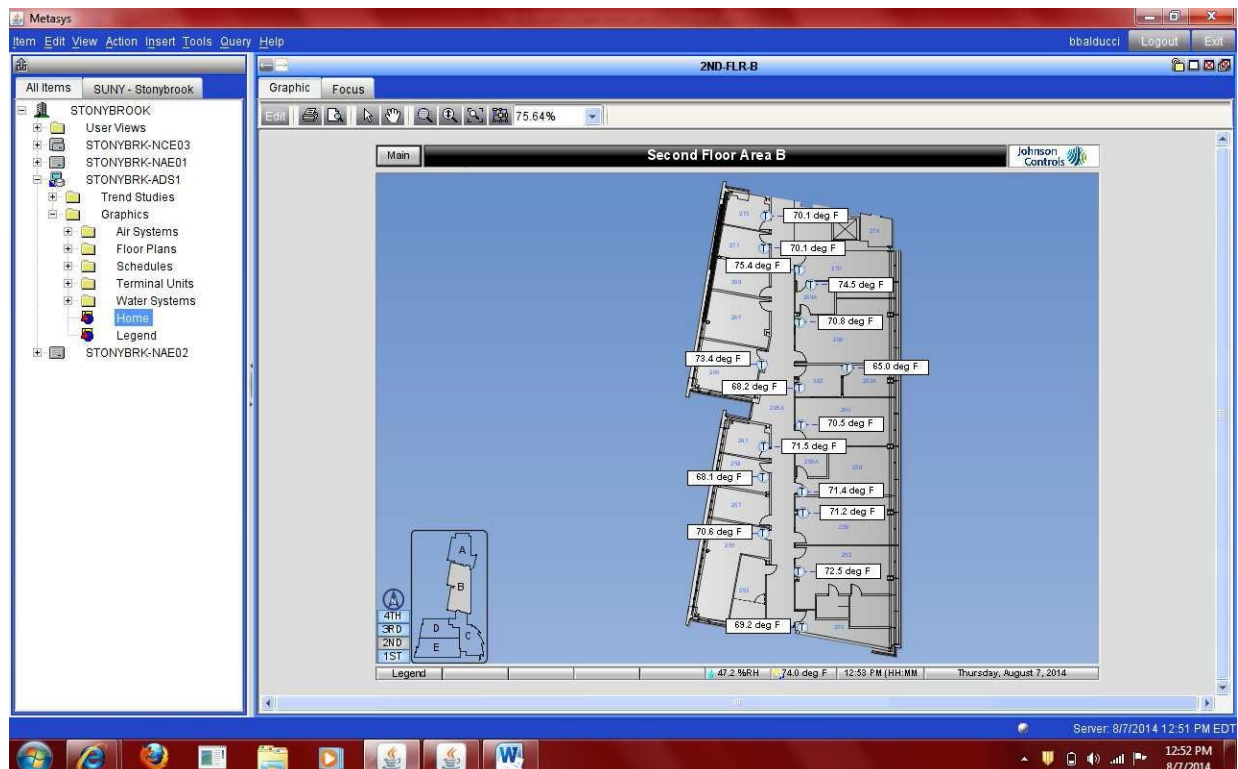
APPENDIX E

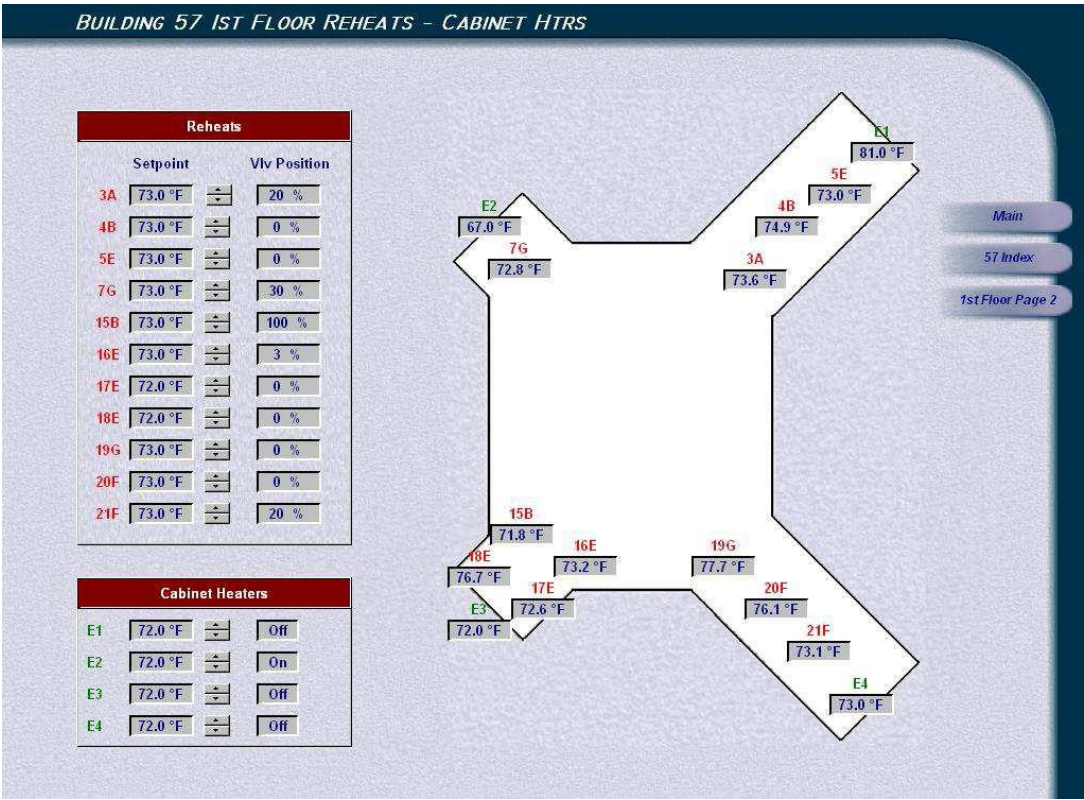
Sample Graphics Screens

The graphics included within this section are representative of the system graphics that shall be initially programmed under this contract. They illustrate the content that shall be included at a minimum for this project. Deviations to this must be approved in writing by the Owner and the Engineer. The sample screens and systems illustrated below do not necessarily include all systems that are part of this work.

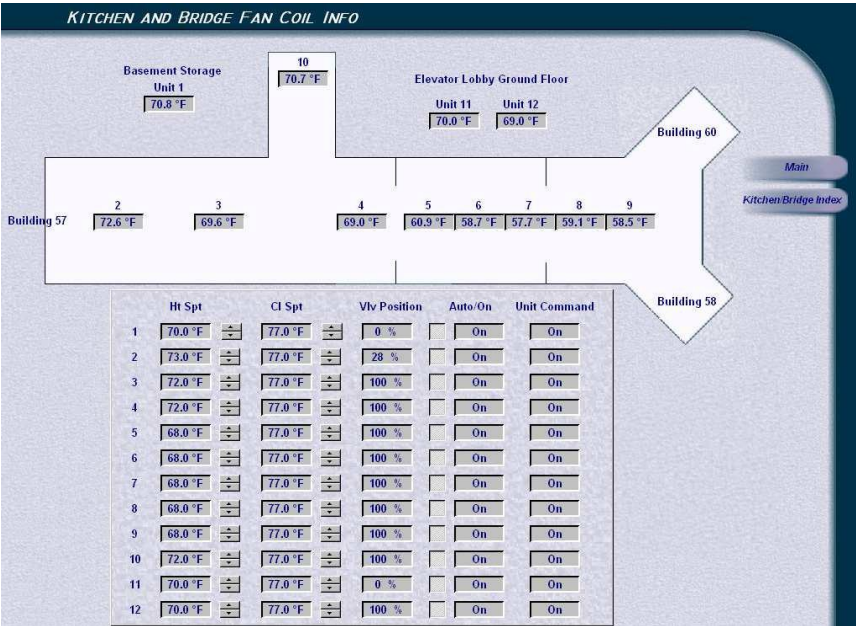
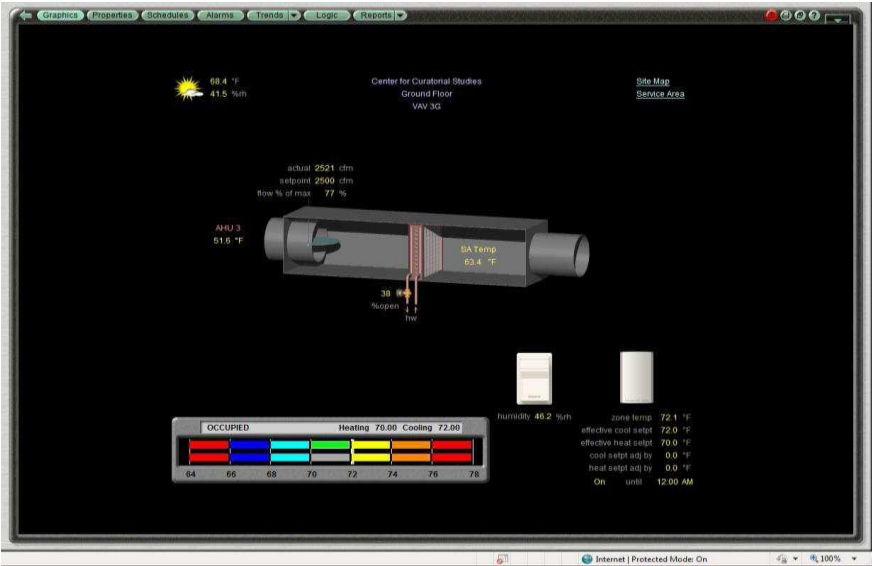
Date/ Time/Outside Air Conditions: ALL graphics screens shall show the current date, time, and outside air conditions, including temperature, relative humidity and enthalpy.

Floor Plan: Floor plans shall show room name and number, plus terminal device identification number and the air handling system from which it is served. The user shall be able to click on a room and be directed to the terminal unit for that room. All zones shall show, via color-coding the space condition relative to the current set point. Other information on this screen shall include current outdoor conditions, terminal unit summary data, and links to other related screens. Set points shall be able to be changed from this screen (depending on authorization level). System tree shall be included on the screen.





Room Terminal Unit: This screen shall illustrate the terminal unit and associated equipment (zone valve, VAV box, reheat coil, cabinet heater, fan coil, etc) along with set points, current conditions, alarm status, occupancy status/schedule, override status, and a graphical depiction of the room temperature and humidity sensor (if applicable). Rooms with air flow control devices on both supply and return shall show both devices on one graphic screen. Supply air temperature entering the terminal unit shall be shown. A system summary showing all zone valves in the building or terminal units in an area shall also be provided.



Air Handling Units:

Building Overview Screen

This screen shall list all air handling units in the particular building along with unit status, set points, and current conditions such as temperatures, pressures, valve/damper positions, alarm status, occupancy status/schedule, safeties, override status, etc. The graphic shall also provide links to associated equipment such as exhaust fans, and rooms served.

BUILDING 57 AC OVERVIEW					
Unit ID	Damper Setpoint	Heating Vlv Setpoint	Cooling Vlv Setpoint	Discharge Air	Return Air
AC-57-1	64.7 °F	59.7 °F	64.7 °F	65.1 °F	73.3 °F
AC-57-2	66.0 °F	61.0 °F	66.0 °F	61.1 °F	73.6 °F
AC-57-3	63.0 °F	58.0 °F	63.0 °F	57.9 °F	76.7 °F
AC-57-4	66.4 °F	61.4 °F	66.4 °F	63.0 °F	73.7 °F
AC-57-5	65.7 °F	60.6 °F	65.6 °F	66.0 °F	74.3 °F
AC-57-6	62.4 °F	57.4 °F	62.4 °F	62.8 °F	73.6 °F
AC-57-7	65.9 °F	60.0 °F	66.2 °F	62.9 °F	74.0 °F
AC-57-8	64.8 °F	59.8 °F	64.8 °F	62.0 °F	73.0 °F
AC-57-9	66.0 °F	62.5 °F	67.5 °F	64.5 °F	73.6 °F
AC-57-10	66.5 °F	61.5 °F	66.5 °F	66.2 °F	74.5 °F

[Main](#)

[57 Index](#)

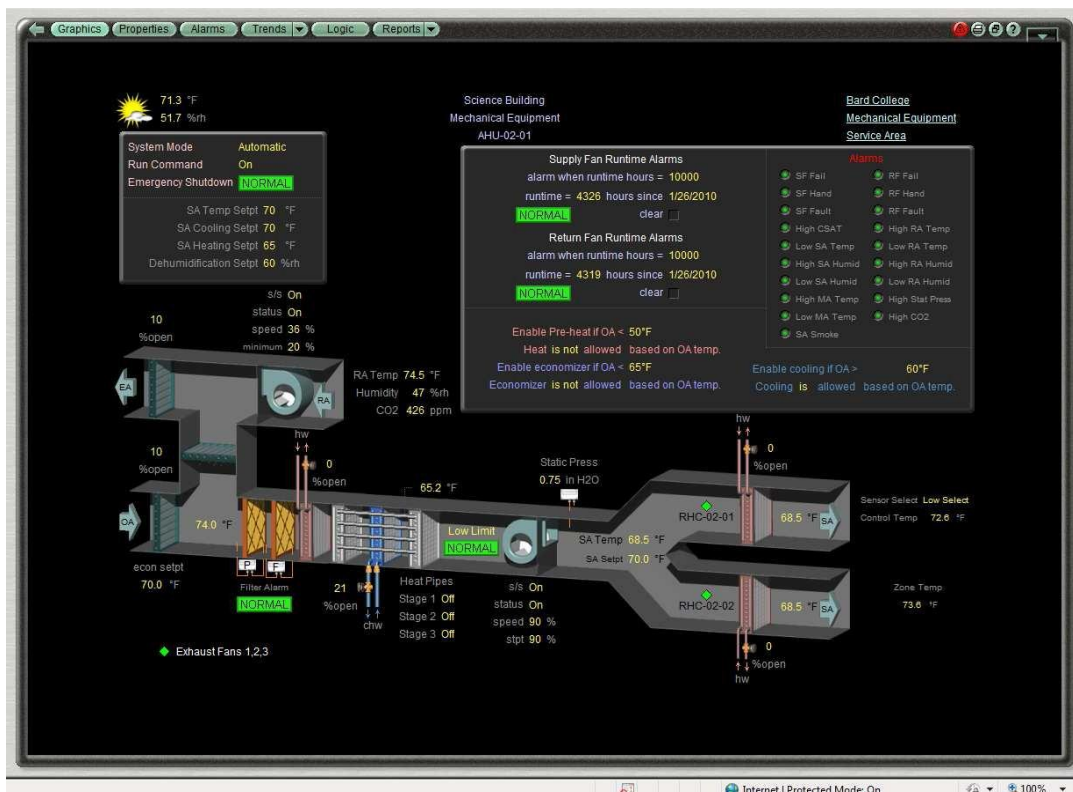
[57 AC Index](#)

[Previous](#)

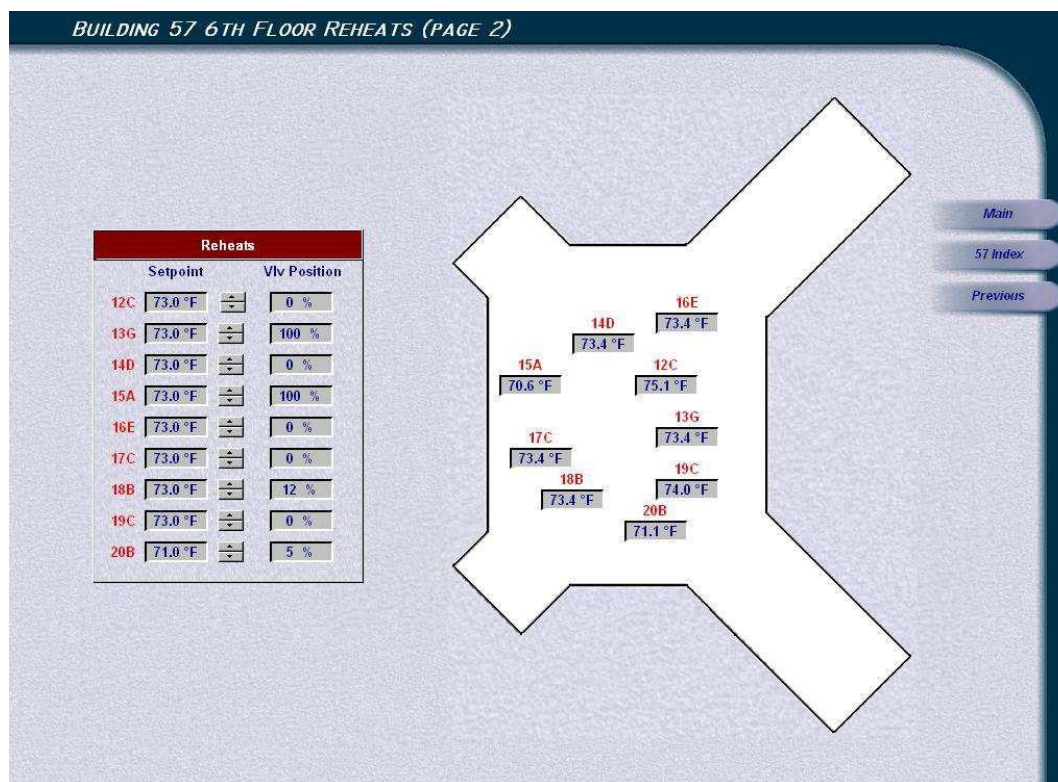
23 0900 - 82

Individual Unit Screen

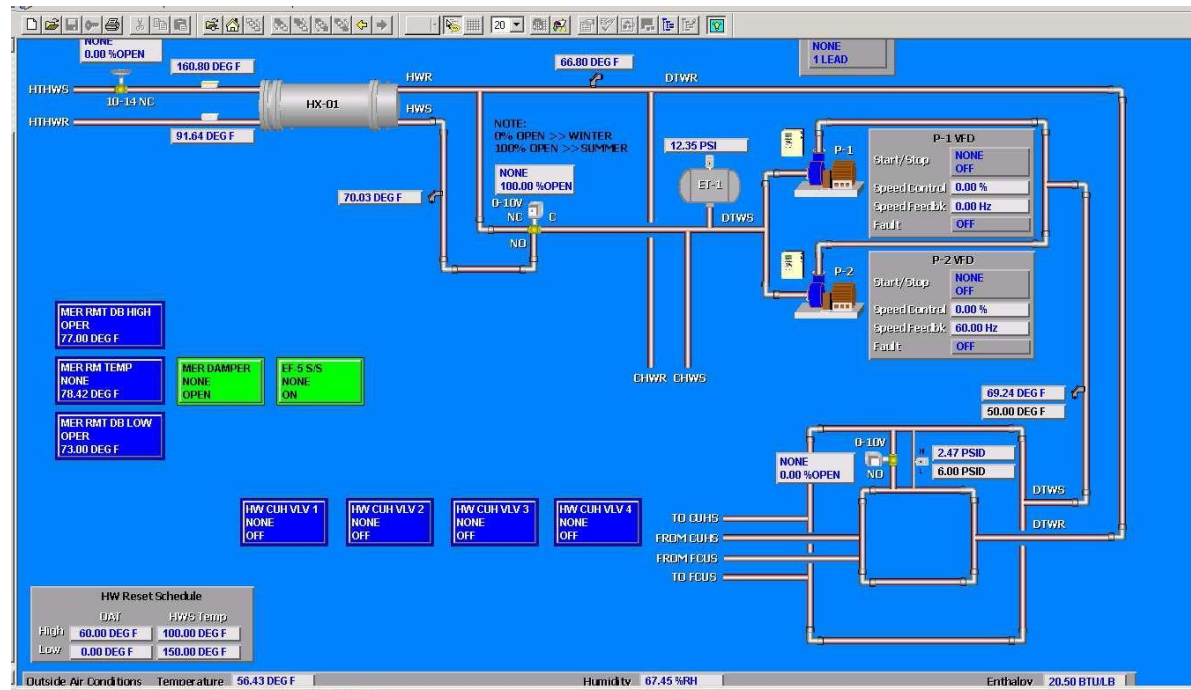
This screen shall illustrate the air handling unit and associated equipment (preheat and cooling coils, humidifier, dampers, etc) along with set points, current conditions, alarm status, occupancy status/schedule, safeties, override status, etc. The graphic shall also provide links to associated equipment such as exhaust fans, and rooms served. Include indication of the calculated economizer and discharge air temperatures required, as well as the calculated and set point OA % (calculate OA% from return, mixed and OA temperatures). On the AHU graphic, show the average, high and low temperatures of all rooms served by that AHU, plus conditions within any critical space served by that unit.



User Specific System: This screen illustrates the information that would be available to selected individuals who need to remotely adjust and monitor temperature and humidity conditions within rooms they control. No links to other equipment, floor plans or buildings would be available to these staff.



Heating/Domestic Hot Water Systems: This screen shall illustrate the hot water system with associated equipment (pumps, automatic valves, etc) along with set points, current conditions, alarm status, safeties, override status, etc. Graphic shall also provide relevant points from the equipment manufacturer's system interface. Reset schedules shall be indicated, with high and low OAT and minimum and maximum temperature set points.



SECTION 23 2113 - HYDRONIC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes pipe and fitting materials and joining methods for the following:
 - 1. Hot-water heating piping.
 - 2. High temperature Water
 - 3. Chilled-water piping.
 - 4. Makeup-water piping.
 - 5. Condensate-drain piping.
 - 6. Air-vent piping.
 - 7. Safety-valve-inlet and -outlet piping.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following:
 - 1. Plastic pipe and fittings with solvent cement.
 - 2. Chemical treatment.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Piping layout, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
 - 1. Suspended ceiling components.
 - 2. Other building services.
 - 3. Structural members.
- B. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- C. Welding certificates.
- D. Field quality-control reports.
- E. Water Analysis: Submit a copy of the water analysis to illustrate water quality available at Project site.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Steel Support Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Pipe Welding: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.
 - 1. Comply with ASME B31.1, "Power Piping" for materials, products, and installation.
 - 2. Certify that each welder meets the qualification criteria of ASME B31.1, "Power Piping".

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Hydronic piping components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure and temperature unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Hot-Water Heating Piping: 175 psig at 200 deg F.
 - 2. High Temperature Water: 400 psig at 400 deg F.
 - 3. Chilled-Water Piping: 175 psig at 40 deg F.
 - 4. Makeup-Water Piping: 80 psig at 100 deg F.
 - 5. Condensate-Drain Piping: 100 deg F.
 - 6. Air-Vent Piping: 200 deg F.
 - 7. Safety-Valve-Inlet and -Outlet Piping: Equal to the pressure of the piping system to which it is attached.

2.2 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Drawn-Temper Copper Tubing: ASTM B 88, Type L.
- B. DWV Copper Tubing: ASTM B 306, Type DWV.
- C. Solder-Joint, Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22.
- D. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.

2.3 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Steel Pipe: Schedule 40, A-106 Grade B, Seamless, Sch.40 up to 12", std. weight larger than 12", ASTM A-53 Grade B, Seamless
- B. Cast-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4; Classes 150 and 300 as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.
- C. Fittings: 3000 lb socket weld ASTM A-105 or Buttweld, A-234, Bore to match pipe

- D. Flanges: 300lb raised face socket weld ASTM A-105 or 300lb raised face weld neck flange, ASTM A-105, Bore to match pipe
- E. Unions: 3000 lb socket weld ASTM A-105
- F. Branch Connections: 3000lb socket weld ASTM A-105, Full size, use Tee ASTM A-234. Reducing Tee to 2 size reduction. On 2-1/2" and larger, use "weldolet" ASTM A-105. On 2" and smaller, use "sockolet" or "elbowlets", ASTM A-105. Bore to match pipe.
- G. Gaskets: 300lb Flexitallic style CG. 304 stainless steel spiral wound with flexicarb filler

2.4 PLASTIC PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. PVC Plastic Pipe: ASTM D 2665 DWV, Sch. 40., plenum rated.
 - 1. PVC Plastic Pipe Fittings: Socket-type pipe fittings, ASTM D 2466 for Schedule 40 pipe; plenum rated.

2.5 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.
 - 1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness unless otherwise indicated.
 - a. Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 150, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
 - b. Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 300, cast-iron and steel flanges.
 - 2. 300lb flexitallic style CG. 304 stainless steel spiral wound with flexicarb filler.
- B. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
- D. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for joining copper with copper; or BAg-1, silver alloy for joining copper with bronze or steel.
- E. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12M/D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
- F. Solvent Cements for Joining Plastic Piping:
 - 1. PVC Piping: ASTM D 2665. Include primer according to ASTM F 656.
 - a. PVC solvent cement shall have a VOC content of 510 g/L or less.
 - b. Adhesive primer shall have a VOC content of 550 g/L or less.
 - c. Plenum rated.

2.6 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
- B. Dielectric Unions:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Matco-Norca.
 - b. WATTS
 - c. Wilkins
 - d. Zurn Industries
 - 2. Description:
 - a. Standard: ASSE 1079.
 - b. Pressure Rating: 200 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
 - c. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
- C. Dielectric Flanges:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Matco-Norca.
 - b. WATTS
 - c. Wilkins
 - d. Zurn Industries
 - 2. Description:
 - a. Standard: ASSE 1079.
 - b. Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
 - c. Pressure Rating: 200 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
 - d. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
- D. Dielectric-Flange Insulating Kits:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
 - b. Calpico, Inc.
 - c. Central Plastics Company.
 - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
 - 2. Description:
 - a. Non-conducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.

- b. Pressure Rating: 200 psig.
- c. Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
- d. Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
- e. Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.

E. Dielectric Nipples:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Elster Perfection.
 - b. Grinnell Mechanical Products.
 - c. Matco-Norca.
 - d. Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
 - e. Victaulic Company.
- 2. Description:
 - a. Standard: IAPMO PS 66.
 - b. Electroplated steel nipple, complying with ASTM F 1545.
 - c. Pressure Rating: 300 psig at 225 deg F.
 - d. End Connections: Male threaded or grooved.
 - e. Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, propylene.

2.7 BYPASS CHEMICAL FEEDER

- A. Description: Welded steel construction; 125-psig working pressure; 5-gal. capacity; with fill funnel and inlet, outlet, and drain valves.
 - 1. Chemicals: Specially formulated, based on analysis of makeup water, to prevent accumulation of scale and corrosion in piping and connected equipment.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. Hot-water heating piping, aboveground, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be any of the following:
 - 1. Type L, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered joints.
 - 2. Schedule 40, Grade B, Class 150 fittings; cast-iron flanges and flange fittings; and threaded joints.
- B. Hot-water heating piping, aboveground, NPS 2-1/2 and larger, shall be the following:
 - 1. Schedule 40 steel pipe, wrought-steel fittings and wrought-cast or forged-steel flanges and flange fittings, and welded and flanged joints.
- C. Hot-water heating piping installed belowground and within slabs shall be the following:

1. Schedule 40 steel pipe, wrought-steel fittings and wrought-cast or forged-steel flanges and flange fittings, and welded and flanged joints.
- D. High Temperature Hot-water piping aboveground, NPS 2 and smaller shall be the following:
 1. Schedule 40 steel pipe, 3000lb socket weld fittings and unions, 300 lb raised face socket weld flanges, 300 lb flange gaskets.
- E. High Temperature Hot-water piping aboveground, NPS 2-1/2 and larger shall be the following:
 1. Schedule 40 steel pipe up to 12", Std. weight larger than 12", buttweld fittings, 300 lb raised face weld neck flanges, full size reducing tee branch connections, 300 lb flange gaskets. Unions not permitted.
- F. Chilled-water piping, aboveground, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be any of the following:
 1. Type L, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered joints.
 2. Schedule 40, Grade B, Class 150 fittings; cast-iron flanges and flange fittings; and threaded joints.
- G. Chilled-water piping, aboveground, NPS 2-1/2 and larger, shall be the following:
 1. Schedule 40 steel pipe, wrought-steel fittings and wrought-cast or forged-steel flanges and flange fittings, and welded and flanged joints.
- H. Makeup-water piping installed aboveground shall be the following:
 1. Type L, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered joints.
- I. Condensate-Drain Piping: Type DWV, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered joints.
- J. Condensate-Drain Piping: Schedule 40 PVC plastic pipe and fittings and solvent-welded joints.
- K. Air-Vent Piping:
 1. Inlet: Same as service
 2. Outlet: Type K, annealed-temper copper tubing with soldered or flared joints.
- L. Safety-Valve-Inlet and -Outlet Piping for Hot-Water Piping: Same materials and joining methods as for piping specified for the service in which safety valve is installed with metal-to-plastic transition fittings for plastic piping systems according to piping manufacturer's written instructions.

3.2 PIPING INSTALLATIONS

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- B. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- E. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- F. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- J. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- K. Install groups of pipes parallel to each other, spaced to permit applying insulation and servicing of valves.
- L. Install drains, consisting of a tee fitting, NPS 3/4 ball valve, and short NPS 3/4 threaded nipple with cap, at low points in piping system mains and elsewhere as required for system drainage. For high temperature hot water, install double 800# gate valve, NPS 3/4 drain line socket welded to low point of pipe.
- M. Install air vents at high points in piping. For high temperature hot-water piping, vent shall consist of NPS 3/4 piping with two 800# gate valves off 2 size reduced branch connection to 3000# socket welded steel piping. Piping to be directed towards the floor and terminate within 12" of floor with cap.
- N. Install piping at a uniform grade of 0.2 percent upward in direction of flow.
- O. Reduce pipe sizes using eccentric reducer fitting installed with level side up.
- P. Install branch connections to mains using mechanically formed tee fittings in main pipe, with the branch connected to the bottom of the main pipe for all but high temperature hot water piping. For up-feed risers, connect the branch to the top of the main pipe.

- Q. Install valves according to General-Duty Valves for HVAC Piping.
- R. Install unions in piping, NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to valves, at final connections of equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.
- S. Install flanges in piping, NPS 2-1/2 and larger, at final connections of equipment and elsewhere as indicated.
- T. Install shutoff valve immediately upstream of each dielectric fitting.
- U. Comply with requirements in Expansion Fittings and Loops for HVAC Piping for installation of expansion loops, expansion joints, anchors, and pipe alignment guides.
- V. Comply with requirements in Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment for identifying piping.
- W. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping.
- X. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping.
- Y. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Escutcheons for HVAC Piping.

3.3 DIELECTRIC FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
- B. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 and Smaller: Use dielectric nipples.
- C. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Use dielectric flanges.
- D. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 5 and Larger: Use dielectric flange kits.

3.4 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- C. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.
- D. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8/A5.8M.

- E. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
 - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
 - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- F. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12M/D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators according to "Quality Assurance" Article.
- G. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.
- H. Plastic Piping Solvent-Cemented Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
 - 1. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
 - 2. PVC Pressure Piping: Join ASTM D 1785 schedule number, PVC pipe and PVC socket fittings according to ASTM D 2672. Join other-than-schedule number PVC pipe and socket fittings according to ASTM D 2855.
 - 3. PVC Non-pressure Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855.

3.5 TERMINAL EQUIPMENT CONNECTIONS

- A. Sizes for supply and return piping connections shall be the same as or larger than equipment connections.
- B. Install control valves in accessible locations close to connected equipment.
- C. Install bypass piping with globe valve around control valve. If parallel control valves are installed, only one bypass is required.
- D. Install ports for pressure gages and thermometers at coil inlet and outlet connections. Comply with requirements in Meters and Gages for HVAC Piping.

3.6 CHEMICAL TREATMENT

- A. Perform an analysis of makeup water to determine type and quantities of chemical treatment needed to keep system free of scale, corrosion, and fouling, and to sustain the following water characteristics:
 - 1. pH: 9.0 to 10.5.
 - 2. "P" Alkalinity: 100 to 500 ppm.
 - 3. Boron: 100 to 200 ppm.

4. Chemical Oxygen Demand: Maximum of 100 ppm. Revise this value if closed system contains glycol.
5. Corrosion Inhibitor:
 - a. Sodium Nitrate: 1000 to 1500 ppm.
 - b. Molybdate: 200 to 300 ppm.
 - c. Chromate: 200 to 300 ppm.
 - d. Sodium Nitrate Plus Molybdate: 100 to 200 ppm each.
 - e. Chromate Plus Molybdate: 50 to 100 ppm each.
6. Soluble Copper: Maximum of 0.20 ppm.
7. Tolyriazole Copper and Yellow Metal Corrosion Inhibitor: Minimum of 10 ppm.
8. Total Suspended Solids: Maximum of 10 ppm.
9. Ammonia: Maximum of 20 ppm.
10. Free Caustic Alkalinity: Maximum of 20 ppm.
11. Microbiological Limits:
 - a. Total Aerobic Plate Count: Maximum of 1000 organisms/mL.
 - b. Total Anaerobic Plate Count: Maximum of 100 organisms/mL.
 - c. Nitrate Reducers: 100 organisms/mL.
 - d. Sulfate Reducers: Maximum of zero organisms/mL.
 - e. Iron Bacteria: Maximum of zero organisms/mL.

B. Install bypass chemical feeders in each hydronic system where indicated.

1. Install in upright position with top of funnel not more than 48 inches above the floor.
2. Install feeder in minimum NPS 3/4 bypass line, from main with full-size, full-port, ball valve in the main between bypass connections.
3. Install NPS 3/4 pipe from chemical feeder drain to nearest equipment drain and include a full-size, full-port, ball valve.

C. Fill system with fresh water and add liquid alkaline compound with emulsifying agents and detergents to remove grease and petroleum products from piping. Circulate solution for a minimum of 24 hours, drain, clean strainer screens, and refill with fresh water.

D. Add initial chemical treatment and maintain water quality in ranges noted above for the first year of operation.

E. Fill systems that have antifreeze or glycol solutions with the following concentrations:

1. Geothermal Glycol Cooling-Water Piping: Minimum of 10 percent propylene glycol.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Prepare hydronic piping according to ASME B31.1 and as follows:

1. Leave joints, including welds, uninsulated and exposed for examination during test.
2. Provide temporary restraints for expansion joints that cannot sustain reactions due to test pressure. If temporary restraints are impractical, isolate expansion joints from testing.

3. Flush hydronic piping systems with clean water; then remove and clean or replace strainer screens.
 4. Isolate equipment from piping. If a valve is used to isolate equipment, its closure shall be capable of sealing against test pressure without damage to valve. Install blinds in flanged joints to isolate equipment.
 5. Install safety valve, set at a pressure no more than one-third higher than test pressure, to protect against damage by expanding liquid or other source of overpressure during test.
- B. Perform the following tests on hydronic piping other than high temperature hot-water:
1. Use ambient temperature water as a testing medium unless there is risk of damage due to freezing. Another liquid that is safe for workers and compatible with piping may be used.
 2. While filling system, use vents installed at high points of system to release air. Use drains installed at low points for complete draining of test liquid.
 3. Isolate expansion tanks and determine that hydronic system is full of water.
 4. Subject piping system to hydrostatic test pressure that is not less than 1.5 times the system's working pressure. Test pressure shall not exceed maximum pressure for any vessel, pump, valve, or other component in system under test. Verify that stress due to pressure at bottom of vertical runs does not exceed 90 percent of specified minimum yield strength or 1.7 times the "SE" value in Appendix A in ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping."
 5. After hydrostatic test pressure has been applied for at least 10 minutes, examine piping, joints, and connections for leakage. Eliminate leaks by tightening, repairing, or replacing components and repeat hydrostatic test until there are no leaks.
 6. Prepare written report of testing.
- C. Perform the following tests high temperature hot-water piping:
1. Perform hydrostatic testing of all HTHW piping.
 2. All HTHW piping shall be subjected to a minimum pressure of 600psig.
 3. Temporary strainers shall be installed and removed at the connection of all equipment as necessary to protect the equipment during testing and during initial fill.
 4. Piping shall be chemically cleaned after installation. Include provisions for bypassing equipment for cleaning and flushing.
 5. All pipe weld joints shall be 100% visually inspected. Radiographic inspection shall be required on 10% of total of all pipe weld joints, randomly selected by the Architect. The Architect shall retain the testing services.
 - a. If any of these inspected 10% of total pipe weld joints are found unacceptable, they shall be repaired and reinspected. Additionally, if any of the weld joints from this first 10% of total are found unacceptable, a second 10% of the total pipe weld joints shall be selected by the Architect for radiographic inspection. This additional inspection shall continue until a bull block of 10% of the selected weld joints are found acceptable at the first testing of the joint.
 6. Prepare written report of testing.

D. Perform the following before operating the system:

1. Open manual valves fully.
2. Inspect pumps for proper rotation.
3. Set makeup pressure-reducing valves for required system pressure.
4. Inspect air vents at high points of system and determine if all are installed and operating freely (automatic type), or bleed air completely (manual type).
5. Set temperature controls so all coils are calling for full flow.
6. Inspect and set operating temperatures of hydronic equipment, such as boilers, chillers, cooling towers, to specified values.
7. Verify lubrication of motors and bearings.

END OF SECTION 23 2113

SECTION 23 2113.13 - UNDERGROUND HYDRONIC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Steel pipes and fittings.
 - 2. Conduit piping system.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Provide components and installation capable of producing hydronic piping systems with the following minimum working-pressure ratings:
 - 1. High Temperature Hot-Water Piping: 400 Psig at 400 deg F.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
 - 1. Conduit piping.
- B. Shop Drawings: For underground hydronic piping. Signed and sealed by a professional engineer.
 - 1. Calculate requirements for expansion compensation for underground piping.
 - 2. Show expansion compensators, offsets, and loops with appropriate materials to allow piping movement in the required locations. Show anchors and guides that restrain piping movement with calculated loads, and show concrete thrust block dimensions.
 - 3. Show pipe sizes, locations, and elevations. Show piping in trench, conduit, and cased pipe with details showing clearances between piping, and show insulation thickness.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Profile Drawings: Show system piping in elevation. Draw profiles at horizontal scale of not less than 1 inch equals 50 feet and at vertical scale of not less than 1 inch equals 5 feet. Indicate manholes and piping. Show types, sizes, materials, and elevations of other utilities crossing hydronic piping.

- B. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- C. Welding certificates.
- D. Material Test Reports: For conduit piping.
- E. Source quality-control reports.
- F. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.
 - 1. Comply with ASME B31.1, "Power Piping" for materials, products, and installation.
 - 2. Certify that each welder meets the qualification criteria of ASME B31.1, "Power Piping".
- B. ASME Compliance: Comply with ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping," for materials, products, and installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 STEEL PIPES AND FITTINGS

- A. Steel Pipe: Schedule 40, A-106 Grade B, Seamless, Sch.40 up to 12", Larger than 12" use Standard Weight, ASTM A-53 Grade B, Seamless
- B. Fittings: 3000 lb socket weld ASTM A-105, Buttweld, A-234, Bore to match pipe
- C. Flanges: 300lb raised face socket weld ASTM A-105, 300lb raised face weld neck flange, ASTM A-105, Bore to match pipe
- D. Unions: 3000 lb socket weld ASTM A-105
- E. Branch Connections: 3000lb socket weld ASTM A-105, Full size, use Tee ASTM A-234. Reducing Tee to 2 size reduction. On 2-1/2" and larger, use "weldolet" ASTM A-105. On 2" and smaller, use "socket" or "elbowlets", ASTM A-105. Bore to match pipe.
- F. Gaskets: 300lb Flexitallic style CG. 304 stainless steel spiral wound with flexicarb filler

2.2 DIRECT-BURIED PIPING SYSTEM

- A. Acceptable products for Direct-Buried piping system only include the following. Alternates will not be accepted:
 - 1. Thermacor – Duo-Therm

2. Perma-pipe – Multi-Therm 500
 3. Rovanco – Insul-800
- B. The high temperature water (HTHW) direct-buried piping system shall be triple-wall construction. The design shall include an outer jacket of heavy-duty high-density polyethylene (HDPE) covering a layer of urethane foam insulation. The insulation shall be applied to a 10-gauge steel conduit. The carrier pipe shall be supported within the conduit, and shall be insulated with mineral wool insulation.
- C. The system shall be designed to permit field-testing of all field joints. Field-testing shall include the hydrostatic testing of the carrier pipe, and air testing of the conduit, and air testing of the field joint assembly.
- D. The system shall be factory-fabricated, including all fittings, end seals, anchor plates, and expansion loops to the greatest extent possible to minimize field fit up and assembly.
- E. Carrier Pipe
1. All HTHW pipe and fittings shall be fabricated in accordance with ASTM A53, grade B seamless pipe for sizes larger than 2 inches. All HTHW piping 2 inches and less shall be fabricated in accordance with ASTM A106, grade B seamless.
 2. All pipe sizes up to 10 inches shall be Schedule 40 seamless carbon steel. All pipe sizes larger than 10 inches shall be Standard Schedule seamless carbon steel.
- F. Conduit
1. All conduit and fittings shall have a wall thickness of 0.1345 inch (10 gauge) conforming to ASTM A135 or ASTM A139.
 2. All field joints shall be fabricated with steel sleeves compatible with the conduit.
- G. Insulation
1. Carrier Pipe
 - a. All carrier pipes shall be insulated with mineral wool insulation in accordance with ASTM C-547.
 - b. The insulation shall be fabricated in half curved sidewall or V-grooved insulation sections. The bore shall be coated.
 - c. The minimum insulation thickness shall be provided as follows:
 - 1) 2 inch insulation thickness
 2. Conduit
 - a. Conduit insulation shall be 1-inch thick spray applied polyurethane foam having a nominal 2-pound per cubic foot density. Foam insulation shall conform to ASTM C591, and have a maximum thermal conductivity of $k = 0.16 \text{ Btu/hr-ft}^2\text{-}^\circ\text{F}$.
- H. Outer Jacket

1. The outer jacket and fittings shall be HDPE conforming to ASTM D 3350 with a minimum wall thickness of 125 mils for jacket sizes less than or equal to 12 inches, 150 mils for jacket sizes 14 inches to 24 inches, and 175 mils for jacket sizes larger than 24 inches.
- I. Field Joint Assemblies
 1. All field joint assemblies shall be factory-supplied assemblies, and shall be air-pressure testable to ensure the integrity of the system.
 2. Field joint assemblies shall be finished with an HDPE split sleeve. The field joint assembly shall be air testable.
- J. Miscellaneous Appurtenances
 1. All miscellaneous appurtenances, including but not limited to anchor plates, end seals, and gland seals shall be designed and factory fabricated, and shall be watertight to a maximum head pressure of 7 ft of water.
- K. Anchors
 1. Anchors shall be fabricated with ½-inch thick steel plate. Plates shall extend a minimum of 3 inches beyond the outer jacket.
 2. Anchor plates shall have vent and drain holes for free air passage and conduit drainage.
 3. All anchor plates shall be furnished with an epoxy coating. No uncoated steel shall be in contact with the soil. Each anchor plate shall be furnished with a shrink wrap seal to completely isolate the anchor plate.
- L. End Seals
 1. All system terminal ends shall be provided with end seals. End seals shall be provided with threaded connections for drains and vents.
 2. All end seals shall be designed to allow for complete drainage and drying of the conduit.
- M. Wall Penetrations
 1. The manufacturer of the piping system shall provide a hydrostatic seal consisting of mechanical type interlocking rubber links. The links shall seal the annular space between the system jacket and the wall sleeve or core-drill opening.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EARTHWORK

- A. See Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

3.2 PIPING APPLICATION

- A. Hot-Water Heating Piping:

1. NPS 2 and smaller shall be the following:
 - a. Schedule 40 steel pipe; fittings; cast-iron flanges and flange fittings; and welded joints.
2. NPS 2-1/2 and larger shall be the following:
 - a. Schedule 40 steel pipe; fittings; cast-iron flanges and flange fittings; and welded joints.
3. Conduit piping with mineral-wool carrier-pipe insulation and with coated and insulated conduit.
 - a. Carrier Pipe Insulation Thickness: 2 inches.
 - b. Conduit Insulation Thickness: 1 inch.

3.3 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicate piping locations and arrangements if such were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- B. Contractor to perform a utility mark-out along the installation path prior to any excavation. The Contractor is responsible for any repairs to existing utilities shown on the Contract Drawings that are damaged by the excavation work.
- C. Remove standing water in the bottom of trench.
- D. Do not backfill piping trench until field quality-control testing has been completed and results approved.
- E. Install piping at uniform grade of 0.2 percent. Install drains, consisting of a tee fitting, double NPS 3/4 gate valve, and short NPS 3/4 threaded nipple with cap, at low points in manhole and elsewhere as required for system drainage. Install manual air vents at high points.
- F. In conduits, install drain valves at low points in manhole and manual air vents at high points.
- G. Install components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- H. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- I. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- J. See Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping" for sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals through exterior building walls.
- K. Secure anchors with concrete thrust blocks. Concrete is specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

- L. See Section 264200 "Cathodic Protection" for cathodic devices and connections to piping and conduit systems.

M. Direct Buried Piping System

1. Drying

- a. The Contractor shall ensure the annular space between the carrier pipe and conduit is dry before sealing the conduit. The Contractor shall use a dry gas purge method to remove all moisture for the piping system.
- b. The Contractor shall furnish all air compressors, desiccant dryers, pressure regulators, flow meters, inlet and outlet dew point meter, piping, valves, etc. as required to dry the piping.
- c. The Contractor shall circulate dry, compressed air through the space to absorb any moisture. The compressed air shall have a maximum pressure of 5 psig, and a dew point less than -20°F. The Contractor shall provide dew point meters at the compressed gas inlet and outlet to the piping system.
- d. The flow rate shall ensure the velocity of compressed air through the annular space is between 10 and 20 ft/sec.
- e. The Contractor shall circulate the compressed air for a minimum of 48 hours. After the initial dry out period, the Contractor shall secure the compressed air for a minimum of four hours to allow the annular space to reach equilibrium. The compressed gas system shall then be started, and the inlet and outlet dew point shall be measured. The dew point at the outlet from the annular space shall 20°F or less. The process shall be repeated if the dew point at the outlet from the annular space exceeds 20°F.
- f. Drying the annular space using the heated carrier pipe is not permitted.
- g. Contractor shall provide a written report to the owner's representative detailing Dew Point Readings for:
 - 1) Drying startup
 - 2) Drying immediately before 2 hour gas purge "equilibrium" shutdown.
 - 3) Drying immediately after 2 hour gas purge "equilibrium" shutdown.
- h. The contractor shall coordinate all testing with the owner's representative and shall allow the representative to witness any or all testing at owner's discretion.

2. The system shall be furnished with sufficient flexibility to avoid large stresses from thermal growth. Cold springing of the direct-buried pipe will not be allowed for any reason.

3. Carrier Pipe

- a. All pipe joints shall be made using specified and approved welding procedures. All pipes shall be furnished with plain ends, beveled for welding. All fittings shall match the pipe in size and wall thickness. Socket weld couplings may be used up to and including 1-1/2 inches.
- b. The carrier pipe supports shall be located at no more than 9 feet on centers. Supports shall allow for continuous airflow between the carrier pipe and conduit, and shall not restrict drainage of the conduit. Supports shall provide for insulation to thermally isolate the carrier pipe from the outer conduit. The insulation shall be protected at the support by a metal sleeve no less than 12-inches long, fitted with traverse and rotational

- arresters. Support shall allow for 1-inch of air space between the insulation and I.D. of the conduit.
- c. All direct-buried piping to be pitched to ensure all sections drain to the nearest manhole.
4. Conduit
- a. Each terminal point shall be provided with drain and vent connections for the interstitial space between the conduit and carrier pipe. Drains shall be piped to within 6-inches of the floor. Vents shall be piped to a minimum of 6-inches above grade.
5. Insulation
- a. Carrier Pipe
 - 1) The insulation shall be attached to the pipe with 0.5" x 0.015" stainless steel bands with matching seals.
 - b. Conduit
 - 1) The interface temperature between the foam and conduit shall not exceed 190°F. Foam to conduit interface temperature up to 245°F are permitted if the foam has a continuous operating temperature of 300°F (minimum). Documentation shall be provided showing the foam temperature rating and the heat loss calculation of the interface temperature. All calculations shall be based on a ground temperature of 40°F, and a soil conductivity of 15 Btu-in/hr-ft²-°F.
 - 2) Quality assurance procedures for the insulation shall include either a visual check prior to jacketing, radiographic or infrared inspection of the entire length to ensure there are no voids. The manufacturer shall include the procedures with the submittal package. The procedures shall include repair methods for any voids found at the site.
6. Field Joint Assemblies
- a. No field joint assembly shall be installed until the carrier pipe has completed a successful weld examination and hydrostatic test, and insulation has been installed at the joint.
 - b. Field Joint interface temperature between the foam and conduit shall not exceed 190°F. Foam to conduit interface temperatures up to 245°F are permitted if the foam provided has a continuous operating temperature of 300°F (minimum). Documentation shall be provided showing the foam temperature rating and the heat loss calculation of the interface temperature. All calculations shall be based on a ground temperature of 40°F, and a soil conductivity of 15 Btu-in/hr-ft² -°F.
 - c. After the manufacturer's field joint assembly has successfully completed a 5-psig air pressure test, the test holes shall be sealed by welding the HDPE.
 - d. A second heat shrink wrap seal and/or sleeve independent of the manufacturer's field joint assembly shall be installed around the joint to completely encase the entire joint area. Overlap the manufacturer's field joint assembly by 6 inches on each end.
 - e. All chemicals shall be stored at a temperature between 60°F and 85°F.
7. Factory Joints
- a. All factory joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's standard procedures. The factory joint shall be a continuous HDPE joint, and shall not leak when field joints are tested. The manufacturer shall

provide an additional shrink wrap for each factory fitting. The additional shrink wrap shall be installed by the Contractor after all testing is completed. The shrink wrap shall be in addition to any material provided with the manufacturer's standard materials used for factory joints.

8. Miscellaneous Appurtenances

- a. All miscellaneous appurtenances shall provide zero bubbles when tested with a soap solution during the pneumatic testing of the field joints.
- b. Miscellaneous appurtenances shall be defined by the Owner's Engineer, whose decision shall be final.

3.4 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Contractor to furnish a mock-up assembly be performed by the manufacturer to demonstrate to the Contractor's employees the procedure for completing a field joint assembly.
- B. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- C. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- D. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to ASME B31.1 "Power Piping", using qualified processes and welding operators according to "Quality Assurance" Article.
- E. Conduit and Cased Piping Joints: Assemble sections and finish joints with pourable or split insulation and exterior jacket sleeve, and apply shrink-wrap seals.
- F. Testing of all HDPE field joints on the HTHW system with 5 psig air pressure held continuously as the field joints are tested with a soap solution shall be required. Acceptable joints shall have zero bubbles.

3.5 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Install continuous plastic underground warning tapes during back filling of trenches for underground hydronic piping. Locate tapes 6 to 8 inches below finished grade, directly over piping. See Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for warning-tape materials and devices and their installation.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- C. Perform tests and inspections.

1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.

D. Tests and Inspections:

1. Perform the following tests high temperature hot-water piping:
 - a. Perform hydrostatic testing of all HTHW piping.
 - b. All HTHW piping shall be subjected to a minimum pressure of 600psig.
 - c. Temporary strainers shall be installed and removed at the connection of all equipment as necessary to protect the equipment during testing and during initial fill.
 - d. Piping shall be chemically cleaned after installation. Include provisions for bypassing equipment for cleaning and flushing.
 - e. All pipe weld joints shall be 100% visually inspected. Radiographic inspection shall be required on 10% of total of all pipe weld joints, randomly selected by the Architect. The Architect shall retain the testing services.
 - 1) If any of these inspected 10% of total pipe weld joints are found unacceptable, they shall be repaired and reinspected. Additionally, if any of the weld joints from this first 10% of total are found unacceptable, a second 10% of the total pipe weld joints shall be selected by the Architect for radiographic inspection. This additional inspection shall continue until a full block of 10% of the selected weld joints are found acceptable at the first testing of the joint.
 - f. Prepare written report of testing.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 23 2113.13

SECTION 23 2116- -HYDRONIC PIPING SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes special-duty valves and specialties for the following:
 - 1. Hot-water heating piping.
 - 2. High temperature Water
 - 3. Chilled-water piping.
 - 4. Makeup-water piping.
 - 5. Condensate-drain piping.
 - 6. Air-vent piping.
 - 7. Safety-valve-inlet and -outlet piping.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following:
 - 1. Valves: Include flow and pressure drop curves based on manufacturer's testing for calibrated-orifice balancing valves and automatic flow-control valves.
 - 2. Air-control devices.
 - 3. Hydronic specialties.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air-control devices, hydronic specialties, and special-duty valves to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Differential Pressure Meter: For each type of balancing valve and automatic flow control valve, include flowmeter, probes, hoses, flow charts, and carrying case.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Pipe Welding: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.
 - 1. Safety valves and pressure vessels shall bear the appropriate ASME label. Fabricate and stamp air separators and expansion tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Hydronic piping components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure and temperature unless otherwise indicated:
1. Hot-Water Heating Piping: 175 psig at 200 deg F.
 2. High Temperature Water: 400 psig at 400 deg F.
 3. Chilled-Water Piping: 175 psig at 200 deg F.
 4. Makeup-Water Piping: 80 psig at 150 deg F.
 5. Condensate-Drain Piping: 150 deg F.
 6. Air-Vent Piping: 200 deg F.
 7. Safety-Valve-Inlet and -Outlet Piping: Equal to the pressure of the piping system to which it is attached.

2.2 VALVES

- A. Gate, Globe, Check, Ball, and Butterfly Valves: Comply with requirements specified in General-Duty Valves for HVAC Piping.
- B. Automatic Temperature-Control Valves, Actuators, and Sensors: Comply with requirements specified in Instrumentation and Control for HVAC.
- C. Bronze, Calibrated-Orifice, Balancing Valves:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
 - b. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump.
 - c. Taco.
 2. Body: Bronze, ball or plug type with calibrated orifice or venturi.
 3. Ball: Brass or stainless steel.
 4. Plug: Resin.
 5. Seat: PTFE.
 6. End Connections: Threaded or socket.
 7. Pressure Gage Connections: Integral seals for portable differential pressure meter.
 8. Handle Style: Lever, with memory stop to retain set position.
 9. Rating: Class 150.
 10. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.
- D. Steel, Calibrated-Orifice, Balancing Valves:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.

- b. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump.
- c. Taco.
- 2. Body: Cast-iron or steel body, ball, plug, or globe pattern with calibrated orifice or venturi.
- 3. Ball: stainless steel.
- 4. Stem Seals: EPDM O-rings.
- 5. Disc: Glass and carbon-filled PTFE.
- 6. Seat: PTFE.
- 7. End Connections: Flanged
- 8. Pressure Gage Connections: Integral seals for portable differential pressure meter.
- 9. Handle Style: Lever, with memory stop to retain set position.
- 10. Rating: Class 150.
- 11. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

E. Ball Control Valves:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Flow Design Inc.
 - b. Griswold Controls.
 - c. Nexus Valve, Inc.
- 2. Rating: Class 150
- 3. Close-off Pressure: 200 psig.
- 4. Process Temperature Range: Zero to 212 deg F.
- 5. Body and Tail Piece: Cast bronze ASTM B 61, ASTM B 62, ASTM B 584, or forged brass with nickel plating.
- 6. End Connections: Threaded (NPT) ends.
- 7. Ball: 300 series stainless steel.
- 8. Stem and Stem Extension:
 - a. Material to match ball.
 - b. Blowout-proof design.
 - c. Sleeve or other approved means to allow valve to be opened and closed without damaging the insulation or the vapor barrier seal.
- 9. Ball Seats: Reinforced PTFE.
- 10. Stem Seal: Reinforced PTFE packing ring with a threaded packing ring follower to retain the packing ring under design pressure with the linkage removed. Alternative means, such as EPDM O-rings, are acceptable if an equivalent cycle endurance can be demonstrated by testing.
- 11. Flow Characteristic: Equal percentage.
 - a. Actuator: Refer to Section 230900 "HVAC Instrumentation and Controls"

F. Class 150 Globe Control Valves:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Flow Design Inc.
 - b. Griswold Controls.
 - c. Nexus Valve, Inc.
 2. Globe Style: Single port.
 3. Body: Cast iron complying with ASME B61.1, Class 150.
 4. End Connections: Flanged, suitable for mating to ASME B16.5, Class 150 flanges.
 5. Bonnet: Bolted.
 6. Packing: PTFE cone-ring.
 7. Plug: Top or bottom guided.
 8. Plug, Seat, and Stem: Brass or stainless steel.
 9. Process Temperature Rating: 35 to 281 deg F
 10. Leakage: 0.1 percent of maximum flow.
 11. Rangeability: Varies with valve size between 6 and 10 to 1.
 12. Modified linear flow characteristic.
 - a. Actuator: Refer to Section 230900 "HVAC Instrumentation and Controls".
- G. Class 300 Globe Control Valves NPS 2 and smaller:
1. Description:
 - a. Bolted bonnet, OS&Y ANSI B16.34.
 - b. Rating: 150 or 300 Class depending on valve application schedule.
 - c. Body Material: Carbon steel, ASTM A105 Forged.
 - d. Bonnet/Cover: Carbon steel, ASTM A105 Forged.
 - e. Ends: Socket weld.
 - f. Trim: Full stellite facing.
 - g. Wedge/Disc: Carbon steel with stellite facing.
 - h. Seat: Carbon steel with stellite facing.
 - i. Stem: 13% Cr. Stainless Steel, A-582 Type 410
 - j. Bonnet/Cover Gasket: Spiral wound 316 SS + Graphite
 - k. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.
 - l. Actuator: Refer to Section 230900 "HVAC Instrumentation and Controls".
- H. Class 300 Globe Control Valves NPS 2-1/2 and larger:
1. Description:
 - a. Bolted bonnet, OS&Y ANSI B16.34.
 - b. Rating: 150 or 300 Class depending on valve application schedule.
 - c. Body Material: Carbon steel, ASTM A216 Gr. WCB cast.
 - d. Bonnet/Cover: Carbon steel, ASTM A216 Gr. WCB cast.
 - e. Ends: Butt weld, bore to match pipe.
 - f. Trim: Full stellite facing.
 - g. Wedge/Disc: Carbon steel with stellite facing.
 - h. Seat: Carbon steel with stellite facing.
 - i. Stem: 13% Cr. Stainless Steel, A-582 Type 410
 - j. Bonnet/Cover Gasket: Spiral wound 316 SS + Graphite
 - k. Packing and Gasket: Compressed graphoil ring
 - l. Packing bolt pin: Steel
 - m. Actuator: Refer to Section 230900 "HVAC Instrumentation and Controls".

2.3 AIR-CONTROL DEVICES

A. Manual Air Vents:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Amtrol, Inc.
 - b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
 - c. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump.
 - d. Nexus Valve, Inc.
 - e. Taco, Inc.
2. Body: Bronze.
3. Internal Parts: Non-ferrous.
4. Operator: Screwdriver or thumbscrew.
5. Inlet Connection: NPS 1/2.
6. Discharge Connection: NPS 1/8.
7. Rating: Class 150
8. Maximum Operating Temperature: 225 deg F.

B. Automatic Air Vents:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Amtrol, Inc.
 - b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
 - c. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump.
 - d. Nexus Valve, Inc.
 - e. Taco, Inc.
2. Body: Bronze or cast iron.
3. Internal Parts: Nonferrous.
4. Operator: Non-corrosive metal float.
5. Inlet Connection: NPS 1/2.
6. Discharge Connection: NPS 1/4.
7. Rating: Class 150
8. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.

C. Expansion Tanks:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Grundfos pumps Corporation
 - b. Amtrol, Inc.
 - c. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump.
 - d. Taco, Inc.

2. Tank: Welded steel, rated for 150-psig working pressure and 375 deg F maximum operating temperature, with taps in bottom of tank for tank fitting and taps in end of tank for gage glass. Tanks shall be factory tested after taps are fabricated and shall be labeled according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
3. Air-Control Tank Fitting: Cast-iron body, copper-plated tube, brass vent tube plug, and stainless-steel ball check, 100-gal. unit only; sized for compression-tank diameter. Provide tank fittings for 150-psig working pressure and 250 deg F maximum operating temperature.
4. Tank Drain Fitting: Brass body, nonferrous internal parts; 150-psig working pressure and 240 deg F maximum operating temperature; constructed to admit air to compression tank, drain water, and close off system.
5. Gage Glass: Full height with dual manual shutoff valves, 3/4-inch diameter gage glass, and slotted-metal glass guard.

D. Diaphragm-Type Expansion Tanks:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Grundfos pumps, Corporation.
 - b. Amtrol, Inc.
 - c. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
 - d. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump.
 - e. Taco, Inc.
2. Tank: Welded steel, rated for 150-psig working pressure and 375 deg F maximum operating temperature. Factory test after taps are fabricated and supports installed and are labeled according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
3. Diaphragm: Securely sealed into tank to separate air charge from system water to maintain required expansion capacity.
4. Air-Charge Fittings: Schrader valve, stainless steel with EPDM seats.

E. In-Line Air Separators:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Amtrol, Inc.
 - b. Armstrong Products, Inc.
 - c. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump.
 - d. Taco, Inc.
2. Tank: One-piece cast iron with an integral weir constructed to decelerate system flow to maximize air separation.
3. Maximum Working Pressure: Up to 175 psig.
4. Maximum Operating Temperature: Up to 300 deg F.

2.4 HYDRONIC PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Y-Pattern Strainers:

1. Body: ASTM A 126, Class B, cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection for hot water NPS 2 and smaller, ASTM A105 forged carbon steel for HTHW NPS 2 and smaller, or ASTM A216 Gr. WCB cast carbon steel for HTHW NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
2. End Connections: Threaded ends for hot water NPS 2 and smaller, socketweld for HTHW NPS 2 and smaller; flanged ends for hot water NPS 2-1/2 and larger, buttweld bore to match pipe for HTHW NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
3. Strainer Screen: Stainless-steel, 20-mesh strainer, or perforated stainless-steel basket.
4. Rating: Class 150 for hot water or 300 for HTHW

B. Stainless-Steel Bellow, Flexible Connectors:

1. Body: Stainless-steel bellows with woven, flexible, bronze, wire-reinforcing protective jacket.
2. End Connections: Threaded or flanged to match equipment connected.
3. Performance: Capable of 3/4-inch misalignment.
4. Rating Class 150
5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

C. Expansion Fittings: Comply with requirements in Section 230516 "Expansion Fittings and Loops for HVAC Piping."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. Install shut off-duty valves at each branch connection to supply and return mains and at supply and return connections to each piece of equipment.
- B. Install throttling-duty valves at each return connection to heat transfer coils. Refer to details.
- C. Install calibrated-orifice, balancing valves in the return pipe of each heating or cooling terminal.
- D. Install check valves at each pump discharge and elsewhere as required to control flow direction.
- E. Install safety valves at hot-water generators and elsewhere as required by ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. Install drip-pan elbow on safety-valve outlet and pipe without valves to the outdoors; pipe drain to nearest floor drain or as indicated on Drawings. Comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1, for installation requirements.

- F. Install pressure-reducing valves at makeup-water connection to regulate system fill pressure.
- G. Control Valve Schedule:
 - 1. Hot Water Piping NPS 2 and smaller: Ball control valve.
 - 2. Hot Water Piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger: Class 150 globe control valve.
 - 3. HTHW: Class 300 globe control valve, refer to product section for size application.

3.2 HYDRONIC SPECIALTIES INSTALLATION

- A. Install manual air vents at high points in piping, at heat-transfer coils, and elsewhere as required for system air venting.
- B. Install automatic air vents at high points of system piping in mechanical equipment rooms only. Install manual vents at heat-transfer coils and elsewhere as required for air venting.
- C. Install piping from air separator to expansion tank with a 2 percent upward slope toward tank.
- D. Install in-line air separators in pump suction. Install drain valve on air separators NPS 2 and larger.
- E. Install expansion tanks on the floor. Vent and purge air from hydronic system and ensure that tank is properly charged with air to suit system Project requirements.

END OF SECTION 23 2116

SECTION 23 2123 - HYDRONIC PUMPS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Close-coupled, end-suction centrifugal pumps.
 - 2. Split-coupled, end suction centrifugal pumps.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Buna-N: Nitrile rubber.
- B. EPT: Ethylene propylene terpolymer.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of pump. Include certified performance curves and rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, final impeller dimensions, and accessories for each type of product indicated. Indicate pump's operating point on curves.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each pump.
 - 1. Show pump layout and connections.
 - 2. Include setting drawings with templates for installing foundation and anchor bolts and other anchorages.
 - 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For pumps to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Mechanical Seals: One mechanical seal for each pump.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CLOSE-COUPLED, END-SUCTION CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Grundfos – Model LC
 2. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
 3. Aurora Pump; Pentair Ltd.
 4. Buffalo Pumps, Inc.
 5. Crane Pumps & Systems.
 6. Mepco, LLC.
- B. The pumps shall be close coupled, single stage, end suction top discharge design, cast iron stainless steel fitted construction.
- C. The pumps shall have the following features:
1. All pumps shall be of the back pull-out design so that the rotating element can be removed from the casing without disconnecting the suction or discharge piping. The casing material shall be close-grained cast iron ASTM A48 - Class 30 with a minimum tensile strength of 30,000 P.S.I. Volute shall have integrally cast suction and discharge connections, gauge ports at nozzles, and vent and drain ports. Pumps with specific speed greater than 1600 shall have double volute casing. Pumps with discharge size 3" and larger shall have suction splitter to reduce pre-rotation and improve efficiency. Casings shall be designed for scheduled working pressure and can withstand hydrostatic test at 150% of the maximum working pressure under which the pump could operate at design speed.
 2. Pumps with impeller diameter larger than 5" shall be fitted with bronze renewable case wear rings.
 3. Pumps with discharge size 2.5" and larger shall have full flanged connections on both suction and discharge. Suction and discharge flanges shall be drilled to ANSI Class 125# standards and be machined flat face.
 4. Pumps with discharge sizes 2" and below shall have NPT threaded connection.
 5. The motor shaft shall be of cold rolled steel AISI 1024 with bronze sleeves covering the wetted area of the shaft. Motors with 56J frame shall have a motor shaft of stainless steel AISI 416.
 6. The pump manufacturer shall recommend the proper mechanical seal based on the pressure, temperature and liquid outlined on the equipment schedule. Mechanical seals, at a minimum, shall have ceramic stationary seats, carbon rotating rings, buna elastomers and stainless steel hardware. Application of a mechanical seal shall be internally flushed type, without requiring external flushing lines. Seals shall be capable of being inspected and easily replaced without removing the piping or volute.
 7. Impeller shall be of the enclosed francis vane type, single suction design, made of Stainless Steel 304 (UNS S30400), both hydraulically and dynamically balanced to ISO 1940-1:2003 balance grade G6.3 and keyed to the shaft. The impeller shall be trimmed to meet the specific hydraulic requirements.

8. Pump Construction. The standard material of construction for the pump shall be as below. Special material shall be available as option to suit the liquid pumped.
 - a. Volute: Cast Iron ASTM A48 - Class 30
 - b. Case Wear ring: Tin Bronze ASTM B584-90500
 - c. Impeller: Stainless Steel 304 (UNS S30400)
 - d. Shaft: Cold Roll Steel AISI 1024 or Stainless Steel AISI 416
 - e. Shaft Sleeve: Bronze III932 C89835
 - f. Mechanical Seals: Carbon – Ceramic with Buna Elastomers and Stainless Steel hardware

- D. Pump rotation shall be clockwise as viewed from the motor end.
- E. Cast iron base with integrally cast drip lip, grouting holes and tapped drain outlet shall be provided upon requirement.
- F. Pump shall be of a maintainable design for ease of maintenance and should use machine fit parts that are easily disassembled.
- G. Each pump shall be painted with one coat of high quality factory approved paint and name-plated before shipment from the factory.
- H. Where noted on schedule the pump shall also be NSF-50 or NSF-61 certified.
- I. Pumps shall be manufactured and assembled in an ISO-9001 certified facility.

2.2 SPLIT-COUPLED, END-SUCTION CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Grundfos – Model LCS
 2. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
 3. Aurora Pump; Pentair Ltd.
 4. Buffalo Pumps, Inc.
 5. Crane Pumps & Systems.
 6. Mepco, LLC.
- B. The pumps shall be split coupled, base mounted, single stage, end suction top discharge design, cast iron stainless steel fitted construction.
- C. The pumps shall have the following features:
 1. All pumps shall be of the back pull-out design so that the rotating element can be removed from the casing without disconnecting the suction or discharge piping. The casing material shall be close-grained cast iron ASTM A48 - Class 30 with a minimum tensile strength of 30,000 P.S.I. Volute shall have integrally cast suction and discharge connections, gauge ports at nozzles, and vent and drain ports. Pumps with specific speed greater than 1600 shall have double volute casing. Pumps with discharge size 3" and larger shall have suction splitter to reduce pre-rotation and improve efficiency. Casings shall be designed for

scheduled working pressure and can withstand hydrostatic test at 150% of the maximum working pressure under which the pump could operate at design speed.

- a. Pumps with impeller diameter larger than 5" shall be fitted with vesconite renewable case wear rings.
 - b. Pumps with discharge size 2.5" and larger shall have full flanged connections on both suction and discharge. Suction and discharge flanges shall be drilled to ANSI Class 125# standards and be machined flat face.
 - c. Pumps with discharge sizes 2" and below shall have NPT threaded connection.
 - d. Pump shall be mounted on a structural steel base with cast iron motor deck and a ductile iron pump support.
 - e. The pump shaft shall be of solid stainless steel AISI 303.
 - f. The pump manufacturer shall recommend the proper mechanical seal based on the pressure, temperature and liquid outlined on the equipment schedule. Mechanical seals, at a minimum, shall have ceramic stationary seats, carbon rotating rings, Buna elastomers and stainless steel hardware. Application of a mechanical seal shall be internally flushed type, without requiring external flushing lines. Seals shall be capable of being inspected and easily replaced without removing the piping or volute.
 - g. Recirculation line of nylon tubing with brass fitting shall be provided to vent the mechanical seal and cool the bushing (shaft bearing).
 - h. Impeller shall be of the enclosed francis vane type, single suction design, made of Stainless Steel 304 (UNS S30400), both hydraulically and dynamically balanced to ISO 1940-1:2003 balance grade G6.3 and keyed to the shaft. The impeller shall be trimmed to meet the specific hydraulic requirements.
 - i. Pump Construction. The standard material of construction for the pump shall be as below. Special material shall be available as option to suit the liquid pumped.
 - 1) Volute: Cast iron ASTM A48 - Class 30
 - 2) Case Wear ring: Vesconite
 - 3) Impeller: Stainless Steel 304 (UNS S30400)
 - 4) Shaft: Stainless Steel AISI 303
 - 5) Coupling: 2011-T3, 2017-T4, or 2024-T351 Aluminium
 - 6) Motor Bracket: Cast Iron ASTM A48- Class 30
 - 7) Bushing (shaft bearing): Vesconite
 - 8) Pump Support: Ductile Iron ASTM 536- Class 65
 - 9) Mechanical Seals: Carbon – Ceramic with Buna Elastomers and Stainless Steel hardware
 - 10) Recirculation Line: Nylon Tubing with Brass Fittings
- D. Pump shall be connected to the drive motor by a rigid, aluminum, axially split coupling capable of withstanding all torsional, radial and axial loads. The coupling design shall facilitate alignment of the motor and pump shaft.
- E. The base shall be of bolted construction. The motor deck shall be cast iron with ductile iron pump support. The side rail shall be structural steel. The minimum stiffness of the base shall conform to ANSI/HI 1.3-2000, section 1.3.5.3 for *Horizontal Base Plate*

Design standards. The entire unit shall not require grouting for operation within Hydraulic Institute Standards for Vibration.

- F. Pump rotation shall be clockwise as viewed from the motor end.
- G. Pump shall be of a maintainable design for ease of maintenance and should use machine fit parts that are easily disassembled.
- H. Each pump shall be painted with one coat of high quality factory approved paint and name-plated before shipment from the factory.
- I. Where noted on schedule the pump shall also be NSF-61 certified.
- J. Pumps shall be manufactured and assembled in an ISO-9001 certified facility

2.3 PUMP SPECIALTY FITTINGS

- A. Suction Diffuser:
 - 1. Angle pattern.
 - 2. 175-psig pressure rating, cast-iron body and end cap, pump-inlet fitting.
 - 3. Bronze startup and bronze or stainless-steel permanent strainers.
 - 4. Bronze or stainless-steel straightening vanes.
 - 5. Drain plug.
 - 6. Factory-fabricated support.
- B. Triple-Duty Valve:
 - 1. Angle or straight pattern.
 - 2. 175-psig pressure rating, cast-iron body, pump-discharge fitting.
 - 3. Drain plug and bronze-fitted shutoff, balancing, and check valve features.
 - 4. Brass gage ports with integral check valve and orifice for flow measurement.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine equipment foundations and anchor-bolt locations for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before pump installation.
- C. Examine foundations and inertia bases for suitable conditions where pumps are to be installed.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PUMP INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with HI 1.4.
- B. Install pumps to provide access for periodic maintenance including removing motors, impellers, couplings, and accessories.
- C. Independently support pumps and piping so weight of piping is not supported by pumps and weight of pumps is not supported by piping.
- D. Equipment Mounting:
 - 1. Install base-mounted pumps on cast-in-place concrete equipment bases. Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
 - 2. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."

3.3 ALIGNMENT

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform alignment service.
- B. Comply with requirements in Hydronics Institute standards for alignment of pump and motor shaft. Add shims to the motor feet and bolt motor to base frame. Do not use grout between motor feet and base frame.
- C. Comply with pump and coupling manufacturers' written instructions.
- D. After alignment is correct, tighten foundation bolts evenly but not too firmly. Completely fill baseplate with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout while metal blocks and shims or wedges are in place. After grout has cured, fully tighten foundation bolts.

3.4 CONNECTIONS

- A. Where installing piping adjacent to pump, allow space for service and maintenance.
- B. Connect piping to pumps. Install valves that are same size as piping connected to pumps.
- C. Install suction and discharge pipe sizes equal to or greater than diameter of pump nozzles.
- D. Install triple-duty valve on discharge side of pumps.
- E. Install Y-type strainer and shutoff valve on suction side of pumps.
- F. Install flexible connectors on suction and discharge sides of base-mounted pumps between pump casing and valves.

- G. Install pressure gages on pump suction and discharge or at integral pressure-gage tapping.
- H. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- I. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.5 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
 - 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 2. Check piping connections for tightness.
 - 3. Clean strainers on suction piping.
 - 4. Perform the following startup checks for each pump before starting:
 - a. Verify bearing lubrication.
 - b. Verify that pump is free to rotate by hand and that pump for handling hot liquid is free to rotate with pump hot and cold. If pump is bound or drags, do not operate until cause of trouble is determined and corrected.
 - c. Verify that pump is rotating in the correct direction.
 - 5. Prime pump by opening suction valves and closing drains, and prepare pump for operation.
 - 6. Start motor.
 - 7. Open discharge valve slowly.

END OF SECTION 23 2123

SECTION 23 2300 - REFRIGERANT PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Refrigerant pipes and fittings.
 - 2. Refrigerant piping valves and specialties.
 - 3. Refrigerants.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve and refrigerant piping specialty.
 - 1. Include pressure drop, based on manufacturer's test data, for the following:
 - a. Thermostatic expansion valves.
 - b. Solenoid valves.
 - c. Hot-gas bypass valves.
 - d. Filter dryers.
 - e. Strainers.
 - f. Pressure-regulating valves.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Show layout of refrigerant piping and specialties, including pipe, tube, and fitting sizes; flow capacities; valve arrangements and locations; slopes of horizontal runs; oil traps; double risers; wall and floor penetrations; and equipment connection details.
 - 2. Show interface and spatial relationships between piping and equipment.
 - 3. Shop Drawing Scale: 1/4 inch equals 1 foot.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For refrigerant valves and piping specialties to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to 2010 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
- B. Comply with ASHRAE 15, "Safety Code for Refrigeration Systems."
- C. Comply with ASME B31.5, "Refrigeration Piping and Heat Transfer Components."

1.7 PRODUCT STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Store piping with end caps in place to ensure that piping interior and exterior are clean when installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Line Test Pressure for Refrigerant R-134a:
 - 1. Suction Lines for Air-Conditioning Applications: 115 psig.
 - 2. Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: 225 psig.
 - 3. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines: 225 psig.
- B. Line Test Pressure for Refrigerant R-410A:
 - 1. Suction Lines for Air-Conditioning Applications: 300 psig.
 - 2. Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: 535 psig.
 - 3. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines: 535 psig.

2.2 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Copper Tube: ASTM B 280, Type ACR.
- B. Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22.
- C. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.
- D. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M.
- E. Flexible Connectors:
 - 1. Body: Tin-bronze bellows with woven, flexible, tinned-bronze-wire-reinforced protective jacket.
 - 2. End Connections: Socket ends.
 - 3. Offset Performance: Capable of minimum 3/4-inch misalignment in minimum 7-inch-long assembly.
 - 4. Working Pressure Rating: Factory test at minimum 500 psig.
 - 5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

2.3 VALVES AND SPECIALTIES

A. Diaphragm Packless Valves:

1. Body and Bonnet: Forged brass or cast bronze; globe design with straight-through or angle pattern.
2. Diaphragm: Phosphor bronze and stainless steel with stainless-steel spring.
3. Operator: Rising stem and hand wheel.
4. Seat: Nylon.
5. End Connections: Socket, union, or flanged.
6. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

B. Check Valves:

1. Body: Ductile iron, forged brass, or cast bronze; globe pattern.
2. Bonnet: Bolted ductile iron, forged brass, or cast bronze; or brass hex plug.
3. Piston: Removable polytetrafluoroethylene seat.
4. Closing Spring: Stainless steel.
5. Manual Opening Stem: Seal cap, plated-steel stem, and graphite seal.
6. End Connections: Socket, union, threaded, or flanged.
7. Maximum Opening Pressure: 0.50 psig.
8. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
9. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

C. Service Valves:

1. Body: Forged brass with brass cap including key end to remove core.
2. Core: Removable ball-type check valve with stainless-steel spring.
3. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
4. End Connections: Copper spring.
5. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.

D. Solenoid Valves: Comply with AHRI 760 and UL 429; listed and labeled by a National Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL).

1. Body and Bonnet: Plated steel.
2. Solenoid Tube, Plunger, Closing Spring, and Seat Orifice: Stainless steel.
3. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
4. End Connections: Threaded.
5. Electrical: Molded, watertight coil in NEMA 250 enclosure of type required by location with 1/2-inch conduit adapter, and 24]-V ac coil.
6. Working Pressure Rating: 400 psig.
7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.

E. Thermostatic Expansion Valves: Comply with AHRI 750.

1. Body, Bonnet, and Seal Cap: Forged brass or steel.
2. Diaphragm, Piston, Closing Spring, and Seat Insert: Stainless steel.
3. Packing and Gaskets: Non-asbestos.

4. Capillary and Bulb: Copper tubing filled with refrigerant charge.
5. Suction Temperature: 40 deg F.
6. Superheat: Adjustable.
7. Reverse-flow option (for heat-pump applications).
8. End Connections: Socket, flare, or threaded union.
9. Working Pressure Rating: 400 psig.

F. Straight-Type Strainers:

1. Body: Welded steel with corrosion-resistant coating.
2. Screen: 100-mesh stainless steel.
3. End Connections: Socket or flare.
4. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.
6. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F

G. Moisture/Liquid Indicators:

1. Body: Forged brass.
2. Window: Replaceable, clear, fused glass window with indicating element protected by filter screen.
3. Indicator: Color coded to show moisture content in parts per million (ppm).
4. Minimum Moisture Indicator Sensitivity: Indicate moisture above 60 ppm.
5. End Connections: Socket or flare.
6. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.

H. Permanent Filter Dryers: Comply with AHRI 730.

1. Body and Cover: Painted-steel shell.
2. Filter Media: 10 micron, pleated with integral end rings; stainless-steel support.
3. Desiccant Media: Activated charcoal.
4. Designed for reverse flow (for heat-pump applications).
5. End Connections: Socket.
6. Access Ports: NPS 1/4 connections at entering and leaving sides for pressure differential measurement.
7. Maximum Pressure Loss: 2 psig
8. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
9. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.
10. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

I. Receivers: Comply with AHRI 495.

1. Comply with 2010 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code; listed and labeled by an NRTL.
2. Comply with UL 207; listed and labeled by an NRTL.
3. Body: Welded steel with corrosion-resistant coating.
4. Tappings: Inlet, outlet, liquid level indicator, and safety relief valve.

5. End Connections: Socket or threaded.
6. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

J. Liquid Accumulators: Comply with AHRI 495.

1. Body: Welded steel with corrosion-resistant coating.
2. End Connections: Socket or threaded.
3. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
4. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

2.4 REFRIGERANTS

- A. ASHRAE 34, R-134a: Tetrafluoroethane.
- B. ASHRAE 34, R-410A: Pentafluoroethane/Difluoromethane.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS FOR REFRIGERANT R-134a

- A. Drawn Copper Type ACR ASTM B280, brazed joints, copper or copper alloy fittings.

3.2 PIPING APPLICATIONS FOR REFRIGERANT R-410A

- A. Drawn Copper Type ACR ASTM B280, brazed joints, copper or copper alloy fittings.

3.3 VALVE AND SPECIALTY APPLICATIONS

- A. Install split system refrigerant line sets per manufacturer recommendations with manufacturer provided valve and accessory kits.
- B. Install service valves for gage taps at inlet and outlet of hot-gas bypass valves and strainers if they are not an integral part of valves and strainers.
- C. Install a check valve at the compressor discharge and a liquid accumulator at the compressor suction connection.
- D. Except as otherwise indicated, install diaphragm packless valves on inlet and outlet side of filter dryers.
- E. Install a full-size, three-valve bypass around filter dryers.
- F. Install solenoid valves upstream from each expansion valve and hot-gas bypass valve. Install solenoid valves in horizontal lines with coil at top.
- G. Install thermostatic expansion valves as close as possible to distributors on evaporators.
 1. Install valve so diaphragm case is warmer than bulb.

2. Secure bulb to clean, straight, horizontal section of suction line using two bulb straps. Do not mount bulb in a trap or at bottom of the line.
 3. If external equalizer lines are required, make connection where it will reflect suction-line pressure at bulb location.
- H. Install safety relief valves where required by 2010 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. Pipe safety-relief-valve discharge line to outside according to ASHRAE 15.
- I. Install moisture/liquid indicators in liquid line at the inlet of the thermostatic expansion valve or at the inlet of the evaporator coil capillary tube.
- J. Install strainers upstream from and adjacent to the following unless they are furnished as an integral assembly for the device being protected:
1. Solenoid valves.
 2. Thermostatic expansion valves.
 3. Hot-gas bypass valves.
 4. Compressor.
- K. Install filter dryers in liquid line between compressor and thermostatic expansion valve, and in the suction line at the compressor.
- L. Install receivers sized to accommodate pump-down charge.
- M. Install flexible connectors at compressors.

3.4 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems; indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings.
- B. Install refrigerant piping according to ASHRAE 15.
- C. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- E. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- F. Install piping adjacent to machines to allow service and maintenance.
- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

- I. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- J. Install piping as short and direct as possible, with a minimum number of joints, elbows, and fittings.
- K. Arrange piping to allow inspection and service of refrigeration equipment. Install valves and specialties in accessible locations to allow for service and inspection. Install access doors or panels as specified in Section 083113 "Access Doors and Frames" if valves or equipment requiring maintenance is concealed behind finished surfaces.
- L. Install refrigerant piping in protective conduit where installed belowground.
- M. Install refrigerant piping in rigid or flexible conduit in locations where exposed to mechanical injury.
- N. Slope refrigerant piping as follows:
 - 1. Install horizontal hot-gas discharge piping with a uniform slope downward away from compressor.
 - 2. Install horizontal suction lines with a uniform slope downward to compressor.
 - 3. Install traps and double risers to entrain oil in vertical runs.
 - 4. Liquid lines may be installed level.
- O. When brazing or soldering, remove solenoid-valve coils and sight glasses; also remove valve stems, seats, and packing, and accessible internal parts of refrigerant specialties. Do not apply heat near expansion-valve bulb.
- P. Install piping with adequate clearance between pipe and adjacent walls and hangers or between pipes for insulation installation.
- Q. Identify refrigerant piping and valves according to Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- R. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- S. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 230518 "Escutcheons for HVAC Piping."

3.5 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.

- C. Fill pipe and fittings with an inert gas (nitrogen or carbon dioxide), during brazing or welding, to prevent scale formation.
- D. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," Chapter "Pipe and Tube."
 - 1. Use Type BCuP (copper-phosphorus) alloy for joining copper socket fittings with copper pipe.
 - 2. Use Type BAg (cadmium-free silver) alloy for joining copper with bronze or steel.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 - 1. Comply with ASME B31.5, Chapter VI.
 - 2. Test refrigerant piping, specialties, and receivers. Isolate compressor, condenser, evaporator, and safety devices from test pressure if they are not rated above the test pressure.
 - 3. Test high- and low-pressure side piping of each system separately at not less than the pressures indicated in "Performance Requirements" Article.
 - a. Fill system with nitrogen to the required test pressure.
 - b. System shall maintain test pressure at the manifold gage throughout duration of test.
 - c. Test joints and fittings with electronic leak detector or by brushing a small amount of soap and glycerin solution over joints.
 - d. Remake leaking joints using new materials, and retest until satisfactory results are achieved.
- B. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.7 SYSTEM CHARGING

- A. Charge system using the following procedures:
 - 1. Install core in filter dryers after leak test but before evacuation.
 - 2. Evacuate entire refrigerant system with a vacuum pump to 500 micrometers. If vacuum holds for 12 hours, system is ready for charging.
 - 3. Break vacuum with refrigerant gas, allowing pressure to build up to 2 psig.
 - 4. Charge system with a new filter-dryer core in charging line.

3.8 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust thermostatic expansion valve to obtain proper evaporator superheat.
- B. Adjust high- and low-pressure switch settings to avoid short cycling in response to fluctuating suction pressure.
- C. Adjust set-point temperature of air-conditioning or chilled-water controllers to the system design temperature.

- D. Perform the following adjustments before operating the refrigeration system, according to manufacturer's written instructions:
1. Open shutoff valves in condenser water circuit.
 2. Verify that compressor oil level is correct.
 3. Open compressor suction and discharge valves.
 4. Open refrigerant valves except bypass valves that are used for other purposes.
 5. Check open compressor-motor alignment and verify lubrication for motors and bearings.
- E. Replace core of replaceable filter dryer after system has been adjusted and after design flow rates and pressures are established.

END OF SECTION 23 2300

SECTION 23 2500-HVAC WATER TREATMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following HVAC water-treatment systems:

1. Bypass chemical-feed equipment and controls
2. Chemical treatment test equipment
3. HVAC water-treatment chemicals.

1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Water quality for HVAC systems shall minimize corrosion, scale buildup, and biological growth for optimum efficiency of HVAC equipment without creating a hazard to operating personnel or the environment.
- B. Base HVAC water treatment on quality of water available at Project site, HVAC system equipment material characteristics and functional performance characteristics, operating personnel capabilities, and requirements and guidelines of authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Closed hydronic systems, including hot-water heating and closed loop condenser water, shall have the following water qualities:
1. pH: Maintain a value within 9.0 to 10.5.
 2. "P" Alkalinity: Maintain a value within 100 to 500 ppm.
 3. Boron: Maintain a value within 100 to 200 ppm.
 4. Chemical Oxygen Demand: Maintain a maximum value of 100 ppm.
 5. Soluble Copper: Maintain a maximum value of 0.20 ppm.
 6. TDS: Maintain a maximum value of 10 ppm.
 7. Ammonia: Maintain a maximum value of 20 ppm.
 8. Free Caustic Alkalinity: Maintain a maximum value of 20 ppm.
 9. Microbiological Limits:
 - a. Total Aerobic Plate Count: Maintain a maximum value of 1000 organisms/ml.
 - b. Total Anaerobic Plate Count: Maintain a maximum value of 100 organisms/ml.
 - c. Nitrate Reducers: Maintain a maximum value of 100 organisms/ml.
 - d. Sulfate Reducers: Maintain a maximum value of 0 organisms/ml.
 - e. Iron Bacteria: Maintain a maximum value of 0 organisms/ml.
- D. Passivation for Galvanized Steel: For the first 60 days of operation.
1. pH: Maintain a value within 7 to 8.
 2. Calcium Carbonate Hardness: Maintain a value within 100 to 300 ppm.
 3. Calcium Carbonate Alkalinity: Maintain a value within 100 to 300 ppm.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Pretreatment and chemical treatment equipment showing tanks, maintenance space required, and piping connections to HVAC systems. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Wiring Diagrams: Power and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control test reports.
- B. Other Informational Submittals:
 - 1. Water-Treatment Program: Written sequence of operation on an annual basis for the application equipment required to achieve water quality defined in the "Performance Requirements" Article above.
 - 2. Water Analysis: Illustrate water quality available at Project site.
 - 3. Passivation Confirmation Report: Verify passivation of galvanized-steel surfaces, and confirm this observation in a letter to Architect.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. HVAC Water-Treatment Service Provider Qualifications: An experienced HVAC water-treatment service provider capable of analyzing water qualities, installing water-treatment equipment, and applying water treatment as specified in this Section.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Arc Water Treatment Co.
 - 2. Atlantis Technologies (for open Loop system w/heated enclosure)
 - 3. Boland Trane Services.
 - 4. Metro Group. Inc. (The); Metropolitan Refining Div.
 - 5. ONDEO Nalco Company.
 - 6. Watcon, Inc.

2.2 MANUAL CHEMICAL-FEED EQUIPMENT

- A. Bypass Feeders: Steel, with corrosion-resistant exterior coating, minimum 3-1/2-inch fill opening in the top, and NPS 3/4 bottom inlet and top side outlet. Quarter turn or threaded fill cap with gasket seal and diaphragm to lock the top on the feeder when exposed to system pressure in the vessel.
1. Capacity: 2 gal..
 2. Minimum Working Pressure: 125 psig.

2.3 AUTOMATIC CHEMICAL-FEED EQUIPMENT

- A. Water Meter:
1. AWWA C700, oscillating-piston, magnetic-drive, totalization meter.
 2. Body: Bronze.
 3. Maximum Pressure Loss at Design Flow: 3 psig.
 4. Registration: Gallons or cubic feet.
 5. Controls: Flow-control switch with normally open contacts; rated for maximum 10 A, 250-V ac; and that will close at adjustable increments of total flow.
- B. Inhibitor Injection Timers:
1. Microprocessor-based controller with LCD display in NEMA 250, Type 12 enclosure with gasketed and lockable door. Interface for start/stop and status indication at central workstation as described in Instrumentation and Control for HVAC.
 2. Programmable timers with infinite adjustment over full range, and mounted in cabinet with hand-off-auto switches and status lights.
 3. Test switch.
 4. Hand-off-auto switch for chemical pump.
 5. Illuminated legend to indicate feed when pump is activated.
 6. Programmable lockout timer with indicator light. Lockout timer to deactivate the pump and activate alarm circuits.
 7. LCD makeup totalizer to measure amount of makeup and bleed-off water from two water meter inputs.
- C. pH Controller:
1. Microprocessor-based controller, 1 percent accuracy in a range from zero to 14 units. Incorporate solid-state integrated circuits and digital LCD display in NEMA 250, Type 12 enclosure with gasketed and lockable door. Interface for start/stop and status indication at central workstation as described in Instrumentation and Control for HVAC.
 2. Digital display and touch pad for input.
 3. Sensor probe adaptable to sample stream manifold.
 4. High, low, and normal pH indication.
 5. High or low pH alarm light, trip points field adjustable; with silence switch.
 6. Hand-off-auto switch for acid pump.
 7. Internal adjustable hysteresis or deadband.

D. TDS Controller:

1. Microprocessor-based controller, 1 percent accuracy in a range from zero to 5000 micromhos. Incorporate solid-state integrated circuits and digital LCD display in NEMA 250, Type 12 enclosure with gasketed and lockable door. Interface for start/stop and status indication at central workstation as described in Instrumentation and Control for HVAC.
2. Digital display and touch pad for input.
3. Sensor probe adaptable to sample stream manifold.
4. High, low, and normal conductance indication.
5. High or low conductance alarm light, trip points field adjustable; with silence switch.
6. Hand-off-auto switch for solenoid bleed-off valve.
7. Bleed-off valve activated indication.
8. Internal adjustable hysteresis or deadband.
9. Bleed Valves:
 - a. Cooling Systems: Forged-brass body, globe pattern, general-purpose solenoid with continuous-duty coil, or motorized valve.

E. Biocide Feeder Timer:

1. Microprocessor-based controller with digital LCD display in NEMA 250, Type 12 enclosure with gasketed and lockable door. Interface for start/stop and status indication at central workstation as described in Instrumentation and Control for HVAC.
2. 24-hour timer with 14-day skip feature to permit activation any hour of day.
3. Precision, solid-state, bleed-off lockout timer and clock-controlled biocide pump timer. Prebleed and bleed lockout timers.
4. Solid-state alternator to enable use of two different formulations.
5. 24-hour display of time of day.
6. 14-day display of day of week.
7. Battery backup so clock is not disturbed by power outages.
8. Hand-off-auto switches for biocide pumps.
9. Biocide A and Biocide B pump running indication.

F. Chemical Solution Tanks:

1. Chemical-resistant reservoirs fabricated from high-density opaque polyethylene with minimum 110 percent containment vessel.
2. Molded cover with recess for mounting pump.
3. Capacity: 55 gal..

G. Chemical Solution Injection Pumps:

1. Self-priming, positive-displacement; rated for intended chemical with minimum 25 percent safety factor for design pressure and temperature.
2. Adjustable flow rate.
3. Metal and thermoplastic construction.
4. Built-in relief valve.

5. Fully enclosed, continuous-duty, single-phase motor. Comply with requirements in Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment.
- H. Chemical Solution Tubing: Polyethylene tubing with compression fittings and joints.
- I. Injection Assembly:
 1. Quill: Minimum NPS 1/2 with insertion length sufficient to discharge into at least 25 percent of pipe diameter.
 2. Ball Valve: Three-piece, stainless steel; selected to fit quill.
 3. Packing Gland: Mechanical seal on quill of sufficient length to allow quill removal during system operation.
 4. Assembly Pressure/Temperature Rating: Minimum 600 psig at 200 deg F.

2.4 CHEMICAL TREATMENT TEST EQUIPMENT

- A. Test Kit: Manufacturer-recommended equipment and chemicals in a wall-mounting cabinet for testing pH, TDS, inhibitor, chloride, alkalinity, and hardness; sulfite and testable polymer tests for high-pressure boilers, and oxidizing biocide test for open cooling systems.
- B. Corrosion Test-Coupon Assembly: Constructed of corrosive-resistant material, complete with piping, valves, and mild steel and copper coupons. Locate copper coupon downstream from mild steel coupon in the test-coupon assembly.
 1. Two-station rack for closed-loop systems.
 2. Four-station rack for open systems.

2.5 CHEMICALS

- A. Chemicals shall be as recommended by water-treatment system manufacturer that are compatible with piping system components and connected equipment, and that can attain water quality specified in Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article.
- B. Water Softener Chemicals:
 1. Mineral: High-capacity, sulfonated-polystyrene ion-exchange resin that is stable over entire pH range with good resistance to bead fracture from attrition or shock. Resin exchange capacity minimum 30,000 grains/cu. ft. of calcium carbonate of resin when regenerated with 15 lb of salt.
 2. Salt for Brine Tanks: High-purity sodium chloride, free of dirt and foreign material. Rock and granulated forms are not acceptable.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 WATER ANALYSIS

- A. Perform an analysis of supply water to determine quality of water available at Project site.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install chemical application equipment on concrete bases, level and plumb. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units so controls and devices that require servicing are accessible. Anchor chemical tanks and floor-mounting accessories to substrate.
- B. Install water testing equipment on wall near water chemical application equipment.
- C. Install interconnecting control wiring for chemical treatment controls and sensors.
- D. Mount sensors and injectors in piping circuits.
- E. Bypass Feeders: Install in closed hydronic systems, including hot-water heating and chilled water, and equipped with the following:
 - 1. Install bypass feeder in a bypass circuit around circulating pumps, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. Install water meter in makeup water supply.
 - 3. Install test-coupon assembly in bypass circuit around circulating pumps, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
 - 4. Install a gate or full-port ball isolation valves on inlet, outlet, and drain below feeder inlet.
 - 5. Install a swing check on inlet after the isolation valve.
- F. Install automatic chemical-feed equipment for condenser water and include the following:
 - 1. Install makeup water softener.
 - 2. Install water meter in makeup water supply.
 - 3. Install inhibitor injection pumps and solution tanks with injection timer sensing contacts in water meter.
 - a. Pumps shall operate for timed interval on contact closure at water meter in makeup water supply connection. Injection pump shall discharge into boiler feedwater tank or feedwater supply connection at boiler.
 - 4. Install test equipment and provide test-kit to Owner. Install test-coupon assembly in bypass circuit around circulating pumps, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
 - 5. Install TDS controller with sensor and bleed valves.
 - a. Bleed valves shall cycle to maintain maximum TDS concentration.
 - 6. Install pH sensor and controller with injection pumps and solution tanks.
 - a. Injector pumps shall operate to maintain required pH.
 - 7. Install biocide feeder alternating timer with two sets of injection pumps and solution tanks.
 - a. Injection pumps shall operate to feed biocide on an alternating basis.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to equipment to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Make piping connections between HVAC water-treatment equipment and dissimilar-metal piping with dielectric fittings. Dielectric fittings are specified in
- D. Install shutoff valves on HVAC water-treatment equipment inlet and outlet. Metal general-duty valves are specified in General-Duty Valves for HVAC Piping.
- E. Refer to Domestic Water Piping Specialties for backflow preventers required in makeup water connections to potable-water systems.
- F. Confirm applicable electrical requirements in electrical Sections for connecting electrical equipment.
- G. Ground equipment according to Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems.
- H. Connect wiring according to Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections. Report results in writing.
- B. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
 - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation, including piping and electrical connections.
 - 2. Inspect piping and equipment to determine that systems and equipment have been cleaned, flushed, and filled with water, and are fully operational before introducing chemicals for water-treatment system.
 - 3. Place HVAC water-treatment system into operation and calibrate controls during the preliminary phase of HVAC systems' startup procedures.
 - 4. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is tested and satisfactory test results are achieved.
 - 5. Test for leaks and defects. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.

6. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, and replaced water piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that has been covered or concealed before it has been tested and approved.
 7. Cap and subject piping to static water pressure of 50 psig above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow test pressure to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects.
 8. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping until no leaks exist.
- D. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- E. At four-week intervals following Substantial Completion, perform separate water analyses on hydronic systems to show that automatic chemical-feed systems are maintaining water quality within performance requirements specified in this Section. Submit written reports of water analysis advising Owner of changes necessary to adhere to Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article.
- F. Comply with ASTM D 3370 and with the following standards:
1. Silica: ASTM D 859.
 2. Acidity and Alkalinity: ASTM D 1067.
 3. Iron: ASTM D 1068.
 4. Water Hardness: ASTM D 1126.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain HVAC water-treatment systems and equipment. Refer to Division 01.

END OF SECTION 23 2500

SECTION 23 3113 - METAL DUCTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Single-wall rectangular ducts and fittings.
- 2. Single-wall round ducts and fittings.
- 3. Sheet metal materials.
- 4. Duct liner.
- 5. Sealants and gaskets.
- 6. Insulated Flexible Ducts
- 7. Hangers and supports.

- B. Related Sections:

- 1. Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing requirements for metal ducts.
- 2. Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for dampers, sound-control devices, duct-mounting access doors and panels, turning vanes, and flexible ducts.
- 3. Section 230713 "Duct Insulation" for duct insulation and jacketing requirements.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following products:

- 1. Sealants and gaskets.
- 2. Prefabricated double wall ducts

- B. Shop Drawings:

- 1. Fabrication, assembly, and installation, including plans, elevations, sections, components, and attachments to other work.
- 2. Factory- and shop-fabricated ducts and fittings.
- 3. Duct layout indicating sizes, configuration, liner material, and static-pressure classes.
- 4. Elevation of top and bottom of ducts.
- 5. Dimensions of main duct runs from building grid lines.
- 6. Fittings.
- 7. Reinforcement and spacing.
- 8. Seam and joint construction.

9. Penetrations through fire-rated and other partitions.
10. Equipment installation based on equipment being used on Project.
11. Locations for duct accessories, including dampers, turning vanes, and access doors and panels.
12. Hangers and supports, including methods for duct and building attachment, seismic restraints, and vibration isolation.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: A single set of plans or BIM model, drawn to scale, showing the items described in this Section, and coordinated with all building trades.
- B. Welding certificates.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel in accordance with the following:
 1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel," for hangers and supports.
 2. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum," for aluminum supports.
 3. AWS D9.1/D9.1M, "Sheet Metal Welding Code," for duct joint and seam welding.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Duct Design: Duct construction, including sheet metal thicknesses, seam and joint construction, reinforcements, and hangers and supports, shall comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" and with performance requirements and design criteria indicated in "Duct Schedule" Article.

Structural Performance: Duct hangers and supports shall withstand the effects of gravity within limits and under conditions described in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible".

- B. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
- C. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment," and Section 7 - "Construction and System Startup."
- D. ASHRAE/IES Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6.4.4 - "HVAC System Construction and Insulation."

- E. Duct Dimensions: Unless otherwise indicated, all duct dimensions indicated on Drawings are inside clear dimensions and do not include insulation or duct wall thickness.

2.2 SINGLE-WALL RECTANGULAR DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Construct ducts of galvanized sheet steel unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. For ducts exposed to weather, construct of Type 304 stainless steel indicated by manufacturer to be suitable for outdoor installation.
- B. Transverse Joints: Fabricate joints in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-1, "Rectangular Duct/Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
 - 1. For ducts with longest side less than 36 inches, select joint types in accordance with Figure 2-1.
 - 2. For ducts with longest side 36 inches or greater, the transverse joints shall be made with the Ductmate, Ward or Nexus ductwork connection system.
- C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Duct/Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible." All longitudinal seams shall be made with a Pittsburgh Lock (Type L-1).
- D. Elbows, Transitions, Offsets, Branch Connections, and Other Duct Construction: Select types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Ch. 4, "Fittings and Other Construction," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

2.3 SINGLE-WALL ROUND DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Ch. 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Construct ducts of galvanized sheet steel unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. For ducts exposed to weather, construct of Type 304 stainless steel indicated by manufacturer to be suitable for outdoor installation.

3. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
 - b. Elgen Manufacturing.
 - c. SEMCO LLC.
 - d. Sheet Metal Connectors, Inc.
- B. Flat-Oval Ducts: Indicated dimensions are the duct width (major dimension) and diameter of the round sides connecting the flat portions of the duct (minor dimension).
- C. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-1, "Round Duct Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
 1. Drawband and crimp type transverse joints (RT-3 and RT-5 respectively) are not permitted.
- D. Spiral Seams: Select seam types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," spiral seam ductwork construction for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- E. Tees and Laterals: Select types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
 1. Pleated, adjustable, and mitered elbows are not permitted.
 2. Segmented elbows shall be constructed with five segments, minimum.

2.4 SHEET METAL MATERIALS

- A. General Material Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.
- B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.
 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G60.
 2. Finishes for Surfaces Exposed to View: Mill phosphatized.
- C. Carbon-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, with oiled, matte finish for exposed ducts.

- D. Stainless-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 480/A 480M, Type 304 or 316, as indicated in "Duct Schedule" Article; cold rolled, annealed, sheet. Exposed surface finish shall be No. 2B, No. 2D, No. 3, or No. 4 as indicated in "Duct Schedule" Article.
- E. Factory- or Shop-Applied Antimicrobial Coating:
 - 1. Apply to the surface of sheet metal that will form the interior surface of the duct. An untreated clear coating shall be applied to the exterior surface.
 - 2. Antimicrobial compound shall be tested for efficacy by an NRTL and registered by the EPA for use in HVAC systems.
 - 3. Coating containing the antimicrobial compound shall have a hardness of 2H, minimum, when tested in accordance with ASTM D 3363.
 - 4. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame-spread index of 25 and maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
 - 5. Shop-Applied Coating Color: Black.
 - 6. Antimicrobial coating on sheet metal is not required for duct containing liner treated with antimicrobial coating.
- F. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
 - 1. Where black- and galvanized-steel shapes and plates are used to reinforce aluminum ducts, isolate the different metals with butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM gasket materials.
- G. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch-minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch-minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

2.5 DUCT LINER

- A. Fibrous-Glass Duct Liner: Comply with ASTM C 1071, NFPA 90A, or NFPA 90B; and with NAIMA AH124, "Fibrous Glass Duct Liner Standard."
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. CertainTeed Corporation.
 - b. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
 - c. Knauf Insulation.
 - d. Owens Corning.
 - 2. Maximum Thermal Conductivity:
 - a. Type I, Flexible: 0.27 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature.
 - b. Type II, Rigid: 0.23 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature.
 - 3. Antimicrobial Erosion-Resistant Coating: Apply to the surface of the liner that will form the interior surface of the duct to act as a moisture repellent and erosion-resistant coating. Antimicrobial compound shall be tested for efficacy by an NRTL and registered by the EPA for use in HVAC systems.

4. Solvent-Based Liner Adhesive: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B and with ASTM C 916.
 - a. Adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less.
 - b. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- B. Fiberglass-Free Duct Liner: Made from partially recycled cotton or polyester products and containing no fiberglass. Airstream surface overlaid with fire-resistant facing to prevent surface erosion by airstream, complying with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B. Treat natural-fiber products with antimicrobial coating.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Acoustical Surfaces, Inc.
 - b. Bonded Logic, Inc.
 - c. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
 2. Maximum Thermal Conductivity: 0.24 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature when tested in accordance with ASTM C 518.
 3. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame-spread index of 25 and maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E 84; certified by an NRTL.
 4. Liner Adhesive: As recommended by insulation manufacturer and complying with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
 - a. Adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less.
 - b. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- C. Insulation Pins and Washers:
 1. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch-diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch galvanized carbon-steel washer.
 2. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch-thick galvanized steel; with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place, but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
- D. Shop Application of Duct Liner: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 7-11, "Flexible Duct Liner Installation."
 1. Adhere a single layer of indicated thickness of duct liner with at least 90 percent adhesive coverage at liner contact surface area. Attaining indicated thickness with multiple layers of duct liner is prohibited.
 2. Apply adhesive to transverse edges of liner facing upstream that do not receive metal nosing.
 3. Butt transverse joints without gaps, and coat joint with adhesive.

4. Fold and compress liner in corners of rectangular ducts or cut and fit to ensure butted-edge overlapping.
5. Do not apply liner in rectangular ducts with longitudinal joints, except at corners of ducts, unless duct size and dimensions of standard liner make longitudinal joints necessary.
6. Secure liner with mechanical fasteners 4 inches from corners and at intervals not exceeding 12 inches transversely; at 3 inches from transverse joints and at intervals not exceeding 18 inches longitudinally.
7. Secure transversely oriented liner edges facing the airstream with metal nosings that have either channel or "Z" profiles or are integrally formed from duct wall. Fabricate edge facings at the following locations:
 - a. Fan discharges.
 - b. Intervals of lined duct preceding unlined duct.
 - c. Upstream edges of transverse joints in ducts where air velocities are higher than 2500 fpm or where indicated.
8. Terminate inner ducts with buildouts attached to fire-damper sleeves, dampers, turning vane assemblies, or other devices. Fabricated buildouts (metal hat sections) or other buildout means are optional; when used, secure buildouts to duct walls with bolts, screws, rivets, or welds.

2.6 SEALANT AND GASKETS

- A. General Sealant and Gasket Requirements: Surface-burning characteristics for sealants and gaskets shall be a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
- B. Two-Part Tape Sealing System:
 1. Tape: Woven cotton fiber impregnated with mineral gypsum and modified acrylic/silicone activator to react exothermically with tape to form hard, durable, airtight seal.
 2. Tape Width: 4 inches.
 3. Sealant: Modified styrene acrylic.
 4. Water resistant.
 5. Mold and mildew resistant.
 6. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10 inch wg, positive and negative.
 7. Service: Indoor and outdoor.
 8. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.
 9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum.
 10. Sealant shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less.
 11. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- C. Water-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:

1. Application Method: Brush on.
2. Solids Content: Minimum 65 percent.
3. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 20.
4. Water resistant.
5. Mold and mildew resistant.
6. VOC: Maximum 75 g/L (less water).
7. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10 inch wg, positive and negative.
8. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.

D. Solvent-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:

1. Application Method: Brush on.
2. Base: Synthetic rubber resin.
3. Solvent: Toluene and heptane.
4. Solids Content: Minimum 60 percent.
5. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 60.
6. Water resistant.
7. Mold and mildew resistant.
8. Sealant shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less.
9. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
10. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive or negative.
11. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
12. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.

E. Flanged Joint Sealant: Comply with ASTM C 920.

1. General: Single-component, acid-curing, silicone, elastomeric.
2. Type: S.
3. Grade: NS.
4. Class: 25.
5. Use: O.
6. Sealant shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less.
7. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

F. Flange Gaskets: Butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM polymer with polyisobutylene plasticizer.

G. Round Duct Joint O-Ring Seals:

1. Seal shall provide maximum leakage class of 3 cfm/100 sq. ft. at 1-inch wg and shall be rated for 10-inch wg static-pressure class, positive or negative.

2. EPDM O-ring to seal in concave bead in coupling or fitting spigot.
3. Double-lipped, EPDM O-ring seal, mechanically fastened to factory-fabricated couplings and fitting spigots.

2.7 INSULATED FLEXIBLE DUCTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
 2. JP Lamborn Co.
 3. McGill AirFlow LLC.
 4. Thermaflex; a Flex-Tek Group company.
- B. Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, inner duct of woven and coated fiberglass providing an air seal and permanently bonded to coated steel wire helix, a fiberglass insulating blanket and low permeability outer vapor barrier of fiberglass reinforced metallized film laminate.
- C. Maximum Flame Spread Index: 25
- D. Maximum Smoke Developed Index: 50
- E. Insulation R-Value: Comply with ASHRAE/IES 90.1

2.8 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Hanger Rods for Noncorrosive Environments: Galvanized-steel rods and nuts.
- B. Hanger Rods for Corrosive Environments: Electrogalvanized, all-thread rods or galvanized rods with threads painted with zinc-chromate primer after installation.
- C. Strap and Rod Sizes: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct."

Steel Cables for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel complying with ASTM A 603.
- D. Steel Cables for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless steel complying with ASTM A 492.
- E. Steel Cable End Connections: Galvanized-steel assemblies with brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for duct hanger service; with an automatic-locking and clamping device.
- F. Duct Attachments: Sheet metal screws, blind rivets, or self-tapping metal screws; compatible with duct materials.
- G. Trapeze and Riser Supports:
 1. Supports for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized-steel shapes and plates.

2. Supports for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless-steel shapes and plates.
3. Supports for Aluminum Ducts: Aluminum or galvanized steel coated with zinc chromate.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 DUCT INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of duct system. Indicated duct locations, configurations, and arrangements were used to size ducts and calculate friction loss for air-handling equipment sizing and for other design considerations. Install duct systems as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings and coordination drawings.
- B. Install ducts in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install ducts in maximum practical lengths with fewest possible joints.
- D. Install factory- or shop-fabricated fittings for changes in direction, size, and shape and for branch connections.
- E. Unless otherwise indicated, install ducts vertically and horizontally, and parallel and perpendicular to building lines.
- F. Install ducts close to walls, overhead construction, columns, and other structural and permanent enclosure elements of building.
- G. Install ducts with a clearance of 1 inch, plus allowance for insulation thickness.
- H. Route ducts to avoid passing through transformer vaults and electrical equipment rooms and enclosures.
- I. Where ducts pass through non-fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls and are exposed to view, cover the opening between the partition and duct or duct insulation with sheet metal flanges of same metal thickness as the duct. Overlap openings on four sides by at least 1-1/2 inches.
- J. Install fire and smoke dampers where indicated on Drawings and as required by code, and by local authorities having jurisdiction. Comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers and specific installation requirements of the damper UL listing.
- K. Install heating coils, cooling coils, air filters, dampers, and all other duct-mounted accessories in air ducts where indicated on Drawings.
- L. Protect duct interiors from moisture, construction debris and dust, and other foreign materials both before and after installation. Comply with SMACNA's "IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction," Appendix G, "Duct Cleanliness for New Construction Guidelines."

- M. Elbows: Use long-radius elbows wherever they fit.
 - 1. Fabricate 90-degree rectangular mitered elbows to include turning vanes.
 - 2. Fabricate 90-degree round elbows with a minimum of three segments for 12 inches and smaller and a minimum of five segments for 14 inches and larger.
- N. Branch Connections: Use lateral or conical branch connections.
- O. Connect diffusers to branch ducts with maximum 3 feet lengths of flexible duct. Do not use flexible ducts to change directions.
- P. Installation of flexible ducts shall comply with following:
 - 1. Install ducts fully extended.
 - 2. Do not bend ducts across corners sharper than 30 degrees.
 - 3. Bends of flexible ducting shall not exceed a minimum of one duct diameter
 - 4. Avoid contact with metal fixtures, water lines, pipes, or conduits.
 - 5. Install flexible ducts in a direct line, without sags, twists, or turns.
- Q. Supporting Flexible Ducts:
 - 1. Suspend flexible ducts with bands 1-1/2 inches wide or wider and spaced a maximum of 48 inches apart. Maximum centerline sag between supports shall not exceed 1/2 inch per 12 inches.
 - 2. Install extra supports at bends placed approximately one duct diameter from center line of the bend.
 - 3. Ducts may rest on ceiling joists or trust supports. Spacing between supports shall not exceed the maximum spacing per manufacturer's written installation instructions.
 - 4. Vertically installed ducts shall be stabilized by support straps at a maximum of 72 inches. o.c.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF EXPOSED DUCTWORK

- A. Protect ducts exposed in finished spaces from being dented, scratched, or damaged.
- B. Trim duct sealants flush with metal. Create a smooth and uniform exposed bead. Do not use two-part tape sealing system.
- C. Grind welds to provide smooth surface free of burrs, sharp edges, and weld splatter. When welding stainless steel with a No. 3 or 4 finish, grind the welds flush, polish the exposed welds, and treat the welds to remove discoloration caused by welding.
- D. Maintain consistency, symmetry, and uniformity in arrangement and fabrication of fittings, hangers and supports, duct accessories, and air outlets.
- E. Repair or replace damaged sections and finished work that does not comply with these requirements.

3.3 DUCTWORK EXPOSED TO WEATHER

- A. All external joints are to have secure watertight mechanical connections. Seal all openings to provide weatherproof construction.
- B. Construct ductwork to resist external loads of wind, snow, ice, and other effects of weather. Provide necessary supporting structures.
- C. Single Wall:
 - 1. Ductwork shall be Type 304 stainless steel.

3.4 DUCT SEALING

- A. Seal ducts at a minimum to the following seal classes in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible":
 - 1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
 - 2. All ducts regardless of static pressure rating: Seal Class A.

3.5 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 5, "Hangers and Supports."
- B. Building Attachments: Concrete inserts, powder-actuated fasteners, or structural-steel fasteners appropriate for construction materials to which hangers are being attached.
 - 1. Where practical, install concrete inserts before placing concrete.
 - 2. Install powder-actuated concrete fasteners after concrete is placed and completely cured.
 - 3. Use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for standard-weight aggregate concretes or for slabs more than 4 inches thick.
 - 4. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for lightweight-aggregate concretes or for slabs less than 4 inches thick.
- C. Hanger Spacing: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct," for maximum hanger spacing; install hangers and supports within 24 inches of each elbow and within 48 inches of each branch intersection.
- D. Hangers Exposed to View: Threaded rod and angle or channel supports.
- E. Support vertical ducts with steel angles or channel secured to the sides of the duct with welds, bolts, sheet metal screws, or blind rivets; support at each floor and at a maximum intervals of 16 feet.

- F. Install upper attachments to structures. Select and size upper attachments with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

3.6 CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections to equipment with flexible connectors complying with Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for branch, outlet and inlet, and terminal unit connections.

3.7 PAINTING

- A. Paint interior of metal ducts that are visible through registers and grilles and that do not have duct liner. Apply one coat of flat, black, latex paint over a compatible galvanized-steel primer. Paint materials and application requirements are specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Leakage Tests:
 - 1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual." Submit a test report for each test.
 - 2. Test the following systems:
 - a. Supply Ducts upstream of VAV boxes: Test representative duct sections totaling no less than 100 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
 - 3. Disassemble, reassemble, and seal segments of systems to accommodate leakage testing and for compliance with test requirements.
 - 4. Testing of each duct section is to be performed with access doors, coils, filters, dampers, and other duct-mounted devices in place as designed. No devices are to be removed or blanked off so as to reduce or prevent additional leakage.
 - 5. Test for leaks before applying external insulation.
 - 6. Conduct tests at static pressures equal to maximum design pressure of system or section being tested. If static-pressure classes are not indicated, test system at maximum system design pressure. Do not pressurize systems above maximum design operating pressure.
 - 7. Give seven days' advance notice for testing.
- C. Duct System Cleanliness Tests:
 - 1. Visually inspect duct system to ensure that no visible contaminants are present.
 - 2. Test sections of metal duct system, chosen randomly by Owner, for cleanliness in accordance with "Description of Method 3 - NADCA Vacuum Test" in NADCA ACR, "Assessment, Cleaning and Restoration of HVAC Systems."

- a. Acceptable Cleanliness Level: Net weight of debris collected on the filter media shall not exceed 0.75 mg/100 sq. cm.

D. Duct system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.9 DUCT CLEANING

A. Clean new duct system(s) before testing, adjusting, and balancing.

B. For cleaning of existing ductwork, see Section 230130.52 "Existing HVAC Air Distribution System Cleaning."

C. Use duct cleaning methodology as indicated in NADCA ACR.

D. Use service openings for entry and inspection.

1. Provide openings with access panels appropriate for duct static-pressure and leakage class at dampers, coils, and any other locations where required for inspection and cleaning access. Provide insulated panels for insulated or lined duct. Patch insulation and liner as recommended by duct liner manufacturer. Comply with Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for access panels and doors.
2. Disconnect and reconnect flexible ducts as needed for cleaning and inspection.
3. Remove and reinstall ceiling to gain access during the cleaning process.

E. Particulate Collection and Odor Control:

1. When venting vacuuming system inside the building, use HEPA filtration with 99.97 percent collection efficiency for 0.3-micron-size (or larger) particles.
2. When venting vacuuming system to outdoors, use filter to collect debris removed from HVAC system, and locate exhaust downwind and away from air intakes and other points of entry into building.

F. Clean the following components by removing surface contaminants and deposits:

1. Air outlets and inlets (registers, grilles, and diffusers).
2. Supply, return, and exhaust fans including fan housings, plenums (except ceiling supply and return plenums), scrolls, blades or vanes, shafts, baffles, dampers, and drive assemblies.
3. Air-handling unit internal surfaces and components including mixing box, coil section, air wash systems, spray eliminators, condensate drain pans, humidifiers and dehumidifiers, filters and filter sections, and condensate collectors and drains.
4. Coils and related components.
5. Return-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes except in ceiling plenums and mechanical equipment rooms.
6. Supply-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes.
7. Dedicated exhaust and ventilation components and makeup air systems.

G. Mechanical Cleaning Methodology:

1. Clean metal duct systems using mechanical cleaning methods that extract contaminants from within duct systems and remove contaminants from building.
2. Use vacuum-collection devices that are operated continuously during cleaning. Connect vacuum device to downstream end of duct sections so areas being cleaned are under negative pressure.
3. Use mechanical agitation to dislodge debris adhered to interior duct surfaces without damaging integrity of metal ducts, duct liner, or duct accessories.
4. Clean fibrous-glass duct liner with HEPA vacuuming equipment; do not permit duct liner to get wet. Replace fibrous-glass duct liner that is damaged, deteriorated, or delaminated or that has friable material, mold, or fungus growth.
5. Clean coils and coil drain pans in accordance with NADCA ACR. Keep drain pan operational. Rinse coils with clean water to remove latent residues and cleaning materials; comb and straighten fins.
6. Provide drainage and cleanup for wash-down procedures.
7. Antimicrobial Agents and Coatings: Apply EPA-registered antimicrobial agents if fungus is present. Apply antimicrobial agents in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions after removal of surface deposits and debris.

3.10 STARTUP

- A. Air Balance: Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC."

3.11 DUCT SCHEDULE

- A. Fabricate ducts with galvanized sheet steel except as otherwise indicated and as follows:

1. Fabricate all ducts to achieve SMACNA pressure class, seal class, and leakage class as indicated below.

- B. Supply/Return/Exhaust Ducts:

1. Ducts Connected downstream of CAV/VAV boxes:
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive 2-inch wg.
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
 - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 3
2. Ducts Connected downstream of Variable-Air-Volume Air-Handling Units and upstream of CAV/VAV boxes:
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive 3-inch wg.
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A
 - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 3
 - e.

- C. Return Ducts:

1. Ducts Connected to Air-Handling Units:
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A
 - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 3
- D. Exhaust Ducts:
 1. Ducts Connected to Fans Exhausting ASHRAE 62.1, Class 1 and 2) Air:
 - a. Pressure Class: Negative 1-inch wg.
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A
 - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 3
- E. Outdoor-Air (Not Filtered, Heated, or Cooled) Ducts:
 1. Ducts Connected to Air-Handling Units:
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 1-inch wg.
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
 - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 3
- F. Intermediate Reinforcement:
 1. Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel or carbon steel coated with zinc-chromate primer.
 2. Stainless-Steel Ducts:
 - a. Exposed to Airstream: Match duct material.
 - b. Not Exposed to Airstream: Match duct material.
- G. Elbow Configuration:
 1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-2, "Rectangular Elbows."
 - a. Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower:
 - 1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
 - 2) Mitered Type RE 4 without vanes.
 - b. Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm:
 - 1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio.
 - 2) Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
 - 3) Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
 - c. Velocity 1500 fpm or Higher:
 - 1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
 - 2) Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.

- 3) Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
 2. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-2, "Rectangular Elbows."
 - a. Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
 - b. Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
 - c. Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
 3. Round Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-4, "Round Duct Elbows."
 - a. Minimum Radius-to-Diameter Ratio and Elbow Segments: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 3-1, "Mitered Elbows." Elbows with less than 90-degree change of direction have proportionately fewer segments.
 - 1) Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower: 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and five segments for 90-degree elbow.
 - 2) Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm: 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and five segments for 90-degree elbow.
 - 3) Velocity 1500 fpm or Higher: 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and five segments for 90-degree elbow.
 - 4) Radius-to Diameter Ratio: 1.5.
 - b. Round Elbows, 12 Inches and Smaller in Diameter: Stamped
- H. Branch Configuration:
 1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-6, "Branch Connection."
 - a. Rectangular Main to Rectangular Branch: 45-degree entry.
 2. Round and Flat Oval: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees." Saddle taps are permitted in existing duct.
 - a. 45-degree lateral.

END OF SECTION 23 3113

SECTION 23 3300 – AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Backdraft dampers.
 - 2. Manual volume dampers.
 - 3. Control dampers.
 - 4. Fire dampers.
 - 5. Flange connectors.
 - 6. Turning vanes.
 - 7. Remote damper operators.
 - 8. Duct-mounted access doors.
 - 9. Flexible connectors.
 - 10. Duct accessory hardware.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. For duct silencers, include pressure drop and dynamic insertion loss data. Include breakout noise calculations for high transmission loss casings.
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
 - 1. Product data showing compliance with ASHRAE 62.1.
- C. Shop Drawings: For duct accessories. Include plans, elevations, sections, details and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Detail duct accessories fabrication and installation in ducts and other construction. Include dimensions, weights, loads, and required clearances; and method of field assembly into duct systems and other construction. Include the following:
 - a. Special fittings.
 - b. Manual volume damper installations.
 - c. Control-damper installations.
 - d. Fire-damper, smoke-damper, combination fire- and smoke-damper, ceiling, and corridor damper installations, including sleeves; and duct-mounted access doors and remote damper operators.
 - e. Duct security bars.
 - f. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which ceiling-mounted access panels and access doors required for access to duct accessories are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from Installers of the items involved.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air duct accessories to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Fusible Links: Furnish quantity equal to 10 percent of amount installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTION

- A. Comply with NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems," and with NFPA 90B, "Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.

2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.
 - 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G60.
 - 2. Exposed-Surface Finish: Mill phosphatized.
- B. Stainless-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 480/A 480M, Type 304, and having a No. 2 finish for concealed ducts.
- C. Aluminum Sheets: Comply with ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, Temper H14; with mill finish for concealed ducts and standard, 1-side bright finish for exposed ducts.
- D. Extruded Aluminum: Comply with ASTM B 221, Alloy 6063, Temper T6.
- E. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: Galvanized-steel reinforcement where installed on galvanized sheet metal ducts; compatible materials for aluminum and stainless-steel ducts.
- F. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

2.3 BACKDRAFT AND PRESSURE RELIEF DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - 1. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
 - 2. Pottorff.
 - 3. Ruskin Company.
- B. Description: Motorized and shall interlock with appropriate fan.
- C. Maximum Air Velocity: 1250 fpm.
- D. Maximum System Pressure: 1-inch wg.
- E. Frame: Hat-shaped, 0.05-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel, with welded corners or mechanically attached.
- F. Blades: Multiple single-piece blades, center pivoted, maximum 6-inch width, 0.050-inch-thick aluminum sheet with sealed edges.
- G. Blade Action: Parallel.
- H. Blade Seals: Felt.
- I. Blade Axles:
 - 1. Material: Nonferrous metal.
 - 2. Diameter: 0.20 inch.
- J. Tie Bars and Brackets: Aluminum.
- K. Return Spring: Adjustable tension.
- L. Bearings: Steel ball.
- M. Accessories:
 - 1. Adjustment device to permit setting for varying differential static pressure.
 - 2. Counterweights and spring-assist kits for vertical airflow installations.
 - 3. Electric actuators.
 - 4. Chain pulls.
 - 5. Screen Mounting: Front mounted in sleeve.
 - a. Sleeve Thickness: 20 gage minimum.
 - b. Sleeve Length: 6 inches minimum.
 - 6. Screen Material: Galvanized steel.
 - 7. Screen Type: Bird.
 - 8. 90-degree stops.

2.4 MANUAL VOLUME DAMPERS

A. Standard, Steel, Manual Volume Dampers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. McGill AirFlow LLC.
 - b. Pottorff.
 - c. Ruskin Company.
 - d. Trox USA Inc.
2. Standard leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream.
3. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
4. Frames:
 - a. Frame: Hat-shaped, 0.094-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel.
 - b. Mitered and welded corners.
 - c. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
5. Blades:
 - a. Multiple or single blade.
 - b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
 - c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
 - d. Galvanized-steel, 0.064 inch thick.
6. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel.
7. Bearings:
 - a. Stainless-steel sleeve.
 - b. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
8. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.

B. Standard, Aluminum, Manual Volume Dampers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. McGill AirFlow LLC.
 - b. Pottorff.
 - c. Ruskin Company.
 - d. Trox USA Inc.
2. Standard leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream.
3. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
4. Frames: Hat-shaped, 0.10-inch-thick, aluminum sheet channels; frames with flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
5. Blades:
 - a. Multiple or single blade.
 - b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
 - c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
 - d. Extruded-Aluminum Blades: 0.050-inch-thick extruded aluminum.

6. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel.
7. Bearings:
 - a. Stainless-steel sleeve.
 - b. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
8. Tie Bars and Brackets: Aluminum.

C. Jackshaft:

1. Size: 0.5-inch diameter.
2. Material: Galvanized-steel pipe rotating within pipe-bearing assembly mounted on supports at each mullion and at each end of multiple-damper assemblies.
3. Length and Number of Mountings: As required to connect linkage of each damper in multiple-damper assembly.

D. Damper Hardware:

1. Zinc-plated, die-cast core with dial and handle made of 3/32-inch-thick zinc-plated steel, and a 3/4-inch hexagon locking nut.
2. Include center hole to suit damper operating-rod size.
3. Include elevated platform for insulated duct mounting.

2.5 CONTROL DAMPERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. McGill AirFlow LLC.
2. Pottorff.
3. Ruskin Company.
4. Safe Air - Dowco Products.

B. Low-leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream, and bearing AMCA's Certified Ratings Seal for both air performance and air leakage.

C. Frames:

1. Hat shaped.
2. 0.094-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel.
3. Mitered and welded corners.

D. Blades:

1. Multiple blade with maximum blade width of 6 inches.
2. Parallel-blade design.
3. Galvanized-steel or Stainless steel or Aluminum.
4. 0.064 inch thick single skin.
5. Blade Edging: Closed-cell neoprene.
6. Blade Edging: Inflatable seal blade edging, or replaceable rubber seals.

- E. Blade Axles: 1/2-inch-diameter; galvanized steel; blade-linkage hardware of zinc-plated steel and brass; ends sealed against blade bearings.

- 1. Operating Temperature Range: From minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.

- F. Bearings:

- 1. Molded synthetic Stainless-steel sleeve.
 - 2. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
 - 3. Thrust bearings at each end of every blade.

2.6 FIRE DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- 1. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
 - 2. Pottorff.
 - 3. Ruskin Company.
 - 4. Safe Air - Dowco Products.

- B. Type: Static; rated and labeled according to UL 555 by an NRTL.

- C. Fire Rating: 1-1/2 hours.

- D. Frame: Curtain type with blades outside airstream except when located behind grille where blades may be inside airstream; fabricated with roll-formed, 0.034-inch-thick galvanized steel; with mitered and interlocking corners.

- E. Mounting Sleeve: Factory- or field-installed, galvanized sheet steel.

- 1. Minimum Thickness: 0.138 inch or 0.39 inch thick, as indicated, and of length to suit application.
 - 2. Exception: Omit sleeve where damper-frame width permits direct attachment of perimeter mounting angles on each side of wall or floor; thickness of damper frame must comply with sleeve requirements.

- F. Mounting Orientation: Vertical or horizontal as indicated.

- G. Blades: Roll-formed, interlocking, 0.024-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel. In place of interlocking blades, use full-length, 0.034-inch-thick, galvanized-steel blade connectors.

- H. Horizontal Dampers: Include blade lock and stainless-steel closure spring.

- I. Heat-Responsive Device: Replaceable, 165 deg F rated, fusible links.

2.7 TURNING VANES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
2. Duro Dyne Inc.
3. Elgen Manufacturing.
4. Hardcast, Inc.
5. SEMCO LLC.

B. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Metal Ducts: Curved blades of galvanized sheet steel; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.

1. Acoustic Turning Vanes: Fabricate airfoil-shaped aluminum extrusions with perforated faces and fibrous-glass fill.

C. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Nonmetal Ducts: Fabricate curved blades of resin-bonded fiberglass with acrylic polymer coating; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.

D. General Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."

E. Vane Construction: Single wall.

F. Vane Construction: Single wall for ducts up to 48 inches wide and double wall for larger dimensions.

2.8 REMOTE DAMPER OPERATORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Pottorff.
2. Ventfabrics, Inc.
3. Young Regulator Company.

B. Description: Cable system designed for remote manual damper adjustment.

C. Tubing: Brass or Aluminum.

D. Cable: Stainless steel.

E. Wall-Box Mounting: Recessed.

F. Wall-Box Cover-Plate Material: Steel.

2.9 DUCT-MOUNTED ACCESS DOORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.

2. Elgen Manufacturing.
3. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
4. McGill AirFlow LLC.
5. Pottorff.

B. Duct-Mounted Access Doors: Fabricate access panels according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures 7-2, "Duct Access Doors and Panels," and 7-3, "Access Doors - Round Duct."

1. Door:
 - a. Double wall, rectangular.
 - b. Galvanized sheet metal with insulation fill and thickness as indicated for duct pressure class.
 - c. Vision panel.
 - d. Hinges and Latches: 1-by-1-inchbutt or piano hinge and cam latches.
 - e. Fabricate doors airtight and suitable for duct pressure class.
2. Frame: Galvanized sheet steel, with bend-over tabs and foam gaskets.
3. Number of Hinges and Locks:
 - a. Access Doors Less Than 12 Inches Square: No hinges and two sash locks.
 - b. Access Doors up to 18 Inches Square: Two hinges and two sash locks.
 - c. Access Doors up to 24 by 48 Inches: Three hinges and two compression latches.
 - d. Access Doors Larger Than 24 by 48 Inches: Four hinges and two compression latches with outside and inside handles.

2.10 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
 2. Duro Dyne Inc.
 3. Elgen Manufacturing.
 4. Hardcast, Inc.
- B. Materials: Flame-retardant or noncombustible fabrics.
- C. Coatings and Adhesives: Comply with UL 181, Class 1.
- D. Metal-Edged Connectors: Factory fabricated with a fabric strip 3-1/2 inches wide attached to two strips of 2-3/4-inch-wide, 0.028-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel or 0.032-inch-thick aluminum sheets. Provide metal compatible with connected ducts.
- E. Indoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with neoprene.
1. Minimum Weight: 26 oz./sq. yd.
 2. Tensile Strength: 480 lbf/inch in the warp and 360 lbf/inch in the filling.
 3. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.

2.11 DUCT ACCESSORY HARDWARE

- A. Instrument Test Holes: Cast iron or cast aluminum to suit duct material, including screw cap and gasket. Size to allow insertion of pitot tube and other testing instruments and of length to suit duct-insulation thickness.
- B. Adhesives: High strength, quick setting, neoprene based, waterproof, and resistant to gasoline and grease.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install duct accessories according to applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts and in NAIMA AH116, "Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards," for fibrous-glass ducts.
- B. Install duct accessories of materials suited to duct materials; use galvanized-steel accessories in galvanized-steel and fibrous-glass ducts, stainless-steel accessories in stainless-steel ducts, and aluminum accessories in aluminum ducts.
- C. Compliance with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2004 includes Section 6.4.3.3.3 - "Shutoff Damper Controls," restricts the use of backdraft dampers, and requires control dampers for certain applications. Install backdraft dampers at inlet of exhaust fans or exhaust ducts as close as possible to exhaust fan unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Install volume dampers at each supply, return, and exhaust air sub main, branch main, and branch takeoff. Where dampers are installed in ducts having duct liner, install dampers with hat channels of same depth as liner, and terminate liner with nosing at hat channel.
 - 1. Install steel volume dampers in steel ducts.
 - 2. Install aluminum volume dampers in aluminum ducts.
- E. Set dampers to fully open position before testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- F. Install test holes at fan inlets and outlets and elsewhere as indicated.
- G. Install fire dampers according to UL listing.
- H. Install duct access doors on sides of ducts to allow for inspecting, adjusting, and maintaining accessories and equipment at the following locations:
 - 1. On both sides of duct coils.
 - 2. Upstream from duct filters.
 - 3. At outdoor-air intakes and mixed-air plenums.
 - 4. At drain pans and seals.
 - 5. Downstream from manual volume dampers, control dampers, backdraft dampers, and equipment.
 - 6. Adjacent to and close enough to fire or smoke dampers, to reset or reinstall fusible links. Access doors for access to fire or smoke dampers having fusible links shall

be pressure relief access doors and shall be outward operation for access doors installed upstream from dampers and inward operation for access doors installed downstream from dampers.

7. At each change in direction and at maximum 50-foot spacing.
8. Upstream from turning vanes.
9. Control devices requiring inspection.
10. Elsewhere as indicated.

I. Install access doors with swing against duct static pressure.

J. Access Door Sizes:

1. One-Hand or Inspection Access: 8 by 5 inches.
2. Two-Hand Access: 12 by 6 inches.
3. Head and Hand Access: 18 by 10 inches.
4. Head and Shoulders Access: 21 by 14 inches.
5. Body Access: 25 by 14 inches.
6. Body plus Ladder Access: 25 by 17 inches.

K. Label access doors according to Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" to indicate the purpose of access door.

L. Install flexible connectors to connect ducts to equipment.

M. Connect terminal units to supply ducts directly or with maximum 3-foot lengths of flexible duct. Do not use flexible ducts to change directions.

N. Connect diffusers or light troffer boots to ducts directly or with maximum 36-inch lengths of flexible duct clamped or strapped in place.

O. Connect flexible ducts to metal ducts with liquid adhesive plus tape.

P. Install duct test holes where required for testing and balancing purposes.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Tests and Inspections:

1. Operate dampers to verify full range of movement.
2. Inspect locations of access doors and verify that purpose of access door can be performed.
3. Operate fire, smoke, and combination fire and smoke dampers to verify full range of movement and verify that proper heat-response device is installed.
4. Inspect turning vanes for proper and secure installation.
5. Operate remote damper operators to verify full range of movement of operator and damper.

END OF SECTION 23 3300

SECTION 23 3423 - HVAC POWER VENTILATORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Centrifugal roof ventilators.
 - 2. In-line centrifugal fans.
 - 3. Laundry system roof ventilators and box supply fans.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories. Also include the following:
 - 1. Certified fan performance curves with system operating conditions indicated.
 - 2. Certified fan sound-power ratings.
 - 3. Motor ratings and electrical characteristics, plus motor and electrical accessories.
 - 4. Material thickness and finishes, including color charts.
 - 5. Dampers, including housings, linkages, and operators.
 - 6. Roof curbs.
 - 7. Fan speed controllers.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 2. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For unit hangars and supports indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
 - 1. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.
 - 2. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting vibration isolators and for designing vibration isolation bases.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from Installers of the items involved:
 - 1. Roof framing and support members relative to duct penetrations.
 - 2. Ceiling suspension assembly members.
 - 3. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
 - 4. Ceiling-mounted items including light fixtures, diffusers, grilles, speakers, sprinklers, access panels, and special moldings.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For power ventilators to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. AMCA Compliance: Fans shall have AMCA-Certified performance ratings and shall bear the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.
- C. UL Standards: Power ventilators shall comply with UL 705. Power ventilators for use for restaurant kitchen exhaust shall also comply with UL 762.

1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size and location of structural-steel support members.
- B. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.
- C. Coordinate sizes and locations of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations with actual equipment provided.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CENTRIFUGAL ROOF VENTILATORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Greeneheck
 - 2. Aerovent; a division of Twin City Fan Companies, Ltd.
 - 3. Central Blower Company.
 - 4. Loren Cook Company.
- B. Housing: Removable, extruded-aluminum, rectangular top; square, one-piece, aluminum base with venturi inlet cone.
 - 1. Upblast Units: Provide spun-aluminum discharge baffle to direct discharge air upward, with rain and snow drains.
 - 2. Downblast Units: Provide motor cover, shroud, curb cap constructed of heavy gauge aluminum, and shroud shall be draw from a disc and direct air downward
 - 3. Hinged Subbase: Galvanized-steel hinged arrangement permitting service and maintenance.
- C. Fan Wheels: Aluminum hub and wheel with backward-inclined blades.
- D. Accessories:
 - 1. Variable-Speed Controller: Solid-state control to reduce speed from 100 to less than 50 percent.
 - 2. Disconnect Switch: Nonfusible type, with thermal-overload protection mounted outside fan housing, factory wired through an internal aluminum conduit.
 - 3. Bird Screens: Removable, 1/2-inch mesh, aluminum or brass wire.
 - 4. Dampers: Counterbalanced, parallel-blade, backdraft dampers mounted in curb base; factory set to close when fan stops.
- E. Roof Curbs: Galvanized steel; mitered and welded corners; 1-1/2-inch-thick, rigid, fiberglass insulation adhered to inside walls; and 1-1/2-inch wood nailer. Size as required to suit roof opening and fan base.
 - 1. Configuration: Self-flashing without a cant strip, with mounting flange.
 - 2. Overall Height: min. 12 inches from top of roof membrane
 - 3. Pitch Mounting: Manufacture curb for roof slope.
 - 4. Mounting Pedestal: Galvanized steel with removable access panel.

2.2 CENTRIFUGAL INLINE FANS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Greenheck

2. Loren Cook Company.
3. PennBarry.

- B. Galvanized steel housing.
- C. Backward inclined aluminum wheel statically and dynamically balanced in accordance of AMCA Standard 204-05
- D. Integral duct connection flanges
- E. Direct drive electronically commutated motor, permanently lubricated, heavy duty ball bearing type. Motor shall be speed controllable down to 20% of full speed. Minimum of 85% efficient at all speeds.
- F. Two sided access panels
- G. Baked enamel finish.

2.3 LAUNDRY SERVICE CENTRIFUGAL ROOF VENTILATORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Enervex
 2. Aerovent; a division of Twin City Fan Companies, Ltd.
 3. Central Blower Company.
 4. Loren Cook Company.
- B. Fan is designed to exhaust lint-laden air from single or multiple Type I and Type II residential and commercial clothes dryers.
- C. Fan housing shall be hinged and the top openable for easy service and access to the duct.
- D. Housing: 3/16" cast aluminum with corrosion resistant paint finish
- E. Impeller: backward curved, aluminum statically and dynamically balanced.
- F. UL 705 listed, complies with and meets Type B, Spark Resistant Construction per AMCA Standard 99-0401.
- G. Roof Curbs: Galvanized steel; mitered and welded corners; 1-1/2-inch-thick, rigid, fiberglass insulation adhered to inside walls; and 1-1/2-inch wood nailer. Size as required to suit roof opening and fan base.
 1. Configuration: Self-flashing without a cant strip, with mounting flange.
 2. Overall Height: min. 12 inches from top of roof membrane
 3. Pitch Mounting: Manufacture curb for roof slope.
 4. Mounting Pedestal: Galvanized steel with removable access panel.

- H. 2-Year factory warranty.

2.4 LAUNDRY SERVICE CENTRIFUGAL SUPPLY VENTILATORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Enervex
 - 2. Aerovent; a division of Twin City Fan Companies, Ltd.
 - 3. Central Blower Company.
 - 4. Loren Cook Company.
- B. Fan is designed as box type variable speed supply ventilator with 2" fiberglass insulation.
- C. Housing: Galvanized steel
- D. Impeller: backward curved, aluminum, statically and dynamically balanced.
- E. ECM motor.
- F. UL 705 listed, complies with and meets Type B, Spark Resistant Construction per AMCA Standard 99-0401.
- G. 2-Year factory warranty.

2.5 MOTORS

- A. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
 - 1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
- B. Enclosure Type: Totally enclosed, fan cooled.

2.6 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Certify sound-power level ratings according to AMCA 301, "Methods for Calculating Fan Sound Ratings from Laboratory Test Data." Factory test fans according to AMCA 300, "Reverberant Room Method for Sound Testing of Fans." Label fans with the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.
- B. Certify fan performance ratings, including flow rate, pressure, power, air density, speed of rotation, and efficiency by factory tests according to AMCA 210, "Laboratory Methods of Testing Fans for Aerodynamic Performance Rating." Label fans with the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install power ventilators level and plumb.
- B. Equipment Mounting:
 - 1. Install power ventilators on cast-in-place concrete equipment base(s). Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Div 03
- C. Secure roof-mounted fans to roof curbs with cadmium-plated hardware. See Section 077200 "Roof Accessories" for installation of roof curbs.
- D. Ceiling Units: Suspend units from structure; use steel wire or metal straps.
- E. Support suspended units from structure using threaded steel rods and spring hangers with vertical-limit stops having a static deflection of 1 inch. Vibration-control devices are specified in Section 230548 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."
- F. Install units with clearances for service and maintenance.
- G. Label units according to requirements specified in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts and duct accessories. Make final duct connections with flexible connectors. Flexible connectors are specified in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
- B. Install ducts adjacent to power ventilators to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- D. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
 - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Verify that shipping, blocking, and bracing are removed.

2. Verify that unit is secure on mountings and supporting devices and that connections to ducts and electrical components are complete. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed in motors, starters, and disconnect switches.
 3. Verify that cleaning and adjusting are complete.
 4. Disconnect fan drive from motor, verify proper motor rotation direction, and verify fan wheel free rotation and smooth bearing operation. Reconnect fan drive system, align and adjust belts, and install belt guards.
 5. Adjust belt tension.
 6. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
 7. Verify lubrication for bearings and other moving parts.
 8. Verify that manual and automatic volume control and fire and smoke dampers in connected ductwork systems are in fully open position.
 9. Disable automatic temperature-control operators, energize motor and adjust fan to indicated rpm, and measure and record motor voltage and amperage.
 10. Shut unit down and reconnect automatic temperature-control operators.
 11. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- C. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- 3.4 ADJUSTING
- A. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
 - B. Adjust belt tension.
 - C. Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing procedures.
 - D. Replace fan and motor pulleys as required to achieve design airflow.
 - E. Lubricate bearings.

END OF SECTION 23 3423

SECTION 233600 - AIR TERMINAL UNITS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Shutoff, single-duct air terminal units.
 - 2. Casing liner.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of air terminal unit.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for air terminal units.
 - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: For air terminal units.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
 - 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, and required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
 - 4. Hangers and supports, including methods for duct and building attachment and vibration isolation.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
 - 1. Ceiling suspension assembly members.
 - 2. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustic tile.
 - 3. Ceiling-mounted items including lighting fixtures, diffusers, grilles, speakers, sprinklers, access panels, and special moldings.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air terminal units to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
 - 1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
 - a. Instructions for resetting minimum and maximum air volumes.
 - b. Instructions for adjusting software set points.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and System Start-up."
- C. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, "Section 6 - Heating, Ventilating, and Air Conditioning."

2.2 SHUTOFF, SINGLE-DUCT AIR TERMINAL UNITS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Krueger.
 - 2. Nailor Industries Inc.
 - 3. Price Industries.
 - 4. Titus.
- B. Configuration: Volume-damper assembly inside unit casing with control components inside a protective metal shroud.
- C. Casing: 0.040-inch thick galvanized steel, single wall.
 - 1. Air Inlet: Round stub connection or S-slip and drive connections for duct attachment.
 - 2. Air Outlet: S-slip and drive connections.
 - 3. Access: Removable panels for access to parts requiring service, adjustment, or maintenance; with airtight gasket.

4. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
- D. Regulator Assembly: System-air-powered bellows section incorporating polypropylene bellows for volume regulation and thermostatic control. Bellows shall operate at temperatures from zero to 140 deg F shall be impervious to moisture and fungus, shall be suitable for 10-inch wg static pressure, and shall be factory tested for leaks.
- E. Volume Damper: Galvanized steel with peripheral gasket and self-lubricating bearings.
 1. Maximum Damper Leakage: AHRI 880 rated, 2 percent of nominal airflow at 3-inch wg inlet static pressure.
 2. Damper Position: Normally open.
- F. Control devices shall be compatible with temperature controls system specified in Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC."
 1. Electric Damper Actuator: 24 V, powered open, spring return.
 2. Electric Thermostat: Wall-mounted electronic type with clock display, temperature display in Fahrenheit, and space temperature set point.
 3. Pneumatic Thermostat: Wall-mounted, pneumatic type, [direct acting] [and] [reverse acting] with appropriate mounting hardware.
 4. Electronic Thermostat: Wall-mounted electronic type with temperature set-point display in Fahrenheit.
 5. Terminal Unit Controller: Pressure-independent, variable-air-volume (VAV) controller with electronic airflow transducer with multipoint velocity sensor at air inlet, factory calibrated to minimum and maximum air volumes, and having the following features:
 - a. Occupied and unoccupied operating mode.
 - b. Remote reset of airflow or temperature set points.
 - c. Adjusting and monitoring with portable terminal.
 - d. Communication with temperature-control system specified in Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC."
- G. Controls:
 1. Suitable for operation with duct pressures between 0.25- and 3.0-inch wg inlet static pressure.
 2. System-powered, wall-mounted thermostat.
- H. Control Sequences:
 1. Occupied:
 - a. In a call for cooling, airflow will increase as the damper opens towards maximum setting to satisfy set point.
 - b. In a call for less cooling, airflow will decrease as the damper closes towards minimum setting to satisfy set point.
 2. Unoccupied:
 - a. Damper closes to minimum maximum setting.

2.3 CASING LINER

- A. Casing Liner: Fibrous-glass duct liner, complying with ASTM C 1071, NFPA 90A, or NFPA 90B; and with NAIMA AH124, "Fibrous Glass Duct Liner Standard."
 - 1. Minimum Thickness: 1/2 inch.
 - a. Maximum Thermal Conductivity:
 - 1) Type I, Flexible: 0.27 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature.
 - 2. Antimicrobial Erosion-Resistant Coating: Apply to the surface of the liner that will form the interior surface of the duct to act as a moisture repellent and erosion-resistant coating. Antimicrobial compound shall be tested for efficacy by an NRTL and registered by the EPA for use in HVAC systems.
 - 3. Water-Based Liner Adhesive: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B and with ASTM C 916.
 - a. Adhesive VOC Content: 80 g/L or less.
 - b. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Factory Tests: Test assembled air terminal units according to AHRI 880.
 - 1. Label each air terminal unit with plan number, nominal airflow, maximum and minimum factory-set airflows and AHRI certification seal.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Ch. 5, "Hangers and Supports" and with Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Building Attachments: Concrete inserts, powder-actuated fasteners, or structural-steel fasteners appropriate for construction materials to which hangers are being attached.
 - 1. Where practical, install concrete inserts before placing concrete.
 - 2. Install powder-actuated concrete fasteners after concrete is placed and completely cured.
- C. Hangers Exposed to View: Threaded rod and angle or channel supports.
- D. Install upper attachments to structures. Select and size upper attachments with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

3.2 TERMINAL UNIT INSTALLATION

- A. Install air terminal units according to NFPA 90A, "Standard for the Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems."
- B. Install air terminal units level and plumb. Maintain sufficient clearance for normal service and maintenance.
- C. Install wall-mounted thermostats.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections to air terminal units with flexible connectors complying with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Label each air terminal unit with plan number, nominal airflow, and maximum and minimum factory-set airflows. Comply with requirements in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for equipment labels and warning signs and labels.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 - 1. After installing air terminal units and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
 - 2. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper and unit operation.
 - 3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- C. Air terminal unit will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.6 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
 - 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 2. Verify that inlet duct connections are as recommended by air terminal unit manufacturer to achieve proper performance.
 - 3. Verify that controls and control enclosure are accessible.

4. Verify that control connections are complete.
5. Verify that nameplate and identification tag are visible.
6. Verify that controls respond to inputs as specified.

3.7 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain air terminal units.

END OF SECTION 23 3600

SECTION 23 3713 - DIFFUSERS, REGISTERS, AND GRILLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Rectangular and square ceiling diffusers.
 - 2. Linear slot diffusers and grilles
 - 3. Adjustable blade face registers and grilles
 - 4. Fixed face registers and grilles
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers and volume-control dampers not integral to diffusers.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Data Sheet: Indicate materials of construction, finish, and mounting details; and performance data including throw and drop, static-pressure drop, and noise ratings.
 - 2. Diffuser Schedule: Indicate drawing designation, room location, quantity, model number, size, and accessories furnished.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
 - 1. Ceiling suspension assembly members.
 - 2. Method of attaching hangers to building structure.
 - 3. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
 - 4. Ceiling-mounted items including lighting fixtures, diffusers, grilles, speakers, sprinklers, access panels, and special moldings.
 - 5. Duct access panels.
- B. Source quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 RECTANGULAR AND SQUARE CEILING DIFFUSERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Anemostat Products; a Mestek company.
 - 2. Krueger.
 - 3. Price Industries.
 - 4. Titus.
- B. Devices shall be specifically designed for variable-air-volume flows.
- C. Material: Steel.
- D. Finish: Baked enamel, white.
- E. Face Size: 24 by 24 inches or 12 by 12 inches. See drawings
- F. Face Style: Four cone.
- G. Mounting: T-bar or Surface for hard-ceiling.
- H. Pattern: Adjustable.
- I. Dampers: Radial opposed blade.

2.2 LINEAR SLOT DIFFUSERS & RETURN GRILLES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Anemostat Products; a Mestek company.
 - 2. Krueger.
 - 3. Price Industries.
 - 4. Titus.
- B. Devices shall be specifically designed for variable-air-volume flows.
- C. Material - Shell: Steel.
- D. Material - Pattern Controller and Tees: Aluminum.
- E. Finish - Face and Shell: Baked enamel, black.
- F. Finish - Pattern Controller: Baked enamel, black.
- G. Finish - Tees: Baked enamel, white.
- H. Slot Width: 1 inch.

- I. Number of Slots: Two.
- J. Length: Varies. Refer to Plan
- K. Accessories: Plaster frame.

2.3 REGISTERS

A. Adjustable Blade Face Register:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Anemostat Products; a Mestek company.
 - b. Krueger.
 - c. Price Industries.
 - d. Titus.
- 2. Material: Steel.
- 3. Finish: Baked enamel, white.
- 4. Face Blade Arrangement: Horizontal spaced 3/4 inch apart.
- 5. Core Construction: Integral.
- 6. Rear-Blade Arrangement: Vertical spaced 3/4 inch apart.
- 7. Frame: 1-1/4 inches wide.

2.4 GRILLES

A. Adjustable Blade Face Grille:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Anemostat Products; a Mestek company.
 - b. Krueger.
 - c. Price Industries.
 - d. Titus.
- 2. Material: Steel.
- 3. Finish: Baked enamel, white.
- 4. Face Blade Arrangement: Horizontal spaced 3/4 inch apart.
- 5. Core Construction: Integral.
- 6. Rear-Blade Arrangement: Vertical spaced 3/4 inch apart.
- 7. Frame: 1-1/4 inches wide.

2.5 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Verification of Performance: Rate diffusers according to ASHRAE 70, "Method of Testing for Rating the Performance of Air Outlets and Inlets."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas where diffusers are installed for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of equipment.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install diffusers level and plumb.
- B. Install registers and grilles level and plumb.
- C. Ceiling-Mounted Outlets and Inlets: Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts, fittings, and accessories. Air outlet and inlet locations have been indicated to achieve design requirements for air volume, noise criteria, airflow pattern, throw, and pressure drop. Make final locations where indicated, as much as practical. For units installed in lay-in ceiling panels, locate units in the center of panel. Where architectural features or other items conflict with installation, notify Architect for a determination of final location.
- D. Install diffusers with airtight connections to ducts and to allow service and maintenance of dampers, air extractors, and fire dampers.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. After installation, adjust diffusers, registers and grilles to air patterns indicated, or as directed, before starting air balancing.

END OF SECTION 23 3713

SECTION 23 5700 - HEAT EXCHANGERS FOR HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes shell-and-tube heat exchangers.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. TEMA: Tubular Exchanger Manufacturers Association.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 1. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting seismic restraints and for designing bases.
 - 2. Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: Details and design calculations for seismic restraints for heat exchangers.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Equipment room, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
 - 1. Tube-removal space.
 - 2. Structural members to which heat exchangers will be attached.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of shell-and-tube heat exchanger. Documentation that shell-and-tube heat exchangers comply with "TEMA Standards."

- C. Source quality-control reports.
- D. Field quality-control reports.
- E. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For heat exchangers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of domestic-water heat exchangers that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures including heat exchanger, storage tank, and supports.
 - b. Faulty operation of controls.
 - c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal use.
 - 2. Warranty Periods: From date of Substantial Completion.
 - a. Shell-and-Tube Heat Exchangers:
 - 1) Tube Coil: Five year.
 - 2) Other Components: Five year.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design seismic restraints for heat exchangers.

2.2 SHELL-AND-TUBE HEAT EXCHANGERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Grundfos
 - 2. Armstrong Fluid Technology
 - 3. Bell & Gossett
 - 4. TACO Comfort Solutions, Inc.
- B. Description: Packaged assembly of tank, heat-exchanger coils, and specialties.
- C. Construction:
 - 1. Fabricate and label heat exchangers to comply with ASME Section VIII, "Pressure Vessels," Division 1.

2. Fabricate and label shell-and-tube heat exchangers to comply with "TEMA Standards."
- D. Configuration: U-tube with removable bundle.
- E. Shell Materials: Carbon Steel.
- F. Head:
 1. Materials: Carbon steel.
 2. Flanged and bolted to shell.
- G. Tube:
 1. Seamless double walled copper tubes.
 2. Tube diameter is determined by manufacturer based on service.
- H. Tube sheet Materials: Carbon Steel.
- I. Baffles: Carbon Steel.
- J. Piping Connections: Factory fabricated of materials compatible with heat-exchanger shell. Attach tapings to shell before testing and labeling.
 1. NPS 2 and Larger: Flanged ends according to ASME B16.5 for steel and stainless-steel flanges.
- K. Support Saddles:
 1. Fabricated of material similar to shell.
 2. Fabricate foot mount with provision for anchoring to support.
 3. Fabricate attachment of saddle supports to pressure vessel with reinforcement strong enough to resist heat-exchanger movement during seismic event when heat-exchanger saddles are anchored to building structure.
- L. Capacities and Characteristics: Refer Schedule on Dwg. M602.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Hangers and Supports:
 1. Field-fabricated steel supports to ensure both horizontal and vertical support of heat exchanger. Comply with requirements in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Shroud: Steel sheet.
- C. Miscellaneous Components for High-Temperature Hot-Water Unit: Control valve with pneumatically-operated to fail closed, valves, and piping.

- D. Pressure Relief Valves on Shell: Steel ASME rated and stamped for unfired pressure vessels.

2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Factory Tests: Test and inspect heat exchangers according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section VIII, "Pressure Vessels," Division 1. Affix ASME label.
- B. Hydrostatically test heat exchangers to minimum of one and one-half times pressure rating before shipment.
- C. Heat exchangers will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and for structural rigidity, strength, anchors, and other conditions affecting performance of heat exchangers.
- B. Examine roughing-in for heat-exchanger piping to verify actual locations of piping connections before equipment installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 SHELL-AND-TUBE HEAT-EXCHANGER INSTALLATION

- A. Equipment Mounting:
 - 1. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."
- B. Install heat exchangers on saddle supports.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in other Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping" and Section 232116 "Hydronic Piping Specialties." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances for tube removal, service, and maintenance.
- C. Install piping adjacent to heat exchangers to allow space for service and maintenance of heat exchangers. Arrange piping for easy removal of heat exchangers.
- D. Install shutoff valves at heat-exchanger inlet and outlet connections.

- E. Install relief valves on heat-exchanger heated-fluid connection and install pipe relief valves, full size of valve connection, to floor drain.
- F. Install hose end valve to drain shell.
- G. Install thermometer on heat-exchanger inlet and outlet piping, and install thermometer on heating-fluid inlet and outlet piping. Comply with requirements for thermometers specified in Section 230519 "Meters and Gages for HVAC Piping."
- H. Install pressure gages on heat-exchanger and heating-fluid piping. Comply with requirements for pressure gages specified in Section 230519 "Meters and Gages for HVAC Piping."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 - 1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- B. Heat exchanger will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 CLEANING

- A. After completing system installation, including outlet fitting and devices, inspect exposed finish. Remove burrs, dirt, and construction debris and repair damaged finishes.

3.6 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain heat exchangers.

END OF SECTION 23 5700

SECTION 23 6426 - ROTARY-SCREW WATER CHILLERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Packaged, air-cooled chillers.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. COP: Coefficient of performance. The ratio of the rate of heat removal to the rate of energy input using consistent units for any given set of rating conditions.
- B. DDC: Direct digital control.
- C. EER: Energy-efficiency ratio. The ratio of the cooling capacity given in terms of Btu/h to the total power input given in terms of watts at any given set of rating conditions.
- D. IPLV: Integrated part-load value. A single-number part-load efficiency figure of merit calculated per the method defined by ARI 506/110 and referenced to ARI standard rating conditions.
- E. KW/Ton: The ratio of total power input of the chiller in kilowatts to the net refrigerating capacity in tons at any given set of rating conditions.
- F. NPLV: Nonstandard part-load value. A single-number part-load efficiency figure of merit calculated per the method defined by ARI 506/110 and intended for operating conditions other than ARI standard rating conditions.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include refrigerant, rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.
 - 1. Performance at ARI standard conditions and at conditions indicated.
 - 2. Performance at ARI standard unloading conditions.
 - 3. Minimum evaporator flow rate.
 - 4. Refrigerant capacity of chiller.
 - 5. Oil capacity of chiller.
 - 6. Fluid capacity of evaporator.
 - 7. Characteristics of safety relief valves.

8. Fluid capacity of condenser.
9. Minimum entering condenser-fluid temperature.
10. Performance at varying capacities with constant-design entering condenser-fluid temperature. Repeat performance at varying capacities for different condenser-fluid temperatures from design to minimum in 6 deg F increments.
11. Minimum entering condenser-air temperature.
12. Maximum entering condenser-air temperature.

B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, load distribution, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
2. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Floor plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from Installers of the items involved:

1. Structural supports.
2. Piping roughing-in requirements.
3. Wiring roughing-in requirements, including spaces reserved for electrical equipment.
4. Access requirements, including working clearances for mechanical controls and electrical equipment, and tube pull and service clearances.

B. Certificates: For certification required in "Quality Assurance" Article.

C. Source quality-control reports.

D. Startup service reports.

E. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each chiller to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. ARI Certification: Certify chiller according to ARI 550 and ARI 590 certification program(s).

B. ASHRAE Compliance:

1. ASHRAE 15 for safety code for mechanical refrigeration.

2. ASHRAE 147 for refrigerant leaks, recovery, and handling and storage requirements.

C. ASME Standard B31.5 for Refrigerant piping.

D. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.

E. ASME Compliance: Fabricate and label chiller to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1, and include an ASME U-stamp and nameplate certifying compliance.

F. Comply with NFPA 70.

G. Comply with requirements of UL and UL Canada and include label by a qualified testing agency showing compliance.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Ship chillers from the factory fully charged with refrigerant.

B. Ship each oil-lubricated chiller with a full charge of oil.

1. Ship oil factory installed in chiller.

C. Package chiller for export shipping in totally enclosed crate.

1.9 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases.

B. Coordinate sizes, locations, and anchoring attachments of structural-steel support structures.

C. Coordinate sizes and locations of equipment supports with actual equipment provided.

1.10 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of chillers that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Extended warranties include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Complete chiller including refrigerant and oil charge.
- b. Complete compressor and drive assembly including refrigerant and oil charge.
- c. Parts and labor.
- d. Loss of refrigerant charge for any reason.

2. Warranty Period: One year from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PACKAGED, AIR-COOLED CHILLERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Daikin Applied.
 - 2. Dunham-Bush.
 - 3. Trane.
 - 4. YORK; a Johnson Controls company.
- B. Description: Factory-assembled and run-tested chiller complete with base and frame, condenser casing, compressors, compressor motors and motor controllers, evaporator, condenser coils, condenser fans and motors, electrical power, controls, and accessories.
- C. Fabricate base, frame, and attachment to chiller components strong enough to resist chiller movement during a seismic event when chiller base is anchored to field support structure.
- D. Cabinet:
 - 1. Base: Galvanized-steel base extending the perimeter of chiller. Secure frame, compressors, and evaporator to base to provide a single-piece unit.
 - 2. Frame: Rigid galvanized-steel frame secured to base and designed to support cabinet, condenser, control panel, and other chiller components not directly supported by base.
 - 3. Casing: Galvanized steel.
 - 4. Finish: Coat base, frame, and casing with a corrosion-resistant coating capable of withstanding a 1000-hour salt-spray test according to ASTM B 117.
 - 5. Security Package: Provide removable grilles with fasteners for additional protection of compressors, evaporator, and condenser coils without inhibiting service access. Finish to match cabinet.
- E. Compressors:
 - 1. Description: Positive displacement, hermetically sealed.
 - 2. Casing: Cast iron, precision machined for minimum clearance about periphery of rotors.
 - 3. Rotors: Manufacturer's standard one- or two-rotor design.
 - 4. Each compressor provided with oil level sight glass, suction and discharge shutoff valves, crankcase oil heater, and suction strainer. Unit shall be provided with isolation valves to allow condenser to be used as a pump down receiver.
- F. Service: Easily accessible for inspection and service.
- G. Capacity Control: Variable frequency driven motor and modulating slide-valve assembly at low load.

1. Maintain stable operation throughout range of operation. Configure to achieve most energy-efficient operation possible.
 2. Operating Range: From 100 to 30 percent of design capacity.
 3. Condenser-Air Unloading Requirements over Operating Range: Drop-in entering condenser-air temperature of 6 deg F (3 deg C) drop for each 10 percent in capacity reduction.
 4. For units equipped with a variable frequency controller, capacity control shall be both "valveless" and "stepless," requiring no slide valve or capacity-control valve(s) to operate at reduced capacity.
- H. Pressure differential Oil Lubrication System: Consisting of sight glass, oil sump, oil filter, oil sump heater, factory-wired power connection, and controls.
1. Provide lubrication to bearings, gears, and other rotating surfaces at all operating, startup, shutdown, and standby conditions including power failure.
 2. The oil heater shall be energized during the chiller switched off to prevent oil from dilution.
 3. Factory-installed and pressure-tested piping with isolation valves and accessories.
 4. Oil compatible with refrigerant and chiller components.
 5. Positive visual indication of oil level.
- I. Vibration Control:
1. Vibration Balance: Balance chiller compressors and drive assemblies to provide a precision balance that is free of noticeable vibration over the entire operating range.
 - a. Overspeed Test: 25 percent above design operating speed.
 2. Isolation: Mount individual compressors on vibration isolators.
- J. Compressor Motors:
1. Hermetically sealed and cooled by refrigerant suction gas.
 2. High-torque, induction type with inherent thermal-overload protection on each phase.
- K. Compressor Motor Controllers:
1. Variable Frequency Controller:
 - a. Motor controller shall be factory mounted and wired on the chiller to provide a single-point, field-power termination to the chiller and its auxiliaries.
 - b. Description: NEMA ICS 2; listed and labeled as a complete unit and arranged to provide variable speed by adjusting output voltage and frequency.
 - c. The VFD enclosure shall be IP55 rated suitable for outdoor use. The drive shall be able to operate with maximum output at 50°C ambient temp and humidity range from 5% to 95%.
 - d. P55 rated suitable for outdoor use. The drive shall be able to operate with maximum output at 50°C ambient temp and humidity range from 5% to 95%.

- e. Integral Disconnecting Means: Door-interlocked, NEMA AB 1, instantaneous-trip circuit breaker with lockable handle. Minimum withstand rating shall be as required by electrical power distribution system, but not less than 42,000 A.
- f. Motor current at start shall not exceed the rated load amperes, providing no electrical inrush.

L. Refrigerant Circuits:

- 1. Refrigerant: Type as indicated on Drawings.
- 2. Refrigerant Type: R-513A. Classified as Safety Group A1 according to ASHRAE 34.
- 3. Refrigerant Compatibility: Chiller parts exposed to refrigerants shall be fully compatible with refrigerants, and pressure components shall be rated for refrigerant pressures.
- 4. Refrigerant Circuit: Each shall include discharge service valves, liquid line shut off valve, oil filter, replaceable filter drier, and sight glass at liquid line. Liquid line angle valve shall be provided for refrigerant charging. Pressure relief valves shall be provided at evaporator and compressor body.
The packaged chiller shall be furnished with electronic expansion valve for precise modulation of refrigerant flow control and improve efficiency by optimizing the suction and discharge superheat. In addition, the refrigerant control system shall optimized refrigerant liquid level in the flooded evaporator to protect the compressor from slugging liquid refrigerant.
- 5. Pressure Relief Device:
 - a. Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 15 and in applicable portions of ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
 - b. ASME-rated, spring-loaded pressure relief valve; single- or multiple-reseating type.

M. Evaporator:

- 1. Description: Shell-and-tube design.
 - a. Flooded type with fluid flowing through tubes and refrigerant flowing around tubes within the shell.
- 2. Code Compliance: Tested and stamped according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
- 3. Shell Material: Carbon steel.
- 4. Shell Heads: Removable carbon-steel heads located at each end of the tube bundle.
- 5. Fluid Nozzles: Terminated with flanged end connections for connection to field piping.
- 6. Tube Construction: Individually replaceable copper tubes with enhanced fin design, expanded into tube sheets.
- 7. Vent and drain plugs are to be provided in water box. The shell side of the evaporator shall have pressure relief valve with provision for refrigerant venting.
- 8. Evaporator shell side shall be designed for working pressure up to 200 PSIG and undergo pneumatic pressure test at 220 PSIG. Tube side shall be designed for 150 PSIG working pressure and undergo hydrostatic pressure test at 195 PSIG.

9. All low temperature surfaces shall be factory insulated with 1 inch thick Polyethylene resin having K factor of 0.26 btu-in / hr.ft². °F.
10. Remote Mounting: Designed for remote field mounting where indicated. Provide kit for field installation.

N. Air-Cooled Condenser:

1. Plate-fin coil with integral subcooling on each circuit, rated at 450 psig.
 - a. Construct coil casing of galvanized steel.
 - b. Construct coils of copper tubes mechanically bonded to aluminum fins having self-spacing collars in staggered configuration.
 - c. Coat coils with a baked-epoxy, corrosion-resistant coating after fabrication.
 - d. Hail Protection: Provide condenser coils with louvers, baffles, or hoods to protect against hail damage.
2. Fans: Direct-drive propeller type with statically and dynamically balanced fan blades, arranged for vertical air discharge.
3. Fan Motors: Totally enclosed nonventilating (TENV) enclosure, squirrel cage induction type with IP55 enclosure and class F insulation with permanently lubricated bearings. Equip each motor with overload protection integral to either the motor or chiller controls.
4. The fan and the motor assembly shall be rigidly secured to the casing with a heavy gauge steel powder coated fan brackets.
5. Fan Guards: Steel safety guards with corrosion-resistant coating.

O. Electrical Power:

1. Factory-installed and -wired switches, motor controllers, transformers, and other electrical devices necessary shall provide a single-point, field-power connection to chiller.
2. House in a unit-mounted, NEMA 250, Type 3R enclosure with hinged access door with lock and key or padlock and key.
3. Wiring shall be numbered to match wiring diagram.
4. Install factory wiring outside of an enclosure in a raceway.
5. Field-power interface shall be to NEMA AB 1, instantaneous-trip circuit breaker with lockable handle.
 - a. Disconnect means shall be interlocked with door operation.
 - b. Minimum withstand rating shall be as required by electrical power distribution system, but not less than 42,000 A.
6. Provide branch power circuit to each motor and to controls with one of the following disconnecting means:
 - a. NEMA AB 1, motor-circuit protector (circuit breaker) with field-adjustable, short-circuit-trip set point.
7. Provide each motor with overcurrent protection.
8. Overload relay sized according to UL 1995 or an integral component of chiller control microprocessor.
9. Phase-Failure and Undervoltage Relays: Solid-state sensing with adjustable settings.

10. Provide power factor correction capacitors to correct power factor to 0.90 at full load.
 11. Control Transformer: Unit-mounted transformer with primary and secondary fuses and sized with enough capacity to operate electrical load plus spare capacity.
 - a. Power unit-mounted controls where indicated.
 - b. Power unit-mounted, ground fault interrupt (GFI) duplex receptacle.
 12. Control Relays: Auxiliary and adjustable time-delay relays.
 13. For chiller electrical power supply, indicate the following:
 - a. Current and phase to phase for all three phases.
 - b. Voltage, phase to phase, and phase to neutral for all three phases.
 - c. Three-phase real power (kilowatts).
 - d. Three-phase reactive power (kilovolt amperes reactive).
 - e. Power factor.
 - f. Running log of total power versus time (kilowatt-hours).
 - g. Fault log, with time and date of each.
- P. Controls:
1. Standalone and microprocessor based.
 2. Operator Interface: Multiple-character digital or graphic display with dynamic update of information and with keypad or touch-sensitive display located on front of control enclosure. In either imperial or metric units, display the following information:
 - a. Date and time.
 - b. Operating or alarm status.
 - c. Operating hours.
 - d. Outdoor-air temperature if required for chilled-water reset.
 - e. Temperature and pressure of operating set points.
 - f. Entering and leaving temperatures of chilled water.
 - g. Refrigerant pressures in evaporator and condenser.
 - h. Saturation temperature in evaporator and condenser.
 - i. No cooling load condition.
 - j. Elapsed time meter (compressor run status).
 - k. Pump status.
 - l. Antirecycling timer status.
 - m. Percent of maximum motor amperage.
 - n. Current-limit set point.
 - o. Number of compressor starts.
 3. Control Functions:
 - a. Manual or automatic startup and shutdown time schedule.
 - b. Entering and leaving chilled-water temperatures, control set points, and motor load limits. Chilled-water leaving temperature shall be reset based on outdoor-air temperature.
 - c. Current limit and demand limit.
 - d. External chiller emergency stop.
 - e. Antirecycling timer.
 - f. Automatic lead-lag switching.
 - g. Variable evaporator flow.

- h. Compressor motor increment contactors
 - i. Start delay timer
 - j. Oil sump heater interlock relays
 - k. Chilled water pump on/off control
- 4. Manually Reset Safety Controls: The following conditions shall shut down chiller and require manual reset:
 - a. Short circuit protection.
 - b. Compressor motor over load protection (3 phase)
 - c. Under or over voltage and phase failure relay
 - d. Reverse rotation
 - e. Compressor motor overheat protection
 - f. High discharge temperature protection
 - g. Low oil level protection via optical sensor
 - h. High condenser pressure
 - i. Low evaporator pressure
 - j. Low differential pressure
 - k. Freeze protection (low chilled liquid leaving temperature)
 - l. Chilled water flow loss
 - m. Compressor run error
 - n. Power loss
 - o. Sensor error
 - p. Refrigerant loss
 - q. Low Ambient Lock off
- 5. Indicator Lights
 - a. Compressor Motor high temperature
 - b. Compressor motor overload
 - c. System common alarm

The control system shall be provided with an anti-recycle device. The control shall limit compressor starting to a minimum of 15 minutes between starts.
- 6. Refrigerant Controls
 - a. Refrigerant flow control shall be carried out electronically by a precision electronic expansion valve
 - b. Compressor loading and unloading solenoid valves
- 7. Trending: Capability to trend analog data of up to five parameters simultaneously over an adjustable period and frequency of polling.
- 8. Security Access: Provide electronic security access to controls through identification and password with at least three levels of access: view only; view and operate; and view, operate, and service.
- 9. Control Authority: At least four conditions: Off, local manual control at chiller, local automatic control at chiller, and automatic control through a remote source.
- 10. Interface with DDC System for HVAC: Factory-installed hardware and software to enable the DDC system for HVAC to monitor, control, and display chiller status and alarms.
 - a. ASHRAE 135 (BACnet) or LonTalk communication interface with the DDC system for HVAC shall enable the DDC system for HVAC operator to

remotely control and monitor the chiller from an operator workstation. Control features and monitoring points displayed locally at chiller control panel shall be available through the DDC system for HVAC.

Q. Insulation:

1. All low temperature surfaces shall be factory insulated with 1 inch thick Polyethylene resin having K factor of 0.26 btu-in / hr.ft². °F.
2. Factory-applied insulation over cold surfaces of chiller components.
 - a. Adhesive: As recommended by insulation manufacturer and applied to 100 percent of insulation contact surface. Seal seams and joints.
3. Apply protective coating to exposed surfaces of insulation to protect insulation from weather.

R. Accessories:

1. Factory-furnished, chilled-water flow switches for field installation.
2. Individual compressor suction and discharge pressure gages with shutoff valves for each refrigerant circuit.
3. Factory-furnished spring isolators for field installation.
4. Tool Kit: Chiller manufacturer shall assemble a tool kit specially designed for use in serving the chiller(s) furnished. Include special tools required to service chiller components not readily available to Owner service personnel in performing routine maintenance. Place tools in a lockable case with hinged cover. Provide a list of each tool furnished and attach the list to underside of case cover.

S. Capacities and Characteristics: Refer Schedules on Dwg. M601.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine chillers before installation. Reject chillers that are damaged.
- B. Examine roughing-in for equipment support, anchor-bolt sizes and locations, piping, and electrical connections to verify actual locations, sizes, and other conditions affecting chiller performance, maintenance, and operations before equipment installation.
 1. Final chiller locations indicated on Drawings are approximate. Determine exact locations before roughing-in for piping and electrical connections.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 CHILLER INSTALLATION

- A. Install chillers on support structure indicated.
- B. Equipment Mounting:

1. Install chillers on cast-in-place concrete equipment bases. Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
 2. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."
- C. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances for service and maintenance.
- D. Charge chiller with refrigerant and fill with oil if not factory installed.
- E. Install separate devices furnished by manufacturer and not factory installed.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping," Section 232116 Hydronic Piping Specialties," and Section 232300 "Refrigerant Piping". Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to chiller to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Evaporator Fluid Connections: Connect to evaporator inlet with shutoff valve, strainer, flexible connector, thermometer, and plugged tee with pressure gage. Connect to evaporator outlet with shutoff valve, balancing valve, flexible connector, flow switch, thermometer, plugged tee with shutoff valve and pressure gage, flow meter, and drain connection with valve. Make connections to chiller with a flange.
- D. Refrigerant Pressure Relief Device Connections: For chillers installed indoors, extend vent piping to the outdoors without valves or restrictions. Comply with ASHRAE 15. Connect vent to chiller pressure relief device with flexible connector and dirt leg with drain valve.
- E. Connect each chiller drain connection with a union and drain pipe, and extend pipe, full size of connection, to floor drain. Provide a shutoff valve at each connection.

3.4 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 2. Verify that refrigerant charge is sufficient and chiller has been leak tested.
 3. Verify that pumps are installed and functional.
 4. Verify that thermometers and gages are installed.
 5. Operate chiller for run-in period.
 6. Check bearing lubrication and oil levels.
 7. For chillers installed indoors, verify that refrigerant pressure relief device is vented outdoors.
 8. Verify proper motor rotation.

9. Verify static deflection of vibration isolators, including deflection during chiller startup and shutdown.
 10. Verify and record performance of fluid flow and low-temperature interlocks for evaporator.
 11. Verify and record performance of chiller protection devices.
 12. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged or malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- B. Inspect field-assembled components, equipment installation, and piping and electrical connections for proper assembly, installation, and connection.
- C. Prepare test and inspection startup reports.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain chillers.

END OF SECTION 23 6426

SECTION 23 7433 - DEDICATED OUTDOOR-AIR UNITS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes factory-packaged units capable of supplying up to 100 percent outdoor air and providing cooling only and heating.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
 - 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, and required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 3. Prepare the following by or under the supervision of a qualified professional engineer:
 - a. Mounting Details: For securing and flashing curb to roof structure. Indicate coordinating requirements with roof membrane system.
 - b. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For design of vibration isolation, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
 - 1. Unit fabrication and assembly details.
 - 2. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.
 - 3. Design Calculations:
 - a. Calculate requirements for selecting vibration isolators and for designing vibration isolation bases.
 - b. Indicate compliance with "Performance Requirements" article.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Curb mounting details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
 - 1. Size and location of unit-mounted rails and anchor points and methods for anchoring units to curb.
 - 2. Required roof penetrations for ducts, pipes, and electrical raceways, including size and location of each penetration.
- B. Startup service reports.
- C. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Filters: 2 sets for each unit.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to replace components of units that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period for Compressors: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
 - 2. Warranty Period for Heat Exchangers: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. AAON.
 - 2. Annexair.
 - 3. Innovent.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment," and Section 7 - "Construction and System Start-up."
- B. Wind-Restraint Performance:
 - 1. Basic Wind Speed: 90 mph.
 - 2. Building Classification Category: III.
 - 3. Minimum 10 lb/sq. ft multiplied by the maximum area of unit projected on a vertical plane that is normal to the wind direction and 45 degrees either side of normal.
- C. Cabinet Thermal Performance:
 - 1. Maximum Overall U-Value: Comply with requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
 - 2. Include effects of metal-to-metal contact and thermal bridges in the calculations.
- D. Cabinet Surface Condensation:
 - 1. Cabinet shall have additional insulation and vapor seals if required to prevent condensation on the interior and exterior of the cabinet.
 - 2. Portions of cabinet located downstream from the cooling coil shall have a thermal break at each thermal bridge between the exterior and interior casing to prevent condensation from occurring on the interior and exterior surfaces. The thermal break shall not compromise the structural integrity of the cabinet.
- E. Maximum Cabinet Leakage: 0.5 percent of the total supply-air flow at a pressure rating equal to the fan shut-off pressure.
- F. Cabinet Deflection Performance:
 - 1. Walls and roof deflection shall be within 1/200 of the span at the design working pressure equal to the fan shut-off pressure. Deflection limits shall be measured at any point on the surface.
 - 2. Floor deflections shall be within 1/240 of the span considering the worst-case condition caused by the following:
 - a. Service personnel.
 - b. Internal components.
 - c. Design working pressure defined for the walls and roof.
- G. Electrical components, devices, and accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.3 CABINET

- A. Construction: Double wall.

- B. Exterior Casing Material: Galvanized steel with paint finish.
- C. Interior Casing Material: Galvanized steel.
- D. Lifting and Handling Provisions: Factory-installed shipping skids and lifting lugs.
- E. Base Rails: Galvanized-steel rails for mounting on curb as indicated.
- F. Access for Inspection, Cleaning, and Maintenance: Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
 - 1. Service Doors: Hinged access doors with gaskets. Material and construction of doors shall match material and construction of cabinet in which doors are installed.
- G. Roof: Standing seam or membrane; sloped to drain water.
- H. Floor: Reinforced, metal surface; reinforced to limit deflection when walked on by service personnel. Insulation shall be below metal walking surface.
- I. Cabinet Insulation:
 - 1. Type: Fibrous-glass duct lining complying with ASTM C 1071, Type II or flexible elastomeric insulation complying with ASTM C 534, Type II, sheet materials.
 - 2. Insulation Adhesive: Comply with ASTM C 916, Type I.
 - 3. Mechanical Fasteners: Suitable for adhesive, mechanical, or welding attachment to casing without damaging liner and without causing air leakage when applied as recommended by manufacturer.
- J. Condensate Drain Pans:
 - 1. Shape: Rectangular, with 1 percent slope in at least two planes to direct water toward drain connection.
 - 2. Size: Large enough to collect condensate from cooling coils including coil piping connections, coil headers, and return bends.
 - a. Length: Extend drain pan downstream from leaving face to comply with ASHRAE 62.1.
 - b. Depth: A minimum of 2 inches deep.
 - 3. Configuration: Double wall, with space between walls filled with foam insulation and moisture-tight seal.
 - 4. Material: Galvanized-steel sheet with asphaltic waterproofing compound coating on pan top surface.
 - 5. Material: Stainless-steel sheet.
 - 6. Drain Connection:
 - a. Located on both ends of pan, at lowest point of pan.
 - b. Terminated with threaded nipple.
 - c. Minimum Connection Size: NPS 1.

7. Units with stacked coils shall have an intermediate drain pan to collect condensate from top coil.

K. Surfaces in Contact with Airstream: Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1 for resistance to mold and erosion.

L. Curb: Full-perimeter curb of sheet metal, with wood nailer, neoprene sealing strip, and welded Z-bar flashing.

1. Comply with requirements in "The NRCA Roofing Manual."

2.4 SUPPLY FAN

A. Plenum Fan Type: Single width, non-overloading, with backward-inclined blades.

1. Fan Wheel Material: Aluminum; attached directly to motor shaft.
2. Fan Wheel Drive and Arrangement: Direct drive, AMCA Arrangement 4.
3. Fan panel and frame Material: Powder-coated steel, stainless steel, or aluminum.
4. Fan Enclosure: Easily removable enclosure around rotating parts.
5. Fan Balance: Precision balance fan below 0.08 inch/s at design speed with filter in.

B. Motors:

1. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment.
2. Enclosure: Open drip proof.
3. Enclosure Materials: Cast iron.
4. Motor Bearings.
5. Unusual Service Conditions:
 - a. Ambient Temperature: 10°F.
 - b. Altitude: 100 feet above sea level.
 - c. High humidity.
6. Efficiency: Premium efficient.

7. Service Factor: 1.0.

C. Mounting: Fan wheel, motor, and drives shall be mounted to fan casing with restrained isolators.

2.5 REFRIGERATION SYSTEM

A. Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 15, "Safety Standard for Refrigeration Systems."

B. Refrigerant Charge: Factory charged with refrigerant and filled with oil.

- C. Compressors: Scroll compressors with integral vibration isolators, internal overcurrent and over temperature protection, internal pressure relief.
- D. Refrigerant: R-410A.
 - 1. Classified as Safety Group A1 according to ASHRAE 34.
 - 2. Provide unit with operating charge of refrigerant.
- E. Refrigeration System Specialties:
 - 1. Expansion valve with replaceable thermostatic element.
 - 2. Refrigerant dryer.
 - 3. High-pressure switch.
 - 4. Low-pressure switch.
 - 5. Thermostat for coil freeze-up protection during low ambient temperature operation or loss of air.
 - 6. Brass service valves installed in discharge and liquid lines.
- F. Capacity Control:
 - 1. Hot-gas bypass refrigerant control for capacity control with continuous dehumidification on a compressor.
- G. Condenser Fan Assembly:
 - 1. Fans: Direct-drive propeller type with statically and dynamically balanced fan blades.
 - 2. Fan Motors:
 - a. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
 - b. Motor Enclosure: Totally enclosed non-ventilating (TENV) or totally enclosed air over (TEAO) enclosure.
 - c. Motor Bearings: Permanently lubricated bearings.
 - d. Built-in overcurrent and thermal-overload protection.
 - e. Efficiency: Premium efficient.
 - 3. Fan Safety Guards: Steel with corrosion-resistant coating.
- H. Safety Controls:
 - 1. Compressor motor and condenser coil fan motor low ambient lockout.
 - 2. Overcurrent protection for compressor motor.

2.6 HOT-WATER HEATING COIL

- A. Capacity Ratings: Comply with ASHRAE 33 and ARI 410 and coil bearing the ARI label.
- B. Coil Casing Material: Manufacturer's standard material.

- C. Tube Material: Copper.
- D. Tube Header Material: Manufacturer's standard material.
- E. Fin Material: Aluminum.
- F. Fin and Tube Joints: Mechanical bond.
- G. Leak Test: Coils shall be leak tested with air underwater.
- H. Coating: Phenolic epoxy corrosion-protection coating after assembly.

2.7 OUTDOOR-AIR INTAKE HOOD

- A. Type: Manufacturer's standard hood or louver.
- B. Materials: Match cabinet.
- C. Bird Screen: ½" SS Wire Mesh Screen.
- D. Configuration: Designed to inhibit wind-driven rain and snow from entering unit.

2.8 HEAT WHEEL

- A. Casing:
 - 1. Steel with standard factory-painted finish.
 - 2. Integral purge section limiting carryover of exhaust air to between 0.05 percent at 1.6-inch wg and 0.20 percent at 4-inch wg differential pressure.
 - 3. Casing seals on periphery of rotor and on duct divider and purge section.
 - 4. Support vertical rotors on grease-lubricated ball bearings having extended grease fittings or permanently lubricated bearings. Support horizontal rotors on tapered roller bearing.
- B. Rotor: Aluminum segmented wheel strengthened with radial spokes, with nontoxic, noncorrosive, silica-gel desiccant coating.
 - 1. Maximum Solid Size for Media to Pass: 500 micrometers.
- C. Drive: Fractional horsepower motor and gear reducer and self-adjusting multilink belt around outside of rotor.
 - 1. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment.
 - 2. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
- D. Controls:

1. Starting relay, factory mounted and wired, and manual motor starter for field wiring.
2. Variable frequency controller, factory mounted and wired, permitting input of field connected 4-20 mA or 1-10-V control signal.
3. Variable frequency controller, factory mounted and wired, with exhaust-air sensor to vary rotor speed and maintain exhaust temperature above freezing.
4. Variable frequency controller, factory mounted and wired, with exhaust- and outdoor-air sensors, automatic changeover thermostat and set-point adjuster, to vary rotor speed and maintain exhaust temperature above freezing and air differential temperature above set point. Rotor speed shall increase to maximum when exhaust-air temperature is less than outdoor-air temperature.
5. Pilot-Light Indicator: Display rotor rotation and speed.
6. Speed Settings: Adjustable settings for maximum and minimum rotor speed limits.

2.9 EXHAUST FAN

A. Plenum Fan Type: Single width, non-overloading, with backward-inclined blades.

1. Fan Wheel Material: Aluminum; attached directly to motor shaft.
2. Fan Wheel Drive and Arrangement: Direct drive, AMCA Arrangement 4.
3. Fan panel and frame Material: Powder-coated steel, stainless steel, or aluminum.
4. Fan Enclosure: Easily removable enclosure around rotating parts.
5. Fan Balance: Precision balance fan below 0.08 inch/s at design speed with filter in.

B. Motors:

1. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment.
2. Enclosure: Open drip proof.

C. Mounting: Fan wheel, motor, and drives shall be mounted to fan casing with restrained isolators.

2.10 FILTERS

A. Extended-Surface, Disposable Panel Filters:

1. Comply with NFPA 90A.
2. Factory-fabricated, dry, extended-surface type.
3. Thickness: 2 inches' pre-filter, 4 inches' final filter.
4. Initial Resistance: 0.5 inches wg.
5. Recommended Final Resistance: 1.0 inches wg.
6. Minimum Arrestance: 90, according to ASHRAE 52.1.
7. Minimum MERV: 13, according to ASHRAE 52.2.
8. Media: Fibrous material formed into deep-V-shaped pleats with antimicrobial agent and held by self-supporting wire grid.

B. Mounting Frames:

1. Panel filters arranged for flat or angular orientation, with access doors on both sides of unit. Filters shall be removable from one side or from access plenum.
2. Extended surface filters arranged for flat orientation, removable from access plenum.
3. Galvanized or stainless steel with gaskets and fasteners, suitable for bolting together into built-up filter banks with space for pre-filter.

2.11 ELECTRICAL POWER CONNECTIONS

- A. General Electrical Power Connection Requirements: Factory-installed and -wired switches, motor controllers, transformers, and other necessary electrical devices shall provide a single-point field power connection to unit.
- B. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4, mounted in unit with hinged access door in unit cabinet having a lock and key or padlock and key,
- C. Wiring: Numbered and color-coded to match wiring diagram.
- D. Wiring Location: Install factory wiring outside an enclosure in a raceway.
- E. Factory Wiring: Branch power circuit to each motor and to controls with one of the following disconnecting means:
1. NEMA KS 1, heavy-duty, fusible switch with rejection-type fuse clips rated for fuses. Select and size fuses to provide Type 2 protection according to IEC 60947-4-1.
 2. NEMA KS 1, heavy-duty, non-fusible switch.
 3. UL 489, motor-circuit protector (circuit breaker) with field-adjustable, short-circuit trip coordinated with motor locked-rotor amperes.
- F. Factory-Mounted, Overcurrent-Protection Service: For each motor.
- G. Transformer: Factory mounted with primary and secondary fuses and sized with enough capacity to operate electrical load plus spare capacity.
- H. Controls: Factory wire unit-mounted controls where indicated.
- I. Receptacle: Factory wire unit-mounted, ground fault interrupt (GFI) duplex receptacle.
- J. Control Relays: Auxiliary and adjustable time-delay relays.

2.12 CONTROLS

- A. Control equipment and sequence of operation are specified in Instrumentation and Control for HVAC.
- B. Control Wiring: Factory wire connection for controls' power supply.

- C. Control Devices: Sensors, transmitters, relays, switches, detectors, operators, actuators, and valves shall be manufacturer's standard items to accomplish indicated control functions.
- D. Unit-Mounted Status Panel:
1. Cooling/Off/Heating Controls: Control operational mode.
 2. Damper Position: Indicate position of outdoor-air dampers in terms of percentage of outdoor air.
 3. Status Lights:
 - a. Filter dirty.
 - b. Fan operating.
 - c. Cooling operating.
 - d. Heating operating.
 - e. Smoke alarm.
 - f. General alarm.
 4. Digital Numeric Display:
 - a. Outdoor airflow.
 - b. Supply airflow.
 - c. Outdoor dry-bulb temperature.
 - d. Outdoor dew point temperature.
 - e. Supply temperature.
- E. Control Dampers:
1. Damper Location: Factory installed inside unit for ease of blade axle and bushing service. Arrange dampers located in a mixing box to achieve convergent airflow to minimize stratification.
 2. Damper Leakage: Comply with requirements in AMCA 500-D. Leakage shall not exceed 6.5 cfm per sq. ft. at a static-pressure differential of 4.0 inches' water column when a torque of 5 inch pounds per sq. ft. is applied to the damper jackshaft.
 3. Damper Rating: Rated for close-off pressure equal to the fan shutoff pressure.
 4. Damper Label: Bear the AMCA seal for both air leakage and performance.
 5. Blade Configuration: Unless otherwise indicated, use parallel blade configuration for two-position control and equipment isolation service and use modulating control when mixing two airstreams. For other applications, use an opposed-blade configuration.
 6. Damper Frame Material: Extruded aluminum, galvanized steel, or stainless steel.
 7. Blade Type: Single-thickness metal reinforced with multiple V-grooves or hollow-shaped airfoil.
 8. Blade Material: Extruded aluminum, galvanized steel, or stainless steel.
 9. Maximum Blade Width: 6 inches.
 10. Maximum Blade Length: 48 inches.
 11. Blade Seals: Replaceable, continuous perimeter vinyl seals and jambs with stainless-steel compression-type seals.
 12. Bearings: Thrust bearings for vertical blade axles.
 13. Airflow Measurement:

- a. Monitoring System: Complete and functioning system of airflow monitoring as an integral part of the damper assembly where indicated.
- b. Remote Monitoring Signal: 0-10 volt or 4-20 mA scaled signal.
- c. Accuracy of flow measurement: Within 10 percent of the actual flow rate between the range of the scheduled minimum and maximum airflow. For units with a large range between minimum and maximum airflow, configure the damper sections and flow measurement assembly as necessary to comply with accuracy.
- d. Straightening Device: Integral to the flow measurement assembly if required to achieve the specified accuracy as installed.
- e. Flow measuring device: Suitable for operation in untreated and unfiltered outdoor air. If necessary, include temperature and altitude compensation and correction to maintain the accuracy.

F. Damper Operators:

- 1. Factory-installed electric operator for each damper assembly with one operator for each damper assembly mounted to the damper frame.
- 2. Operator capable of shutoff against fan pressure and able to operate the damper with sufficient reserve power to achieve smooth modulating action and proper speed of response at the velocity and pressure conditions to which the damper is subjected.
- 3. Maximum Operating Time: Open or close damper 90 degrees in 90 seconds.
- 4. Adjustable Stops: For both maximum and minimum positions.
- 5. Position Indicator and Graduated Scale: Factory installed on each actuator with words "OPEN" and "CLOSED," or similar identification, at travel limits.
- 6. Spring-return operator to fail-safe; either closed or open as required by application.
- 7. Operator Type: Direct coupled, designed for minimum 60,000 full-stroke cycles at rated torque.
- 8. Position feedback Signal: For remote monitoring of damper position.
- 9. Coupling: V-bolt and V-shaped, toothed cradle.
- 10. Circuitry: Electronic overload or digital rotation-sensing circuitry.

G. Refrigeration System Controls:

- 1. Unit-mounted enthalpy controller shall lock out refrigerant system when outdoor-air enthalpy is less than 28 Btu/lb (65 kJ/kg) of dry air or outdoor-air temperature is less than 60 deg F (15 deg C).
- 2. Outdoor-air sensor de-energizes dehumidifier operation when outdoor-air temperature is less than 60 deg F (15 deg C).
- 3. Relative-humidity sensor energizes dehumidifier operation when relative humidity is more than 50 percent.

H. Hot-Water Coil Controls: Space-temperature sensor with temperature adjustment to modulate factory-furnished coil control valve to maintain temperature.

I. Integral Smoke Alarm: Smoke detector installed in supply and return air.

J. BAS Interface: Factory-installed hardware and software to enable the BAS to monitor, control, and display unit status and alarms.

1. Hardwired Points:
 - a. Monitoring: On-off status, common trouble alarm.
 - b. Control: On-off operation, supply temperature set-point adjustment and space pressure set-point adjustment.
2. ASHRAE 135 (BACnet) communication interface with the BAS shall enable the BAS operator to remotely control and monitor the unit from an operator workstation. Control features and monitoring points displayed locally at unit control panel shall be available through the BAS.

2.13 ACCESSORIES

- A. Service Lights and Switch: Factory installed in fan and coil sections each accessible section with weatherproof cover. Factory wire lights to a single-point field connection.
- B. Duplex Receptacle: Factory mounted in unit supply-fan section, with 20 amp 120 V GFI duplex receptacle and weatherproof cover.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for piping, ducts, and electrical systems to verify actual locations of connections before equipment installation.
- C. Examine curbs and equipment supports for suitable conditions where units will be installed.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's rigging and installation instructions for unloading units and moving to final locations.
- B. Curb Support: Install curb on roof structure according to "The NRCA Roofing Manual."
 1. Install and secure units on curbs and coordinate roof penetrations and flashing with roof construction.
 2. Coordinate size, installation, and structural capacity of curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations. These items are specified in Roof Accessories.
 3. Coordinate size, location, and installation of unit manufacturer's curbs and equipment supports with roof Installer.
- C. Equipment Mounting:

1. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."
- D. Install duct-mounted sensors furnished by manufacturer for field installation. Install control wiring and make final connections to control devices and unit control panel.
- E. Install separate devices furnished by manufacturer and not factory installed.
- F. Install new filters at completion of equipment installation and before testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- G. Install drain pipes from unit drain pans to sanitary drain.
 1. Drain Piping: Schedule 40 PVC pipe complying with ASTM D 1785, with solvent-welded fittings.
 - a. PVC solvent cement shall have a VOC content of 510 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - b. Adhesive primer shall have a VOC content of 550 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - c. Solvent cement and adhesive primer shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
 2. Pipe Size: Refer drawings.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Where installing piping adjacent to units, allow space for service and maintenance.
- B. Hydronic Piping Connections:
 1. Comply with requirements in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping" and Section 232116 Hydronic Piping Specialties."
 2. Install shutoff valve and union or flange on each supply connection and install balancing valve and union or flange on each return connection.
- C. Duct Connections:
 1. Comply with requirements in Metal Ducts.
 2. Drawings indicate the general arrangement of ducts.
 3. Connect ducts to units with flexible duct connectors. Comply with requirements for flexible duct connectors in Air Duct Accessories.
- D. Electrical Connections: Comply with requirements for power wiring, switches, and motor controls in electrical Sections.
 1. Install electrical devices furnished by unit manufacturer but not factory mounted.

3.4 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 2. Inspect units for visible damage to furnace combustion chamber.
 3. Perform the following operations for both minimum and maximum firing and adjust burner for peak efficiency:
 - a. Measure gas pressure at manifold.
 - b. Measure combustion-air temperature at inlet to combustion chamber.
 - c. Measure flue-gas temperature at furnace discharge.
 - d. Perform flue-gas analysis. Measure and record flue-gas carbon dioxide and oxygen concentration.
 - e. Measure supply-air temperature and volume when burner is at maximum firing rate and when burner is off. Calculate useful heat to supply air.
 4. Verify operation of remote panel including pilot-light operation and failure modes. Inspect the following:
 - a. High-limit heat exchanger.
 - b. Alarms.
 5. Inspect units for visible damage to refrigerant compressor, condenser and evaporator coils, and fans.
 6. Start refrigeration system when outdoor-air temperature is within normal operating limits and measure and record the following:
 - a. Cooling coil leaving-air, dry- and wet-bulb temperatures.
 - b. Cooling coil entering-air, dry- and wet-bulb temperatures.
 - c. Condenser coil entering-air dry-bulb temperature.
 - d. Condenser coil leaving-air dry-bulb temperature.
 7. Simulate maximum cooling demand and inspect the following:
 - a. Compressor refrigerant suction and hot-gas pressures.
 - b. Short-circuiting of air through outside coil or from outside coil to outdoor-air intake.
 8. Inspect casing insulation for integrity, moisture content, and adhesion.
 9. Verify that clearances have been provided for servicing.
 10. Verify that controls are connected and operable.
 11. Verify that filters are installed.
 12. Clean coils and inspect for construction debris.
 13. Clean furnace flue and inspect for construction debris.
 14. Inspect operation of power vents.
 15. Purge gas line.
 16. Inspect and adjust vibration isolators and seismic restraints.
 17. Verify bearing lubrication.
 18. Clean fans and inspect fan-wheel rotation for movement in correct direction without vibration and binding.
 19. Adjust fan belts to proper alignment and tension.
 20. Start unit.

21. Inspect and record performance of interlocks and protective devices including response to smoke detectors by fan controls and fire alarm.
22. Operate unit for run-in period.
23. Calibrate controls.
24. Adjust and inspect high-temperature limits.
25. Inspect outdoor-air dampers for proper stroke and interlock with return-air dampers.
26. Verify operational sequence of controls.
27. Measure and record the following airflows. Plot fan volumes on fan curve.
 - a. Supply air flow.
 - b. Return-air flow.
 - c. Outdoor-air flow.

- B. After startup, change filters, verify bearing lubrication, and adjust belt tension.
- C. Remove and replace components that do not properly operate and repeat startup procedures as specified above.
- D. Prepare written report of the results of startup services.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust initial temperature and humidity set points.
- B. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.
- C. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

3.6 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain units.

END OF SECTION 23 7433

SECTION 23 8126 - SPLIT-SYSTEM AIR-CONDITIONERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes split-system air-conditioning and heat-pump units consisting of separate evaporator-fan and compressor-condenser components.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories. Include performance data in terms of capacities, outlet velocities, static pressures, sound power characteristics, motor requirements, and electrical characteristics.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 2. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.
- B. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For split-system air-conditioning units to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. ASHRAE Compliance:

1. Fabricate and label refrigeration system to comply with ASHRAE 15, "Safety Standard for Refrigeration Systems."
2. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 4 - "Outdoor Air Quality," Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment," Section 6 - "Procedures," and Section 7 - "Construction and System Start-up."

C. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork are specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- B. Coordinate sizes and locations of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations with actual equipment provided.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of split-system air-conditioning units that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 1. Warranty Period:
 - a. For Compressor: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
 - b. For Parts: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
 - c. For Labor: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Carrier Corporation; a unit of United Technologies Corp.
 2. Mitsubishi Electric & Electronics USA, Inc.
 3. Trane.
 4. YORK; a Johnson Controls company.

2.2 INDOOR UNITS :

- A. Wall-Mounted, Evaporator-Fan Components:
 1. Cabinet: Enameled steel with removable panels on front and ends in color selected by Architect, and discharge drain pans with drain connection.
 2. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins and thermal-expansion valve. Comply with ARI 206/110.
 3. Fan: Direct drive, centrifugal.
 4. Fan Motors:

- a. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
 - b. Multitapped, multispeed with internal thermal protection and permanent lubrication.
 - c. Enclosure Type: Totally enclosed, fan cooled.
 - d. NEMA Premium (TM) efficient motors as defined in NEMA MG 1.
 - e. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in electrical Sections.
 - f. Mount unit-mounted disconnect switches on exterior of unit.
 5. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
 6. Condensate Drain Pans:
 - a. Fabricated with one percent slope in at least two planes to collect condensate from cooling coils, and to direct water toward drain connection.
 - 1) Length: Extend drain pan downstream from leaving face [to comply with ASHRAE 62.1]
 - 2) Depth: A minimum of 1 inch deep.
 - b. Single-wall, stainless-steel sheet.
 - c. Drain Connection: Located at lowest point of pan and sized to prevent overflow. Terminate with threaded nipple on [one end] [both ends] of pan.
 - 1) Minimum Connection Size: NPS 1.
 7. Air Filtration Section:
 - a. General Requirements for Air Filtration Section:
 - 1) Comply with NFPA 90A.
 - 2) Minimum Arrestance: According to ASHRAE 52.1 and MERV according to ASHRAE 52.2.
 - 3) Filter-Holding Frames: Arranged for flat or angular orientation, with access doors on both sides of unit. Filters shall be removable from one side or lifted out from access plenum.
 8. Condensing pump:
 - a. UL listed, 33FI of discharge head 115V/1PH/60Hz.
 - b. Provide safety switch and check valve.
- A. Concealed Evaporator-Fan Components:
1. Chassis: Galvanized steel with flanged edges, removable panels for servicing, and insulation on back of panel.
 2. Insulation: Faced, glass-fiber duct liner.
 3. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins and thermal-expansion valve. Comply with ARI 206/110.
 4. Fan: Forward-curved, double-width wheel of galvanized steel; directly connected to motor.
 5. Fan Motors:

- a. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
 - b. Multitapped, multispeed with internal thermal protection and permanent lubrication.
 - c. Wiring Terminations: Connect motor to chassis wiring with plug connection.
6. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
7. Filters: Permanent, cleanable.
8. Condensate Drain Pans:
 - a. Fabricated with one percent slope in at least two planes to collect condensate from cooling coils (including coil piping connections, coil headers, and return bends)
 - 1) Length: Extend drain pan downstream from leaving face.
 - 2) Depth: A minimum of 2 inches deep.
 - b. Single-wall, galvanized-steel sheet.
 - c. Drain Connection: Located at lowest point of pan and sized to prevent overflow. Terminate with threaded nipple on one end of pan.
 - 1) Minimum Connection Size: NPS 1.

2.3 OUTDOOR UNITS:

A. Air-Cooled, Compressor-Condenser Components:

1. Casing: Steel, finished with baked enamel in color selected by Architect, with removable panels for access to controls, weep holes for water drainage, and mounting holes in base. Provide brass service valves, fittings, and gage ports on exterior of casing.
2. Compressor: Hermetically sealed with crankcase heater and mounted on vibration isolation device. Compressor motor shall have thermal- and current-sensitive overload devices, start capacitor, relay, and contactor.
 - a. Compressor Type: Scroll.
 - b. Two-speed compressor motor with manual-reset high-pressure switch and automatic-reset low-pressure switch.
 - c. Refrigerant Charge: R-32.
 - d. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins and liquid sub-cooler. Comply with ARI 206/110.
3. Heat-Pump Components: Reversing valve and low-temperature-air cutoff thermostat.
4. Fan: Aluminum-propeller type, directly connected to motor.
5. Motor: Permanently lubricated, with integral thermal-overload protection.
6. Low Ambient Kit: Permits operation down to 45 deg F
7. Mounting Base: Polyethylene.

2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Control equipment and sequence of operation are specified in Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC" and Section 230993.11 "Sequence of Operations for HVAC DDC."
- B. Thermostat: Low voltage with subbase to control compressor and evaporator fan.
- C. Automatic-reset timer to prevent rapid cycling of compressor.
- D. Refrigerant Line Kits: Soft-annealed copper suction and liquid lines factory cleaned, dried, pressurized, and sealed; factory-insulated suction line with flared fittings at both ends.
- E. Drain Hose: For condensate.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install units level and plumb.
- B. Install evaporator-fan components using manufacturer's standard mounting devices securely fastened to building structure.
- C. Install roof-mounted, compressor-condenser components on equipment supports specified in Section 077200 "Roof Accessories." Anchor units to supports with removable, cadmium-plated fasteners.
- D. Equipment Mounting:
 - 1. Install ground-mounted, compressor-condenser components on cast-in-place concrete equipment base(s). Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
 - 2. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."
- E. Install and connect pre-charged refrigerant tubing to component's quick-connect fittings. Install tubing to allow access to unit.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Where piping is installed adjacent to unit, allow space for service and maintenance of unit.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
 - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - 2. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
 - 3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- D. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.4 STARTUP SERVICE

- 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 23 8126

SECTION 23 8216.11 - HYDRONIC AIR COILS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes hydronic heating air coils.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each air coil.
 - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and pressure drops for each air coil.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which coil location and ceiling-mounted access panels are shown and coordinated with each other.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air coils to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 DESCRIPTION

- A. ASHRAE Compliance: Comply with applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."

2.2 COILS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Carrier Corporation; a unit of United Technologies Corp.
 - 2. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
 - 3. Trane.

- B. Performance Ratings: Tested and rated according to AHRI 410 and ASHRAE 33.
- C. Minimum Working-Pressure/Temperature Ratings: 200 psig, 325 deg F.
- D. Source Quality Control: Factory tested to 300 psig.
- E. Tubes: ASTM B 743 copper, minimum 0.020 inch thick.
- F. Fins: Aluminum, minimum 0.006 inch thick.
- G. Frames: Galvanized-steel channel frame, minimum 0.052 inch thick for slip-in mounting.
- H. Hot-Water Coil Capacities and Characteristics: Refer Mechanical Schedules.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine ducts, plenums, and casings to receive air coils for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting coil performance.
- B. Examine roughing-in for piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before coil installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install coils level and plumb.
- B. Install coils in metal ducts and casings constructed according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards, Metal and Flexible."
- C. Straighten bent fins on air coils.
- D. Clean coils using materials and methods recommended in writing by manufacturers, and clean inside of casings and enclosures to remove dust and debris.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to coils to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Connect water piping with unions and shutoff valves to allow coils to be disconnected without draining piping. Control valves are specified in Section 230923.11 "Control Valves," and other piping specialties are specified in Section 232116 "Hydronic Piping Specialties."

END OF SECTION 23 8216.11

SECTION 23 8219 - FAN COIL UNITS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Ductless fan coil units and accessories.
 - 2. Ducted fan coil units and accessories.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, and required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For units with factory-applied color finishes.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each type of fan coil unit indicated.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Floor plans, reflected ceiling plans, and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, based on input from installers of the items involved:
 - 1. Suspended ceiling components.
 - 2. Structural members to which fan coil units will be attached.
 - 3. Method of attaching hangers to building structure.
 - 4. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
 - 5. Items penetrating finished ceiling, including the following:
 - a. Lighting fixtures.
 - b. Air outlets and inlets.
 - c. Speakers.

- d. Sprinklers.
- e. Access panels.
- 6. Perimeter moldings.

- B. Field quality-control reports.
- C. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fan coil units to include in operation, and maintenance manuals.
 - 1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
 - a. Maintenance schedules and repair part lists for motors, coils, integral controls, and filters.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Fan Coil Unit Filters: Furnish 10 spare filters for each filter type installed.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with NFPA 70.
- B. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."
- C. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."

1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of fan coil units and suspension system components with other construction that penetrates or is supported by ceilings, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, fire-suppression-system components, and partition assemblies.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of units that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Fan failure.
 - b. Coil leak.

c. Unit controls failure.

2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Factory-packaged and -tested units rated according to AHRI 440, ASHRAE 33, and UL 1995.

2.2 DUCTLESS FAN COIL UNITS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Comfort Wave
 - 2. Carrier Corporation; a unit of United Technologies Corp.
 - 3. Trane Inc.
- B. Unit Construction
 - 1. Galvanized Steel cabinet with fire resistant thermal and acoustic foam insulation.
 - 2. Light grey high-impact ABS fascia.
 - 3. Expanded polystyrene drain pan with fire retardant thermoplastic liner.
 - 4. Outside air intake sidewall connection.
 - 5. Manually adjustable or automatic four-way air distribution vanes on face.
- C. Fans
 - 1. Backward-curved impeller centrifugal design, dynamically and statically balanced, and mounted on integral mounting rails.
 - 2. Fire retardant plastic impellers for single fan units.
 - 3. Aluminum impellers for twin fan units.
- D. Motor
 - 1. Multispeed, enclosed type with thermal protection and sealed lifetime bearings, direct drive.
- E. Filter
 - 1. Permanent metal frame mesh washable filter with 80% arrestance.
 - 2. Filter shall be serviceable from beneath unit.
- F. Coils

1. Seamless copper tubing with aluminum fins.
2. Factory tested to 500 psig

G. Accessories

1. Condensate lift pump with 36" lift capacity.
2. BACnet controls interface

2.3 DUCTED FAN COIL UNITS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Nailor Industries Inc.
2. Carrier Corporation; a unit of United Technologies Corp.
3. Trane Inc.

B. Construction

1. All units shall be Direct Drive – Draw Through configuration and completely factory assembled, tested and shipped as one piece. All units shall be capable of meeting or exceeding the scheduled capacities for cooling, heating and air delivery. Units shall be UL or ETL, listed in compliance with UL 1995, and be certified as complying with the latest edition of AHRI Standard 440. Must meet the requirements of NFPA 90A and UL 181.
2. All unit chassis shall be fabricated of heavy gauge galvanized steel panels able to meet 125-hour salt spray test per ASTM B-117. All panels surrounding the coil shall be insulated with 1" thick closed cell fiber-free liner and rated for air velocity of 6000 f.p.m. Insulation must meet all requirements of ASTM C1071 including C665, UL 181 for erosion, and carry a 25/50 rating for flame spread/smoke developed per ASTM E-84, UL 723 and NFPA 90A. All other panels, surrounding the units, must also be acoustically and thermally insulated with a minimum of 1" insulation with dual density insulation fiber glass insulation where all exposed edges are coated to prevent air erosion.
3. Unit cabinet shall have side and bottom full size access panels for ease of maintenance and service and motor blower removal. Access panels shall be attached to casing with screws.

C. Casing leakage shall not exceed 2% of rated airflow @ .5" w.g.

D. Unit shall be draw through type with fan dynamically balanced, forwardly curved; DWDI centrifugal type constructed of 18-gauge zinc coated galvanized steel for corrosion resistance. The fan assembly shall be easily removable for servicing the motor and blower at, or away from the unit. The entire fan assembly shall be able to come out of the unit by removing four nuts per fan and disconnecting the motor(s) wires.

E. Motor shall be direct drive, isolated from blower and fan housing in at least four (4) locations with rubber isolators to eliminate any motor vibration being transmitted to the fan housing and duct. Motor shall be capable to be serviced through the bottom or side panel. Provide isolation between fan motor assembly and unit casing in at least four (4)

locations to eliminate any vibration from the fan to the terminal unit casing. Motors shall be high efficiency, permanently lubricated sleeve bearing. Single speed motors are not acceptable. Motor wires shall be brought into external hinged door control enclosure to facilitate wiring and service. Motors shall be Electronic Commutated Motors with UL and CSA listed automatic reset thermal overload protection and factory programmed and run-tested in assembled units with fully variable speed capability.

- F. The motor designed for use with single phase power shall have a controller mounted in a control box with a built-in integrated user interface. If adjustments are needed, motor parameters can be adjusted without factory service personnel at the motor control board. Motors shall soft-ramp to programmed specific to minimize the acoustics due to sudden speed changes. Motors can be operated at the established range of airflows with a factory or field-supplied variable speed controller. All motors have integral thermal overload protection with a maximum ambient operating temperature of 104°F. Motors are capable of starting at 50 percent of rated voltage and operating at 90 percent of rated voltage on all speed settings. Motors can operate up to 10 percent over voltage.

G. Sound

1. Units shall have discharge and radiated sound power levels published and tested in accordance with AHRI Standard 880.

H. Coils

1. All water coils shall be AHRI 410 certified and tagged with an AHRI 410 label. All coils shall be pressure tested under water at 1.5 times the working pressure classification indicated in the Contract Documents, but the test pressure in no case shall be less than 300 psig. Coils shall have 1/2" O.D. seamless copper tubes, and collared and corrugated aluminum fins. Tube wall thickness of 0.016 to be standard. Coil frames shall be constructed of minimum G-90 galvanized steel. Water velocity in the tubes shall not exceed eight (8) feet per second and the coil face velocity shall not exceed 500 fpm.
2. Coils, header and drain pan shall be provided in a fully insulated integral casing with 3/4" fiber-free/foam insulation to increase thermal efficiency and reduce casing leakage.
3. For 4-pipe system a separate heating coils shall be furnished in the preheat position as standard.
4. All coils shall be provided with an auto air vent fitting to allow for coil venting.

I. Drain Pans

1. Primary condensate drain pans shall be heavy gauge galvanized steel, and extend under the entire cooling coil. Drain pans shall be of one-piece construction, have at least 1" height side and be positively sloped for condensate removal.
2. The drain pan shall be externally insulated with minimum 3/8" thick fire retardant, closed cell foam insulation. The insulation shall carry no more than a 25/50 Flame Spread and Smoke Developed Rating per ASTM E-84 and UL 723 and an Antimicrobial Performance Rating of "0", no observed growth, per ASTM G-21.

3. Provide a condensate overflow switch in the primary drain pan for condensate overflow.

J. Filter

1. Provide unit with 2" pleated filters rated at 25-30% efficiency and MERV 13 based on ASHRAE 52.2

K. Electrical

1. Units shall be furnished with a hinged door control enclosure and wired single point power connection. All power and control wiring shall conform to NEC Standards. Within the control enclosure it shall include all required devices, including but not limited to, service switch, relay, control power transformers and control packages, low voltage remote shutdown relays, etc.

L. Controls

1. Unit shall be furnished with BACnet controls interface.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas, with Installer present, to receive fan coil units for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for piping and electrical connections to verify actual locations before fan coil unit installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install fan coil units level and plumb.
- B. Install fan coil units to comply with NFPA 90A.
- C. Suspend fan coil units from structure with elastomeric hangers. Vibration isolators are specified in Section 230548 "Vibration Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- D. Verify locations of thermostats, humidistats, and other exposed control sensors with Drawings and room details before installation. Install devices 48 inches above finished floor
- E. Install new filters in each fan coil unit within two weeks after Substantial Completion.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties. Specific connection requirements are as follows:
 - 1. Install piping adjacent to machine to allow service and maintenance.
 - 2. Connect piping to fan coil unit factory hydronic piping package. Install piping package if shipped loose.
 - 3. Connect condensate drain to indirect waste per plans.
 - a. Install condensate trap of adequate depth to seal against fan pressure or provide condensate pump connection per manufacturer's recommendations. Install cleanouts in piping at changes of direction.
- B. Connect supply-air and return-air ducts to fan coil units with flexible duct connectors specified in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories." Comply with safety requirements in UL 1995 for duct connections.
- C. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- D. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- C. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
 - 1. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
 - 2. Test and adjust controls and safety devices. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- D. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust initial temperature and humidity set points.
- B. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied

conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

3.6 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain fan coil units.

END OF SECTION 23 8219

SECTION 23 8239 - UNIT HEATERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes cabinet unit heaters with centrifugal fans and hot-water coils.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CWP: Cold working pressure.
- B. DDC: Direct digital control.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
 - 1. Product data showing compliance with ASHRAE 62.1.
- C. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details.
 - 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, and required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 3. Include location and size of each field connection.
 - 4. Include details of anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment.
 - 5. Include equipment schedules to indicate rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.
 - 6. Indicate location and arrangement of piping valves and specialties.
 - 7. Indicate location and arrangement of integral controls.
 - 8. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Floor plans, reflected ceiling plans, and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Suspended ceiling components.
2. Structural members to which cabinet unit heaters will be attached.
3. Method of attaching hangers to building structure.
4. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
5. Items penetrating finished ceiling, including the following:
 - a. Lighting fixtures.
 - b. Air outlets and inlets.
 - c. Speakers.
 - d. Sprinklers.
 - e. Access panels.
6. Perimeter moldings for exposed or partially exposed cabinets.

B. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For cabinet unit heaters to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CEILING HUNG HORIZONTAL DISCHARGE UNIT HEATER

A. MANUFACTURERS

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Sterling
 - b. Airtherm; a Mestek company.
 - c. Berko; Marley Engineered Products.
 - d. Trane Inc.

B. DESCRIPTION

1. Assembly including casing, coil, fan, and motor in horizontal discharge configuration with adjustable discharge louvers.
2. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

C. PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

1. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."
2. ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."

D. HOUSINGS

1. Finish: Manufacturer's standard baked enamel applied to factory-assembled and -tested propeller unit heaters before shipping.

E. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

1. Discharge Louver: Adjustable fin diffuser for horizontal units and conical diffuser for vertical units.

F. COILS

1. General Coil Requirements: Test and rate hot-water propeller unit-heater coils according to ASHRAE 33.
2. Hot-Water Coil: Copper tube, minimum 0.025-inch wall thickness, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins spaced no closer than 0.1 inch and rated for a minimum working pressure of 150psig and a maximum entering-water temperature of 320 deg F, with manual air vent.

G. FAN AND MOTOR

1. Fan: Propeller type with aluminum wheel directly mounted on motor shaft in the fan venturi.
2. Motor: Permanently lubricated. Comply with requirements in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

H. CONTROLS

1. Control Devices:
 - a. Wall-mounted thermostat.

2.2 WALL AND CEILING UNIT HEATERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. Sterling
- b. Airtherm; a Mestek company.
- c. Berko; Marley Engineered Products.
- d. Trane Inc.

B. DESCRIPTION

1. Factory-assembled and -tested unit complying with AHRI 440.
2. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

C. CABINET

1. Cabinets will be constructed with 18-gauge cold rolled steel, side panels and top. The front panel shall be furnished in 16-gauge cold rolled steel. It will have 1/2", 1-1/2 pound insulation with one side neoprene coated in front of coil. The internal

cabinet shall be furnished in 18-gauge galvanized steel. Adequate work area for installation of control valves or electrical equipment shall be provided on both sides of the internal cabinet.

2. Finish: Baked enamel over baked-on primer with manufacturer's standard color selected by Architect, applied to factory-assembled and -tested wall and ceiling heaters before shipping.
3. All cabinets shall be supplied with adjustable rear mounting brackets which will provide adjustment to correct alignment of the unit at installation to non-square or out of true walls, joists, studs or surfaces. Adjustable leveling legs (two each base leg) are available when specified.
4. All recessed units shall be supplied with a "Wall Seal" assembly. This assembly shall provide protection to the wall material. The "Wall Seal" shall be supplied in an eggshell baked enamel prime coat as standard.
5. All Ceiling Recessed units shall be supplied with a hinged front panel. The multiple hinges shall provide full swing through 90°. A safety chain shall be provided as standard to prevent the face panel from swinging fully open accidentally. This chain must be easily detached to allow full access for servicing. Speed control switch will be shipped with wiring diagram for installation where desired.

D. COIL

1. Hot-Water Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins spaced no closer than 0.1 inch and rated for a minimum working pressure of 150 psig and a maximum entering-water temperature of 320 deg F. Include manual air vent and drain.

E. FAN AND MOTOR

1. Fan: Aluminum propeller directly connected to motor.
2. Motor: Permanently lubricated. Comply with requirements in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

2.3 CONTROLS

A. Fan and Motor Board: Removable.

1. Fan: Forward curved, double width, centrifugal, directly connected to motor; galvanized-steel fan scrolls.
2. Motor: Permanently lubricated, multispeed; resiliently mounted on motor board. Comply with requirements in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
3. Wiring Terminations: Connect motor to chassis wiring with plug connection.

B. Control devices and operational sequences are specified in drawings.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas to receive cabinet unit heaters for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for piping and electrical connections to verify actual locations before unit-heater installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install wall boxes in finished wall assembly; seal and weatherproof. Joint-sealant materials and applications are specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
- B. Install cabinet unit heaters to comply with NFPA 90A.
- C. Install wall and ceiling unit heaters level and plumb.
- D. Install new filters in each fan-coil unit within two weeks of Substantial Completion.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping," Section 232116 "Hydronic Piping Specialties," Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to machine to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Connect piping to cabinet unit heater's factory, hot-water piping package. Install the piping package if shipped loose.
- D. Comply with safety requirements in UL 1995.
- E. Unless otherwise indicated, install union and ball valve on supply-water connection and union, control valve, calibrated balancing valve, and ball valve on return-water connection of cabinet unit heater. Hydronic specialties are specified in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping" and Section 232116 "Hydronic Piping Specialties."
- F. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- G. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections

1. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
2. Test and adjust controls and safety devices. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

B. Units will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust initial temperature set points.

B. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

END OF SECTION 23 8239

SECTION 26 0513 - MEDIUM-VOLTAGE CABLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes cables and related cable splices, terminations, and accessories for medium-voltage (2001 to 35,000 V) electrical distribution systems.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Jacket: A continuous nonmetallic outer covering for conductors or cables.
- B. NETA ATS: Acceptance Testing Specification.
- C. Sheath: A continuous metallic covering for conductors or cables.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of cable. Include splices and terminations for cables and cable accessories.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Indicate location of each cable, splice, and termination.
- B. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
- C. Material Certificates: For each type of cable and accessory.
- D. Design Data: Cable pulling calculations, including conduit size and fill percentage, pulling tensions, cable sidewall pressure, jam probability, voltage drop, and ground wire sizing for each cable.
- E. Source quality-control reports.
- F. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer: Engage a cable splicer, trained and certified by splice material manufacturer, to install, splice, and terminate medium-voltage cable.
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member Company of NETA or an NRTL.

1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Electric Service: Do not interrupt electric service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electric service according to requirements indicated:
 1. Notify Construction Manager no fewer than five days in advance of proposed interruption of electric service.
 2. Do not proceed with interruption of electric service without Construction Manager's written permission.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with IEEE C2 and NFPA 70.
- C. Source Limitations: Obtain cables and accessories from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 CABLES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. General Cable; General Cable Corporation.
 2. Kerite Co. (The).
 3. Okonite Company (The).
 4. Southwire Company.
- B. Cable Type: Type MV 105.
- C. Conductor Insulation: Ethylene-propylene rubber.
 1. Voltage Rating: As indicated on the contract drawings.
 2. Insulation Thickness: 133 percent insulation level.
- D. Conductor: Copper.
- E. Comply with UL 1072, AEIC CS8, ICEA S-93-639/NEMA WC 74, and ICEA S-97-682 .
- F. Conductor Stranding: Compact round, concentric lay, Class B.

- G. Strand Filling: Conductor interstices are filled with impermeable compound.
- H. Lead Content: Less than 300 parts per million.
- I. Shielding: Solid copper wires, helically applied over semiconducting insulation shield.
- J. Shielding and Jacket: Corrugated copper drain wires embedded in extruded, chlorinated, polyethylene jacket.
- K. Cable Jacket: Sunlight-resistant PVC.

2.3 CONNECTORS

- A. Comply with ANSI C119.4 for connectors between aluminum conductors or for connections between aluminum to copper conductors.
- B. Copper-Conductor Connectors: Copper barrel crimped connectors.

2.4 SOLID TERMINATIONS

- A. Shielded-Cable Terminations: Comply with the following classes of IEEE 48. Insulation class shall be equivalent to that of cable. Include shield ground strap for shielded cable terminations.
 - 1. Class 1 Terminations: Modular type, furnished as a kit, with stress-relief tube; multiple, molded-silicone-rubber, insulator modules; shield ground strap; and compression-type connector.

2.5 SEPARABLE INSULATED CONNECTORS

- A. Description: Modular system, complying with IEEE 386, with disconnecting, single-pole, cable terminators and with matching, stationary, plug-in, dead-front terminals designed for cable voltage and for sealing against moisture.
- B. Terminations at Distribution Points: Modular type, consisting of terminators installed on cables and modular, dead-front, terminal junctions for interconnecting cables.
- C. Load-Break Cable Terminators: Elbow-type units with 200-A-load make/break and continuous-current rating; coordinated with insulation diameter, conductor size, and material of cable being terminated. Include test point on terminator body that is capacitance coupled.
- D. Dead-Break Cable Terminators: Elbow-type unit with 600-A continuous-current rating; designed for de-energized disconnecting and connecting; coordinated with insulation diameter, conductor size, and material of cable being terminated. Include test point on terminator body that is capacitance coupled.
- E. Dead-Front Terminal Junctions: Modular bracket-mounted groups of dead-front stationary terminals that mate and match with above cable terminators. Two-, three-, or four-terminal units as indicated, with fully rated, insulated, watertight conductor

connection between terminals and complete with grounding lug, manufacturer's standard accessory stands, stainless-steel mounting brackets, and attaching hardware.

1. Protective Cap: Insulating, electrostatic-shielding, water-sealing cap with drain wire.
 2. Portable Feed-Through Accessory: Two-terminal, dead-front junction arranged for removable mounting on accessory stand of stationary terminal junction.
 3. Grounding Kit: Jumpered elbows, portable feed-through accessory units, protective caps, test rods suitable for concurrently grounding three phases of feeders, and carrying case.
 4. Standoff Insulator: Portable, single dead-front terminal for removable mounting on accessory stand of stationary terminal junction. Insulators suitable for fully insulated isolation of energized cable-elbow terminator.
- F. Test-Point Fault Indicators: Applicable current-trip ratings and arranged for installation in test points of load-break separable connectors, and complete with self-resetting indicators capable of being installed with shotgun hot stick and tested with test tool.
- G. Tool Set: Shotgun hot stick with energized terminal indicator, fault-indicator test tool, and carrying case.

2.6 SPLICE KITS

- A. Description: For connecting medium voltage cables; type as recommended by cable or splicing kit manufacturer for the application.
- B. Standard: Comply with IEEE 404.
- C. Splicing Products: As recommended, in writing, by splicing kit manufacturer for specific sizes, materials, ratings, and configurations of cable conductors. Include all components required for complete splice, with detailed instructions.
1. Combination tape and cold-shrink-rubber sleeve kit with re-jacketing by cast-epoxy-resin encasement or other waterproof, abrasion-resistant material.
 2. Heat-shrink splicing kit of uniform, cross-section, polymeric construction with outer heat-shrink jacket.
 3. Premolded, cold-shrink-rubber, in-line splicing kit.
 4. Premolded, EPDM splicing body kit with cable joint sealed by interference fit of mating parts and cable.
 5. Separable multiway splice system with all components for the required splice configuration.

2.7 MEDIUM-VOLTAGE TAPES

- A. Description: Electrical grade, insulating tape rated for medium voltage application.
- B. Ethylene/propylene rubber-based, 30-mil (0.76-mm) splicing tape, rated for 130 deg C operation. Minimum 3/4 inch (20 mm) wide.

2.8 ARC-PROOFING MATERIALS

- A. Description: Fire retardant, providing arc flash protection.
- B. Tape for First Course on Metal Objects: 10-mil- (250-micrometer-) thick, corrosion-protective, moisture-resistant, PVC pipe-wrapping tape.
- C. Arc-Proofing Tape: Fireproof tape, flexible, conformable, intumescent to 0.3 inch (8 mm) thick, and compatible with cable jacket.
- D. Glass-Cloth Tape: Pressure-sensitive adhesive type, 1 inch (25 mm) wide.

2.9 FAULT INDICATORS

- A. Indicators: Automatically reset fault indicator with inrush restraint feature, arranged to clamp to cable sheath and provide a display after a fault has occurred in cable. Instrument shall not be affected by heat, moisture, and corrosive conditions and shall be recommended by manufacturer for installation conditions.

2.10 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Test and inspect cables according to ICEA S-97-682 before shipping.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install cables according to IEEE 576.
- B. Proof conduits prior to conductor installation by passing a wire brush mandrel and then a rubber duct swab through the conduit. Separate the wire brush and the rubber swab by 48 to 72 inches (1200 to 1800 mm) on the pull rope.
 - 1. Wire Brush Mandrel: Consists of a length of brush approximately the size of the conduit inner diameter with stiff steel bristles and an eye on each end for attaching the pull ropes. If an obstruction is felt, pull the brush back and forth repeatedly to break up the obstruction.
 - 2. Rubber Duct Swab: Consists of a series of rubber discs approximately the size of the conduit inner diameter on a length of steel cable with an eye on each end for attaching the pull ropes. Pull the rubber duct swab through the duct to extract loose debris from the duct.
- C. Pull Conductors: Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended maximum pulling tensions and sidewall pressure values.
 - 1. Where necessary, use manufacturer-approved pulling compound or lubricant that does not deteriorate conductor or insulation.
 - 2. Use pulling means, including fish tape, cable, rope, and basket-weave cable grips, that do not damage cables and raceways. Do not use rope hitches for pulling attachment to cable.

3. Use pull-in guides, cable feeders, and draw-in protectors as required to protect cables during installation.
 4. Do not pull cables with ends unsealed. Seal cable ends with rubber tape.
- D. Install exposed cables parallel and perpendicular to surfaces of exposed structural members and follow surface contours where possible.
- E. Support cables according to requirement in other section for "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."
- F. Install direct-buried cables on leveled and tamped bed of 3-inch- (75-mm-) thick, clean sand. Separate cables crossing other cables or piping by a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) of tamped earth, plus an additional 2 inches (50 mm) of sand. Install permanent markers at ends of cable runs, changes in direction, and buried splices.
- G. Install "buried-cable" warning tape 12 inches (305 mm) above cables.
- H. In manholes, handholes, pull boxes, junction boxes, and cable vaults, train cables around walls by the longest route from entry to exit; support cables at intervals adequate to prevent sag.
- I. Install sufficient cable length to remove cable ends under pulling grips. Remove length of conductor damaged during pulling.
- J. Install cable splices at pull points and elsewhere as indicated; use standard kits. Use dead-front separable watertight connectors in manholes and other locations subject to water infiltration.
- K. Install terminations at ends of conductors, and seal multiconductor cable ends with standard kits.
- L. Install separable insulated-connector components as follows:
1. Protective Cap: At each terminal junction, with one on each terminal to which no feeder is indicated to be connected.
 2. Portable Feed-Through Accessory: At each terminal junction, with one on each terminal.
 3. Standoff Insulator: At each terminal junction, with one on each terminal.
- M. Arc Proofing: Unless otherwise indicated, arc proof medium-voltage cable at locations not protected by conduit, cable tray, direct burial, or termination materials. In addition to arc-proofing tape manufacturer's written instructions, apply arc proofing as follows:
1. Clean cable sheath.
 2. Wrap metallic cable components with 10-mil (250-micrometer) pipe-wrapping tape.
 3. Smooth surface contours with electrical insulation putty.
 4. Apply arc-proofing tape in one half-lapped layer with coated side toward cable.
 5. Band arc-proofing tape with two layers of 1-inch- (25-mm-) wide half-lapped, adhesive, glass-cloth tape at each end of the arc-proof tape.

- N. Seal around cables passing through fire-rated elements according to requirement in other section for "Penetration Firestopping."
- O. Install fault indicators on each phase where indicated.
- P. Ground shields of shielded cable at terminations, splices, and separable insulated connectors. Ground metal bodies of terminators, splices, cable and separable insulated-connector fittings, and hardware.
- Q. Identify cables according to requirement in other section for "Identification for Electrical Systems." Identify phase and circuit number of each conductor at each splice, termination, pull point, and junction box. Arrange identification so that it is unnecessary to move the cable or conductor to read the identification.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- C. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 - 1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA ATS. Certify compliance with test parameters.
 - 2. After installing medium-voltage cables and before electrical circuitry has been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
 - 3. Perform direct-current High Potential test of each new conductor according to NETA ATS, Ch. 7.3.3. Do not exceed cable manufacturer's recommended maximum test voltage.
 - 4. Perform Partial Discharge test of each new conductor according to NETA ATS, Ch. 7.3.3 and to test equipment manufacturer's recommendations.
 - 5. Perform Dissipation Factor test of each new conductor according to NETA ATS, Ch. 7.3.3 and to test equipment manufacturer's recommendations.
- D. Medium-voltage cables will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 26 0513

SECTION 26 0519 - LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Copper building wire rated 600 V or less.
 - 2. Metal-clad cable, Type MC, rated 600 V or less.
 - 3. Mineral-insulated cable, Type MI, rated 600 V or less.
 - 4. Fire-alarm wire and cable.
 - 5. Connectors, splices, and terminations rated 600 V and less.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. RoHS: Restriction of Hazardous Substances.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Product Schedule: Indicate type, use, location, and termination locations.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member Company of NETA.
 - 1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 COPPER BUILDING WIRE

- A. Description: Flexible, insulated and uninsulated, drawn copper current-carrying conductor with an overall insulation layer or jacket, or both, rated 600 V or less.

- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Belden Inc.
 - 2. Encore Wire Corporation.
 - 3. General Cable Technologies Corporation.
 - 4. Southwire Incorporated.
- C. Standards:
 - 1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
 - 2. RoHS compliant.
 - 3. Conductor and Cable Marking: Comply with wire and cable marking according to UL's "Wire and Cable Marking and Application Guide."
- D. Conductors: Copper, complying with ASTM B 3 for bare annealed copper and with ASTM B 8 for stranded conductors.
- E. Conductor Insulation:
 - 1. Type THHN and Type THWN-2 Comply with UL 83.

2.2 METAL-CLAD CABLE, TYPE MC

- A. Description: A factory assembly of one or more current-carrying insulated conductors in an overall metallic sheath.
- B. As allowed by NFPA 70 and Building Owner.
- C. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Alpha Wire Company.
 - 2. Belden Inc.
 - 3. Encore Wire Corporation.
 - 4. General Cable Technologies Corporation.
 - 5. Southwire Company.
- D. Standards:
 - 1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
 - 2. Comply with UL 1569.
 - 3. RoHS compliant.
 - 4. Conductor and Cable Marking: Comply with wire and cable marking according to UL's "Wire and Cable Marking and Application Guide."
- E. Circuits:

1. Single circuit and multi-circuit with color-coded conductors.
2. Power-Limited Fire-Alarm Circuits: Comply with UL 1424.

F. Conductors: Copper, complying with ASTM B 3 for bare annealed copper and with ASTM B 8 for stranded conductors.

G. Ground Conductor: Insulated.

H. Conductor Insulation:

1. Type TFN/THHN/THWN-2: Comply with UL 83.
2. Type XHHW-2: Comply with UL 44.

I. Armor: Steel, interlocked.

J. Jacket: PVC applied over armor.

2.3 MINERAL-INSULATED CABLE, TYPE MI

A. Description: Solid copper conductors encased in compressed metal oxide with an outer metallic sheath, rated 600 V or less.

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. KME America, Inc.
2. Pentair.
3. Watlow Electric Manufacturing Company.

C. Standards:

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
2. UL 2196 for fire resistance.
3. Conductor and Cable Marking: Comply with wire and cable marking according to UL's "Wire and Cable Marking and Application Guide."

D. Conductors: Copper, complying with ASTM B 3 for bare annealed copper.

E. Insulation: Compressed magnesium oxide.

F. Sheath: Copper.

2.4 FIRE-ALARM WIRE AND CABLE

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Allied Wire & Cable Inc.
2. Genesis Cable Products; Honeywell International, Inc.

3. West Penn Wire.
- B. General Wire and Cable Requirements: NRTL listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, Article 760.
- C. Signaling Line Circuits: Twisted, shielded pair, not less than No. 18 AWG.
 1. Circuit Integrity Cable: Twisted shielded pair, NFPA 70, Article 760, Classification CI, for power-limited fire-alarm signal service Type FPL. NRTL listed and labeled as complying with UL 1424 and UL 2196 for a two-hour rating.
- D. Non-Power-Limited Circuits: Solid-copper conductors with 600-V rated, 75 deg C, color-coded insulation, and complying with requirements in UL 2196 for a two-hour rating.
 1. Low-Voltage Circuits: No. 16 AWG, minimum, in pathway.
 2. Line-Voltage Circuits: No. 12 AWG, minimum, in pathway.
 3. Multi-conductor Armored Cable: NFPA 70, Type MC, copper conductors, Type TFN/THHN conductor insulation, copper drain wire, copper armor with red identifier stripe, NTRL listed for fire-alarm and cable tray installation, plenum rated.

2.5 CONNECTORS AND SPLICES

- A. Description: Factory-fabricated connectors, splices, and lugs of size, ampacity rating, material, type, and class for application and service indicated; listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. 3M Electrical Products.
 2. Hubbell Power Systems, Inc.
 3. ILSCO.
 4. O-Z/Gedney; a brand of Emerson Industrial Automation.
 5. Thomas & Betts Corporation; A Member of the ABB Group.
- C. Jacketed Cable Connectors: For steel and aluminum jacketed cables, zinc die-cast with set screws, designed to connect conductors specified in this Section.
- D. Lugs: One piece, seamless, designed to terminate conductors specified in this Section.
 1. Material: Copper.
 2. Type: One hole with standard barrels.
 3. Termination: Compression.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONDUCTOR MATERIAL APPLICATIONS

- A. Feeders: Copper; solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.
- B. Branch Circuits: Copper. Solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.
- C. Power-Limited Fire Alarm and Control: Solid for No. 12 AWG and smaller.

3.2 CONDUCTOR INSULATION AND MULTICONDUCTOR CABLE APPLICATIONS AND WIRING METHODS

- A. Service Entrance: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- B. Exposed Feeders: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- C. Feeders Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, Partitions, and Crawlspace: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- D. Feeders Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- E. Exposed Branch Circuits, Including in Crawlspace: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- F. Branch Circuits Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, and Partitions: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway or Metal-clad cable, Type MC as allowed by NFPA 70 or Building Owner.
- G. Branch Circuits Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- H. Cord Drops and Portable Appliance Connections: Type SO, hard service cord with stainless-steel, wire-mesh, strain relief device at terminations to suit application.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Conceal cables in finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Complete raceway installation between conductor and cable termination points according to other sections prior to pulling conductors and cables.
- C. Use manufacturer-approved pulling compound or lubricant where necessary; compound used must not deteriorate conductor or insulation. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended maximum pulling tensions and sidewall pressure values.

- D. Use pulling means, including fish tape, cable, rope, and basket-weave wire/cable grips, that will not damage cables or raceway.
- E. Install exposed cables parallel and perpendicular to surfaces of exposed structural members, and follow surface contours where possible.
- F. Support cables according to other sections.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF FIRE-ALARM WIRING

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NFPA 72.
- B. Wiring Method: Install wiring in metal pathway according to other sections.
 - 1. Install plenum cable in environmental airspaces, including plenum ceilings.
 - 2. Fire-alarm circuits and equipment control wiring associated with fire-alarm system shall be installed in a dedicated pathway system. This system shall not be used for any other wire or cable.
- C. Wiring within Enclosures: Separate power-limited and non-power-limited conductors as recommended by manufacturer. Install conductors parallel with or at right angles to sides and back of the enclosure. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess. Connect conductors that are terminated, spliced, or interrupted in any enclosure associated with fire-alarm system to terminal blocks. Mark each terminal according to system's wiring diagrams. Make all connections with approved crimp-on terminal spade lugs, pressure-type terminal blocks, or plug connectors.
- D. Cable Taps: Use numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes; cabinets; or equipment enclosures where circuit connections are made.
- E. Color-Coding: Color-code fire-alarm conductors differently from the normal building power wiring. Use one color-code for alarm circuit wiring and another for supervisory circuits. Color-code audible alarm-indicating circuits differently from alarm-initiating circuits. Use different colors for visible alarm-indicating devices. Paint fire-alarm system junction boxes and covers red.
- F. Risers: Install at least two vertical cable risers to serve the fire-alarm system. Separate risers in close proximity to each other with a minimum one-hour-rated wall, so the loss of one riser does not prevent receipt or transmission of signals from other floors or zones.
- G. Wiring to Remote Alarm Transmitting Device: 1-inch (25-mm) conduit between the fire-alarm control panel and the transmitter. Install number of conductors and electrical supervision for connecting wiring as needed to suit monitoring function.

3.5 CONNECTIONS

- A. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A-486B.

- B. Make splices, terminations, and taps that are compatible with conductor material and that possess equivalent or better mechanical strength and insulation ratings than unspliced conductors.
- C. Wiring at Outlets: Install conductor at each outlet, with at least 6 inches (150 mm) of slack.
- D. Comply with requirements in other sections for connecting, terminating, and identifying wires and cables.

3.6 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify and color-code conductors and cables according to other sections.
- B. Identify each spare conductor at each end with identity number and location of other end of conductor, and identify as spare conductor.

3.7 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in other sections.

3.8 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Apply firestopping to electrical penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly according to other sections.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
 - 1. After installing conductors and cables and before electrical circuitry has been energized, test service entrance and feeder conductors for compliance with requirements.
 - 2. Perform each of the following visual and electrical tests:
 - a. Inspect exposed sections of conductor and cable for physical damage and correct connection according to the single-line diagram.
 - b. Test bolted connections for high resistance using one of the following:
 - 1) A low-resistance ohmmeter.
 - 2) Calibrated torque wrench.
 - 3) Thermographic survey.
 - c. Inspect compression-applied connectors for correct cable match and indentation.
 - d. Inspect for correct identification.
 - e. Inspect cable jacket and condition.

- f. Insulation-resistance test on each conductor for ground and adjacent conductors. Apply a potential of 500-V dc for 300-V rated cable and 1000-V dc for 600-V rated cable for a one-minute duration.
 - g. Continuity test on each conductor and cable.
 - h. Uniform resistance of parallel conductors.
 - 3. Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but before Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each splice in conductors No. 3 AWG and larger. Remove box and equipment covers so splices are accessible to portable scanner. Correct deficiencies determined during the scan.
 - a. Instrument: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
 - b. Record of Infrared Scanning: Prepare a certified report that identifies switches checked and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.
- C. Cables will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports to record the following:
 - 1. Procedures used.
 - 2. Results that comply with requirements.
 - 3. Results that do not comply with requirements, and corrective action taken to achieve compliance with requirements.

END OF SECTION 26 0519

SECTION 26 0523 - CONTROL-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CABLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Backboards.
 - 2. Category 6a balanced twisted pair cable.
 - 3. Balanced twisted pair cabling hardware.
 - 4. RS-485 cabling.
 - 5. Low-voltage control cabling.
 - 6. Control-circuit conductors.
 - 7. Identification products.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.
- B. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control and signaling power-limited circuits.
- C. Plenum: A space forming part of the air distribution system to which one or more air ducts are connected. An air duct is a passageway, other than a plenum, for transporting air to or from heating, ventilating, or air-conditioning equipment.
- D. RCDD: Registered Communications Distribution Designer.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For testing agency, RCDD, layout technician, installation supervisor, and field inspector.
- B. Source quality-control reports.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Accredited by NETA.
 - 1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by BICSI as an RCDD to supervise on-site testing.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Flame Travel and Smoke Density in Plenums: As determined by testing identical products according to NFPA 262, by a qualified testing agency. Identify products for installation in plenums with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Flame Travel Distance: 60 inches (1520 mm) or less.
 - 2. Peak Optical Smoke Density: 0.5 or less.
 - 3. Average Optical Smoke Density: 0.15 or less.
- C. Flame Travel and Smoke Density for Riser Cables in Non-Plenum Building Spaces: As determined by testing identical products according to UL 1666.
- D. Flame Travel and Smoke Density for Cables in Non-Riser Applications and Non-Plenum Building Spaces: As determined by testing identical products according to UL 1685.
- E. RoHS compliant.

2.2 BACKBOARDS

- A. Description: Plywood, fire-retardant treated, 3/4 by 48 by 96 inches (19 by 1220 by 2440 mm). Comply with requirements for plywood backing panels in Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry."
- B. Painting: Paint plywood on all sides and edges with flat latex paint. Comply with requirements in other sections for "Interior Painting."
 - 1. Lead Content: Less than 300 parts per million.

2.3 CATEGORY 6a BALANCED TWISTED PAIR CABLE

- A. Description: Four-pair, balanced-twisted pair cable, with internal spline, certified to meet transmission characteristics of Category 6a cable at frequencies up to 500MHz.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. 3M.
2. Belden CDT Networking Division/NORDX.
3. General Cable; General Cable Corporation.
4. Superior Essex Inc.
5. SYSTIMAX Solutions; a CommScope Inc. brand.

C. Standard: Comply with TIA-568-C.2 for Category 6a cables.

D. Conductors: 100-ohm, 23 AWG solid copper.

1. Lead Content: Less than 300 parts per million.

E. Shielding/Screening: Shielded twisted pairs (FTP).

F. Cable Rating: Riser or Plenum.

G. Jacket: Blue thermoplastic.

2.4 BALANCED TWISTED PAIR CABLE HARDWARE

A. Description: Hardware designed to connect, splice, and terminate balanced twisted pair copper communications cable.

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. 3M.
2. Belden CDT Networking Division/NORDX.
3. General Cable; General Cable Corporation.
4. Hubbell Premise Wiring.
5. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.

C. General Requirements for Balanced Twisted Pair Cable Hardware:

1. Comply with the performance requirements of Category 6a.
2. Comply with TIA-568-C.2, IDC type, with modules designed for punch-down caps or tools.
3. Cables shall be terminated with connecting hardware of same category or higher.

D. Source Limitations: Obtain balanced twisted pair cable hardware from same manufacturer as balanced twisted pair cable, from single source.

E. Connecting Blocks: 110-style IDC for Category 6. Provide blocks for the number of cables terminated on the block, plus 25 percent spare, integral with connector bodies, including plugs and jacks where indicated.

F. Cross-Connect: Modular array of connecting blocks arranged to terminate building cables and permit interconnection between cables.

1. Number of Terminals per Field: One for each conductor in assigned cables.

- G. Patch Panel: Modular panels housing numbered jack units with IDC-type connectors at each jack location for permanent termination of pair groups of installed cables.
1. Features:
 - a. Universal T568A and T568B wiring labels.
 - b. Labeling areas adjacent to conductors.
 - c. Replaceable connectors.
 - d. 24 or 48 ports.
 2. Construction: 16-gauge steel and mountable on 19-inch (483 mm) equipment racks.
 3. Number of Jacks per Field: One for each four-pair conductor group of indicated cables, plus spares and blank positions adequate to suit specified expansion criteria.
- H. Patch Cords: Factory-made, four-pair cables in 36-inch (900-mm) lengths; terminated with an eight-position modular plug at each end.
1. Patch cords shall have bend-relief-compliant boots and color-coded icons to ensure performance. Patch cords shall have latch guards to protect against snagging.
 2. Patch cords shall have color-coded boots for circuit identification.
- I. Plugs and Plug Assemblies:
1. Male; eight position; color-coded modular telecommunications connector designed for termination of a single four-pair 100-ohm unshielded or shielded balanced twisted pair cable.
 2. Comply with IEC 60603-7-1, IEC 60603-7-2, IEC 60603-7-3, IEC 60603-7-4, and IEC 60603-7.5.
 3. Marked to indicate transmission performance.
- J. Jacks and Jack Assemblies:
1. Female; eight position; modular; fixed telecommunications connector designed for termination of a single four-pair 100-ohm unshielded or shielded balanced twisted pair cable.
 2. Designed to snap-in to a patch panel or faceplate.
 3. Standards:
 - a. Category 6a, shielded balanced twisted pair cable shall comply with IEC 60603-7.51.
- K. Faceplate:
1. Two port, vertical single-gang faceplates designed to mount to single-gang wall boxes.
 2. Eight port, vertical double-gang faceplates designed to mount to double-gang wall boxes.
 3. Plastic Faceplate: High-impact plastic. Coordinate color with other section for "Wiring Devices."

4. Metal Faceplate: Stainless steel, complying with requirements in other section for "Wiring Devices."
5. For use with snap-in jacks accommodating any combination of balanced twisted pair, optical fiber, and coaxial work area cords.
 - a. Flush mounting jacks, positioning the cord at a 45-degree angle.

L. Legend:

1. Machine printed, in the field, using adhesive-tape label.
2. Snap-in, clear-label covers and machine-printed paper inserts.

2.5 TWIN-AXIAL DATA HIGHWAY CABLE

A. Standard Cable: NFPA 70, Type CM.

1. Paired, two pairs, No. 24 AWG, stranded (7x32) tinned-copper conductors.
2. Polypropylene insulation.
3. Individual aluminum foil-polyester tape shielded pairs with 100 percent shield coverage.
4. PVC jacket.
5. Pairs are cabled on common axis with No. 24 AWG, stranded (7x32) tinned-copper drain wire.
6. Flame Resistance: Comply with UL 1685.
7. Lead Content: Less than 300 parts per million.

B. Plenum-Rated Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.

1. Paired, two pairs, No. 24 AWG, stranded (7x32) tinned-copper conductors.
2. Plastic insulation.
3. Individual aluminum foil-polyester tape shielded pairs with 100 percent shield coverage.
4. Plastic jacket.
5. Pairs are cabled on common axis with No. 24 AWG, stranded (7x32) tinned-copper drain wire.
6. Flame Resistance: Comply with NFPA 262.
7. Lead Content: Less than 300 parts per million.

2.6 RS-485 CABLE

A. Standard Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMG.

1. Paired, two pairs, twisted, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned-copper conductors.
2. PVC insulation.
3. Unshielded.
4. PVC jacket.
5. Flame Resistance: Comply with UL 1685.
6. Lead Content: Less than 300 parts per million.

B. Plenum-Rated Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.

1. Paired, two pairs, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned-copper conductors.
2. Fluorinated ethylene propylene insulation.
3. Unshielded.
4. Fluorinated ethylene propylene jacket.
5. Flame Resistance: NFPA 262.
6. Lead Content: Less than 300 parts per million.

2.7 LOW-VOLTAGE CONTROL CABLE

A. Paired Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMG.

1. One pair, twisted, No. 16 AWG, stranded (19x29) tinned-copper conductors.
2. PVC insulation.
3. Unshielded.
4. PVC jacket.
5. Flame Resistance: Comply with UL 1685.
6. Lead Content: Less than 300 parts per million.

B. Plenum-Rated, Paired Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.

1. One pair, twisted, No. 16 AWG, stranded (19x29) tinned-copper conductors.
2. PVC insulation.
3. Unshielded.
4. PVC jacket.
5. Flame Resistance: Comply with NFPA 262.
6. Lead Content: Less than 300 parts per million.

2.8 CONTROL-CIRCUIT CONDUCTORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Encore Wire Corporation.
2. General Cable; General Cable Corporation.
3. Service Wire Co.
4. Southwire Company.

B. Class 1 Control Circuits: Stranded copper, Type THHN/THWN-2, complying with UL 83 in raceway.

C. Class 2 Control Circuits: Stranded copper, Type THHN/THWN-2, complying with UL 83 in raceway.

D. Class 3 Remote-Control and Signal Circuits: Stranded copper, Type THHN/THWN-2, complying with UL 83 in raceway.

E. Class 2 Control Circuits and Class 3 Remote-Control and Signal Circuits That Supply Critical Circuits: Circuit Integrity (CI) cable.

1. Smoke control signaling and control circuits.

2.9 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to evaluate cables.
- B. Factory test twisted pair cables according to TIA-568-C.2.
- C. Cable will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Test cables on receipt at Project site.
 - 1. Test each pair of twisted pair cable for open and short circuits.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF RACEWAYS AND BOXES

- A. Comply with requirements in other section for "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for raceway selection and installation requirements for boxes, conduits, and wireways as supplemented or modified in this Section.
 - 1. Outlet boxes for cables shall be no smaller than 4 inches (102 mm) square by 2-1/8 inches (53 mm) deep with extension ring sized to bring edge of ring to within 1/8 inch (3.1 mm) of the finished wall surface.
 - 2. Flexible metal conduit shall not be used.
- B. Comply with TIA-569-D for pull-box sizing and length of conduit and number of bends between pull points.
- C. Install manufactured conduit sweeps and long-radius elbows if possible.
- D. Raceway Installation in Equipment Rooms:
 - 1. Position conduit ends adjacent to a corner on backboard if a single piece of plywood is installed, or in the corner of the room if multiple sheets of plywood are installed around perimeter walls of the room.
 - 2. Install cable trays to route cables if conduits cannot be located in these positions.
 - 3. Secure conduits to backboard if entering the room from overhead.
 - 4. Extend conduits 3 inches (75 mm) above finished floor.
 - 5. Install metal conduits with grounding bushings and connect with grounding conductor to grounding system.
- E. Backboards: Install backboards with 96-inch (2440-mm) dimension vertical. Butt adjacent sheets tightly and form smooth gap-free corners and joints.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. General Requirements for Cabling:

1. Comply with TIA-568-C Series of standards.
2. Comply with BICSI ITSIMM, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems."
3. Terminate all conductors; no cable shall contain unterminated elements. Make terminations only at indicated outlets, terminals, and cross-connect and patch panels.
4. Cables may not be spliced and shall be continuous from terminal to terminal. Do not splice cable between termination, tap, or junction points.
5. Cables serving a common system may be grouped in a common raceway. Install network cabling and control wiring and cable in separate raceway from power wiring. Do not group conductors from different systems or different voltages.
6. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding 30 inches (760 mm) and not more than 6 inches (150 mm) from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.
7. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii, but not less than radii specified in BICSI ITSIMM, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems." Install lacing bars and distribution spools.
8. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation and replace it with new cable.
9. Cold-Weather Installation: Bring cable to room temperature before dereeling. Do not use heat lamps for heating.
10. Pulling Cable: Comply with BICSI ITSIMM, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems." Monitor cable pull tensions.
11. Support: Do not allow cables to lie on removable ceiling tiles.
12. Secure: Fasten securely in place with hardware specifically designed and installed so as to not damage cables.
13. Provide strain relief.
14. Keep runs short. Allow extra length for connecting to terminals. Do not bend cables in a radius less than 10 times the cable OD. Use sleeves or grommets to protect cables from vibration at points where they pass around sharp corners and through penetrations.
15. Ground wire shall be copper, and grounding methods shall comply with IEEE C2. Demonstrate ground resistance.

C. Balanced Twisted Pair Cable Installation:

1. Comply with TIA-568-C.2.
2. Install termination hardware as specified in other section for "Communications Copper Horizontal Cabling" unless otherwise indicated.
3. Do not untwist balanced twisted pair cables more than 1/2 inch (12 mm) at the point of termination to maintain cable geometry.

D. Installation of Control-Circuit Conductors:

1. Install wiring in raceways.
2. Use insulated spade lugs for wire and cable connection to screw terminals.
3. Comply with requirements specified in other section for "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."

E. Open-Cable Installation:

1. Install cabling with horizontal and vertical cable guides in telecommunications spaces with terminating hardware and interconnection equipment.
2. Suspend copper cable not in a wireway or pathway a minimum of 8 inches (200 mm) above ceilings by cable supports not more than 30 inches (760 mm) apart.
3. Cable shall not be run through or on structural members or in contact with pipes, ducts, or other potentially damaging items. Do not run cables between structural members and corrugated panels.

F. Separation from EMI Sources:

1. Comply with BICSI TDMM and TIA-569-D recommendations for separating unshielded copper voice and data communications cable from potential EMI sources including electrical power lines and equipment.
2. Separation between open communications cables or cables in nonmetallic raceways and unshielded power conductors and electrical equipment shall be as follows:
 - a. Electrical Equipment or Circuit Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of 5 inches (127 mm).
 - b. Electrical Equipment or Circuit Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 12 inches (305 mm).
 - c. Electrical Equipment or Circuit Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 24 inches (600 mm).
3. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways and unshielded power lines or electrical equipment shall be as follows:
 - a. Electrical Equipment or Circuit Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of 2-1/2 inches (64 mm).
 - b. Electrical Equipment or Circuit Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches (150 mm).
 - c. Electrical Equipment or Circuit Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 12 inches (305 mm).
4. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways and power lines and electrical equipment located in grounded metallic conduits or enclosures shall be as follows:
 - a. Electrical Equipment or Circuit Rating Less Than 2 kVA: No requirement.
 - b. Electrical Equipment or Circuit Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 3 inches (75 mm).
 - c. Electrical Equipment or Circuit Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches (150 mm).
5. Separation between Communications Cables and Electrical Motors and Transformers, 5 kVA or 5 HP and Larger: A minimum of 48 inches (1200 mm).

6. Separation between Communications Cables and Fluorescent Fixtures: A minimum of 5 inches (127 mm).

3.4 CONTROL-CIRCUIT CONDUCTORS

A. Minimum Conductor Sizes:

1. Class 1 remote-control and signal circuits; No 14 AWG.
2. Class 2 low-energy, remote-control, and signal circuits; No. 16 AWG.
3. Class 3 low-energy, remote-control, alarm, and signal circuits; No 12 AWG.

3.5 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Comply with requirements in other section for "Penetration Firestopping."
- B. Comply with TIA-569-D, Annex A, "Firestopping."
- C. Comply with BICSI TDMM, "Firestopping" Chapter.

3.6 GROUNDING

- A. For data communication wiring, comply with TIA-607-B and with BICSI TDMM, "Bonding and Grounding (Earthing)" Chapter.
- B. For low-voltage control wiring and cabling, comply with requirements in other section for "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

3.7 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with requirements for identification specified in other section for "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Identify data and communications system components, wiring, and cabling according to TIA-606-B; label printers shall use label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks complying with UL 969.
- C. Identify each wire on each end and at each terminal with a number-coded identification tag. Each wire shall have a unique tag.

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 1. Visually inspect cable jacket materials for UL or third-party certification markings. Inspect cabling terminations to confirm color-coding for pin assignments, and inspect cabling connections to confirm compliance with TIA-568-C.1.

2. Visually inspect cable placement, cable termination, grounding and bonding, equipment and patch cords, and labeling of all components.
3. Test cabling for direct-current loop resistance, shorts, opens, intermittent faults, and polarity between conductors. Test operation of shorting bars in connection blocks. Test cables after termination, but not after cross-connection.
 - a. Test instruments shall meet or exceed applicable requirements in TIA-568-C.2. Perform tests with a tester that complies with performance requirements in its "Test Instruments (Normative)" Annex, complying with measurement accuracy specified in its "Measurement Accuracy (Informative)" Annex. Use only test cords and adapters that are qualified by test equipment manufacturer for channel or link test configuration.
- C. Document data for each measurement. Print data for submittals in a summary report that is formatted using Table 10.1 in BICSI TDMM as a guide, or transfer the data from the instrument to the computer, save as text files, print, and submit.
- D. End-to-end cabling will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 26 0523

SECTION 26 0526 - GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes grounding and bonding systems and equipment, plus the following special applications:
 - 1. Underground distribution grounding.
 - 2. Ground bonding common with lightning protection system.
 - 3. Foundation steel electrodes.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Plans showing dimensioned locations of grounding features specified in "Field Quality Control" Article, including the following:
 - 1. Test wells.
 - 2. Ground rods.
 - 3. Ground rings.
 - 4. Grounding arrangements and connections for separately derived systems.
- B. Qualification Data: For testing agency and testing agency's field supervisor.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For grounding to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
 - 1. In addition to items specified in other section for "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
 - a. Plans showing as-built, dimensioned locations of grounding features specified in "Field Quality Control" Article, including the following:
 - 1) Test wells.
 - 2) Ground rods.
 - 3) Ground rings.

- 4) Grounding arrangements and connections for separately derived systems.
- b. Instructions for periodic testing and inspection of grounding features at grounding connections for separately derived systems based on NETA MTS.
 - 1) Tests shall determine if ground-resistance or impedance values remain within specified maximums, and instructions shall recommend corrective action if values do not.
 - 2) Include recommended testing intervals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Certified by NETA.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with UL 467 for grounding and bonding materials and equipment.

2.2 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Advanced Lightning Technology, Ltd.
 2. Burndy; Part of Hubbell Electrical Systems.
 3. ERICO International Corporation.
 4. Galvan Industries, Inc.; Electrical Products Division, LLC.
 5. O-Z/Gedney; a brand of Emerson Industrial Automation.
 6. Thomas & Betts Corporation; A Member of the ABB Group.

2.3 CONDUCTORS

- A. Insulated Conductors: Copper wire or cable insulated for 600 V unless otherwise required by applicable Code or authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Bare Copper Conductors:
 1. Solid Conductors: ASTM B 3.
 2. Stranded Conductors: ASTM B 8.
 3. Tinned Conductors: ASTM B 33.
 4. Bonding Cable: 28 kcmil, 14 strands of No. 17 AWG conductor, 1/4 inch (6 mm) in diameter.
 5. Bonding Conductor: No. 4 or No. 6 AWG, stranded conductor.

- 6. Bonding Jumper: Copper tape, braided conductors terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches (41 mm) wide and 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick.
- 7. Tinned Bonding Jumper: Tinned-copper tape, braided conductors terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches (41 mm) wide and 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick.
- C. Grounding Bus: Predrilled rectangular bars of annealed copper, 1/4 by 4 inches (6.3 by 100 mm) or as indicated on the contract documents in cross section, with 9/32-inch (7.14-mm) holes spaced 1-1/8 inches (28 mm) apart. Stand-off insulators for mounting shall comply with UL 891 for use in switchboards, 600 V and shall be Lexan or PVC, impulse tested at 5000 V.
- D. Lead Content: Less than 300 parts per million.

2.4 CONNECTORS

- A. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for applications in which used and for specific types, sizes, and combinations of conductors and other items connected.
- B. Welded Connectors: Exothermic-welding kits of types recommended by kit manufacturer for materials being joined and installation conditions.
- C. Bus-Bar Connectors: Mechanical type, cast silicon bronze, solderless compression-type wire terminals, and long-barrel, two-bolt connection to ground bus bar.
- D. Beam Clamps: Mechanical type, terminal, ground wire access from four directions, with dual, tin-plated or silicon bronze bolts.
- E. Cable-to-Cable Connectors: Compression type, copper or copper alloy.
- F. Cable Tray Ground Clamp: Mechanical type, zinc-plated malleable iron.
- G. Conduit Hubs: Mechanical type, terminal with threaded hub.
- H. Ground Rod Clamps: Mechanical type, copper or copper alloy, terminal with hex head bolt.
- I. Lay-in Lug Connector: Mechanical type, copper rated for direct burial terminal with set screw.
- J. Service Post Connectors: Mechanical type, bronze alloy terminal, in short- and long-stud lengths, capable of single and double conductor connections.
- K. Signal Reference Grid Clamp: Mechanical type, stamped-steel terminal with hex head screw.
- L. Straps: Solid copper, copper lugs. Rated for 600 A.
- M. Tower Ground Clamps: Mechanical type, copper or copper alloy, terminal two-piece clamp.

N. U-Bolt Clamps: Mechanical type, copper or copper alloy, terminal listed for direct burial.

O. Water Pipe Clamps:

1. Mechanical type, two pieces with stainless-steel bolts.
 - a. Material: Die-cast zinc alloy.
 - b. Listed for direct burial.
2. U-bolt type with malleable-iron clamp and copper ground connector rated for direct burial.

P. Lead Content: Less than 300 parts per million.

2.5 GROUNDING ELECTRODES

A. Ground Rods: Copper-clad steel; 3/4 inch by 10 feet (19 mm by 3 m).

B. Ground Plates: 1/4 inch (6 mm) thick, hot-dip galvanized.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATIONS

A. Conductors: Install solid conductor for No. 8 AWG and smaller, and stranded conductors for No. 6 AWG and larger unless otherwise indicated.

B. Underground Grounding Conductors: Install bare tinned-copper conductor, No. 2/0 AWG minimum.

1. Bury at least 24 inches (600 mm) below grade.
2. Duct-Bank Grounding Conductor: Bury 12 inches (300 mm) above duct bank when indicated as part of duct-bank installation.

C. Grounding Bus: Install in electrical equipment rooms, in rooms housing service equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.

1. Install bus horizontally, on insulated spacers 2 inches (50 mm) minimum from wall, 6 inches (150 mm) above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.
2. Where indicated on both sides of doorways, route bus up to top of door frame, across top of doorway, and down; connect to horizontal bus.

D. Conductor Terminations and Connections:

1. Pipe and Equipment Grounding Conductor Terminations: Bolted connectors.
2. Underground Connections: Welded connectors except at test wells and as otherwise indicated.
3. Connections to Ground Rods at Test Wells: Bolted connectors.
4. Connections to Structural Steel: Welded connectors.

3.2 GROUNDING AT THE SERVICE

- A. Equipment grounding conductors and grounding electrode conductors shall be connected to the ground bus. Install a main bonding jumper between the neutral and ground buses.

3.3 GROUNDING SEPARATELY DERIVED SYSTEMS

- A. Generator: Install grounding electrode(s) at the generator location. The electrode shall be connected to the equipment grounding conductor and to the frame of the generator.

3.4 GROUNDING UNDERGROUND DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM COMPONENTS

- A. Comply with IEEE C2 grounding requirements.
- B. Grounding Manholes and Handholes: Install a driven ground rod through manhole or handhole floor, close to wall, and set rod depth so 4 inches (100 mm) will extend above finished floor. If necessary, install ground rod before manhole is placed and provide No. 1/0 AWG bare, tinned-copper conductor from ground rod into manhole through a waterproof sleeve in manhole wall. Protect ground rods passing through concrete floor with a double wrapping of pressure-sensitive insulating tape or heat-shrunk insulating sleeve from 2 inches (50 mm) above to 6 inches (150 mm) below concrete. Seal floor opening with waterproof, nonshrink grout.
- C. Grounding Connections to Manhole Components: Bond exposed-metal parts such as inserts, cable racks, pulling irons, ladders, and cable shields within each manhole or handhole, to ground rod or grounding conductor. Make connections with No. 4 AWG minimum, stranded, hard-drawn copper bonding conductor. Train conductor level or plumb around corners and fasten to manhole walls. Connect to cable armor and cable shields according to written instructions by manufacturer of splicing and termination kits.
- D. Pad-Mounted Transformers and Switches: Install two ground rods and ground ring around the pad. Ground pad-mounted equipment and noncurrent-carrying metal items associated with substations by connecting them to underground cable and grounding electrodes. Install tinned-copper conductor not less than No. 2 AWG for ground ring and for taps to equipment grounding terminals. Bury ground ring not less than 6 inches (150 mm) from the foundation.

3.5 EQUIPMENT GROUNDING

- A. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with all feeders and branch circuits.
- B. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with the following items, in addition to those required by NFPA 70:
 - 1. Feeders and branch circuits.
 - 2. Lighting circuits.
 - 3. Receptacle circuits.
 - 4. Single-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.

5. Three-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
 6. Flexible raceway runs.
 7. Armored and metal-clad cable runs.
 8. Busway Supply Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor from grounding bus in the switchboard, or distribution panel to equipment grounding bar terminal on busway.
- C. Air-Duct Equipment Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor to duct-mounted electrical devices operating at 120 V and more, including air cleaners, heaters, dampers, humidifiers, and other duct electrical equipment. Bond conductor to each unit and to air duct and connected metallic piping.
- D. Water Heater, Heat-Tracing, and Antifrost Heating Cables: Install a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor to each electric water heater and heat-tracing cable. Bond conductor to heater units, piping, connected equipment, and components.
- E. Poles Supporting Outdoor Lighting Fixtures: Install grounding electrode and a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor in addition to grounding conductor installed with branch-circuit conductors.
- F. Metallic Fences: Comply with requirements of IEEE C2.
1. Grounding Conductor: Bare tinned copper, not less than No. 8 AWG.
 2. Gates: Shall be bonded to the grounding conductor with a flexible bonding jumper.
 3. Barbed Wire: Strands shall be bonded to the grounding conductor.

3.6 FENCE GROUNDING

- A. Fence Grounding: Install at maximum intervals of 1500 feet (450 m) except as follows:
1. Fences within 100 Feet (30 m) of Buildings, Structures, Walkways, and Roadways: Ground at maximum intervals of 750 feet (225 m).
 - a. Gates and Other Fence Openings: Ground fence on each side of opening.
 - 1) Bond metal gates to gate posts.
 - 2) Bond across openings, with and without gates, except at openings indicated as intentional fence discontinuities. Use No. 2 AWG wire and bury it at least 18 inches (460 mm) below finished grade.
- B. Protection at Crossings of Overhead Electrical Power Lines: Ground fence at location of crossing and at a maximum distance of 150 feet (45 m) on each side of crossing.
- C. Fences Enclosing Electrical Power Distribution Equipment: Ground as required by IEEE C2 unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Grounding Method: At each grounding location, drive a grounding rod vertically until the top is 6 inches (150 mm) below finished grade. Connect rod to fence with No. 6 AWG conductor. Connect conductor to each fence component at grounding location.

- E. Bonding Method for Gates: Connect bonding jumper between gate post and gate frame.
- F. Bonding to Lightning-Protection System: If fence terminates at lightning-protected building or structure, ground the fence and bond the fence grounding conductor to lightning-protection down conductor or lightning-protection grounding conductor, complying with NFPA 780.

3.7 INSTALLATION

- A. Grounding Conductors: Route along shortest and straightest paths possible unless otherwise indicated or required by Code. Avoid obstructing access or placing conductors where they may be subjected to strain, impact, or damage.
- B. Ground Bonding Common with Lightning Protection System: Comply with NFPA 780 and UL 96 when interconnecting with lightning protection system. Bond electrical power system ground directly to lightning protection system grounding conductor at closest point to electrical service grounding electrode. Use bonding conductor sized same as system grounding electrode conductor, and install in conduit.
- C. Ground Rods: Drive rods until tops are 2 inches (50 mm) below finished floor or final grade unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Interconnect ground rods with grounding electrode conductor below grade and as otherwise indicated. Make connections without exposing steel or damaging coating if any.
 - 2. Use exothermic welds for all below-grade connections.
 - 3. For grounding electrode system, install at least three rods spaced at least one-rod length from each other and located at least the same distance from other grounding electrodes, and connect to the service grounding electrode conductor.
- D. Test Wells: Ground rod driven through drilled hole in bottom of handhole. Handholes are specified in other sections for "Underground Ducts and Raceways for Electrical Systems," and shall be at least 12 inches (300 mm) deep, with cover.
 - 1. Install at least one test well for each service unless otherwise indicated. Install at the ground rod electrically closest to service entrance. Set top of test well flush with finished grade or floor.
- E. Bonding Straps and Jumpers: Install in locations accessible for inspection and maintenance except where routed through short lengths of conduit.
 - 1. Bonding to Structure: Bond straps directly to basic structure, taking care not to penetrate any adjacent parts.
 - 2. Bonding to Equipment Mounted on Vibration Isolation Hangers and Supports: Install bonding so vibration is not transmitted to rigidly mounted equipment.
 - 3. Use exothermic-welded connectors for outdoor locations; if a disconnect-type connection is required, use a bolted clamp.
- F. Grounding and Bonding for Piping:

1. Metal Water Service Pipe: Install insulated copper grounding conductors, in conduit, from building's main service equipment, or grounding bus, to main metal water service entrances to building. Connect grounding conductors to main metal water service pipes; use a bolted clamp connector or bolt a lug-type connector to a pipe flange by using one of the lug bolts of the flange. Where a dielectric main water fitting is installed, connect grounding conductor on street side of fitting. Bond metal grounding conductor conduit or sleeve to conductor at each end.
 2. Water Meter Piping: Use braided-type bonding jumpers to electrically bypass water meters. Connect to pipe with a bolted connector.
 3. Bond each aboveground portion of gas piping system downstream from equipment shutoff valve.
- G. Bonding Interior Metal Ducts: Bond metal air ducts to equipment grounding conductors of associated fans, blowers, electric heaters, and air cleaners. Install tinned bonding jumper to bond across flexible duct connections to achieve continuity.
- H. Grounding for Steel Building Structure: Install a driven ground rod at base of each corner column and at intermediate exterior columns at distances not more than 60 feet (18 m) apart.
- I. Ground Ring: Install a grounding conductor, electrically connected to each building structure ground rod and to each steel column, extending around the perimeter of building.
1. Install tinned-copper conductor not less than No. 2/0 AWG for ground ring and for taps to building steel.
 2. Bury ground ring not less than 24 inches (600 mm) from building's foundation.
- J. Concrete-Encased Grounding Electrode (Ufer Ground): Fabricate according to NFPA 70; use a minimum of 20 feet (6 m) of bare copper conductor not smaller than No. 4 AWG.
1. If concrete foundation is less than 20 feet (6 m) long, coil excess conductor within base of foundation.
 2. Bond grounding conductor to reinforcing steel in at least four locations and to anchor bolts. Extend grounding conductor below grade and connect to building's grounding grid or to grounding electrode external to concrete.
- K. Connections: Make connections so possibility of galvanic action or electrolysis is minimized. Select connectors, connection hardware, conductors, and connection methods so metals in direct contact are galvanically compatible.
1. Use electroplated or hot-tin-coated materials to ensure high conductivity and to make contact points closer in order of galvanic series.
 2. Make connections with clean, bare metal at points of contact.
 3. Make aluminum-to-steel connections with stainless-steel separators and mechanical clamps.
 4. Make aluminum-to-galvanized-steel connections with tin-plated copper jumpers and mechanical clamps.

5. Coat and seal connections having dissimilar metals with inert material to prevent future penetration of moisture to contact surfaces.

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
 1. After installing grounding system but before permanent electrical circuits have been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
 2. Inspect physical and mechanical condition. Verify tightness of accessible, bolted, electrical connections with a calibrated torque wrench according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 3. Test completed grounding system at each location where a maximum ground-resistance level is specified, at service disconnect enclosure grounding terminal, at ground test wells, and at individual ground rods. Make tests at ground rods before any conductors are connected.
 - a. Measure ground resistance no fewer than two full days after last trace of precipitation and without soil being moistened by any means other than natural drainage or seepage and without chemical treatment or other artificial means of reducing natural ground resistance.
 - b. Perform tests by fall-of-potential method according to IEEE 81.
 4. Prepare dimensioned Drawings locating each test well, ground rod and ground-rod assembly, and other grounding electrodes. Identify each by letter in alphabetical order, and key to the record of tests and observations. Include the number of rods driven and their depth at each location, and include observations of weather and other phenomena that may affect test results. Describe measures taken to improve test results.
- D. Grounding system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- F. Report measured ground resistances that exceed the following values:
 1. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity of 500 kVA and Less: 10 ohms.
 2. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity of 500 to 1000 kVA: 5 ohms.
 3. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity More Than 1000 kVA: 3 ohms.
 4. Power Distribution Units or Panelboards Serving Electronic Equipment: [3 ohm(s).
 5. Substations and Pad-Mounted Equipment: 5 ohms.
 6. Manhole Grounds: 10 ohms.

- G. Excessive Ground Resistance: If resistance to ground exceeds specified values, notify Architect promptly and include recommendations to reduce ground resistance.

END OF SECTION 26 0526

SECTION 26 0529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Steel slotted support systems.
2. Conduit and cable support devices.
3. Support for conductors in vertical conduit.
4. Structural steel for fabricated supports and restraints.
5. Mounting, anchoring, and attachment components, including powder-actuated fasteners, mechanical expansion anchors, concrete inserts, clamps, through bolts, toggle bolts, and hanger rods.
6. Fabricated metal equipment support assemblies.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Refer to other sections for "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems" for products and installation requirements necessary for compliance with seismic criteria.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for the following:
 - a. Slotted support systems, hardware, and accessories.
 - b. Clamps.
 - c. Hangers.
 - d. Sockets.
 - e. Eye nuts.
 - f. Fasteners.
 - g. Anchors.
 - h. Saddles.
 - i. Brackets.
2. Include rated capacities and furnished specialties and accessories.

- B. Delegated-Design Submittal: For hangers and supports for electrical systems.

1. Include design calculations and details of hangers.
2. Include design calculations for seismic restraints.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plan(s) and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
1. Suspended ceiling components.
 2. Ductwork, piping, fittings, and supports.
 3. Structural members to which hangers and supports will be attached.
 4. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
 5. Items penetrating finished ceiling, including the following:
 - a. Luminaires.
 - b. Air outlets and inlets.
 - c. Speakers.
 - d. Sprinklers.
 - e. Access panels.
 - f. Projectors.
- B. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates, for hangers and supports for electrical equipment and systems, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- C. Welding certificates.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in other section for "Quality Requirements," to design hanger and support system.
- B. Seismic Performance: Hangers and supports shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
1. The term "withstand" means "the supported equipment and systems will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified .
 2. Component Importance Factor: 1.5.

2.2 SUPPORT, ANCHORAGE, AND ATTACHMENT COMPONENTS

- A. Steel Slotted Support Systems: Preformed steel channels and angles with minimum 13/32-inch- (10-mm-) diameter holes at a maximum of 8 inches (200 mm) o.c. in at least one surface.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Allied Tube & Conduit; a part of Atkore International.
 - b. ERICO International Corporation.
 - c. GS Metals Corp.
 - d. Thomas & Betts Corporation; A Member of the ABB Group.
 - e. Wesanco, Inc.
 - 2. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4 factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
 - 3. Material for Channel, Fittings, and Accessories: Galvanized steel.
 - 4. Channel Width: Selected for applicable load criteria.
 - 5. Metallic Coatings: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and applied according to MFMA-4.
- B. Conduit and Cable Support Devices: Steel hangers, clamps, and associated fittings, designed for types and sizes of raceway or cable to be supported.
- C. Support for Conductors in Vertical Conduit: Factory-fabricated assembly consisting of threaded body and insulating wedging plug or plugs for non-armored electrical conductors or cables in riser conduits. Plugs shall have number, size, and shape of conductor gripping pieces as required to suit individual conductors or cables supported. Body shall be made of malleable iron.
- D. Structural Steel for Fabricated Supports and Restraints: ASTM A 36/A 36M steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- E. Mounting, Anchoring, and Attachment Components: Items for fastening electrical items or their supports to building surfaces include the following:
 - 1. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, steel, or wood, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1) Hilti, Inc.
 - 2) ITW Ramset/Red Head; Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
 - 3) MKT Fastening, LLC.
 - 4) Simpson Strong-Tie Co., Inc.
 - 2. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, zinc-coated steel, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

- a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1) B-line, an Eaton business.
 - 2) Empire Tool and Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - 3) Hilti, Inc.
 - 4) ITW Ramset/Red Head; Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
- 3. Concrete Inserts: Steel or malleable-iron, slotted support system units are similar to MSS Type 18 units and comply with MFMA-4 or MSS SP-58.
- 4. Clamps for Attachment to Steel Structural Elements: MSS SP-58 units are suitable for attached structural element.
- 5. Through Bolts: Structural type, hex head, and high strength. Comply with ASTM F 3125/F 3125M, Grade A325 (Grade A325M).
- 6. Toggle Bolts: All-steel springhead type.
- 7. Hanger Rods: Threaded steel.

2.3 FABRICATED METAL EQUIPMENT SUPPORT ASSEMBLIES

- A. Description: Welded or bolted structural-steel shapes, shop or field fabricated to fit dimensions of supported equipment.
- B. Materials: Comply with requirements in other section for "Metal Fabrications" for steel shapes and plates.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATION

- A. Comply with the following standards for application and installation requirements of hangers and supports, except where requirements on Drawings or in this Section are stricter:
 - 1. NECA 1.
 - 2. NECA 101
 - 3. NECA 105.
- B. Comply with requirements in other section for "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping materials and installation for penetrations through fire-rated walls, ceilings, and assemblies.
- C. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in other section for "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
- D. Maximum Support Spacing and Minimum Hanger Rod Size for Raceways: Space supports for EMT, IMC, and RMC as required by NFPA 70. Minimum rod size shall be 1/4 inch (6 mm) in diameter.

- E. Multiple Raceways or Cables: Install trapeze-type supports fabricated with steel slotted support system, sized so capacity can be increased by at least 25 percent in future without exceeding specified design load limits.

- 1. Secure raceways and cables to these supports with two-bolt conduit clamps.

3.2 SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except as specified in this article.
- B. Raceway Support Methods: In addition to methods described in NECA 1, EMT, IMC and RMC may be supported by openings through structure members, according to NFPA 70.
- C. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus 200 lb (90 kg).
- D. Mounting and Anchorage of Surface-Mounted Equipment and Components: Anchor and fasten electrical items and their supports to building structural elements by the following methods unless otherwise indicated by code:
 - 1. To Wood: Fasten with lag screws or through bolts.
 - 2. To New Concrete: Bolt to concrete inserts.
 - 3. To Masonry: Approved toggle-type bolts on hollow masonry units and expansion anchor fasteners on solid masonry units.
 - 4. Instead of expansion anchors, powder-actuated driven threaded studs provided with lock washers and nuts may be used in existing standard-weight concrete 4 inches (100 mm) thick or greater. Do not use for anchorage to lightweight-aggregate concrete or for slabs less than 4 inches (100 mm) thick.
 - 5. To Steel: Welded threaded studs complying with AWS D1.1/D1.1M, with lock washers and nuts.
 - 6. To Light Steel: Sheet metal screws.
 - 7. Items Mounted on Hollow Walls and Nonstructural Building Surfaces: Mount cabinets, panelboards, disconnect switches, control enclosures, pull and junction boxes, transformers, and other devices on slotted-channel racks attached to substrate by means that comply with seismic-restraint strength and anchorage requirements.
- E. Drill holes for expansion anchors in concrete at locations and to depths that avoid the need for reinforcing bars.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF FABRICATED METAL SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with installation requirements in other section for "Metal Fabrications" for site-fabricated metal supports.

- B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor electrical materials and equipment.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

3.4 CONCRETE BASES

- A. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated, but not less than 4 inches (100 mm) larger in both directions than supported unit, and so anchors will be a minimum of 10 bolt diameters from edge of the base.
- B. Use 3000-psi (20.7-MPa), 28-day compressive-strength concrete. Concrete materials, reinforcement, and placement requirements are specified in other sections for "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- C. Anchor equipment to concrete base as follows:
 - 1. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 - 2. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
 - 3. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.

3.5 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
 - 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils (0.05 mm).
- B. Touchup: Comply with requirements in other sections for cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal.
- C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

END OF SECTION 26 0529

SECTION 26 0533 - RACEWAYS AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Metal conduits and fittings.
 - 2. Metal wireways and auxiliary gutters.
 - 3. Surface raceways.
 - 4. Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets.
 - 5. Handholes and boxes for exterior underground cabling.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. GRC: Galvanized rigid steel conduit.
- B. IMC: Intermediate metal conduit.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For surface raceways, wireways and fittings, floor boxes, hinged-cover enclosures, and cabinets.
- B. Shop Drawings: For custom enclosures and cabinets. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Conduit routing plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of items involved:
 - 1. Structural members in paths of conduit groups with common supports.
 - 2. HVAC and plumbing items and architectural features in paths of conduit groups with common supports.
- B. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates, for enclosures, cabinets, and conduit racks and their mounting provisions, including those for internal components, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
4. Detailed description of conduit support devices and interconnections on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

C. Source quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL CONDUITS AND FITTINGS

A. Metal Conduit:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Allied Tube & Conduit; a part of Atkore International.
 - b. FSR Inc.
 - c. NEC, Inc.
 - d. O-Z/Gedney; a brand of Emerson Industrial Automation.
2. Listing and Labeling: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
3. GRC: Comply with ANSI C80.1 and UL 6.
4. IMC: Comply with ANSI C80.6 and UL 1242.
5. PVC-Coated Steel Conduit: PVC-coated rigid steel conduit.
 - a. Comply with NEMA RN 1.
 - b. Coating Thickness: 0.040 inch (1 mm), minimum.
6. EMT: Comply with ANSI C80.3 and UL 797.
7. FMC: Comply with UL 1; zinc-coated steel.
8. LFMC: Flexible steel conduit with PVC jacket and complying with UL 360.

B. Metal Fittings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Allied Tube & Conduit; a part of Atkore International.
 - b. FSR Inc.
 - c. NEC, Inc.
 - d. O-Z/Gedney; a brand of Emerson Industrial Automation.
2. Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 514B.
3. Listing and Labeling: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
4. Fittings, General: Listed and labeled for type of conduit, location, and use.

5. Conduit Fittings for Hazardous (Classified) Locations: Comply with UL 1203 and NFPA 70.
 6. Fittings for EMT:
 - a. Material: Steel.
 - b. Type: compression.
 7. Expansion Fittings: PVC or steel to match conduit type, complying with UL 651, rated for environmental conditions where installed, and including flexible external bonding jumper.
 8. Coating for Fittings for PVC-Coated Conduit: Minimum thickness of 0.040 inch (1 mm), with overlapping sleeves protecting threaded joints.
- C. Joint Compound for IMC, or GRC,: Approved, as defined in NFPA 70, by authorities having jurisdiction for use in conduit assemblies, and compounded for use to lubricate and protect threaded conduit joints from corrosion and to enhance their conductivity.

2.2 METAL WIREWAYS AND AUXILIARY GUTTERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. B-line, an Eaton business.
 2. Hoffman; a brand of Pentair Equipment Protection.
 3. MonoSystems, Inc.
 4. Square D.
- B. Description: Sheet metal, complying with UL 870 and NEMA 250, Type 1 unless otherwise indicated, and sized according to NFPA 70.
1. Metal wireways installed outdoors shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Fittings and Accessories: Include covers, couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings to match and mate with wireways as required for complete system.
- D. Wireway Covers: Hinged type unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Finish: Manufacturer's standard enamel finish.

2.3 BOXES, ENCLOSURES, AND CABINETS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Crouse-Hinds, an Eaton business.
 2. EGS/Appleton Electric.
 3. FSR Inc.

4. Hoffman; a brand of Pentair Equipment Protection.
 5. Hubbell Incorporated.
 6. O-Z/Gedney; a brand of Emerson Industrial Automation.
- B. General Requirements for Boxes, Enclosures, and Cabinets: Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets installed in wet locations shall be listed for use in wet locations.
- C. Sheet Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 1 and UL 514A.
- D. Cast-Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1, aluminum, Type FD, with gasketed cover.
- E. Metal Floor Boxes:
1. Material: Cast metal.
 2. Type: Fully adjustable.
 3. Shape: Rectangular.
 4. Listing and Labeling: Metal floor boxes shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- F. Luminaire Outlet Boxes: Nonadjustable, designed for attachment of luminaire weighing 50 lb (23 kg). Outlet boxes designed for attachment of luminaires weighing more than 50 lb (23 kg) shall be listed and marked for the maximum allowable weight.
- G. Paddle Fan Outlet Boxes: Nonadjustable, designed for attachment of paddle fan weighing 70 lb (32 kg).
1. Listing and Labeling: Paddle fan outlet boxes shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- H. Small Sheet Metal Pull and Junction Boxes: NEMA OS 1.
- I. Cast-Metal Access, Pull, and Junction Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 1773, cast aluminum with gasketed cover.
- J. Box extensions used to accommodate new building finishes shall be of same material as recessed box.
- K. Device Box Dimensions: 4 inches square by 2-1/8 inches deep (100 mm square by 60 mm deep).
- L. Gangable boxes are allowed.
- M. Hinged-Cover Enclosures: Comply with UL 50 and NEMA 250, Type 1 with continuous-hinge cover with flush latch unless otherwise indicated.

1. Metal Enclosures: Steel, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
2. Nonmetallic Enclosures: Plastic.
3. Interior Panels: Steel; all sides finished with manufacturer's standard enamel.

N. Cabinets:

1. NEMA 250, Type 1 galvanized-steel box with removable interior panel and removable front, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
2. Hinged door in front cover with flush latch and concealed hinge.
3. Key latch to match panelboards.
4. Metal barriers to separate wiring of different systems and voltage.
5. Accessory feet where required for freestanding equipment.
6. Nonmetallic cabinets shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.4 HANDHOLES AND BOXES FOR EXTERIOR UNDERGROUND WIRING

A. General Requirements for Handholes and Boxes:

1. Boxes and handholes for use in underground systems shall be designed and identified as defined in NFPA 70, for intended location and application.
2. Boxes installed in wet areas shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Polymer-Concrete Handholes and Boxes with Polymer-Concrete Cover: Molded of sand and aggregate, bound together with polymer resin, and reinforced with steel, fiberglass, or a combination of the two.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Armorcast Products Company.
 - b. NewBasis.
 - c. Oldcastle Precast, Inc.
 - d. Quazite: Hubbell Power Systems, Inc.
2. Standard: Comply with SCTE 77.
3. Configuration: Designed for flush burial with integral closed bottom unless otherwise indicated.
4. Cover: Weatherproof, secured by tamper-resistant locking devices and having structural load rating consistent with enclosure and handhole location.
5. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
6. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, "ELECTRIC".
7. Conduit Entrance Provisions: Conduit-terminating fittings shall mate with entering ducts for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.
8. Handholes 12 Inches Wide by 24 Inches Long (300 mm Wide by 600 mm Long) and Larger: Have inserts for cable racks and pulling-in irons installed before concrete is poured.

2.5 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL FOR UNDERGROUND ENCLOSURES

- A. Handhole and Pull-Box Prototype Test: Test prototypes of handholes and boxes for compliance with SCTE 77. Strength tests shall be for specified tier ratings of products supplied.
1. Tests of materials shall be performed by an independent testing agency.
 2. Strength tests of complete boxes and covers shall be by either an independent testing agency or manufacturer. A qualified registered professional engineer shall certify tests by manufacturer.
 3. Testing machine pressure gages shall have current calibration certification complying with ISO 9000 and ISO 10012 and traceable to NIST standards.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 RACEWAY APPLICATION

- A. Outdoors: Apply raceway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:
1. Exposed Conduit: GRC.
 2. Concealed Conduit, Aboveground: GRC.
 3. Underground Conduit: RNC, Type EPC-40-PVC, concrete encased.
 4. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): LFMC.
 5. Boxes and Enclosures, Aboveground: NEMA 250, Type 4.
- B. Indoors: Apply raceway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:
1. Exposed, Not Subject to Physical Damage: EMT.
 2. Exposed, Not Subject to Severe Physical Damage: EMT.
 3. Exposed and Subject to Severe Physical Damage: GRC. Raceway locations include the following:
 - a. Mechanical rooms.
 4. Concealed in Ceilings and Interior Walls and Partitions: EMT.
 5. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): FMC, except use LFMC in damp or wet locations.
 6. Damp or Wet Locations: GRC.
 7. Boxes and Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1, except use NEMA 250, Type 4 stainless steel in institutional kitchens and damp or wet locations.
- C. Minimum Raceway Size: 3/4-inch (21-mm) trade size.
- D. Raceway Fittings: Compatible with raceways and suitable for use and location.
1. Rigid and Intermediate Steel Conduit: Use threaded rigid steel conduit fittings unless otherwise indicated. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.

2. PVC Externally Coated, Rigid Steel Conduits: Use only fittings listed for use with this type of conduit. Patch and seal all joints, nicks, and scrapes in PVC coating after installing conduits and fittings. Use sealant recommended by fitting manufacturer and apply in thickness and number of coats recommended by manufacturer.
3. EMT: Use compression, steel fittings. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
4. Flexible Conduit: Use only fittings listed for use with flexible conduit. Comply with NEMA FB 2.20.

- E. Install surface raceways only where indicated on Drawings.
- F. Do not install nonmetallic conduit where ambient temperature exceeds 120 deg F (49 deg C).

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements in other section for "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for hangers and supports.
- B. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except where requirements on Drawings or in this article are stricter. Comply with NECA 102 for aluminum conduits. Comply with NFPA 70 limitations for types of raceways allowed in specific occupancies and number of floors.
- C. Do not install raceways or electrical items on any "explosion-relief" walls or rotating equipment.
- D. Do not fasten conduits onto the bottom side of a metal deck roof.
- E. Keep raceways at least 6 inches (150 mm) away from parallel runs of flues and steam or hot-water pipes. Install horizontal raceway runs above water and steam piping.
- F. Complete raceway installation before starting conductor installation.
- G. Arrange stub-ups so curved portions of bends are not visible above finished slab.
- H. Install no more than the equivalent of three 90-degree bends in any conduit run except for control wiring conduits, for which fewer bends are allowed. Support within 12 inches (300 mm) of changes in direction.
- I. Make bends in raceway using large-radius preformed ells. Field bending shall be according to NFPA 70 minimum radii requirements. Use only equipment specifically designed for material and size involved.
- J. Conceal conduit within finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated. Install conduits parallel or perpendicular to building lines.
- K. Support conduit within 12 inches (300 mm) of enclosures to which attached.

L. Raceways Embedded in Slabs:

1. Run conduit larger than 1-inch (27-mm) trade size, parallel or at right angles to main reinforcement. Where at right angles to reinforcement, place conduit close to slab support. Secure raceways to reinforcement at maximum 10-foot (3-m) intervals.
2. Arrange raceways to cross building expansion joints at right angles with expansion fittings.
3. Arrange raceways to keep a minimum of 1 inch (25 mm) of concrete cover in all directions.
4. Do not embed threadless fittings in concrete unless specifically approved by Architect for each specific location.

M. Stub-Ups to Above Recessed Ceilings:

1. Use EMT, IMC, or RMC for raceways.
2. Use a conduit bushing or insulated fitting to terminate stub-ups not terminated in hubs or in an enclosure.

N. Threaded Conduit Joints, Exposed to Wet, Damp, Corrosive, or Outdoor Conditions: Apply listed compound to threads of raceway and fittings before making up joints. Follow compound manufacturer's written instructions.

O. Coat field-cut threads on PVC-coated raceway with a corrosion-preventing conductive compound prior to assembly.

P. Raceway Terminations at Locations Subject to Moisture or Vibration: Use insulating bushings to protect conductors including conductors smaller than No. 4 AWG.

Q. Terminate threaded conduits into threaded hubs or with locknuts on inside and outside of boxes or cabinets. Install bushings on conduits up to 1-1/4-inch (35mm) trade size and insulated throat metal bushings on 1-1/2-inch (41-mm) trade size and larger conduits terminated with locknuts. Install insulated throat metal grounding bushings on service conduits.

R. Install raceways square to the enclosure and terminate at enclosures with locknuts. Install locknuts hand tight plus 1/4 turn more.

S. Do not rely on locknuts to penetrate nonconductive coatings on enclosures. Remove coatings in the locknut area prior to assembling conduit to enclosure to assure a continuous ground path.

T. Cut conduit perpendicular to the length. For conduits 2-inch (53-mm) trade size and larger, use roll cutter or a guide to make cut straight and perpendicular to the length.

U. Install pull wires in empty raceways. Use polypropylene or monofilament plastic line with not less than 200-lb (90-kg) tensile strength. Leave at least 12 inches (300 mm) of slack at each end of pull wire. Cap underground raceways designated as spare above grade alongside raceways in use.

V. Surface Raceways:

1. Install surface raceway with a minimum 2-inch (50-mm) radius control at bend points.
2. Secure surface raceway with screws or other anchor-type devices at intervals not exceeding 48 inches (1200 mm) and with no less than two supports per straight raceway section. Support surface raceway according to manufacturer's written instructions. Tape and glue are not acceptable support methods.

W. Install raceway sealing fittings at accessible locations according to NFPA 70 and fill them with listed sealing compound. For concealed raceways, install each fitting in a flush steel box with a blank cover plate having a finish similar to that of adjacent plates or surfaces. Install raceway sealing fittings according to NFPA 70.

X. Install devices to seal raceway interiors at accessible locations. Locate seals so no fittings or boxes are between the seal and the following changes of environments. Seal the interior of all raceways at the following points:

1. Where conduits pass from warm to cold locations, such as boundaries of refrigerated spaces.
2. Where an underground service raceway enters a building or structure.
3. Conduit extending from interior to exterior of building.
4. Conduit extending into pressurized duct and equipment.
5. Conduit extending into pressurized zones that are automatically controlled to maintain different pressure set points.
6. Where otherwise required by NFPA 70.

Y. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for solvent welding RNC and fittings.

Z. Expansion-Joint Fittings:

1. Install in each run of aboveground RNC that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed 30 deg F (17 deg C) and that has straight-run length that exceeds 25 feet (7.6 m). Install in each run of aboveground RMC conduit that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed 100 deg F (55 deg C) and that has straight-run length that exceeds 100 feet (30 m).
2. Install type and quantity of fittings that accommodate temperature change listed for each of the following locations:
 - a. Outdoor Locations Not Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 125 deg F (70 deg C) temperature change.
 - b. Outdoor Locations Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 155 deg F (86 deg C) temperature change.
 - c. Indoor Spaces Connected with Outdoors without Physical Separation: 125 deg F (70 deg C) temperature change.
 - d. Attics: 135 deg F (75 deg C) temperature change.
3. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.00041 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F (0.06 mm per meter of length of

straight run per deg C) of temperature change for PVC conduits. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.000078 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F (0.0115 mm per meter of length of straight run per deg C) of temperature change for metal conduits.

4. Install expansion fittings at all locations where conduits cross building or structure expansion joints.
5. Install each expansion-joint fitting with position, mounting, and piston setting selected according to manufacturer's written instructions for conditions at specific location at time of installation. Install conduit supports to allow for expansion movement.

AA. Flexible Conduit Connections: Comply with NEMA RV 3. Use a maximum of 36 inches (915 mm) of flexible conduit for recessed and semi-recessed luminaires, equipment subject to vibration, noise transmission, or movement; and for transformers and motors.

1. Use LFMC in damp or wet locations subject to severe physical damage.
2. Use LFMC or LFNC in damp or wet locations not subject to severe physical damage.

BB. Mount boxes at heights indicated on Drawings. If mounting heights of boxes are not individually indicated, give priority to ADA requirements. Install boxes with height measured to center of box unless otherwise indicated.

CC. Recessed Boxes in Masonry Walls: Saw-cut opening for box in center of cell of masonry block, and install box flush with surface of wall. Prepare block surfaces to provide a flat surface for a raintight connection between boxes and cover plate or supported equipment and box.

DD. Horizontally separate boxes mounted on opposite sides of walls so they are not in the same vertical channel.

EE. Locate boxes so that cover or plate will not span different building finishes.

FF. Support boxes of three gangs or more from more than one side by spanning two framing members or mounting on brackets specifically designed for the purpose.

GG. Fasten junction and pull boxes to or support from building structure. Do not support boxes by conduits.

HH. Set metal floor boxes level and flush with finished floor surface.

II. Set nonmetallic floor boxes level. Trim after installation to fit flush with finished floor surface.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF UNDERGROUND CONDUIT

A. Direct-Buried Conduit:

1. Excavate trench bottom to provide firm and uniform support for conduit. Prepare trench bottom as specified in other section for "Earth Moving" for pipe less than 6 inches (150 mm) in nominal diameter.
2. Install backfill as specified in other section for "Earth Moving."
3. After installing conduit, backfill and compact. Start at tie-in point, and work toward end of conduit run, leaving conduit at end of run free to move with expansion and contraction as temperature changes during this process. Firmly hand tamp backfill around conduit to provide maximum supporting strength. After placing controlled backfill to within 12 inches (300 mm) of finished grade, make final conduit connection at end of run and complete backfilling with normal compaction as specified in other section for "Earth Moving."
4. Install manufactured duct elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through floor unless otherwise indicated. Encase elbows for stub-up ducts throughout length of elbow.
5. Install manufactured rigid steel conduit elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through floor.
 - a. Couple steel conduits to ducts with adapters designed for this purpose, and encase coupling with 3 inches (75 mm) of concrete for a minimum of 12 inches (300 mm) on each side of the coupling.
 - b. For stub-ups at equipment mounted on outdoor concrete bases and where conduits penetrate building foundations, extend steel conduit horizontally a minimum of 60 inches (1500 mm) from edge of foundation or equipment base. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.
6. Warning Planks: Bury warning planks approximately 12 inches (300 mm) above direct-buried conduits but a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) below grade. Align planks along centerline of conduit.
7. Underground Warning Tape: Comply with requirements in other section for "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.4 INSTALLATION OF UNDERGROUND HANDHOLES AND BOXES

- A. Install handholes and boxes level and plumb and with orientation and depth coordinated with connecting conduits to minimize bends and deflections required for proper entrances.
- B. Unless otherwise indicated, support units on a level bed of crushed stone or gravel, graded from 1/2-inch (12.5-mm) sieve to No. 4 (4.75-mm) sieve and compacted to same density as adjacent undisturbed earth.
- C. Elevation: In paved areas, set so cover surface will be flush with finished grade. Set covers of other enclosures 1 inch (25 mm) above finished grade.
- D. Install handholes with bottom below frost line, 36 inches below grade.
- E. Install removable hardware, including pulling eyes, cable stanchions, cable arms, and insulators, as required for installation and support of cables and conductors and as indicated. Select arm lengths to be long enough to provide spare space for future cables but short enough to preserve adequate working clearances in enclosure.

- F. Field-cut openings for conduits according to enclosure manufacturer's written instructions. Cut wall of enclosure with a tool designed for material to be cut. Size holes for terminating fittings to be used, and seal around penetrations after fittings are installed.

3.5 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in other section for "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling."

3.6 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Install firestopping at penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in other section for "Penetration Firestopping."

3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Protect coatings, finishes, and cabinets from damage and deterioration.
 - 1. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer.
 - 2. Repair damage to PVC coatings or paint finishes with matching touchup coating recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 26 0533

SECTION 26 0543 - UNDERGROUND DUCTS AND RACEWAYS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Metal conduits and fittings, including GRC and PVC-coated steel conduit.
 - 2. Rigid nonmetallic duct.
 - 3. Duct accessories.
 - 4. Precast concrete handholes.
 - 5. Polymer concrete handholes and boxes with polymer concrete cover.
 - 6. High-density plastic boxes.
 - 7. Utility structure accessories.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Direct Buried: Duct or a duct bank that is buried in the ground, without any additional casing materials such as concrete.
- B. Duct: A single duct or multiple ducts. Duct may be either installed singly or as component of a duct bank.
- C. Duct Bank:
 - 1. Two or more ducts installed in parallel, with or without additional casing materials.
 - 2. Multiple duct banks.
- D. GRC: Galvanized rigid (steel) conduit.
- E. Trafficways: Locations where vehicular or pedestrian traffic is a normal course of events.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include duct-bank materials, including spacers and miscellaneous components.
 - 2. Include duct, conduits, and their accessories, including elbows, end bells, bends, fittings, and solvent cement.

3. Include accessories for manholes, handholes, and boxes.
4. Include underground-line warning tape.
5. Include warning planks.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Precast or Factory-Fabricated Underground Utility Structures:
 - a. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, attachments to other work, and accessories.
 - b. Include duct entry provisions, including locations and duct sizes.
 - c. Include reinforcement details.
 - d. Include frame and cover design and manhole chimneys.
 - e. Include ladder details.
 - f. Include grounding details.
 - g. Include dimensioned locations of cable rack inserts, pulling-in and lifting irons, and sumps.
 - h. Include joint details.
2. Factory-Fabricated Handholes and Boxes Other Than Precast Concrete:
 - a. Include dimensioned plans, sections, and elevations, and fabrication and installation details.
 - b. Include duct entry provisions, including locations and duct sizes.
 - c. Include cover design.
 - d. Include grounding details.
 - e. Include dimensioned locations of cable rack inserts, and pulling-in and lifting irons.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: For duct and duct bank. Show duct profiles and coordination with other utilities and underground structures.
 1. Include plans and sections, drawn to scale, and show bends and locations of expansion fittings.
 2. Drawings shall be signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.
- B. Product Certificates: For concrete and steel used in precast concrete as required by ASTM C 858.
- C. Source quality-control reports.
- D. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Electrical Service: Do not interrupt electrical service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions, and then only after arranging to provide temporary electrical service according to requirements indicated:
 - 1. Notify Construction Manager no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of electrical service.
 - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of electrical service without Construction Manager's written permission.
- B. Ground Water: Assume ground-water level is at grade level unless a lower water table is noted on Drawings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL CONDUIT AND FITTINGS

- A. GRC: Comply with ANSI C80.1 and UL 6.
- B. Coated Steel Conduit: PVC-coated GRC.
 - 1. Comply with NEMA RN 1.
 - 2. Coating Thickness: 0.040 inch (1 mm), minimum.
- C. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a nationally recognized testing laboratory, and marked for intended location and application.

2.2 RIGID NONMETALLIC DUCT

- A. Underground Plastic Utilities Duct: Type EPC-80-PVC and Type EPC-40-PVC RNC, complying with NEMA TC 2 and UL 651, with matching fittings complying with NEMA TC 3 by same manufacturer as duct.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Cantex Inc.
 - 2. Lamson & Sessions; Carlon Electrical Products.
 - 3. Manhattan/CDT; a Division of Cable Design Technologies.
 - 4. Spiraduct/AFC Cable System, Inc.
- C. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a nationally recognized testing laboratory, and marked for intended location and application.
- D. Solvents and Adhesives: As recommended by conduit manufacturer.
 - 1. VOC Content: 510 g/L or less for PVC conduit and fittings.

2.3 DUCT ACCESSORIES

- A. Duct Spacers: Factory-fabricated, rigid, PVC interlocking spacers; sized for type and size of duct with which used, and selected to provide minimum duct spacing indicated while supporting duct during concreting or backfilling.
- B. Underground-Line Warning Tape: Comply with requirements for underground-line warning tape specified in other section for "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- C. Concrete Warning Planks: Nominal 12 by 24 by 3 inches (300 by 600 by 75 mm) in size, manufactured from 6000-psi (41-MPa) concrete.
 - 1. Color: Red dye added to concrete during batching.
 - 2. Mark each plank with "ELECTRIC" in 2-inch- (50-mm-) high, 3/8-inch- (10-mm-) deep letters.

2.4 PRECAST CONCRETE HANDHOLES AND BOXES

- A. Description: Factory-fabricated, reinforced-concrete, monolithically poured walls and bottom unless open-bottom enclosures are indicated. Frame and cover shall form top of enclosure and shall have load rating consistent with that of handhole or box.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Oldcastle Precast, Inc.
 - 2. Utility Concrete Products, LLC.
 - 3. Utility Vault Co.
- C. Comply with ASTM C 858 for design and manufacturing processes.
- D. Frame and Cover: Weatherproof cast-iron frame, with cast-iron cover with recessed cover hook eyes and tamper-resistant, captive, cover-securing bolts.
- E. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
- F. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, as indicated for each service.
- G. Configuration: Units shall be designed for flush burial and have integral closed bottom unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Extensions and Slabs: Designed to mate with bottom of enclosure. Same material as enclosure.
 - 1. Extension shall provide increased depth of 12 inches (300 mm).
 - 2. Slab: Same dimensions as bottom of enclosure, and arranged to provide closure.
- I. Joint Sealant: Asphaltic-butyl material with adhesion, cohesion, flexibility, and durability properties necessary to withstand maximum hydrostatic pressures at the installation location with the ground-water level at grade.

- J. Knockout Panels: Precast openings in walls, arranged to match dimensions and elevations of approaching duct, plus an additional 12 inches (300 mm) vertically and horizontally to accommodate alignment variations.
 - 1. Center window location.
 - 2. Knockout panels shall be located no less than 6 inches (150 mm) from interior surfaces of walls, floors, or frames and covers of handholes, but close enough to corners to facilitate racking of cables on walls.
 - 3. Knockout panel opening shall have cast-in-place, welded-wire fabric reinforcement for field cutting and bending to tie in to concrete envelopes of duct.
 - 4. Knockout panels shall be framed with at least two additional No. 3 steel reinforcing bars in concrete around each opening.
 - 5. Knockout panels shall be 1-1/2 to 2 inches (38 to 50 mm) thick.
- K. Handholes 12 inches wide by 24 inches long (300 mm wide by 600 mm long) and larger shall have inserts for cable racks and pulling-in irons installed before concrete is poured.

2.5 POLYMER CONCRETE HANDHOLES AND BOXES WITH POLYMER CONCRETE COVER

- A. Description: Molded of sand and aggregate, bound together with a polymer resin, and reinforced with steel or fiberglass or a combination of the two.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Armorcast Products Company.
 - 2. Carson Industries, LLC.
 - 3. CDR System Corporation.
- C. Standard: Comply with SCTE 77. Comply with tier requirements in "Underground Enclosure Application" Article.
- D. Color: Gray.
- E. Configuration: Units shall be designed for flush burial and have integral closed bottom unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Cover: Weatherproof, secured by tamper-resistant locking devices and having structural load rating consistent with enclosure.
- G. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
- H. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, as indicated for each service.
- I. Direct-Buried Wiring Entrance Provisions: Knockouts equipped with insulated bushings or end-bell fittings, selected to suit box material, sized for wiring indicated, and arranged for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.

- J. Duct Entrance Provisions: Duct-terminating fittings shall mate with entering duct for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.
- K. Handholes 12 inches wide by 24 inches long (300 mm wide by 600 mm long) and larger shall have factory-installed inserts for cable racks and pulling-in irons.

2.6 HIGH-DENSITY PLASTIC BOXES

- A. Description: Injection molded of HDPE or copolymer-polypropylene. Cover shall be made of hot-dip galvanized-steel diamond plate.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Carson Industries, LLC.
 - 2. Nordic Fiberglass, INC.
 - 3. Pencell Plastics.
- C. Standard: Comply with SCTE 77. Comply with tier requirements in "Underground Enclosure Application" Article.
- D. Color: Gray.
- E. Configuration: Units shall be designed for flush burial and have integral closed bottom unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Cover: Weatherproof, secured by tamper-resistant locking devices and having structural load rating consistent with enclosure.
- G. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
- H. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, as indicated for each service.
- I. Direct-Buried Wiring Entrance Provisions: Knockouts equipped with insulated bushings or end-bell fittings, selected to suit box material, sized for wiring indicated, and arranged for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.
- J. Duct Entrance Provisions: Duct-terminating fittings shall mate with entering duct for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.
- K. Handholes 12 inches wide by 24 inches long (300 mm wide by 600 mm long) and larger shall have factory-installed inserts for cable racks and pulling-in irons.

2.7 PRECAST MANHOLES

- A. Description: One-piece units and units with interlocking mating sections, complete with accessories, hardware, and features.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Oldcastle Precast, Inc.
 2. Utility Concrete Products, LLC.
 3. Utility Vault Co.
 4. Wausau Tile Inc.
- C. Comply with ASTM C 858.
- D. Structural Design Loading: Comply with requirements in "Underground Enclosure Application" Article.
- E. Knockout Panels: Precast openings in walls, arranged to match dimensions and elevations of approaching duct, plus an additional 12 inches (300 mm) vertically and horizontally to accommodate alignment variations.
1. Center window location.
 2. Knockout panels shall be located no less than 6 inches (150 mm) from interior surfaces of walls, floors, or roofs of manholes, but close enough to corners to facilitate racking of cables on walls.
 3. Knockout panel opening shall have cast-in-place, welded-wire fabric reinforcement for field cutting and bending to tie in to concrete envelopes of duct.
 4. Knockout panel shall be framed with at least two additional No. 3 steel reinforcing bars in concrete around each opening.
 5. Knockout panels shall be 1-1/2 to 2 inches (38 to 50 mm) thick.
- F. Ground Rod Sleeve: Provide a 3-inch (75-mm) PVC sleeve in manhole floors 2 inches (50 mm) from the wall adjacent to, but not underneath, the duct entering the structure.
- G. Joint Sealant: Asphaltic-butyl material with adhesion, cohesion, flexibility, and durability properties necessary to withstand maximum hydrostatic pressures at the installation location with the ground-water level at grade.

2.8 CAST-IN-PLACE MANHOLES

- A. Description: Underground utility structures, constructed in place, complete with accessories, hardware, and features. Include concrete knockout panels for duct entrance and sleeve for ground rod.
- B. Materials: Comply with ASTM C 858 and with other section for "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- C. Structural Design Loading: As specified in "Underground Enclosure Application" Article.

2.9 UTILITY STRUCTURE ACCESSORIES

- A. Accessories for Utility Structures: Utility equipment and accessory items used for utility structure access and utility support, listed and labeled for intended use and application.
- B. Manhole Frames, Covers, and Chimney Components: Comply with structural design loading specified for manhole.

1. Frame and Cover: Weatherproof, gray cast iron complying with ASTM A 48/A 48M, Class 30B with milled cover-to-frame bearing surfaces; diameter, 26 inches (660 mm).
 - a. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
 - b. Special Covers: Recess in face of cover designed to accept finish material in paved areas.
 2. Cover Legend: Cast in. Selected to suit system.
 - a. Legend: "ELECTRIC-LV" for duct systems with power wires and cables for systems operating at 600 V and less.
 - b. Legend: "ELECTRIC-HV" for duct systems with medium-voltage cables.
 3. Manhole Chimney Components: Precast concrete rings with dimensions matched to those of roof opening.
 - a. Mortar for Chimney Ring and Frame and Cover Joints: Comply with ASTM C 270, Type M, except for quantities less than 2.0 cu. ft. (60 L) where packaged mix complying with ASTM C 387, Type M, may be used.
- C. Manhole Sump Frame and Grate: ASTM A 48/A 48M, Class 30B, gray cast iron.
- D. Pulling Eyes in Concrete Walls: Eyebolt with reinforcing-bar fastening insert, 2-inch- (50-mm-) diameter eye, and 1-by-4-inch (25-by-100-mm) bolt.
1. Working Load Embedded in 6-Inch (150-mm), 4000-psi (27.6-MPa) Concrete: 13,000-lbf (58-kN) minimum tension.
- E. Pulling Eyes in Nonconcrete Walls: Eyebolt with reinforced fastening, 1-1/4-inch- (31-mm-) diameter eye, rated 2500-lbf (11-kN) minimum tension.
- F. Pulling-in and Lifting Irons in Concrete Floors: 7/8-inch- (22-mm-) diameter, hot-dip galvanized, bent steel rod; stress relieved after forming; and fastened to reinforcing rod. Exposed triangular opening.
1. Ultimate Yield Strength: 40,000-lbf (180-kN) shear and 60,000-lbf (270-kN) tension.
- G. Bolting Inserts for Concrete Utility Structure Cable Racks and Other Attachments: Flared, threaded inserts of noncorrosive, chemical-resistant, nonconductive thermoplastic material; 1/2-inch (13-mm) ID by 2-3/4 inches (69 mm) deep, flared to 1-1/4 inches (31 mm) minimum at base.
1. Tested Ultimate Pullout Strength: 12,000 lbf (53 kN) minimum.
- H. Ground Rod Sleeve: 3-inch (75-mm) PVC sleeve in manhole floors 2 inches (50 mm) from the wall adjacent to, but not underneath, the ducts routed from the facility.
- I. Expansion Anchors for Installation after Concrete Is Cast: Zinc-plated, carbon-steel-wedge type with stainless-steel expander clip with 1/2-inch (13-mm) bolt, 5300-lbf (24-kN) rated pullout strength, and minimum 6800-lbf (30-kN) rated shear strength.

J. Cable Rack Assembly: Steel, hot-dip galvanized, except insulators.

1. Stanchions: T-section or channel with provisions to connect to other sections or channels to form a continuous unit; 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) in width by nominal 24 inches (600 mm) long; punched with 14 hook holes on 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) centers for cable-arm attachment.
2. Arms: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) wide, lengths ranging from 3 inches (75 mm) with 450-lb (204-kg) minimum capacity to 18 inches (450 mm) with 250-lb (114-kg) minimum capacity. Arms shall have slots along full length for cable ties and be arranged for secure mounting in horizontal position at any vertical location on stanchions.
3. Insulators: High-glaze, wet-process porcelain arranged for mounting on cable arms.

K. Duct-Sealing Compound: Non-hardening, safe for contact with human skin, not deleterious to cable insulation, and workable at temperatures as low as 35 deg F (2 deg C). Capable of withstanding temperature of 300 deg F (150 deg C) without slump and adhering to clean surfaces of plastic ducts, metallic conduit, conduit and duct coatings, concrete, masonry, lead, cable sheaths, cable jackets, insulation materials, and common metals.

L. Fixed Manhole Ladders: Arranged for attachment to wall of manhole. Ladder and mounting brackets and braces shall be fabricated from nonconductive, structural-grade, fiberglass-reinforced resin.

M. Cover Hooks: Heavy duty, designed for lifts 60 lbf (270 N) and greater. Two required.

2.10 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Test and inspect precast concrete utility structures according to ASTM C 1037.
- B. Nonconcrete Handhole and Pull-Box Prototype Test: Test prototypes of manholes and boxes for compliance with SCTE 77. Strength tests shall be for specified tier ratings of products supplied.
1. Tests of materials shall be performed by an independent testing agency.
 2. Testing machine pressure gages shall have current calibration certification, complying with ISO 9000 and ISO 10012, and traceable to NIST standards.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of duct, duct bank, manholes, handholes, and boxes with final arrangement of other utilities, site grading, and surface features as determined in the field. Notify Architect if there is a conflict between areas of excavation and existing structures or archaeological sites to remain.
- B. Coordinate elevations of duct and duct-bank entrances into manholes, handholes, and boxes with final locations and profiles of duct and duct banks, as determined by

coordination with other utilities, underground obstructions, and surface features. Revise locations and elevations as required to suit field conditions and to ensure that duct and duct bank will drain to manholes and handholes, and as approved by Architect.

- C. Clear and grub vegetation to be removed, and protect vegetation to remain according to other sections for "Site Clearing." Remove and stockpile topsoil for reapplication according to other section for "Site Clearing."

3.2 UNDERGROUND DUCT APPLICATION

- A. Duct for Electrical Cables More Than 600 V: Type EPC-80-PVC RNC, concrete-encased unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Duct for Electrical Feeders 600 V and Less: Type EPC-80-PVC RNC, concrete-encased unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Duct for Electrical Branch Circuits: Type EPC-80-PVC RNC, direct-buried unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Underground Ducts Crossing Driveways and Railroads: Type EPC-40 PVC RNC, encased in reinforced concrete.
- E. Stub-ups: Concrete-encased PVC-coated GRC.

3.3 UNDERGROUND ENCLOSURE APPLICATION

- A. Handholes and Boxes for 600 V and Less:
 - 1. Units in Roadways and Other Deliberate Traffic Paths: Precast concrete. AASHTO HB 17, H-20 structural load rating.
 - 2. Units in Driveway, Parking Lot, and Off-Roadway Locations, Subject to Occasional, Non-deliberate Loading by Heavy Vehicles: Precast concrete, AASHTO HB 17, H-20 structural load rating.
 - 3. Units in Sidewalk and Similar Applications with a Safety Factor for Non-deliberate Loading by Vehicles: Precast concrete, AASHTO HB 17, H-10 structural load rating.
 - 4. Units Subject to Light-Duty Pedestrian Traffic Only: High-density plastic, structurally tested according to SCTE 77 with 3000-lbf (13 345-N) vertical loading.
 - 5. Cover design load shall not exceed the design load of the handhole or box.
- B. Manholes: Precast or cast-in-place concrete.
 - 1. Units Located in Roadways and Other Deliberate Traffic Paths by Heavy or Medium Vehicles: H-20 structural load rating according to AASHTO HB 17.
 - 2. Units Not Located in Deliberate Traffic Paths by Heavy or Medium Vehicles: H-10 load rating according to AASHTO HB 17.

3.4 EARTHWORK

- A. Excavation and Backfill: Comply with other section for "Earth Moving," but do not use heavy-duty, hydraulic-operated, compaction equipment.
- B. Restoration: Replace area immediately after backfilling is completed.
- C. Restore surface features at areas disturbed by excavation, and re-establish original grades unless otherwise indicated. Replace removed sod immediately after backfilling is completed.
- D. Restore areas disturbed by trenching, storing of dirt, cable laying, and other work. Restore vegetation and include necessary topsoiling, fertilizing, liming, seeding, sodding, sprigging, and mulching. Comply with other sections for "Turf and Grasses" and "Plants."
- E. Cut and patch existing pavement in the path of underground duct, duct bank, and underground structures according to "Cutting and Patching" Article in other section for "Execution."

3.5 DUCT AND DUCT-BANK INSTALLATION

- A. Where indicated on Drawings, install duct, spacers, and accessories into the duct-bank configuration shown. Duct installation requirements in this Section also apply to duct bank.
- B. Install duct according to NEMA TCB 2.
- C. Slope: Pitch duct a minimum slope of 1:300 down toward manholes and handholes and away from buildings and equipment. Slope duct from a high point between two manholes, to drain in both directions.
- D. Curves and Bends: Use 5-degree angle couplings for small changes in direction. Use manufactured long sweep bends with a minimum radius of 48 inches (1200 mm), both horizontally and vertically, at other locations unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Duct shall have maximum of two 90 degree bends or the total of all bends shall be no more 180 degrees between pull points.
- E. Joints: Use solvent-cemented joints in duct and fittings and make watertight according to manufacturer's written instructions. Stagger couplings so those of adjacent duct do not lie in same plane.
- F. Installation Adjacent to High-Temperature Steam Lines: Where duct is installed parallel to underground steam lines, perform calculations showing the duct will not be subject to environmental temperatures above 40 deg C. Where environmental temperatures are calculated to rise above 40 deg C, and anywhere the duct crosses above an underground steam line, install insulation blankets listed for direct burial to isolate the duct bank from the steam line.

- G. Terminator Entrances to Manholes and Concrete and Polymer Concrete Handholes: Use manufactured, cast-in-place duct terminators, with entrances into structure spaced approximately 6 inches (150 mm) o.c. for 4-inch (100-mm) duct, and vary proportionately for other duct sizes.
1. Begin change from regular spacing to terminator spacing 10 feet (3 m) from the terminator, without reducing duct line slope and without forming a trap in the line.
 2. Expansion and Deflection Fittings: Install an expansion and deflection fitting in each duct in the area of disturbed earth adjacent to manhole or handhole. Install an expansion fitting near the center of all straight line duct with calculated expansion of more than 3/4 inch (19 mm).
- H. Building Wall Penetrations: Make a transition from underground duct to GRC at least 10 feet (3 m) outside the building wall, without reducing duct line slope away from the building and without forming a trap in the line. Use fittings manufactured for RNC-to-GRC transition. Install GRC penetrations of building walls as specified in other section for "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling."
- I. Sealing: Provide temporary closure at terminations of duct with pulled cables. Seal spare duct at terminations. Use sealing compound and plugs to withstand at least 15-psig (1.03-MPa) hydrostatic pressure.
- J. Pulling Cord: Install 200-lbf- (1000-N-) test nylon cord in empty ducts.
- K. Concrete-Encased Ducts and Duct Bank:
1. Excavate trench bottom to provide firm and uniform support for duct. Prepare trench bottoms as specified in other section for "Earth Moving" for pipes less than 6 inches (150 mm) in nominal diameter.
 2. Width: Excavate trench 12 inches (300 mm) wider than duct on each side.
 3. Width: Excavate trench 3 inches (75 mm) wider than duct on each side.
 4. Depth: Install so top of duct envelope is at least 24 inches (600 mm) below finished grade in areas not subject to deliberate traffic, and at least 30 inches (750 mm) below finished grade in deliberate traffic paths for vehicles unless otherwise indicated.
 5. Support duct on duct spacers coordinated with duct size, duct spacing, and outdoor temperature.
 6. Spacer Installation: Place spacers close enough to prevent sagging and deforming of duct, with not less than four spacers per 20 feet (6 m) of duct. Place spacers within 24 inches (600 mm) of duct ends. Stagger spacers approximately 6 inches (150 mm) between tiers. Secure spacers to earth and to duct to prevent floating during concreting. Tie entire assembly together using fabric straps; do not use tie wires or reinforcing steel that may form conductive or magnetic loops around ducts or duct groups.
 7. Elbows: Use manufactured GRC elbows for stub-ups, at building entrances, and at changes of direction in duct run.
 - a. Couple RNC duct to GRC with adapters designed for this purpose, and encase coupling with 3 inches (75 mm) of concrete.

- b. Stub-ups to Outdoor Equipment: Extend concrete-encased GRC horizontally a minimum of 60 inches (1500 mm) from edge of base. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.
 - 1) Stub-ups shall be minimum 4 inches (100 mm) above finished floor and minimum 3 inches (75 mm) from conduit side to edge of slab.
- c. Stub-ups to Indoor Equipment: Extend concrete-encased GRC horizontally a minimum of 60 inches (1500 mm) from edge of wall. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.
 - 1) Stub-ups shall be minimum 4 inches (100 mm) above finished floor and no less than 3 inches (75 mm) from conduit side to edge of slab.
- 8. Reinforcement: Reinforce concrete-encased duct where crossing disturbed earth and where indicated. Arrange reinforcing rods and ties without forming conductive or magnetic loops around ducts or duct groups.
- 9. Forms: Use walls of trench to form side walls of duct bank where soil is self-supporting and concrete envelope can be poured without soil inclusions; otherwise, use forms.
- 10. Concrete Cover: Install a minimum of 3 inches (75 mm) of concrete cover between edge of duct to exterior envelope wall, 2 inches (50 mm) between duct of like services, and 4 inches (100 mm) between power and communications ducts.
- 11. Concreting Sequence: Pour each run of envelope between manholes or other terminations in one continuous operation.
 - a. Start at one end and finish at the other, allowing for expansion and contraction of duct as its temperature changes during and after the pour. Use expansion fittings installed according to manufacturer's written instructions, or use other specific measures to prevent expansion-contraction damage.
 - b. If more than one pour is necessary, terminate each pour in a vertical plane and install 3/4-inch (15-mm) reinforcing-rod dowels extending a minimum of 18 inches (450 mm) into concrete on both sides of joint near corners of envelope.
- 12. Pouring Concrete: Comply with requirements in "Concrete Placement" Article in other section for "Cast-in-Place Concrete." Place concrete carefully during pours to prevent voids under and between duct and at exterior surface of envelope. Do not allow a heavy mass of concrete to fall directly onto ducts. Allow concrete to flow around duct and rise up in middle, uniformly filling all open spaces. Do not use power-driven agitating equipment unless specifically designed for duct-installation application.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF CONCRETE MANHOLES, HANDHOLES, AND BOXES

A. Cast-in-Place Manhole Installation:

- 1. Finish interior surfaces with a smooth-troweled finish.
- 2. Knockouts for Future Duct Connections: Form and pour concrete knockout panels 1-1/2 to 2 inches (38 to 50 mm) thick, arranged as indicated.
- 3. Comply with requirements in other section for "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for cast-in-place concrete, formwork, and reinforcement.

B. Precast Concrete Handhole and Manhole Installation:

1. Comply with ASTM C 891 unless otherwise indicated.
2. Install units level and plumb and with orientation and depth coordinated with connecting duct, to minimize bends and deflections required for proper entrances.
3. Unless otherwise indicated, support units on a level bed of crushed stone or gravel, graded from 1-inch (25-mm) sieve to No. 4 (4.75-mm) sieve and compacted to same density as adjacent undisturbed earth.

C. Elevations:

1. Manhole Roof: Install with rooftop at least 15 inches (375 mm) below finished grade.
2. Manhole Frame: In paved areas and trafficways, set frames flush with finished grade. Set other manhole frames 1 inch (25 mm) above finished grade.
3. Install handholes with bottom below frost line, 36 inches below grade.
4. Handhole Covers: In paved areas and trafficways, set surface flush with finished grade. Set covers of other handholes 1 inch (25 mm) above finished grade.
5. Where indicated, cast handhole cover frame integrally with handhole structure.

D. Drainage: Install drains in bottom of manholes where indicated. Coordinate with drainage provisions indicated.

E. Manhole Access: Circular opening in manhole roof; sized to match cover size.

1. Manholes with Fixed Ladders: Offset access opening from manhole centerlines to align with ladder.
2. Install chimney, constructed of precast concrete collars and rings, to support cast-iron frame to connect cover with manhole roof opening. Provide moisture-tight masonry joints and waterproof grouting for frame to chimney.

F. Waterproofing: Apply waterproofing to exterior surfaces of manholes and handholes after concrete has cured at least three days. Waterproofing materials and installation are specified in other section for "Elastomeric Sheet Waterproofing." After duct has been connected and grouted, and before backfilling, waterproof joints and connections, and touch up abrasions and scars. Waterproof exterior of manhole chimneys after mortar has cured at least three days.

G. Damp-proofing: Apply damp-proofing to exterior surfaces of manholes and handholes after concrete has cured at least three days. Damp-proofing materials and installation are specified in other section for "Bituminous Damp-proofing." After ducts are connected and grouted, and before backfilling, damp-proof joints and connections, and touch up abrasions and scars. Damp-proof exterior of manhole chimneys after mortar has cured at least three days.

H. Hardware: Install removable hardware, including pulling eyes, cable stanchions, and cable arms, and insulators, as required for installation and support of cables and conductors and as indicated.

- I. Fixed Manhole Ladders: Arrange to provide for safe entry with maximum clearance from cables and other items in manholes.
- J. Field-Installed Bolting Anchors in Manholes and Concrete Handholes: Do not drill deeper than 3-7/8 inches (97 mm) for manholes and 2 inches (50 mm) for handholes, for anchor bolts installed in the field. Use a minimum of two anchors for each cable stanchion.

3.7 INSTALLATION OF HANDHOLES AND BOXES OTHER THAN PRECAST CONCRETE

- A. Install handholes and boxes level and plumb and with orientation and depth coordinated with connecting duct, to minimize bends and deflections required for proper entrances. Use box extension if required to match depths of duct, and seal joint between box and extension as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Unless otherwise indicated, support units on a level bed of crushed stone or gravel, graded from 1/2-inch (12.5-mm) sieve to No. 4 (4.75-mm) sieve and compacted to same density as adjacent undisturbed earth.
- C. Elevation: In paved areas and trafficways, set cover flush with finished grade. Set covers of other handholes 1 inch (25 mm) above finished grade.
- D. Install handholes and boxes with bottom below frost line, 36 inches below grade.
- E. Install removable hardware, including pulling eyes, cable stanchions, cable arms, and insulators, as required for installation and support of cables and conductors and as indicated. Select arm lengths to be long enough to provide spare space for future cables, but short enough to preserve adequate working clearances in enclosure.
- F. Field cut openings for duct according to enclosure manufacturer's written instructions. Cut wall of enclosure with a tool designed for material to be cut. Size holes for terminating fittings to be used, and seal around penetrations after fittings are installed.
- G. For enclosures installed in asphalt paving and subject to occasional, non-deliberate, heavy-vehicle loading, form and pour a concrete ring encircling, and in contact with, enclosure and with top surface screeded to top of box cover frame. Bottom of ring shall rest on compacted earth.
 - 1. Concrete: 3000 psi (20 kPa), 28-day strength, complying with other section for "Cast-in-Place Concrete," with a troweled finish.
 - 2. Dimensions: 10 inches wide by 12 inches deep (250 mm wide by 300 mm deep) .

3.8 GROUNDING

- A. Ground underground ducts and utility structures according to requirements in other section for "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Demonstrate capability and compliance with requirements on completion of installation of underground duct, duct bank, and utility structures.
2. Pull solid aluminum or wood test mandrel through duct to prove joint integrity and adequate bend radii, and test for out-of-round duct. Provide a minimum 12-inch- (300-mm-) long mandrel equal to duct size minus 1/4 inch (6 mm). If obstructions are indicated, remove obstructions and retest.
3. Test manhole and handhole grounding to ensure electrical continuity of grounding and bonding connections. Measure and report ground resistance as specified in other section for "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

B. Correct deficiencies and retest as specified above to demonstrate compliance.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.10 CLEANING

A. Pull leather-washer-type duct cleaner, with graduated washer sizes, through full length of duct until duct cleaner indicates that duct is clear of dirt and debris. Follow with rubber duct swab for final cleaning and to assist in spreading lubricant throughout ducts.

B. Clean internal surfaces of manholes, including sump.

1. Sweep floor, removing dirt and debris.
2. Remove foreign material.

END OF SECTION 26 0543

SECTION 26 0544 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR ELECTRICAL RACEWAYS AND CABLING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Sleeves for raceway and cable penetration of non-fire-rated construction walls and floors.
 - 2. Sleeve-seal systems.
 - 3. Sleeve-seal fittings.
 - 4. Grout.
 - 5. Silicone sealants.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Refer to other section for "Penetration Firestopping" for penetration firestopping installed in fire-resistance-rated walls, horizontal assemblies, and smoke barriers, with and without penetrating items.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SLEEVES

- A. Wall Sleeves:
 - 1. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Non-Fire-Rated Gypsum Board Assemblies: Galvanized-steel sheet; 0.0239-inch (0.6-mm) minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint, with tabs for screw-fastening the sleeve to the board.
- C. Sleeves for Rectangular Openings:
 - 1. Material: Galvanized sheet steel.
 - 2. Minimum Metal Thickness:

- a. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches (1270 mm) and with no side larger than 16 inches (400 mm), thickness shall be 0.052 inch (1.3 mm).
- b. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter 50 inches (1270 mm) or more and one or more sides larger than 16 inches (400 mm), thickness shall be 0.138 inch (3.5 mm).

2.2 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
 - b. CALPICO, Inc.
 - c. Metraflex Company (The).
 - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
 2. Sealing Elements: EPDM rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
 3. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel.
 4. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating, of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS

- A. Description: Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly made for embedding in concrete slab or wall. Unit shall have plastic or rubber waterstop collar with center opening to match piping OD.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. HOLDRITE.

2.4 GROUT

- A. Description: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior sealing openings in non-fire-rated walls or floors.
- B. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

2.5 SILICONE SEALANTS

- A. Silicone Sealants: Single-component, silicone-based, neutral-curing elastomeric sealants of grade indicated below.

1. Grade: Pourable (self-leveling) formulation for openings in floors and other horizontal surfaces that are not fire rated.
- B. Silicone Foams: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, nonshrinking foam.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR NON-FIRE-RATED ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Comply with NEMA VE 2 for cable tray and cable penetrations.
- C. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Above-Grade Non-Fire-Rated Concrete and Masonry-Unit Floors and Walls:
 1. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors:
 - a. Seal annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in other section for "Joint Sealants."
 - b. Seal space outside of sleeves with mortar or grout. Pack sealing material solidly between sleeve and wall so no voids remain. Tool exposed surfaces smooth; protect material while curing.
 2. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
 3. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and raceway or cable unless sleeve seal is to be installed or unless seismic criteria require different clearance.
 4. Install sleeves for wall penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of walls. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls. Deburr after cutting.
 5. Install sleeves for floor penetrations. Extend sleeves installed in floors 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level. Install sleeves during erection of floors.
- D. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Non-Fire-Rated Gypsum Board Assemblies:
 1. Use circular metal sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
 2. Seal space outside of sleeves with approved joint compound for gypsum board assemblies.
- E. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual raceways and cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.
- F. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using cast-iron pipe sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

- G. Underground, Exterior-Wall and Floor Penetrations: Install cast-iron pipe sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between raceway or cable and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.

3.2 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at raceway entries into building.
- B. Install type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for raceway or cable material and size. Position raceway or cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between raceway or cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal fittings in new walls and slabs as they are constructed.
- B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.
- C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.
- D. Using grout, seal the space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

END OF SECTION 26 0544

SECTION 26 0548.16 - SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Restraint channel bracings.
2. Restraint cables.
3. Seismic-restraint accessories.
4. Mechanical anchor bolts.
5. Adhesive anchor bolts.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Refer to other section for "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for commonly used electrical supports and installation requirements.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Illustrate and indicate style, material, strength, fastening provision, and finish for each type and size of seismic-restraint component used.
 - a. Tabulate types and sizes of seismic restraints, complete with report numbers and rated strength in tension and shear as evaluated by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - b. Annotate to indicate application of each product submitted and compliance with requirements.

- B. Delegated-Design Submittal: For each seismic-restraint device.

1. Include design calculations and details for selecting seismic restraints complying with performance requirements, design criteria, and analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
2. Design Calculations: Calculate static and dynamic loading caused by equipment weight, operation, and seismic and wind forces required to select seismic and wind restraints and for designing vibration isolation bases.
 - a. Coordinate design calculations with wind load calculations required for equipment mounted outdoors. Comply with requirements in other Sections for equipment mounted outdoors.

3. Seismic- and Wind-Restraint Details:
 - a. Design Analysis: To support selection and arrangement of seismic and wind restraints. Include calculations of combined tensile and shear loads.
 - b. Details: Indicate fabrication and arrangement. Detail attachments of restraints to the restrained items and to the structure. Show attachment locations, methods, and spacing. Identify components, list their strengths, and indicate directions and values of forces transmitted to the structure during seismic events. Indicate association with vibration isolation devices.
 - c. Coordinate seismic-restraint and vibration isolation details with wind-restraint details required for equipment mounted outdoors. Comply with requirements in other Sections for equipment mounted outdoors.
 - d. Preapproval and Evaluation Documentation: By an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, showing maximum ratings of restraint items and the basis for approval (tests or calculations).

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Show coordination of seismic bracing for electrical components with other systems and equipment in the vicinity, including other supports and seismic restraints. Electrical components include:
 1. Control and monitoring panels.
 2. Generators.
 3. Luminaires.
 4. Panelboards.
 5. Substations.
 6. Switchboards.
 7. Switchgear.
 8. Transformers.
 9. Unit substations.
- B. Qualification Data: For professional engineer and testing agency.
- C. Welding certificates.
- D. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated and that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Comply with seismic-restraint requirements in the IBC unless requirements in this Section are more stringent.
- C. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

- D. Seismic-restraint devices shall have horizontal and vertical load testing and analysis. They shall bear anchorage preapproval from OSHPD in addition to preapproval, showing maximum seismic-restraint ratings, by ICC-ES or another agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Ratings based on independent testing are preferred to ratings based on calculations. If preapproved ratings are not available, submittals based on independent testing are preferred. Calculations (including combining shear and tensile loads) that support seismic-restraint designs must be signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.
- E. Comply with NFPA 70.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Wind-Restraint Loading:
 - 1. Basic Wind Speed: Refer to structural engineer or ASCE/SEI 7.
 - 2. Building Classification Category: Refer to structural engineer or ASCE/SEI 7.
 - 3. Minimum 10 lb/sq. ft. (48.8 kg/sq. m) multiplied by maximum area of component projected on vertical plane normal to wind direction and 45 degrees either side of normal.
- B. Seismic-Restraint Loading:
 - 1. Site Class as Defined in the IBC.
 - 2. Assigned Seismic Use Group or Building Category as Defined in the IBC.
 - a. Component Importance Factor: 1.5.
 - b. Component Response Modification Factor: 5.0.
 - c. Component Amplification Factor: 2.5 .
 - 3. Design Spectral Response Acceleration at Short Periods (0.2 Second).
 - 4. Design Spectral Response Acceleration at 1.0-Second Period.

2.2 RESTRAINT CHANNEL BRACINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. B-line, an Eaton business.
 - 2. Hilti, Inc.
 - 3. Mason Industries, Inc.
 - 4. Unistrut; Part of Atkore International.
- B. Description: MFMA-4, shop- or field-fabricated bracing assembly made of slotted steel channels with accessories for attachment to braced component at one end and to building structure at the other end, with other matching components, and with corrosion-resistant coating; rated in tension, compression, and torsion forces.

2.3 RESTRAINT CABLES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Gripple Inc.
 - 2. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
 - 3. Vibration & Seismic Technologies, LLC.
 - 4. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
- B. Restraint Cables: ASTM A 603 galvanized-steel cables. End connections made of steel assemblies with thimbles, brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for restraining cable service; with a minimum of two clamping bolts for cable engagement.

2.4 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT ACCESSORIES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. B-line, an Eaton business.
 - 2. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
 - 3. Mason Industries, Inc.
 - 4. TOLCO; a brand of NIBCO INC.
- B. Hanger-Rod Stiffener: Steel tube or steel slotted-support-system sleeve with internally bolted connections to hanger rod.
- C. Hinged and Swivel Brace Attachments: Multifunctional steel connectors for attaching hangers to rigid channel bracings.
- D. Bushings for Floor-Mounted Equipment Anchor Bolts: Neoprene bushings designed for rigid equipment mountings and matched to type and size of anchor bolts and studs.
- E. Bushing Assemblies for Wall-Mounted Equipment Anchorage: Assemblies of neoprene elements and steel sleeves designed for rigid equipment mountings and matched to type and size of attachment devices used.
- F. Resilient Isolation Washers and Bushings: One-piece, molded, oil- and water-resistant neoprene, with a flat washer face.

2.5 MECHANICAL ANCHOR BOLTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. B-line, an Eaton business.
 - 2. Hilti, Inc.
 - 3. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
 - 4. Mason Industries, Inc.

- B. Mechanical Anchor Bolts: Drilled-in and stud-wedge or female-wedge type in zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488.

2.6 ADHESIVE ANCHOR BOLTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Hilti, Inc.
 - 2. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
 - 3. Mason Industries, Inc.
- B. Adhesive Anchor Bolts: Drilled-in and capsule anchor system containing PVC or urethane methacrylate-based resin and accelerator, or injected polymer or hybrid mortar adhesive. Provide anchor bolts and hardware with zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and equipment to receive vibration isolation and seismic-control devices for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for reinforcement and cast-in-place anchors to verify actual locations before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 APPLICATIONS

- A. Multiple Raceways or Cables: Secure raceways and cables to trapeze member with clamps approved for application by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Hanger-Rod Stiffeners: Install hanger-rod stiffeners where indicated or scheduled on Drawings to receive them and where required to prevent buckling of hanger rods caused by seismic forces.
- C. Strength of Support and Seismic-Restraint Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static and seismic loads within specified loading limits.

3.3 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICE INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate the location of embedded connection hardware with supported equipment attachment and mounting points and with requirements for concrete reinforcement and formwork specified in other sections for "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- B. Equipment and Hanger Restraints:
 - 1. Install resilient, bolt-isolation washers on equipment anchor bolts where clearance between anchor and adjacent surface exceeds 0.125 inch (3.2 mm).
 - 2. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction providing required submittals for component.
- C. Install cables so they do not bend across edges of adjacent equipment or building structure.
- D. Install bushing assemblies for mounting bolts for wall-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media where equipment or equipment-mounting channels are attached to wall.
- E. Attachment to Structure: If specific attachment is not indicated, anchor bracing to structure at flanges of beams, at upper truss chords of bar joists, or at concrete members.
- F. Drilled-in Anchors:
 - 1. Identify position of reinforcing steel and other embedded items prior to drilling holes for anchors. Do not damage existing reinforcing or embedded items during coring or drilling. Notify the structural engineer if reinforcing steel or other embedded items are encountered during drilling. Locate and avoid prestressed tendons, electrical and telecommunications conduit, and gas lines.
 - 2. Do not drill holes in concrete or masonry until concrete, mortar, or grout has achieved full design strength.
 - 3. Wedge Anchors: Protect threads from damage during anchor installation. Heavy-duty sleeve anchors shall be installed with sleeve fully engaged in the structural element to which anchor is to be fastened.
 - 4. Adhesive Anchors: Clean holes to remove loose material and drilling dust prior to installation of adhesive. Place adhesive in holes proceeding from the bottom of the hole and progressing toward the surface in such a manner as to avoid introduction of air pockets in the adhesive.
 - 5. Set anchors to manufacturer's recommended torque using a torque wrench.
 - 6. Install zinc-coated steel anchors for interior and stainless-steel anchors for exterior applications.

3.4 ACCOMMODATION OF DIFFERENTIAL SEISMIC MOTION

- A. Install flexible connections in runs of raceways, cables, wireways, cable trays, and busways where they cross seismic joints, where adjacent sections or branches are supported by different structural elements, and where connection is terminated to

equipment that is anchored to a different structural element from the one supporting them as they approach equipment.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 - 1. Provide evidence of recent calibration of test equipment by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 2. Schedule test with Owner, through Architect, before connecting anchorage device to restrained component (unless post connection testing has been approved), and with at least seven days' advance notice.
 - 3. Obtain Architect's approval before transmitting test loads to structure. Provide temporary load-spreading members.
 - 4. Test at least four of each type and size of installed anchors and fasteners selected by Architect.
 - 5. Test to 90 percent of rated proof load of device.
- C. Seismic controls will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust restraints to permit free movement of equipment within normal mode of operation.

END OF SECTION 26 0548.16

SECTION 26 0553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Color and legend requirements for raceways, conductors, and warning labels and signs.
 - 2. Labels.
 - 3. Tags.
 - 4. Signs.
 - 5. Cable ties.
 - 6. Paint for identification.
 - 7. Fasteners for labels and signs.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for electrical identification products.
- B. Identification Schedule: For each piece of electrical equipment and electrical system components to be an index of nomenclature for electrical equipment and system components used in identification signs and labels. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For arc-flash hazard study.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with ASME A13.1 and IEEE C2.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.
- C. Comply with 29 CFR 1910.144 and 29 CFR 1910.145.
- D. Comply with ANSI Z535.4 for safety signs and labels.

- E. Comply with NFPA 70E requirements for arc-flash warning labels.
- F. Adhesive-attached labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers, shall comply with UL 969.
- G. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes.
 - 1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.

2.2 COLOR AND LEGEND REQUIREMENTS

- A. Raceways and Cables Carrying Circuits at 600 V or Less:
 - 1. Black letters on an orange field.
 - 2. Legend: Indicate voltage and system or service type.
- B. Color-Coding for Phase- and Voltage-Level Identification, 600 V or Less: Use colors listed below for ungrounded feeder and branch-circuit conductors.
 - 1. Color shall be factory applied.
 - 2. Colors for 208/120-V Circuits:
 - a. Phase A: Black.
 - b. Phase B: Red.
 - c. Phase C: Blue.
 - 3. Colors for 480/277-V Circuits:
 - a. Phase A: Brown.
 - b. Phase B: Orange.
 - c. Phase C: Yellow.
 - 4. Color for Neutral: White.
 - 5. Color for Equipment Grounds: Green.
 - 6. Colors for Isolated Grounds: Green with white stripe.
- C. Raceways and Cables Carrying Circuits at More Than 600 V:
 - 1. Black letters on an orange field.
 - 2. Legend: "DANGER - CONCEALED HIGH VOLTAGE WIRING."
- D. Warning Label Colors:
 - 1. Identify system voltage with black letters on an orange background.
- E. Warning labels and signs shall include, but are not limited to, the following legends:
 - 1. Multiple Power Source Warning: "DANGER - ELECTRICAL SHOCK HAZARD - EQUIPMENT HAS MULTIPLE POWER SOURCES."

2. Workspace Clearance Warning: "WARNING - OSHA REGULATION - AREA IN FRONT OF ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT MUST BE KEPT CLEAR FOR 36 INCHES (915 MM)."

F. Equipment Identification Labels:

1. Black letters on a white field.

2.3 LABELS

- A. Vinyl Wraparound Labels: Preprinted, flexible labels laminated with a clear, weather- and chemical-resistant coating and matching wraparound clear adhesive tape for securing label ends.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Brady Corporation.
 - b. LEM Products Inc.
 - c. Panduit Corp.
- B. Snap-around Labels: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, preprinted, color-coded acrylic sleeves, with diameters sized to suit diameters and that stay in place by gripping action.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Brady Corporation.
 - b. Panduit Corp.
 - c. Seton Identification Products.
- C. Self-Adhesive Wraparound Labels: Preprinted, 3-mil- (0.08-mm-) thick, vinyl flexible label with acrylic pressure-sensitive adhesive.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Brady Corporation.
 - b. LEM Products Inc.
 - c. Panduit Corp.
 2. Self-Lamination: Clear; UV-, weather- and chemical-resistant; self-laminating, protective shield over the legend. Labels sized such that the clear shield overlaps the entire printed legend.
 3. Marker for Labels: Machine-printed, permanent, waterproof, black ink recommended by printer manufacturer.
- D. Self-Adhesive Labels: Vinyl, thermal, transfer-printed, 3-mil- (0.08-mm-) thick, multicolor, weather- and UV-resistant, pressure-sensitive adhesive labels, configured for intended use and location.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Brady Corporation.
 - b. LEM Products Inc.
 - c. Panduit Corp.
2. Minimum Nominal Size:
 - a. 1-1/2 by 6 inches (37 by 150 mm) for raceway and conductors.
 - b. 3-1/2 by 5 inches (76 by 127 mm) for equipment.
 - c. As required by authorities having jurisdiction.

2.4 TAGS

A. Write-on Tags:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Brady Corporation.
 - b. LEM Products, Inc.
 - c. Panduit Corporation.
2. Polyester Tags: 0.010 inch (0.25 mm) thick, with corrosion-resistant grommet and cable tie for attachment.
3. Marker for Tags: Machine-printed, permanent, waterproof, black ink marker recommended by printer manufacturer.

2.5 SIGNS

A. Baked-Enamel Signs:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Brady Corporation.
 - b. LEM Products, Inc.
 - c. Panduit Corporation.
2. Preprinted aluminum signs, punched or drilled for fasteners, with colors, legend, and size required for application.
3. 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) grommets in corners for mounting.
4. Nominal Size: 7 by 10 inches (180 by 250 mm).

2.6 CABLE TIES

- ### A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Brady Corporation.
 2. LEM Products, Inc.
 3. Panduit Corporation.

- B. General-Purpose Cable Ties: Fungus inert, self-extinguishing, one piece, self-locking, and Type 6/6 nylon.
 - 1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch (5 mm).
 - 2. Tensile Strength at 73 Deg F (23 Deg C) according to ASTM D 638: 12,000 psi (82.7 MPa).
 - 3. Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 85 deg C).
 - 4. Color: Black, except where used for color-coding.
- C. UV-Stabilized Cable Ties: Fungus inert, designed for continuous exposure to exterior sunlight, self-extinguishing, one piece, self-locking, and Type 6/6 nylon.
 - 1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch (5 mm).
 - 2. Tensile Strength at 73 Deg F (23 Deg C) according to ASTM D 638: 12,000 psi (82.7 MPa).
 - 3. Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 85 deg C).
 - 4. Color: Black.
- D. Plenum-Rated Cable Ties: Self-extinguishing, UV stabilized, one piece, and self-locking.
 - 1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch (5 mm).
 - 2. Tensile Strength at 73 Deg F (23 Deg C) according to ASTM D 638: 7000 psi (48.2 MPa).
 - 3. UL 94 Flame Rating: 94V-0.
 - 4. Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 284 deg F (Minus 46 to plus 140 deg C).
 - 5. Color: Black.

2.7 MISCELLANEOUS IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

- A. Paint: Comply with requirements in painting Sections for paint materials and application requirements. Retain paint system applicable for surface material and location (exterior or interior).
- B. Fasteners for Labels and Signs: Self-tapping, stainless-steel screws or stainless-steel machine screws with nuts and flat and lock washers.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Self-Adhesive Identification Products: Before applying electrical identification products, clean substrates of substances that could impair bond, using materials and methods recommended by manufacturer of identification product.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Verify and coordinate identification names, abbreviations, colors, and other features with requirements in other Sections requiring identification applications, Drawings,

Shop Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and operation and maintenance manual. Use consistent designations throughout Project.

- B. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.
- C. Verify identity of each item before installing identification products.
- D. Coordinate identification with Project Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and operation and maintenance manual.
- E. Apply identification devices to surfaces that require finish after completing finish work.
- F. Install signs with approved legend to facilitate proper identification, operation, and maintenance of electrical systems and connected items.
- G. System Identification for Raceways and Cables under 600 V: Identification shall completely encircle cable or conduit. Place identification of two-color markings in contact, side by side.
 - 1. Secure tight to surface of conductor, cable, or raceway.
- H. System Identification for Raceways and Cables over 600 V: Identification shall completely encircle cable or conduit. Place adjacent identification of two-color markings in contact, side by side.
 - 1. Secure tight to surface of conductor, cable, or raceway.
- I. Auxiliary Electrical Systems Conductor Identification: Identify field-installed alarm, control, and signal connections.
- J. Emergency Operating Instruction Signs: Install instruction signs with white legend on a red background with minimum 3/8-inch- (10-mm-) high letters for emergency instructions at equipment used for power transfer.
- K. Elevated Components: Increase sizes of labels, signs, and letters to those appropriate for viewing from the floor.
- L. Accessible Fittings for Raceways: Identify the covers of each junction and pull box of the following systems with the wiring system legend and system voltage. System legends shall be as follows:
 - 1. "EMERGENCY POWER."
 - 2. "POWER."
 - 3. "UPS."
- M. Vinyl Wraparound Labels:
 - 1. Secure tight to surface of raceway or cable at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
 - 2. Attach labels that are not self-adhesive type with clear vinyl tape, with adhesive appropriate to the location and substrate.

- N. Snap-around Labels: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- O. Self-Adhesive Wraparound Labels: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- P. Self-Adhesive Labels:
 - 1. On each item, install unique designation label that is consistent with wiring diagrams, schedules, and operation and maintenance manual.
 - 2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) high letters on 1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-) high label; where two lines of text are required, use labels 2 inches (50 mm) high.
- Q. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Tape: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- R. Floor Marking Tape: Apply stripes to finished surfaces following manufacturer's written instructions.
- S. Underground Line Warning Tape:
 - 1. During backfilling of trenches, install continuous underground-line warning tape directly above cable or raceway at 6 to 8 inches (150 to 200 mm) below finished grade. Use multiple tapes where width of multiple lines installed in a common trench or concrete envelope exceeds 16 inches (400 mm) overall.
 - 2. Install underground-line warning tape for direct-buried cables and cables in raceways.
- T. Write-on Tags:
 - 1. Place in a location with high visibility and accessibility.
 - 2. Secure using general-purpose cable ties.
- U. Baked-Enamel Signs:
 - 1. Attach signs that are not self-adhesive type with mechanical fasteners appropriate to the location and substrate.
 - 2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) high letters on minimum 1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-) high sign; where two lines of text are required, use signs minimum 2 inches (50 mm) high.
- V. Cable Ties: General purpose, for attaching tags, except as listed below:
 - 1. Outdoors: UV-stabilized nylon.
 - 2. In Spaces Handling Environmental Air: Plenum rated.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION SCHEDULE

- A. Install identification materials and devices at locations for most convenient viewing without interference with operation and maintenance of equipment. Install access doors or panels to provide view of identifying devices.
- B. Identify conductors, cables, and terminals in enclosures and at junctions, terminals, pull points, and locations of high visibility. Identify by system and circuit designation.
- C. Concealed Raceways, Duct Banks, More Than 600 V, within Buildings: Tape and stencil. Stencil legend "DANGER - CONCEALED HIGH-VOLTAGE WIRING" with 3-inch- (75-mm-) high, black letters on 20-inch (500-mm) centers.
 - 1. Locate identification at changes in direction, at penetrations of walls and floors, and at 10-foot (3-m) maximum intervals.
- D. Accessible Raceways and Metal-Clad Cables, 600 V or Less, for Service, Feeder, and Branch Circuits, More Than 30 A and 120 V to Ground: Identify with self-adhesive raceway labels.
 - 1. Locate identification at changes in direction, at penetrations of walls and floors, at 50-foot (15-m) maximum intervals in straight runs, and at 25-foot (7.6-m) maximum intervals in congested areas.
- E. Accessible Fittings for Raceways and Cables within Buildings: Identify the covers of each junction and pull box of the following systems with self-adhesive labels containing the wiring system legend and system voltage. System legends shall be as follows:
 - 1. "EMERGENCY POWER."
 - 2. "POWER."
 - 3. "UPS."
- F. Power-Circuit Conductor Identification, 600 V or Less: For conductors in vaults, pull and junction boxes, manholes, and handholes, use vinyl wraparound labels to identify the phase.
 - 1. Locate identification at changes in direction, at penetrations of walls and floors, at 50-foot (15-m) maximum intervals in straight runs, and at 25-foot (7.6-m) maximum intervals in congested areas.
- G. Control-Circuit Conductor Identification: For conductors and cables in pull and junction boxes, manholes, and handholes, use write-on tags with the conductor or cable designation, origin, and destination.
- H. Control-Circuit Conductor Termination Identification: For identification at terminations, provide heat-shrink preprinted tubes with the conductor designation.
- I. Conductors to Be Extended in the Future: Attach write-on tags to conductors and list source.
- J. Auxiliary Electrical Systems Conductor Identification: Marker tape that is uniform and consistent with system used by manufacturer for factory-installed connections.

1. Identify conductors, cables, and terminals in enclosures and at junctions, terminals, and pull points. Identify by system and circuit designation.
- K. Locations of Underground Lines: Underground-line warning tape for power, lighting, communication, and control wiring and optical-fiber cable.
- L. Concealed Raceways and Duct Banks, More Than 600 V, within Buildings: Apply floor marking tape to the following finished surfaces:
 1. Floor surface directly above conduits running beneath and within 12 inches (300 mm) of a floor that is in contact with earth or is framed above unexcavated space.
 2. Wall surfaces directly external to raceways concealed within wall.
 3. Accessible surfaces of concrete envelope around raceways in vertical shafts, exposed in the building, or concealed above suspended ceilings.
- M. Workspace Indication: Apply floor marking tape to finished surfaces. Show working clearances in the direction of access to live parts. Workspace shall comply with NFPA 70 and 29 CFR 1926.403 unless otherwise indicated. Do not install at flush-mounted panelboards and similar equipment in finished spaces.
- N. Instructional Signs: Self-adhesive labels, including the color code for grounded and ungrounded conductors.
- O. Warning Labels for Indoor Cabinets, Boxes, and Enclosures for Power and Lighting: Baked-enamel warning signs.
 1. Apply to exterior of door, cover, or other access.
 2. For equipment with multiple power or control sources, apply to door or cover of equipment, including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Power-transfer switches.
 - b. Controls with external control power connections.
- P. Arc Flash Warning Labeling: Self-adhesive labels.
- Q. Operating Instruction Signs: Baked-enamel warning signs.
- R. Emergency Operating Instruction Signs: Baked-enamel warning signs with white legend on a red background with minimum 3/8-inch- (10-mm-) high letters for emergency instructions at equipment used for power transfer.
- S. Equipment Identification Labels:
 1. Indoor Equipment: Self-adhesive label.
 2. Outdoor Equipment: Laminated acrylic or melamine sign.
 3. Equipment to Be Labeled:
 - a. Panelboards: Typewritten directory of circuits in the location provided by panelboard manufacturer. Panelboard identification shall be in the form of a engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine label.
 - b. Enclosures and electrical cabinets.

- c. Access doors and panels for concealed electrical items.
- d. Switchboards.
- e. Transformers: Label that includes tag designation indicated on Drawings for the transformer, feeder, and panelboards or equipment supplied by the secondary.
- f. Substations.
- g. Emergency system boxes and enclosures.
- h. Enclosed switches.
- i. Enclosed circuit breakers.
- j. Enclosed controllers.
- k. Variable-speed controllers.
- l. Push-button stations.
- m. Power-transfer equipment.
- n. Contactors.
- o. Remote-controlled switches, dimmer modules, and control devices.
- p. Power-generating units.
- q. Monitoring and control equipment.

END OF SECTION 26 0553

SECTION 26 0573.13 - SHORT-CIRCUIT STUDIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes a computer-based, fault-current study to determine the minimum interrupting capacity of circuit protective devices.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Field Adjusting Agency: An independent electrical testing agency with full-time employees and the capability to adjust devices and conduct testing indicated and that is a member company of NETA.
- B. One-Line Diagram: A diagram that shows, by means of single lines and graphic symbols, the course of an electric circuit or system of circuits and the component devices or parts used therein.
- C. Power System Analysis Software Developer: An entity that commercially develops, maintains, and distributes computer software used for power system studies.
- D. Power Systems Analysis Specialist: Professional engineer in charge of performing the study and documenting recommendations, licensed in the state where Project is located.
- E. Protective Device: A device that senses when an abnormal current flow exists and then removes the affected portion of the circuit from the system.
- F. SCCR: Short-circuit current rating.
- G. Service: The conductors and equipment for delivering electric energy from the serving utility to the wiring system of the premises served.
- H. Single-Line Diagram: See "One-Line Diagram."

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
 - 1. For computer software program to be used for studies.
 - 2. Submit the following after the approval of system protective devices submittals. Submittals shall be in digital form.

- a. Short-circuit study input data, including completed computer program input data sheets.
- b. Short-circuit study and equipment evaluation report; signed, dated, and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.
 - 1) Submit study report for action prior to receiving final approval of distribution equipment submittals. If formal completion of studies will cause delay in equipment manufacturing, obtain approval from Architect for preliminary submittal of sufficient study data to ensure that selection of devices and associated characteristics is satisfactory.
 - 2) Revised one-line diagram, reflecting field investigation results and results of short-circuit study.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data:

1. For Power Systems Analysis Software Developer.
2. For Power System Analysis Specialist.
3. For Field Adjusting Agency.

B. Product Certificates: For short-circuit study software, certifying compliance with IEEE 399.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data:

1. For overcurrent protective devices to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
2. The following are from the Short-Circuit Study Report:
 - a. Final one-line diagram.
 - b. Final Short-Circuit Study Report.
 - c. Short-circuit study data files.
 - d. Power system data.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Study shall be performed using commercially developed and distributed software designed specifically for power system analysis.
- B. Software algorithms shall comply with requirements of standards and guides specified in this Section.
- C. Manual calculations are unacceptable.
 1. Power System Analysis Software Qualifications: Computer program shall be designed to perform short-circuit studies or have a function, component, or add-on module designed to perform short-circuit studies.

2. Computer program shall be developed under the charge of a licensed professional engineer who holds IEEE Computer Society's Certified Software Development Professional certification.
- D. Power Systems Analysis Specialist Qualifications: Professional engineer licensed in the state where Project is located. All elements of the study shall be performed under the direct supervision and control of this professional engineer.
- E. Short-Circuit Study Certification: Short-Circuit Study Report shall be signed and sealed by Power Systems Analysis Specialist.
- F. Field Adjusting Agency Qualifications:
 1. Employer of a NETA ETT-Certified Technician Level III or NICET Electrical Power Testing Level III certification responsible for all field adjusting of the Work.
 2. A member company of NETA.
 3. Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 POWER SYSTEM ANALYSIS SOFTWARE DEVELOPERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. ESA Inc.
 2. Operation Technology, Inc.
 3. Power Analytics, Corporation.
 4. SKM Systems Analysis, Inc.
- B. Comply with IEEE 399 and IEEE 551.
 1. Analytical features of power systems analysis software program shall have capability to calculate "mandatory," "very desirable," and "desirable" features as listed in IEEE 399.
- C. Computer software program shall be capable of plotting and diagramming time-current-characteristic curves as part of its output.

2.2 SHORT-CIRCUIT STUDY REPORT CONTENTS

- A. Executive summary of study findings.
- B. Study descriptions, purpose, basis, and scope. Include case descriptions, definition of terms, and guide for interpretation of results.
- C. One-line diagram of modeled power system, showing the following:
 1. Protective device designations and ampere ratings.
 2. Conductor types, sizes, and lengths.

3. Transformer kilovolt ampere (kVA) and voltage ratings.
 4. Motor and generator designations and kVA ratings.
 5. Switchboard and panelboard designations and ratings.
 6. Derating factors and environmental conditions.
 7. Any revisions to electrical equipment required by the study.
- D. Comments and recommendations for system improvements or revisions in a written document, separate from one-line diagram.
- E. Protective Device Evaluation:
1. Evaluate equipment and protective devices and compare to available short-circuit currents. Verify that equipment withstand ratings exceed available short-circuit current at equipment installation locations.
 2. Tabulations of circuit breaker, fuse, and other protective device ratings versus calculated short-circuit duties.
 3. For 600-V overcurrent protective devices, ensure that interrupting ratings are equal to or higher than calculated 1/2-cycle symmetrical fault current.
 4. For devices and equipment rated for asymmetrical fault current, apply multiplication factors listed in standards to 1/2-cycle symmetrical fault current.
 5. Verify adequacy of phase conductors at maximum three-phase bolted fault currents; verify adequacy of equipment grounding conductors and grounding electrode conductors at maximum ground-fault currents. Ensure that short-circuit withstand ratings are equal to or higher than calculated 1/2-cycle symmetrical fault current.
- F. Short-Circuit Study Input Data:
1. One-line diagram of system being studied.
 2. Power sources available.
 3. Manufacturer, model, and interrupting rating of protective devices.
 4. Conductors.
 5. Transformer data.
- G. Short-Circuit Study Output Reports:
1. Low-Voltage Fault Report: Three-phase and unbalanced fault calculations, showing the following for each overcurrent device location:
 - a. Voltage.
 - b. Calculated fault-current magnitude and angle.
 - c. Fault-point X/R ratio.
 - d. Equivalent impedance.
 2. Momentary Duty Report: Three-phase and unbalanced fault calculations, showing the following for each overcurrent device location:
 - a. Voltage.
 - b. Calculated symmetrical fault-current magnitude and angle.
 - c. Fault-point X/R ratio.
 - d. Calculated asymmetrical fault currents:
 - 1) Based on fault-point X/R ratio.

- 2) Based on calculated symmetrical value multiplied by 1.6.
 - 3) Based on calculated symmetrical value multiplied by 2.7.
3. Interrupting Duty Report: Three-phase and unbalanced fault calculations, showing the following for each overcurrent device location:
 - a. Voltage.
 - b. Calculated symmetrical fault-current magnitude and angle.
 - c. Fault-point X/R ratio.
 - d. No AC Decrement (NACD) ratio.
 - e. Equivalent impedance.
 - f. Multiplying factors for 2-, 3-, 5-, and 8-cycle circuit breakers rated on a symmetrical basis.
 - g. Multiplying factors for 2-, 3-, 5-, and 8-cycle circuit breakers rated on a total basis.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 POWER SYSTEM DATA

- A. Obtain all data necessary for conduct of the study.
 1. Verify completeness of data supplied on one-line diagram. Call any discrepancies to Architect's attention.
 2. For equipment included as Work of this Project, use characteristics submitted under provisions of action submittals and information submittals for this Project.
- B. Gather and tabulate the required input data to support the short-circuit study. Comply with requirements in other section for "Project Record Documents" for recording circuit protective device characteristics. Record data on a Record Document copy of one-line diagram. Comply with recommendations in IEEE 551 as to the amount of detail that is required to be acquired in the field. Field data gathering shall be under direct supervision and control of the engineer in charge of performing the study, and shall be by the engineer or its representative who holds NETA ETT-Certified Technician Level III or NICET Electrical Power Testing Level III certification. Data include, but are not limited to, the following:
 1. Product Data for Project's overcurrent protective devices involved in overcurrent protective device coordination studies. Use equipment designation tags that are consistent with electrical distribution system diagrams, overcurrent protective device submittals, input and output data, and recommended device settings.
 2. Obtain electrical power utility impedance at the service.
 3. Power sources and ties.
 4. For transformers, include kVA, primary and secondary voltages, connection type, impedance, X/R ratio, taps measured in percent, and phase shift.
 5. For circuit breakers and fuses, provide manufacturer and model designation. List type of breaker, type of trip, SCCR, current rating, and breaker settings.
 6. Generator short-circuit current contribution data, including short-circuit reactance, rated kVA, rated voltage, and X/R ratio.
 7. Busway manufacturer and model designation, current rating, impedance, lengths, and conductor material.

8. Motor horsepower and NEMA MG 1 code letter designation.
9. Conductor sizes, lengths, number, conductor material and conduit material (magnetic or nonmagnetic).
10. Derating factors.

3.2 SHORT-CIRCUIT STUDY

- A. Perform study following the general study procedures contained in IEEE 399.
- B. Calculate short-circuit currents according to IEEE 551.
- C. Base study on device characteristics supplied by device manufacturer.
- D. Extent of electrical power system to be studied is indicated on Drawings.
- E. Begin short-circuit current analysis at the service, extending down to system overcurrent protective devices as follows:
 1. To normal system low-voltage load buses where fault current is 10 kA or less.
 2. Exclude equipment rated 240 V ac or less when supplied by a single transformer rated less than 125 kVA.
- F. Study electrical distribution system from normal and alternate power sources throughout electrical distribution system for Project. Study all cases of system-switching configurations and alternate operations that could result in maximum fault conditions.
- G. Include the ac fault-current decay from induction motors, synchronous motors, and asynchronous generators and apply to low- and medium-voltage, three-phase ac systems. Also account for the fault-current dc decrement to address asymmetrical requirements of interrupting equipment.
- H. Calculate short-circuit momentary and interrupting duties for a three-phase bolted fault and a single line-to-ground fault at each equipment indicated on one-line diagram.
 1. For grounded systems, provide a bolted line-to-ground fault-current study for areas as defined for the three-phase bolted fault short-circuit study.
- I. Include in the report identification of any protective device applied outside its capacity.

END OF SECTION 26 0573.13

SECTION 26 0573.16 - COORDINATION STUDIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes computer-based, overcurrent protective device coordination studies to determine overcurrent protective devices and to determine overcurrent protective device settings for selective tripping.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Field Adjusting Agency: An independent electrical testing agency with full-time employees and the capability to adjust devices and conduct testing indicated and that is a member company of NETA.
- B. One-Line Diagram: A diagram that shows, by means of single lines and graphic symbols, the course of an electric circuit or system of circuits and the component devices or parts used therein.
- C. Power System Analysis Software Developer: An entity that commercially develops, maintains, and distributes computer software used for power system studies.
- D. Power System Analysis Specialist: Professional engineer in charge of performing the study and documenting recommendations, licensed in the state where Project is located.
- E. Protective Device: A device that senses when an abnormal current flow exists and then removes the affected portion of the circuit from the system.
- F. SCCR: Short-circuit current rating.
- G. Service: The conductors and equipment for delivering electric energy from the serving utility to the wiring system of the premises served.
- H. Single-Line Diagram: See "One-Line Diagram."

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
 - 1. For computer software program to be used for studies.

2. Submit the following after the approval of system protective devices submittals. Submittals shall be in digital form.
 - a. Coordination-study input data, including completed computer program input data sheets.
 - b. Study and equipment evaluation reports.
3. Overcurrent protective device coordination study report; signed, dated, and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.
 - a. Submit study report for action prior to receiving final approval of distribution equipment submittals. If formal completion of studies will cause delay in equipment manufacturing, obtain approval from Architect for preliminary submittal of sufficient study data to ensure that selection of devices and associated characteristics is satisfactory.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data:
 1. For Power System Analysis Software Developer.
 2. For Power Systems Analysis Specialist.
 3. For Field Adjusting Agency.
- B. Product Certificates: For overcurrent protective device coordination study software, certifying compliance with IEEE 399.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For overcurrent protective devices to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
 1. The following are from the Coordination Study Report:
 - a. Final one-line diagram.
 - b. Final protective device coordination study.
 - c. Coordination study data files.
 - d. List of all protective device settings.
 - e. Time-current coordination curves.
 - f. Power system data.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Studies shall be performed using commercially developed and distributed software designed specifically for power system analysis.
- B. Software algorithms shall comply with requirements of standards and guides specified in this Section.
- C. Manual calculations are unacceptable.
- D. Power System Analysis Software Qualifications:

1. Computer program shall be designed to perform coordination studies or have a function, component, or add-on module designed to perform coordination studies.
 2. Computer program shall be developed under the charge of a licensed professional engineer who holds IEEE Computer Society's Certified Software Development Professional certification.
- E. Power Systems Analysis Specialist Qualifications: Professional engineer licensed in the state where Project is located. All elements of the study shall be performed under the direct supervision and control of this professional engineer.
- F. Field Adjusting Agency Qualifications:
1. Employer of a NETA ETT-Certified Technician Level III responsible for all field adjusting of the Work.
 2. A member company of NETA.
 3. Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 POWER SYSTEM ANALYSIS SOFTWARE DEVELOPERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. ESA Inc.
 2. Operation Technology, Inc.
 3. Power Analytics, Corporation.
 4. SKM Systems Analysis, Inc.
- B. Comply with IEEE 242 and IEEE 399.
- C. Analytical features of device coordination study computer software program shall have the capability to calculate "mandatory," "very desirable," and "desirable" features as listed in IEEE 399.
- D. Computer software program shall be capable of plotting and diagramming time-current-characteristic curves as part of its output. Computer software program shall report device settings and ratings of all overcurrent protective devices and shall demonstrate selective coordination by computer-generated, time-current coordination plots.
1. Optional Features:
 - a. Arcing faults.
 - b. Simultaneous faults.
 - c. Explicit negative sequence.
 - d. Mutual coupling in zero sequence.

2.2 COORDINATION STUDY REPORT CONTENTS

- A. Executive summary of study findings.

- B. Study descriptions, purpose, basis, and scope. Include case descriptions, definition of terms, and guide for interpretation of results.
- C. One-line diagram of modeled power system, showing the following:
 - 1. Protective device designations and ampere ratings.
 - 2. Conductor types, sizes, and lengths.
 - 3. Transformer kilovolt ampere (kVA) and voltage ratings.
 - 4. Motor and generator designations and kVA ratings.
 - 5. Switchboard and panelboard designations.
 - 6. Any revisions to electrical equipment required by the study.
 - 7. Study Input Data: As described in "Power System Data" Article.
 - a. Short-Circuit Study Output: As specified in "Short-Circuit Study Output Reports" Paragraph in "Short-Circuit Study Report Contents" Article in other section for "Short-Circuit Studies."
- D. Protective Device Coordination Study:
 - 1. Report recommended settings of protective devices, ready to be applied in the field. Use manufacturer's data sheets for recording the recommended setting of overcurrent protective devices when available.
 - a. Phase and Ground Relays:
 - 1) Device tag.
 - 2) Relay current transformer ratio and tap, time dial, and instantaneous pickup value.
 - 3) Recommendations on improved relaying systems, if applicable.
 - b. Circuit Breakers:
 - 1) Adjustable pickups and time delays (long time, short time, and ground).
 - 2) Adjustable time-current characteristic.
 - 3) Adjustable instantaneous pickup.
 - 4) Recommendations on improved trip systems, if applicable.
 - c. Fuses: Show current rating, voltage, and class.
- E. Time-Current Coordination Curves: Determine settings of overcurrent protective devices to achieve selective coordination. Graphically illustrate that adequate time separation exists between devices installed in series, including power utility company's upstream devices. Prepare separate sets of curves for the switching schemes and for emergency periods where the power source is local generation. Show the following information:
 - 1. Device tag and title, one-line diagram with legend identifying the portion of the system covered.
 - 2. Terminate device characteristic curves at a point reflecting maximum symmetrical or asymmetrical fault current to which the device is exposed.
 - 3. Identify the device associated with each curve by manufacturer type, function, and, if applicable, tap, time delay, and instantaneous settings recommended.
 - 4. Plot the following listed characteristic curves, as applicable:
 - a. Power utility's overcurrent protective device.
 - b. Medium-voltage equipment overcurrent relays.

- c. Medium- and low-voltage fuses including manufacturer's minimum melt, total clearing, tolerance, and damage bands.
 - d. Low-voltage equipment circuit-breaker trip devices, including manufacturer's tolerance bands.
 - e. Transformer full-load current, magnetizing inrush current, and ANSI through-fault protection curves.
 - f. Cables and conductors damage curves.
 - g. Ground-fault protective devices.
 - h. Motor-starting characteristics and motor damage points.
 - i. Generator short-circuit decrement curve and generator damage point.
5. Maintain selectivity for tripping currents caused by overloads.
 6. Maintain maximum achievable selectivity for tripping currents caused by overloads on series-rated devices.
 7. Provide adequate time margins between device characteristics such that selective operation is achieved.
 8. Comments and recommendations for system improvements.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine Project overcurrent protective device submittals for compliance with electrical distribution system coordination requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work. Devices to be coordinated are indicated on Drawings.
 1. Proceed with coordination study only after relevant equipment submittals have been assembled. Overcurrent protective devices that have not been submitted and approved prior to coordination study may not be used in study.

3.2 POWER SYSTEM DATA

- A. Obtain all data necessary for conduct of the overcurrent protective device study.
 1. Verify completeness of data supplied in one-line diagram on Drawings. Call any discrepancies to Architect's attention.
 2. For equipment included as Work of this Project, use characteristics submitted under provisions of action submittals and information submittals for this Project.
- B. Gather and tabulate all required input data to support the coordination study. List below is a guide. Comply with recommendations in IEEE 551 for the amount of detail required to be acquired in the field. Field data gathering shall be under direct supervision and control of the engineer in charge of performing the study, and shall be by the engineer or its representative who holds NETA ETT-Certified Technician Level III or NICET Electrical Power Testing Level III certification. Data include, but are not limited to, the following:
 1. Product Data for overcurrent protective devices specified in other Sections and involved in overcurrent protective device coordination studies. Use equipment designation tags that are consistent with electrical distribution system diagrams,

- overcurrent protective device submittals, input and output data, and recommended device settings.
2. Electrical power utility impedance at the service.
 3. Power sources and ties.
 4. Short-circuit current at each system bus (three phase and line to ground).
 5. Full-load current of all loads.
 6. Voltage level at each bus.
 7. For transformers, include kVA, primary and secondary voltages, connection type, impedance, X/R ratio, taps measured in percent, and phase shift.
 8. For circuit breakers and fuses, provide manufacturer and model designation. List type of breaker, type of trip and available range of settings, SCCR, current rating, and breaker settings.
 9. Generator short-circuit current contribution data, including short-circuit reactance, rated kVA, rated voltage, and X/R ratio.
 10. For relays, provide manufacturer and model designation, current transformer ratios, potential transformer ratios, and relay settings.
 11. Maximum demands from service meters.
 12. Busway manufacturer and model designation, current rating, impedance, lengths, size, and conductor material.
 13. Motor horsepower and NEMA MG 1 code letter designation.
 14. Low-voltage cable sizes, lengths, number, conductor material, and conduit material (magnetic or nonmagnetic).
 15. Medium-voltage cable sizes, lengths, conductor material, cable construction, metallic shield performance parameters, and conduit material (magnetic or nonmagnetic).
 16. Data sheets to supplement electrical distribution system one-line diagram, cross-referenced with tag numbers on diagram, showing the following:
 - a. Special load considerations, including starting inrush currents and frequent starting and stopping.
 - b. Transformer characteristics, including primary protective device, magnetic inrush current, and overload capability.
 - c. Motor full-load current, locked rotor current, service factor, starting time, type of start, and thermal-damage curve.
 - d. Generator thermal-damage curve.
 - e. Ratings, types, and settings of utility company's overcurrent protective devices.
 - f. Special overcurrent protective device settings or types stipulated by utility company.
 - g. Time-current-characteristic curves of devices indicated to be coordinated.
 - h. Manufacturer, frame size, interrupting rating in amperes root mean square (rms) symmetrical, ampere or current sensor rating, long-time adjustment range, short-time adjustment range, and instantaneous adjustment range for circuit breakers.
 - i. Manufacturer and type, ampere-tap adjustment range, time-delay adjustment range, instantaneous attachment adjustment range, and current transformer ratio for overcurrent relays.
 - j. Switchboards and panelboards ampacity, and SCCR in amperes rms symmetrical.

- k. Identify series-rated interrupting devices for a condition where the available fault current is greater than the interrupting rating of downstream equipment. Obtain device data details to allow verification that series application of these devices complies with NFPA 70 and UL 489 requirements.

3.3 COORDINATION STUDY

- A. Comply with IEEE 242 for calculating short-circuit currents and determining coordination time intervals.
- B. Comply with IEEE 399 for general study procedures.
- C. Base study on device characteristics supplied by device manufacturer.
- D. Extent of electrical power system to be studied is indicated on Drawings.
- E. Begin analysis at the service, extending down to system overcurrent protective devices as follows:
 - 1. To normal system low-voltage load buses where fault current is 10 kA or less.
 - 2. Exclude equipment rated 240 V ac or less when supplied by a single transformer rated less than 125 kVA.
- F. Study electrical distribution system from normal and alternate power sources throughout electrical distribution system for Project. Study all cases of system-switching configurations and alternate operations that could result in maximum fault conditions.
- G. Transformer Primary Overcurrent Protective Devices:
 - 1. Device shall not operate in response to the following:
 - a. Inrush current when first energized.
 - b. Self-cooled, full-load current or forced-air-cooled, full-load current, whichever is specified for that transformer.
 - c. Permissible transformer overloads according to IEEE C57.96 if required by unusual loading or emergency conditions.
 - 2. Device settings shall protect transformers according to IEEE C57.12.00, for fault currents.
- H. Motor Protection:
 - 1. Select protection for low-voltage motors according to IEEE 242 and NFPA 70.
- I. Conductor Protection: Protect cables against damage from fault currents according to ICEA P-32-382, ICEA P-45-482, and protection recommendations in IEEE 242. Demonstrate that equipment withstands the maximum short-circuit current for a time equivalent to the tripping time of the primary relay protection or total clearing time of the fuse. To determine temperatures that damage insulation, use curves from cable

manufacturers or from listed standards indicating conductor size and short-circuit current.

- J. Generator Protection: Select protection according to manufacturer's written instructions and to IEEE 242.
- K. Include the ac fault-current decay from induction motors, synchronous motors, and asynchronous generators and apply to low- and medium-voltage, three-phase ac systems. Also account for fault-current dc decrement, to address asymmetrical requirements of interrupting equipment.
- L. Calculate short-circuit momentary and interrupting duties for a three-phase bolted fault and a single line-to-ground fault at each equipment indicated on one-line diagram.
 - 1. For grounded systems, provide a bolted line-to-ground fault-current study for areas as defined for the three-phase bolted fault short-circuit study.
- M. Protective Device Evaluation:
 - 1. Evaluate equipment and protective devices and compare to short-circuit ratings.
 - 2. Adequacy of switchgear, motor-control centers, and panelboard bus bars to withstand short-circuit stresses.
 - 3. Include in the report identification of any protective device applied outside its capacity.

3.4 LOAD-FLOW AND VOLTAGE-DROP STUDY

- A. Perform a load-flow and voltage-drop study to determine the steady-state loading profile of the system. Analyze power system performance two times as follows:
 - 1. Determine load flow and voltage drop based on full-load currents obtained in "Power System Data" Article.
 - 2. Determine load flow and voltage drop based on 80 percent of the design capacity of load buses.
 - 3. Prepare load-flow and voltage-drop analysis and report to show power system components that are overloaded, or might become overloaded; show bus voltages that are less than as prescribed by NFPA 70.

3.5 MOTOR-STARTING STUDY

- A. Perform a motor-starting study to analyze the transient effect of system's voltage profile during motor starting. Calculate significant motor-starting voltage profiles and analyze the effects of motor starting on the power system stability.
- B. Prepare the motor-starting study report, noting light flicker for limits proposed by IEEE 141, and voltage sags so as not to affect operation of other utilization equipment on system supplying the motor.

3.6 FIELD ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust relay and protective device settings according to recommended settings provided by the coordination study. Field adjustments shall be completed by the engineering service division of equipment manufacturer under the "Startup and Acceptance Testing" contract portion.
- B. Make minor modifications to equipment as required to accomplish compliance with short-circuit and protective device coordination studies.
- C. Testing and adjusting shall be by a full-time employee of the Field Adjusting Agency, who holds NETA ETT-Certified Technician Level III or NICET Electrical Power Testing Level III certification.
 - 1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA ATS. Certify compliance with test parameters. Perform NETA tests and inspections for all adjustable overcurrent protective devices.

3.7 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage Power Systems Analysis Specialist to train Owner's maintenance personnel in the following:
 - 1. Acquaint personnel in fundamentals of operating the power system in normal and emergency modes.
 - 2. Hand-out and explain the coordination study objectives, study descriptions, purpose, basis, and scope. Include case descriptions, definition of terms, and guide for interpreting time-current coordination curves.
 - 3. For Owner's maintenance staff certified as NETA ETT-Certified Technicians Level III or NICET Electrical Power Testing Level III Technicians, teach how to adjust, operate, and maintain overcurrent protective device settings.

END OF SECTION 26 0573.16

SECTION 26 0573.19 - ARC-FLASH HAZARD ANALYSIS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes a computer-based, arc-flash study to determine the arc-flash hazard distance and the incident energy to which personnel could be exposed during work on or near electrical equipment.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Field Adjusting Agency: An independent electrical testing agency with full-time employees and the capability to adjust devices and conduct testing indicated and that is a member company of NETA.
- B. One-Line Diagram: A diagram that shows, by means of single lines and graphic symbols, the course of an electric circuit or system of circuits and the component devices or parts used therein.
- C. Power System Analysis Software Developer: An entity that commercially develops, maintains, and distributes computer software used for power system studies.
- D. Power Systems Analysis Specialist: Professional engineer in charge of performing the study and documenting recommendations, licensed in the state where Project is located.
- E. Protective Device: A device that senses when an abnormal current flow exists and then removes the affected portion from the system.
- F. SCCR: Short-circuit current rating.
- G. Service: The conductors and equipment for delivering electric energy from the serving utility to the wiring system of the premises served.
- H. Single-Line Diagram: See "One-Line Diagram."

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For computer software program to be used for studies.
- B. Study Submittals: Submit the following submittals after the approval of system protective devices submittals. Submittals shall be in digital form:

1. Arc-flash study input data, including completed computer program input data sheets.
2. Arc-flash study report; signed, dated, and sealed by Power Systems Analysis Specialist.
3. Submit study report for action prior to receiving final approval of distribution equipment submittals. If formal completion of studies will cause delay in equipment manufacturing, obtain approval from Architect for preliminary submittal of sufficient study data to ensure that selection of devices and associated characteristics is satisfactory.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data:

1. For Power Systems Analysis Software Developer.
2. For Power System Analysis Specialist.
3. For Field Adjusting Agency.

B. Product Certificates: For arc-flash hazard analysis software, certifying compliance with IEEE 1584 and NFPA 70E.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data:

1. Provide maintenance procedures in equipment manuals according to requirements in NFPA 70E.
2. Operation and Maintenance Procedures: In addition to items specified in other section for "Operation and Maintenance Data," provide maintenance procedures for use by Owner's personnel that comply with requirements in NFPA 70E.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Study shall be performed using commercially developed and distributed software designed specifically for power system analysis.
- B. Software algorithms shall comply with requirements of standards and guides specified in this Section.
- C. Manual calculations are unacceptable.
- D. Power System Analysis Software Qualifications: An entity that owns and markets computer software used for studies, having performed successful studies of similar magnitude on electrical distribution systems using similar devices.
1. Computer program shall be designed to perform arc-flash analysis or have a function, component, or add-on module designed to perform arc-flash analysis.
 2. Computer program shall be developed under the charge of a licensed professional engineer who holds IEEE Computer Society's Certified Software Development Professional certification.

- E. Power Systems Analysis Specialist Qualifications: Professional engineer in charge of performing the arc-flash study, analyzing the arc flash, and documenting recommendations, licensed in the state where Project is located. All elements of the study shall be performed under the direct supervision and control of this professional engineer.
- F. Arc-Flash Study Certification: Arc-Flash Study Report shall be signed and sealed by Power Systems Analysis Specialist.
- G. Field Adjusting Agency Qualifications:
 - 1. Employer of a NETA ETT-Certified Technician Level III or NICET Electrical Power Testing Level III certification responsible for all field adjusting of the Work.
 - 2. A member company of NETA.
 - 3. Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 COMPUTER SOFTWARE DEVELOPERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. ESA Inc.
 - 2. Operation Technology, Inc.
 - 3. Power Analytics, Corporation.
 - 4. SKM Systems Analysis, Inc.
- B. Comply with IEEE 1584 and NFPA 70E.
- C. Analytical features of device coordination study computer software program shall have the capability to calculate "mandatory," "very desirable," and "desirable" features as listed in IEEE 399.

2.2 ARC-FLASH STUDY REPORT CONTENT

- A. Executive summary of study findings.
- B. Study descriptions, purpose, basis, and scope. Include case descriptions, definition of terms, and guide for interpretation of results.
- C. One-line diagram, showing the following:
 - 1. Protective device designations and ampere ratings.
 - 2. Conductor types, sizes, and lengths.
 - 3. Transformer kilovolt ampere (kVA) and voltage ratings, including derating factors and environmental conditions.
 - 4. Motor and generator designations and kVA ratings.
 - 5. Switchboard and panelboard designations, and ratings.

- D. Study Input Data: As described in "Power System Data" Article.
- E. Short-Circuit Study Output Data: As specified in "Short-Circuit Study Output Reports" Paragraph in "Short-Circuit Study Report Contents" Article in other section for "Short-Circuit Studies."
- F. Protective Device Coordination Study Report Contents: As specified in "Coordination Study Report Contents" Article in other section for "Coordination Studies."
- G. Arc-Flash Study Output Reports:
 - 1. Interrupting Duty Report: Three-phase and unbalanced fault calculations, showing the following for each equipment location included in the report:
 - a. Voltage.
 - b. Calculated symmetrical fault-current magnitude and angle.
 - c. Fault-point X/R ratio.
 - d. No AC Decrement (NACD) ratio.
 - e. Equivalent impedance.
 - f. Multiplying factors for 2-, 3-, 5-, and 8-cycle circuit breakers rated on a symmetrical basis.
 - g. Multiplying factors for 2-, 3-, 5-, and 8-cycle circuit breakers rated on a total basis.
- H. Incident Energy and Flash Protection Boundary Calculations:
 - 1. Arcing fault magnitude.
 - 2. Protective device clearing time.
 - 3. Duration of arc.
 - 4. Arc-flash boundary.
 - 5. Restricted approach boundary.
 - 6. Limited approach boundary.
 - 7. Working distance.
 - 8. Incident energy.
 - 9. Hazard risk category.
 - 10. Recommendations for arc-flash energy reduction.
- I. Fault study input data, case descriptions, and fault-current calculations including a definition of terms and guide for interpretation of computer printout.

2.3 ARC-FLASH WARNING LABELS

- A. Comply with requirements in other section for "Identification for Electrical Systems" for self-adhesive equipment labels. Produce a 3.5-by-5-inch (76-by-127-mm) self-adhesive equipment label for each work location included in the analysis.
- B. Label shall have an orange header with the wording, "WARNING, ARC-FLASH HAZARD," and shall include the following information taken directly from the arc-flash hazard analysis:
 - 1. Location designation.

2. Nominal voltage.
3. Protection boundaries.
 - a. Arc-flash boundary.
 - b. Restricted approach boundary.
 - c. Limited approach boundary.
4. Arc flash PPE category.
5. Required minimum arc rating of PPE in Cal/cm squared.
6. Available incident energy.
7. Working distance.
8. Engineering report number, revision number, and issue date.

C. Labels shall be machine printed, with no field-applied markings.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine Project overcurrent protective device submittals. Proceed with arc-flash study only after relevant equipment submittals have been assembled. Overcurrent protective devices that have not been submitted and approved prior to arc-flash study may not be used in study.

3.2 ARC-FLASH HAZARD ANALYSIS

- A. Comply with NFPA 70E and its Annex D for hazard analysis study.
- B. Preparatory Studies: Perform the Short-Circuit and Protective Device Coordination studies prior to starting the Arc-Flash Hazard Analysis.
1. Short-Circuit Study Output: As specified in "Short-Circuit Study Output Reports" Paragraph in "Short-Circuit Study Report Contents" Article in other section for "Short-Circuit Studies."
 2. Coordination Study Report Contents: As specified in "Coordination Study Report Contents" Article in other section for "Coordination Studies."
- C. Calculate maximum and minimum contributions of fault-current size.
1. Maximum calculation shall assume a maximum contribution from the utility and shall assume motors to be operating under full-load conditions.
 2. Calculate arc-flash energy at 85 percent of maximum short-circuit current according to IEEE 1584 recommendations.
 3. Calculate arc-flash energy at 38 percent of maximum short-circuit current according to NFPA 70E recommendations.
- D. Calculate the arc-flash protection boundary and incident energy at locations in electrical distribution system where personnel could perform work on energized parts.
- E. Include medium- and low-voltage equipment locations, except equipment rated 240 V ac or less fed from transformers less than 125 kVA.

- F. Calculate the limited, restricted, and prohibited approach boundaries for each location.
- G. Incident energy calculations shall consider the accumulation of energy over time when performing arc-flash calculations on buses with multiple sources. Iterative calculations shall take into account the changing current contributions, as the sources are interrupted or decremented with time. Fault contribution from motors and generators shall be decremented as follows:
 - 1. Fault contribution from induction motors shall not be considered beyond three to five cycles.
 - 2. Fault contribution from synchronous motors and generators shall be decayed to match the actual decrement of each as closely as possible (for example, contributions from permanent magnet generators will typically decay from 10 per unit to three per unit after 10 cycles).
- H. Arc-flash energy shall generally be reported for the maximum of line or load side of a circuit breaker. However, arc-flash computation shall be performed and reported for both line and load side of a circuit breaker as follows:
 - 1. When the circuit breaker is in a separate enclosure.
 - 2. When the line terminals of the circuit breaker are separate from the work location.
- I. Base arc-flash calculations on actual overcurrent protective device clearing time. Cap maximum clearing time at two seconds based on IEEE 1584, Section B.1.2.

3.3 POWER SYSTEM DATA

- A. Obtain all data necessary for conduct of the arc-flash hazard analysis.
 - 1. Verify completeness of data supplied on one-line diagram on Drawings. Call discrepancies to Architect's attention.
 - 2. For new equipment, use characteristics from approved submittals under provisions of action submittals and information submittals for this Project.
- B. Electrical Survey Data: Gather and tabulate the following input data to support study. Comply with recommendations in IEEE 1584 and NFPA 70E as to the amount of detail that is required to be acquired in the field. Field data gathering shall be under the direct supervision and control of the engineer in charge of performing the study, and shall be by the engineer or its representative who holds NETA ETT-Certified Technician Level III or NICET Electrical Power Testing Level III certification. Data include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Product Data for overcurrent protective devices specified in other Sections and involved in overcurrent protective device coordination studies. Use equipment designation tags that are consistent with electrical distribution system diagrams, overcurrent protective device submittals, input and output data, and recommended device settings.
 - 2. Obtain electrical power utility impedance or available short circuit current at the service.

3. Power sources and ties.
4. Short-circuit current at each system bus (three phase and line to ground).
5. Full-load current of all loads.
6. Voltage level at each bus.
7. For transformers, include kVA, primary and secondary voltages, connection type, impedance, X/R ratio, taps measured in percent, and phase shift.
8. For circuit breakers and fuses, provide manufacturer and model designation. List type of breaker, type of trip and available range of settings, SCCR, current rating, and breaker settings.
9. Generator short-circuit current contribution data, including short-circuit reactance, rated kVA, rated voltage, and X/R ratio.
10. For relays, provide manufacturer and model designation, current transformer ratios, potential transformer ratios, and relay settings.
11. Busway manufacturer and model designation, current rating, impedance, lengths, size, and conductor material.
12. Motor horsepower and NEMA MG 1 code letter designation.
13. Low-voltage conductor sizes, lengths, number, conductor material and conduit material (magnetic or nonmagnetic).
14. Medium-voltage conductor sizes, lengths, conductor material, conductor construction and metallic shield performance parameters, and conduit material (magnetic or nonmagnetic).

3.4 LABELING

- A. Apply one arc-flash label on the front cover of each section of the equipment for each equipment included in the study. Base arc-flash label data on highest values calculated at each location.
- B. Each piece of equipment listed below shall have an arc-flash label applied to it:
 1. Low-voltage switchboard.
 2. Medium-voltage switch.
 3. Medium voltage transformers
 4. Low voltage transformers.
 5. Panelboard and safety switch over 250 V.
 6. Applicable panelboard and safety switch under 250 V.
 7. Control panel.
- C. Note on record Drawings the location of equipment where the personnel could be exposed to arc-flash hazard during their work.
 1. Indicate arc-flash energy.
 2. Indicate protection level required.

3.5 APPLICATION OF WARNING LABELS

- A. Install arc-flash warning labels under the direct supervision and control of Power System Analysis Specialist.

END OF SECTION 26 0573.19

SECTION 26 0923 - LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Photoelectric switches.
 - 2. Indoor occupancy and vacancy sensors.
 - 3. Switchbox-mounted occupancy sensors.
 - 4. Digital timer light switches.
 - 5. Outdoor motion sensors.
 - 6. Lighting contactors.
 - 7. Emergency shunt relays.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Show installation details for the following:
 - a. Occupancy sensors.
 - b. Vacancy sensors.
 - 2. Interconnection diagrams showing field-installed wiring.
 - 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plan(s) and elevations, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
 - 1. Suspended ceiling components.
 - 2. Structural members to which equipment will be attached.
 - 3. Items penetrating finished ceiling, including the following:
 - a. Luminaires.
 - b. Air outlets and inlets.
 - c. Speakers.
 - d. Sprinklers.
 - e. Access panels.

f. Control modules.

B. Field quality-control reports.

C. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's warranties.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each type of lighting control device to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.6 WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace lighting control devices that fail(s) in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Faulty operation of lighting control software.
- b. Faulty operation of lighting control devices.

2. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 OUTDOOR PHOTOELECTRIC SWITCHES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Cooper Industries, Inc.
2. Intermatic, Inc.
3. NSI Industries LLC: TORK Products.
4. Tyco Electronics: ALR Brand.

B. Description: Solid state, with SPST dry contacts rated for 1000 W incandescent or 1800 VA inductive, to operate connected relay, contactor coils, or microprocessor input; complying with UL 773A, and compatible with ballasts and LED lamps.

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Light-Level Monitoring Range: 1.5 to 10 fc (16.14 to 108 lux), with an adjustment for turn-on and turn-off levels within that range, and a directional lens in front of the photocell to prevent fixed light sources from causing turn-off.
3. Time Delay: Fifteen-second minimum, to prevent false operation.
4. Surge Protection: Metal-oxide varistor.
5. Mounting: Twist lock complies with NEMA C136.10, with base-and-stem mounting or stem-and-swivel mounting accessories as required to direct sensor to the north sky exposure.
6. Failure Mode: Luminaire stays ON.

- C. Description: Solid state; one set of NO dry contacts rated for 24 V ac at 1 A, to operate connected load, complying with UL 773, and compatible with power pack.
1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
 2. Light-Level Monitoring Range: 1.5 to 10 fc (16.14 to 108 lux), with an adjustment for turn-on and turn-off levels within that range.
 3. Time Delay: Thirty-second minimum, to prevent false operation.
 4. Mounting: 1/2-inch (13-mm) threaded male conduit.
 5. Failure Mode: Luminaire stays ON.
 6. Power Pack: Dry contacts rated for 20-A ballast or LED load at 120- and 277-V ac, and for 1 hp at 120-V ac. Sensor has 24-V dc, 150-mA, Class 2 power source, as defined by NFPA 70.
 - a. LED status lights to indicate load status.
 - b. Plenum rated.
 7. Power Pack: Digital controller capable of accepting four RJ45 inputs with two outputs rated for 20-A LED load at 120- and 277-V ac, for 16-A LED at 120- and 277-V ac, and for 1 hp at 120-V ac. Sensor has 24-V dc, Class 2 power source, as defined by NFPA 70.
 - a. With integral current monitoring
 - b. Compatible with digital addressable lighting interface.
 - c. Plenum rated.

2.2 INDOOR OCCUPANCY AND VACANCY SENSORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Hubbell Building Automation, Inc.
 2. Leviton Mfg. Company, Inc.
 3. Lightolier Controls.
 4. Lithonia Lighting: Acuity Lighting Group, Inc.
 5. Lutron Electronics, Inc.
- B. General Requirements for Sensors:
1. Wall or Ceiling-mounted, solid-state indoor occupancy and vacancy sensors.
 2. Passive infrared or Ultrasonic or Dual technology.
 3. Separate power pack.
 4. Hardwired connection to switch.
 5. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
 6. Operation:
 - a. Occupancy Sensor: Unless otherwise indicated, turn lights on when coverage area is occupied, and turn them off when unoccupied; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 15 minutes.

- b. Vacancy Sensor: Unless otherwise indicated, lights are manually turned on and sensor turns lights off when the room is unoccupied; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 15 minutes.
 - c. Combination Sensor: Unless otherwise indicated, sensor shall be programmed to turn lights on when coverage area is occupied and turn them off when unoccupied, or to turn off lights that have been manually turned on; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 15 minutes.
- 7. Sensor Output: Contacts rated to operate the connected relay, complying with UL 773A. Sensor is powered from the power pack.
- 8. Power: Line voltage.
- 9. Power Pack: Dry contacts rated for 20-A LED load at 120- and 277-V ac, and for 1 HP at 120-V ac. Sensor has 24-V dc, 150-mA, Class 2 power source, as defined by NFPA 70.
- 10. Mounting:
 - a. Sensor: Suitable for mounting in any position on a standard outlet box.
 - b. Relay: Externally mounted through a 1/2-inch (13-mm) knockout in a standard electrical enclosure.
 - c. Time-Delay and Sensitivity Adjustments: Recessed and concealed behind hinged door.
- 11. Indicator: Digital display, to show when motion is detected during testing and normal operation of sensor.
- 12. Bypass Switch: Override the "on" function in case of sensor failure.
- 13. Automatic Light-Level Sensor: Adjustable from 2 to 200 fc (21.5 to 2152 lux); turn lights off when selected lighting level is present.
- C. PIR Type: Ceiling mounted (In Corridors, Storage Closets); detect occupants in coverage area by their heat and movement.
 - 1. Detector Sensitivity: Detect occurrences of 6-inch- (150-mm-) minimum movement of any portion of a human body that presents a target of not less than 36 sq. in. (232 sq. cm).
 - 2. Detection Coverage (Room, Ceiling Mounted): Detect occupancy anywhere in a circular area of 1000 sq. ft. (93 sq. m) when mounted on a 96-inch- (2440-mm-) high ceiling.
 - 3. Detection Coverage (Corridor, Ceiling Mounted): Detect occupancy within 90 feet (27.4 m) when mounted on a 10-foot- (3-m-) high ceiling.
- D. Ultrasonic Type: Ceiling mounted (In Restrooms and Stairways only); detect occupants in coverage area through pattern changes of reflected ultrasonic energy.
 - 1. Detector Sensitivity: Detect a person of average size and weight moving not less than 12 inches (305 mm) in either a horizontal or a vertical manner at an approximate speed of 12 inches/s (305 mm/s).
 - 2. Detection Coverage (Small Room): Detect occupancy anywhere within a circular area of 600 sq. ft. (56 sq. m) when mounted on a 96-inch- (2440-mm-) high ceiling.

3. Detection Coverage (Standard Room): Detect occupancy anywhere within a circular area of 1000 sq. ft. (93 sq. m) when mounted on a 96-inch- (2440-mm-) high ceiling.
 4. Detection Coverage (Large Room): Detect occupancy anywhere within a circular area of 2000 sq. ft. (186 sq. m) when mounted on a 96-inch- (2440-mm-) high ceiling.
- E. Dual-Technology Type: Ceiling mounted (In Classroom and all other areas); detect occupants in coverage area using PIR and ultrasonic detection methods. The particular technology or combination of technologies that control on-off functions is selectable in the field by operating controls on unit.
1. Sensitivity Adjustment: Separate for each sensing technology.
 2. Detector Sensitivity: Detect occurrences of 6-inch- (150-mm-) minimum movement of any portion of a human body that presents a target of not less than 36 sq. in. (232 sq. cm), and detect a person of average size and weight moving not less than 12 inches (305 mm) in either a horizontal or a vertical manner at an approximate speed of 12 inches/s (305 mm/s).
 3. Detection Coverage (Standard Room): Detect occupancy anywhere within a circular area of 1000 sq. ft. (93 sq. m) when mounted on a 96-inch- (2440-mm-) high ceiling.

2.3 SWITCHBOX-MOUNTED OCCUPANCY SENSORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Hubbell Building Automation, Inc.
 2. Leviton Mfg. Company, Inc.
 3. Lightolier Controls.
 4. Lithonia Lighting: Acuity Lighting Group, Inc.
 5. Lutron Electronics, Inc.
- B. General Requirements for Sensors: Automatic-wall-switch occupancy sensor with manual on-off switch, suitable for mounting in a single gang switchbox.
1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
 2. Occupancy Sensor Operation: Unless otherwise indicated, turn lights on when coverage area is occupied, and turn lights off when unoccupied; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 15 minutes.
 3. Operating Ambient Conditions: Dry interior conditions, 32 to 120 deg F (0 to 49 deg C).
 4. Switch Rating: Not less than 800-VA ballast or LED load at 120 V, 1200-VA ballast or LED load at 277 V, and 800-W incandescent.
- C. Wall-Switch Sensor:
1. Standard Range: 180-degree field of view, field adjustable from 180 to 40 degrees; with a minimum coverage area of 2100 sq. ft (196 sq. m).
 2. Sensing Technology: Dual technology - PIR and ultrasonic.

3. Switch Type: SP, field-selectable automatic "on," or manual "on," automatic "off."
4. Capable of controlling load in three-way application.
5. Voltage: Match the circuit voltage.
6. Ambient-Light Override: Concealed, field-adjustable, light-level sensor from 10 to 150 fc (108 to 1600 lux). The switch prevents the lights from turning on when the light level is higher than the set point of the sensor.
7. Concealed, field-adjustable, "off" time-delay selector at up to 30 minutes.
8. Adaptive Technology: Self-adjusting circuitry detects and memorizes usage patterns of the space and helps eliminate false "off" switching.
9. Color: As selected by Architect.
10. Faceplate: Color matched to switch.

2.4 DIGITAL TIMER LIGHT SWITCH

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Hubbell Building Automation, Inc.
 2. Leviton Mfg. Company, Inc.
 3. Lightolier Controls.
 4. Lithonia Lighting: Acuity Lighting Group, Inc.
 5. Lutron Electronics, Inc.
- B. Description: Combination digital timer and conventional switch lighting control unit. Switchbox-mounted, backlit LCD display, with selectable time interval in 10 minute increments.
1. Rated 960 W at 120-V ac for tungsten lighting, 10 A at 120-V ac or 10 amps at 277-V ac for ballast or LED, and 1/4 horsepower at 120-V ac.
 2. Integral relay for connection to BAS.
 3. Voltage: Match the circuit voltage.
 4. Color: As selected by Architect.
 5. Faceplate: Color matched to switch.

2.5 OUTDOOR MOTION SENSORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Hubbell Building Automation, Inc.
 2. Leviton Mfg. Company, Inc.
 3. Lightolier Controls.
 4. Lithonia Lighting: Acuity Lighting Group, Inc.
 5. Lutron Electronics, Inc.
- B. Description: Solid-state outdoor motion sensors.
1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2. [Dual-technology (PIR and ultrasonic) type, weatherproof. Detect occurrences of 6-inch- (150-mm-) minimum movement of any portion of a human body that presents a target of not less than 36 sq. in. (232 sq. cm). Comply with UL 773A.
3. Switch Rating:
 - a. Luminaire-Mounted Sensor: 1000-W incandescent, 500-VA fluorescent/LED .
 - b. Separately Mounted Sensor: Dry contacts rated for 20-A ballast or LED load at 120- and 277-V ac, for 13-A tungsten at 120-V ac, and for 1 hp at 120-V ac. Sensor has 24-V dc, 150-mA, Class 2 power source, as defined by NFPA 70.
4. Switch Type: SP, field-selectable automatic "on," or manual "on," automatic "off." With bypass switch to override the "on" function in case of sensor failure.
5. Voltage: Match the circuit voltage type.
6. Detector Coverage:
 - a. Standard Range: 210-degree field of view, with a minimum coverage area of 900 sq. ft. (84 sq. m).
 - b. Long Range: 180-degree field of view and 110-foot (34-m) detection range.
7. Ambient-Light Override: Concealed, field-adjustable, light-level sensor from 10 to 150 fc (108 to 1600 lux). The switch prevents the lights from turning on when the light level is higher than the set point of the sensor.
8. Concealed, field-adjustable, "off" time-delay selector at up to 30 minutes.
9. Adaptive Technology: Self-adjusting circuitry detects and memorizes usage patterns of the space and help eliminate false "off" switching.
10. Operating Ambient Conditions: Suitable for operation in ambient temperatures ranging from minus 40 to plus 130 deg F (minus 40 to plus 54 deg C), rated as "raintight" according to UL 773A.

2.6 LIGHTING CONTACTORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Allen-Bradley/Rockwell Automation.
 2. ASCO Power Technologies, LP; a division of Emerson Electric Co.
 3. Eaton Corporation.
 4. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial-Electrical Distribution: Total Lighting Control.
- B. Description: Electrically operated and mechanically held, combination-type lighting contactors with fusible switch, complying with NEMA ICS 2 and UL 508.
 1. Current Rating for Switching: Listing or rating consistent with type of load served, including tungsten filament, inductive, and high-inrush ballast (ballast with 15 percent or less THD of normal load current).
 2. Fault Current Withstand Rating: Equal to or exceeding the available fault current at the point of installation.
 3. Enclosure: Comply with NEMA 250.

4. Provide with control and pilot devices as indicated on Drawings, matching the NEMA type specified for the enclosure.

2.7 EMERGENCY SHUNT RELAY

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Lighting Control and Design; Acuity Lighting Group, Inc.
 2. Watt Stopper.
- B. Description: NC, electrically held relay, arranged for wiring in parallel with manual or automatic switching contacts; complying with UL 924.
 1. Coil Rating: 120 or 277 V.

2.8 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Power Wiring to Supply Side of Remote-Control Power Sources: Not smaller than No. 12 AWG. Comply with requirements in other section for "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- B. Classes 2 and 3 Control Cable: Multi-conductor cable with stranded-copper conductors not smaller than No. 18 AWG. Comply with requirements in other section for "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- C. Class 1 Control Cable: Multi-conductor cable with stranded-copper conductors not smaller than No. 14 AWG. Comply with requirements in other section for "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine lighting control devices before installation. Reject lighting control devices that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
- B. Examine walls and ceilings for suitable conditions where lighting control devices will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 SENSOR INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Coordinate layout and installation of ceiling-mounted devices with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, smoke detectors, fire-suppression systems, and partition assemblies.

- C. Install and aim sensors in locations to achieve not less than 90-percent coverage of areas indicated. Do not exceed coverage limits specified in manufacturer's written instructions.

3.3 CONTACTOR INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.

3.4 WIRING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Wiring Method: Comply with other section for "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables." Minimum conduit size is 1/2 inch (13 mm).
- C. Wiring within Enclosures: Comply with NECA 1. Separate power-limited and non-power-limited conductors according to conductor manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Size conductors according to lighting control device manufacturer's written instructions unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Splices, Taps, and Terminations: Make connections only on numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes; terminal cabinets; and equipment enclosures.

3.5 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify components and power and control wiring according to other section for "Identification for Electrical Systems."
 - 1. Identify controlled circuits in lighting contactors.
 - 2. Identify circuits or luminaires controlled by photoelectric and occupancy sensors at each sensor.
- B. Label time switches and contactors with a unique designation.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to evaluate lighting control devices and perform tests and inspections.
- B. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 - 1. Operational Test: After installing time switches and sensors, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper unit operation.
 - 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- C. Lighting control devices will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.7 ADJUSTING

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting lighting control devices to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.
 - 1. For occupancy and motion sensors, verify operation at outer limits of detector range. Set time delay to suit Owner's operations.
 - 2. For daylighting controls, adjust set points and deadband controls to suit Owner's operations.
 - 3. Align high-bay occupancy sensors using manufacturer's laser aiming tool.

END OF SECTION 26 0923

SECTION 26 09 43 - DISTRIBUTED DIGITAL LIGHTING CONTROL SYSTEM

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Digital Lighting and Plug Load Controls.
 - 2. Emergency Lighting Control.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Manufacturer's data sheets on each product to be used, including:
 - 1. Catalog sheets and specifications.
 - 2. Ratings, configurations, standard wiring diagrams, dimensions, colors, service condition requirements, and installed features.
 - 3. Storage and handling requirements and recommendations.
 - 4. Installation instructions.
- B. Shop Drawings: Wiring diagrams a for the various components of the System specified including:
 - 1. Composite wiring and/or schematic diagram of each control circuit as proposed to be installed.
 - 2. Show location of all devices, including at minimum sensors, load controllers, and switches/dimmers for each area on reflected ceiling plans.
 - 3. Provide room/area details including products and sequence of operation for each room or area. Illustrate typical acceptable room/area connection topologies.
 - 4. Network riser diagram including floor and building level details. Include network cable specification. Illustrate points of connection to integrated systems. Coordinate integration with mechanical and/or other trades.
- C. Manufacturer's Certificates: Certify products meet or exceed specified requirements.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Project Record Documents: Record actual installed locations and settings for lighting control devices
- B. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each type of lighting control device to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
 - a. Include approved Shop Drawings and Product Data.
 - b. Include Sequence of Operation, identifying operation for each room or space.
 - c. Include manufacturer's maintenance information.
 - d. Operation and Maintenance Data: Include detailed information on device programming and setup.
 - e. Include startup and test reports.
- C. Submit Certification of Acceptance and associated documentation for lighting control acceptance testing performed in accordance with this specification under "COMMISSIONING"

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Store products in a clean, dry space in original manufacturer's packaging in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions until ready for installation

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain environmental conditions (temperature, humidity, and ventilation) within limits recommended by manufacturer for optimum results. Do not install products under environmental conditions outside manufacturer's absolute limits.
- B. Do not install equipment until following conditions can be maintained in spaces to receive equipment:
 - 1. Ambient temperature: 32 to 104 degrees F (0 to 40 degrees C).
 - 2. Relative humidity: Maximum 90 percent, non-condensing.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Products Warranty: Manufacturer shall provide a 5 year limited warranty on products within this installation, except where otherwise noted, and consisting of a one for one device replacement.

1.9 MAINTENANCE AND OPERATIONAL SERVICES

- A. Remote Access and Enhanced Warranty for Networked Lighting Controls: Provide Manufacturer's Remote Access and Enhanced Warranty for Networked Lighting Controls as follows:
 - 1. Configure to allow the manufacturer remote access to the lighting control system. Configuration includes at a minimum: cellular modem, antenna for the modem,

- cellular service contract and any connections required to enable communication to the specified Network Lighting Control system.
2. Remote Access program will automatically trigger a First Year Enhanced Warranty Agreement that will start once lighting control system startup is complete and accepted by the Owner. During this one year period, the Owners authorized site contact can request the manufacturer to check the system for proper operation, and make any programmable changes desired. Manufacturer shall provide a phone number dedicated to customer calls concerning Remote Accessible systems, and a support organization capable of enabling cellular communication to the system for troubleshooting and making requested changes to the system. Any user attempting to request remote support on the system shall be fully verified by the Remote Operations Center (ROC) before providing remote support or making any changes to the system. Systems that allow the modem to be always accessible will not be acceptable. Access must be by a secured VPN connection to the private lighting control network that is completely isolated from the Owner's internal network. Remote access that requires a connection through the Owner's internal network is not acceptable.
 3. Remote Access Program may be continued by the Owner after the first year. However, If the Owner does not continue the enhanced warranty the cellular contract will lapse, and all hardware components, while still remaining property of the manufacturer, will remain in situ so that they can be re-activated at a later time should the Owner desire.
 4. Manufacturer's Remote Access capability shall provide at a minimum the following features:
 - a. Ability to provide initial system diagnostics through LMCS Software to detect fault conditions in hardware or connected devices.
 - b. Access to all devices via LMCS Software allowing for programmability of device features. This will include all scheduling of Time of Day Events and programming of individual device parameters to meet Sequence of Operation requirements.
 - c. Access to the LMSM Segment Manager browser-based interface (if included on project) to verify it is setup per project documentation, and all functional operations are working properly.
 - d. On demand access to manufacturer technical support via a Remote Operations Center (ROC) that will provide remote troubleshooting, diagnostics, and configuration/programming assistance.
 - e. Additional client training and tuning on the Lighting Control System after building occupancy can be performed while remotely connected to the site.
 - f. Remote Site Readiness Check (SRC) which allows the Remote Operations Center to perform a remote discovery of all devices connected to the lighting control network during installation. DLM Networked projects that have a RACCESS cellular modem and have successfully completed the Site Readiness Check (SRC) process will receive priority scheduling (a SRC is considered successful if 80% or more of the networked devices are found on the network during discovery). After the scheduled on site startup, all manufacturer provided startup work for a site with a successful SRC will be done remotely, or via later complimentary return trips.

- B. Technology-Enabled Service Contract: The manufacturer of the Lighting Control System shall provide a service contract for continued support of the system post

installation that combines secure yet immediately accessible remote support with the backup assurance of onsite support when necessary. The coverage levels and features of the selected service contract would apply immediately upon completion of startup and supersede any enhanced remote support offered by the manufacturer during the first year after startup.

1. Technology-enabled service contract requires a RACCESS (Remote Access) secure cellular connection that allows the manufacturer remote access to the lighting control system to provide remote troubleshooting, diagnostics, and configuration/programming assistance. Manufacturer shall ensure provision of a cellular service plan that keeps the modem active through the chosen Technology-Enabled Service Contract's duration.
2. If the customer does not renew the Service Contract at the end of the contract term, the cellular service plan will lapse, and all hardware components will remain in situ so that they can be re-activated later should the customer desire.
3. Technology-Enabled Service Contract Specifics
 - a. Provide a complete "Connect Plus" Service Contract that includes the following features:
 - 1) Priority access to manufacturer technical support via a Remote Operations Center
 - 2) A complete system backup of LMCS and Segment Manager software files semi-annually
 - 3) Semi-annual Device Health Checks to identify any devices that have been bypassed, disconnected, or not functioning with recommendations for resolution
 - 4) An annual onsite training session by a certified factory-trained technician
 - 5) Semi-annual system tuning visits to optimize the lighting configuration, fine tune the Sequence of Operations or make programming changes to the system
 - 6) A 3 day onsite response time for unscheduled emergency visits provided by factory-trained technicians

- C. Length of Technology-Enabled Service Contract:
 - a. 1 Year

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. WattStopper
 2. Hubbell Control Solutions
 3. Acuity Brand Controls
- B. Substitutions: Requests for substitutions will be considered based on functionality, provided all changes required will be coordinated by contractor.

2.2 DISTRIBUTED DIGITAL LIGHTING CONTROL SYSTEM

- A. System General: Provide Digital Lighting Management System (DLM) complete with all necessary enclosures, wiring, and system components to ensure a complete and properly functioning system as indicated on the Drawings and specified herein. If a conflict is identified, between the Drawing and this Specification, contact the Architect for clarification prior to proceeding.
1. Space Control Requirements: Provide occupancy/vacancy sensors with Manual- or Partial-ON functionality as indicated in all spaces except toilet rooms, storerooms, library stacks, or other applications where hands-free operation is desirable and Automatic-ON occupancy sensors are more appropriate. Provide Manual-ON occupancy/vacancy sensors for any enclosed office, conference room, meeting room, open plan system and training room. For spaces with multiple occupants, or where line-of-sight may be obscured, provide ceiling- or corner-mounted sensors and Manual-ON switches.
 2. Task Lighting / Plug Loads: Provide automatic shut off of non-essential plug loads and task lighting in spaces as required by the applicable energy code. Provide Automatic-ON of plug loads whenever spaces are occupied. For spaces with multiple occupants a single shut off consistent with the overhead lighting may be used for the area.
 3. Daylight Areas: Provide daylight-responsive automatic control in all spaces (conditioned or unconditioned) where daylight contribution is available as defined by relevant local building energy code:
 - a. All luminaires within code-defined daylight zones shall be controlled separately from luminaires outside of daylight zones.
 - b. Daytime setpoints for total ambient illumination (combined daylight and electric light) levels that initiate dimming shall be programmed in compliance with relevant local building energy codes.
 - c. Provide smooth and continuous daylight dimming for areas marked on drawings. Daylighting control system may be designed to turn off electric lighting when daylight is at or above required lighting levels, only if system functions to turn lamps back on at dimmed level, rather than turning full-on prior to dimming.
 4. Conference, meeting, training and multipurpose rooms shall have controls that allow for independent control of each local control zone. Rooms larger than 300 square feet shall instead have at least four preset lighting scenes unless otherwise specified. Occupancy / vacancy sensors shall be provided to turn off all lighting in the space.
- B. Equipment Required: Lighting Control and Automation system as defined under this section covers the following equipment.
1. Digital Lighting Management (DLM) local network: Free topology, plug-in wiring system (Cat 5e) for power and data to room devices.
 2. Digital Room Controllers: Self-configuring, digitally addressable one, two or three relay plenum-rated controllers for on/off control. Selected models include 0-10 volt or line voltage forward phase control dimming outputs and integral current monitoring capabilities.

3. Digital Plug Load Controllers: Self-configuring, digitally addressable, single relay, plenum-rated application-specific controllers. Selected models include integral current monitoring capabilities.
 4. Digital Occupancy Sensors: Self-configuring, digitally addressable, calibrated occupancy sensors with LCD display and two-way active infrared (IR) communications.
 5. Digital Switches: Self-configuring, digitally addressable pushbutton on/off, dimming, and scene switches with two-way active infrared (IR) communications.
 6. Digital Daylighting Sensors: Single-zone closed loop, multi-zone open loop and single-zone dual-loop daylighting sensors with two-way active infrared (IR) communications for daylight harvesting using switching, bi-level, tri-level or dimming control.
 7. Configuration Tools: Handheld remote for room configuration and relay panel programming provides two way infrared (IR) communications to digital devices and allows complete configuration and reconfiguration of the device / room from up to 30 feet away.
 8. Digital Lighting Management (DLM) segment network: Linear topology, BACnet MS/TP network (1.5 twisted pair, shielded) to connect multiple DLM local networks for centralized control.
 9. Network Bridge: Provides BACnet MS/TP-compliant digital networked communication between rooms, panels and the Segment Manager or building automation system (BAS) and automatically creates BACnet objects representative of connected devices.
 10. Segment Manager: BACnet MS/TP-based controller with web browser-based user interface for system control, scheduling, power monitoring, room device parameter administration and reporting.
 11. Programming and Configuration Software: PC-native application capable of accessing DLM control parameters within a room, for the local network, via a USB adapter, or globally, for many segment networks simultaneously, via BACnet/IP communication.
 12. Emergency Lighting Control Unit (ELCU): Allows a standard lighting control device to control emergency lighting in conjunction with normal lighting in any area within a building
- C. Local Network LMRJ-Series: DLM local network is a free topology lighting control physical connection and communication protocol designed to control a small area of a building.
1. Features of the DLM local network include:
 - a. Plug n' Go automatic configuration and binding of occupancy sensors, switches and lighting loads to the most energy-efficient sequence of operation based upon the device attached.
 - b. Simple replacement of any device in the local DLM network with a standard off the shelf unit without requiring significant commissioning, configuration or setup.
 - c. Push n' Learn configuration to change the automatic configuration, including binding and load parameters without tools, using only the buttons on the digital devices in the local network.
 - d. Two-way infrared communications for control by handheld remotes, and configuration by a handheld tool including adjusting load parameters,

sensor configuration and binding, within a line of sight of up to 30 feet from a sensor, wall switch or IR receiver.

2. Digital room devices connect to the local network using pre-terminated Cat 5e cables with RJ-45 connectors, which provide both data and power to room devices. Systems that utilize RJ-45 patch cords but do not provide serial communication data from individual end devices are not acceptable.
3. If manufacturer's pre-terminated Cat5e cables are not used for the installation each cable must be individually tested and observed by authorized service representative following installation.

2.3 DIGITAL LOAD CONTROLLERS (ROOM, PLUG LOAD AND FIXTURE CONTROLLERS).

A. Digital Load Controllers: Digital controllers for lighting zones, fixtures and/or plug loads automatically bind room loads to the connected control devices in the space without commissioning or the use of any tools. Provide controllers to match the room lighting and plug load control requirements. Controllers are simple to install, and do not have dip switches/potentiometers, or require special configuration for standard Plug n' Go applications. Control units include the following features.

1. Automatic room configuration to the most energy-efficient sequence of operation based upon the devices in the room.
2. Simple replacement using the default automatic configuration capabilities, a room controller may be replaced with an off-the-shelf device.
3. Multiple room controllers connected together in a local network must automatically arbitrate with each other, without requiring any configuration or setup, so that individual load numbers are assigned starting with load 1 to a maximum of 64, assigned based on each controller's device ID's from highest to lowest.
4. Device Status LEDs to indicate:
 - a. Data transmission
 - b. Device has power
 - c. Status for each load
 - d. Configuration status
5. Quick installation features including:
 - a. Standard junction box mounting
 - b. Quick low voltage connections using standard RJ-45 patch cable
6. Based on individual configuration, each load shall be capable of the following behavior on power up following the loss of normal power:
 - a. Turn on to 100 percent
 - b. Turn off
 - c. Turn on to last level
7. Each load be configurable to operate in the following sequences based on occupancy:
 - a. Auto-on/Auto-off (Follow on and off)

- b. Manual-on/Auto-off (Follow off only)
 - 8. Polarity of each load output shall be reversible, via digital configuration, so that on is off and off is on.
 - 9. BACnet object information shall be available for the following objects:
 - a. Load status
 - b. Schedule state, normal or after-hours
 - c. Demand Response enable and disable
 - d. Room occupancy status
 - e. Total room lighting and plug loads watts
 - 10. UL 2043 plenum rated
 - 11. Manual override and LED indication for each load
 - 12. Zero cross circuitry for each load
 - 13. All digital parameter data programmed into an individual room controller or plug load controller shall be retained in non-volatile FLASH memory within the controller itself. Memory shall have an expected life of no less than 10 years.
 - 14. Dimming Room Controllers shall share the following features:
 - a. Each load shall have an independently configurable preset on level for Normal Hours and After Hours events to allow different dimmed levels to be established at the start of both Normal Hours and After Hours events.
 - b. Fade rates for dimming loads shall be specific to bound switch buttons, and the load shall maintain a default value for any bound buttons that do not specify a unique value.
 - c. The following dimming attributes may be changed or selected using a wireless configuration tool:
 - 1) Establish preset level for each load from 0-100 percent
 - 2) Set high and low trim for each load
 - 3) Initiate lamp burn in for each load of either 0, 12 or 100 hours
 - d. Override button for each load provides the following functions:
 - 1) Press and release for on/off control
 - 2) Press and hold for dimming control
 - e. Each dimming output channel shall have an independently configurable minimum and maximum trim level to set the dynamic range of the output within the new 0-100 percent dimming range defined by the minimum and maximum calibration trim.
 - f. Calibration and trim levels must be set per output channel. Devices that set calibration or trim levels per controller (as opposed to per load) are not acceptable.
 - g. All configuration shall be digital. Devices that set calibration or trim levels per output channel via trim pots or dip-switches are not acceptable.
- B. On/Off Room Controllers shall include:
- 1. Dual voltage (120/277 VAC, 60 Hz) capable rated for 20A total load

2. One or two relay configuration
3. Simple 150 mA switching power supply (Only 4 100 series devices on a Cat 5e local network)
4. Three RJ-45 DLM local network ports with integral strain relief and dust cover
5. WattStopper product numbers: LMRC-101, LMRC-102

C. On/Off/0-10V Dimming Enhanced Room Controllers shall include:

1. Dual voltage (120/277 VAC, 60 Hz) capable or 347 VAC, 60 Hz. 120/277 volt models rated for 20A total load; 347 volt models rated for 15A total load
2. Built in real time current monitoring
3. One, two or three relays configurations
4. Smart 250 mA switching power supply
5. Four RJ-45 DLM local network ports. Provide integral strain relief
6. One dimming output per relay
 - a. 0-10V Dimming - Where indicated, one 0-10 volt analog output per relay for control of compatible ballasts and LED drivers. The 0-10 volt output shall automatically open upon loss of power to the Room Controller to assure full light output from the controlled lighting (LMRC-110 series and 210 series).
7. WattStopper product numbers: LMRC-211, LRMC-212, LRMC-213.

D. Plug Load Controllers shall include:

1. 120 VAC, 60 Hz rated for 20A total load. Controller carries application-specific UL 20 rating for receptacle control.
2. One relay configuration with additional connection for unswitched load
3. Configurable additive time delay to extend plug load time delay beyond occupancy sensor time delay (e.g. a 10 minute additive delay in a space with a 20 minute occupancy sensor delay ensures that plug loads turn off 30 minutes after the space is vacated).
4. Factory default operation is Auto-on/Auto-off, based on occupancy
5. Real time current monitoring of both switched and un-switched load (LMPL-201 only)
6. Switching power supply
 - a. Simple 150mA - Only 4 100 series devices on a Cat 5e local network (LMPL-101)
 - b. Smart 250mA (LMPL-201)
7. RJ-45 DLM local network ports
 - a. Three RJ-45 ports (LMPL-101)
 - b. Four RJ-45 ports (LMPL-201)
8. WattStopper product numbers:
 - a. Plug Load Controllers: LMPL-101, LMPL-201.

2.4 DIGITAL WALL OR CEILING MOUNTED OCCUPANCY SENSOR

- A. Digital Occupancy Sensors shall provide graphic LCD display for digital calibration and electronic documentation. Features include the following:

1. Digital calibration and pushbutton configuration for the following variables:
 - a. Sensitivity, 0-100 percent in 10 percent increments
 - b. Time delay, 1-30 minutes in 1 minute increments
 - c. Test mode, Five second time delay
 - d. Detection technology, PIR, Ultrasonic or Dual Technology activation and/or re-activation.
 - e. Walk-through mode
 2. Load parameters including Auto/Manual-ON, blink warning, and daylight enable/disable when photosensors are included in the DLM local network.
 3. Programmable control functionality including:
 - a. Each sensor may be programmed to control specific loads within a local network.
 - b. Sensor shall be capable of activating one of 16 user-definable lighting scenes.
 - c. Adjustable retrigger time period for manual-on loads. Load will retrigger (turn on) automatically within a configurable period of time (default 10 seconds) after turning off.
 - d. On dual technology sensors, independently configurable trigger modes are available for both Normal (NH) and After Hours (AH) time periods. The retrigger mode can be programmed to use the following technologies:
 - e. Ultrasonic and Passive Infrared
 - f. Ultrasonic or Passive Infrared
 - g. Passive Infrared only
 - h. Independently configurable sensitivity settings for passive infrared and ultrasonic technologies (on dual technology sensors) for both Normal (NH) and After Hour (AH) time periods.
 4. One or two RJ-45 port(s) for connection to DLM local network.
 5. Two-way infrared (IR) transceiver to allow remote programming through handheld commissioning tool and control by remote personal controls.
 6. Device Status LEDs, which may be disabled for selected applications, including:
 - a. PIR detection
 - b. Ultrasonic detection
 - c. Configuration mode
 - d. Load binding
 7. Assignment of occupancy sensor to a specific load within the room without wiring or special tools.
 8. Manual override of controlled loads.
 9. All digital parameter data programmed into an individual occupancy sensor shall be retained in non-volatile FLASH memory within the sensor itself. Memory shall have an expected life of no less than 10 years.
- B. BACnet object information shall be available for the following objects:
1. Detection state
 2. Occupancy sensor time delay
 3. Occupancy sensor sensitivity, PIR and Ultrasonic
- C. Units shall not have any dip switches or potentiometers for field settings

- D. Multiple occupancy sensors may be installed in a room by simply connecting them to the free topology DLM local network. No additional configuration will be required.
- E. WattStopper product numbers: LMPX, LMDX, LMPC, LMUC, LMDC

2.5 DIGITAL WALL SWITCH OCCUPANCY SENSORS

- A. Digital Occupancy Sensors shall provide scrolling LCD display for digital calibration and electronic documentation. Features include the following:
 - 1. Digital calibration and pushbutton configuration for the following variables:
 - a. Sensitivity: 0-100 percent in 10 percent increments
 - b. Time delay: 1-30 minutes in 1 minute increments
 - c. Test mode: Five second time delay
 - d. Detection technology: PIR, Dual Technology activation and/or re-activation.
 - e. Walk-through mode
 - f. Load parameters including Auto/Manual-ON, blink warning, and daylight enable/disable when photosensors are included in the DLM local network.
 - 2. Programmable control functionality including:
 - a. Each sensor may be programmed to control specific loads within a local network.
 - b. Sensor shall be capable of activating one of 16 user-definable lighting scenes.
 - c. Adjustable retrigger time period for manual-on loads. Load will retrigger (turn on) automatically during the configurable period of time (default 10 seconds) after turning off.
 - d. On dual technology sensors, independently configurable trigger modes are available for both Normal (NH) and After Hours (AH) time periods. The retrigger mode can be programmed to use the following technologies:
 - 1) Ultrasonic and Passive Infrared
 - 2) Ultrasonic or Passive Infrared
 - 3) Ultrasonic only
 - 4) Passive Infrared only
 - 3. Independently configurable sensitivity settings for passive infrared and ultrasonic technologies (on dual technology sensors) for both Normal (NH) and After Hour (AH) time periods.
 - 4. Two RJ-45 ports for connection to DLM local network.
 - 5. Two-way infrared (IR) transceiver to allow remote programming through handheld configuration tool and control by remote personal controls.
 - 6. Device Status LEDs including
 - a. PIR detection
 - b. Ultrasonic detection
 - c. Configuration mode
 - d. Load binding
 - 7. Assignment of any occupancy sensor to a specific load within the room without wiring or special tools.

8. Assignment of local buttons to specific loads within the room without wiring or special tools
 9. Manual override of controlled loads
 10. All digital parameter data programmed into an individual wall switch sensor shall be retained in non-volatile FLASH memory within the wall switch sensor itself. Memory shall have an expected life of no less than 10 years.
- B. BACnet object information shall be available for the following objects:
1. Detection state
 2. Occupancy sensor time delay
 3. Occupancy sensor sensitivity, PIR and Ultrasonic
 4. Button state
 5. Switch lock control
 6. Switch lock status
- C. Units shall not have any dip switches or potentiometers for field settings.
- D. Multiple occupancy sensors may be installed in a room by simply connecting them to the free topology DLM local network. No additional configuration will be required.
- E. Two-button wall switch occupancy sensors, when connected to a single relay dimming room or fixture controller, shall operate in the following sequence as a factory default:
1. Left button
 - a. Press and release - Turn load on
 - b. Press and hold - Raise dimming load
 2. Right button
 - a. Press and release - Turn load off
 - b. Press and hold - Lower dimming load
- F. Low voltage momentary pushbuttons shall include the following features:
1. Load/Scene Status LED on each switch button with the following characteristics:
 - a. Bi-level LED
 - b. Dim locator level indicates power to switch
 - c. Bright status level indicates that load or scene is active
 2. The following button attributes may be changed or selected using a wireless configuration tool:
 - a. Load and Scene button function may be reconfigured for individual buttons (from Load to Scene, and vice versa).
 - b. Individual button function may be configured to Toggle, On only or Off only.
 - c. Individual scenes may be locked to prevent unauthorized change.
 - d. Fade Up and Fade Down times for individual scenes may be adjusted from 0 seconds to 18 hours.
 - e. Ramp rate may be adjusted for each dimmer switch.

- f. Switch buttons may be bound to any load on any load controller or relay panel and are not load type dependent; each button may be bound to multiple loads.
- g. WattStopper part numbers: LMPW, LMDW. Available in white, light almond, ivory, grey, red and black; compatible with wall plates with decorator opening.

2.6 DIGITAL WALL SWITCHES

- A. Low voltage momentary pushbutton switches in 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 and 8 button configuration. Wall switches shall include the following features:
 - 1. Two-way infrared (IR) transceiver for use with personal and configuration remote controls.
 - 2. Removable buttons for field replacement with engraved buttons and/or alternate color buttons. Button replacement may be completed without removing the switch from the wall.
 - 3. Configuration LED on each switch that blinks to indicate data transmission.
 - 4. Load/Scene Status LED on each switch button with the following characteristics:
 - a. Dim locator level indicates power to switch
 - b. Bright status level indicates that load or scene is active
 - c. Dimming switches shall include seven bi-level LEDs to indicate load levels using 14 steps.
 - 5. Programmable control functionality including:
 - a. Button priority may be configured to any BACnet priority level, from 1-16, corresponding to networked operation allowing local actions to utilize life safety priority
 - b. Scene patterns may be saved to any button other than dimming rockers. Once set, buttons may be digitally locked to prevent overwriting of the preset levels.
 - 6. All digital parameter data programmed into an individual wall switch shall be retained in non-volatile FLASH memory within the wall switch itself. Memory shall have an expected life of no less than 10 years.
- B. BACnet object information shall be available for the following objects:
 - 1. Button state
 - 2. Switch lock control
 - 3. Switch lock status
- C. Two RJ-45 ports for connection to DLM local network.
- D. Multiple digital wall switches may be installed in a room by simply connecting them to the free topology DLM local network. No additional configuration shall be required to achieve multi-way switching.
- E. Load and Scene button function may be reconfigured for individual buttons from Load to Scene, and vice versa.
 - 1. Individual button function may be configured to Toggle, On only or Off only.

2. Individual scenes may be locked to prevent unauthorized change.
3. Fade Up and Fade Down times for individual scenes may be adjusted from 0 seconds to 18 hours.
4. Ramp rate may be adjusted for each dimmer switch.
5. Switch buttons may be bound to any load on any load controller or relay panel and are not load type dependent; each button may be bound to multiple loads.
6. WattStopper product numbers: LMSW-101, LMSW-102, LMSW-103, LMSW-104, LMSW-105, LMSW-108, LMDM-101. Available in white, light almond, ivory, grey, red and black; compatible with wall plates with decorator opening.

2.7 DIGITAL DAYLIGHTING SENSORS

- A. Digital daylighting sensors shall work with load controllers and relay panels to provide automatic switching, bi-level, or tri-level or dimming daylight harvesting capabilities for any load type connected to the controller or panel. Daylighting sensors shall be interchangeable without the need for rewiring.
 1. Closed loop sensors measure the ambient light in the space and control a single lighting zone.
- B. Digital daylighting sensors shall include the following features:
 1. Sensor's internal photodiode shall only measure lightwaves within the visible spectrum. The photodiode's spectral response curve shall closely match the entire photopic curve. Photodiode shall not measure energy in either the ultraviolet or infrared spectrums. Photocell shall have a sensitivity of less than 5 percent for any wavelengths less than 400 nanometers or greater than 700 nanometers.
 2. Sensor light level range shall be from 1-6,553 foot-candles (fc).
 3. Capability of ON/OFF, bi-level or tri-level switching, or dimming, for each controlled zone, depending on the selection of load controller(s) and load binding to controller(s).
 4. For switching daylight harvesting, the photosensor shall provide a field-selectable deadband, or a separation, between the "ON Setpoint" and the "OFF Setpoint" that will prevent the lights from cycling excessively after they turn off.
 5. For dimming daylight harvesting, the photosensor shall provide the option, when the daylight contribution is sufficient, of turning lights off or dimming lights to a field-selectable minimum level.
 6. Photosensors shall have a digital, independently configurable fade rate for both increasing and decreasing light level in units of percent per second.
 7. Photosensors shall provide adjustable cut-off time. Cut-off time is defined by the number of selected minutes the load is at the minimum output before the load turns off. Selectable range between 0-240 minutes including option to never cut-off.
 8. Optional wall switch override shall allow occupants to reduce lighting level to increase energy savings or, if permitted by system administrator, raise lighting levels for a selectable period of time or cycle of occupancy.
 9. Integral infrared (IR) transceiver for configuration and/or commissioning with a handheld configuration tool, to transmit detected light level to wireless configuration tool, and for communication with personal remote controls.

10. Configuration LED status light on device that blinks to indicate data transmission.
11. Status LED indicates test mode, override mode and load binding.
12. Recessed switch on device to turn controlled load(s) ON and OFF.
13. BACnet object information shall be available for the following daylighting sensor objects, based on the specific photocell's settings:
 - a. Light level
 - b. Day and night setpoints
 - c. Off time delay
 - d. On and off setpoints
 - e. Up to three zone setpoints
 - f. Operating mode - on/off, bi-level, tri-level or dimming
14. One RJ-45 port for connection to DLM local network.
15. A choice of accessories to accommodate multiple mounting methods and building materials. Photosensors may be mounted on a ceiling tile, skylight light well, suspended lighting fixture or backbox. Standard tube photosensors accommodate mounting materials from 0-0.62 inch thick (LMLS-400, LMLS-500). Extended tube photosensors accommodate mounting materials from 0.62 to 1.25 inches thick (LMLS-400-L, LMLS-500-L). Mounting brackets are compatible with J boxes (LMLS-MB1) and wall mounting (LMLS-MB2). LMLS-600 photosensor to be mounted on included bracket below skylight well.
16. Any load or group of loads in the room can be assigned to a daylighting zone
17. Each load within a daylighting zone can be individually enabled or disabled for discrete control (load independence).
18. All digital parameter data programmed into a photosensor shall be retained in non-volatile FLASH memory within the photosensor itself. Memory shall have an expected life of no less than 10 years.

C. Closed loop digital photosensors shall include the following additional features:

1. An internal photodiode that measures light in a 100-degree angle, cutting off the unwanted light from bright sources outside of this cone.
2. Automatic self-calibration, initiated from the photosensor, a wireless configuration tool or a PC with appropriate software.
3. Automatically establishes application-specific setpoints following self-calibration. For switching operation, an adequate deadband between the ON and OFF setpoints shall prevent the lights from cycling; for dimming operation a sliding setpoint control algorithm with separate Day and Night setpoints shall prevent abrupt ramping of loads.
4. WattStopper Product Number: LMLS-400, LMLS-400-L.

2.8 HANDHELD CONFIGURATION TOOLS

- A. Provide a wireless configuration tool to facilitate customization of DLM local networks using two-way infrared communications, and/or PC software that connects to each local network via a USB interface.
- B. Features and functionality of the wireless configuration tool shall include but not be limited to:

1. Two-way infrared (IR) communication with DLM IR-enabled devices within a range of approximately 30 feet.
2. High visibility organic LED (OLED) display, pushbutton user interface and menu-driven operation.
3. Must be able to read and modify parameters for load controllers and relay panels, occupancy sensors, wall switches, daylighting sensors, network bridges, and identify DLM devices by type and serial number.
4. Save up to eight occupancy sensor setting profiles, and apply profiles to selected sensors.
5. Temporarily adjust light level of any load(s) on the local network, and incorporate those levels in scene setting. Set room mode for testing of Normal Hours (NH) and After Hours (AH) parameter settings.
6. Adjust or fine-tune daylighting settings established during auto-configuration, and input light level data to complete configuration of open loop daylighting controls.
7. Set room mode for testing of Normal Hours (NH) and After Hours (AH) parameter settings.
8. Verify status of building level network devices.

C. WattStopper Product Numbers: Handheld LMCT-100

2.9 DLM SEGMENT NETWORK

A. Provide a segment network using linear topology, BACnet-based MS/TP subnet to connect DLM local networks (rooms) and LMCP relay panels for centralized control.

1. Each connected DLM local network shall include a single network bridge (LMBC-300), and the network bridge is the only room-based device that is connected to the segment network.
2. Network bridges, relay panels and segment managers shall include terminal blocks, with provisions for separate "in" and "out" terminations, for segment network connections.
3. Segment network utilizes 1.5 twisted pair, shielded, cable supplied by the lighting control manufacturer. Maximum cable run for each segment is 4,000 feet. Conductor-to-conductor capacitance of the twisted pair shall be less than 30 pf/ft and have a characteristic impedance of 120 Ohms.
4. Network wire jacket is available in high visibility green, white, or black.
5. Substitution of manufacturer-supplied cable is not permitted and may void the warranty, if non-approved cable is installed, and if terminations are not completed according to manufacturer's specific requirements.
6. Network signal integrity requires that each conductor and ground wire be correctly terminated at every connected device.
7. Segment networks shall be capable of connecting to any of the following: BACnet-compliant BAS (provided by others) directly via MS/TP, or BACnet/IP via an NB-ROUTER or LMSM Unit. Systems whose room-connected network infrastructure require gateway devices to provide BACnet data to a BAS are unacceptable

B. WattStopper Product Number: LM-MSTP, LM-MSTP-W, LM-MSTP-B, LM-MSTP-DB

2.10 NETWORK BRIDGE

- A. Network bridge module connects a DLM local network to a BACnet-compliant segment network for communication between rooms, relay panels and a segment manager or BAS. Each local network shall include a network bridge component to provide a connection to the local network room devices. Network bridge shall use industry standard BACnet MS/TP network communication and an optically isolated EIA/TIA RS-485 transceiver.
1. Network bridge shall be provided as a separate module connected on the local network through an available RJ-45 port.
 2. Provide Plug n' Go operation to automatically discover room devices connected to the local network and make all device parameters visible to the segment manager via the segment network. No commissioning shall be required for set up of the network bridge on the local network.
 3. Network bridge shall automatically create standard BACnet objects for selected DLM devices to allow any BACnet-compliant BAS to include lighting control and power monitoring features as provided by the DLM devices on each local network. BACnet objects will be created for the addition or replacement of any given DLM device for the installed life of the system. Products requiring that an application-specific point database be loaded to create or map BACnet objects are not acceptable. Systems not capable of providing BACnet data for control devices via a dedicated BACnet Device ID and physical MS/TP termination per room are not acceptable. Standard BACnet objects shall be provided as follows:
 - a. Read/write the normal or after hours schedule state for the room
 - b. Read the detection state of each occupancy sensor
 - c. Read the aggregate occupancy state of the room
 - d. Read/write the On/Off state of loads
 - e. Read/write the dimmed light level of loads
 - f. Read the button states of switches
 - g. Read total current in amps, and total power in watts through the load controller
 - h. Read/write occupancy sensor time delay, PIR sensitivity and ultrasonic sensitivity settings
 - i. Activate a preset scene for the room
 - j. Read/write daylight sensor fade time and day and night setpoints
 - k. Read the current light level, in foot-candles, from interior and exterior photosensors and photocells
 - l. Set daylight sensor operating mode
 - m. Read/write wall switch lock status
 - n. Read watts per square foot for the entire controlled room
 - o. Write maximum light level per load for demand response mode
 - p. Read/write activation of demand response mode for the room
 - q. Activate/restore demand response mode for the room
- B. WattStopper product numbers: LMBC-300

2.11 SEGMENT MANAGER

- A. For networked applications, the Digital Lighting Management system shall include at least one segment manager to manage network communication. It shall be capable of serving up a graphical user interface via a standard web browser utilizing either unencrypted TCP/IP traffic via a configurable port (default is 80) or 256 bit AES encrypted SSL TCP/IP traffic via a configurable port (default is 443).
- B. Each segment manager shall have integral support for at least three segment networks. Segment networks may alternately be connected to the segment manger via external BACnet-to-IP interface routers and switches, using standard Ethernet structured wiring. Each router shall accommodate one segment network. Provide the quantity of routers and switches as shown on the Drawings.
- C. Operational features of the Segment Manager shall include the following:
 - 1. Connection to PC or LAN via standard Ethernet TCP/IP via standard Ethernet TCP/IP with the option to use SSL encrypted connections for all traffic.
 - 2. Easy to learn and use graphical user interface, compatible with Internet Explorer 8, or equal browser. The Segment Manager shall not require installation of any lighting control software on an end-user PC.
 - 3. Log in security capable of restricting some users to view-only or other limited operations.
 - 4. Segment Manager shall provide two main sets of interface screens - those used to initially configure the unit (referred to as the config screens), and a those used to allow users to dynamic monitor the performance of their system, and provide a centralized scheduling interface. Capabilities using the Config Screens shall include:
 - a. Automatic discovery of DLM devices and relay panels on the segment network(s). Commissioning beyond activation of the discovery function shall not be required to provide communication, monitoring or control of all local networks and lighting control panels.
 - b. Allow information for all discovered DLM devices to be imported into the Segment Manager via a single XML based site file from the WattStopper LMCS Software, significantly reducing the time needed to make a system usable by the end user. Importable information can include text descriptions of every DLM component and individual loads, and automatic creation of room location information and overall structure of DLM network. Info entered into LMCS should not have to be re-entered manually via keystrokes into the Segment Manager
 - c. After discovery, all rooms and panels shall be presented in a standard navigation tree format. Selecting a device from the tree will allow the device settings and operational parameters to be viewed and changed by the user.
 - d. Ability to view and modify DLM device operational parameters. It shall be possible to set device parameters independently for normal hours and after hours operation including sensor time delays and sensitivities, and load response to sensor including Manual-On or Auto-On.
 - e. Provide capabilities for integration with a BAS via BACnet protocol. At a minimum, the following points shall be available to the BAS via BACnet IP

connection to the segment manager: room occupancy state; room schedule mode; room switch lock control; individual occupancy sensor state; room lighting power; room plug-load power; load ON/OFF state; load dimming level; panel channel schedule state; panel relay state; and Segment Manager Group schedule state control. Any of above items shall be capable of being moved into an "Export Table" that will provide any integrator with only the data they need, and by using the Export Table effectively create a firewall between the integrator's request for info and the overall system performance.

5. Capabilities using the Segment Manager's Dashboard Screens shall include:
 - a. A dynamic "tile" based interface that allows easy viewing of each individual room's lighting and plug load power consumption, and lighting and plug load power density (power consumption information requires Enhanced DLM Room and Plug Load Controllers with integral current transducers such as LMRC-21x). Tiles will be automatically organized according to location so a single tile for the building summarizes all information for tiles beneath it on every floor, in every area, in every room. Tiles use three color coded energy target parameters, allowing an owner to quickly identify rooms that are not performing efficiently. Tiles for rooms with occupancy sensors shall include an icon to indicate whether that room is occupied. Tiles shall be clickable, and when clicked the underlying hierarchical level of tiles shall become visible. Tile interface shall be accessible via mouse, or touch screen devices. Tiles shall be created automatically by the segment manager, based on the information found during the device discovery and/or information included in a file imported in from LMCS (such as tagged descriptions for each room) without any custom programming.
 - b. Ability to set up schedules for DLM local networks (rooms) and panels. Schedules shall be capable of controlling individual rooms with either on/off or normal hours/after hours set controlled zones or areas to either a normal hours or after hours mode of operation. Support for annual schedules, holiday schedules and unique date-bound schedules, as well as astro On or astro Off events with offsets. Schedules shall be viable graphically as time bars in a screen set up to automatically show scheduled events by day, week or month.
 - c. Ability to provide a simple time vs. power graph based on information stored in each Segment Manager's memory (typically two to three days' data).
6. Segment Managers shall be integrated into a larger control network by the addition of a Network Supervisor package. The Supervisor is a server level computer running a version of the Segment Manager interface software with dedicated communication and networking capability, able to pull information automatically from each individual Segment Manager in the network. By using a Supervisor, information for individual Segment Managers can be accessed and stored on the Supervisor's hard drive, eliminating the risk of data being overwritten after a few days because of Segment Manager memory limits.
7. Segment Manager shall allow access and control of the overall system database via Native Niagara AX FOX connectivity. Systems that must utilize a Tridium

Niagara controller in addition to the programming, scheduling and configuration server are not acceptable.

D. Segment Manager v2.2 and later shall support multiple DLM rooms as follows:

1. Support up to 120 network bridges and 750 digital in-room devices (LMSM-3E).
2. Support up to 200 network bridges and 1,100 digital in room devices, connected via network routers and switches (LMSM-6E).

E. WattStopper Product Numbers: LMSM-3E, LMSM-6E, LM-SUPERVISOR, NB-ROUTER, NB-SWITCH, NB-SWITCH-8, NB-SWITCH-16.

2.12 PROGRAMMING, CONFIGURATION AND DOCUMENTATION SOFTWARE

A. PC-native application for optional programming of detailed technician-level parameter information for all DLM products, including all parameters not accessible via BACnet and the handled IR configuration tool. Software must be capable of accessing room-level parameter information locally within the room when connected via the optional LMCI-100 USB programming adapter, or globally for many segment networks simultaneously utilizing standard BACnet/IP communication.

B. Additional parameters exposed through this method include but are not limited to:

1. Occupancy sensor detection LED disable for performance and other aesthetic spaces where blinking LEDs present a distraction.
2. Six occupancy sensor action behaviors for each controlled load, separately configurable for normal hours and after hours modes. Modes include: No Action, Follow Off Only, Follow On Only, Follow On and Off, Follow On Only with Override Time Delay, Follow Off Only with Blink Warn Grace Time, Follow On and Off with Blink Warn Grace Time.
3. Separate fade time adjustments per load for both normal and after hours from 0 - 4 hours.
4. Configurable occupancy sensor re-trigger grace period from 0 - 4 minutes separate for both normal hours and after hours.
5. Separate normal hours and after hours per-load button mode with modes including: Do nothing, on only, off only, on and off.
6. Load control polarity reversal so that on events turn loads off and vice versa.
7. Per-load DR (demand response) shed level in units of percent.
8. Load output pulse mode in increments of 1second.
9. Fade trip point for each load for normal hours and after hours that establishes the dimmer command level at which a switched load closes its relay to allow for staggered On of switched loads in response to a dimmer.

C. Generation of reports at the whole file, partial file, or room level. Reports include but are not limited to:

1. Device list report: All devices in a project listed by type.
2. Load binding report: All load controller bindings showing interaction with sensors, switches, and daylighting.

3. BACnet points report: Per room Device ID report of the valid BACnet points for a given site's BOM.
 4. Room summary report: Device manifest for each room, aggregated by common BOM, showing basic sequence of operations.
 5. Device parameter report: Per-room lists of all configured parameters accessible via hand held IR programmer for use with O&M documentation.
 6. Scene report: All project scene pattern values not left at defaults (i.e. 1 = all loads 100 percent, 2 = all loads 75 percent, 3 = all loads 50 percent, 4 = all loads 25 percent, 5-16 = same as scene 1).
 7. Occupancy sensor report: Basic settings including time delay and sensitivities for all occupancy sensors.
- D. Network-wide programming of parameter data in a spreadsheet-like programming environment including but not limited to the following operations:
1. Set, copy/paste an entire project site of sensor time delays.
 2. Set, copy/paste an entire project site of sensor sensitivity settings.
 3. Search based on room name and text labels.
 4. Filter by product type (i.e. LMRC-212) to allow parameter set by product.
 5. Filter by parameter value to search for product with specific configurations.
- E. Network-wide firmware upgrading remotely via the BACnet/IP network.
1. Mass firmware update of entire rooms.
 2. Mass firmware update of specifically selected rooms or areas.
 3. Mass firmware upgrade of specific products
- F. WattStopper Product Number: LMCS-100, LMCI-100

2.13 DISTRIBUTED RELAY CONTROL SYSTEMS

- A. All components required for a complete and functioning system complying with this specification, information contained on drawings and performance requirements identified in the Basis of Design, are the responsibility of the distributed relay system manufacturer.
- B. System Description
1. The distributed relay control system shall be a network of lighting relays, control modules, interface devices, network routers, server, software, time clock, photocells, switches, dimmers, occupancy sensors, and vacancy sensors.
 2. System shall provide control, monitoring, load shedding, logging and alarming of lighting conditions as shown on plans, risers, schedules, and as described in the BOD and this specification.
 3. System shall interface with the following systems:
 - a. Building Management System
 - b. Select lighting control groups, as identified, shall interface with the Audio Visual Controls.
 4. On site field programming and start-up services shall be provided as well as commissioning support.

5. One day of on-site training shall be included. Training shall occur after successful completion of commissioning. O&M manuals shall be included in training reference material. Training shall be videotaped and provided to Owner for inclusion in the O&M manual.
6. System will provide end-of-life monitoring for LED luminaires.
 - a. For each control relay, the system shall be programmed with the published L80 life of the LED luminaires connected.
 - b. Operating hours for each relay shall be logged. When operating hours reach programmed life, system shall generate an "End of Lamp Life" alarm.
 - c. For areas with Lumen Maintenance Controls:
 - 1) Control system shall be programmed to dim lights to 80 percent of initial output.
 - 2) Control system shall record the photocell reading at this level as the target maintained setpoint for the lumen maintenance system.
 - 3) When system is unable to achieve the target setpoint, an "End of Lamp Life" alarm shall be generated.
7. Manufacturer shall provide a complete system to the contractor for installation, including all components and communication wiring.
8. Description of Pre-Set Scenes – see sequence of operations on drawings:
 - a. Rodent Dimmed Diurnal
 - 1) Starting at 6am lights dim up to 270 lux over a one hour duration. Starting at 5pm lights dim to off over a one hour duration.
 - b. Aquatic Dimmed Diurnal
 - 1) Starting at 6am lights dim up to 540 lux over a one hour duration. Starting at 5pm lights dim to off over a one hour duration.
 - c. Unoccupied
 - 1) Lights turn on/off by occupancy sensor or wall switch. Photocell alarm/reporting is disabled.
 - d. Clarifications:
 - 1) Illumination levels provided above are calculated average values, not photocell set points.
 - e. Not all rooms with pre-set scene controls have all pre-set scenes listed above. Refer to schedule by room number on drawings. In the event of a conflict, schedule by room number on drawings shall govern.

C. BACNet IP Interface

1. Provide BACNet IP device for interface with BMS.
2. Provide record of communication with the selected BMS vendor indicating that systems are compatible, identifying the total number and types (relay status, alarm status, occupancy sensor status, etc) of points that will be shared.

D. Low Voltage Digital Control Devices

1. Momentary Contact On/Off Switches:
 - a. Description: Button tap shall change state of lights; "on/off" signal sent to control system via digital communication link.

- b. Provide number of buttons as shown on drawings. Each button shall control a lighting control zone or a light pre-set scene, as described on contract documentation.
 - c. Multi-button switches shall be provided with engraved labels. As part of the shop drawing submittal, submit a separate engraving sheet for each multi-button switch with the room number identified on the engraving sheet.
 - d. Provide white finish and cover plate.
 - e. Provide brushed stainless steel cover plates.
- 2. Dimming Switch with On/Off Control:
 - a. Description: Button tap shall turn "on/off" signal sent to control system via digital communication link; push and holding top of button shall send signal to increase intensity; push and holding bottom of button shall send signal to decrease intensity.
 - b. Compatibility: Dimming switch and dimming relay module shall be compatible with dimming ballast or dimming driver utilized. Coordinate with fixture manufacturer for exact ballast or driver supplied.
 - c. Dimming Range shall be programmed to assure flicker-free smooth dimming to the maximum extent possible.
 - d. Provide white finish and cover plate.
 - e. Provide brushed stainless steel cover plates.
- 3. Passive Infrared Wall Switch Sensor:
 - a. The wall switch sensor shall be capable of detecting presence in the control area by detecting changes in passive infrared energy.
 - b. Sensor shall cover up to 35ft. for walking motion and 25ft for minor motion, with a field view of 180 degrees.
 - c. Sensor shall feature a selectable walk-through mode, where lights turn OFF 3 minutes after the area is initially occupied if no motion is detected after the first 30 seconds. Walk-through mode shall be "on" unless otherwise noted.
 - d. Sensor shall have Automatic-ON or Manual-ON operation. Switches designated as Occupancy sensor switches shall be set to automatic mode; switches designated as Vacancy sensor switches shall be set to manual mode.
 - e. Sensor shall have a time delay adjustable from 1 to 30 minutes. Factory default setting is 20 minutes. Adjust setting where noted on contract documents.
 - f. In automatic mode, sensor shall be capable to automatically return to Automatic-ON after lights are turned off manually.
 - g. Sensor shall have an LED indicator that remains active at all times in order to verify detection within the area to be controlled.
 - h. Sensor shall not protrude more than 3/8" from the wall.
 - i. Rated for operating conditions of 32°-131°F (0-55°C) and 5-95% relative humidity.
 - j. Provide white finish and cover plate.
- 4. Two Button Passive Infrared Wall Switch Sensor:
 - a. The wall switch sensor shall be capable of detecting presence in the control area by detecting changes in passive infrared energy.

- b. Sensor shall cover up to 35ft. for walking motion and 25ft for minor motion, with a field view of 180 degrees.
 - c. Sensor shall feature a selectable walk-through mode, where lights turn OFF 3 minutes after the area is initially occupied if no motion is detected after the first 30 seconds. Walk-through mode shall be "on" unless otherwise noted.
 - d. Sensor shall include two button switches for separate control of two lighting control zones or two lighting scenes.
 - e. Sensor shall have Automatic-ON or Manual-ON operation. Switches designated as Occupancy sensor switches shall be set to automatic mode; switches designated as Vacancy sensor switches shall be set to manual mode. Switches are individually set, allowing one to operate in manual mode and the other to operate in automatic mode.
 - f. Sensor shall have a time delay adjustable from 1 to 30 minutes. Factory default setting is 20 minutes. Adjust setting where noted on contract documents.
 - g. In automatic mode, sensor shall be capable to automatically return to Automatic-ON after lights are turned off manually.
 - h. Sensor shall have an LED indicator that remains active at all times in order to verify detection within the area to be controlled.
 - i. Rated for operating conditions of 32°-131°F (0-55°C) and 5-95% relative humidity.
 - j. Sensor shall not protrude more than 3/8" from the wall.
 - k. Provide white finish and cover plate.
5. Photocells
- a. Daylight Harvesting
 - 1) Coordinate photocell selection with daylight harvesting software. Open loop devices shall be located in close proximity to glazing, following manufacturer instructions. Closed loop devices shall be located such that natural and electric light does not directly strike sensor, following manufacturer instructions.
 - 2) Open loop devices shall have a 1-6,500 footcandle detection range.
 - 3) Closed loop devices shall have a 1-6,500 footcandle detection range.
 - 4) Combination open and closed loop devices shall have a 1-10,000 footcandle detection range.
 - 5) Closed loop devices that switch lights shall have adjustable switching parameters with a minimum of four settings where the off setpoint can be adjusted to a value of 25, 50, 75, or 100 percent above the on setpoint. Factory default setting shall be 75%. Maintenance of required illumination shall be tested during system commissioning with setpoint adjusted and recorded as required.
 - 6) The photoelectric device shall be a Class 2, low voltage, light sensor with a spectral response measuring wavelengths between 450 and 640 nanometers.
 - 7) Rated for operating conditions of 32-131°F (0-55°C) and less than 90% relative humidity.
 - b. Lumen Maintenance

- 1) Coordinate photocell selection with lumen maintenance software. Photocell sensitivity shall be capable of dimming lights to maintain target illumination levels.
 - 2) Closed loop devices shall be located such that natural and electric light does not directly strike sensor, following manufacturer instructions.
 - 3) The closed loop photoelectric device shall be a Class 2, low voltage, ambient light sensor with a spectral response measuring wavelengths between 450 and 640 nanometers.
 - 4) Sensitivity range shall be 1 to 1,000 footcandles.
 - 5) Rated for operating conditions of 32-131°F (0-55°C) and less than 90% relative humidity.
 - 6) Maintenance of required illumination shall be tested during system commissioning with setpoints adjusted and recorded as required.
- c. Lumen-Maintenance Photocells within Holding Rooms
- 1) The photoelectric device shall be a Class 2, low voltage, weatherproof ambient light sensor capable of sensing light level and adjusting dimming to maintain target set point. Design device to interface directly with the digital input of the lighting control system. The sensor shall supply a signal proportional to the light measured.
 - 2) Photosensor sensitivity range shall be 0 to 200 footcandles.
 - 3) Where distributed lighting control systems do not include an IP65 rated photosensor, provide an accessory module that communicates illumination readings from exterior IP65 rated analog photosensors to the networked lighting control system.
- d. Positive verification Photocells within Holding Rooms
- 1) The photoelectric device shall be a Class 2, low voltage, weatherproof ambient light sensor, IP65 rated.
 - 2) Device shall be utilized by software program to determine if field conditions of room comply with programmed light operation. Non-compliance shall generate a system alarm.
 - 3) Photosensor sensitivity range shall be 0 to 200 footcandles.
 - 4) Where distributed lighting control systems do not include an IP65 rated photosensor, provide an accessory module that communicates illumination readings from exterior IP65 rated analog photosensors to the networked lighting control system.

2.14 PROGRAMMING, CONFIGURATION AND DOCUMENTATION SOFTWARE

- A. PC-native application for optional programming of detailed technician-level parameter information for all DLM products, including all parameters not accessible via BACnet and the handled IR configuration tool. Software must be capable of accessing room-level parameter information locally within the room when connected via the optional LMCI-100 USB programming adapter, or globally for many segment networks simultaneously utilizing standard BACnet/IP communication.
- B. Additional parameters exposed through this method include but are not limited to:
1. Occupancy sensor detection LED disable for performance and other aesthetic spaces where blinking LEDs present a distraction.

2. Six occupancy sensor action behaviors for each controlled load, separately configurable for normal hours and after hours modes. Modes include: No Action, Follow Off Only, Follow On Only, Follow On and Off, Follow On Only with Override Time Delay, Follow Off Only with Blink Warn Grace Time, Follow On and Off with Blink Warn Grace Time.
 3. Separate fade time adjustments per load for both normal and after hours from 0 - 4 hours.
 4. Configurable occupancy sensor re-trigger grace period from 0 - 4 minutes separate for both normal hours and after hours.
 5. Separate normal hours and after hours per-load button mode with modes including: Do nothing, on only, off only, on and off.
 6. Load control polarity reversal so that on events turn loads off and vice versa.
 7. Per-load DR (demand response) shed level in units of percent.
 8. Load output pulse mode in increments of 1second.
 9. Fade trip point for each load for normal hours and after hours that establishes the dimmer command level at which a switched load closes its relay to allow for staggered On of switched loads in response to a dimmer.
- C. Generation of reports at the whole file, partial file, or room level. Reports include but are not limited to:
1. Device list report: All devices in a project listed by type.
 2. Load binding report: All load controller bindings showing interaction with sensors, switches, and daylighting.
 3. BACnet points report: Per room Device ID report of the valid BACnet points for a given site's BOM.
 4. Room summary report: Device manifest for each room, aggregated by common BOM, showing basic sequence of operations.
 5. Device parameter report: Per-room lists of all configured parameters accessible via hand held IR programmer for use with O&M documentation.
 6. Scene report: All project scene pattern values not left at defaults (i.e. 1 = all loads 100 percent, 2 = all loads 75 percent, 3 = all loads 50 percent, 4 = all loads 25 percent, 5-16 = same as scene 1).
 7. Occupancy sensor report: Basic settings including time delay and sensitivities for all occupancy sensors.
- D. Network-wide programming of parameter data in a spreadsheet-like programming environment including but not limited to the following operations:
1. Set, copy/paste an entire project site of sensor time delays.
 2. Set, copy/paste an entire project site of sensor sensitivity settings.
 3. Search based on room name and text labels.
 4. Filter by product type (i.e. LMRC-212) to allow parameter set by product.
 5. Filter by parameter value to search for product with specific configurations.
- E. Network-wide firmware upgrading remotely via the BACnet/IP network.
1. Mass firmware update of entire rooms.
 2. Mass firmware update of specifically selected rooms or areas.
 3. Mass firmware upgrade of specific products

- F. WattStopper Product Number: LMCS-100, LMCI-100

2.15 EMERGENCY LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICES

- A. Emergency Lighting Control Unit - A UL 924 listed device that monitors a switched circuit providing normal lighting to an area. The unit provides normal ON/OFF control of emergency lighting along with the normal lighting. Upon normal power failure the emergency lighting circuit will close, forcing the emergency lighting ON until normal power is restored. Features include:

1. 120/277 volts, 50/60 Hz, 20 amp ballast rating
2. Push to test button
3. Auxiliary contact for remote test or fire alarm system interface

- B. WattStopper Product Numbers: ELCU-100, ELCU-200.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SENSOR INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of ceiling-mounted devices with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, smoke detectors, fire-suppression systems, and partition assemblies.
- B. Install and aim sensors in locations to achieve not less than 90 percent coverage of areas indicated. Do not exceed coverage limits specified in manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. The locations and quantity of sensors shown on the drawings are diagrammatic and indicate only the rooms and spaces to be provided with sensors.
- D. Verify sensor type, quantity, location, aiming and sensitivity with manufacturer's recommendations. Set time delays and light level sensitivities of devices, if applicable, per the specifications.
- E. All controlled spaces shall be tested to insure 90 to 100 percent coverage of the controlled space. If test fails, adjust sensitivity, re-aim, relocate, and/or add sensor(s) as required at no cost to Owner.
- F. The Contractor shall provide the Owner with the training necessary to familiarize the Owner's personnel with the operation and proper adjustment of the occupancy sensing devices and systems.
- G. Power supplies and slave units, if required, shall be located above accessible ceilings.

3.2 WIRING INSTALLATION

- A. Wiring Method: Comply with the requirements in other sections. Minimum conduit size is 3/4inch.

- B. Wiring within Enclosures: Comply with NECA 1. Separate power-limited and nonpower-limited conductors according to conductor manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Size conductors according to lighting control device manufacturer's written instructions unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Splices, Taps, and Terminations: Make connections only on numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes; terminal cabinets; and equipment enclosures.
- E. Install all room/area devices using manufacturer's factory-tested Cat 5e cable with pre-terminated RJ-45 connectors.
 - 1. If pre-terminated cable is not used for room/area wiring, each field-terminated cable shall be tested following installation and testing results submitted to the Manufacturer's Representative for approval prior to proceeding with the Work.
 - 2. If fixtures have internal DLM Control Modules, ensure that they are also connected with Cat 5e cable.
 - 3. Install all room to room network devices using manufacturer-supplied LM-MSTP network wire or wireless devices. Network wire substitution is not permitted and may result in loss of product warranty.
 - 4. Low voltage wiring topology must comply with manufacturer's specifications.
 - 5. Route network wiring as indicated on the Drawings as closely as possible. Document final wiring location, routing and topology on as built drawings.
- F. All line voltage connections shall be tagged to indicate circuit and switched legs.
- G. Test all devices to ensure proper communication.
- H. Calibrate all sensor time delays and sensitivity to guarantee proper detection of occupants and energy savings. Adjust time delay so that controlled area remains lighted while occupied.
- I. Provide written or computer-generated documentation on the configuration of the system including room by room description including:
 - 1. Sensor parameters, time delays, sensitivities, and daylighting setpoints.
 - 2. Sequence of operation, (e.g. manual ON, Auto OFF. etc.)
 - 3. Load Parameters (e.g. blink warning, etc.)
- J. Post start-up tuning - Adjust sensor time delays and sensitivities to meet the Owner's requirements 30 days from beneficial occupancy. Provide a detailed report to the Architect / Owner of post start-up activity.
- K. Tighten all panel Class I conductors from both circuit breaker and to loads to torque ratings as marked on enclosure UL label.
- L. All Class II cabling shall enter enclosures from within low-voltage wiring areas and shall remain within those areas. No Class I conductors shall enter a low-voltage area.

- M. Run separate neutrals for any phase dimmed branch load circuit. Different types of dimming loads shall have separate neutral.
- N. Verify all non-panel-based lighting loads to be free from short circuits prior to connection to room controllers.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify components and power and control wiring according to requirements in other sections.
 - 1. Identify controlled circuits in lighting contactors.
 - 2. Identify circuits or luminaires controlled by photoelectric and occupancy sensors at each sensor.
- B. Label time switches and contactors with a unique designation.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing. Notify Architect and Manufacturer in writing a minimum of 3 weeks prior to system start-up and testing.
- B. Tests and Inspections: Manufacturer's service representative shall perform the following inspections and prepare reports.
 - 1. Verify Class I and II wiring connections are terminated properly by validating system performance.
 - 2. Set IP addresses and other network settings of system front end hardware per facilities IT instructions.
 - 3. Verify / complete task programming for all switches, dimmers, time clocks, and sensors.
 - 4. Verify that the control of each space complies with the Sequence of Operation.
 - 5. Correct any system issues and retest..
- C. Provide a report in table format with drawings, or using a software file that can be opened in the manufacturer's system software including each room or space that has lighting control installed. Indicate the following:
 - 1. Date of test or inspection.
 - 2. Loads per space, or Fixture Address identification.
 - 3. Quantity and Type of each device installed
 - 4. Reports providing each device's settings.
- D. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to evaluate lighting control devices and perform commissioning, testing and inspections.
- E. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Operational Test: After installing time switches and sensors, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper unit operation.
2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

F. Lighting control devices will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

G. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING

A. Before Substantial Completion, arrange and provide a one-day Owner instruction period to designated Owner personnel. Set-up, starting of the lighting control system and Owner instruction includes:

1. Confirmation of entire system operation and communication to each device.
2. Confirmation of operation of individual relays, switches, and sensors.
3. Confirmation of system Programming, photocell settings, override settings, etc.
4. Provide training to cover installation, programming, operation, and troubleshooting of the lighting control system.

3.6 PRODUCT SUPPORT AND SERVICE

A. Factory telephone support shall be available at no cost to the Owner following acceptance. Factory assistance shall consist of assistance in solving application issues pertaining to the control equipment.

3.7 ADJUSTING

A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting sensors to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

1. For occupancy and motion sensors, verify operation at outer limits of detector range. Set time delay to suit Owner's operations.
2. For daylighting controls, adjust set points and deadband controls to suit Owner's operations.
3. Align high-bay occupancy sensors using manufacturer's laser aiming tool.

3.8 FIELD SETTINGS AND START-UP

A. Lighting Control System manufacturer shall provide a factory trained technician to verify and program setpoints for each photocell, occupancy sensor, switching device, and time clock.

B. Technician shall coordinate system connections, monitoring points and alarm protocols with EMS and SCADA systems.

- C. Field start-up shall be complete prior to system commissioning.

3.9 TRAINING

- A. Lighting Control System manufacturer shall provide one day of on-site training after successful completion of system commissioning. Training shall be videotaped and provided to Owner. Training session shall include, but not be limited to:
 - 1. Explanation and demonstration of the operation and adjustable settings native to each type of control device.
 - 2. Explanation and demonstration of the adjustable settings within the software control program.
 - 3. Explanation and demonstration of the current status monitoring screens as well as the ability to generate reports.
 - 4. Explanation of all alarm types, how alarm notification occurs, how alarm conditions are cleared, and how alarms are recorded.
 - 5. Explanation of password protection. Explanation of how password access is modified shall only be provided to select Owner specified personnel.
- B. Lighting Control System O&M manuals shall be provided to each person in attendance.
- C. Sign-in sheet for training session shall be included in Lighting Control System O&M manuals.

3.10 CLEANING

- A. The contractor shall remove all paint spatters and other spots, dirt and debris from the equipment. Clean equipment and devices internally and externally using methods and materials recommended by the manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 26 0943

SECTION 26 1116.12 - SECONDARY UNIT SUBSTATIONS WITH SWITCHBOARDS SECONDARY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes secondary unit substations, each consisting of medium-voltage primary incoming section, transformer section, and low-voltage secondary switchboard section, with the following features:
 - 1. Indoor enclosure.
 - 2. Medium-voltage, metal-enclosed switchgear section.
 - 3. Dry-type transformer.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. BIL: Basic insulation level.
- B. ICCB: Insulated-case circuit breaker.
- C. MCCB: Molded-case circuit breaker.
- D. NETA ATS: Acceptance testing specification.
- E. PCB: Polychlorinated biphenyl.
- F. SPD: Surge protective device.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 1. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.
 - 2. Dimensioned plans and elevations showing major components and features.

- a. Include a plan view and cross section of equipment base, showing clearances, manufacturer's recommended workspace that accounts for breaker service and removal, and locations of penetrations for grounding and conduits.
3. One-line diagram.
4. List of materials.
5. Nameplate legends.
6. The material, size and number of bus bars, and current rating for each bus, including mains and branches of phase, neutral, and ground buses.
7. Short-time and short-circuit current ratings of secondary unit substations and components.
8. Ratings of individual protective devices.

C. Design Data:

1. Time-Current Characteristic Curves: For overcurrent protective devices.
2. Primary Fuses: Submit recommendations and size calculations.
3. Utility company's metering provisions with indication of approval by utility company.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings.

1. Indoor Installations:
 - a. Location plan, showing heavy equipment or truck access paths for maintenance and replacement.
 - b. Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, based on input from installers of the items involved.
 - c. Dimensioned concrete base, outline of secondary unit substation, conduit entries, and grounding equipment locations.
 - d. Support locations, type of support, and weight on each support. Locate structural supports for structure-supported raceways and seismic bracing.
 - e. Location of lighting fixtures, sprinkler piping and heads, ducts, and diffusers.

B. Qualification Data: For testing agency.

C. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates, for transformer assembly, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity, and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

- D. Product Certificates: For secondary unit substations, signed by product manufacturer.
- E. Factory test reports.
- F. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For secondary unit substations and accessories to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member Company of NETA or an NRTL.
 - 1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Certified by NETA or the National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies to supervise on-site testing.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver in shipping splits in sizes that can be moved past obstructions in delivery path.
- B. Coordinate delivery of secondary unit substations to allow movement into designated space.
- C. Store secondary unit substation components protected from weather and so condensation will not form on or in units. Provide temporary heating according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Handle secondary unit substation components according to manufacturer's written instructions. Use factory-installed lifting provisions.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Service Conditions: The unit substation shall be suitable for operation under service conditions specified as usual service conditions in IEEE C37.121, except for the following:
 - 1. Exposure to significant solar radiation.
 - 2. Altitudes above 3300 ft. (1000 m).
 - 3. Exposure to fumes, vapors, or dust.
 - 4. Exposure to explosive environments.
 - 5. Exposure to hot and humid climate or to excessive moisture, including steam, salt spray, and dripping water.
 - 6. Exposure to seismic shock or to abnormal vibration, shock, or tilting.
 - 7. Exposure to excessively high or low temperatures.
 - 8. Unusual transportation or storage conditions.
 - 9. Unusual grounding resistance conditions.
 - 10. Unusual space limitations.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Square D; by Schneider Electric.
 2. Eaton.
 3. Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division.
 4. General Electric Company.

2.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Description: Medium-voltage, primary incoming section; transformer section; and low-voltage secondary switchgear section; and including coordinated circuit breakers, fusible switches, and metering components.
1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
 2. Comply with IEEE C2.
 3. Comply with IEEE C37.121.
 4. Comply with NFPA 70.

2.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: The secondary unit substations shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
1. The term "withstand" means "the secondary unit substation will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified.
 2. Component Importance Factor: 1.5.
 3. Component Amplification Factor: 2.5.
 4. Component Response Modification Factor: 6.0.

2.4 MANUFACTURED UNITS

- A. Indoor Unit Arrangement: Single assembly.
- B. Connections between the primary device and transformer shall be bus, and between the transformer and secondary shall be flexible bus braid unless noted otherwise.
- C. Indoor Enclosure: Steel.
- D. Unit Substation Enclosures Finish (For Indoor): Factory-applied finish in manufacturer's standard gray over a rust-inhibiting primer on treated metal surface.

2.5 MEDIUM-VOLTAGE TERMINAL COMPARTMENT SECTION

- A. Primary Incoming Section: Terminal assembly with adequate space for incoming-cable terminations and surge arresters, complying with NEMA SG4 and meeting thermal, mechanical, and dielectric requirements specified for the transformer section.
- B. Ratings: Suitable for application in three-phase, 60-Hz, solidly grounded-neutral system.
- C. System Voltage: as indicated on the contract drawings.
- D. Surge Arresters: Comply with IEEE C62.11, Distribution Class; metal-oxide-varistor type, connected in each phase of incoming circuit and ahead of any disconnecting device.

2.6 MEDIUM-VOLTAGE METAL-ENCLOSED SWITCHGEAR SECTION

- A. Metal-enclosed, air-interrupter switchgear, with fuses, complying with IEEE C37.20.3.
 - 1. Switchgear shall be arc-resistant, complying with IEEE C37.20.7, Type 2.
- B. Ratings: Comply with IEEE C37.04; and suitable for application in three-phase, 60-Hz, solidly grounded-neutral system.
 - 1. System Voltage: As indicated on the contract drawings.
 - 2. Design Level of Available-Source Fault Current: Integrated short-circuit rating consistent with value of fault current indicated.
 - 3. Main-Bus Rating: As indicated on the contract drawings, continuous.
- C. Interrupter Switches: Stationary, gang operated, and suitable for application at maximum short-circuit rating of integrated switchgear assembly.
 - 1. Rating: 600-A continuous duty and load break.
 - 2. Two-Time Duty-Cycle Fault Closing: 40,000 asymmetrical amperes.
 - 3. Switch Action: No external arc and no significant quantities of ionized gas released into the enclosure.
 - 4. Switch Construction: Supported entirely by interior framework of structure, with copper switchblades and stored-energy operating mechanism.
 - 5. Phase Barriers: Full length of switchblades and fuses for each pole; designed for easy removal; allow visual inspection of switch components if barrier is in place.
 - 6. Protective Shields: Cover live components and terminals.
 - a. Fuse Mounts: Single-frame mounted and de-energized when switch is open.
 - 7. Mechanical Interlock: Prevent opening switch compartment door unless switchblades are open, and prevent closing switch if door is open. Interlock air-interrupter switch with transformer secondary main circuit breaker, preventing switch from being opened or closed unless secondary main circuit breaker is open.
 - 8. Window: Permits viewing switch-blade positions when door is closed.

9. Accessory Set: Tools and miscellaneous items required for interrupter switchgear test, inspection, maintenance, and operation. Include fuse-handling tool as recommended by switchgear manufacturer.
- D. Fuses: Sizes recommended by secondary unit substation manufacturer, considering fan cooling, temperature-rise specification, and cycle loading.
 1. Current-Limiting Fuses: Full-range, fast-replaceable, current-limiting type that will operate without explosive noise or expulsion of gas, vapor, or foreign matter from tube.
 2. Indicator integral with each fuse to show when it has blown.
 3. Spares: Include three fuses in use and three spare fuses in storage clips in each switch.
- E. Surge Arresters: Comply with IEEE C62.11, Distribution Class; metal-oxide-varistor type, with ratings as indicated, connected in each phase of incoming circuit and ahead of any disconnecting device.

2.7 MEDIUM-VOLTAGE INSTRUMENTS SECTION

- A. Instrument Transformers: Comply with IEEE C57.13.
 1. Potential and Current Transformers: Burden and Accuracy Class suitable for connected meters.
- B. Multifunction Digital-Metering Monitor: Microprocessor-based unit suitable for three- or four-wire systems.
 1. Inputs from sensors or 5-A current-transformer secondaries, and potential terminals rated to 600 V.
 2. Switch-selectable digital display with the following features:
 - a. Phase Currents, Each Phase: Plus or minus 1 percent.
 - b. Phase-to-Phase Voltages, Three Phase: Plus or minus 1 percent.
 - c. Phase-to-Neutral Voltages, Three Phase: Plus or minus 1 percent.
 - d. Three-Phase Real Power: Plus or minus 2 percent.
 - e. Three-Phase Reactive Power: Plus or minus 2 percent.
 - f. Power Factor: Plus or minus 2 percent.
 - g. Frequency: Plus or minus 0.5 percent.
 - h. Integrated Demand, with Demand Interval Selectable from 5 to 60 Minutes: Plus or minus 2 percent.
 - i. Accumulated energy, in megawatt hours (joules), plus or minus 2 percent; stored values unaffected by power outages for up to 72 hours.
 3. Communications module suitable for remote monitoring of meter quantities and functions. Interface communication and metering requirements according to other section for "Electrical Power Monitoring and Control."
 4. Mounting: Display and control unit that is flush or semiflush mounted in instrument compartment door.

2.8 DRY-TYPE TRANSFORMER SECTION

- A. Description: IEEE C57.12.01, IEEE C57.12.50 and IEEE C57.12.51, and dry-type, two-winding, secondary unit substation transformer.
- B. Style: Indoor, ventilated, vacuum-pressure, impregnated type, and with insulation system rated at 220 deg C with an 150 deg C average winding temperature rise above a maximum ambient temperature of 40 deg C.
- C. Cooling System: Class AA/FA, air cooled with provisions for future forced-air rating, complying with IEEE C57.12.01.
 - 1. Automatic forced-air cooling system controls, including thermal sensors, fans, control wiring, temperature controller with test switch, power panel with current-limiting fuses, indicating lights, alarm, and alarm-silencing relay.
 - 2. Include mounting provision for fans.
- D. Insulation Materials: IEEE C57.12.01, rated 220 deg C.
 - 1. Insulation Temperature Rise: 150 deg C, maximum rise above 40 deg C.
- E. BIL: 95 kV.
- F. Full-Capacity Voltage Taps: Four nominal 2.5 percent taps, two above and two below rated primary voltage.
- G. Impedance: 5.75 percent.
- H. High-Temperature Alarm: Sensor at transformer with local audible and visual alarm and contacts for remote alarm.

2.9 SECONDARY DISTRIBUTION SECTION SWITCHBOARD

- A. The secondary distribution section shall be drawout, low-voltage switchgear, complying with NEMA PB 2 and UL 891.
- B. Switchboard Structure: Front and rear accessible.
 - 1. Match and align the front and rear of the switchgear.
 - 2. Comply with UL requirements for service entrance equipment.
- C. Switchboard Bus:
 - 1. Use bus bars to connect compartments and vertical sections. Cable connections are not permitted.
 - 2. Main Phase Bus: Uniform capacity the entire length of section.
 - 3. Neutral Bus: 100 percent of phase-bus ampacity, except as indicated. Equip bus with pressure-connector terminations for outgoing circuit neutral conductors. Include braces for neutral-bus extensions for busway feeders.
 - 4. Vertical Section Bus: Extend to spaces for future circuit breakers.

5. Phase- and Neutral-Bus Material: Hard-drawn copper of 98 percent minimum conductivity, with copper feeder circuit-breaker line connections.
6. Ground Bus: Hard-drawn copper of 98 percent minimum conductivity, with pressure connector for feeder and branch-circuit ground conductors, minimum size 1/4-by-2 inches (6 by 50 mm).
7. Neutral bus equipped with pressure-connector terminations for outgoing circuit neutral conductors. Neutral-bus extensions for busway feeders are braced.
8. Neutral Disconnect Link: Bolted, uninsulated, 1/4-by-2-inch (6-by-50-mm) copper bus, arranged to connect neutral bus to ground bus.

D. Switchboard Arrangement:

1. Main Disconnect Device(s): Power circuit breakers.
2. Feeder Protective Devices: ICCBs.

E. ICCBs: Fixed-mounted, electrically operated air-circuit breakers. Comply with UL 1066.

1. With "close" and "open" push buttons and red and green lighted breaker position indicators. Charging time of the motor operator shall not exceed 8 seconds. Operator power shall be from a control power transformer internal to the switchboard.
2. Solid-state monitoring and tripping system to provide system status monitoring, adjustable time-current protection, and shunt trip.
 - a. Interchangeable current sensors and timing circuits for adjustable time-current protection settings and status signals.
 - b. LED indicators or display, with manual reset, to show cause of automatic trip.
 - c. Display panel to indicate that the status of the system circuitry is fully operational, or give fault location based on automatic diagnosis.
 - d. Trip the circuit breaker when closing on a fault.
 - e. Time-current adjustments to achieve protective-device coordination as follows:
 - 1) Adjustable long-delay pickup and time.
 - 2) Individual adjustments for short-delay pickup, time, and I-squared-t setting.
 - 3) Adjustable instantaneous pickup.
 - 4) Individually adjustable ground-fault pickup and time, with I-squared-t setting.
 - f. With built-in connector to test the breaker settings. Provide one test set.
 - g. Battery backup for informational displays after automatic trip, with battery status indicator.

2.10 LOW-VOLTAGE INSTRUMENTS SECTION

A. Instrument Transformers: Comply with IEEE C57.13.

1. Potential Transformers: Secondary voltage rating of 120 V and NEMA C 12.11 Accuracy Class of 0.3 with burdens of W, X, and Y.
2. Current Transformers: Burden and Accuracy Class suitable for connected relays, meters, and instruments.

- B. Multifunction Digital-Metering Monitor: Microprocessor-based unit suitable for three- or four-wire systems.
1. Inputs from sensors or 5-A current-transformer secondaries, and potential terminals rated to 600 V.
 2. Switch-selectable digital display with the following features:
 - a. Phase Currents, Each Phase: Plus or minus 1 percent.
 - b. Phase-to-Phase Voltages, Three Phase: Plus or minus 1 percent.
 - c. Phase-to-Neutral Voltages, Three Phase: Plus or minus 1 percent.
 - d. Three-Phase Real Power: Plus or minus 2 percent.
 - e. Three-Phase Reactive Power: Plus or minus 2 percent.
 - f. Power Factor: Plus or minus 2 percent.
 - g. Frequency: Plus or minus 0.5 percent.
 - h. Integrated Demand, with Demand Interval Selectable from 5 to 60 Minutes: Plus or minus 2 percent.
 - i. Accumulated energy, in megawatt hours (joules), plus or minus 2 percent; stored values unaffected by power outages for up to 72 hours.
 3. Communications module suitable for remote monitoring of meter quantities and functions. Interface communication and metering requirements according to other section for "Electrical Power Monitoring and Control."
 4. Mounting: Display and control unit that is flush or semiflush mounted in instrument compartment door.
- C. Relays: Comply with IEEE C37.90, types and settings as indicated; with test blocks and plugs.
- D. Surge Suppression: Factory installed as an integral part of the low-voltage switchgear, complying with UL 1449 SPD, Type 1, with the following features and accessories:
1. Integral disconnect switch.
 2. Internal thermal protection that disconnects the SPD before damaging internal suppressor components.
 3. Indicator light display for protection status.
 4. Form-C contacts rated at 5 A and 250-V ac, one N.O. and one N.C., for remote monitoring of protection status. Contacts shall reverse on failure of any surge diversion module or on opening of any current-limiting device. Coordinate with building power monitoring and control system.
 5. Surge counter.
- E. Control Power Supply: Control power transformer supplying 120-V control circuits through secondary disconnect devices.
- F. Control Wiring: Factory installed, complete with bundling, lacing, and protection; and complying with the following:
1. Flexible conductors for No. 8 AWG and smaller, for conductors across hinges and for conductors for interconnections between shipping units.
 2. Conductors sized according to NFPA 70 for duty required.

- G. Maintenance Tools: Furnish tools and miscellaneous items required for circuit-breaker and switchgear test, inspection, maintenance, and operation.
1. Racking handle to manually move circuit breaker between "connected" and "disconnected" positions.
 2. Portable test set for testing all functions of circuit-breaker, solid-state trip devices without removal from switchboard.
 3. Relay and meter test plugs suitable for testing switchgear meters and switchgear class relays.
 4. Circuit-Breaker Removal Apparatus: Portable, floor-supported, roller-base, elevating carriage arranged for moving circuit breakers in and out of compartments.
 5. Spare-Fuse Cabinet: Identified and compartmented steel box or cabinet with lockable door.
 6. Storage for Manual: Include a rack or holder, near the operating instructions, for a copy of maintenance manual.

2.11 IDENTIFICATION DEVICES

- A. Compartment Nameplates: Engraved, laminated-plastic or metal nameplate for each compartment, mounted with corrosion-resistant screws. Nameplates and label products are specified in other section for "Identification for Electrical Systems."

2.12 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Factory Tests: Perform design and routine tests according to standards specified for components. Conduct transformer tests according to IEEE C57.12.90. Conduct switchgear and switchboard tests according to NEMA C37.51.
- B. Factory Tests: Perform the following factory-certified tests on each secondary unit substation:
1. Resistance measurements of all windings on the rated voltage connection and on tap extreme connections.
 2. Ratios on the rated voltage connection and on tap extreme connections.
 3. Polarity and phase relation on the rated voltage connection.
 4. No-load loss at rated voltage on the rated voltage connection.
 5. Exciting current at rated voltage on the rated voltage connection.
 6. Impedance and load loss at rated current on the rated voltage connection and on tap extreme connections.
 7. Applied potential.
 8. Induced potential.
 9. Temperature Test: If a transformer is supplied with auxiliary cooling equipment to provide more than one rating, test at lowest kVA Class ONAN or Class AA rating and highest kVA Class ONAF or Class AFA rating.
 - a. Temperature test is not required if a record of a temperature test on an essentially duplicate unit is available.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and space conditions for compliance with requirements for secondary unit substations and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in of conduits and grounding systems to verify the following:
 - 1. Wiring entries comply with layout requirements.
 - 2. Entries are within conduit-entry tolerances specified by manufacturer, and no feeders will have to cross section barriers to reach load or line lugs.
- C. Examine walls, floors, roofs, and concrete bases for suitable conditions for secondary unit substation installation.
- D. Verify that ground connections are in place and that requirements in other section for "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems" have been met. Maximum ground resistance shall be 5 ohms at secondary unit substation location.
- E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with applicable portions of NECA 1, NECA 400, NECA 410, NECA 430, and NEMA SG 11.
- B. Install secondary unit substations on cast-in-place concrete equipment base(s). Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in other section for "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- C. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation and seismic control devices specified in other sections for "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" and for "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- D. Maintain minimum clearances and workspace at equipment according to manufacturer's written instructions and NFPA 70.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in other section for "Identification for Electrical Systems."
 - 1. Install the number of signs required to be readable from each accessible side, but space the signs a maximum of 30 ft. (9 m) apart.
 - 2. Install arc-flash warning labels specified in other section for "Arc-Flash Hazard Analysis."

- B. Operating Instructions: Place printed operating instructions for secondary unit substations, including key interlocking, control sequences, elementary single-line diagram, and emergency procedures with the maintenance materials.

3.4 CONNECTIONS

- A. Ground equipment according to other section for "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
 - 1. At Interior Locations: For grounding to grounding electrodes, use bare copper cable not smaller than No. 4/0 AWG. Bond surge arrester and neutrals directly to the transformer enclosure and then to the grounding electrode system with bare copper conductors. Keep leads as short as practicable with no kinks or sharp bends. Make joints in grounding conductors and loops by exothermic weld or compression connector.
- B. Connect wiring according to other section for "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.5 CLEANING

- A. After completing equipment installation and before energizing, inspect unit components. Remove paint splatters and other spots, dirt, and debris. Repair damaged finish to match original finish. Vacuum interiors of secondary unit substation sections.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- C. Perform tests and inspections.
- D. General Field Testing Requirements:
 - 1. Comply with the provisions of NFPA 70B Ch. "Testing and Test Methods."
 - 2. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test. Certify compliance with test parameters.
 - 3. After installing secondary unit substation but before primary is energized, verify that grounding system at the substation is tested at the specified value or less.
 - 4. After installing secondary unit substation and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
 - 5. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:
 - a. Verify equipment nameplate data complies with Contract Documents.
 - b. Inspect bolted electrical connections for high resistance using one of the following two methods:
 - 1) Use a low-resistance ohmmeter to compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values

that deviate from those of similar bolted connections by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.

- 2) Verify tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-wrench method according to manufacturer's published data or NETA ATS, Table 100.12. Bolt-torque levels shall be according to manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use NETA ATS, Table 100.12.
6. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest.
 7. Prepare test and inspection reports. Record as-left set points of all adjustable devices.

E. Switchgear Field Tests:

1. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:
 - a. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
 - b. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and required area clearances.
 - c. Verify the unit is clean and shipping bracing, loose parts, and documentation shipped inside cubicles have been removed.
 - d. Verify that fuse and circuit-breaker sizes and types correspond to Drawings and coordination study as well as the address of the circuit breaker that is used to identify it in microprocessor-communication software.
 - e. Verify that current and voltage-transformer ratios correspond to Drawings.
 - f. Confirm correct operation and sequencing of electrical and mechanical interlock systems.
 - 1) Attempt closure on locked-open devices. Attempt to open locked-closed devices.
 - 2) Make key exchange with devices operated in off-normal positions.
 - g. Verify appropriate lubrication on moving current-carrying parts and on moving and sliding surfaces.
 - h. Inspect insulators for evidence of physical damage or contaminated surfaces.
 - i. Verify correct barrier and shutter installation and operation.
 - j. Exercise all active components.
 - k. Inspect mechanical indicating devices for correct operation.
 - l. Verify that filters are in place and vents are clear.
 - m. Inspect control power transformers as follows:
 - 1) Inspect for physical damage, cracked insulation, broken leads, connection tightness, defective wiring, and overall general condition.
 - 2) Verify that primary- and secondary-use or circuit-breaker ratings match Drawings and comply with manufacturer's recommendations.
 - 3) Verify correct functioning of drawout disconnecting and grounding contacts and interlocks.
2. Electrical Tests:
 - a. Perform dc voltage insulation-resistance tests on each bus section, phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground, for one minute. If the temperature of the bus is other than plus or minus 20 deg. C, adjust the resulting resistance as provided in NETA ATS Table 100.11.

- 1) Insulation-resistance values of bus insulation shall be according to manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, comply with NETA ATS, Table 100.1. Investigate and correct values of insulation resistance less than manufacturer's recommendations or NETA ATS, Table 100.1.
- 2) Do not proceed to the dielectric-withstand-voltage tests until insulation-resistance levels are raised above minimum values.
- b. Perform a dielectric-withstand-voltage test on each bus section, each phase-to-ground with phases not under test grounded, according to manufacturer's published data. If manufacturer has no recommendation for this test, it shall be conducted according to NETA ATS, Table 100.2. Apply the test voltage for one minute.
 - 1) If no evidence of distress or insulation failure is observed by the end of the total time of voltage application during the dielectric-withstand-voltage test, the test specimen is considered to have passed the test.
- c. Voltage Transformers:
 - 1) Perform secondary wiring integrity test. Verify correct potential at all devices.
 - 2) Verify secondary voltages by energizing the primary winding with system voltage.
- d. Perform current-injection tests on the entire current circuit in each section of switchgear.
 - 1) Perform current tests by secondary injection with magnitudes such that a minimum current of 1.0 A flows in the secondary circuit. Verify correct magnitude of current at each device in the circuit.
 - 2) Perform current tests by primary injection with magnitudes such that a minimum of 1.0 A flows in the secondary circuit. Verify correct magnitude of current at each device in the circuit.
- e. Verify operation of space heaters.
- f. Perform phasing checks on double-ended or dual-source switchgear to ensure correct bus phasing from each source.

F. Medium-Voltage Surge Arrester Field Tests:

1. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:
 - a. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
 - b. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and clearances.
 - c. Verify the arresters are clean.
 - d. Verify that the ground lead on each device is individually attached to a ground bus or ground electrode.
 - e. Verify that the stroke counter is correctly mounted and electrically connected if applicable. Record the stroke counter reading.
2. Electrical Test:
 - a. Perform an insulation-resistance test on each arrester, phase terminal-to-ground. Apply voltage according to manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, comply with NETA ATS, Table 100.1. Replace units that fail to meet recommended minimum insulation resistance listed in the table.

- b. Perform a watts-loss test. Evaluate watts-loss values by comparison with similar units and test equipment manufacturer's published data.

G. Instrument Transformer Field Tests:

1. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:
 - a. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
 - b. Verify correct connection of transformers with system requirements.
 - c. Verify that adequate clearances exist between primary and secondary circuit wiring.
 - d. Verify the unit is clean.
 - e. Verify that all required grounding and shorting connections provide contact.
 - f. Verify correct operation of transformer withdrawal mechanism and grounding operation.
 - g. Verify correct primary- and secondary-fuse sizes for voltage transformers.
 - h. Verify appropriate lubrication on moving current-carrying parts and on moving and sliding surfaces.
2. Electrical Tests of Current Transformers:
 - a. Perform insulation-resistance test of each current transformer and its secondary wiring with respect to ground at 1000-V dc for one minute. For units with solid-state components that cannot tolerate the applied voltage, comply with manufacturer's recommendations. Insulation-resistance values of instrument transformers shall not be less than values shown in NETA ATS, Table 100.5.
 - b. Perform a polarity test of each current transformer according to IEEE C57.13.1. Polarity results shall agree with transformer markings.
 - c. Perform a ratio-verification test using the voltage or current method according to IEEE C57.13.1. Ratio errors shall comply with IEEE C57.13.
 - d. Perform an excitation test on transformers used for relaying applications according to IEEE C57.13.1. Excitation results shall match the curve supplied by the manufacturer or shall comply with IEEE C57.13.1.
 - e. Measure current circuit burdens at transformer terminals according to IEEE C57.13.1. The measured burdens shall match the instrument transformer Accuracy Class rating.
 - f. Perform insulation-resistance tests on the primary winding with the secondary grounded. Test voltages shall comply with NETA ATS, Table 100.5. The insulation-resistance value shall be according to manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, comply with NETA ATS, Table 100.5.
 - g. Perform dielectric-withstand-voltage tests on the primary winding with the secondary grounded. Test voltages shall comply with NETA ATS, Table 100.9. If no evidence of distress or insulation failure is observed by the end of the total time of voltage application, the primary winding is considered to have passed the test.
 - h. Perform power-factor or dissipation-factor tests according to test equipment manufacturer's published data. Power-factor or dissipation-factor values shall be according to manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, comply with test equipment manufacturer's published data.

- i. Verify that current-transformer secondary circuits are grounded and have only one grounding point according to IEEE C57.13.3.
- 3. Electrical Tests of Voltage and Potential Transformers:
 - a. Perform insulation-resistance tests winding-to-winding and each winding-to-ground. Apply the test voltage for one minute according to NETA ATS, Table 100.5. For units with solid-state components that cannot tolerate the applied voltage, follow manufacturer's recommendations. Insulation-resistance values of instrument transformers shall be according to manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, comply with NETA ATS, Table 100.5.
 - b. Perform insulation-resistance tests winding-to-winding and each winding-to-ground. Test voltages shall be applied for one minute according to NETA ATS, Table 100.5. Insulation-resistance values of the transformers shall not be less than values shown in NETA ATS, Table 100.5
 - c. Perform a polarity test on each transformer to verify the polarity marks or H(1)- X(1) relationship. Polarity results shall agree with transformer markings.
 - d. Perform a turns-ratio test on all tap positions. Ratio errors shall not exceed the tolerances specified in IEEE C57.13.
 - e. Measure voltage circuit burdens at transformer terminals. Measured burdens shall be compared to instrument transformer ratings. The measured burdens shall match the instrument transformer Accuracy Class rating.
 - f. Perform a dielectric-withstand-voltage test on the primary windings with the secondary windings connected to ground. The dielectric voltage shall comply with NETA ATS, Table 100.9. The test voltage shall be applied for one minute. If no evidence of distress or insulation failure is observed by the end of the total time of voltage application during the dielectric-withstand-voltage test, the primary windings are considered to have passed the test.
 - g. Perform power-factor or dissipation-factor tests according to test equipment manufacturer's published data. Power-factor or dissipation-factor values shall be according to manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, comply with test equipment manufacturer's published data.
 - h. Verify that voltage-transformer secondary circuits are grounded and have only one grounding point according to IEEE C57.13.3.

H. Microprocessor-Based Protective Relay Field Tests:

- 1. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:
 - a. Record model number, style number, serial number, firmware revision, software revision, and rated control voltage.
 - b. Verify operation of light-emitting diodes, display, and targets.
 - c. Record passwords for each access level.
 - d. Clean the front panel and remove foreign material from the case.
 - e. Check tightness of connections.
 - f. Verify that the frame is grounded according to manufacturer's instructions.

- g. Perform specific inspections and mechanical tests recommended by the manufacturer.
 - h. Verify that as-left tap connections are as specified.
 - i. Verify the presence of surge arresters and that their ratings are as specified.
- 2. Electrical Tests:
 - a. Perform insulation-resistance tests winding-to-winding and each winding-to-ground. Apply voltage according to manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, comply with NETA ATS, Table 100.5. Calculate polarization index; the value of the index shall not be less than 1.0.
 - b. Perform power-factor or dissipation-factor tests on all windings according to the test equipment manufacturer's published data. Investigate and correct power-factor values that exceed:
 - 1) 2.0 percent for power transformers.
 - 2) 5.0 percent for distribution transformers.
 - 3) Measure core insulation resistance at 500 V dc if the core is insulated and the core ground strap is removable. Core insulation-resistance values shall not be less than 1 megohm at 500-V dc.
 - c. Perform a power-factor or dissipation-factor tip-up test on windings greater than 2.5 kV. Tip-up test result exceeding 1.0 percent shall be investigated.
 - d. Perform an applied-voltage test on all high- and low-voltage windings-to-ground. See IEEE C57.12.91, Sections 10.2 and 10.9. The ac dielectric-withstand-voltage test result shall not exceed 75 percent of factory test voltage for one-minute duration. The dc dielectric-withstand-voltage test result shall not exceed 100 percent of the ac rms test voltage specified in IEEE 57.12.91, Section 10.2, for one-minute duration. If no evidence of distress or insulation failure is observed by the end of the total time of voltage application during the dielectric-withstand-voltage test, the test specimen is considered to have passed the test.
 - e. Verify correct secondary voltage, phase-to-phase and phase-to-neutral, after energization and prior to loading.

K. Low-Voltage Power Circuit-Breaker Field Tests:

- 1. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:
 - a. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
 - b. Inspect anchorage, alignment, and grounding.
 - c. Verify that all maintenance devices are available for servicing and operating the breaker.
 - d. Verify the unit is clean.
 - e. Verify that the arc chutes are intact.
 - f. Inspect moving and stationary contacts for condition and alignment.
 - g. Verify that primary and secondary contact wipe and other dimensions vital to satisfactory operation of the breaker are correct.
 - h. Perform mechanical operator and contact alignment tests on both the breaker and its operating mechanism according to manufacturer's published data.
 - i. Verify cell fit and element alignment.

- j. Verify racking mechanism operation.
 - k. Verify appropriate lubrication on moving current-carrying parts and on moving and sliding surfaces.
 - l. Perform adjustments for final protective-device settings according to coordination study provided by end user.
 - m. Record as-found and as-left operation counter readings.
2. Electrical Tests:
- a. Perform insulation-resistance tests for one minute on each pole, phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground with switch closed, and across each open pole. Apply voltage according to manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, comply with NETA ATS, Table 100.1. Insulation-resistance values shall be according to manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, comply with NETA ATS, Table 100.1. Values of insulation resistance less than this table or manufacturer's recommendations shall be investigated.
 - b. Measure contact resistance across each power contact of the circuit breaker. Microhm or dc millivolt drop values shall not exceed the high levels of the normal range as indicated in the manufacturer's published data. If manufacturer's published data is not available, investigate values that deviate from adjacent poles or similar switches by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
 - c. Determine long-time pickup and delay by primary current injection. Long-time pickup values shall be as specified, and the trip characteristic shall not exceed manufacturer's published time-current characteristic tolerance band, including adjustment factors. If manufacturer's curves are not available, trip times shall not exceed the value shown in NETA ATS, Table 100.7.
 - d. Determine short-time pickup and delay by primary current injection. Short-time pickup values shall be as specified, and the trip characteristic shall not exceed manufacturer's published time-current tolerance band.
 - e. Determine ground-fault pickup and delay by primary current injection. Ground-fault pickup values shall be as specified, and the trip characteristic shall not exceed manufacturer's published time-current tolerance band.
 - f. Determine instantaneous pickup value by primary current injection. Instantaneous pickup values shall be as specified and within manufacturer's published tolerances. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, comply with NETA ATS, Table 100.8.
 - g. Test functions of the trip unit by means of secondary injection. Pickup values and trip characteristic shall be as specified and within manufacturer's published tolerances.
 - h. Perform minimum pickup voltage tests on shunt trip and close coils according to manufacturer's published data. Minimum pickup voltage of the shunt trip and close coils shall conform to the manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, comply with NETA ATS, Table 100.20.
 - i. Measure fuse resistance. Investigate fuse-resistance values that deviate from each other by more than 15 percent.
 - j. Verify correct operation of any auxiliary features, such as trip and pickup indicators, zone interlocking, electrical close and trip operation, trip-free

operation, anti-pump function, and trip unit battery condition. Reset all trip logs and indicators. Auxiliary features shall operate according to manufacturer's published data.

- k. Verify operation of charging mechanism. The charging mechanism shall operate according to manufacturer's published data.

L. Insulated-Case/Molded-Case Air-Circuit-Breaker Field Tests:

1. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:

- a. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
- b. Inspect anchorage and alignment.
- c. Verify the unit is clean.
- d. Operate the circuit breaker to ensure smooth operation.
- e. Inspect operating mechanism, contacts, and arc chutes in unsealed units.
- f. Perform adjustments for final protective-device settings according to the coordination study. Set the protective devices according to results in other sections for "Coordination Studies" and for "Arc-Flash Hazard Analysis."

2. Electrical Tests:

- a. Perform insulation-resistance tests for one minute on each pole, phase-to-phase and phase-to ground with the circuit breaker closed, and across each open pole. Apply voltage according to manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, comply with NETA ATS, Table 100.1. Insulation-resistance values shall be according to manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, comply with NETA ATS, Table 100.1. Values of insulation resistance less than this table or manufacturer's recommendations shall be investigated.
- b. Perform a contact/pole-resistance test. Microhm or dc millivolt drop values shall not exceed the high levels of the normal range as indicated in the manufacturer's published data. If manufacturer's published data is not available, investigate values that deviate from adjacent poles or similar switches by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
- c. Determine long-time pickup and delay by primary current injection. Ground-fault pickup values shall be as specified, and the trip characteristic shall not exceed manufacturer's published time-current tolerance band, including adjustment factors.
- d. Determine short-time pickup and delay by primary current injection. Short-time pickup values shall be as specified, and the trip characteristic shall not exceed manufacturer's published time-current tolerance band.
- e. Determine ground-fault pickup and time delay by primary current injection. Ground-fault pickup values shall be as specified, and the trip characteristic shall not exceed manufacturer's published time-current tolerance band.
- f. Determine instantaneous pickup by primary current injection. Instantaneous pickup values shall be as specified and within manufacturer's published tolerances. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, comply with NETA ATS, Table 100.8.
- g. Perform minimum pickup voltage tests on shunt trip and close coils according to manufacturer's published data. Minimum pickup voltage of the shunt trip and close coils shall conform to the manufacturer's published

data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, comply with NETA ATS, Table 100.20.

- h. Verify correct operation of auxiliary features, such as trip and pickup indicators, zone interlocking, electrical close and trip operation, trip-free operation, anti-pump function, and trip unit battery condition. Reset all trip logs and indicators. Auxiliary features shall operate according to manufacturer's published data.
- i. Verify operation of charging mechanism. The charging mechanism shall operate according to manufacturer's published data.

M. Low-Voltage Ground-Fault Protection System Field Tests:

1. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:

- a. Inspect the components for damage and errors in polarity or conductor routing.
 - 1) Verify that ground connection is made on the source side of the neutral disconnect link and on the source side of any ground-fault sensor.
 - 2) Verify that the neutral sensors are connected with correct polarity on both primary and secondary.
 - 3) Verify that phase conductors and the neutral pass through the sensor in the same direction for zero sequence systems.
 - 4) Verify that grounding conductors do not pass through zero sequence sensors.
 - 5) Verify that grounded conductor is solidly grounded.
- b. Verify the unit is clean.
- c. Operate the circuit breaker to ensure smooth operation.
- d. Verify correct operation of functions of the self-test panel if provided.
- e. Verify that the control power transformer has adequate capacity for the system.
- f. Set pickup and time-delay settings according to "Quality Control" Article. Record appropriate operation and test sequences according to NFPA 70, "Services" Article, "Ground-Fault Protection Equipment" Section.

2. Electrical Tests:

- a. Measure the system neutral-to-ground insulation resistance with the neutral disconnect link temporarily removed. Replace the neutral disconnect link after testing. System neutral-to-ground insulation resistance shall be a minimum of 1 megohm. Correct wiring until the minimum is achieved.
- b. Perform ground-fault protective-device pickup tests using primary injection. Results of pickup test shall be greater than 90 percent of the ground-fault protective-device pickup setting and less than 1200 A or 125 percent of the pickup setting, whichever is smaller. Adjust or replace the device until these parameters are achieved.
- c. For summation-type systems utilizing phase and neutral current transformers, verify correct polarities by applying current to each phase-neutral current-transformer pair. This test also applies to MCCBs utilizing an external neutral current transformer. The ground-fault protective device shall operate when current direction is the same relative to polarity marks in the two current transformers. The ground-fault protective device shall not

operate when current direction is opposite relative to polarity marks in the two current transformers.

- d. Measure time delay of the ground-fault protective device at a value equal to or greater than 150 percent of the pickup value. Relay timing shall be according to manufacturer's published data but shall be no longer than one second at 3000 A according to NFPA 70, "Services" Article, "Ground-Fault Protection Equipment" Section.
- e. Verify reduced control voltage tripping capability is 55 percent for ac systems and 80 percent for dc systems. Replace the ground-fault system if the reduced control voltage tripping requirement is not achieved, and retest.
- f. Verify blocking capability of zone interlock systems. Results of zone-blocking tests shall be according to manufacturer's published data and design specifications.

N. Metering Device Field Tests:

1. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:
 - a. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
 - b. Inspect cover gasket, cover glass, condition of spiral spring, disk clearance, contacts, and case shorting contacts, as applicable.
 - c. Verify the unit is clean.
 - d. Verify freedom of movement, end play, and alignment of rotating disk(s).
2. Electrical Tests:
 - a. Verify accuracy of meters at all cardinal points. Meter accuracy shall be according to manufacturer's published data.
 - b. Calibrate meters according to manufacturer's published data. Calibration results shall be within manufacturer's published tolerances.
 - c. Verify all instrument multipliers. Instrument multipliers shall be according to system design specifications.
 - d. Verify that current-transformer and voltage-transformer secondary circuits are intact. Test results shall confirm the integrity of the secondary circuits of current and voltage transformers.

3.7 FOLLOW-UP SERVICE

- A. Voltage Monitoring and Adjusting: After Substantial Completion, if requested by Owner, but not more than six months after Final Acceptance, perform the following voltage monitoring:
 1. During a period of normal load cycles as evaluated by Owner, perform seven days of three-phase voltage recording at the outgoing section of each secondary unit substation. Use voltmeters with calibration traceable to the National Institute of Science and Technology standards and with a chart speed of not less than 1 inch (25 mm) per hour. Voltage unbalance greater than 1 percent between phases, or deviation of any phase voltage from the nominal value by more than plus or minus 5 percent during the test period, is unacceptable.
 2. Corrective Action: If test results are unacceptable, perform the following corrective action, as appropriate:

- a. Adjust transformer taps.
 - b. Rebalance loads.
 - c. Prepare written request for voltage adjustment by electric utility.
 3. Retests: Repeat monitoring, after corrective action has been performed, until satisfactory results are obtained.
 4. Report:
 - a. Prepare a written report covering monitoring performed and corrective action taken.
 - b. For each relay and adjustable circuit breaker, tag the device with adjusting technician's initials and the date of the adjustment. Record the settings and file with test records specified in "Field Quality Control" Article.
- B. Infrared Inspection: Perform the survey during periods of maximum possible loading. Remove all necessary covers prior to the inspection.
1. After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform infrared inspection of the electrical power connections of the unit substation.
 2. Instrument: Inspect distribution systems with imaging equipment capable of detecting a minimum temperature difference of 1deg.C at 30 deg. C.
 3. Record of Infrared Inspection: Prepare a certified report that identifies the testing technician and equipment used, and lists the results as follows:
 - a. Description of equipment to be tested.
 - b. Discrepancies.
 - c. Temperature difference between the area of concern and the reference area.
 - d. Probable cause of temperature difference.
 - e. Areas inspected. Identify inaccessible and unobservable areas and equipment.
 - f. Identify load conditions at time of inspection.
 - g. Provide photographs and thermograms of the deficient area.
 4. Act on inspection results according to the recommendations of NETA ATS, Table 100.18. Correct possible and probable deficiencies as soon as Owner's operations permit. Retest until deficiencies are corrected.

3.8 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain systems.

END OF SECTION 26 1116.12

SECTION 26 1329 - MEDIUM-VOLTAGE, PAD-MOUNTED SWITCHGEAR

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes dead-front, remotely controlled insulated vacuum load and fault interrupting switchgear.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. BIL: Basic Impulse Insulation Level.
- B. Bushing: An insulating structure including a central conductor, or providing a central passage for a conductor, with provision for mounting on a barrier, conducting or otherwise, for insulating the conductor from the barrier and conducting current from one side of the barrier to the other.
- C. Bushing Elbow: An insulated device used to connect insulated conductors to separable insulated connectors on dead-front, pad-mounted switchgear and to provide a fully insulated connection. Also called an "elbow connector."
- D. Bushing Insert: That component of a separable insulated connector that is inserted into a bushing well to complete a dead-front, load break or non-load break, separable insulated connector (bushing).
- E. Bushing Well: A component of a separable insulated connector, either permanently welded or clamped to an enclosure wall or barrier, having a cavity that receives a replaceable component (bushing insert) to complete the separable insulated connector (bushing).
- F. Fault Interrupter: A self-controlled mechanical switching device capable of making, carrying, and automatically interrupting an alternating current. It includes an assembly of control elements to detect overcurrents and control the fault interrupter. A fault interrupter always consists of a switching device, a control unit, and sensors for current and/or voltage sensing.
- G. Hotstick: An insulated stick, usually made of fiberglass that is used to work energized overhead conductors and operate electrical equipment that is overhead, underground, and compartmentalized.
- H. NETA ATS: InterNational Electrical Testing Association, Acceptance Testing Specification.

- I. SCADA: Supervisory control and data acquisition.
- J. Way: A three-phase or single-phase circuit connection to the bus that may contain combinations of switches and protective devices or may be a solid bus.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
 - 2. Time-current characteristic curves for overcurrent protective devices.
- B. Shop Drawings: For pad-mounted switchgear.
 - 1. Include a tabulation of installed devices with features and ratings.
 - 2. Include dimensioned plans and elevations, showing dimensions, shipping sections, and weights of each assembled section. Elevations shall show major components and features, and they will mimic bus diagram.
 - 3. Include a plan view and cross section of equipment base showing clearances, manufacturer's recommended work space, and locations of penetrations for grounding and conduits. Show location of anchor bolts.
 - 4. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 5. Include list of materials.
 - 6. Locate accessory and spare equipment storage.
 - 7. Include single-line diagram.
 - 8. Include control power wiring diagrams.
 - 9. Include copy of nameplate.
 - 10. Switchgear Ratings:
 - a. Voltage.
 - b. Continuous current.
 - c. Short-circuit rating.
 - d. BIL.
 - 11. Design Calculations: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer. Calculate requirements for selecting seismic restraints.
 - 12. Relay settings.
 - 13. Interface data with monitoring or control network.
 - 14. Wiring Diagrams: For each switchgear assembly, include the following:
 - a. Power, signal, and control wiring.
 - b. Three-line diagrams of current and future secondary circuits, showing device terminal numbers and internal diagrams.
 - c. Schematic control diagrams.
 - d. Diagrams showing connections of component devices and equipment.
 - e. Schematic diagrams showing connections to remote devices.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings:

1. Utilities site plan, drawn to scale, showing heavy equipment or truck access paths for maintenance and replacement.
2. Dimensioned concrete base, outline of switchgear, conduit entries, and grounding equipment locations.

B. Qualification Data: For testing agency.

C. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates, for pad-mounted switchgear, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

D. Product Certificates: For pad-mounted switchgear.

1. Switch ratings as listed in IEEE C37.74.
2. Interrupter ratings as listed in IEEE C37.60.
3. Coating system compliance with the IEEE standard listed in "Enclosure" Article.

E. Source quality-control reports.

F. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For switchgear and switchgear components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1. In addition to items specified in other section for "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
 - a. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting overcurrent protective devices.
 - b. Time-current curves, including selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device.
 - c. Record as-left set points of adjustable devices.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Accredited by NETA.

1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Certified by the InterNational Electrical Testing Association or the National Institute for Certification in Engineering

Technologies to supervise on-site testing specified in "Field Quality Control" Article.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. S&C Electric Company – PMH9 style. Any other substitution shall be approved by Campus prior to purchasing.

2.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Manufactured Unit: Pad-mounted switchgear, designed for application in solidly grounded neutral underground distribution systems.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Comply with IEEE C2.
- D. Comply with IEEE C37.74.

2.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: The switchgear shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
 - 1. The term "withstand" means "the switchgear will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified.
 - 2. Component Importance Factor: 1.5.
 - 3. Component Amplification Factor: 2.5.
 - 4. Component Response Modification Factor: 6.0.
- B. Service Conditions:
 - 1. Switchgear shall be suitable for operation under service conditions specified as usual service conditions in IEEE C37.20.3.

2.4 RATINGS

- A. Switchgear is applied to a nominal voltage as indicated on the contract drawings, (L-L) medium-voltage electrical power system. Minimum ratings of the switchgear shall be as follows:
 - 1. Rated Maximum Voltage and Rated BIL: 15.5 kV and 95 kV BIL or as indicated on the contract drawings.

2. Continuous and Load Interrupting Current: 600 A.
3. Short-Time and Short-Circuit Interrupting Current: 25 kA rms Sym.

2.5 SWITCHGEAR ENCLOSURE

- A. Weatherproof enclosure with an integral skid mounting frame, designed for mounting on a concrete pad, suitable to allow skidding or rolling of the switchgear in any direction, and with provision for anchoring the frame to the pad.
- B. Enclosure Integrity: Comply with IEEE C57.12.28 for compartmentalized enclosures that contain energized electrical equipment in excess of 600 V that may be exposed to the public.
 1. Each vertical section shall have the following features:
 - a. Structural design and anchorage adequate to resist loads imposed by 125-mph (200-km/h) wind.
 - b. Space heater operating at one-half or less of rated voltage, sized to prevent condensation, controlled by thermostats to maintain temperature of each section above expected dew point.
 - c. Louvers equipped with insect and rodent screens and filters, and arranged to permit air circulation while excluding rodents and exterior dust.
 - d. Weatherproof ground-fault circuit interrupter duplex receptacles.
 - e. Power for heaters and receptacles shall be provided by control power transformer.
 - f. Skid Mounted: Mount each shipping group on an integral base frame as a complete weatherproof unit.
- C. Corrosion Protection: Enclosure coating system shall be factory applied, meeting the requirements of IEEE C57.12.28, in manufacturer's standard color.
- D. Corrosion Protection: Fabricate the support frame, enclosure base, and the enclosure from stainless steel, ASTM A 167, Type 304 or 304L. Enclosure coating system shall be factory applied, meeting the requirements of IEEE C57.12.28, standard color.

2.6 SWITCHGEAR CONSTRUCTION

- A. Dead-front, front and rear access switchgear.
- B. Each disconnect switch in switched ways shall be in a sealed, dielectric filled steel tank, factory-filled with SF6 gas.
 1. SF6 Gas: Comply with ASTM D 2472. Provide enclosure with pressure gauge and self-sealing fill valve.
- C. Construct switchgear assembly with switched ways that have front-accessible terminations for cables entering from below and with manual operating provisions with a lineman's hotstick.
- D. Trapped Key Interlocks: Kirk key interlock system using a dowel pin design having no openings. Brass housing and 316 stainless-steel key and lock bolts.

- E. Viewing Windows: For each switch, located adjacent to manual operating devices, and positioned to show switch contact position.
- F. Grounding: Provision to make grounding cable and wire connections at each way.

2.7 SWITCHED WAYS

- A. Source Switch Ways: Non-fused, hotstick operated, ganged vacuum load interrupter switches, in series with a visible-break disconnect switch.
 - 1. Rated Continuous Current and Load Switching Current: 600 A.
 - 2. Vacuum Load Interrupter:
 - a. With 24 V dc motor operators to open or close the load interrupter.
 - b. Trip-free switch mechanism. Closing the switch shall be independent of the speed of the operating handle.
 - 3. Visible-Break Disconnect Switch: Three positions, with open, closed, and ground positions. The switch shall be mechanically interlocked so that the vacuum interrupter opens and closes first.
 - a. Switch position indicator, clearly labeled.
 - b. Padlocking and tagging provisions.
- B. Fault Interrupting Switched Ways: Non-fused, hotstick-operated, ganged vacuum fault interrupter switches, in series with a visible-break disconnect. With internally mounted current transformers and electronic overcurrent sensing for single-phase or three-phase ganged tripping of the interrupter. Comply with IEEE C37.60.
 - 1. Rated Continuous Current and Load Switching Current: 600 A.
 - 2. Vacuum Fault Interrupter:
 - a. Operated by a motor-charged stored energy mechanism, with provision to manually charge the mechanism. Charging motors shall operate at 24 V ac.
 - b. Auxiliary Switches: Provide two auxiliary switches, each with field-selectable NC or NO switch position, for connection of remote indication of the position of the switched way. The switches shall be rated at 15 A, 120 V ac, and 1 A, 120 V dc.
 - c. Trip-free switch mechanism when manually operated. Closing the switch shall be independent of the speed of the operating handle.
 - d. Single operating handle and a clearly labeled switch position indicator; open, closed, tripped.
 - e. Operations Counters: Mechanical type, linked to the operating handle of each switched way.
 - f. Padlocking and tagging provisions.
 - 3. Visible-Break Disconnect Switch: Three positions, with open, closed, and ground positions. The switch shall be mechanically interlocked so that the switch cannot be operated unless the vacuum fault interrupter is open.
 - a. Switch position indicator, clearly labeled.
 - b. Padlocking and tagging provisions.

C. Controls:

1. Motor Actuators: "Open," "close," and "stop" push buttons.
2. Switch Status LEDs: "Open" and "closed" lights. Show status of disconnect switch using its auxiliary contact.
3. Motor Actuator Process LEDs: "Opening" and "closing" lights indicating that the selected motor is operating the switch.
4. Power Switch: "On" and "off" toggle switch and circuit protector, to disconnect the dc supply to its motor and provide overload and short-circuit protection.
5. 120 V ac LED to display battery system power level.
6. Battery voltage meter to show battery condition.
7. Local and Remote Selector: In the "local" position remote operation of the switches is disabled and is possible only under the control of switchgear-mounted push buttons.

D. Overcurrent and Control Relays: Field-adjustable microprocessor electronic relays in each phase at indicated locations. Provide for current adjustment from 0 to 600 A.

1. Device Functions: 51/50, 51N/50N, or 51G/50G according to IEEE C37.2.

2.8 POWER SUPPLY

- A. The power supply for instrumentation, communications, and switch operations shall be from a potential transformer installed as part of the switchgear.

2.9 AUTOMATIC SOURCE TRANSFER CONTROLS

- A. An automatic switch control system shall execute manual, automatic source-transfer, and SCADA operation of the source and fault interrupting switch ways. The source-transfer controls shall open an incoming switch way where voltage is lost and close the other incoming switch way if voltage is present. The controls shall include an overcurrent lockout that prevents the closing of a switch way into a system fault.
- B. The automatic switch control system shall execute remote commands received from a SCADA master station and transmit switchgear operation information to a SCADA master station using DNP3 communications protocol. Execution of remote commands shall include enabling of the source-transfer controls and transfer of switch ways to "close," "open," and "ground" positions. Transmission of switchgear information shall include switch way positions and DC supply system status. Additional switchgear information that shall be transmitted follows:
1. Voltage.
 2. Current in load ways.
- C. The control shall have communication port provisions for connection to a multi-mode serial fiber link.

2.10 CONTROL NETWORK

- A. Compliance with ASHRAE 135: Controllers shall support serial MS/TP and Ethernet IP communications and shall be able to communicate directly via RS-485 serial networks and Ethernet 10Base-T networks as a native device.

2.11 BUSHINGS

- A. Separable insulated connectors shall be used to connect primary cable. Comply with requirements in other section for "Medium-Voltage Cables."
 - 1. Bushings: One-piece, 600 A, BIL ratings the same as the connectors. Comply with IEEE 386.
 - 2. Supply a standoff bracket or parking stand for each bushing, mounted horizontally adjacent to each bushing.

2.12 SURGE ARRESTERS

- A. Distribution class; metal-oxide-varistor type, fully shielded, separable elbow type, suitable for plugging into the inserts. Comply with IEEE C62.11 and IEEE 386.

2.13 WARNING LABELS AND SIGNS

- A. Comply with requirements in other section for "Identification for Electrical Systems" for labels and signs.
 - 1. High-Voltage Warning Label: Self-adhesive labels on the outside of the high-voltage compartment door(s). Legend shall be "DANGER HIGH VOLTAGE" printed in two lines of minimum 2-inch (50 mm) high letters. The word "DANGER" shall be in white letters on a red background and the words "HIGH VOLTAGE" shall be in black letters on a white background.
 - 2. Arc-Flash Warning Label: Self-adhesive labels on the outside of the high-voltage compartment door(s), warning of potential electrical arc-flash hazards and appropriate personal protective equipment required.

2.14 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Factory Tests: Comply with requirements in IEEE C37.60 and IEEE C37.74 for testing procedures.
 - 1. Circuit Resistance Test: Verify that switchgear contacts have been properly aligned and current transfer points have been properly assembled.
 - 2. Power-frequency dry withstand voltage test.
 - 3. Dielectric withstand test; one-minute dry power-frequency.
 - 4. Calibrate overcurrent devices for conformance to published time-current characteristic curves.
 - 5. Sealed Tank Leak Test:
 - a. Comply with IEC 62271-1 for test procedure for switchgear using SF6.
 - b. The test procedure for vacuum switchgear shall be as follows:

- 1) Each vacuum tube shall be identified by its serial number. Its vacuum pressure level shall be tested by the manufacturer of the vacuum interrupter. Document the test results.
 - 2) After assembly of the switchgear way, test the vacuum pressure level of the vacuum tubes by the routine dielectric test across the open contacts. The test voltage shall be stated by the manufacturer. The dielectric test shall be carried out after the mechanical routine test.
6. Operating tests shall verify the following:
- a. Switch position indicators and contacts are in the correct position for both the open and closed positions.
 - b. Insulating medium quantity indicator (if provided) is functioning properly.
 - c. Circuit configuration is shown correctly.
 - d. Mechanical interlocks are in place and operative.
 - e. Position and polarity of current transformers meets requirements.
 - f. Control, secondary wiring, and accessory devices are connected correctly.
 - g. Devices and relays actually operate as intended. Circuits for which operation is not feasible shall be checked for continuity.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Upon delivery of switchgear and prior to unloading, inspect equipment for damage.
1. Examine tie rods and chains to verify they are undamaged and tight and that blocking and bracing are tight.
 2. Verify that there is no evidence of load shifting in transit and that readings from transportation shock recorders, if equipped, are within manufacturer's recommendations.
 3. Examine switchgear for external damage, including dents or scratches in doors and sill, and termination provisions.
 4. Compare switchgear and accessories received with the bill of materials to verify that the shipment is complete. Verify that switchgear and accessories conform to the manufacturer's quotation and Shop Drawings. If the shipment is not complete or does not comply with project requirements, notify the manufacturer in writing immediately.
 5. Unload switchgear, observing packing label warnings and handling instructions.
 6. Open compartment doors and inspect components for damage or displaced parts, loose or broken connections, cracked or chipped insulators, bent mounting flanges, dirt or foreign material, and water or moisture.
- B. Handling:
1. Handle switchgear, according to manufacturer's recommendations; avoid damage to the enclosure, termination compartments, base, frame, and internal components. Do not subject switchgear to impact, jolting, jarring, or rough handling.
 2. Transport switchgear upright to avoid internal stresses on equipment mounting assemblies. Do not tilt or tip switchgear.

3. Use spreaders or a lifting beam to obtain a vertical lift and to protect switchgear from straps bearing against the enclosure. Lifting cable pull angles may not be greater than 15 degrees from vertical.
4. Do not damage structure when handling switchgear.

C. Storage:

1. Switchgear may be stored outdoors. If possible, store switchgear at final installation locations on concrete pads. If dry concrete surfaces are not available, use pallets of adequate strength to protect switchgear from direct contact with the ground. Ensure switchgear is level.
2. Protect switchgear from physical damage. Do not store switchgear in the presence of corrosive or explosive gases.
3. Store switchgear with compartment doors closed.

D. Examine roughing-in of conduits and grounding systems to verify the following:

1. Wiring entries comply with layout requirements.
2. Entries are within conduit-entry tolerances specified by manufacturer and no feeders have to cross section barriers to reach load or line lugs.

E. Pre-Installation Checks:

1. Verify removal of any shipping bracing after placement.

F. Verify that ground connections are in place and that requirements in other section for "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems" have been met. Maximum ground resistance shall be 5 ohms at switchgear location.

G. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 SWITCHGEAR INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Equipment Mounting:

1. Install switchgear on cast-in-place concrete equipment bases. Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in other section for "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
2. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation and seismic control devices specified in other section for "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."

C. Install level and plumb, tilting less than 1.5 degrees when energized.

D. Maintain minimum clearances and workspace at equipment according to manufacturer's written instructions and NFPA 70.

E. Maintain minimum clearances and workspace at equipment according to manufacturer's written instructions and IEEE C2.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Ground equipment according to requirement in other section for "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
 - 1. For counterpoise, use tinned bare copper cable not smaller than No. 4/0 AWG, buried not less than 30 inches (765 mm) below grade interconnecting the grounding electrodes. Bond surge arrester and neutrals directly to the switchgear enclosure and then to the grounding electrode system with bare copper conductors, sized as shown. Keep lead lengths as short as practicable with no kinks or sharp bends.
 - 2. Fence and equipment connections shall not be smaller than No. 4 AWG. Ground fence at each gate post and corner post and at intervals not exceeding 10 ft. (3050 mm). Bond each gate section to the fence post using 1/8 by 1 inch (3 by 25 mm) flexible braided copper strap and clamps.
 - 3. Make joints in grounding conductors and loops by exothermic weld or compression connector.
 - 4. Terminate all grounding and bonding conductors on a common equipment grounding terminal on the switchgear enclosure.
 - 5. Complete the switchgear grounding and surge protector connections prior to making any other electrical connections.
- B. Connect wiring according to requirement in other section for "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
 - 1. Maintain air clearances between energized live parts and between live parts and ground for exposed connections in accordance with manufacturer recommendations.
 - 2. Bundle associated phase, neutral, and equipment grounding conductors together within the switchgear enclosure. Arrange conductors such that there is not excessive strain on the connections that could cause loose connections. Allow adequate slack for expansion and contraction of conductors.
- C. Terminate medium-voltage cables in incoming section of switchgear according to requirement in other section for "Medium-Voltage Cables."

3.4 SIGNS AND LABELS

- A. Comply with the installation requirements for labels and signs specified in other section for "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Install warning signs as required to comply with OSHA 29 CFR 1910.269.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

C. Perform tests and inspections.

D. General Field Testing Requirements:

1. Comply with the provisions of NFPA 70B, "Testing and Test Methods" chapter.
2. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test. Certify compliance with test parameters.
3. After installing switchgear but before primary is energized, verify that grounding system at the switchgear is tested at the specified value or less.
4. After installing switchgear and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test for compliance with requirements.

E. Medium-Voltage Switchgear Field Tests:

1. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:
 - a. Verify that current and voltage transformer ratios correspond to Drawings.
 - b. Inspect bolted electrical connections using calibrated torque-wrench method according to manufacturer's published data or NETA ATS, Table 100.12. Bolt-torque levels shall be according to manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use NETA ATS, Table 100.12. Investigate values that deviate from those of similar bolted connections by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
 - c. Confirm correct operation and sequencing of electrical and mechanical interlock systems.
 - 1) Attempt closure on locked-open devices. Attempt to open locked-closed devices.
 - 2) Make key exchange with devices operated in off-normal positions.
 - d. Inspect control power transformers.
 - 1) Inspect for physical damage, cracked insulation, broken leads, tightness of connections, defective wiring, and overall general condition.
 - 2) Verify that primary and secondary fuse or circuit breaker ratings match Drawings.
2. Electrical Tests:
 - a. Inspect bolted electrical connections using a low-resistance ohmmeter to compare bolted resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from those of similar bolted connections by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
 - b. Perform dc voltage insulation-resistance tests on each bus section, phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground, for one minute. If the temperature of the bus is other than plus or minus 20 deg C, adjust the resulting resistance as provided in NETA ATS, Table 100.11.
 - 1) Insulation-resistance values of bus insulation shall be according to manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, comply with NETA ATS, Table 100.1. Investigate and correct values of insulation resistance less than manufacturer's recommendations or NETA ATS, Table 100.1.
 - 2) Do not proceed to the dielectric withstand voltage tests until insulation-resistance levels are raised above minimum values.

- c. Perform a dielectric withstand voltage test on each bus section, each phase-to-ground with phases not under test grounded, according to manufacturer's published data. If manufacturer has no recommendation for this test, it shall be conducted according to NETA ATS, Table 100.2. Apply the test voltage for one minute.
 - 1) If no evidence of distress or insulation failure is observed by the end of the total time of voltage application during the dielectric withstand test, the test specimen is considered to have passed the test.
- d. Perform insulation-resistance tests on control wiring with respect to ground. Applied potential shall be 500 V dc for 300 V-rated cable and 1000 V dc for 600 V-rated cable. Test duration shall be one minute. For units with solid-state components or control devices that cannot tolerate the applied voltage, follow the manufacturer's recommendation.
 - 1) Minimum insulation-resistance values of control wiring shall not be less than two megohms.
- e. Voltage Transformers:
 - 1) Perform secondary wiring integrity test. Verify correct potential at all devices.
 - 2) Verify secondary voltages by energizing the primary winding with system voltage.
- f. Perform current-injection tests on the entire current circuit in each section of switchgear.
 - 1) Perform current tests by secondary injection with magnitudes such that a minimum current of 1.0 A flows in the secondary circuit. Verify correct magnitude of current at each device in the circuit.
 - 2) Perform current tests by primary injection with magnitudes such that a minimum of 1.0 A flows in the secondary circuit. Verify correct magnitude of current at each device in the circuit.
- g. Perform system function tests according to "System Function Tests" Article.
- h. Verify operation of space heaters.
- i. Perform phasing checks on double-ended or dual-source switchgear to ensure correct bus phasing from each source.

F. Medium-Voltage Vacuum Interrupter Field Tests:

- 1. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:
 - a. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
 - b. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and required clearances.
 - c. Verify that maintenance devices such as special tools and gages specified by the manufacturer are available for servicing and operating the breaker.
 - d. Verify the unit is clean.
 - e. Perform mechanical operation tests on operating mechanism according to manufacturer's published data.
 - f. Measure critical distances on operating mechanism as recommended by the manufacturer. Critical distances of the operating mechanism shall be according to manufacturer's published data.
 - g. Verify cell fit and element alignment.
 - h. Verify racking mechanism operation.

- i. Verify appropriate lubrication on moving current-carrying parts and on moving and sliding surfaces.
 - j. Verify appropriate lubrication on moving current-carrying parts and on moving and sliding surfaces.
 - k. Perform time-travel analysis. Travel and velocity values shall be according to manufacturer's published data.
 - l. Record as-found and as-left operation counter reading. Operation counter shall advance one digit per close-open cycle.
2. Electrical Tests:
- a. Perform insulation-resistance tests for one minute on each pole, phase-to-phase and phase-to ground with switch closed, and across each open pole. Apply voltage according to manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, comply with NETA ATS, Table 100.1. Insulation-resistance values shall be according to manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, comply with NETA ATS, Table 100.1. Investigate and correct values of insulation resistance less than this table or manufacturer's recommendations. Dielectric-withstand-voltage tests shall not proceed until insulation-resistance levels are raised above minimum values.
 - b. Perform a contact/pole-resistance test. Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from those of similar bolted connections by more than 50 percent of the lowest value. Microhm or dc millivolt drop values shall not exceed the high levels of the normal range according to manufacturer's published data. If manufacturer's published data is not available, investigate values that deviate from adjacent poles or similar switches by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
 - c. Perform minimum pickup voltage tests on trip and close coils according to manufacturer's published data. Minimum pickup voltage of the trip and close coils shall comply with manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, comply with NETA ATS, Table 100.20.
 - d. Verify correct operation of any auxiliary features, such as electrical close and trip operation, trip-free operation, and anti-pump function. Auxiliary features shall operate according to manufacturer's published data.
 - e. Trip circuit breaker by operation of each protective device. Reset trip logs and indicators.
 - f. Perform power-factor or dissipation-factor tests on each pole with the breaker open and each phase with the breaker closed. Power-factor or dissipation-factor values shall comply with manufacturer's published data.
 - g. Perform vacuum bottle integrity (dielectric-withstand-voltage) test across each vacuum bottle, with the contacts in the "open" position according to manufacturer's published data. If no evidence of distress or insulation failure is observed by the end of the total time of voltage application during the vacuum bottle integrity test, the specimen is considered to have passed the test.
 - h. Perform a dielectric-withstand-voltage test according to manufacturer's published data. If no evidence of distress or insulation failure is observed by the end of the total time of voltage application during the dielectric-withstand-voltage test, the specimen is considered to have passed the test.

G. Microprocessor-Based Protective Relay Field Tests:

1. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:
 - a. Record model number, style number, serial number, firmware revision, software revision, and rated control voltage.
 - b. Verify operation of light-emitting diodes, display, and targets.
 - c. Record passwords for each access level.
 - d. Clean the front panel and remove foreign material from the case.
 - e. Check tightness of connections.
 - f. Verify that the frame is grounded according to manufacturer's instructions.
 - g. Set the relay according to results in other sections for "Coordination Studies" and "Arc-Flash Hazard Analysis."
 - h. Download settings from the relay. Print a copy of the settings for the report and compare the settings to those specified in the coordination study.
2. Electrical Tests:
 - a. Perform insulation-resistance tests from each circuit to the grounded frame according to manufacturer's published data.
 - b. Apply voltage or current to analog inputs, and verify correct registration of the relay meter functions.
 - c. Functional Operation: Check functional operation of each element used in the protection scheme.
 - d. Control Verification:
 - 1) Functional Tests:
 - a) Check operation of all active digital inputs.
 - b) Check output contacts or silicone-controlled rectifiers, preferably by operating the controlled device, such as circuit breaker, auxiliary relay, or alarm.
 - c) Check internal logic functions used in protection scheme.
 - d) Upon completion of testing, reset min/max recorders, communications statistics, fault counters, sequence-of-events recorder, and event records.
 - 2) In-Service Monitoring: After the equipment is initially energized, measure magnitude and phase angle of inputs and verify expected values.

H. Ground Resistance Test:

1. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:
 - a. Verify ground system complies with the Contract Documents and NFPA 70 "Grounding and Bonding" Article.
 - b. Inspect physical and mechanical condition. Grounding system electrical and mechanical connections shall be free of corrosion.
 - c. Inspect bolted electrical connections using a calibrated torque-wrench method according to manufacturer's published data or NETA ATS, Table 100.12. Bolt-torque levels shall be according to manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use NETA ATS, Table 100.12. Investigate values that deviate from those of similar bolted connections by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
 - d. Inspect anchorage.

2. Electrical Tests:

- a. Perform fall-of-potential or alternative test according to IEEE 81 on the main grounding electrode or system. The resistance between the main grounding electrode and ground shall be no more than 5 ohms].
- b. Perform point-to-point tests to determine the resistance between the main grounding system and all major electrical equipment frames, system neutral, and derived neutral points. Investigate point-to-point resistance values that exceed 0.5 ohms. Compare equipment nameplate data with Contract Documents.
- c. Inspect bolted electrical connections for high resistance using a low-resistance ohmmeter to compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from those of similar bolted connections by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
- d. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
- e. Inspect anchorage.

I. Switchgear will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

J. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.6 SYSTEM FUNCTION TESTS

A. System function tests shall prove the correct interaction of sensing, processing, and action devices. Perform system function tests after "Field Quality Control" tests have been completed and all components have passed specified tests.

1. Develop test parameters and perform tests for evaluating performance of integral components and their functioning as a complete unit within design requirements and manufacturer's published data.
2. Verify the correct operation of interlock safety devices for fail-safe functions in addition to design function.
3. Verify the correct operation of sensing devices, alarms, and indicating devices.

3.7 FOLLOW-UP SERVICE

A. Infrared Inspection: Perform the survey during periods of maximum possible loading. Remove all necessary covers prior to the inspection.

1. After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform infrared inspection of the electrical power connections of the switchgear.
2. Instrument: Inspect distribution systems with imaging equipment capable of detecting a minimum temperature difference of 1 deg C at 30 deg C.
3. Record of Infrared Inspection: Prepare a certified report that identifies the testing technician and equipment used, and lists the results as follows:
 - a. Description of equipment to be tested.
 - b. Discrepancies.
 - c. Temperature difference between the area of concern and the reference area.
 - d. Probable cause of temperature difference.

- e. Areas inspected. Identify inaccessible and unobservable areas and equipment.
 - f. Identify load conditions at time of inspection.
 - g. Provide photographs and thermograms of the deficient area.
- 4. Act on inspection results according to the recommendations of NETA ATS, Table 100.18. Correct possible and probable deficiencies as soon as Owner's operations permit. Retest until deficiencies are corrected.

3.8 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain systems.

END OF SECTION 26 1329

SECTION 26 2416 - PANELBOARDS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Distribution panelboards.
 - 2. Lighting and appliance branch-circuit panelboards.
 - 3. Electronic-grade panelboards.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. ATS: Acceptance testing specification.
- B. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.
- C. GFEP: Ground-fault equipment protection.
- D. MCCB: Molded-case circuit breaker.
- E. SPD: Surge protective device.
- F. VPR: Voltage protection rating.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of panelboard.
 - 1. Include materials, switching and overcurrent protective devices, SPDs, accessories, and components indicated.
 - 2. Include dimensions and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each panelboard and related equipment.
 - 1. Include dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details.
 - 2. Show tabulations of installed devices with nameplates, conductor termination sizes, equipment features, and ratings.

3. Detail enclosure types including mounting and anchorage, environmental protection, knockouts, corner treatments, covers and doors, gaskets, hinges, and locks.
4. Detail bus configuration, current, and voltage ratings.
5. Short-circuit current rating of panelboards and overcurrent protective devices.
6. Include evidence of NRTL listing for SPD as installed in panelboard.
7. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices and auxiliary components.
8. Include wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
9. Key interlock scheme drawing and sequence of operations.
10. Include time-current coordination curves for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device included in panelboards. Submit on translucent log-log graph paper; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device. Include an Internet link for electronic access to downloadable PDF of the coordination curves.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
- B. Panelboard Schedules: For installation in panelboards. Submit final versions after load balancing.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For panelboards and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in other section for "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
 1. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting overcurrent protective devices.
 2. Time-current curves, including selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device that allows adjustments.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: ISO 9001 or 9002 certified.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Remove loose packing and flammable materials from inside panelboards; install temporary electric heating (250 W per panelboard) to prevent condensation.
- B. Handle and prepare panelboards for installation according to NECA 407.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations:

1. Do not deliver or install panelboards until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, work above panelboards is complete, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
2. Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:
 - a. Ambient Temperature: Not exceeding [minus 22 deg F (minus 30 deg C)] [23 deg F (minus 5 deg C)] to plus 104 deg F (plus 40 deg C).
 - b. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet (2000 m).

B. Service Conditions: NEMA PB 1, usual service conditions, as follows:

1. Ambient temperatures within limits specified.
2. Altitude not exceeding 6600 feet (2000 m).

1.10 WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace panelboards that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Panelboard Warranty Period: 18 months from date of Substantial Completion.

B. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace SPD that fails in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. SPD Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PANELBOARDS COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fabricate and test panelboards according to IEEE 344 to withstand seismic forces defined in other section for "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- B. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for panelboards including clearances between panelboards and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- D. Comply with NEMA PB 1.
- E. Comply with NFPA 70.
- F. Enclosures: Flush and Surface-mounted, dead-front cabinets.
 1. Rated for environmental conditions at installed location.

- a. Indoor Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
 - b. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R.
 - c. Kitchen or Wash-Down Areas: NEMA 250, Type 4X, stainless steel.
 - d. Other Wet or Damp Indoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 4.
 - e. Indoor Locations Subject to Dust, Falling Dirt, and Dripping Noncorrosive Liquids: NEMA 250, Type 5.
 2. Height: 84 inches (2.13 m) maximum.
 3. Hinged Front Cover: Entire front trim hinged to box and with standard door within hinged trim cover. Trims shall cover all live parts and shall have no exposed hardware.
 4. Gutter Extension and Barrier: Same gage and finish as panelboard enclosure; integral with enclosure body. Arrange to isolate individual panel sections.
 5. Finishes:
 - a. Panels and Trim: Steel, factory finished immediately after cleaning and pretreating with manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-on finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat.
 - b. Back Boxes: Same finish as panels and trim.
- G. Incoming Mains:
1. Location: Top and Bottom.
 2. Main Breaker: Main lug interiors up to 400 amperes shall be field convertible to main breaker.
- H. Phase, Neutral, and Ground Buses:
1. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
 - a. Plating shall run entire length of bus.
 - b. Bus shall be fully rated the entire length.
 2. Interiors shall be factory assembled into a unit. Replacing switching and protective devices shall not disturb adjacent units or require removing the main bus connectors.
 3. Equipment Ground Bus: Adequate for feeder and branch-circuit equipment grounding conductors; bonded to box.
 4. Full-Sized Neutral: Equipped with full-capacity bonding strap for service entrance applications. Mount electrically isolated from enclosure. Do not mount neutral bus in gutter.
- I. Conductor Connectors: Suitable for use with conductor material and sizes.
1. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
 2. Terminations shall allow use of 75 deg C rated conductors without derating.
 3. Size: Lugs suitable for indicated conductor sizes, with additional gutter space, if required, for larger conductors.
 4. Main and Neutral Lugs: Mechanical type, with a lug on the neutral bar for each pole in the panelboard.
 5. Ground Lugs and Bus-Configured Terminators: Mechanical type, with a lug on the bar for each pole in the panelboard.

6. Feed-Through Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at opposite end of bus from incoming lugs or main device.
 7. Subfeed (Double) Lugs: Mechanical type suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at same end of bus as incoming lugs or main device.
 8. Gutter-Tap Lugs: Mechanical type suitable for use with conductor material and with matching insulating covers. Locate at same end of bus as incoming lugs or main device.
- J. NRTL Label: Panelboards shall be labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authority having jurisdiction for use as service equipment with one or more main service disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices. Panelboards shall have meter enclosures, wiring, connections, and other provisions for utility metering. Coordinate with utility company for exact requirements.
- K. Future Devices: Panelboards or load centers shall have mounting brackets, bus connections, filler plates, and necessary appurtenances required for future installation of devices.
1. Percentage of Future Space Capacity: 20 percent.
- L. Panelboard Short-Circuit Current Rating: Fully rated to interrupt symmetrical short-circuit current available at terminals. Assembly listed by an NRTL for 100 percent interrupting capacity. However, if the short-circuit & coordination study requires higher AIC rating, then the contractor shall provide higher rated panels without any additional cost to the owners. It is highly recommended that short-circuit & coordination study be prepared prior to ordering the panels.
1. Panelboards and overcurrent protective devices rated 240 V or less shall have short-circuit ratings as shown on Drawings, but not less than 10,000 A rms symmetrical.
 2. Panelboards and overcurrent protective devices rated above 240 V and less than 600 V shall have short-circuit ratings as shown on Drawings, but not less than 14,000 A rms symmetrical.
- M. Dwelling Unit Load Center Short-Circuit Current Rating: Provide current limiting fuses or breakers at the meter center/distribution panel to limit the interrupt symmetrical short-circuit current at the terminals of load centers in Dwelling Units to be not more than 10,000 AIC.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Panelboards shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified."
- B. Surge Suppression: Factory installed as an integral part or remote of indicated panelboards, complying with UL 1449 SPD Type 2.

2.3 POWER PANELBOARDS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Square D; by Schneider Electric
 - 2. Eaton.
 - 3. Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division.
 - 4. General Electric Company; GE Energy Management - Electrical Distribution.
- B. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, distribution type.
- C. Doors: Secured with vault-type latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.
 - 1. For doors more than 36 inches (914 mm) high, provide two latches, keyed alike.
- D. Mains: Circuit breaker.
- E. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices for Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes 125 A and Smaller: Bolt-on circuit breakers.
- F. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices for Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes Larger Than 125 A: Bolt-on circuit breakers.

2.4 LIGHTING AND APPLIANCE BRANCH-CIRCUIT PANELBOARDS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Eaton.
 - 2. General Electric Company; GE Energy Management - Electrical Distribution.
 - 3. Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division.
 - 4. Square D; by Schneider Electric.
- B. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, lighting and appliance branch-circuit type.
- C. Mains: Circuit breaker or lugs only.
- D. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Bolt-on circuit breakers, replaceable without disturbing adjacent units.
- E. Doors: Door-in-door construction with concealed hinges; secured with multipoint latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike. Outer door shall permit full access to the panel interior. Inner door shall permit access to breaker operating handles and labeling, but current carrying terminals and bus shall remain concealed.

2.5 ELECTRONIC-GRADE PANELBOARDS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Eaton.
 - 2. General Electric Company; GE Energy Management - Electrical Distribution.
 - 3. Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division.
 - 4. Square D; by Schneider Electric.
- B. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1; with factory-installed, integral SPD; labeled by an NRTL for compliance with UL 67 and UL 1449 after installing SPD.
- C. Doors: Secured with vault-type latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.
- D. Main Overcurrent Protective Devices: Bolt-on thermal-magnetic circuit breakers.
- E. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Bolt-on thermal-magnetic circuit breakers.
- F. SPD.
 - 1. Peak Surge Current Rating: The minimum single-pulse surge current withstand rating per phase shall not be less than 100 kA. The peak surge current rating shall be the arithmetic sum of the ratings of the individual MOVs in a given mode.
 - 2. Protection modes and UL 1449 VPR for grounded wye circuits with 480Y/277 V or 208Y/120 V, three-phase, four-wire circuits shall not exceed the following:
 - a. Line to Neutral: 1200 V for 480Y/277 V or 700 V for 208Y/120 V.
 - b. Line to Ground: 1200 V for 480Y/277 V or 700 V for 208Y/120 V.
 - c. Neutral to Ground: 1200 V for 480Y/277 V or 700 V for 208Y/120 V.
 - d. Line to Line: 2000 V for 480Y/277 V or 1200 V for 208Y/120 V.
 - 3. Protection modes and UL 1449 VPR for 240/120-V, single-phase, three-wire circuits shall not exceed the following:
 - a. Line to Neutral: 700 V.
 - b. Line to Ground: 700 V.
 - c. Neutral to Ground: 700 V.
 - d. Line to Line: 1200 V.
 - 4. SCCR: Equal to or exceed 100 kA.
 - 5. Inominal Rating: 20 kA.
- G. Buses:
 - 1. Copper phase and neutral buses; 200 percent capacity neutral bus and lugs.
 - 2. Copper equipment and isolated ground buses.

2.6 DISCONNECTING AND OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Eaton.
2. General Electric Company; GE Energy Management - Electrical Distribution.
3. Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division.

B. MCCB: Comply with UL 489, with interrupting capacity to meet available fault currents.

1. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers:
 - a. Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads.
 - b. Instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits.
 - c. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
2. GFCI Circuit Breakers: Single- and double-pole configurations with Class A ground-fault protection (6-mA trip).
3. GFEP Circuit Breakers: Class B ground-fault protection (30-mA trip).
4. Arc-Fault Circuit Interrupter Circuit Breakers: Comply with UL 1699; 120/240-V, single-pole configuration.
5. Subfeed Circuit Breakers: Vertically mounted.
6. MCCB Features and Accessories:
 - a. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
 - b. Breaker handle indicates tripped status.
 - c. UL listed for reverse connection without restrictive line or load ratings.
 - d. Lugs: Mechanical style, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor materials.
 - e. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads.
 - f. Communication Capability: Circuit-breaker-mounted communication module with functions and features compatible with power monitoring and control system specified in other section for "Electrical Power Monitoring and Control."
 - g. Shunt Trip: 120-V trip coil energized from separate circuit, set to trip at 55 percent of rated voltage.
 - h. Undervoltage Trip: Set to operate at 35 to 75 percent of rated voltage without intentional time delay.
 - i. Auxiliary Contacts: One, SPDT switch with "a" and "b" contacts; "a" contacts mimic circuit-breaker contacts and "b" contacts operate in reverse of circuit-breaker contacts.
 - j. Alarm Switch: Single-pole, normally open contact that actuates only when circuit breaker trips.
 - k. Multipole units enclosed in a single housing with a single handle or factory assembled to operate as a single unit.
 - l. Handle Padlocking Device: Fixed attachment, for locking circuit-breaker handle in on or off position.
 - m. Handle Clamp: Loose attachment, for holding circuit-breaker handle in on position.

2.7 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Panelboard Label: Manufacturer's name and trademark, voltage, amperage, number of phases, and number of poles shall be located on the interior of the panelboard door.

- B. Breaker Labels: Faceplate shall list current rating, UL and IEC certification standards, and AIC rating.
- C. Circuit Directory: Computer-generated circuit directory mounted inside panelboard door with transparent plastic protective cover.
 - 1. Circuit directory shall identify specific purpose with detail sufficient to distinguish it from all other circuits.

2.8 ACCESSORY COMPONENTS AND FEATURES

- A. Accessory Set: Include tools and miscellaneous items required for overcurrent protective device test, inspection, maintenance, and operation.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify actual conditions with field measurements prior to ordering panelboards to verify that equipment fits in allocated space in, and comply with, minimum required clearances specified in NFPA 70.
- B. Receive, inspect, handle, and store panelboards according to NECA 407.
- C. Examine panelboards before installation. Reject panelboards that are damaged, rusted, or have been subjected to water saturation.
- D. Examine elements and surfaces to receive panelboards for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of panelboards and components with other construction that penetrates walls or is supported by them, including electrical and other types of equipment, raceways, piping, encumbrances to workspace clearance requirements, and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.
- B. Comply with NECA 1.
- C. Install panelboards and accessories according to NECA 407.
- D. Equipment Mounting:
 - 1. Attach panelboard to the vertical finished or structural surface behind the panelboard.
 - 2. Comply with requirements for seismic control devices specified in other section for "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."

- E. Comply with mounting and anchoring requirements specified in other section for "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- F. Mount top of trim 90 inches (2286 mm) above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Mount panelboard cabinet plumb and rigid without distortion of box.
- H. Mount recessed panelboards with fronts uniformly flush with wall finish and mating with back box.
- I. Mount surface-mounted panelboards to steel slotted supports 5/8 inch (16 mm) in depth. Orient steel slotted supports vertically.
- J. Install overcurrent protective devices and controllers not already factory installed.
 - 1. Set field-adjustable, circuit-breaker trip ranges.
 - 2. Tighten bolted connections and circuit breaker connections using calibrated torque wrench or torque screwdriver per manufacturer's written instructions.
- K. Make grounding connections and bond neutral for services and separately derived systems to ground. Make connections to grounding electrodes, separate grounds for isolated ground bars, and connections to separate ground bars.
- L. Install filler plates in unused spaces.
- M. Stub four 1-inch (25 mm) empty conduits from panelboard into accessible ceiling space or space designated to be ceiling space in the future. Stub four 1-inch (25 mm) empty conduits into raised floor space or below slab not on grade.
- N. Arrange conductors in gutters into groups and bundle and wrap with wire ties after completing load balancing.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; install warning signs complying with requirements in other section for "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Create a directory to indicate installed circuit loads after balancing panelboard loads; incorporate Owner's final room designations. Obtain approval before installing. Handwritten directories are not acceptable. Install directory inside panelboard door.
- C. Panelboard Nameplates: Label each panelboard with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in other section for "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- D. Device Nameplates: Label each branch circuit device in power panelboards with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in other section for "Identification for Electrical Systems."

- E. Install warning signs complying with requirements in other section for "Identification for Electrical Systems" identifying source of remote circuit.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
 - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- C. Acceptance Testing Preparation:
 - 1. Test insulation resistance for each panelboard bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
 - 2. Test continuity of each circuit.
- D. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test for low-voltage air circuit breakers and low-voltage surge arrestors stated in NETA ATS, Paragraph 7.6 Circuit Breakers and Paragraph 7.19.1 Surge Arrestors, Low-Voltage. Perform optional tests. Certify compliance with test parameters.
 - 2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
 - 3. Perform the following infrared scan tests and inspections and prepare reports:
 - a. Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each panelboard. Remove front panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
 - b. Instruments and Equipment:
 - 1) Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
- E. Panelboards will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies panelboards included and that describes scanning results, with comparisons of the two scans. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust moving parts and operable components to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.

- B. Set field-adjustable circuit-breaker trip ranges as specified in other section for "Coordination Studies."
- C. Load Balancing: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, measure load balancing and make circuit changes. Prior to making circuit changes to achieve load balancing, inform Architect of effect on phase color coding.
 - 1. Measure loads during period of normal facility operations.
 - 2. Perform circuit changes to achieve load balancing outside normal facility operation schedule or at times directed by the Architect. Avoid disrupting services such as fax machines and on-line data processing, computing, transmitting, and receiving equipment.
 - 3. After changing circuits to achieve load balancing, recheck loads during normal facility operations. Record load readings before and after changing circuits to achieve load balancing.
 - 4. Tolerance: Maximum difference between phase loads, within a panelboard, shall not exceed 20 percent.

3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Temporary Heating: Prior to energizing panelboards, apply temporary heat to maintain temperature according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 26 2416

SECTION 26 2726 - WIRING DEVICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Standard-grade receptacles, 125 V, 20 A.
 - 2. USB receptacles.
 - 3. GFCI receptacles, 125 V, 20 A.
 - 4. Hazardous (classified) location receptacles.
 - 5. Twist-locking receptacles.
 - 6. Pendant cord-connector devices.
 - 7. Cord and plug sets.
 - 8. Toggle switches, 120/277 V, 20 A.
 - 9. Occupancy sensors.
 - 10. Digital timer light switches.
 - 11. Residential devices.
 - 12. Wall-box dimmers.
 - 13. Wall plates.
 - 14. Floor service fittings.
 - 15. Poke-through assemblies.
 - 16. Prefabricated multi-outlet assemblies.
 - 17. Service poles.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. AFCI: Arc-fault circuit interrupter.
- B. BAS: Building automation system.
- C. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.
- D. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.
- E. Pigtail: Short lead used to connect a device to a branch-circuit conductor.
- F. RFI: Radio-frequency interference.
- G. SPD: Surge protective device.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: List of legends and description of materials and process used for premarking wall plates.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For wiring devices to include in all manufacturers' packing-label warnings and instruction manuals that include labeling conditions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL WIRING-DEVICE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Wiring Devices, Components, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.
- C. RoHS compliant.
- D. Comply with NEMA WD 1.
- E. Devices that are manufactured for use with modular plug-in connectors may be substituted under the following conditions:
 - 1. Connectors shall comply with UL 2459 and shall be made with stranding building wire.
 - 2. Devices shall comply with requirements in this Section.
- F. Devices for Owner-Furnished Equipment:
 - 1. Receptacles: Match plug configurations.
 - 2. Cord and Plug Sets: Match equipment requirements.
- G. Device Color:
 - 1. Wiring Devices Connected to Normal Power System: As selected by Architect unless otherwise indicated or required by NFPA 70 or device listing.
 - 2. Wiring Devices Connected to Essential Electrical System: Red.
 - 3. SPD Devices: Blue.
 - 4. Isolated-Ground Receptacles: Orange.
- H. Wall Plate Color: Match device color.

- I. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of wiring device and associated wall plate from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 STANDARD-GRADE RECEPTACLES, 125 V, 20 A

A. Duplex Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A :

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
2. Description: Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding.
3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
4. Standards: Comply with UL 498 and FS W-C-596.

B. Isolated-Ground Duplex Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A :

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
2. Description: Straight blade; equipment grounding contacts shall be connected only to green grounding screw terminal of the device and with inherent electrical isolation from mounting strap. Isolation shall be integral to receptacle construction and not dependent on removable parts. Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding.
3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
4. Standards: Comply with UL 498 and FS W-C-596.

C. Tamper-Resistant Duplex Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A :

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
2. Description: Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding. Integral shutters that operate only when a plug is inserted in the receptacle.
3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
4. Standards: Comply with UL 498 and FS W-C-596.
5. Marking: Listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, "Tamper-Resistant Receptacles" Article.

D. Weather-Resistant Duplex Receptacle, 125 V, 20 A :

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
2. Description: Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding. Integral shutters that operate only when a plug is inserted in the receptacle. Square face.
3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
4. Standards: Comply with UL 498.
5. Marking: Listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, "Receptacles in Damp or Wet Locations" Article.

E. Tamper- and Weather-Resistant Duplex Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A :

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
2. Description: Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding. Integral shutters that operate only when a plug is inserted in the receptacle. Square face.
3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
4. Standards: Comply with UL 498.
5. Marking: Listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, "Tamper-Resistant Receptacles" and "Receptacles in Damp or Wet Locations" articles.

2.3 USB RECEPTACLES

A. USB Charging Receptacles :

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
2. Description: Single-piece, rivetless, nickel-plated, all-brass grounding system. Nickel-plated, brass mounting strap.
3. USB Receptacles: Dual, USB Type A, 5 V dc, and 2.1 A per receptacle (minimum).
4. Standards: Comply with UL 1310 and USB 3.0 devices.

2.4 GFCI RECEPTACLES, 125 V, 20 A

A. Duplex GFCI Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A :

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
2. Description: Integral GFCI with "Test" and "Reset" buttons and LED indicator light. Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding.
3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
4. Type: Feed through.
5. Standards: Comply with UL 498, UL 943 Class A, and FS W-C-596.

B. Tamper-Resistant Duplex GFCI Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A :

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - b. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
2. Description: Integral GFCI with "Test" and "Reset" buttons and LED indicator light. Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding. Integral shutters that operate only when a plug is inserted in the receptacle.
3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
4. Type: Feed through.
5. Standards: Comply with UL 498, UL 943 Class A, and FS W-C-596.
6. Marking: Listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, "Tamper-Resistant Receptacles" Article.

C. Tamper- and Weather-Resistant, GFCI Duplex Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A :

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
2. Description: Integral GFCI with "Test" and "Reset" buttons and LED indicator light. Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding. Integral shutters that operate only when a plug is inserted in the receptacle. Square face.
3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-15R.
4. Type: Feed through.
5. Standards: Comply with UL 498 and UL 943 Class A.
6. Marking: Listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, "Tamper-Resistant Receptacles" and "Receptacles in Damp or Wet Locations" articles.

2.5 TWIST-LOCKING RECEPTACLES

A. Twist-Lock, Single Receptacles, 120 V, 20 A :

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
2. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration L5-20R.
3. Standards: Comply with UL 498.

B. Twist-Lock, Single Receptacles, 250 V, 20 A :

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
2. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration L6-20R.
3. Standards: Comply with UL 498.

C. Twist-Lock, Single Receptacles, 277 V, 20 A :

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
2. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration L7-20R.
3. Standards: Comply with UL 498.

D. Twist-Lock, Isolated-Ground, Single Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A :

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
2. Grounding: Equipment grounding contacts shall be connected only to green grounding screw terminal of the device and with inherent electrical isolation from

mounting strap. Isolation shall be integral to receptacle construction and not dependent on removable parts.

3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration L5-20R.
4. Standards: Comply with UL 498.

2.6 TOGGLE SWITCHES, 120/277 V, 20 A

A. Single-Pole Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
2. Standards: Comply with UL 20 and FS W-S-896.

B. Two-Pole Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A :

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
2. Comply with UL 20 and FS W-S-896.

C. Three-Way Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A :

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
2. Comply with UL 20 and FS W-S-896.

D. Four-Way Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A :

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
2. Standards: Comply with UL 20 and FS W-S-896.

E. Pilot-Light, Single-Pole Switches: 120/277 V, 20 A :

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
2. Description: Illuminated when switch is on.
3. Standards: Comply with UL 20 and FS W-S-896.

F. Lighted Single-Pole Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A :

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Premise Wiring.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
2. Description: Handle illuminated when switch is on.
3. Standards: Comply with NEMA WD 1, UL 20, and FS W-S-896.

G. Key-Operated, Single-Pole Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A :

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
2. Description: Factory-supplied key in lieu of switch handle.
3. Standards: Comply with UL 20 and FS W-S-896.

H. Single-Pole, Double-Throw, Momentary-Contact, Center-off Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A :

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
2. Description: For use with mechanically held lighting contactors.
3. Standards: Comply with NEMA WD 1, UL 20, and FS W-S-896.

- I. Key-Operated, Single-Pole, Double-Throw, Momentary-Contact, Center-off Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A :
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
 2. Description: For use with mechanically held lighting contactors, with factory-supplied key in lieu of switch handle.
 3. Standards: Comply with NEMA WD 1, UL 20, and FS W-S-896.

2.7 OCCUPANCY SENSORS

A. Wall Switch Sensor Light Switch, Dual Technology:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Lutron Electronics, Inc.
 - e. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
2. Description: Switchbox-mounted, combination lighting-control sensor and conventional switch lighting-control unit using dual (ultrasonic and passive infrared) technology.
3. Standards: Comply with UL 20.
4. Rated 960 W at 120 V ac for tungsten lighting, 10 A at 120 V ac or 10 A at 277 V ac for fluorescent or LED lighting, and 1/4 hp at 120 V ac.
5. Adjustable time delay of five minutes.
6. Able to be locked to Automatic-On mode.
7. Automatic Light-Level Sensor: Adjustable from 2 to 200 fc (21.5 to 2152 lux).
8. Connections: Provisions for connection to BAS.

B. Wall Sensor Light Switch, Passive Infrared:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Cooper Industries.
 - b. Hubbell Premise Wiring.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Lutron Electronics, Inc.
 - e. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
2. Description: Switchbox-mounted, combination, lighting-control sensor and conventional switch lighting-control unit using passive infrared technology.
3. Standards: Comply with UL 20.

4. Connections: Provisions for connection to BAS.
5. Rated 960 W at 120 V ac for tungsten lighting, 10 A at 120 V ac or 10 A at 277 V ac for fluorescent or LED lighting, and 1/4 HP at 120 V ac.
6. Integral relay for connection to BAS.
7. Adjustable time delay of five minutes.
8. Able to be locked to Automatic-On mode.
9. Automatic Light-Level Sensor: Adjustable from 2 to 200 fc (21.5 to 2152 lux).

C. Wall Sensor Light Switch, Ultrasonic:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Lutron Electronics, Inc.
2. Description: Switchbox-mounted, combination, lighting-control sensor and conventional switch lighting-control unit using ultrasonic technology.
3. Standards: Comply with UL 20.
4. Connections: Provisions for connection to BAS.
5. Rated 960 W at 120 V ac for tungsten lighting, 10 A at 120 V ac or 10 A at 277 V ac for fluorescent or LED lighting, and 1/4 HP at 120 V ac.
6. Integral relay for connection to BAS.
7. Adjustable time delay of five minutes.
8. Able to be locked to Automatic-On mode.
9. Automatic Light-Level Sensor: Adjustable from 2 to 200 fc (21.5 to 2152 lux).

2.8 TIMER LIGHT SWITCH

A. Digital Timer Light Switch :

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
2. Description: Switchbox-mounted, combination digital timer and conventional switch lighting-control unit, with backlit digital display, with selectable time interval in 10 -minute increments.
3. Standards: Comply with UL 20.
4. Rated 960 W at 120 V ac for tungsten lighting, 10 A at 120 V ac or 10 A at 277 V ac for fluorescent or LED lighting, and 1/4 HP at 120 V ac.
5. Integral relay for connection to BAS.

2.9 RESIDENTIAL DEVICES

A. Residential-Grade, Tamper-Resistant, GFCI Receptacles, 125 V, 15 A :

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Premise Wiring.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
 2. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-15R.
 3. Feed-through connectors.
 4. Standards: Comply with UL 943 and UL 1699.
- B. Residential-Grade, Tamper-Resistant, AFCI Receptacles, 125 V, 15 A :
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Premise Wiring.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
 2. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-15R.
 3. Feed-through connectors.
 4. Standards: Comply with UL 943 and UL 1699.
- C. Residential-Grade, Tamper-Resistant Receptacles, 125 V, 15 A :
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
 2. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-15R.
 3. Feed-through connectors.
 4. Standards: Comply with UL 498.
- D. Weather- and Tamper-Resistant Receptacles, 125 V, 15 A :
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
 2. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-15R.
 3. Feed-through connectors.
 4. Standards: Comply with UL 498.
 5. Marked as "Weather Resistant."

a.

E. Telephone Outlet :

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
2. Description: Single RJ-11 jack for terminating Category 3, balanced twisted pair cable complying with other section for "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."
3. Standards: Comply with UL 1863.

F. Combination Telephone and Coaxial Outlet :

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
2. Description: Single RJ-11 jack for terminating Category 3, twisted pair cable complying with other section for "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables" and a single BNC connector for terminating coaxial cable.
3. Standards: Comply with UL 1863.

2.10 DIMMERS

A. Wall-Box Dimmers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Lutron Electronics Co., Inc.
 - e. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
2. Description: Modular, full-wave, solid-state dimmer switch with integral, quiet on-off switches, with audible frequency and EMI/RFI suppression filters.
3. Control: Continuously adjustable slider; with single-pole or three-way switching.
4. Standards: Comply with UL 1472.
5. Incandescent Lamp Dimmers: 120 V; control shall follow square-law dimming curve. On-off switch positions shall bypass dimmer module.
 - a. 600 W; dimmers shall require no derating when ganged with other devices. Illuminated when "off."
6. Fluorescent Lamp Dimmer Switches: Modular; compatible with dimmer ballasts; trim potentiometer to adjust low-end dimming; dimmer-ballast combination capable of consistent dimming with low end not greater than 20 percent of full brightness.

7. LED Lamp Dimmer Switches: Modular; compatible with LED lamps; trim potentiometer to adjust low-end dimming; capable of consistent dimming with low end not greater than 20 percent of full brightness.

2.11 WALL PLATES

- A. Single Source: Obtain wall plates from same manufacturer of wiring devices.
- B. Single and combination types shall match corresponding wiring devices.
 1. Plate-Securing Screws: Metal with head color to match plate finish.
 2. Material for Finished Spaces: Steel with white baked enamel, suitable for field painting.
 3. Material for Unfinished Spaces: Galvanized steel.
 4. Material for Damp Locations: Cast aluminum with spring-loaded lift cover, and listed and labeled for use in wet and damp locations.
- C. Wet-Location, Weatherproof Cover Plates: NEMA 250, complying with Type 3R, weather-resistant, die-cast aluminum with lockable cover.

2.12 FLOOR SERVICE FITTINGS

- A. Flush-Type Floor Service Fittings:
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Premise Wiring.
 - c. Thomas & Betts Power Solutions; ABB Group.
 - d. Wiremold / Legrand.
 - e. MonoSystem, Inc
 2. Description: Type: Modular, flush-type, dual-service units suitable for wiring method used, with cover flush with finished floor.
 3. Compartments: Barrier separates power from voice and data communication cabling.
 4. Service Plate and Cover: Round, die-cast aluminum with satin finish.
 5. Power Receptacle: NEMA WD 6 Configuration 5-20R, gray finish, unless otherwise indicated.
 6. Data Communication Outlet: Blank cover with bushed cable opening.
 - a.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1, including mounting heights listed in that standard, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Coordination with Other Trades:

1. Protect installed devices and their boxes. Do not place wall finish materials over device boxes, and do not cut holes for boxes with routers that are guided by riding against outside of boxes.
2. Keep outlet boxes free of plaster, drywall joint compound, mortar, cement, concrete, dust, paint, and other material that may contaminate the raceway system, conductors, and cables.
3. Install device boxes in brick or block walls so that the cover plate does not cross a joint unless the joint is troweled flush with the face of the wall.
4. Install wiring devices after all wall preparation, including painting, is complete.

C. Conductors:

1. Do not strip insulation from conductors until right before they are spliced or terminated on devices.
2. Strip insulation evenly around the conductor using tools designed for the purpose. Avoid scoring or nicking of solid wire or cutting strands from stranded wire.
3. The length of free conductors at outlets for devices shall comply with NFPA 70, Article 300, without pigtails.

D. Device Installation:

1. Replace devices that have been in temporary use during construction and that were installed before building finishing operations were complete.
2. Keep each wiring device in its package or otherwise protected until it is time to connect conductors.
3. Do not remove surface protection, such as plastic film and smudge covers, until the last possible moment.
4. Connect devices to branch circuits using pigtails that are not less than 6 inches (152 mm) in length.
5. When there is a choice, use side wiring with binding-head screw terminals. Wrap solid conductor tightly clockwise, two-thirds to three-fourths of the way around terminal screw.
6. Use a torque screwdriver when a torque is recommended or required by manufacturer.
7. When conductors larger than No. 12 AWG are installed on 15- or 20-A circuits, splice No. 12 AWG pigtails for device connections.
8. Tighten unused terminal screws on the device.
9. When mounting into metal boxes, remove the fiber or plastic washers used to hold device-mounting screws in yokes, allowing metal-to-metal contact
10. Install floor box assembly in a "flush" manner such that no component shall extend higher than floor finish materials.

E. Receptacle Orientation:

1. Install ground pin of vertically mounted receptacles up, and on horizontally mounted receptacles to the right.

- F. Device Plates: Do not use oversized or extra-deep plates. Repair wall finishes and remount outlet boxes when standard device plates do not fit flush or do not cover rough wall opening.
- G. Dimmers:
 - 1. Install dimmers within terms of their listing.
 - 2. Verify that dimmers used for fan-speed control are listed for that application.
 - 3. Install unshared neutral conductors on line and load side of dimmers according to manufacturers' device, listing conditions in the written instructions.
- H. Arrangement of Devices: Unless otherwise indicated, mount flush, with long dimension vertical and with grounding terminal of receptacles on top. Group adjacent switches under single, multi-gang wall plates.
- I. Adjust locations of floor service outlets and service poles to suit arrangement of partitions and furnishings.

3.2 GFCI RECEPTACLES

- A. Install non-feed-through GFCI receptacles where protection of downstream receptacles is not required.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with requirement in other section for "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Identify each receptacle with panelboard identification and circuit number. Use hot, stamped, or engraved machine printing with black-filled lettering on face of plate, and durable wire markers or tags inside outlet boxes.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Test Instruments: Use instruments that comply with UL 1436.
- B. Test Instrument for Receptacles: Digital wiring analyzer with digital readout or illuminated digital-display indicators of measurement.
- C. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 - 1. Test Instruments: Use instruments that comply with UL 1436.
 - 2. Test Instrument for Receptacles: Digital wiring analyzer with digital readout or illuminated digital-display indicators of measurement.
- D. Tests for Receptacles:
 - 1. Line Voltage: Acceptable range is 105 to 132 V.
 - 2. Percent Voltage Drop under 15-A Load: A value of 6 percent or higher is unacceptable.
 - 3. Ground Impedance: Values of up to 2 ohms are acceptable.

4. GFCI Trip: Test for tripping values specified in UL 1436 and UL 943.
 5. Using the test plug, verify that the device and its outlet box are securely mounted.
 6. Tests shall be diagnostic, indicating damaged conductors, high resistance at the circuit breaker, poor connections, inadequate fault-current path, defective devices, or similar problems. Correct circuit conditions, remove malfunctioning units and replace with new ones, and retest as specified above.
- E. Wiring device will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 26 2726

SECTION 26 2813 - FUSES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Cartridge fuses rated 600 V ac and less for use in the following:
 - a. Control circuits.
 - b. Enclosed controllers.
 - c. Enclosed switches.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for spare-fuse cabinets. Include the following for each fuse type indicated:
 - 1. Ambient Temperature Adjustment Information: If ratings of fuses have been adjusted to accommodate ambient temperatures, provide list of fuses with adjusted ratings.
 - a. For each fuse having adjusted ratings, include location of fuse, original fuse rating, local ambient temperature, and adjusted fuse rating.
 - b. Provide manufacturer's technical data on which ambient temperature adjustment calculations are based.
 - 2. Dimensions and manufacturer's technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, and ratings.
 - 3. Current-limitation curves for fuses with current-limiting characteristics.
 - 4. Time-current coordination curves (average melt) and current-limitation curves (instantaneous peak let-through current) for each type and rating of fuse. Submit in electronic format suitable for use in coordination software.
 - 5. Coordination charts and tables and related data.
 - 6. Fuse sizes for elevator feeders and elevator disconnect switches.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fuses to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in other sections for "Closeout Procedures," and "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
 - 1. Ambient temperature adjustment information.

2. Current-limitation curves for fuses with current-limiting characteristics.
3. Time-current coordination curves (average melt) and current-limitation curves (instantaneous peak let-through current) for each type and rating of fuse used on the Project. Submit in electronic format suitable for use in coordination software.
4. Coordination charts and tables and related data.

1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Where ambient temperature to which fuses are directly exposed is less than 40 deg F (5 deg C) or more than 100 deg F (38 deg C), apply manufacturer's ambient temperature adjustment factors to fuse ratings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Bussmann, an Eaton business.
 2. Edison; a brand of Bussmann by Eaton.
 3. Littelfuse, Inc.
 4. Mersen USA.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain fuses, for use within a specific product or circuit, from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 CARTRIDGE FUSES

- A. Characteristics: NEMA FU 1, current-limiting, nonrenewable cartridge fuses with voltage ratings consistent with circuit voltages.
 1. Type RK-1: 250or 600-V, zero- to 600-A rating, 200 kAIC, time delay.
 2. Type RK-5: 250or 600-V, zero- to 600-A rating, 200 kAIC, time delay.
 3. Type CC: 600-V, zero- to 30-A rating, 200 kAIC, fast acting.
 4. Type CD: 600-V, 31- to 60-A rating, 200 kAIC, fast acting.
 5. Type J: 600-V, zero- to 600-A rating, 200 kAIC, time delay.
 6. Type L: 600-V, 601- to 6000-A rating, 200 kAIC, time delay.
 7. Type T: 250-V, zero- to 1200-Aor 600-V, zero- to 800-A rating, 200 kAIC, time delay.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Comply with NEMA FU 1 for cartridge fuses.
- D. Comply with NFPA 70.

- E. Coordinate fuse ratings with utilization equipment nameplate limitations of maximum fuse size and with system short-circuit current levels.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine fuses before installation. Reject fuses that are moisture damaged or physically damaged.
- B. Examine holders to receive fuses for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance, such as rejection features.
- C. Examine utilization equipment nameplates and installation instructions. Install fuses of sizes and with characteristics appropriate for each piece of equipment.
- D. Evaluate ambient temperatures to determine if fuse rating adjustment factors must be applied to fuse ratings.
- E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 FUSE APPLICATIONS

- A. Cartridge Fuses:
 - 1. Service Entrance: Class L, time delay.
 - 2. Feeders: Class L, time delay.
 - 3. Motor Branch Circuits: Class RK1, time delay.
 - 4. Large Motor Branch (601-4000 A): Class L, time delay.
 - 5. Power Electronics Circuits: Class J, high speed.
 - 6. Other Branch Circuits: Class RK1, time delay.
 - 7. Control Transformer Circuits: Class CC, time delay, control transformer duty.
 - 8. Provide open-fuse indicator fuses or fuse covers with open fuse indication.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install fuses in fusible devices. Arrange fuses so rating information is readable without removing fuse.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Install labels complying with requirements for identification specified in other section for "Identification for Electrical Systems" and indicating fuse replacement information inside of door of each fused switch and adjacent to each fuse block, socket, and holder.

END OF SECTION 26 2813

SECTION 26 2816 ENCLOSED SWITCHES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Fusible switches.
 - 2. Non-fusible switches.
 - 3. Shunt trip switches.
 - 4. Molded-case circuit breakers (MCCBs).
 - 5. Enclosures.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. NC: Normally closed.
- B. NO: Normally open.
- C. SPDT: Single pole, double throw.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of enclosed switch, circuit breaker, accessory, and component indicated. Include nameplate ratings, dimensioned elevations, sections, weights, and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, accessories, and finishes.
 - 1. Enclosure types and details for types other than NEMA 250, Type 1.
 - 2. Current and voltage ratings.
 - 3. Short-circuit current ratings (interrupting and withstand, as appropriate).
 - 4. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices, accessories, and auxiliary components.
 - 5. Include time-current coordination curves (average melt) for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device. Provide in electronic format.
- B. Shop Drawings: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 2. Include wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified testing agency.
- B. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates, for enclosed switches and circuit breakers, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
 - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
 - 1. In addition to items specified in other section for "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
 - a. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting enclosed switches and circuit breakers.
 - b. Time-current coordination curves (average melt) for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device. Provide in electronic format.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Accredited by NETA.
 - 1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Ambient Temperature: Not less than minus 22 deg F (minus 30 deg C) and not exceeding 104 deg F (40 deg C).
 - 2. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet (2010 m).

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: One year from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Enclosed switches and circuit breakers shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
 1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified."

2.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain enclosed switches and circuit breakers, overcurrent protective devices, components, and accessories, within same product category, from single manufacturer.
- B. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for enclosed switches and circuit breakers, including clearances between enclosures, and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and application.
- D. Comply with NFPA 70.

2.3 FUSIBLE SWITCHES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Eaton.
 2. General Electric Company.
 3. Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division.
 4. Square D; by Schneider Electric.
- B. Type HD, Heavy Duty:
 1. Single throw.
 2. Three or six pole.
 3. 600-V ac.
 4. 1200 A and smaller.
 5. UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, with clips or bolt pads to accommodate specified fuses.
 6. Lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
- C. Accessories:

1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
3. Isolated Ground Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
4. Class R Fuse Kit: Provides rejection of other fuse types when Class R fuses are specified.
5. Auxiliary Contact Kit: Two NO/NC (Form "C") auxiliary contact(s), arranged to activate before switch blades open. Contact rating - 120-V ac.
6. Hookstick Handle: Allows use of a hookstick to operate the handle.
7. Lugs: Compression type, suitable for number, size, and conductor material.
8. Service-Rated Switches: Labeled for use as service equipment.

2.4 NONFUSIBLE SWITCHES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Eaton.
 2. General Electric Company.
 3. Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division.
 4. Square D; by Schneider Electric.
- B. Type GD, General Duty, Three Pole, Single Throw, 240-V ac, 600 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept two padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
- C. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Three Pole, Single Throw, 600-V ac, 1200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
- D. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Six Pole, Single Throw, 240-V ac, 200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
- E. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Three Pole, Double Throw, 600-V ac, 1200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
- F. Accessories:
1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
 2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
 3. Class R Fuse Kit: Provides rejection of other fuse types when Class R fuses are specified.
 4. Auxiliary Contact Kit: Two] NO/NC (Form "C") auxiliary contact(s), arranged to activate before switch blades open. Contact rating - 120-V ac.

5. Hookstick Handle: Allows use of a hookstick to operate the handle.
6. Lugs: Compression type, suitable for number, size, and conductor material.
7. Service-Rated Switches: Labeled for use as service equipment.

2.5 SHUNT TRIP SWITCHES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Bussmann, an Eaton business.
 2. Littelfuse, Inc.
 3. Mersen USA.
- B. General Requirements: Comply with ASME A17.1, UL 50, and UL 98, with Class J fuse block and 200-kA interrupting and short-circuit current rating.
- C. Type HD, Heavy-Duty, Three Pole, Single-Throw Fusible Switch: 240 or 600-V ac, with amperage rating as indicated on the drawings; UL 98 and NEMA KS 1; integral shunt trip mechanism; horsepower rated, with clips or bolt pads to accommodate specified fuses; lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks; interlocked with cover in closed position.
- D. Control Circuit: 120-V ac; obtained from integral control power transformer, with primary and secondary fuses, with a control power transformer of enough capacity to operate shunt trip, pilot, indicating and control devices.
- E. Accessories:
 1. Oiltight key switch for key-to-test function.
 2. Oiltight red ON pilot light.
 3. Isolated neutral lug;[100 percent rating.
 4. Mechanically interlocked auxiliary contacts that change state when switch is opened and closed.(For hydraulic elevator only)
 5. Form C alarm contacts that change state when switch is tripped.
 6. Three-pole, double-throw, fire-safety and alarm relay; 120-V ac coil voltage.
 7. Three-pole, double-throw, fire-alarm voltage monitoring relay complying with NFPA 72.
 8. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
 9. Class R Fuse Kit: Provides rejection of other fuse types when Class R fuses are specified.
 10. Auxiliary Contact Kit: Two NO/NC (Form "C") auxiliary contact(s), arranged to activate before switch blades open. Contact rating - 120-V ac.
 11. Hookstick Handle: Allows use of a hookstick to operate the handle.
 12. Lugs: Compression type, suitable for number, size, and conductor material.
 13. Service-Rated Switches: Labeled for use as service equipment.

2.6 MOLDED-CASE CIRCUIT BREAKERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Eaton.
 - 2. General Electric Company.
 - 3. Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division.
 - 4. Square D; by Schneider Electric.
- B. Circuit breakers shall be constructed using glass-reinforced insulating material. Current carrying components shall be completely isolated from the handle and the accessory mounting area.
- C. Circuit breakers shall have a toggle operating mechanism with common tripping of all poles, which provides quick-make, quick-break contact action. The circuit-breaker handle shall be over center, be trip free, and reside in a tripped position between on and off to provide local trip indication. Circuit-breaker escutcheon shall be clearly marked on and off in addition to providing international I/O markings. Equip circuit breaker with a push-to-trip button, located on the face of the circuit breaker to mechanically operate the circuit-breaker tripping mechanism for maintenance and testing purposes.
- D. The maximum ampere rating and UL, IEC, or other certification standards with applicable voltage systems and corresponding interrupting ratings shall be clearly marked on face of circuit breaker. Circuit breakers shall be 100 percent rated MCCBs shall be equipped with a device for locking in the isolated position.
- E. Lugs shall be suitable for 140 deg F (60 deg C) rated wire on 125-A circuit breakers and below.
- F. Standard: Comply with UL 489 with interrupting capacity to comply with available fault currents.
- G. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current thermal element for low-level overloads and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
- H. Adjustable, Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.
- I. Electronic Trip Circuit Breakers: Field-replaceable rating plug, rms sensing, with the following field-adjustable settings:
 - 1. Instantaneous trip.
 - 2. Long- and short-time pickup levels.
 - 3. Long- and short-time time adjustments.
 - 4. Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and I-squared t response.

- J. Current-Limiting Circuit Breakers: Frame sizes 400 A and smaller, and let-through ratings less than NEMA FU 1, RK-5.
- K. Ground-Fault Circuit-Interrupter (GFCI) Circuit Breakers: Single- and two-pole configurations with Class A ground-fault protection (6-mA trip).
- L. Ground-Fault Equipment-Protection (GFEP) Circuit Breakers: With Class B ground-fault protection (30-mA trip).
- M. Features and Accessories:
 - 1. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
 - 2. Lugs: Compression type, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor material.
 - 3. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads.
 - 4. Ground-Fault Protection: Comply with UL 1053; integrally mounted, self-powered (for solid state trip) or remote-mounted and powered (for thermal magnetic trip units) type with mechanical ground-fault indicator; relay with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, internal memory, and shunt trip unit; and three-phase, zero-sequence current transformer/sensor.
 - 5. Communication Capability: Circuit-breaker-mounted communication module with functions and features compatible with power monitoring and control system, specified in other section for "Electrical Power Monitoring and Control."
 - 6. Shunt Trip: Trip coil energized from separate circuit, with coil-clearing contact.
 - 7. Undervoltage Trip: Set to operate at 35 to 75 percent of rated voltage without intentional time delay.
 - 8. Auxiliary Contacts: One SPDT switch with "a" and "b" contacts; "a" contacts mimic circuit-breaker contacts, "b" contacts operate in reverse of circuit-breaker contacts.
 - 9. Alarm Switch: One NO contact that operates only when circuit breaker has tripped.
 - 10. Key Interlock Kit: Externally mounted to prohibit circuit-breaker operation; key shall be removable only when circuit breaker is in off position.
 - 11. Zone-Selective Interlocking: Integral with electronic (for solid state trip or ground-fault (for thermal magnetic trip units) trip unit; for interlocking ground-fault protection function.
 - 12. Electrical Operator: Provide remote control for on, off, and reset operations.
 - 13. Accessory Control Power Voltage: Remote mounted and powered 120-V ac.

2.7 ENCLOSURES

- A. Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers: UL 489, NEMA KS 1, NEMA 250, and UL 50, to comply with environmental conditions at installed location.
- B. Enclosure Finish: The enclosure shall be gray baked enamel paint, electrodeposited on cleaned, phosphatized steel (NEMA 250 Type 1) (For indoor dry and clean locations; gray baked enamel paint, electrodeposited on cleaned, phosphatized galvanized steel (NEMA 250 Types 3R, 12) (for outdoor) a brush finish on Type 304 stainless steel

(NEMA 250 Type 4-4X stainless steel) (For Kitchen and other wet and damp locations; copper-free cast aluminum alloy (NEMA 250 Types 7, 9) (for Hazardous Areas).

- C. Conduit Entry: NEMA 250 Types 4, 4X, and 12 enclosures shall contain no knockouts. NEMA 250 Types 7 and 9 enclosures shall be provided with threaded conduit openings in both end walls.
- D. Operating Mechanism: The circuit-breaker operating handle shall be externally operable with the operating mechanism being an integral part of the box, not the cover. The cover interlock mechanism shall have an externally operated override. The override shall not permanently disable the interlock mechanism, which shall return to the locked position once the override is released. The tool used to override the cover interlock mechanism shall not be required to enter the enclosure in order to override the interlock.
- E. Enclosures designated as NEMA 250 Type 4, 4X stainless steel, 12, or 12K shall have a dual cover interlock mechanism to prevent unintentional opening of the enclosure cover when the circuit breaker is ON and to prevent turning the circuit breaker ON when the enclosure cover is open.
- F. NEMA 250 Type 7/9 enclosures shall be furnished with a breather and drain kit to allow their use in outdoor and wet location applications.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine elements and surfaces to receive enclosed switches and circuit breakers for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
 - 1. Commencement of work shall indicate Installer's acceptance of the areas and conditions as satisfactory.

3.2 ENCLOSURE ENVIRONMENTAL RATING APPLICATIONS

- A. Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers: Provide enclosures at installed locations with the following environmental ratings.
 - 1. Indoor, Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
 - 2. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R.
 - 3. Kitchen and Wash-Down] Areas: NEMA 250, Type 4X, stainless steel.
 - 4. Other Wet or Damp, Indoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 4.
 - 5. Indoor Locations Subject to Dust, Falling Dirt, and Dripping Noncorrosive Liquids: NEMA 250, Type 12.
 - 6. Hazardous Areas Indicated on Drawings: NEMA 250, Type 7 with cover attached by Type 316 stainless steel bolts.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of switches, circuit breakers, and components with equipment served and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.
- B. Install individual wall-mounted switches and circuit breakers with tops at uniform height unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Comply with mounting and anchoring requirements specified in other section for "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- D. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting of eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from enclosures and components.
- E. Install fuses in fusible devices.
- F. Comply with NFPA 70 and NECA 1.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with requirements in other section for "Identification for Electrical Systems."
 - 1. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs.
 - 2. Label each enclosure with engraved metal or laminated-plastic nameplate.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
- C. Tests and Inspections for Switches:
 - 1. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:
 - a. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
 - b. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and clearances.
 - c. Verify that the unit is clean.
 - d. Verify blade alignment, blade penetration, travel stops, and mechanical operation.
 - e. Verify that fuse sizes and types match the Specifications and Drawings.
 - f. Verify that each fuse has adequate mechanical support and contact integrity.
 - g. Inspect bolted electrical connections for high resistance using one of the two following methods:
 - 1) Use a low-resistance ohmmeter.
 - a) Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from those

- of similar bolted connections by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
 - 2) Verify tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-wrench method in accordance with manufacturer's published data or NETA ATS Table 100.12.
 - a) Bolt-torque levels shall be in accordance with manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use NETA ATS Table 100.12.
 - h. Verify that operation and sequencing of interlocking systems is as described in the Specifications and shown on the Drawings.
 - i. Verify correct phase barrier installation.
 - j. Verify lubrication of moving current-carrying parts and moving and sliding surfaces.
2. Electrical Tests:
- a. Perform resistance measurements through bolted connections with a low-resistance ohmmeter. Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from adjacent poles or similar switches by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
 - b. Measure contact resistance across each switchblade fuseholder. Drop values shall not exceed the high level of the manufacturer's published data. If manufacturer's published data are not available, investigate values that deviate from adjacent poles or similar switches by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
 - c. Perform insulation-resistance tests for one minute on each pole, phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground with switch closed, and across each open pole. Apply voltage in accordance with manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use Table 100.1 from the NETA ATS. Investigate values of insulation resistance less than those published in Table 100.1 or as recommended in manufacturer's published data.
 - d. Measure fuse resistance. Investigate fuse-resistance values that deviate from each other by more than 15 percent.
 - e. Perform ground fault test according to NETA ATS 7.14 "Ground Fault Protection Systems, Low-Voltage."

D. Tests and Inspections for Molded Case Circuit Breakers:

1. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:
- a. Verify that equipment nameplate data are as described in the Specifications and shown on the Drawings.
 - b. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
 - c. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and clearances.
 - d. Verify that the unit is clean.
 - e. Operate the circuit breaker to ensure smooth operation.
 - f. Inspect bolted electrical connections for high resistance using one of the two following methods:
 - 1) Use a low-resistance ohmmeter.
 - a) Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from those

of similar bolted connections by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.

- 2) Verify tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-wrench method in accordance with manufacturer's published data or NETA ATS Table 100.12.

- a) Bolt-torque levels shall be in accordance with manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use NETA ATS Table 100.12.

- g. Inspect operating mechanism, contacts, and chutes in unsealed units.
 - h. Perform adjustments for final protective device settings in accordance with the coordination study.

2. Electrical Tests:

- a. Perform resistance measurements through bolted connections with a low-resistance ohmmeter. Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from adjacent poles or similar switches by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
- b. Perform insulation-resistance tests for one minute on each pole, phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground with circuit breaker closed, and across each open pole. Apply voltage in accordance with manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use Table 100.1 from the NETA ATS. Investigate values of insulation resistance less than those published in Table 100.1 or as recommended in manufacturer's published data.
- c. Perform a contact/pole resistance test. Drop values shall not exceed the high level of the manufacturer's published data. If manufacturer's published data are not available, investigate values that deviate from adjacent poles or similar switches by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
- d. Perform insulation resistance tests on all control wiring with respect to ground. Applied potential shall be 500-V dc for 300-V rated cable and 1000-V dc for 600-V rated cable. Test duration shall be one minute. For units with solid state components, follow manufacturer's recommendation. Insulation resistance values shall be no less than two megohms.
- e. Determine the following by primary current injection:
 - 1) Long-time pickup and delay. Pickup values shall be as specified. Trip characteristics shall not exceed manufacturer's published time-current characteristic tolerance band, including adjustment factors.
 - 2) Short-time pickup and delay. Short-time pickup values shall be as specified. Trip characteristics shall not exceed manufacturer's published time-current characteristic tolerance band, including adjustment factors.
 - 3) Ground-fault pickup and time delay. Ground-fault pickup values shall be as specified. Trip characteristics shall not exceed manufacturer's published time-current characteristic tolerance band, including adjustment factors.
 - 4) Instantaneous pickup. Instantaneous pickup values shall be as specified and within manufacturer's published tolerances.
- f. Test functionality of the trip unit by means of primary current injection. Pickup values and trip characteristics shall be as specified and within manufacturer's published tolerances.

- g. Perform minimum pickup voltage tests on shunt trip and close coils in accordance with manufacturer's published data. Minimum pickup voltage of the shunt trip and close coils shall be as indicated by manufacturer.
 - h. Verify correct operation of auxiliary features such as trip and pickup indicators; zone interlocking; electrical close and trip operation; trip-free, anti-pump function; and trip unit battery condition. Reset all trip logs and indicators. Investigate units that do not function as designed.
 - i. Verify operation of charging mechanism. Investigate units that do not function as designed.
 - 3. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
 - 4. Perform the following infrared scan tests and inspections and prepare reports:
 - a. Initial Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each enclosed switch and circuit breaker. Remove front panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
 - b. Instruments and Equipment: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
 - 5. Test and adjust controls, remote monitoring, and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- E. Enclosed switches and circuit breakers will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports.
 - 1. Test procedures used.
 - 2. Include identification of each enclosed switch and circuit breaker tested and describe test results.
 - 3. List deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust moving parts and operable components to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Set field-adjustable circuit-breaker trip ranges as specified in other section for "Coordination Studies."

END OF SECTION 26 2816

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes soft-start motor controllers that are designed for reduced-voltage start and full-voltage run duty.
 - 1. Enclosed soft-start controllers.
 - 2. Combination soft-start controllers.
 - 3. Bypass motor controller.
 - 4. Enclosures.
 - 5. Accessories.
 - 6. Identification.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CPT: Control power transformer.
- B. FLA: Full-load current.
- C. MCCB: Molded-case circuit breaker.
- D. MCP: Motor circuit protector.
- E. NC: Normally closed.
- F. NO: Normally open.
- G. OCPD: Overcurrent protective device.
- H. SCCR: Short-circuit current rating.
- I. SCPD: Short-circuit protective device.
- J. SCR: Silicon-controlled rectifier.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each type of controller.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
2. Indicate dimensions, weights, required clearances, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Wire Termination Diagrams and Schedules: Include diagrams for signal and control wiring. Identify terminals and wiring designations and color-codes to facilitate installation, operation, and maintenance. Indicate recommended types, wire sizes, and circuiting arrangements for field-installed wiring, and show circuit protection features. Differentiate between manufacturer-installed and field-installed wiring.
4. Include features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual OCPD and auxiliary components.

C. Product Schedule: For each enclosed controller.

1. Each installed soft-start controller type.
2. NRTL listing.
3. Factory-installed accessories.
4. Nameplate legends.
5. SCCR of integrated unit.
 - a. For each combination soft-start controller, include features, characteristics, ratings, and factory setting of the SCPD and OCPD.
 - 1) Listing document proving Type 2 coordination.
 - b. For each series-rated combination, state the listed integrated SCCR (withstand) of SCPDs and OCPDs by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For testing agency.

B. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates, for soft-start controllers, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

C. Source quality-control reports.

D. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For soft-start controllers to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1. In addition to items specified in other section for "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

- a. Routine maintenance requirements for soft-start controllers and installed components.
- b. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting circuit-breaker and MCP trip settings.
- c. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing, adjusting, and reprogramming reduced-voltage soft-start controllers.
- d. Load-Current and Overload-Relay Heater List: Compile after motors have been installed, and arrange to demonstrate that selection of heaters suits actual motor nameplate FLAs.
- e. Load-Current and List of Settings of Adjustable Overload Relays: Compile after motors have been installed, and arrange to demonstrate that switch settings for motor running overload protection suit actual motors to be protected.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Accredited by NETA.

1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store soft-start controllers indoors in clean, dry space with uniform temperature to prevent condensation. Protect soft-start controllers from exposure to dirt, fumes, water, corrosive substances, and physical damage.
- B. If stored in areas subject to weather, cover soft-start controllers to protect them from weather, dirt, dust, corrosive substances, and physical damage. Remove loose packing and flammable materials from inside controllers; install temporary electric heating, with at least 50 W per controller.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:
 1. Ambient Temperature: Not less than 32 deg F (0 deg C) and not exceeding 104 deg F (40 deg C), humidity noncondensing.
 2. Altitude: Not exceeding 3300 feet (1000 m).
 3. The effect of solar radiation is insignificant.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MOTOR CONTROLLER PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
- B. NEMA Compliance: Fabricate motor controllers to comply with NEMA ICS 2.

- C. Seismic Performance: Soft-start controllers shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.

1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified.
2. Component Importance Factor: 1.0.

2.2 ENCLOSED SOFT-START MOTOR CONTROLLERS

- A. Description: Controllers designed for reduced-voltage start, full-voltage run, and optional soft stop. The controller shall be an integrated unit with power SCRs, heat sink, microprocessor logic board, door-mounted digital display and user interface module, run-bypass contactor, and overload relay(s); suitable for use with NEMA MG 1, Design B, polyphase, medium induction motors.

1. Run-Bypass Contactor: Magnetic contactor in parallel with the SCR of the soft-start controller, bypassing the SCR when full voltage is achieved.

- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Eaton.
2. General Electric Company.
3. Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division.
4. Square D; by Schneider Electric.

- C. Standard: Comply with NEMA ICS 2, general purpose, Class A.

- D. Configuration: Standard duty.

1. At least two SCRs per phase to control the starting and stopping of the motor.
2. Microprocessor control shall continuously monitor current and proper operation of the SCRs.
3. Bypass Contactor: Operates automatically when full voltage is applied to motor, and bypasses the SCRs. Soft-start controller protective features and deceleration controls shall remain active when this contactor is in the bypass mode.
4. Logic Board: Identical for all ampere ratings and voltage classes, with environmental protective coating.
5. Surge Protection: Comply with NEMA ICS 2 requirements for surge suppression.

- E. Control Power:

1. For on-board control power, obtain from line circuit or from integral CPT. The CPT shall have capacity to operate integral devices and remotely located pilot, indicating, and control devices.
2. Spare CPT Capacity: 100 VA.

- F. Controller Diagnostics and Protection:

1. Microprocessor-based thermal-protection system for monitoring SCR and motor thermal characteristics, and providing controller overtemperature and motor-overload alarm and trip; settings selectable via the keypad.
 2. Protection from line-side reverse phasing; line-side and motor-side phase loss; motor jam, stall, and under-load conditions; and line frequency over or under normal.
 3. Input isolation contactor that opens when the controller diagnostics detect a faulted soft-start component or when the motor is stopped.
- G. Cover mounted-controller status panel with LED lights or alphanumeric display to show the following:
1. Starter Status: "Ready," "starting," "stopping," or "run."
 2. Motor current in amperes.
 3. Faults:
 - a. Motor overcurrent trip.
 - b. Motor thermal overload.
 - c. Starter thermal fault.
 - d. Low line voltage.
 - e. Loss of a phase.
 - f. Phases reversed.
 - g. Maximum starting time exceeded.
 - h. Serial communications error.
- H. Interface Panel: Mounted on controller door.
1. Guarded adjustable set points, not readily accessible.
 - a. Motor FLA, adjustable from 40 to 110 percent of the controller's rating.
 - b. Current limitation on starting, adjustable from 200 to 500 percent of FLA, typically set at 300 percent.
 - c. NEMA ICS 2 overload class. Selections shall include the following tripping classes: Class 10.
 2. Adjustable set points, readily accessible.
 - a. Linear acceleration, adjustable from 1 to 60 s.
 - b. Maximum start time, adjustable from 1 to 250 s.
 - c. Selector switch; select coast to stop or soft stop.
 - d. Linear deceleration, adjustable from 1 to 60 s.
- I. Remote Output Features. All outputs shall be prewired to terminal blocks.
1. Analog output for field-selectable assignment of motor operating characteristics; 0- to 10-V dc.
 2. Form C status contacts that change state when controller is running.
 3. Form C alarm contacts that change state when a fault condition occurs.
- J. Digital Communication Module: RS-485 Modbus, RTU protocol, 4-wire connection to host devices with a compatible port to transmit the following to the LAN:

1. Instantaneous root mean square (rms) current each phase, and three-phase average.
2. Voltage: L-L for each phase, L-L three-phase average, L-N each phase, and L-N three-phase average - rms.
3. Active Energy (kilowatt-hour): Three-phase total.
4. Power Factor: three-phase total.

2.3 COMBINATION SOFT-START MOTOR CONTROLLERS

- A. Description: Factory-assembled, combination, reduced-voltage soft-start controller with a disconnecting means, SCPD and OCPD, in a single enclosure. The reduced-voltage soft-start controller shall consist of an integrated unit with power SCRs, heat sink, microprocessor logic board, door-mounted digital display and user interface module, run-bypass contactor, and overload relay(s); suitable for use with NEMA MG 1, Design B, polyphase, medium induction motors.
1. Run-Bypass Contactor: Magnetic contactor in parallel with the SCR of the soft-start controller, bypassing the SCR when full voltage is achieved.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Eaton.
 2. General Electric Company.
 3. Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division.
 4. Square D; by Schneider Electric.
- C. Standard: Comply with NEMA ICS 2, general purpose, Class A.
- D. Configuration: Standard duty.
1. At least two SCRs per phase to control the starting and stopping of the motor.
 2. Microprocessor control shall continuously monitor current and proper operation of the SCRs.
 3. Bypass Contactor: Operates automatically when full voltage is applied to motor, and bypasses the SCRs. Soft-start controller protective features and deceleration controls shall remain active when this contactor is in the bypass mode.
 4. Logic Board: Identical for all ampere ratings and voltage classes, with environmental protective coating.
 5. Surge Protection: Comply with NEMA ICS 2 requirements for surge suppression.
- E. Control Power:
1. For on-board control power, obtain from line circuit or from integral CPT. The CPT shall have capacity to operate integral devices and remotely located pilot, indicating, and control devices.
 2. Spare CPT Capacity: 100 VA.
- F. Controller Diagnostics and Protection:

1. Microprocessor-based thermal-protection system for monitoring SCR and motor thermal characteristics, and providing controller overtemperature and motor-overload alarm and trip; settings selectable via the keypad.
 2. Protection from line-side reverse phasing; line-side and motor-side phase loss; motor jam, stall, and under-load conditions; and line frequency over or under normal.
 3. Input isolation contactor that opens when the controller diagnostics detect a faulted soft-start component or when the motor is stopped.
- G. Cover mounted-controller status panel with LED lights or alphanumeric display to show the following:
1. Starter Status: "Ready," "starting," "stopping," or "run."
 2. Motor current in amperes.
 3. Faults:
 - a. Motor overcurrent trip.
 - b. Motor thermal overload.
 - c. Starter thermal fault.
 - d. Low line voltage.
 - e. Loss of a phase.
 - f. Phases reversed.
 - g. Maximum starting time exceeded.
 - h. Serial communications error.
- H. Interface Panel: Mounted on controller door.
1. Guarded adjustable set points, not readily accessible.
 - a. Motor FLA, adjustable from 40 to 110 percent of the controller's rating.
 - b. Current limitation on starting, adjustable from 200 to 500 percent of FLA, typically set at 300 percent.
 - c. NEMA ICS 2 overload class. Selections shall include the tripping classes: Class 10.
 2. Adjustable set points, readily accessible.
 - a. Linear acceleration, adjustable from 1 to 60 s.
 - b. Maximum start time, adjustable from 1 to 250 s.
 - c. Selector switch; select coast to stop or soft stop.
 - d. Linear deceleration, adjustable from 1 to 60 s.
- I. Remote Output Features: All outputs shall be prewired to terminal blocks.
1. Analog output for field-selectable assignment of motor operating characteristics; 0- to 10-V dc.
 2. Form C status contacts that change state when controller is running.
 3. Form C alarm contacts that change state when a fault condition occurs.
- J. Digital Communication Module: RS-485 Modbus, RTU protocol, 4-wire connection to host devices with a compatible port to transmit the following to the LAN:
1. Instantaneous rms current each phase, and three-phase average.

2. Voltage: L-L for each phase, L-L three-phase average, L-N each phase, and L-N three-phase average - rms.
3. Active Energy (kilowatt-hour): Three-phase total.
4. Power Factor: three-phase total.

K. Fusible Disconnecting Means:

1. NEMA KS 1, heavy-duty, horsepower-rated, fusible switch with clips or bolt pads to accommodate Class J fuses.
2. Lockable Handle: Accepts three padlocks and interlocks with cover in closed position.
3. Auxiliary Contacts: NO or NC, arranged to activate before switch blades open.

L. MCCB Disconnecting Means:

1. UL 489 and NEMA AB 3, with interrupting capacity to comply with available fault currents; thermal-magnetic MCCB, with inverse time-current element for low-level overloads and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits.
2. Front-mounted, adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
3. Lockable Handle: Accepts three padlocks and interlocks with cover in closed position.
4. Auxiliary contacts "a" and "b" arranged to activate with MCCB handle.
5. NC or NO alarm contact that operates only when MCCB has tripped.

2.4 BYPASS MOTOR CONTROLLER

- A. Description: Factory-assembled, combination, full-voltage electromagnetic motor controller with a disconnecting means, SCPD and OCPD, in a single enclosure. Connected as a bypass controller, operating manually, with NORMAL/BYPASS selector switch.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Eaton.
 2. General Electric Company.
 3. Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division.
 4. Square D; by Schneider Electric.
- C. Standard:
1. Comply with NEMA ICS 2, general purpose, Class A.
 2. Fabricate and label the bypass motor controllers to comply with UL 60947-4-1.
- D. Configuration: Across-the-line start, electrically held.
- E. Contactor Coils: Pressure-encapsulated type.
1. Operating Voltage: Manufacturer's standard unless otherwise indicated.

- F. Control Power: 120-V ac; obtained from integral CPT, with primary and secondary fuses, and with CPT of sufficient capacity to operate integral devices and remotely located pilot, indicating, and control devices.
 - 1. Spare CPT Capacity: 100 VA.
- G. Overload Relays:
 - 1. Thermal-Overload Relays:
 - a. Inverse-time-current characteristic.
 - b. Class 10 tripping characteristic.
 - c. Heaters in each phase shall be matched to nameplate FLA of actual protected motor and with appropriate adjustment for duty cycle.
 - d. Ambient compensated.
 - e. Automatic resetting.
 - 2. Solid-State Overload Relays:
 - a. Switch or dial selectable for motor running overload protection.
 - b. Sensors in each phase.
 - c. Class 10 tripping characteristic selected to protect motor against voltage and current unbalance and single phasing.
- H. Class II Ground-Fault Protection: Comply with UL 1053 to interrupt low-level ground faults. The ground-fault detection system shall include circuitry that will prevent the motor controller from tripping when the fault current exceeds the interrupting capacity of the controller. Equip with start and run delays to prevent nuisance trip on starting, and a trip indicator.
- I. Digital Communication Module: RS-485 Modbus, RTU protocol, 4-wire connection to host devices with a compatible port to transmit the following to the LAN:
 - 1. Instantaneous rms current each phase, and three-phase average.
 - 2. Voltage: L-L for each phase, L-L three-phase average, L-N each phase, and L-N three-phase average - rms.
 - 3. Active Energy (kilowatt-hour): Three-phase total.
 - 4. Power Factor: three-phase total.
- J. Fusible Disconnecting Means:
 - 1. NEMA KS 1, heavy-duty, horsepower-rated, fusible switch with clips or bolt pads to accommodate indicated fuses.
 - 2. Lockable Handle: Accepts three padlocks and interlocks with cover in closed position.
- K. MCCB Disconnecting Means:
 - 1. UL 489 and NEMA AB 3, with interrupting capacity to comply with available fault currents; thermal-magnetic MCCB, with inverse time-current element for low-level overloads and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits.

2. Front-mounted, adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
3. Lockable Handle: Accepts three padlocks and interlocks with cover in closed position.

2.5 ENCLOSURES

- A. Comply with NEMA 250, Type designations as indicated on Drawings, to comply with environmental conditions at installed location.
- B. Construction of the enclosures shall comply with NEMA ICS 6.
- C. Controllers in hazardous (classified) locations shall comply with UL 1203.

2.6 ACCESSORIES

- A. General Requirements for Control Circuit and Pilot Devices: NEMA ICS 5; factory installed in controller enclosure cover unless otherwise indicated.
 1. Push Buttons, Pilot Lights, and Selector Switches: Standard duty, except as needed to match enclosure type. Heavy-duty or oiltight where indicated in the controller schedule.
 - a. Push Buttons: As indicated in the controller schedule.
 - b. Pilot Lights: As indicated in the controller schedule.
 2. Elapsed Time Meters: Heavy duty with digital readout in hours; nonresettable .
 3. Meters: Panel type, 2-1/2-inch (64-mm) minimum size with 90- or 120-degree scale and plus or minus 2 percent accuracy. Where indicated, provide selector switches with an off position.
- B. Breather assemblies, to maintain interior pressure and release condensation in Type 4X enclosures installed outdoors or in unconditioned interior spaces subject to humidity and temperature swings.
- C. Space heaters, with NC auxiliary contacts, to mitigate condensation in Type 4X enclosures installed outdoors or in unconditioned interior spaces subject to humidity and temperature swings.
- D. Sun shields installed on fronts, sides, and tops of enclosures installed outdoors and subject to direct and extended sun exposure.

2.7 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Controller Nameplates: Baked-enamel signs, as described in other section for "Identification for Electrical Systems," for each compartment, mounted with corrosion-resistant screws.
- B. Arc-Flash Warning Labels:

1. Comply with requirements in other section for "Arc-Flash Hazard Analysis." Produce a 3-1/2-by-5-inch (89-by-127-mm) self-adhesive label for each work location included in the analysis.
 - a. The label shall have an orange header with the wording, "WARNING, ARC-FLASH HAZARD," and shall include the following information taken directly from the arc-flash hazard analysis:
 - 1) Location designation.
 - 2) Nominal voltage.
 - 3) Flash protection boundary.
 - 4) Hazard risk category.
 - 5) Incident energy.
 - 6) Working distance.
 - 7) Engineering report number, revision number, and issue date.
 - b. Labels shall be machine printed, with no field-applied markings.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and space conditions for compliance with requirements for motor controllers, their relationship with the motors, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Wall-Mounted Controllers: Install controllers on walls with tops at uniform height indicated, and by bolting units to wall or mounting on slotted support systems complying with other section for "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems," and bolted to wall.
- C. Freestanding Controllers: Provide slotted support systems complying with other section for "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."
- D. Comply with requirements for seismic control devices specified in other section for "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- E. Maintain minimum clearances and workspace at equipment according to manufacturer's written instructions and NFPA 70.
- F. Control Wiring: Separate control wiring from power wiring. Where unavoidable, use twisted pair cabling or shielded cables for control wiring.
- G. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.

- H. Setting of Overload Relays: Select and set overloads on the basis of FLA rating as shown on motor nameplate. Adjust setting value for special motors as required by NFPA 70 for high-torque, high-efficiency, and so on motors.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in other section for "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Comply with provisions of NFPA 70B, Chapter "Testing and Test Methods."
 - 2. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:
 - a. Compare equipment nameplate data with Drawings and the Specifications.
 - b. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
 - c. Inspect anchorage, alignment, and grounding.
 - d. Verify that the unit is clean.
 - e. Ensure that vent path openings are free from debris and that heat-transfer surfaces are clean.
 - f. Verify correct connections of circuit boards, wiring, disconnects, and ribbon cables.
 - g. Inspect Contactors:
 - 1) Verify mechanical operation.
 - 2) Verify that contact gap, wipe, alignment, and pressure are according to manufacturer's published data.
 - h. Motor-Running Protection:
 - 1) Verify that motor FLA is at, or under, the controller current rating.
 - 2) Verify that overload element setting is correct for its application.
 - 3) Apply minimum- and maximum-speed set points. Verify that set points are within limitations of the load coupled to the motor.
 - 4) If motor-running protection is provided by fuses, verify correct fuse rating.
 - i. Inspect bolted electrical connections for high resistance using one of the following two methods:
 - 1) Use a low-resistance ohmmeter. Compare bolted-connection-resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from those of similar bolted connections by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
 - 2) Verify tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-wrench method according to manufacturer's published data or NETA ATS, Table 100.12. Bolt-torque levels shall be according to manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use NETA ATS, Table 100.12.

- j. Verify appropriate lubrication on moving current-carrying parts and on moving and sliding surfaces.
3. Electrical Tests:
- a. Perform insulation-resistance tests for one minute on each pole, phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground with switch closed, and across each open pole. Insulation-resistance values shall be according to manufacturer's published data or NETA ATS, Table 100.1. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use Table 100.5. Values of insulation resistance less than this table or manufacturer's written instructions shall be investigated and corrected.
 - b. Measure fuse resistance. Investigate fuse-resistance values that deviate from each other by more than 15 percent.
 - c. Test motor protection devices according to manufacturer's published data.
 - d. Test circuit breakers as follows:
 - 1) Operate the circuit breaker to ensure smooth operation.
 - 2) For adjustable circuit breakers, adjust protective device settings according to the coordination study. Comply with coordination study recommendations.
 - e. Test the electronic motor overload relay elements by injecting primary current through the overload circuit and monitoring trip time of the overload element.
 - f. Test the following parameters according to NETA relay calibration procedures, or as recommended by manufacturer:
 - 1) ANSI No. 49R, Overtemperature Protection:
 - a) Determine time delay at 300 percent of setting.
 - b) Determine a second point on the operating curve.
 - c) Determine pickup.
 - 2) ANSI No. 47, Input Phase Loss and Reversed Phases Protection:
 - a) Determine positive sequence voltage to close the NO contact.
 - b) Determine positive sequence voltage to open the NC contact (undervoltage trip).
 - c) Verify negative sequence trip.
 - d) Determine time delay to close the NO contact with sudden application of 120 percent of pickup.
 - e) Determine time delay to close the NC contact on removal of voltage when previously set to rated system voltage.
 - 3) ANSI No. 81, Over-frequency Protection:
 - a) Verify frequency set points.
 - b) Determine time delay.
 - c) Determine undervoltage cutoff.
 - 4) Fault Alarm Outputs: Verify that each relay contact performs its intended function in the control scheme including breaker trip tests, close inhibit tests, lockout tests, and alarm functions.
 - g. Perform operational tests by initiating control devices.

4. Infrared Inspection: Perform the survey during periods of maximum possible loading. Remove all necessary covers prior to the inspection.
 - a. Comply with recommendations of NFPA 70B, Chapter "Testing and Test Methods," Article "Infrared Inspection."
 - b. After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform infrared inspection of the electrical power connections of each motor controller.
 - c. Report of Infrared Inspection: Prepare a certified report that identifies the testing technician and equipment used, and lists the following results:
 - 1) Description of equipment to be tested.
 - 2) Discrepancies.
 - 3) Temperature difference between the area of concern and the reference area.
 - 4) Probable cause of temperature difference.
 - 5) Areas inspected. Identify inaccessible and unobservable areas and equipment.
 - 6) Identify load conditions at time of inspection.
 - 7) Provide photographs and thermograms of the deficient area.
 - 8) Recommended action.
 - d. Equipment: Inspect distribution systems with imaging equipment capable of detecting a minimum temperature difference of 1 deg C at 30 deg C. The equipment shall detect emitted radiation and convert detected radiation to a visual signal.
 - e. Act on inspection results, recommended action, and considering recommendations of NETA ATS, Table 100.18. Correct possible and probable deficiencies as soon as Owner's operations permit. Retest until deficiencies are corrected.

D. Motor controllers will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 SYSTEM FUNCTION TESTS

A. System function tests shall prove the correct interaction of sensing, processing, and action devices. Perform system function tests after field quality-control tests have been completed and all components have passed specified tests.

1. Develop test parameters and perform tests for the purpose of evaluating performance of integral components and their functioning as a complete unit within design requirements and manufacturer's published data.
2. Verify the correct operation of interlock safety devices for fail-safe functions in addition to design function.
3. Verify the correct operation of sensing devices, alarms, and indicating devices.

B. Motor controllers will be considered defective if they do not pass the system function tests and inspections.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 26 2913.06

SECTION 26 2933 - CONTROLLERS FOR FIRE-PUMP DRIVERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Full-service, reduced-voltage controllers rated 600 V and less.
 - 2. Controllers for pressure-maintenance pumps.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. ATS: Automatic transfer switch(es).
- B. ECM: Electronic control module.
- C. MCCB: Molded-case circuit breaker.
- D. NO: Normally open.
- E. PID: Proportional integral derivative.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each type of product indicated.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
 - 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 3. Show tabulations of the following:
 - a. Each installed unit's type and details.
 - b. Enclosure types and details for types other than NEMA 250, Type 2.
 - c. Factory-installed devices.
 - d. Nameplate legends.
 - e. Short-circuit current (withstand) rating of integrated unit.
 - f. Features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices.
 - g. Specified modifications.

4. Include diagrams for power, signal, alarm, control wiring, and pressure-sensing tubing.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified testing agency.
- B. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For each type of product indicated, from manufacturer.
 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- C. Product Certificates: For each type of product indicated, from manufacturer.
- D. Source quality-control reports.
- E. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each type of product indicated to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
 1. Manufacturer's written instructions for setting field-adjustable timers, controls, and status and alarm points.
 2. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing, adjusting, and reprogramming microprocessor-based logic controls.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials in accordance with NFPA 20 and recommended by the manufacturer that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 1. Indicating Lights: Two of each type and color of lens installed; two of each type and size of lamp installed.
 2. Auxiliary Contacts: One for each size and type of magnetic contactor installed.
 3. Power Contacts: Three for each size and type of magnetic contactor installed.
 4. Contactor Coils: One for each size and type of magnetic controller installed.
 5. Relay Boards: One for each size and type of relay board installed.
 6. Operator Interface: One microprocessor board(s), complete with display and membrane keypad.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member company of an NRTL.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain fire-pump controllers and all associated equipment from single source or producer.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations:
 - 1. Ambient Temperature Rating: Not less than 40 deg F and not exceeding 122 deg F unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Altitude Rating: Not exceeding 6600 feet unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Interruption of Existing Electric Service: Notify Construction Manager and/or Owner no fewer than seven days in advance of proposed interruption of electric service, and comply with NFPA 70E.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NFPA 20 and NFPA 70.
- B. IEEE Compliance: Fabricate and test enclosed controllers according to IEEE 344 to withstand seismic forces defined in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- C. Seismic Performance: Fire-pump controllers and alarm panels shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
 - 1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified."
- D. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.2 FULL-SERVICE CONTROLLERS

- A. General Requirements for Full-Service Controllers:
 - 1. Comply with NFPA 20 and UL 218.
 - 2. Combined automatic and nonautomatic operation.
 - 3. Factory assembled, wired, and tested; continuous-duty rated.
- B. Method of Starting:
 - 1. Pressure-switch actuated.

- a. Water-pressure-actuated switch and pressure transducer with independent high- and low-calibrated adjustments responsive to water pressure in fire-suppression piping.
 - b. System pressure recorder, electric ac driven, with spring backup.
 - c. Programmable minimum-run-time relay to prevent short cycling.
 - d. Programmable timer for weekly tests.
 2. Solid-State Controller: Reduced-voltage, soft start, soft stop type.
 3. Emergency Start: Mechanically operated start handle that closes and retains the motor RUN contactor independent of all electric or pressure actuators.
- C. Method of Stopping:
 1. Nonautomatic.
 2. Automatic shutdown shall be permitted only in the following circumstances:
 - a. During automatic testing in accordance with NFPA 20.
 - b. Where approved by the authority having jurisdiction.
 3. Where automatic shutdown after automatic start is permitted, a minimum run timer set for at least 10 minutes shall be used.
- D. Capacity: Rated for fire-pump-driver horsepower and short-circuit-current (withstand) rating equal to or greater than short-circuit current available at controller location.
- E. Method of Isolation and Overcurrent Protection: Interlocked isolating switch and nonthermal MCCB; with a common, externally mounted operating handle, and providing locked-rotor protection.
- F. Door-Mounted Operator Interface and Controls:
 1. Monitor, display, and control the devices, alarms, functions, and operations listed in NFPA 20 as required for drivers and controller types used.
 2. Method of Control and Indication:
 - a. Microprocessor-based logic controller, with multiline digital readout.
 - b. Membrane keypad.
 - c. LED alarm and status indicating lights.
 3. Local Alarm and Status Indications:
 - a. Power available.
 - b. Motor running condition.
 - c. Loss-of-line power.
 - d. Line-power phase reversal.
 - e. Line-power single-phase condition.
 - f. Controller or system trouble
 4. Audible alarm, with silence push button.
 5. Nonautomatic START and STOP push buttons or switches.
- G. Optional Features:

1. Extra Output Contacts:
 - a. One NO contact(s) for motor running condition.
 - b. One set(s) of contacts for loss-of-line power.
2. Local alarm bell.
3. Door-mounted thermal or impact printer for alarm and status logs.
4. Operator Interface Communications Ports: USB, Ethernet, and RS485.

H. ATS:

1. Complies with NFPA 20, UL 218, and UL 1008.
2. Integral with controller as a listed combination fire-pump controller and power transfer switch.
3. Service entrance rated ATS
4. Automatically transfers fire-pump controller from normal power supply to alternate power supply in event of power failure.
5. Allows manual transfer from one source to the other.
6. Alternate-Source Isolating and Disconnecting Means: Integral molded-case switch, with an externally mounted operating handle.
7. Alternate-Source Isolating and Disconnecting Means: Mechanically interlocked isolation switch and circuit breaker rated at a minimum of 115 percent of rated motor full-load current, with an externally mounted operating handle; circuit breaker shall be provided with nonthermal sensing, instantaneous-only short-circuit overcurrent protection to comply with available fault currents.
8. Local Alarm and Status Indications:
 - a. Normal source available.
 - b. Alternate source available.
 - c. In normal position.
 - d. In alternate position.
 - e. Isolating means open.
9. Audible alarm, with silence push button.
10. Nonautomatic (manual, nonelectric) means of transfer.
11. Engine test push button.
12. Start generator output contacts.
13. Timer for weekly generator tests.

2.3 STANDALONE ATS

A. General Requirements for Standalone ATS:

1. Complies with NFPA 20, UL 218, and UL 1008.
2. Automatic and nonautomatic operation.
3. Separate from controller and individually listed as a fire-pump-controller power transfer switch.
4. Automatically transfers fire-pump controller from normal power supply to alternate power supply in event of power failure.
5. Allows manual transfer from one source to the other; factory assembled, wired, and tested.

- B. Capacity: Rated for fire-pump-driver horsepower and short-circuit-current (withstand) rating equal to or greater than short-circuit current available at ATS location.
- C. Alternate-Source Isolating and Disconnecting Means: Integral molded-case switch, with an externally mounted operating handle.
- D. Alternate-Source Isolating and Disconnecting Means:
 - 1. Mechanically interlocked isolation switch and circuit breaker rated at a minimum of 115 percent of rated motor full-load current.
 - 2. Externally mounted operating handle.
 - 3. Circuit breaker provided with nonthermal sensing, instantaneous-only, short-circuit overcurrent protection.
 - 4. Equipped with a voltage surge arrester.
- E. Door-Mounted Operator Interface and Controls:
 - 1. Monitor, display, and control devices, alarms, functions, and operations listed in NFPA 20 as required for drivers and controller types used.
 - 2. Method of Control and Indication:
 - a. Microprocessor-based logic controller, with multiline LCD readout.
 - b. Membrane or touch screen keypad.
 - c. LED alarm and status indicating lights.
 - 3. Local Alarm and Status Indications:
 - a. Normal source available.
 - b. Alternate source available.
 - c. In normal position.
 - d. In alternate position.
 - e. Isolating means open.
 - 4. Audible alarm, with silence push button.
 - 5. Nonautomatic (manual, nonelectric) means of transfer.
 - 6. Engine test push button.
 - 7. Start generator output contacts.
 - 8. Timer for weekly generator tests.
- F. Optional Features:
 - 1. Extra Output Contacts:
 - a. One each, Form A; isolating means open.
 - b. One each, Form C; in normal or alternate position.
 - 2. Door-mounted thermal or impact printer for alarm and status logs.
 - 3. Operator Interface Communications Ports: USB, Ethernet, and RS485.

2.4 ENCLOSURES

- A. Fire-Pump Controllers and ATS: NEMA 250, to comply with environmental conditions at installed locations and NFPA 20.

1. Indoor Locations Subject to Dripping Noncorrosive Liquids: Type 2 (IEC IP11).
 2. Other Wet or Damp, Indoor Locations or manufacturer requirement: Type 4 (IEC IP56).
- B. Enclosure Color: Manufacturer's standard "fire-pump-controller red".
- C. Nameplates: Comply with NFPA 20; complete with capacity, characteristics, approvals, listings, and other pertinent data.
- D. Optional Features:
1. Floor stands, 12 inches high, for floor-mounted controllers.
 2. Space heater, [120-V ac] [240-V ac] [, with humidistat] [, with thermostat].
 3. Tropicalization.

2.5 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing: Test and inspect fire-pump controllers according to requirements in NFPA 20 and UL 218.
1. Verification of Performance: Rate controllers according to operation of functions and features specified.
- B. Fire-pump controllers will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and surfaces to receive equipment, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Examine equipment before installation. Reject equipment that is wet or damaged by moisture or mold.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 CONTROLLER INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate installation of controllers with other construction including conduit, piping, fire-pump equipment, and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required clearances for workspace and equipment access doors and panels. Ensure that controllers are within sight of fire-pump drivers.
- B. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.
- C. Install controllers within sight of their respective drivers.

- D. Connect controllers to their dedicated pressure-sensing lines.
- E. Wall-Mounting Controllers: Install controllers on walls with disconnect operating handles not higher than 79 inches above finished floor, and bottom of enclosure not less than 12 inches above finished floor unless otherwise indicated. Bolt units to wall or mount on lightweight structural-steel channels bolted to wall. For controllers not on walls, provide freestanding racks complying with Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."
- F. Floor-Mounting Controllers: Install controllers on concrete base(s), using floor stands high enough so that the bottom of enclosure cabinet is not less than 12 inches above finished floor. Comply with requirements for concrete bases specified in [Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."] [Section 033053 "Miscellaneous Cast-in-Place Concrete."]
 - 1. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base, and anchor into structural concrete floor.
 - 2. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 - 3. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
- G. Seismic Bracing: Comply with requirements specified in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- H. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from enclosures and components.
- I. Comply with NEMA ICS 15.

3.3 STANDALONE ATS INSTALLATION

- A. Wall-Mounting ATS: Install ATS on walls with disconnect operating handles not higher than 79 inches above finished floor, and bottom of enclosure not less than 12 inches above finished floor unless otherwise indicated. Bolt units to wall or mount on lightweight structural-steel channels bolted to wall. For ATS not on walls, provide freestanding racks complying with Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."
- B. Floor-Mounting ATS: Install ATS on concrete bases, using floor stands high enough so that the bottom of enclosure cabinet is not less than 12 inches above finished floor. Comply with requirements for concrete bases specified in [Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."] [Section 033053 "Miscellaneous Cast-in-Place Concrete."]
 - 1. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base, and anchor into structural concrete floor.
 - 2. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 - 3. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.

- C. Seismic Bracing: Comply with requirements specified in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- D. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from enclosures and components.

3.4 POWER WIRING INSTALLATION

- A. Install power wiring between controllers and their services or sources, and between controllers and their drivers. Comply with requirements in NFPA 20, NFPA 70, and Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.5 CONTROL AND ALARM WIRING INSTALLATION

- A. Install wiring between controllers and remote devices. Comply with requirements in NFPA 20, NFPA 70, and Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."
- B. Install wiring between controllers and the building's fire-alarm system. Comply with requirements specified in Section 284621.11 "Addressable Fire-Alarm Systems."
- C. Bundle, train, and support wiring in enclosures.
- D. Connect remote manual and automatic activation devices where applicable.

3.6 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with requirements in NFPA 20 for marking fire-pump controllers.
- B. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification in NFPA 20 and as specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- C. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
- D. Acceptance Testing Preparation:
 - 1. Inspect and Test Each Component:
 - a. Inspect wiring, components, connections, and equipment installations. Test and adjust components and equipment.
 - b. Test insulation resistance for each element, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuits.

- c. Test continuity of each circuit.
 - 2. Verify and Test Each Electric-Drive Controller:
 - a. Verify that voltages at controller locations are within plus 10 or minus 1 percent of motor nameplate rated voltages, with motors off. If outside this range for any motor, notify Architect, Construction Manager, or Owner before starting the motor(s).
 - b. Test each motor for proper phase rotation.
 - 3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper unit operation.
 - 4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- E. Field Acceptance Tests:
- 1. Do not begin field acceptance testing until suction piping has been flushed and hydrostatically tested and the certificate for flushing and testing has been submitted to Architect, Construction Manager, or Owner and authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 2. Prior to starting, notify authorities having jurisdiction of the time and place of the acceptance testing.
 - 3. Engage manufacturer's factory-authorized service representative to be present during the testing.
 - 4. Perform field acceptance tests as outlined in NFPA 20.
- F. Controllers will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- G. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- 3.8 STARTUP SERVICE
- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
- 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions and NFPA 20.
- 3.9 ADJUSTING
- A. Adjust controllers to function smoothly and as recommended by manufacturer.
 - B. Set field-adjustable switches, auxiliary relays, time-delay relays, and timers.
 - C. Program microprocessors for required operational sequences, status indications, alarms, event recording, and display features. Clear events memory after final acceptance testing and prior to Substantial Completion.
 - D. Set field-adjustable pressure switches.

3.10 PROTECTION

- A. Temporary Heating: Apply temporary heat to maintain temperature according to manufacturer's written instructions until enclosed controllers are ready to be energized and placed into service.
- B. Replace controllers whose interiors have been exposed to water or other liquids prior to Substantial Completion.

3.11 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain controllers.

END OF SECTION 26 2933

SECTION 26 3213.13 - DIESEL EMERGENCY ENGINE GENERATORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes packaged diesel engine generators for emergency use with the following features:
 - 1. Diesel engine.
 - 2. Diesel fuel-oil system.
 - 3. Control and monitoring.
 - 4. Generator overcurrent and fault protection.
 - 5. Generator, exciter, and voltage regulator.
 - 6. Load banks.
 - 7. Outdoor engine generator enclosure.
 - 8. Vibration isolation devices.
 - 9. Finishes.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. EPS: Emergency power supply.
- B. EPSS: Emergency power supply system.
- C. Operational Bandwidth: The total variation, from the lowest to highest value of a parameter over the range of conditions indicated, expressed as a percentage of the nominal value of the parameter.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
 - 2. Include thermal damage curve for generator.
 - 3. Include time-current characteristic curves for generator protective device.
 - 4. Include fuel consumption in gallons per hour (liters per hour) at 0.8 power factor at 0.5, 0.75, and 1.0 times generator capacity.
 - 5. Include generator efficiency at 0.8 power factor at 0.5, 0.75, and 1.0 times generator capacity.
 - 6. Include airflow requirements for cooling and combustion air in cubic feet per minute (cubic meters per minute) at 0.8 power factor, with air-supply temperature

- of 95, 80, 70, and 50 deg F (35, 27, 21, and 10 deg C). Provide Drawings indicating requirements and limitations for location of air intake and exhausts.
7. Include generator characteristics, including, but not limited to, kilowatt rating, efficiency, reactances, and short-circuit current capability.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include plans and elevations for engine generator and other components specified. Indicate access requirements affected by height of subbase fuel tank.
2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Identify fluid drain ports and clearance requirements for proper fluid drain.
4. Design calculations for selecting vibration isolators and seismic restraints and for designing vibration isolation bases.
5. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication, including anchorages and attachments to structure and supported equipment. Include base weights.
6. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring. Complete schematic, wiring, and interconnection diagrams showing terminal markings for EPS equipment and functional relationship between all electrical components.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Installer and testing agency.

B. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates for engine generator, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: With engine and generator mounted on rails, identify center of gravity and total weight and each piece of equipment not integral to the engine generator, and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

C. Source Quality-Control Reports: Including, but not limited to, the following:

1. Certified summary of prototype-unit test report.
2. Certified Test Reports: For components and accessories that are equivalent, but not identical, to those tested on prototype unit.
3. Certified Summary of Performance Tests: Certify compliance with specified requirement to meet performance criteria for sensitive loads.
4. Report of factory test on units to be shipped for this Project, showing evidence of compliance with specified requirements.
5. Report of sound generation.
6. Report of exhaust emissions showing compliance with applicable regulations.
7. Certified Torsional Vibration Compatibility: Comply with NFPA 110.

- D. Field quality-control reports.
- E. Warranty: For special warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For engine generators to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
 - 1. In addition to items specified in other section for "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
 - a. List of tools and replacement items recommended to be stored at Project for ready access. Include part and drawing numbers, current unit prices, and source of supply.
 - b. Operating instructions laminated and mounted adjacent to generator location.
 - c. Training plan.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer.
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Accredited by NETA.
 - 1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of packaged engine generators and associated auxiliary components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: five (5) years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Caterpillar, Inc.; Electric Power Division.
 - 2. Cummins Power Generation.
 - 3. Generac Power Systems, Inc.
 - 4. Kohler Power Systems.
 - 5. MTU Onsite Energy Corporation.

- B. Source Limitations: Obtain packaged engine generators and auxiliary components from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Engine generator housing, subbase fuel tank, engine generator, batteries, battery racks, silencers, load banks, sound attenuating equipment, accessories, and components shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
 - 1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified."
 - 2. Shake-table testing shall comply with ICC-ES AC156. Testing shall be performed with all fluids at worst-case normal levels.
 - 3. Component Importance Factor: 1.0.
- B. B11 Compliance: Comply with B11.19.
- C. NFPA Compliance:
 - 1. Comply with NFPA 37.
 - 2. Comply with NFPA 70.
 - 3. Comply with NFPA 110 requirements for Level 1 and 2 EPSS.
- D. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 2200.
- E. Engine Exhaust Emissions: Comply with EPA Tier 2 or 3 requirements and applicable state and local government requirements.
- F. Noise Emission: Comply with applicable state and local government requirements for maximum noise level at adjacent property boundaries due to sound emitted by engine generator, including engine, engine exhaust, engine cooling-air intake and discharge, and other components of installation.
- G. Environmental Conditions: Engine generator system shall withstand the following environmental conditions without mechanical or electrical damage or degradation of performance capability:
 - 1. Ambient Temperature: 5 to 104 deg F (Minus 15 to plus 40 deg C).
 - 2. Relative Humidity: Zero to 95 percent.
 - 3. Altitude: Sea level to 1000 feet (300 m).
- H. Unusual Service Conditions: Engine generator equipment and installation are required to operate under the following conditions:
 - 1. High salt-dust content in the air due to sea-spray evaporation.

2.3 ENGINE GENERATOR ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTION

- A. Factory-assembled and -tested, water-cooled engine, with brushless generator and accessories.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. EPSS Class: Engine generator shall be classified as a Class 6 (6-hours) according to NFPA 110.
- D. Service Load: As indicated on the contract drawing.
- E. Power Factor: 0.8, lagging.
- F. Frequency: 60 Hz
- G. Voltage: As indicated on the contract drawing.
- H. Phase: Three-phase, four-wire wye.
- I. Induction Method: Naturally aspirated.
- J. Governor: Adjustable isochronous, with speed sensing.
- K. Mounting Frame: Structural steel framework to maintain alignment of mounted components without depending on concrete foundation. Provide lifting attachments sized and spaced to prevent deflection of base during lifting and moving.
 - 1. Rigging Diagram: Inscribed on metal plate permanently attached to mounting frame to indicate location and lifting capacity of each lifting attachment and engine generator center of gravity.
- L. Capacities and Characteristics:
 - 1. Power Output Ratings: Nominal ratings as indicated at 0.8 power factor excluding power required for the continued and repeated operation of the unit and auxiliaries.
 - 2. Nameplates: For each major system component to identify manufacturer's name and address, and model and serial number of component.
- M. Engine Generator Performance:
 - 1. Steady-State Voltage Operational Bandwidth: 3 percent of rated output voltage, from no load to full load.
 - 2. Transient Voltage Performance: Not more than 20 percent variation for 50 percent step-load increase or decrease. Voltage shall recover and remain within the steady-state operating band within three seconds.

3. Steady-State Frequency Operational Bandwidth: 0.5 percent of rated frequency, from no load to full load.
4. Steady-State Frequency Stability: When system is operating at any constant load within the rated load, there shall be no random speed variations outside the steady-state operational band and no hunting or surging of speed.
5. Transient Frequency Performance: Less than 5 percent variation for 50 percent step-load increase or decrease. Frequency shall recover and remain within the steady-state operating band within five seconds.
6. Output Waveform: At no load, harmonic content measured line to line or line to neutral shall not exceed 5 percent total and 3 percent for single harmonics. Telephone influence factor, determined according to NEMA MG 1, shall not exceed 50 percent.
7. Sustained Short-Circuit Current: For a three-phase, bolted short circuit at system output terminals, system shall supply a minimum of 250 percent of rated full-load current for not less than 10 seconds and then clear the fault automatically, without damage to generator system components.
8. Start Time: Comply with NFPA 110, Type U system requirements.

2.4 DIESEL ENGINE

- A. Fuel: ASTM D 975 diesel fuel oil, Grade 2-D S15.
- B. Rated Engine Speed: 1800 rpm.
- C. Lubrication System: Engine or skid mounted.
 1. Filter and Strainer: Rated to remove 90 percent of particles 5 micrometers and smaller while passing full flow.
 2. Thermostatic Control Valve: Control flow in system to maintain optimum oil temperature. Unit shall be capable of full flow and is designed to be fail-safe.
 3. Crankcase Drain: Arranged for complete gravity drainage to an easily removable container with no disassembly and without use of pumps, siphons, special tools, or appliances.
- D. Jacket Coolant Heater: Electric-immersion type, factory installed in coolant jacket system. Comply with NFPA 110 requirements for Level 1 equipment for heater capacity and with UL 499.
- E. Cooling System: Closed loop, liquid cooled, with radiator factory mounted on engine generator mounting frame and integral engine-driven coolant pump.
 1. Coolant: Solution of 50 percent ethylene-glycol-based antifreeze and 50 percent water, with anticorrosion additives as recommended by engine manufacturer.
 2. Size of Radiator: Adequate to contain expansion of total system coolant, from cold start to 110 percent load condition.
 3. Expansion Tank: Constructed of welded steel plate and rated to withstand maximum closed-loop coolant-system pressure for engine used. Equip with gage glass and petcock.

4. Temperature Control: Self-contained, thermostatic-control valve modulates coolant flow automatically to maintain optimum constant coolant temperature as recommended by engine manufacturer.
 5. Coolant Hose: Flexible assembly with inside surface of nonporous rubber and outer covering of aging-, UV-, and abrasion-resistant fabric.
 - a. Rating: 50-psig (345-kPa) maximum working pressure with coolant at 180 deg F (82 deg C), and non-collapsible under vacuum.
 - b. End Fittings: Flanges or steel pipe nipples with clamps to suit piping and equipment connections.
- F. Muffler/Silencer: Critical type, sized as recommended by engine manufacturer and selected with exhaust piping system to not exceed engine manufacturer's engine backpressure requirements.
1. Minimum sound attenuation of 25 dB at 500 Hz.
 2. Sound level measured at a distance of 25 feet (8 m) from exhaust discharge after installation is complete shall be 78 dBA or less and shall meet the maximum allowable sound attenuation level set forth by the authority having jurisdiction.
- G. Air-Intake Filter: Heavy-duty, engine-mounted air cleaner with replaceable dry-filter element and "blocked filter" indicator.
- H. Starting System: 24 V electric, with negative ground.
1. Components: Sized so they are not damaged during a full engine-cranking cycle, with ambient temperature at maximum specified in "Performance Requirements" Article.
 2. Cranking Motor: Heavy-duty unit that automatically engages and releases from engine flywheel without binding.
 3. Cranking Cycle: As required by NFPA 110 for system level specified.
 4. Battery: Lead acid, with capacity within ambient temperature range specified in "Performance Requirements" Article to provide specified cranking cycle at least twice without recharging.
 5. Battery Cable: Size as recommended by engine manufacturer for cable length indicated. Include required interconnecting conductors and connection accessories.
 6. Battery Stand: Factory-fabricated, two-tier metal with acid-resistant finish designed to hold the quantity of battery cells required and to maintain the arrangement to minimize lengths of battery interconnections.
 7. Battery-Charging Alternator: Factory mounted on engine with solid-state voltage regulation and 35-A minimum continuous rating.
 8. Battery Charger: Current-limiting, automatic-equalizing, and float-charging type designed for lead-acid batteries. Unit shall comply with UL 1236 and include the following features:
 - a. Operation: Equalizing-charging rate of 10 A shall be initiated automatically after battery has lost charge until an adjustable equalizing voltage is achieved at battery terminals. Unit shall then be automatically switched to a lower float-charging mode and shall continue to operate in that mode until battery is discharged again.

- b. Automatic Temperature Compensation: Adjust float and equalize voltages for variations in ambient temperature from minus 40 deg F (minus 40 deg C) to 140 deg F (plus 60 deg C) to prevent overcharging at high temperatures and undercharging at low temperatures.
- c. Automatic Voltage Regulation: Maintain constant output voltage regardless of input voltage variations up to plus or minus 10 percent.
- d. Ammeter and Voltmeter: Flush mounted in door. Meters shall indicate charging rates.
- e. Safety Functions: Sense abnormally low battery voltage and close contacts providing low battery voltage indication on control and monitoring panel. Sense high battery voltage and loss of ac input or dc output of battery charger. Either condition shall close contacts that provide a battery-charger malfunction indication at system control and monitoring panel.
- f. Enclosure and Mounting: NEMA 250, Type 1 wall-mounted cabinet.

2.5 DIESEL FUEL-OIL SYSTEM

- A. Comply with NFPA 30.
- B. Piping: Fuel-oil piping shall be Schedule 40 black steel, complying with requirements in other section for "Facility Fuel-Oil Piping." Cast iron, aluminum, copper, and galvanized steel shall not be used in the fuel-oil system.
- C. Main Fuel Pump: Mounted on engine to provide primary fuel flow under starting and load conditions.
- D. Fuel Filtering: Remove water and contaminants larger than 1 micron.
- E. Relief-Bypass Valve: Automatically regulates pressure in fuel line and returns excess fuel to source.
- F. Subbase-Mounted, Double-Wall, Fuel-Oil Tank: Factory installed and piped, complying with UL 142 fuel-oil tank. Features include the following:
 - 1. Tank level indicator.
 - 2. Fuel-Tank Capacity: Minimum 133 percent of total fuel required for periodic maintenance operations between fuel refills, plus fuel for the hours of continuous operation for indicated EPSS class.
 - 3. Leak detection in interstitial space.
 - 4. Vandal-resistant fill cap.
 - 5. Containment Provisions: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

2.6 CONTROL AND MONITORING

- A. Automatic-Starting System Sequence of Operation: When mode-selector switch on the control and monitoring panel is in the automatic position, remote-control contacts in one or more separate automatic transfer switches initiate starting and stopping of engine generator. When mode-selector switch is switched to the on position, engine generator starts. The off position of same switch initiates engine generator shutdown.

When engine generator is running, specified system or equipment failures or derangements automatically shut down engine generator and initiate alarms.

- B. Provide minimum run time control set for 30 minutes, with override only by operation of a remote emergency-stop switch.
- C. Comply with UL 508A.
- D. Configuration: Operating and safety indications, protective devices, basic system controls, and engine gages shall be grouped in a common control and monitoring panel mounted on the engine generator. Mounting method shall isolate the control panel from engine generator vibration. Panel shall be powered from the engine generator battery.
- E. Control and Monitoring Panel:
 - 1. Digital controller with integrated LCD display, controls, and microprocessor, capable of local and remote control, monitoring, and programming, with battery backup.
 - 2. Load Shedding Capability: Generator controller shall be capable to prioritize connected loads. Generator controller shall be able to automatically disconnect optional standby loads, based on reverse priority order.
 - 3. Instruments: Located on the control and monitoring panel and viewable during operation.
 - a. Engine lubricating-oil pressure gage.
 - b. Engine-coolant temperature gage.
 - c. DC voltmeter (alternator battery charging).
 - d. Running-time meter.
 - e. AC voltmeter, connected to a phase selector switch.
 - f. AC ammeter, connected to a phase selector switch.
 - g. AC frequency meter.
 - h. Generator-voltage-adjusting rheostat.
 - 4. Controls and Protective Devices: Controls, shutdown devices, and common visual alarm indication as required by NFPA 110 for Level 1 and 2 system, including the following:
 - a. Cranking control equipment.
 - b. Run-Off-Auto switch.
 - c. Control switch not in automatic position alarm.
 - d. Overcrank alarm.
 - e. Overcrank shutdown device.
 - f. Low water temperature alarm.
 - g. High engine temperature pre-alarm.
 - h. High engine temperature.
 - i. High engine temperature shutdown device.
 - j. Overspeed alarm.
 - k. Overspeed shutdown device.
 - l. Low-fuel main tank.

- 1) Low-fuel-level alarm shall be initiated when the level falls below that required for operation for the duration required for the indicated EPSS class.
 - m. Coolant low-level alarm.
 - n. Coolant low-level shutdown device.
 - o. EPS load indicator.
 - p. Battery high-voltage alarm.
 - q. Low-cranking voltage alarm.
 - r. Battery-charger malfunction alarm.
 - s. Battery low-voltage alarm.
 - t. Lamp test.
 - u. Contacts for local and remote common alarm.
 - v. Low-starting air pressure alarm.
 - w. Remote manual-stop shutdown device.
 - x. Air shutdown damper alarm when used.
 - y. Air shutdown damper shutdown device when used.
 - z. Generator overcurrent-protective-device not-closed alarm.
- F. Connection to Datalink:
1. A separate terminal block, factory wired to Form C dry contacts, for each alarm and status indication.
 2. Provide connections for datalink transmission of indications to remote data terminals via ModBus. Data system connections to terminals are covered in other section for "Electrical Power Monitoring and Control."
- G. Common Remote Panel with Common Audible Alarm: Comply with NFPA 110 requirements for Level 1 and 2 systems. Include necessary contacts and terminals in control and monitoring panel. Remote panel shall be powered from the engine generator battery.
- H. Remote Alarm Annunciator: Comply with NFPA 99. An LED indicator light labeled with proper alarm conditions shall identify each alarm event, and a common audible signal shall sound for each alarm condition. Silencing switch in face of panel shall silence signal without altering visual indication. Connect so that after an alarm is silenced, clearing of initiating condition will reactivate alarm until silencing switch is reset. Cabinet and faceplate are flush-mounting type. Provide communication link via RS485 serial data link in ¾ inch conduit. Coordinate exact location with owner representative.
1. Overcrank alarm.
 2. Coolant low-temperature alarm.
 3. High engine temperature prealarm.
 4. High engine temperature alarm.
 5. Low lube oil pressure alarm.
 6. Overspeed alarm.
 7. Low-fuel main tank alarm.
 8. Low coolant level alarm.
 9. Low-cranking voltage alarm.
 10. Contacts for local and remote common alarm.
 11. Audible-alarm silencing switch.

12. Air shutdown damper when used.
13. Run-Off-Auto switch.
14. Control switch not in automatic position alarm.
15. Fuel tank derangement alarm.
16. Fuel tank high-level shutdown of fuel-supply alarm.
17. Lamp test.
18. Low-cranking voltage alarm.
19. Generator overcurrent protective device not closed.

- I. Supporting Items: Include sensors, transducers, terminals, relays, and other devices and include wiring required to support specified items. Locate sensors and other supporting items on engine or generator unless otherwise indicated.
- J. Remote Emergency-Stop Switch: Install at generator enclosure and adjacent to generator remote annunciator unless otherwise indicated; and labeled. Push button shall be protected from accidental operation.

2.7 GENERATOR OVERCURRENT AND FAULT PROTECTION

- A. Overcurrent protective devices for the entire EPSS shall be coordinated to optimize selective tripping when a short circuit occurs. Coordination of protective devices shall consider both utility and EPSS as the voltage source.
 1. Overcurrent protective devices for the EPSS shall be accessible only to authorized personnel.
- B. Generator Circuit Breaker: Molded-case, electronic-trip type; 100 percent rated; complying with UL 489.
 1. Tripping Characteristics: Adjustable long-time and short-time delay and instantaneous.
 2. Trip Settings: Selected to coordinate with generator thermal damage curve.
 3. Shunt Trip: Connected to trip breaker when engine generator is shut down by other protective devices.
 4. Mounting: Adjacent to or integrated with control and monitoring panel.
- C. Generator Protector: Microprocessor-based unit shall continuously monitor current level in each phase of generator output, integrate generator heating effect over time, and predict when thermal damage of alternator will occur. When signaled by generator protector or other engine generator protective devices, a shunt-trip device in the generator disconnect switch shall open the switch to disconnect the generator from load circuits. Protector performs the following functions:
 1. Initiates a generator overload alarm when generator has operated at an overload equivalent to 110 percent of full-rated load for 60 seconds. Indication for this alarm is integrated with other engine generator malfunction alarms. Contacts shall be available for load shed functions.
 2. Under single- or three-phase fault conditions, regulates generator to 300 percent of rated full-load current for up to 10 seconds.

3. As overcurrent heating effect on the generator approaches the thermal damage point of the unit, protector switches the excitation system off, opens the generator disconnect device, and shuts down the engine generator.
 4. Senses clearing of a fault by other overcurrent devices and controls recovery of rated voltage to avoid overshoot.
- D. Ground-Fault Indication: Comply with NFPA 70, "Emergency System" signals for ground fault.
1. Indicate ground fault with other engine generator alarm indications.

2.8 GENERATOR, EXCITER, AND VOLTAGE REGULATOR

- A. Comply with NEMA MG 1.
- B. Drive: Generator shaft shall be directly connected to engine shaft. Exciter shall be rotated integrally with generator rotor.
- C. Electrical Insulation: Class H or Class F.
- D. Stator-Winding Leads: Brought out to terminal box to permit future reconnection for other voltages if required. Provide 12-lead alternator.
- E. Range: Provide extended range of output voltage by adjusting the excitation level.
- F. Construction shall prevent mechanical, electrical, and thermal damage due to vibration, overspeed up to 125 percent of rating, and heat during operation at 110 percent of rated capacity.
- G. Enclosure: Dripproof.
- H. Voltage Regulator: Solid-state type, separate from exciter, providing performance as specified and as required by NFPA 110.
1. Adjusting Rheostat on Control and Monitoring Panel: Provide plus or minus 5 percent adjustment of output-voltage operating band.
 2. Maintain voltage within 15 percent on one step, full load.
 3. Provide anti-hunt provision to stabilize voltage.
 4. Maintain frequency within 5 percent and stabilize at rated frequency within two seconds.
- I. Strip Heater: Thermostatically controlled unit arranged to maintain stator windings above dew point.
- J. Windings: Two-thirds pitch stator winding and fully linked amortisseur winding.
- K. Subtransient Reactance: 12 percent, maximum.

2.9 LOAD BANK

- A. Description: Permanent, outdoor, weatherproof, remote-controlled, forced-air-cooled, resistive unit capable of providing a balanced three-phase, delta-connected load to engine generator at 100 percent rated-system capacity, at 80 percent power factor, lagging. Unit shall be capable of selective control of load in 25 percent steps and with minimum step changes of approximately 5 and 10 percent available.
- B. Resistive Load Elements: Corrosion-resistant chromium alloy with ceramic and stainless-steel supports. Elements shall be double insulated and designed for repetitive on-off cycling. Elements shall be mounted in removable aluminized-steel heater cases. Galvanized steel is prohibited. Element's maximum resistance shall be between 100 and 105 percent of rated resistance.
- C. Load-Bank Heat Dissipation: Integral fan with totally enclosed motor shall provide uniform cooling airflow through load elements. Airflow and coil operating current shall be such that, at maximum load, with ambient temperature at the upper end of specified range, load-bank elements operate at not more than 50 percent of maximum continuous temperature rating of resistance elements.
- D. Load-Element Switching: Remote-controlled contactors switch groups of load elements. Contactor coils are rated 120 V. Contactors shall be located in a separate NEMA 250, Type 3R enclosure within load-bank enclosure, accessible from exterior through hinged doors with tumbler locks.
- E. Contactor Enclosures: Heated by thermostatically controlled strip heaters to prevent condensation.
- F. Load-Bank Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 3R aluminized steel complying with NEMA ICS 6. Louvers at cooling-air intake and discharge openings shall prevent entry of rain and snow. Openings for airflow shall be screened with 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) square, galvanized-steel mesh. Reactive load bank shall include automatic shutters at air intake and discharge. Components other than resistive elements shall receive exterior epoxy coating with compatible primer. Comply with requirements in other section for "High-Performance Coatings."
- G. Protective Devices: Power input circuits to load banks shall be fused, and fuses shall be selected to coordinate with generator circuit breaker. Fuse blocks shall be located in contactor enclosure. Cooling airflow and overtemperature sensors shall automatically shut down and lock out load bank until manually reset. Safety interlocks on access panels and doors shall disconnect load power, control, and heater circuits. Fan motor shall be separately protected by overload and short-circuit devices. Short-circuit devices shall be non-interchangeable fuses with 200,000-A interrupting capacity.
- H. Load-Bank Remote-Control Panel: Separate from load bank in NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosure with a control power switch and pilot light, and switches controlling groups of load elements.

2.10 OUTDOOR ENGINE GENERATOR ENCLOSURE

- A. Description: Vandal-resistant, sound-attenuating, weatherproof steel housing, wind resistant up to 100 mph (160 km/h). Multiple panels shall be lockable and provide adequate access to components requiring maintenance. Panels shall be removable by one person without tools. Instruments and control shall be mounted within enclosure.
 - 1. Sound Attenuation Level: As indicated on the contract drawings.
- B. Description: Prefabricated or pre-engineered, galvanized-steel-clad, integral structural-steel-framed, walk-in enclosure, erected on concrete foundation.
- C. Structural Design and Anchorage: Comply with ASCE/SEI 7 for wind loads of up to 100 mph (160 km/h).
- D. Seismic Design: Comply with seismic requirements in other section for "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- E. Hinged Doors: With padlocking provisions.
- F. Space Heater: Thermostatically controlled and sized to prevent condensation.
- G. Lighting: Provide weather-resistant LED lighting with 30-fc (330-lx) average maintained.
- H. Thermal Insulation: Manufacturer's standard materials and thickness selected in coordination with space heater to maintain winter interior temperature within operating limits required by engine generator components.
- I. Muffler Location: External to enclosure.
- J. Engine-Cooling Airflow through Enclosure: Maintain temperature rise of system components within required limits when unit operates at 110 percent of rated load for two hours with ambient temperature at top of range specified in system service conditions.
 - 1. Louvers: Fixed-engine, cooling-air inlet and discharge. Storm-proof and drainable louvers prevent entry of rain and snow.
- K. Interior Lights with Switch: Factory-wired, vapor-proof luminaires within housing; arranged to illuminate controls and accessible interior. Arrange for external electrical connection.
 - 1. AC lighting system and connection point for operation when remote source is available.
- L. Convenience Outlets: Factory-wired GFCI. Arrange for external electrical connection.

2.11 VIBRATION ISOLATION DEVICES

- A. Restrained Spring Isolators: Freestanding, steel, open-spring isolators with seismic restraint.
 - 1. Housing: Steel with resilient, vertical-limit stops to prevent spring extension due to wind loads or if weight is removed; factory-drilled baseplate bonded to 1/4-inch- (6-mm-) thick, elastomeric isolator pad attached to baseplate underside; and adjustable equipment-mounting and -leveling bolt that acts as blocking during installation.
 - 2. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of compressed height of the spring at rated load.
 - 3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of required deflection at rated load.
 - 4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
 - 5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
 - 6. Minimum Deflection: 1 inch (25 mm).
- B. Comply with requirements in other section for "Hydronic Piping Specialties" for vibration isolation and flexible connector materials for steel piping.
- C. Comply with requirements in other section for "Metal Ducts" for vibration isolation and flexible connector materials for exhaust shroud and ductwork.
- D. Vibration isolation devices shall not be used to accommodate misalignments or to make bends.

2.12 FINISHES

- A. Indoor and Outdoor Enclosures and Components: Manufacturer's standard finish over corrosion-resistant pretreatment and compatible primer.

2.13 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Prototype Testing: Factory test engine generator using same engine model, constructed of identical or equivalent components and equipped with identical or equivalent accessories.
 - 1. Tests: Comply with NFPA 110, Level 1 Energy Converters and with IEEE 115.
- B. Project-Specific Equipment Tests: Before shipment, factory test engine generator and other system components and accessories manufactured specifically for this Project. Perform tests at rated load and power factor. Include the following tests:
 - 1. Test components and accessories furnished with installed unit that are not identical to those on tested prototype to demonstrate compatibility and reliability.
 - 2. Test generator, exciter, and voltage regulator as a unit.
 - 3. Full-load run.
 - 4. Maximum power.
 - 5. Voltage regulation.

6. Transient and steady-state governing.
7. Single-step load pickup.
8. Safety shutdown.
9. Report factory test results within 10 days of completion of test.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas, equipment bases, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation and other conditions affecting packaged engine generator performance.
- B. Examine roughing-in for piping systems and electrical connections. Verify actual locations of connections before packaged engine generator installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 404.
- B. Comply with packaged engine generator manufacturers' written installation and alignment instructions and with NFPA 110.
- C. Equipment Mounting:
 1. Install packaged engine generators on cast-in-place concrete equipment bases. Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in other section for "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
 2. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases for packaged engine generators. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified with concrete.
 3. Install packaged engine generator with restrained spring isolators having a minimum deflection of 1 inch (25 mm) on 6-inch- (150-mm-) high concrete base. Secure sets to anchor bolts installed in concrete bases. Concrete base construction is specified in other section for "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- D. Install packaged engine generator to provide access, without removing connections or accessories, for periodic maintenance.
- E. Exhaust System: Install Schedule 40 black steel piping with welded joints and connect to engine muffler. Install thimble at wall. Piping shall be same diameter as muffler outlet.
 1. Piping materials and installation requirements are specified in other section for "Hydronic Piping."
 2. Install flexible connectors and steel piping materials according to requirements in other section for "Hydronic Piping Specialties."

3. Insulate muffler/silencer and exhaust system components according to requirements in other section for "HVAC Piping Insulation."
 4. Install isolating thimbles where exhaust piping penetrates combustible surfaces with a minimum of 9 inches (225 mm) of clearance from combustibles.
- F. Drain Piping: Install condensate drain piping to muffler drain outlet with a shutoff valve, stainless-steel flexible connector, and Schedule 40 black steel pipe with welded joints.
1. Piping materials and installation requirements are specified in other section for "Hydronic Piping."
 2. Drain piping valves, connectors, and installation requirements are specified in other section for "Hydronic Piping Specialties."
- G. Fuel Piping:
1. Diesel storage tanks, tank accessories, piping, valves, and specialties for fuel systems are specified in other section for "Facility Fuel-Oil Piping."
 2. Copper and galvanized steel shall not be used in the fuel-oil piping system.
- H. Electrical Wiring: Install electrical devices furnished by equipment manufacturers but not specified to be factory mounted.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping and specialties.
- B. Connect fuel, cooling-system, and exhaust-system piping adjacent to packaged engine generator to allow space for service and maintenance.
- C. Connect cooling-system water piping to engine generator and heat exchanger with flexible connectors.
- D. Connect engine exhaust pipe to engine with flexible connector.
- E. Connect fuel piping to engines with a gate valve and union and flexible connector.
1. Additional requirements for diesel storage tanks, tank accessories, piping, valves, and specialties for fuel systems are specified in other section for "Facility Fuel-Oil Piping."
- F. Ground equipment according to other section for "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- G. Connect wiring according to other section for "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables." Provide a minimum of one 90-degree bend in flexible conduit routed to the engine generator from a stationary element.
- H. Balance single-phase loads to obtain a maximum of 10 percent unbalance between any two phases.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components according to requirement in other sections for "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" and for "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Contractor will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Perform tests recommended by manufacturer and in "Visual and Mechanical Inspection" and "Electrical and Mechanical Tests" subparagraphs below, as specified in the NETA ATS. Certify compliance with test parameters.
 - a. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:
 - 1) Compare equipment nameplate data with Drawings and the Specifications.
 - 2) Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
 - 3) Inspect anchorage, alignment, and grounding.
 - 4) Verify that the unit is clean.
 - b. Electrical and Mechanical Tests:
 - 1) Perform insulation-resistance tests according to IEEE 43.
 - a) Machines Larger Than 200 hp (150 kW): Test duration shall be 10 minutes. Calculate polarization index.
 - b) Machines 200 hp (150 kW) or Less: Test duration shall be one minute. Calculate the dielectric-absorption ratio.
 - 2) Test protective relay devices.
 - 3) Verify phase rotation, phasing, and synchronized operation as required by the application.
 - 4) Functionally test engine shutdown for low oil pressure, overtemperature, overspeed, and other protection features as applicable.
 - 5) Perform vibration test for each main bearing cap.
 - 6) Conduct performance test according to NFPA 110.
 - 7) Verify correct functioning of the governor and regulator.
 - 2. NFPA 110 Acceptance Tests: Perform tests required by NFPA 110 that are additional to those specified here, including, but not limited to, single-step full-load pickup test.
 - 3. Battery Tests: Equalize charging of battery cells according to manufacturer's written instructions. Record individual cell voltages.

- a. Measure charging voltage and voltages between available battery terminals for full-charging and float-charging conditions. Check electrolyte level and specific gravity under both conditions.
 - b. Test for contact integrity of all connectors. Perform an integrity load test and a capacity load test for the battery.
 - c. Verify acceptance of charge for each element of the battery after discharge.
 - d. Verify that measurements are within manufacturer's specifications.
 4. Battery-Charger Tests: Verify specified rates of charge for both equalizing and float-charging conditions.
 5. System Integrity Tests: Methodically verify proper installation, connection, and integrity of each element of engine generator system before and during system operation. Check for air, exhaust, and fluid leaks.
 6. Exhaust-System Back-Pressure Test: Use a manometer with a scale exceeding 40-inch wg (10 kPa). Connect to exhaust line close to engine exhaust manifold. Verify that back pressure at full-rated load is within manufacturer's written allowable limits for the engine.
 7. Exhaust Emissions Test: Comply with applicable government test criteria.
 8. Voltage and Frequency Transient Stability Tests: Use recording oscilloscope to measure voltage and frequency transients for 50 and 100 percent step-load increases and decreases, and verify that performance is as specified.
 9. Harmonic-Content Tests: Measure harmonic content of output voltage at 25 percent and 100 percent of rated linear load. Verify that harmonic content is within specified limits.
 10. Noise-Level Tests: Measure A-weighted level of noise emanating from engine generator installation, including engine exhaust and cooling-air intake and discharge, at four locations on the property line, and compare measured levels with required values.
- D. Coordinate tests with tests for transfer switches, and run them concurrently.
- E. Test instruments shall have been calibrated within the past 12 months, traceable to NIST Calibration Services, and adequate for making positive observation of test results. Make calibration records available for examination on request.
- F. Leak Test: After installation, charge exhaust, coolant, and fuel systems and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
- G. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation for generator and associated equipment.
- H. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- I. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- J. Retest: Correct deficiencies identified by tests and observations, and retest until specified requirements are met.

- K. Report results of tests and inspections in writing. Record adjustable relay settings and measured insulation resistances, time delays, and other values and observations. Attach a label or tag to each tested component, indicating satisfactory completion of tests.
- L. Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after final acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each power wiring termination and each bus connection while running with maximum load. Remove all access panels, so terminations and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
 - 1. Instrument: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
 - 2. Record of Infrared Scanning: Prepare a certified report that identifies terminations and connections checked and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

3.6 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Initial Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, maintenance service shall include 12 months' full maintenance by skilled employees of manufacturer's authorized service representative. Include quarterly preventive maintenance and exercising to check for proper starting, load transfer, and running under load. Include routine preventive maintenance as recommended by manufacturer and adjusting as required for proper operation. Parts shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.

3.7 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain packaged engine generators.

END OF SECTION 26 3213.13

SECTION 26 3600 - TRANSFER SWITCHES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes automatic transfer switches rated 600 V and less.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for transfer switches.
 - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details showing minimum clearances, conductor entry provisions, gutter space, and installed features and devices.
 - 2. Include material lists for each switch specified.
 - 3. Single-Line Diagram: Show connections between transfer switch, power sources, and load; and show interlocking provisions for each combined transfer switch.
 - 4. Riser Diagram: Show interconnection wiring between transfer switches, annunciators, and control panels.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
- B. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates, for transfer switches, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
 - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each type of product to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
 - 1. In addition to items specified in other section for "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
 - a. Features and operating sequences, both automatic and manual.
 - b. List of all factory settings of relays; provide relay-setting and calibration instructions, including software, where applicable.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications:
 - 1. Member Company of NETA.
 - a. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of transfer switch or transfer switch components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: 12 months from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with NEMA ICS 1.
- C. Comply with NFPA 110.
- D. Comply with UL 1008 unless requirements of these Specifications are stricter.
- E. Indicated Current Ratings: Apply as defined in UL 1008 for continuous loading and total system transfer, including tungsten filament lamp loads not exceeding 30 percent of switch ampere rating, unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Tested Fault-Current Closing and Short-Circuit Ratings: Adequate for duty imposed by protective devices at installation locations in Project under the fault conditions indicated, based on testing according to UL 1008.

1. Where transfer switch includes internal fault-current protection, rating of switch and trip unit combination shall exceed indicated fault-current value at installation location.
 2. Short-time withstand capability for three cycles.
- G. Repetitive Accuracy of Solid-State Controls: All settings shall be plus or minus 2 percent or better over an operating temperature range of minus 20 to plus 70 deg C.
- H. Resistance to Damage by Voltage Transients: Components shall meet or exceed voltage-surge withstand capability requirements when tested according to IEEE C62.62. Components shall meet or exceed voltage-impulse withstand test of NEMA ICS 1.
- I. Electrical Operation: Accomplish by a nonfused, momentarily energized solenoid or electric-motor-operated mechanism. Switches for emergency or standby purposes shall be mechanically and electrically interlocked in both directions to prevent simultaneous connection to both power sources unless closed transition.
- J. Surge Protective Device (SPD): Provide integral SPD in accordance with other section.
- K. Neutral Switching: Where four-pole switches are indicated, provide neutral pole switched simultaneously with phase poles.
- L. Neutral Terminal: Solid and fully rated unless otherwise indicated.
- M. Battery Charger: For generator starting batteries.
1. Float type, rated 10 A.
 2. Ammeter to display charging current.
 3. Fused ac inputs and dc outputs.
- N. Annunciation, Control, and Programming Interface Components: Devices at transfer switches for communicating with remote programming devices, annunciators, or annunciator and control panels shall have communication capability matched with remote device.
- O. Factory Wiring: Train and bundle factory wiring and label, consistent with Shop Drawings, by color-code or by numbered or lettered wire and cable with printed markers at terminations. Color-coding and wire and cable markers are specified in other section for "Identification for Electrical Systems."
1. Designated Terminals: Pressure type, suitable for types and sizes of field wiring indicated.
 2. Power-Terminal Arrangement and Field-Wiring Space: Suitable for top, side, or bottom entrance of feeder conductors as indicated.
 3. Control Wiring: Equipped with lugs suitable for connection to terminal strips.
 4. Accessible via front access.

- P. Enclosures: General-purpose NEMA 250, Type 1, complying with NEMA ICS 6 and UL 508, unless otherwise indicated.

2.2 CONTACTOR-TYPE AUTOMATIC TRANSFER SWITCHES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Caterpillar, Inc.; Electric Power Division.
 - 2. Cummins Power Generation.
 - 3. Generac Power Systems, Inc.
 - 4. Kohler Power Systems.
 - 5. MTU Onsite Energy Corporation.
 - 6. Russelectric, Inc.
- B. Comply with Level 1 equipment according to NFPA 110.
- C. Switch Characteristics: Designed for continuous-duty repetitive transfer of full-rated current between active power sources.
 - 1. Limitation: Switches using molded-case switches or circuit breakers or insulated-case circuit-breaker components are unacceptable.
 - 2. Switch Action: Double throw; mechanically held in both directions.
 - 3. Contacts: Silver composition or silver alloy for load-current switching. Contactor-style automatic transfer-switch units, rated 600 A and higher, shall have separate arcing contacts.
 - 4. Conductor Connectors: Suitable for use with conductor material and sizes.
 - 5. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
 - 6. Main and Neutral Lugs: Compression type.
 - 7. Ground Lugs and Bus-Configured Terminators: Compression type.
 - 8. Connectors shall be marked for conductor size and type according to UL 1008.
- D. Automatic Open-Transition Transfer Switches: Interlocked to prevent the load from being closed on both sources at the same time.
 - 1. Sources shall be mechanically and electrically interlocked to prevent closing both sources on the load at the same time.
- E. Manual Switch Operation: Under load, with door closed and with either or both sources energized. Transfer time is same as for electrical operation. Control circuit automatically disconnects from electrical operator during manual operation.
- F. Manual Switch Operation: Unloaded. Control circuit automatically disconnects from electrical operator during manual operation.
- G. Electric Switch Operation: Electrically actuated by push buttons designated "Normal Source" and "Alternative Source." Switch shall be capable of transferring load in either direction with either or both sources energized.

- H. Signal-Before-Transfer Contacts: A set of normally open/normally closed dry contacts operates in advance of retransfer to normal source. Interval shall be adjustable from 1 to 30 seconds.
- I. Digital Communication Interface: Matched to capability of remote annunciator or annunciator and control panel.
- J. Automatic Transfer-Switch Controller Features:
 - 1. Controller operates through a period of loss of control power.
 - 2. Undervoltage Sensing for Each Phase of Normal and Alternate Source: Sense low phase-to-ground voltage on each phase. Pickup voltage shall be adjustable from 85 to 100 percent of nominal, and dropout voltage shall be adjustable from 75 to 98 percent of pickup value. Factory set for pickup at 90 percent and dropout at 85 percent.
 - 3. Voltage/Frequency Lockout Relay: Prevent premature transfer to generator. Pickup voltage shall be adjustable from 85 to 100 percent of nominal. Factory set for pickup at 90 percent. Pickup frequency shall be adjustable from 90 to 100 percent of nominal. Factory set for pickup at 95 percent.
 - 4. Time Delay for Retransfer to Normal Source: Adjustable from zero to 30 minutes, and factory set for 10 minutes. Override shall automatically defeat delay on loss of voltage or sustained undervoltage of emergency source, provided normal supply has been restored.
 - 5. Test Switch: Simulate normal-source failure.
 - 6. Switch-Position Pilot Lights: Indicate source to which load is connected.
 - 7. Source-Available Indicating Lights: Supervise sources via transfer-switch normal- and emergency-source sensing circuits.
 - a. Normal Power Supervision: Green light with nameplate engraved "Normal Source Available."
 - b. Emergency Power Supervision: Red light with nameplate engraved "Emergency Source Available."
 - 8. Unassigned Auxiliary Contacts: Two normally open, single-pole, double-throw contacts for each switch position, rated 10 A at 240-V ac.
 - 9. Transfer Override Switch: Overrides automatic retransfer control so transfer switch will remain connected to emergency power source regardless of condition of normal source. Pilot light indicates override status.
 - 10. Engine Starting Contacts: One isolated and normally closed, and one isolated and normally open; rated 10 A at 32-V dc minimum.
 - 11. Engine Shutdown Contacts: Instantaneous; shall initiate shutdown sequence at remote engine-generator controls after retransfer of load to normal source.
 - 12. Engine-Generator Exerciser: Solid-state, programmable-time switch starts engine generator and transfers load to it from normal source for a preset time, then retransfers and shuts down engine after a preset cool-down period. Initiates exercise cycle at preset intervals adjustable from 7 to 30 days. Running periods shall be adjustable from 10 to 30 minutes. Factory settings shall be for 7-day exercise cycle, 20-minute running period, and 5-minute cool-down period. Exerciser features include the following:
 - a. Exerciser Transfer Selector Switch: Permits selection of exercise with and without load transfer.

- b. Push-button programming control with digital display of settings.
- c. Integral battery operation of time switch when normal control power is unavailable.

K. Large-Motor-Load Power Transfer:

- 1. In-Phase Monitor: Factory-wired, internal relay controls transfer so contacts close only when the two sources are synchronized in phase and frequency. Relay shall compare phase relationship and frequency difference between normal and emergency sources and initiate transfer when both sources are within 15 electrical degrees, and only if transfer can be completed within 60 electrical degrees. Transfer shall be initiated only if both sources are within 2 Hz of nominal frequency and 70 percent or more of nominal voltage.
- 2. Programmed Neutral Switch Position: Switch operator with programmed neutral position arranged to provide a midpoint between the two working switch positions, with an intentional, time-controlled pause at midpoint during transfer. Adjustable pause from 0.5 to 30 seconds minimum, and factory set for 0.5 second unless otherwise indicated. Time delay occurs for both transfer directions. Disable pause unless both sources are live.

2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Factory Tests: Test and inspect components, assembled switches, and associated equipment according to UL 1008. Ensure proper operation. Check transfer time and voltage, frequency, and time-delay settings for compliance with specified requirements. Perform dielectric strength test complying with NEMA ICS 1.
- B. Prepare test and inspection reports.
 - 1. For each of the tests required by UL 1008, performed on representative devices, for emergency systems. Include results of test for the following conditions:
 - a. Overvoltage.
 - b. Undervoltage.
 - c. Loss of supply voltage.
 - d. Reduction of supply voltage.
 - e. Alternative supply voltage or frequency is at minimum acceptable values.
 - f. Temperature rise.
 - g. Dielectric voltage-withstand; before and after short-circuit test.
 - h. Overload.
 - i. Contact opening.
 - j. Endurance.
 - k. Short circuit.
 - l. Short-time current capability.
 - m. Receptacle withstand capability.
 - n. Insulating base and supports damage.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Floor-Mounting Switch: Anchor to floor by bolting.
 - 1. Install transfer switches on cast-in-place concrete equipment base(s). Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in other section for "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
 - 2. Comply with requirements for seismic control devices specified in other section for "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
 - 3. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases.
 - 4. Provide workspace and clearances required by NFPA 70.
- B. Annunciator and Control Panel Mounting: Flush in wall unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Identify components according to other section for "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- D. Set field-adjustable intervals and delays, relays, and engine exerciser clock.
- E. Comply with NECA 1.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Wiring to Remote Components: Match type and number of cables and conductors to generator sets, control, and communication requirements of transfer switches as recommended by manufacturer. Increase raceway sizes at no additional cost to Owner if necessary to accommodate required wiring.
- B. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways and cable trays except within electrical enclosures. Conceal raceway and cables except in unfinished spaces.
 - 1. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in other section for "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
- C. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii.
- D. Ground equipment according to other section for "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- E. Connect wiring according to other section for "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- F. Connect twisted pair cable according to other section for "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."

- G. Route and brace conductors according to manufacturer's written instructions. Do not obscure manufacturer's markings and labels.
- H. Brace and support equipment according to other section for "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- I. Final connections to equipment shall be made with liquidtight, flexible metallic conduit no more than 18 inches (457 mm) in length.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 - 1. After installing equipment, test for compliance with requirements according to NETA ATS.
 - 2. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:
 - a. Compare equipment nameplate data with Drawings and Specifications.
 - b. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
 - c. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and required clearances.
 - d. Verify that the unit is clean.
 - e. Verify appropriate lubrication on moving current-carrying parts and on moving and sliding surfaces.
 - f. Verify that manual transfer warnings are attached and visible.
 - g. Verify tightness of all control connections.
 - h. Inspect bolted electrical connections for high resistance using one of the following methods, or both:
 - 1) Use of low-resistance ohmmeter.
 - 2) Verify tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-wrench method according to manufacturer's published data.
 - i. Perform manual transfer operation.
 - j. Verify positive mechanical interlocking between normal and alternate sources.
 - k. Perform visual and mechanical inspection of surge arresters.
 - l. Inspect control power transformers.
 - 1) Inspect for physical damage, cracked insulation, broken leads, tightness of connections, defective wiring, and overall general condition.
 - 2) Verify that primary and secondary fuse or circuit-breaker ratings match Drawings.
 - 3) Verify correct functioning of drawout disconnecting contacts, grounding contacts, and interlocks.
 - 3. Electrical Tests:
 - a. Perform insulation-resistance tests on all control wiring with respect to ground.

- b. Perform a contact/pole-resistance test. Compare measured values with manufacturer's acceptable values.
 - c. Verify settings and operation of control devices.
 - d. Calibrate and set all relays and timers.
 - e. Verify phase rotation, phasing, and synchronized operation.
 - f. Perform automatic transfer tests.
 - g. Verify correct operation and timing of the following functions:
 - 1) Normal source voltage-sensing and frequency-sensing relays.
 - 2) Engine start sequence.
 - 3) Time delay on transfer.
 - 4) Alternative source voltage-sensing and frequency-sensing relays.
 - 5) Automatic transfer operation.
 - 6) Interlocks and limit switch function.
 - 7) Time delay and retransfer on normal power restoration.
 - 8) Engine cool-down and shutdown feature.
 - 4. Measure insulation resistance phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground with insulation-resistance tester. Include external annunciation and control circuits. Use test voltages and procedure recommended by manufacturer. Comply with manufacturer's specified minimum resistance.
 - a. Check for electrical continuity of circuits and for short circuits.
 - b. Inspect for physical damage, proper installation and connection, and integrity of barriers, covers, and safety features.
 - c. Verify that manual transfer warnings are properly placed.
 - d. Perform manual transfer operation.
 - 5. After energizing circuits, perform each electrical test for transfer switches stated in NETA ATS and demonstrate interlocking sequence and operational function for each switch at least three times.
 - a. Simulate power failures of normal source to automatic transfer switches and retransfer from emergency source with normal source available.
 - b. Simulate loss of phase-to-ground voltage for each phase of normal source.
 - c. Verify time-delay settings.
 - d. Verify pickup and dropout voltages by data readout or inspection of control settings.
 - e. Perform contact-resistance test across main contacts and correct values exceeding 500 microhms and values for one pole deviating by more than 50 percent from other poles.
 - f. Verify proper sequence and correct timing of automatic engine starting, transfer time delay, retransfer time delay on restoration of normal power, and engine cool-down and shutdown.
 - 6. Ground-Fault Tests: Coordinate with testing of ground-fault protective devices for power delivery from both sources.
 - a. Verify grounding connections and locations and ratings of sensors.
- C. Coordinate tests with tests of generator and run them concurrently.

- D. Report results of tests and inspections in writing. Record adjustable relay settings and measured insulation and contact resistances and time delays. Attach a label or tag to each tested component indicating satisfactory completion of tests.
- E. Transfer switches will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- F. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- G. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- H. Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each switch. Remove all access panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
 - 1. Instrument: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
 - 2. Record of Infrared Scanning: Prepare a certified report that identifies switches checked and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

3.4 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain transfer switches and related equipment.
- B. Training shall include testing ground-fault protective devices and instructions to determine when the ground-fault system shall be retested. Include instructions on where ground-fault sensors are located and how to avoid negating the ground-fault protection scheme during testing and circuit modifications.
- C. Coordinate this training with that for generator equipment.

END OF SECTION 26 3600

SECTION 26 4113 - LIGHTNING PROTECTION FOR STRUCTURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes lightning protection system for ordinary structures.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Include layouts of the lightning protection system, with details of the components to be used in the installation.
 - 2. Include raceway locations needed for the installation of conductors.
 - 3. Details of air terminals, ground rods, ground rings, conductor supports, splices, and terminations, including concealment requirements.
 - 4. Include roof attachment details, coordinated with roof installation.
 - 5. Calculations required by NFPA 780 for bonding of metal bodies.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Lightning protection system Shop Drawings, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
 - 1. Lightning protection cabling attachments to roofing systems and accessories.
 - 2. Lightning protection strike termination device attachment to roofing systems, coordinated with the roofing system manufacturer.
 - 3. Lightning protection system components penetrating roofing and moisture protection systems and system components, coordinated with the roofing system manufacturer.
- B. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- C. Product Certificates: For each type of roof adhesive for attaching the roof-mounted air terminal assemblies, approved by the roofing-material manufacturer.
- D. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For lightning protection system to include in maintenance manuals.
 - 1. In addition to items specified in other section for "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
 - a. Dimensioned site plan showing dimensioned route of the ground loop conductor and the ground rod locations. Comply with requirements of other section for "Project Record Documents."
 - b. A system testing and inspection record, listing the results of inspections and ground resistance tests, as recommended by NFPA 780, Annex D.
- B. Completion Certificate:
 - 1. UL Master Label Certificate.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: UL-listed installer, category OWAY or LPI Master Installer.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Advanced Lightning Technology, Ltd.
 - 2. ERICO; a brand of nVent.
 - 3. Heary Bros. Lightning Protection Co. Inc.
 - 4. Thompson Lightning Protection, Inc.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. NFPA Lightning Protection Standard: Comply with NFPA 780 requirements for Class II buildings.
- B. UL Lightning Protection Standard: Comply with UL 96A requirements for Class II buildings.
- C. Lightning Protection Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency as complying with UL 96, and marked for intended location and application.

2.3 MATERIALS

- A. Air Terminals:
 - 1. Copper unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. 1/2-inch (12.7-mm) diameter by 12 inches (305 mm) long.

3. Pointed tip.
 4. Integral base support.
- B. Class 1 Main Conductors:
1. Stranded Copper: 57,400 circular mils in diameter
- C. Secondary Conductors:
1. Stranded Copper: 26,240 circular mils in diameter.
- D. Ground Loop Conductor: Stranded copper.
- E. Ground Rods:
1. Material: Copper-clad steel.
 2. Diameter: 3/4 inch (19 mm).
 3. Rods shall be not less than 120 inches (3050 mm) long.
- F. Conductor Splices and Connectors: Compression fittings that are installed with hydraulically operated tools, or exothermic welds, approved for use with the class type.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install lightning protection components and systems according to UL 96A and NFPA 780.
- B. Install conductors with direct paths from air terminals to ground connections. Avoid bends less than 90 degrees and 8 inches (203 mm) in radius and narrow loops.
- C. Conceal conductors within normal view from exterior locations at grade within 200 feet (60 m) of building. Comply with requirements for concealed systems in NFPA 780.
1. Roof penetrations required for down conductors and connections to structural-steel framework shall be made using listed through-roof fitting and connector assemblies with solid rods and appropriate roof flashings. Use materials approved by the roofing manufacturer for the purpose. Conform to the methods and materials required at roofing penetrations of the lightning protection components to ensure compatibility with the roofing specifications and warranty.
 2. Install conduit where necessary to comply with conductor concealment requirements.
 3. Air Terminals on Single-Ply Membrane Roofing: Comply with adhesive manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Ground Ring Electrode: The conductor shall be not less than the main-size lightning conductor.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Aboveground concealed connections, and connections in earth or concrete, shall be done by exothermic welds or by high-compression fittings listed for the purpose.
- B. Aboveground exposed connections shall be done using the following types of connectors, listed and labeled for the purpose: bolted connectors.
- C. Bonding Straps and Jumpers: Install in locations accessible for inspection and maintenance, except where routed through short lengths of conduit.
 - 1. Bonding to Structure: Bond straps directly to basic structure, taking care not to penetrate any adjacent parts.
 - 2. Bonding to Equipment Mounted on Vibration Isolation Hangers and Supports: Install bonding so vibration is not transmitted to rigidly mounted equipment.

3.3 CORROSION PROTECTION

- A. Do not combine materials that can form an electrolytic couple that will accelerate corrosion in the presence of moisture unless moisture is permanently excluded from junction of such materials.
- B. Use conductors with protective coatings where conditions would cause deterioration or corrosion of conductors.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Special Inspections: Engage a qualified special inspector to perform the following special inspections:
 - 1. Perform inspections as required to obtain a UL Master Label for system.
- B. Prepare test and inspection reports and certificates.

END OF SECTION 26 4113

SECTION 26 4313 - SURGE PROTECTION FOR LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CIRCUITS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes field-mounted SPDs for low-voltage (120 to 600 V) power distribution and control equipment.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Inominal: Nominal discharge current.
- B. MCOV: Maximum continuous operating voltage.
- C. Mode(s), also Modes of Protection: The pair of electrical connections where the VPR applies.
- D. MOV: Metal-oxide varistor; an electronic component with a significant non-ohmic current-voltage characteristic.
- E. OCPD: Overcurrent protective device.
- F. SCCR: Short-circuit current rating.
- G. SPD: Surge protective device.
- H. VPR: Voltage protection rating.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
 - 2. Copy of UL Category Code VZCA certification, as a minimum, listing the tested values for VPRs, Inominal ratings, MCOVs, type designations, OCPD requirements, model numbers, system voltages, and modes of protection.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

- B. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's special warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For SPDs to include in maintenance manuals.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to replace or replace SPDs that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

- 1. Warranty Period: Ten (10) years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL SPD REQUIREMENTS

- A. SPD with Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.
- C. Comply with UL 1449.
- D. MCOV of the SPD shall be the nominal system voltage.

2.2 SERVICE ENTRANCE SUPPRESSOR

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Advanced Protection Technologies Inc. (APT).
 - 2. Current Technology Inc.
 - 3. Eaton.
 - 4. General Electric Company.
 - 5. Liebert; a brand of Vertiv.
- B. SPDs: Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with UL 1449, Type 1 and Type 2
 - 1. SPDs with the following features and accessories:
 - a. Integral disconnect switch.
 - b. Internal thermal protection that disconnects the SPD before damaging internal suppressor components.
 - c. Indicator light display for protection status.
 - d. Form-C contacts rated at 5 A and 250-V ac, one normally open and one normally closed, for remote monitoring of protection status. Contacts shall reverse on failure of any surge diversion module or on opening of any current-limiting device. Coordinate with building power monitoring and control system.

e. Surge counter.

C. Comply with UL 1283.

D. Peak Surge Current Rating: The minimum single-pulse surge current withstand rating per phase shall not be less than 240kA. The peak surge current rating shall be the arithmetic sum of the ratings of the individual MOVs in a given mode.

E. Protection modes and UL 1449 VPR for grounded wye circuits with 208Y/120 V, three-phase, four-wire circuits shall not exceed the following:

1. Line to Neutral: 800 V for 208Y/120 V.
2. Line to Ground: 1200 V for 208Y/120 V.
3. Line to Line: 1000 V for 208Y/120 V.

F. SCCR: Equal or exceed 200 kA.

G. Inominal Rating: 20 kA.

2.3 PANEL SUPPRESSORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Advanced Protection Technologies Inc. (APT).
2. Current Technology Inc.
3. Eaton.
4. General Electric Company.
5. Liebert; a brand of Vertiv.

B. SPDs: Comply with UL 1449, Type 2.

1. Include LED indicator lights for power and protection status.
2. Internal thermal protection that disconnects the SPD before damaging internal suppressor components.
3. Include Form-C contacts rated at 5 A and 250-V ac, one normally open and one normally closed, for remote monitoring of protection status. Contacts shall reverse on failure of any surge diversion module or on opening of any current-limiting device. Coordinate with building power monitoring and control system.

C. Peak Surge Current Rating: The minimum single-pulse surge current withstand rating per phase shall not be less than 100 kA. The peak surge current rating shall be the arithmetic sum of the ratings of the individual MOVs in a given mode.

D. Comply with UL 1283.

E. Protection modes and UL 1449 VPR for grounded wye circuits with 208Y/120 V, three-phase, four-wire circuits shall not exceed the following:

1. Line to Neutral: 800 V for 208Y/120 V.

2. Line to Ground: 900 V for 208Y/120 V.
3. Neutral to Ground: 1000 V for 208Y/120 V.
4. Line to Line: 1200 V for 208Y/120 V

F. SCCR: Equal or exceed 200 kA.

G. Inominal Rating: 20 kA.

2.4 ENCLOSURES

A. Indoor Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1.

2.5 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Class 2 Control Cables: Multi-conductor cable with copper conductors not smaller than No. 18 AWG, complying with other section for "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- B. Class 1 Control Cables: Multi-conductor cable with copper conductors not smaller than No. 14 AWG, complying with other section for "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Install an OCPD or disconnect as required to comply with the UL listing of the SPD.
- C. Install SPDs with conductors between suppressor and points of attachment as short and straight as possible, and adjust circuit-breaker positions to achieve shortest and straightest leads. Do not splice and extend SPD leads unless specifically permitted by manufacturer. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended lead length. Do not bond neutral and ground.
 1. Provide multiple, 60-A circuit breaker as dedicated disconnecting means for SPD unless otherwise noted.
- D. Use crimped connectors and splices only. Wire nuts are unacceptable.
- E. Wiring:
 1. Power Wiring: Comply with wiring methods in other section for "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
 2. Controls: Comply with wiring methods in other section for "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative.
 - 1. Compare equipment nameplate data for compliance with Drawings and Specifications.
 - 2. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and clearances.
 - 3. Verify that electrical wiring installation complies with manufacturer's written installation requirements.
- B. An SPD will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.3 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Complete startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Do not perform insulation-resistance tests of the distribution wiring equipment with SPDs installed. Disconnect SPDs before conducting insulation-resistance tests, and reconnect them immediately after the testing is over.
- C. Energize SPDs after power system has been energized, stabilized, and tested.

3.4 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to operate and maintain SPDs.

END OF SECTION 26 4313

SECTION 26 5119 - LED INTERIOR LIGHTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes the following:

- 1. Types of LED luminaires:

- a. Cylinder.
 - b. Downlight.
 - c. Highbay, linear.
 - d. Highbay, nonlinear.
 - e. Linear industrial.
 - f. Lowbay.
 - g. Parking garage.
 - h. Recessed, linear.
 - i. Strip light.
 - j. Surface mount, linear.
 - k. Surface mount, nonlinear.
 - l. Suspended, linear.
 - m. Suspended, nonlinear.

- 2. Interior light fixtures for buildings and structures (in part with lighting fixture drawings, schedules, and basis of design cut sheets).
 - 3. All labor, materials, and equipment as necessary to complete all work as indicated on the drawings, and as specified herein.
 - 4. The Contractor shall furnish and install all light fixtures, as shown on the drawing. Light fixtures shall conform to the types and manufacturers as specified on the drawings, schedules, basis of design cut sheets, and herein.
 - 5. The Contractor shall furnish all lamps and necessary hangers, supports, wiring, etc., for installation of light fixtures.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CCT: Correlated color temperature.
- B. CRI: Color Rendering Index.
- C. Fixture: See "Luminaire."
- D. IP: International Protection or Ingress Protection Rating.

- E. LED: Light-emitting diode.
- F. Lumen: Measured output of lamp and luminaire, or both.
- G. Luminaire: Complete lighting unit, including lamp, reflector, and housing.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Arrange in order of luminaire designation.
 - 2. Include data on features, accessories, and finishes.
 - 3. Include physical description and dimensions of luminaires.
 - 4. Include emergency lighting units, including batteries and chargers.
 - 5. Include life, output (lumens, CCT, and CRI), and energy-efficiency data.
 - 6. Photometric data and adjustment factors based on laboratory tests, complying with IES "Lighting Measurements Testing and Calculation Guides" for each luminaire type. The adjustment factors shall be for lamps and accessories identical to those indicated for the luminaire as applied in this Project.
 - a. Manufacturers' Certified Data: Photometric data certified by manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
- B. Shop Drawings: For nonstandard or custom luminaires.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting and attachment details.
 - 2. Include details of luminaire assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Product Schedule: For luminaires and lamps. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plan(s) and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
 - 1. Luminaires.
 - 2. Suspended ceiling components.
 - 3. Partitions and millwork that penetrate the ceiling or extend to within 12 inches (300 mm) of the plane of the luminaires.
 - 4. Structural members to which luminaires will be attached.
 - 5. Initial access modules for acoustical tile, including size and locations.
 - 6. Items penetrating finished ceiling, including the following:
 - a. Other luminaires.
 - b. Air outlets and inlets.

- c. Speakers.
 - d. Sprinklers.
 - e. Access panels.
 - f. Ceiling-mounted projectors.
 - 7. Moldings.
 - 8. Location of remote lighting equipment such as drivers, power supplies.
 - B. Qualification Data: For testing laboratory providing photometric data for luminaires.
 - C. Seismic Qualification Data: For luminaires, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
 - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
 - D. Product Certificates: For each type of luminaire.
 - E. Product Test Reports: For each type of luminaire, for tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency.
 - F. Sample warranty.
 - G. LED module, Driver, and Controls Compatibility: As stated so by each component manufacturer.
 - H. Provide lighting shop drawings and fixture information in one submittal. Include required information for all fixtures, lamps, ballasts, and mounting hardware. Incomplete submittals will be returned without being reviewed.
 - I. "Approved Equal" specification status does not and shall not exempt non-prime specified manufacturers identified, from full and complete compliance with all criteria of either specification or as attributed to "prime specification" equipment with regards to photometric performance, adjustability, brightness control, size, lamping, ballasts, mounting, or finish. Aesthetic qualities shall be reviewed by Architect.
 - J. Submittal review for each unique fixture type specified in the lighting fixture schedule shall be allotted a maximum of three (3) submittal reviews.
 - K. All submitted substitutions differing from the prime specified manufacturer and catalog number, shall be required to submit a working sample
- 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS
- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For luminaires and lighting systems to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1. Provide a list of all lamp types used on Project; use ANSI and manufacturers' codes.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Luminaire manufacturer's laboratory that is accredited under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
- B. Provide luminaires from a single manufacturer for each luminaire type.
- C. Each luminaire type shall be binned within a three-step MacAdam Ellipse to ensure color consistency among luminaires.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect finishes of exposed surfaces by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components of luminaires that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
- B. Warranty Period: Five (5) years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Luminaires shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
- B. Seismic Performance: Luminaires and lamps shall be labeled vibration and shock resistant.
 1. The term "withstand" means "the luminaire will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified."
- C. Ambient Temperature: 41 to 104 deg F (5 to 40 deg C).
 1. Relative Humidity: Zero to 95 percent.
- D. Altitude: Sea level to 1000 feet (300 m).

2.2 LUMINAIRE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

- B. Factory-Applied Labels: Comply with UL 1598. Include recommended lamps. Locate labels where they will be readily visible to service personnel, but not seen from normal viewing angles when lamps are in place.
 - 1. Label shall include the following lamp characteristics:
 - a. "USE ONLY" and include specific lamp type.
 - b. Lamp diameter, shape, size, wattage, and coating.
 - c. CCT and CRI.
 - C. Recessed luminaires shall comply with NEMA LE 4.
 - D. FM Global Compliance: Luminaires for hazardous locations shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by FM Global.
 - E. California Title 24 compliant.
- 2.3 CYLINDER: Type as indicated on the contract drawings.
- A. Nominal Operating Voltage: As indicated on the contract drawings.
 - B. Lamp:
 - 1. Minimum 250 lm.
 - 2. Minimum allowable efficacy of 80 lm/W.
 - 3. CRI of minimum 80 . CCT of 3500 K.
 - 4. Rated lamp life of 50,000 hours to L70.
 - 5. Dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.
 - 6. Internal driver.
 - 7. User-Replaceable Lamps:
 - a. Bulb shape complying with ANSI C78.79.
 - b. Lamp base complying with ANSI C81.61.
 - 8. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch (3.175-mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.
 - C. Housings:
 - 1. Extruded-aluminum housing and heat sink.
 - 2. Clear anodized finish.
 - D. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Components are designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.
 - E. Diffusers and Globes:
 - 1. Prismatic acrylic.

2. Acrylic Diffusers: One hundred percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
 3. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch (3.175-mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- F. With integral mounting provisions.
- G. Standards:
1. ENERGY STAR certified.
 2. RoHS compliant.
 3. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.
- 2.4 DOWNLIGHT: Type as indicated on the contract drawings.
- A. Nominal Operating Voltage: As indicated on the contract drawings.
- B. Lamp:
1. Minimum 250 lm.
 2. Minimum allowable efficacy of 80lm/W.
 3. CRI of minimum 80. CCT of 3500 K.
 4. Rated lamp life of 50,000 hours to L70.
 5. Dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.
 6. Internal driver.
 7. User-Replaceable Lamps:
 - a. Bulb shape complying with ANSI C78.79.
 - b. Lamp base complying with ANSI C81.61.
 8. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch (3.175-mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Housings:
1. Extruded-aluminum housing and heat sink.
 2. Clear anodized finish.
 3. Universal mounting bracket.
 4. Integral junction box with conduit fittings.
- D. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.
- E. Diffusers and Globes:
1. Fixed lens.
 2. Wide light distribution.
 3. Prismatic acrylic.

4. Acrylic Diffusers: One hundred percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
5. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch (3.175-mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.

F. Standards:

1. ENERGY STAR certified.
2. RoHS compliant.
3. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.
4. Recessed luminaires shall comply with NEMA LE 4.

2.5 HIGHBAY, LINEAR: Type as indicated on the contract drawings.

A. Nominal Operating Voltage: As indicated on the contract drawings.

B. Lamp:

1. Minimum 250 lm.
2. Minimum allowable efficacy of 80 lm/W.
3. CRI of minimum 80. CCT of 3500 K.
4. Rated lamp life of 50,000 hours to L70.
5. Dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.
6. Internal driver.
7. User-Replaceable Lamps:
 - a. Bulb shape complying with ANSI C78.79.
 - b. Lamp base complying with ANSI C81.61.
8. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch (3.175-mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.

C. Housings:

1. Extruded-aluminum housing and heat sink.
2. Clear anodized finish.
3. With integral mounting provisions.

D. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Components are designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.

E. Diffusers and Globes:

1. Prismatic acrylic.
2. Acrylic Diffusers: One hundred percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
3. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch (3.175-mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.

F. Standards:

1. ENERGY STAR certified.
2. RoHS compliant.
3. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.

2.6 HIGHBAY, NONLINEAR: Type as indicated on the contract drawings.

A. Nominal Operating Voltage: As indicated on the contract drawings.

B. Lamp:

1. Minimum 250 lm.
2. Minimum allowable efficacy of 80 lm/W.
3. CRI of minimum 80. CCT of 3500 K.
4. Rated lamp life of 50,000 hours to L70.
5. Dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.
6. Internal driver.
7. User-Replaceable Lamps:
 - a. Bulb shape complying with ANSI C78.79.
 - b. Lamp base complying with ANSI C81.61.
8. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch (3.175-mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.

C. Housings:

1. Extruded-aluminum housing and heat sink.
2. Clear anodized finish.
3. Universal mounting bracket.
4. Integral junction box with conduit fittings.

D. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Components are designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.

E. Diffusers and Globes:

1. Prismatic acrylic.
2. Acrylic Diffusers: One hundred percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
3. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch (3.175-mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.

F. Standards:

1. ENERGY STAR certified.
2. RoHS compliant.

3. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.

2.7 LINEAR INDUSTRIAL: Type as indicated on the contract drawings.

A. Lamp:

1. Minimum 5,000 lm.
2. Minimum allowable efficacy of 80 lm/W.
3. CRI of minimum 80. CCT of 3500 K.
4. Rated lamp life of 50,000 hours to L70.
5. Dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.
6. Internal driver.
7. User-Replaceable Lamps:
 - a. Bulb shape complying with ANSI C78.79.
 - b. Lamp base complying with ANSI C81.61.
8. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch (3.175-mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.

B. Housings:

1. Extruded-aluminum housing and heat sink.
2. Clear anodized finish.

C. Housing and Heat Sink Rating:

1. Class 1, Division 2 Group(s): As indicated on the contract drawings.
2. NEMA 4X.
3. IP 54.
4. IP 66.
5. Marine and wet locations.
6. CSA C22.2 No 137.

D. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Components are designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.

E. Diffusers and Globes:

1. Prismatic acrylic.
2. Acrylic Diffusers: One hundred percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
3. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch (3.175-mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.

F. With integral mounting provisions.

G. Standards:

1. ENERGY STAR certified.
2. RoHS compliant.

2.8 LOWBAY: Type as indicated on the contract drawings

A. Nominal Operating Voltage: As indicated on the contract drawings.

B. Lamp:

1. Minimum 5,000 lm.
2. Minimum allowable efficacy of 80 lm/W.
3. CRI of minimum 80. CCT of 3500 K.
4. Rated lamp life of 50,000 hours to L70.
5. Dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.
6. Internal driver.
7. User-Replaceable Lamps:
 - a. Bulb shape complying with ANSI C78.79.
 - b. Lamp base complying with ANSI C81.61.
8. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch (3.175-mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.

C. Housings:

1. Extruded-aluminum housing and heat sink.
2. Clear anodized finish.

D. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Components are designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.

E. Diffusers and Globes:

1. Prismatic acrylic.
2. Acrylic Diffusers: One hundred percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
3. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch (3.175-mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.

F. Standards:

1. ENERGY STAR certified.
2. RoHS compliant.
3. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.

2.9 PARKING GARAGE: Type as indicated on the contract drawings.

A. Nominal Operating Voltage: As indicated on the contract drawings.

B. Lamp:

1. Minimum 2,000 lm.
2. Minimum allowable efficacy of 75 lm/W.
3. CRI of minimum 80. CCT of 3500 K.
4. Rated lamp life of 50,000 hours to L70.
5. Dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.
6. Internal driver.
7. User-Replaceable Lamps:
 - a. Bulb shape complying with ANSI C78.79.
 - b. Lamp base complying with ANSI C81.61.
8. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch (3.175-mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.

C. Housings:

1. Extruded-aluminum housing and heat sink.
2. Clear] anodized finish.
3. Low-profile housing and heat sink.
4. Fully gasketed and sealed. IP 65 rated.
5. Stainless-steel latches.
6. Integral pressure equalizer.

D. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Components are designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.

E. Diffusers and Globes:

1. Prismatic acrylic.
2. Acrylic Diffusers: One hundred percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
3. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch (3.175-mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.

F. With integral mounting provisions.

G. Standards:

1. ENERGY STAR certified.
2. RoHS compliant.
3. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.

2.10 RECESSED, LINEAR: Type as indicated on the contract drawings.

A. Nominal Operating Voltage: As indicated on the contract drawings.

B. Lamp:

1. Minimum 1,500 lm.
2. Minimum allowable efficacy of 85 lm/W.
3. CRI of minimum 80. CCT of 3500 K.
4. Rated lamp life of 50,000 hours to L70.
5. Dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.
6. Internal driver.
7. User-Replaceable Lamps:
 - a. Bulb shape complying with ANSI C78.79.
 - b. Lamp base complying with ANSI C81.61.
8. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch (3.175-mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.

C. Housings:

1. Extruded-aluminum housing and heat sink.
2. Clear anodized finish.
3. With integral mounting provisions.

D. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Components are designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.

E. Diffusers and Globes:

1. Prismatic acrylic.
2. Acrylic Diffusers: One hundred percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
3. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch (3.175-mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.

F. Standards:

1. ENERGY STAR certified.
2. RoHS compliant.
3. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.
4. NEMA LE 4.

2.11 STRIP LIGHT: Type as indicated on the contract drawings.

A. Nominal Operating Voltage: As indicated on the contract drawings.

B. Lamp:

1. Minimum 750 lm.
2. Minimum allowable efficacy of 80 lm/W.

3. CRI of minimum 80. CCT of 3500 K.
4. Rated lamp life of 50,000 hours to L70.
5. Dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.
6. Internal driver.
7. User-Replaceable Lamps:
 - a. Bulb shape complying with ANSI C78.79.
 - b. Lamp base complying with ANSI C81.61.
8. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch (3.175-mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.

C. Housings:

1. Extruded-aluminum housing and heat sink.
2. Clear anodized finish.
3. With integral mounting provisions.

D. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping of luminaire without use of tools. Components are designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.

E. Diffusers and Globes:

1. Prismatic acrylic.
2. Acrylic Diffusers: One hundred percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
3. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch (3.175-mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.

F. Standards:

1. ENERGY STAR certified.
2. RoHS compliant.
3. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.

2.12 SURFACE MOUNT, LINEAR: Type as indicated on the contract drawings.

A. Nominal Operating Voltage: As indicated on the contract drawings.

B. Lamp:

1. Minimum 750 lm.
2. Minimum allowable efficacy of 80 lm/W.
3. CRI of minimum 80. CCT of 3500 K.
4. Rated lamp life of 50,000 hours to L70.
5. Dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.
6. Internal driver.
7. User-Replaceable Lamps:

- a. Bulb shape complying with ANSI C78.79.
 - b. Lamp base complying with ANSI C81.61.
 - 8. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch (3.175-mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.
 - C. Housings:
 - 1. Extruded-aluminum] housing and heat sink.
 - 2. Clear anodized finish.
 - 3. With integral mounting provisions.
 - D. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Components are designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.
 - E. Diffusers and Globes:
 - 1. Prismatic acrylic.
 - 2. Acrylic Diffusers: One hundred percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
 - 3. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch (3.175-mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.
 - F. Standards:
 - 1. ENERGY STAR certified.
 - 2. RoHS compliant.
 - 3. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.
- 2.13 SURFACE MOUNT, NONLINEAR: Type as indicated on the contract drawings.
- A. Nominal Operating Voltage: As indicated on the contract drawings.
 - B. Lamp:
 - 1. Minimum 750 lm.
 - 2. Minimum allowable efficacy of 80 lm/W.
 - 3. CRI of minimum 80. CCT of 3500 K.
 - 4. Rated lamp life of 50,000 hours to L70.
 - 5. Dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.
 - 6. Internal driver.
 - 7. User-Replaceable Lamps:
 - a. Bulb shape complying with ANSI C78.79.
 - b. Lamp base complying with ANSI C81.61.
 - 8. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch (3.175-mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.

C. Housings:

1. Extruded-aluminum housing and heat sink.
2. Clear anodized finish.
3. With integral mounting provisions.

D. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Components are designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.

E. Diffusers and Globes:

1. Prismatic acrylic.
2. Acrylic Diffusers: One hundred percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
3. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch (3.175-mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.

F. Standards:

1. ENERGY STAR certified.
2. RoHS compliant.
3. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.

2.14 SUSPENDED, LINEAR: Type as indicated on the contract drawings

A. Nominal Operating Voltage: As indicated on the contract drawings.

B. Lamp:

1. Minimum 1,500 lm.
2. Minimum allowable efficacy of 85 lm/W.
3. CRI of minimum 80. CCT of 3500 K.
4. Rated lamp life of 50,000 hours to L70.
5. Dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.
6. Internal driver.
7. User-Replaceable Lamps:
 - a. Bulb shape complying with ANSI C78.79.
 - b. Lamp base complying with ANSI C81.61.
8. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch (3.175-mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.

C. Housings:

1. Extruded-aluminum housing and heat sink.
2. Clear anodized finish.
3. With integral mounting provisions.

D. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Components are designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.

E. Diffusers and Globes:

1. Prismatic acrylic.
2. Acrylic Diffusers: One hundred percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
3. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch (3.175-mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.

F. Standards:

1. ENERGY STAR certified.
2. RoHS compliant.
3. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.

2.15 SUSPENDED, NONLINEAR: Type as indicated on the contract drawings

A. Nominal Operating Voltage: As indicated on the contract drawings.

B. Lamp:

1. Minimum 1,500 lm.
2. Minimum allowable efficacy of 85 lm/W.
3. CRI of minimum 80. CCT of 3500 K.
4. Rated lamp life of 50,000 hours to L70.
5. Dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.
6. Internal driver.
7. User-Replaceable Lamps:
 - a. Bulb shape complying with ANSI C78.79.
 - b. Lamp base complying with ANSI C81.61.
8. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch (3.175-mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.

C. Housings:

1. Extruded-aluminum housing and heat sink.
2. Clear anodized finish.
3. Universal mounting bracket.
4. Integral junction box with conduit fittings.

D. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Components are designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other

components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.

E. Diffusers and Globes:

1. Prismatic acrylic.
2. Acrylic Diffusers: One hundred percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
3. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch (3.175-mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.

F. Standards:

1. ENERGY STAR certified.
2. RoHS compliant.
3. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.

2.16 MATERIALS

A. Metal Parts:

1. Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
2. Sheet metal components shall be steel unless otherwise indicated.
3. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.

B. Steel:

1. ASTM A 36/A 36M for carbon structural steel.
2. ASTM A 568/A 568M for sheet steel.

C. Stainless Steel:

1. Manufacturer's standard grade.
2. Manufacturer's standard type, ASTM A 240/240 M.

D. Galvanized Steel: ASTM A 653/A 653M.

E. Aluminum: ASTM B 209.

2.17 METAL FINISHES

- A. Variations in finishes are unacceptable in the same piece. Variations in finishes of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and if they can be and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

2.18 LUMINAIRE SUPPORT

- A. Comply with requirements in other section for "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for channel and angle iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.

- B. Single-Stem Hangers: 1/2-inch (13-mm) steel tubing with swivel ball fittings and ceiling canopy. Finish same as luminaire.
- C. Wires: ASTM A 641/A 641 M, Class 3, soft temper, zinc-coated steel, 12 gage (2.68 mm).
- D. Rod Hangers: 3/16-inch (5-mm) minimum diameter, cadmium-plated, threaded steel rod.
- E. Hook Hangers: Integrated assembly matched to luminaire, line voltage, and equipment with threaded attachment, cord, and locking-type plug.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for luminaire to verify actual locations of luminaire and electrical connections before luminaire installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 TEMPORARY LIGHTING

- A. If approved by the Architect, use selected permanent luminaires for temporary lighting. When construction is sufficiently complete, clean luminaires used for temporary lighting and install new lamps.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Install luminaires level, plumb, and square with ceilings and walls unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install lamps in each luminaire.
- D. Supports:
 - 1. Sized and rated for luminaire weight.
 - 2. Able to maintain luminaire position after cleaning and relamping.
 - 3. Provide support for luminaire without causing deflection of ceiling or wall.
 - 4. Luminaire-mounting devices shall be capable of supporting a horizontal force of 100 percent of luminaire weight and a vertical force of 400 percent of luminaire weight.
- E. Flush-Mounted Luminaires:

1. Secured to outlet box.
2. Attached to ceiling structural members at four points equally spaced around circumference of luminaire.
3. Trim ring flush with finished surface.

F. Wall-Mounted Luminaires:

1. Attached to structural members in walls.
2. Do not attach luminaires directly to gypsum board.

G. Suspended Luminaires:

1. Ceiling Mount:
 - a. Two 5/32-inch- (4-mm-) diameter aircraft cable supports adjustable to 10 feet (3 m) in length.
 - b. [Hook mount.
2. Pendants and Rods: Where longer than 48 inches (1200 mm), brace to limit swinging.
3. Stem-Mounted, Single-Unit Luminaires: Suspend with twin-stem hangers. Support with approved outlet box and accessories that hold stem and provide damping of luminaire oscillations. Support outlet box vertically to building structure using approved devices.
4. Continuous Rows of Luminaires: Use tubing or stem for wiring at one point and tubing or rod for suspension for each unit length of luminaire chassis, including one at each end.
5. Do not use ceiling grid as support for pendant luminaires. Connect support wires or rods to building structure.

H. Ceiling-Grid-Mounted Luminaires:

1. Secure to any required outlet box.
2. Secure luminaire to the luminaire opening using approved fasteners in a minimum of four locations, spaced near corners of luminaire.
3. Use approved devices and support components to connect luminaire to ceiling grid and building structure in a minimum of four locations, spaced near corners of luminaire.

- I. Comply with requirements in other section for "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" for wiring connections.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in other section for "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Operational Test: After installing luminaires, switches, and accessories, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units to confirm proper operation.
2. Test for Emergency Lighting: Interrupt power supply to demonstrate proper operation. Verify transfer from normal power to battery power and retransfer to normal.

B. Luminaire will be considered defective if it does not pass operation tests and inspections.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.6 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Comply with requirements for startup specified in other section for "Addressable-Luminaire Lighting Controls."

B. Comply with requirements for startup specified in other section for "Distributed Digital Lighting Controls."

3.7 ADJUSTING

A. Under the direction of the Lighting Designer, adjust, trim, and lock all luminaires having adjustable components during on-site aiming. Provide a minimum of three (3) visits to Project, with the lighting designer, during other-than-normal occupancy hours, and in the absence of daylight for initial aiming.

B. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting the direction of aim of luminaires to suit occupied conditions. Make up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal hours for this purpose. Some of this work may be required during hours of darkness.

1. During adjustment visits, inspect all luminaires. Replace lamps or luminaires that are defective.
2. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.
3. Adjust the aim of luminaires in the presence of the Architect.

END OF SECTION 26 5199

SECTION 26 5600 - DECORATIVE LIGHT POLE AND FIXTURE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Fixture
2. Poles and accessories for support of luminaires.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. EPA: Equivalent projected area.
- B. Luminaire: Complete lighting fixture.
- C. Pole: Luminaire-supporting structure, including tower used for large-area illumination.
- D. Standard: See "Pole."

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each pole, accessory, and luminaire-supporting and -lowering device, arranged as indicated.
1. Include data on construction details, profiles, EPA, materials, dimensions, weight, rated design load, and ultimate strength of individual components.
 2. Include finishes for lighting poles and luminaire-supporting devices.
 3. Anchor bolts.
 4. Manufactured pole foundations.
- B. Shop Drawings:
1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 3. Detail fabrication and assembly of poles and pole accessories.
 4. Foundation construction details, including material descriptions, dimensions, anchor bolts, support devices, and calculations, signed and sealed by a professional engineer licensed in the state of New York.
 5. Anchor bolt templates keyed to specific poles and certified by manufacturer.

6. Method and procedure of pole installation. Include manufacturer's written installations.

- C. Samples: For each exposed lighting pole, standard, and luminaire-supporting device and for each color and texture specified.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Pole and Support Component Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of poles, certifying that products are designed for indicated load requirements according to AASHTO LTS-6-M and that load imposed by luminaire and attachments has been included in design. The certification shall be based on design calculations signed and sealed by a professional engineer.
- B. Qualification Data: For Installer and testing agency.
- C. Material Test Reports:
 1. For each foundation component, by a qualified testing agency.
 2. For each pole, by a qualified testing agency.
- D. Source quality-control reports.
- E. Field quality-control reports.
- F. Sample Warranty: Manufacturer's standard warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For poles to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Pole repair materials.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM C 1093 for foundation testing.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Package aluminum poles for shipping according to ASTM B 660.

- B. Store poles on decay-resistant skids at least 12 inches (300 mm) above grade and vegetation. Support poles to prevent distortion and arrange to provide free air circulation.
- C. Handle wood poles so they will not be damaged. Do not use pointed tools that can indent pole surface more than 1/4 inch (6 mm) deep. Do not apply tools to section of pole to be installed below finished grade.
- D. Retain factory-applied pole wrappings on laminated wood poles until right before pole installation. Handle poles with web fabric straps.
- E. Retain factory-applied pole wrappings on metal poles until right before pole installation. Handle poles with web fabric straps.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of pole(s) that fail in materials or workmanship; that corrode; or that fade, stain, perforate, erode, or chalk due to effects of weather or solar radiation within a specified warranty period. Manufacturer may exclude lightning damage, hail damage, vandalism, abuse, or unauthorized repairs from special warranty period.

- 1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Characteristics: Comply with AASHTO LTS-6-M.
- B. Dead Load: Weight of luminaire and its horizontal and vertical supports, lowering devices, and supporting structure, applied according to AASHTO LTS-6-M.
- C. Live Load: Single load of 500 lbf (2200 N) distributed according to AASHTO LTS-6-M.
- D. Ice Load: Load of 3 lbf/sq. ft. (145 Pa), applied according to AASHTO LTS-6-M for applicable areas on the Ice Load Map.
- E. Wind Load: Pressure of wind on pole and luminaire, calculated and applied according to AASHTO LTS-6-M.
 - 1. Basic wind speed for calculating wind load for poles exceeding 15 feet in height is 100 mph (45 m/s).
- F. Strength Analysis: For each pole, multiply the actual EPA of luminaires and brackets by a factor of 1.1 to obtain the EPA to be used in pole selection strength analysis.

- G. Luminaire Attachment Provisions: Comply with luminaire manufacturers' mounting requirements. Use stainless-steel fasteners and mounting bolts unless otherwise indicated.

2.2 POLE

- A. Manufacturer: TBD&K Tubular Products, Inc., furnished by Flagpoles, Inc., 95 Gnarled Hollow Rd. East Setauket, NY, 11733
- B. Catalog#: FPFLS532512B-6-1992-SBU
 - 1. Pole: Spun Tapered aluminum shaft alloy 6063-T6;
 - 2. Dimensions
 - a. "A" Bottom dia.: 5";
 - b. "B" Top dia.: 3-1/4";
 - c. "C" Wall thickness: 0.156";
 - d. "D" Overall Length: 12 feet;
 - e. Mechanically rotary sanded 60 grit.
 - f. Shoe Base: Cast aluminum shoe base with circumferential welds both inside and out; Alloy 356-T6; with 4 cast aluminum bolt covers with stainless steel attachment screws.
- C. Source Limitations: Obtain poles from single manufacturer or producer.
- D. Source Limitations: For poles, obtain each color, grade, finish, type, and variety of pole from single source with resources to provide products of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties.
- E. Grounding and Bonding Lugs: Welded 1/2-inch (13-mm) threaded lug, complying with requirements in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems," listed for attaching grounding and bonding conductors of type and size indicated, and accessible through handhole.

2.3 FIXTURE

- A. American Electric Lighting, One Lithonia Way, Conyers Georgia 30012
- B. Contempo LED - Series 245L
 - 1. Performance Package
 - a. P101
 - 1) Input Watts: 20
 - 2) Lumens: 2,100
 - 2. Voltage
 - a. 120-277V
 - 3. Color Temperature (CCT)

- a. 4000K
- 4. Distribution
 - a. Type III
- 5. Optics
 - a. Glass
- 6. Paint Finish
 - a. Gray
- 7. Hood Style
 - a. Style A
- 8. Photocontrol Receptacle
 - a. 7 pin NEMA Photocontrol
- 9. Options
 - a. Stainless Steel Hardware

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine poles, luminaire-mounting devices, lowering devices, and pole accessories before installation. Components that are scratched, dented, marred, wet, moisture damaged, or visibly damaged are considered defective.
- C. Examine roughing-in for foundation and conduit to verify actual locations of installation.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 POLE FOUNDATION

- A. Concrete Pole Foundations: Cast in place, with anchor bolts to match pole-base flange. Structural steel complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M and hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 123/A 123 M; and with top-plate and mounting bolts to match pole-base flange and strength required to support pole, luminaire, and accessories. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork are specified in Section 033053 "Miscellaneous Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- B. Anchor Bolts: Install plumb using manufacturer-supplied template, uniformly spaced.

3.3 POLE INSTALLATION

- A. Alignment: Align poles as indicated.

- B. Concrete Pole Foundations: Set anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt templates furnished by pole manufacturer. Concrete materials, installation, and finishing requirements are specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- C. Raise and set pole using web fabric slings (not chain or cable) at locations indicated by manufacturer.

3.4 GROUNDING

- A. Ground Metal Poles and Support Structures:
 - 1. Install grounding electrode for each pole unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Ground Nonmetallic Poles and Support Structures:
 - 1. Install grounding electrode for each pole.
 - 2. Install grounding conductor and conductor protector.
 - 3. Ground metallic components of pole accessories and foundation.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Special Inspections: Engage a qualified special inspector to perform the following special inspections:
 - 1. Inspect poles for nicks, mars, dents, scratches, and other damage.
 - 2. System function tests.

END OF SECTION 26 5600

SECTION 26 5619 – LED EXTERIOR LIGHTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Exterior solid-state luminaires that are designed for and exclusively use LED lamp technology.
 - 2. Luminaire supports.
 - 3. Luminaire-mounted photoelectric relays.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CCT: Correlated color temperature.
- B. CRI: Color rendering index.
- C. Fixture: See "Luminaire."
- D. IP: International Protection or Ingress Protection Rating.
- E. Lumen: Measured output of lamp and luminaire, or both.
- F. Luminaire: Complete lighting unit, including lamp, reflector, and housing.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of luminaire.
 - 1. Arrange in order of luminaire designation.
 - 2. Include data on features, accessories, and finishes.
 - 3. Include physical description and dimensions of luminaire.
 - 4. Lamps, include life, output (lumens, CCT, and CRI), and energy-efficiency data.
 - 5. Photometric data and adjustment factors based on laboratory tests, complying with IES Lighting Measurements Testing and Calculation Guides, of each luminaire type. The adjustment factors shall be for lamps and accessories identical to those indicated for the luminaire as applied in this Project.
 - a. Manufacturer's Certified Data: Photometric data certified by manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.

6. Wiring diagrams for power, control, and signal wiring.
7. Photoelectric relays.
8. Means of attaching luminaires to supports and indication that the attachment is suitable for components involved.

B. Shop Drawings: For nonstandard or custom luminaires.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting and attachment details.
2. Include details of luminaire assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Product Schedule: For luminaires and lamps. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For luminaire supports.

1. Include design calculations for luminaire supports and seismic restraints.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Luminaires.
2. Structural members to which equipment and luminaires will be attached.
3. Underground utilities and structures.
4. Existing underground utilities and structures.
5. Above-grade utilities and structures.
6. Existing above-grade utilities and structures.
7. Building features.
8. Vertical and horizontal information.

B. Qualification Data: For testing laboratory providing photometric data for luminaires.

C. Seismic Qualification Data: For luminaires, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

D. Product Certificates: For each type of the following:

1. Luminaire.

2. Photoelectric relay.

- E. Product Test Reports: For each luminaire, for tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency.
- F. Source quality-control reports.
- G. Sample warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For luminaires and photoelectric relays to include in operation and maintenance manuals.
 - 1. Provide a list of all lamp types used on Project. Use ANSI and manufacturers' codes.
 - 2. Provide a list of all photoelectric relay types used on Project; use manufacturers' codes.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Luminaire manufacturers' laboratory that is accredited under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
- B. Provide luminaires from a single manufacturer for each luminaire type.
- C. Each luminaire type shall be binned within a three-step MacAdam Ellipse to ensure color consistency among luminaires.
- D. Installer Qualifications: An authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect finishes of exposed surfaces by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering prior to shipping.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Verify existing and proposed utility structures prior to the start of work associated with luminaire installation.
- B. Mark locations of exterior luminaires for approval by Architect prior to the start of luminaire installation.

1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components of luminaires that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures, including luminaire support components.
 - b. Faulty operation of luminaires and accessories.
 - c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.
2. Warranty Period: Two (2) years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Luminaires shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
- B. Seismic Performance: Luminaires and lamps shall be labeled vibration and shock resistant.
 1. The term "withstand" means "the luminaire will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified."

2.2 LUMINAIRE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. NRTL Compliance: Luminaires shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by an NRTL.
- C. FM Global Compliance: Luminaires for hazardous locations shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by FM Global.
- D. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 1598 and listed for wet location.
- E. Lamp base complying with ANSI C81.61.
- F. Bulb shape complying with ANSI C79.1.
- G. CRI of minimum 80. CCT of 4100 K .
- H. L70 lamp life of 50,000 hours.
- I. Lamps dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.
- J. Internal driver.
- K. Nominal Operating Voltage: As indicated on the contract drawings.
- L. In-line Fusing: On the primary for each luminaire.

- M. Lamp Rating: Lamp marked for outdoor use and in enclosed locations.
- N. Source Limitations: Obtain luminaires from single source from a single manufacturer.

2.3 LUMINAIRE-MOUNTED PHOTOELECTRIC RELAYS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Eaton.
 - 2. GE Lighting Solutions.
 - 3. Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Brands Lighting, Inc.
 - 4. Philips Lighting Company.
- B. Comply with UL 773 or UL 773A.
- C. Contact Relays: Factory mounted, single throw, designed to fail in the on position, and factory set to turn light unit on at 1.5 to 3 fc (16 to 32 lx) and off at 4.5 to 10 fc (48 to 108 lx) with 15-second minimum time delay. Relay shall have directional lens in front of photocell to prevent artificial light sources from causing false turnoff.
 - 1. Relay with locking-type receptacle shall comply with ANSI C136.10.
 - 2. Adjustable window slide for adjusting on-off set points.

2.4 LUMINAIRE TYPES

- A. Area and Site: Type as indicated on the contract drawings.
- B. Bollard: Type as indicated on the contract drawings.
- C. Border: Type as indicated on the contract drawings.
- D. Canopy: Type as indicated on the contract drawings.
- E. Decorative Post Top: Type as indicated on the contract drawings.
- F. Roadway: Type as indicated on the contract drawings.

2.5 MATERIALS

- A. Metal Parts: Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
- B. Sheet Metal Components: Corrosion-resistant aluminum. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.
- C. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position. Doors shall be removable for cleaning or replacing lenses.

D. Diffusers and Globes:

1. Acrylic Diffusers: 100 percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
2. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.
3. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125 inch (3.175 mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.

E. Lens and Refractor Gaskets: Use heat- and aging-resistant resilient gaskets to seal and cushion lenses and refractors in luminaire doors.

F. Reflecting surfaces shall have minimum reflectance as follows unless otherwise indicated:

1. White Surfaces: 85 percent.
2. Specular Surfaces: 83 percent.
3. Diffusing Specular Surfaces: 75 percent.

G. Housings:

1. Rigidly formed, weather- and light-tight enclosure that will not warp, sag, or deform in use.
2. Provide filter/breather for enclosed luminaires.

H. Factory-Applied Labels: Comply with UL 1598. Include recommended lamps. Labels shall be located where they will be readily visible to service personnel, but not seen from normal viewing angles when lamps are in place.

1. Label shall include the following lamp characteristics:
 - a. "USE ONLY" and include specific lamp type.
 - b. Lamp diameter, shape, size, wattage and coating.
 - c. CCT and CRI for all luminaires.

2.6 FINISHES

A. Variations in Finishes: Noticeable variations in same piece are unacceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

B. Luminaire Finish: Manufacturer's standard paint applied to factory-assembled and -tested luminaire before shipping. Where indicated, match finish process and color of pole or support materials.

C. Factory-Applied Finish for Aluminum Luminaires: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

1. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.

2. Natural Satin Finish: Provide fine, directional, medium satin polish (AA-M32); buff complying with AA-M20 requirements; and seal aluminum surfaces with clear, hard-coat wax.
 3. Class I, Clear-Anodic Finish: AA-M32C22A41 (Mechanical Finish: Medium satin; Chemical Finish: Etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, clear coating 0.018 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 611.
- D. Factory-Applied Finish for Steel Luminaires: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
1. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 1, to remove dirt, oil, grease, and other contaminants that could impair paint bond. Grind welds and polish surfaces to a smooth, even finish. Remove mill scale and rust, if present, from uncoated steel, complying with SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1 or SSPC-SP 8.
 2. Exterior Surfaces: Manufacturer's standard finish consisting of one or more coats of primer and two finish coats of high-gloss, high-build polyurethane enamel.
 - a. Color: As selected from manufacturer's standard catalog of colors.

2.7 LUMINAIRE SUPPORT COMPONENTS

- A. Comply with requirements in other section for "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for channel and angle iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for luminaire electrical conduit to verify actual locations of conduit connections before luminaire installation.
- C. Examine walls, roofs, canopy ceilings and overhang ceilings for suitable conditions where luminaires will be installed.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 TEMPORARY LIGHTING

- A. If approved by the Architect, use selected permanent luminaires for temporary lighting. When construction is substantially complete, clean luminaires used for temporary lighting and install new lamps.

3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NECA 1.

- B. Use fastening methods and materials selected to resist seismic forces defined for the application and approved by manufacturer.
- C. Install lamps in each luminaire.
- D. Fasten luminaire to structural support.
- E. Supports:
 - 1. Sized and rated for luminaire weight.
 - 2. Able to maintain luminaire position after cleaning and relamping.
 - 3. Support luminaires without causing deflection of finished surface.
 - 4. Luminaire-mounting devices shall be capable of supporting a horizontal force of 100 percent of luminaire weight and a vertical force of 400 percent of luminaire weight.
- F. Wall-Mounted Luminaire Support:
 - 1. Attached to structural members in walls.
- G. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways. Conceal raceways and cables.
- H. Install luminaires level, plumb, and square with finished grade unless otherwise indicated.
- I. Coordinate layout and installation of luminaires with other construction.
- J. Adjust luminaires that require field adjustment or aiming. Include adjustment of photoelectric device to prevent false operation of relay by artificial light sources, favoring a north orientation.
- K. Comply with requirements in other sections for "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" and for "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for wiring connections and wiring methods.

3.4 BOLLARD LUMINAIRE INSTALLATION:

- A. Align units for optimum directional alignment of light distribution.
 - 1. Install on concrete base with top 4 inches (100 mm) above finished grade or surface at luminaire location. Cast conduit into base, and shape base to match shape of bollard base. Finish by troweling and rubbing smooth. Concrete materials, installation, and finishing are specified in other section for "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

3.5 INSTALLATION OF INDIVIDUAL GROUND-MOUNTED LUMINAIRES

- A. Aim as indicated on Drawings.

- B. Install on concrete base with top 4 inches (100 mm) above finished grade or surface at luminaire location. Cast conduit into base, and finish by troweling and rubbing smooth. Concrete materials, installation, and finishing are specified in other section for "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

3.6 CORROSION PREVENTION

- A. Aluminum: Do not use in contact with earth or concrete. When in direct contact with a dissimilar metal, protect aluminum by insulating fittings or treatment.
- B. Steel Conduits: Comply with requirement in other section for "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems." In concrete foundations, wrap conduit with 0.010-inch- (0.254-mm-) thick, pipe-wrapping plastic tape applied with a 50 percent overlap.

3.7 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in other section for "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspect each installed luminaire for damage. Replace damaged luminaires and components.
- B. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 - 1. Operational Test: After installing luminaires, switches, and accessories, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units to confirm proper operation.
 - 2. Verify operation of photoelectric controls.
- C. Illumination Tests:
 - 1. Measure light intensities at night. Use photometers with calibration referenced to NIST standards. Comply with the following IES testing guide(s):
 - a. IES LM-5.
 - b. IES LM-50.
 - c. IES LM-52.
 - d. IES LM-64.
 - e. IES LM-72.
 - 2. Operational Test: After installing luminaires, switches, and accessories, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units to confirm proper operation.
- D. Luminaire will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare a written report of tests, inspections, observations, and verifications indicating and interpreting results. If adjustments are made to lighting system, retest to demonstrate compliance with standards.

3.9 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain luminaires and photocell relays.

3.10 ADJUSTING

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting the direction of aim of luminaires to suit occupied conditions. Make up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal hours for this purpose. Some of this work may be required during hours of darkness.
 - 1. During adjustment visits, inspect all luminaires. Replace lamps or luminaires that are defective.
 - 2. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.
 - 3. Adjust the aim of luminaires in the presence of the Architect.

END OF SECTION 26 5619

SECTION 27 0526 - GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Grounding conductors.
 - 2. Grounding connectors.
 - 3. Grounding busbars.
 - 4. Grounding rods.
 - 5. Grounding labeling.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. BCT: Bonding conductor for telecommunications.
- B. TGB: Telecommunications grounding busbar.
- C. TMGB: Telecommunications main grounding busbar.
- D. Service Provider: The operator of a service that provides telecommunications transmission delivered over access provider facilities.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For communications equipment room signal reference grid. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. As-Built Data: Plans showing as-built locations of grounding and bonding infrastructure, including the following:
 - 1. Ground rods.
 - 2. Ground and roof rings.
 - 3. BCT, TMGB, TGBs, and routing of their bonding conductors.
- B. Qualification Data: For installation supervisor, and field inspector.

C. Qualification Data: For testing agency and testing agency's field supervisor.

D. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For grounding to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
 - a. Result of the ground-resistance test, measured at the point of BCT connection.
 - b. Result of the bonding-resistance test at each TGB and its nearest grounding electrode.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Cabling Installer must have personnel certified by BICSI on staff.

1. Installation Supervision: Installation shall be under the direct supervision of ITS Technician, who shall be present at all times when Work of this Section is performed at Project site.
2. Field Inspector: Currently registered by BICSI as a designer RCDD to perform the on-site inspection.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with UL 467 for grounding and bonding materials and equipment.
- C. Comply with TIA-607-B.

2.2 CONDUCTORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Harger Lightning & Grounding.
 2. Panduit Corp.
 3. TE Connectivity Ltd.
- B. Comply with UL 486A-486B.

- C. Insulated Conductors: Stranded copper wire, green or green with yellow stripe insulation, insulated for 600 V, and complying with UL 83.
 - 1. Ground wire for custom-length equipment ground jumpers shall be No. 6 AWG, 19-strand, UL-listed, Type THHN wire.
 - 2. Cable Tray Equipment Grounding Wire: No. 6 AWG.
 - 3. Lead Content: Less than 300 parts per million.
- D. Cable Tray Grounding Jumper:
 - 1. Not smaller than No. 6 AWG and not longer than 12 inches (300 mm). If jumper is a wire, it shall have a crimped grounding lug with two holes and long barrel for two crimps. If jumper is a flexible braid, it shall have a one-hole ferrule. Attach with grounding screw or connector provided by cable tray manufacturer.
 - 2. Not smaller than No. 10 AWG and not longer than 12 inches (300 mm). If jumper is a wire, it shall have a crimped grounding lug with one hole and standard barrel for one crimp. If jumper is a flexible braid, it shall have a one- or two-hole ferrule. Attach with grounding screw or connector provided by cable tray manufacturer.
- E. Bare Copper Conductors:
 - 1. Solid Conductors: ASTM B 3.
 - 2. Stranded Conductors: ASTM B 8.
 - 3. Tinned Conductors: ASTM B 33.
 - 4. Bonding Cable: 28 kcmils (14.2 sq. mm), 14 strands of No. 17 AWG conductor, and 1/4 inch (6.3 mm) in diameter.
 - 5. Bonding Conductor: No. 4 or No. 6 AWG, stranded conductor.
 - 6. Bonding Jumper: Tinned-copper tape, braided conductors terminated with two-hole copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches (41 mm) wide and 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick.

2.3 CONNECTORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Chatsworth Products, Inc.
 - 2. Harger Lightning & Grounding.
 - 3. Hubbell Incorporated (Construction and Energy Group).
- B. Irreversible connectors listed for the purpose. Listed by an NRTL as complying with NFPA 70 for specific types, sizes, and combinations of conductors and other items connected. Comply with UL 486A-486B.
- C. Compression Wire Connectors: Crimp-and-compress connectors that bond to the conductor when the connector is compressed around the conductor. Comply with UL 467.
 - 1. Electroplated tinned copper, C and H shaped.

- D. Signal Reference Grid Connectors: Combination of compression wire connectors, access floor grounding clamps, bronze U-bolt grounding clamps, and copper split-bolt connectors, designed for the purpose.
- E. Busbar Connectors: Cast silicon bronze, solderless compression-type, mechanical connector; with a long barrel and two holes spaced on 5/8- or 1-inch (15.8- or 25.4-mm) centers for a two-bolt connection to the busbar.
- F. Welded Connectors: Exothermic-welding kits of types recommended by kit manufacturer for materials being joined and installation conditions.

2.4 GROUNDING BUSBARS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Chatsworth Products, Inc.
 - 2. Harger Lightning & Grounding.
 - 3. Panduit Corp.
- B. TMGB: Predrilled, wall-mounted, rectangular bars of hard-drawn solid copper, 1/4 by 4 inches (6.3 by 100 mm) in cross section, length as indicated on Drawings. The busbar shall be NRTL listed for use as TMGB and shall comply with TIA-607-B.
 - 1. Predrilling shall be with holes for use with lugs specified in this Section.
 - 2. Mounting Hardware: Stand-off brackets that provide a 4-inch (100-mm) clearance to access the rear of the busbar. Brackets and bolts shall be stainless steel.
 - 3. Stand-off insulators for mounting shall be Lexan or PVC. Comply with UL 891 for use in 600-V switchboards, impulse tested at 5000 V.
- C. TGB: Predrilled rectangular bars of hard-drawn solid copper, 1/4 by 2 inches (6.3 by 50 mm) in cross section, length as indicated on Drawings. The busbar shall be for wall mounting, shall be NRTL listed as complying with UL 467, and shall comply with TIA-607-B.
 - 1. Predrilling shall be with holes for use with lugs specified in this Section.
 - 2. Mounting Hardware: Stand-off brackets that provide at least a 2-inch (50-mm) clearance to access the rear of the busbar. Brackets and bolts shall be stainless steel.
 - 3. Stand-off insulators for mounting shall be Lexan or PVC. Comply with UL 891 for use in 600-V switchboards, impulse tested at 5000 V.
- D. Rack and Cabinet Grounding Busbars: Rectangular bars of hard-drawn solid copper, accepting conductors ranging from No. 14 to No. 2/0 AWG, NRTL listed as complying with UL 467, and complying with TIA-607-B. Predrilling shall be with holes for use with lugs specified in this Section.
 - 1. Cabinet-Mounted Busbar: Terminal block, with stainless-steel or copper-plated hardware for attachment to the cabinet.

2. Rack-Mounted Horizontal Busbar: Designed for mounting in 19- or 23-inch (483- or 584-mm) equipment racks. Include a copper splice bar for transitioning to an adjoining rack, and stainless-steel or copper-plated hardware for attachment to the rack.
3. Rack-Mounted Vertical Busbar: 72 or 36 inches (1827 or 914 mm) long, with stainless-steel or copper-plated hardware for attachment to the rack.

2.5 GROUND RODS

- A. Comply with requirements for grounding rods in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems".

2.6 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with requirements for identification products in Section 270553 "Identification for Communications Systems."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine the ac grounding electrode system and equipment grounding for compliance with requirements for maximum ground-resistance level and other conditions affecting performance of grounding and bonding of the electrical system.
- B. Inspect the test results of the ac grounding system measured at the point of BCT connection.
- C. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
- D. Proceed with connection of the BCT only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Bonding shall include the ac utility power service entrance, the communications cable entrance, and the grounding electrode system. The bonding of these elements shall form a loop so that each element is connected to at least two others.
- B. Comply with NECA 1.
- C. Comply with TIA-607-B.

3.3 APPLICATION

- A. Conductors: Install solid conductor for No. 8 AWG and smaller and stranded conductors for No. 6 AWG and larger unless otherwise indicated.

1. The bonding conductors between the TGB and structural steel of steel-frame buildings shall not be smaller than No. 6 AWG.
2. The bonding conductors between the TMGB and structural steel of steel-frame buildings shall not be smaller than No. 6 AWG.
- B. Underground Grounding Conductors: Install bare copper conductor, No. 2 AWG minimum.
- C. Conductor Terminations and Connections:
 1. Pipe and Equipment Grounding Conductor Terminations: Bolted connectors.
 2. Underground Connections: Welded connectors except at test wells and as otherwise indicated.
 3. Connections to Ground Rods at Test Wells: Bolted connectors.
 4. Connections to Structural Steel: Welded connectors.
- D. Conductor Support:
 1. Secure grounding and bonding conductors at intervals of not less than 36 inches (900 mm).
- E. Grounding and Bonding Conductors:
 1. Install in the straightest and shortest route between the origination and termination point, and no longer than required. The bend radius shall not be smaller than eight times the diameter of the conductor. No one bend may exceed 90 degrees.
 2. Install without splices.
 3. Support at not more than 36-inch (900-mm) intervals.
 4. Install grounding and bonding conductors in 3/4-inch (21-mm) PVC conduit until conduit enters a telecommunications room. The grounding and bonding conductor pathway through a plenum shall be in EMT. Conductors shall not be installed in EMT unless otherwise indicated.
 - a. If a grounding and bonding conductor is installed in ferrous metallic conduit, bond the conductor to the conduit using a grounding bushing that complies with requirements in Section 270528 "Pathways for Communications Systems," and bond both ends of the conduit to a TGB.

3.4 GROUNDING ELECTRODE SYSTEM

- A. The BCT between the TMGB and the ac service equipment ground shall not be smaller than No. 3/0 AWG.

3.5 GROUNDING BUSBARS

- A. Indicate locations of grounding busbars on Drawings. Install busbars horizontally, on insulated spacers 2 inches (50 mm) minimum from wall, 12 inches (300 mm) above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.

- B. Where indicated on both sides of doorways, route bus up to top of door frame, across top of doorway, and down; connect to horizontal bus.

3.6 CONNECTIONS

- A. Bond metallic equipment in a telecommunications equipment room to the grounding busbar in that room, using equipment grounding conductors not smaller than No. 6 AWG.
- B. Stacking of conductors under a single bolt is not permitted when connecting to busbars.
- C. Assemble the wire connector to the conductor, complying with manufacturer's written instructions and as follows:
 - 1. Use crimping tool and the die specific to the connector.
 - 2. Pretwist the conductor.
 - 3. Apply an antioxidant compound to all bolted and compression connections.
- D. Primary Protector: Bond to the TMGB with insulated bonding conductor.
- E. Interconnections: Interconnect all TGBs with the TMGB with the telecommunications backbone conductor. If more than one TMGB is installed, interconnect TMGBs using the grounding equalizer conductor. The telecommunications backbone conductor and grounding equalizer conductor size shall not be less than 2 kcmils/linear foot (1 sq. mm/linear meter) of conductor length, up to a maximum size of No. 3/0 AWG unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Telecommunications Enclosures and Equipment Racks: Bond metallic components of enclosures to the telecommunications bonding and grounding system. Install vertically mounted rack grounding busbar unless the enclosure and rack are manufactured with the busbar. Bond the equipment grounding busbar to the TGB No. 2 AWG bonding conductors.
- G. Structural Steel: Where the structural steel of a steel frame building is readily accessible within the room or space, bond each TGB and TMGB to the vertical steel of the building frame.
- H. Electrical Power Panelboards: Where an electrical panelboard for telecommunications equipment is located in the same room or space, bond each TGB to the ground bar of the panelboard.
- I. Shielded Cable: Bond the shield of shielded cable to the TGB in communications rooms and spaces. Comply with TIA-568-C.1 and TIA-568-C.2 when grounding shielded balanced twisted-pair cables.
- J. Rack- and Cabinet-Mounted Equipment: Bond powered equipment chassis to the cabinet or rack grounding bar. Power connection shall comply with NFPA 70; the equipment grounding conductor in the power cord of cord- and plug-connected

equipment shall be considered as a supplement to bonding requirements in this Section.

- K. Access Floors: Bond all metal parts of access floors to the TGB.
- L. Equipment Room Signal Reference Grid: Provide a low-impedance path between telecommunications cabinets, equipment racks, and the reference grid, using No. 6 AWG bonding conductors.
 - 1. Install the conductors in grid pattern on 4-foot (1200-mm) centers, allowing bonding of one pedestal from each access floor tile.
 - 2. Bond the TGB of the equipment room to the reference grid at two or more locations.
 - 3. Bond all conduits and piping entering the equipment room to the TGB at the perimeter of the room.
- M. Towers and Antennas:
 - 1. Ground Ring: Buried at least 30 inches (760 mm) below grade and at least 24 inches (610 mm) from the base of the tower or mounting.
 - 2. Bond each tower base and metallic frame of a dish to the ground ring, buried at least 18 inches (460 mm) below grade.
 - 3. Bond the ground ring and antenna grounds to the equipment room TMGB or TGB, buried at least 30 inches (760 mm) below grade.
 - 4. Bond metallic fences within 6 feet (1.8 m) of towers and antennas to the ground ring, buried at least 18 inches (460 mm) below grade.
 - 5. Special Requirements for Roof-Mounted Towers:
 - a. Roof Ring: Meet requirements for the ground ring except the conductors shall comply with requirements in Section 264113 "Lightning Protection for Structures."
 - b. Bond tower base footings steel, the TGB in the equipment room, and antenna support guys to the roof ring.
 - c. Connect roof ring to the perimeter conductors of the lightning protection system.
 - 6. Waveguides and Coaxial Cable:
 - a. Bond cable shields at the point of entry into the building to the TGB and to the cable entrance plate, using No. 2 AWG bonding conductors.
 - b. Bond coaxial cable surge arrester to the ground or roof ring using bonding conductor size recommended by surge-arrester manufacturer.
- N. <Insert connections of other equipment>.

3.7 GROUNDING UNDERGROUND DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM COMPONENTS

- A. Duct-Bank Grounding Conductor: Bury 12 inches (300 mm) above duct bank when indicated as part of duct-bank installation.
- B. Comply with IEEE C2 grounding requirements.

- C. Grounding Manholes and Handholes: Install a driven ground rod through manhole or handhole floor, close to wall, and set rod depth so 4 inches (100 mm) extends above finished floor. If necessary, install ground rod before manhole is placed and provide No. 1/0 AWG bare, tinned-copper conductor from ground rod into manhole through a waterproof sleeve in manhole wall. Protect ground rods passing through concrete floor with a double wrapping of pressure-sensitive insulating tape or heat-shrunk insulating sleeve from 2 inches (50 mm) above to 6 inches (150 mm) below concrete. Seal floor opening with waterproof, nonshrink grout.
- D. Grounding Connections to Manhole Components: Bond exposed-metal parts such as inserts, cable racks, pulling irons, ladders, and cable shields within each manhole or handhole, to ground rod or grounding conductor. Make connections with No. 4 AWG minimum, bonding conductor. Train conductors level or plumb around corners and fasten to manhole walls. Connect grounding conductors to cable armor and cable shields according to written instructions by manufacturer of splicing and termination kits.

3.8 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Labels shall be preprinted or computer-printed type.
 - 1. Label TMGB(s) with "fs-TMGB," where "fs" is the telecommunications space identifier for the space containing the TMGB.
 - 2. Label TGB(s) with "fs-TGB," where "fs" is the telecommunications space identifier for the space containing the TGB.
 - 3. Label the BCT and each telecommunications backbone conductor at its attachment point: "WARNING! TELECOMMUNICATIONS BONDING CONDUCTOR. DO NOT REMOVE OR DISCONNECT!"

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Inspect physical and mechanical condition. Verify tightness of accessible, bolted, electrical connections with a calibrated torque wrench according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 2. Test the bonding connections of the system using an ac earth ground-resistance tester, taking two-point bonding measurements in each telecommunications equipment room containing a TMGB and a TGB and using the process recommended by BICSI TDMM. Conduct tests with the facility in operation.
 - a. Measure the resistance between the busbar and the nearest available grounding electrode. The maximum acceptable value of this bonding resistance is 100 milliohms.

3. Test for ground loop currents using a digital clamp-on ammeter, with a full-scale of not more than 10 A, displaying current in increments of 0.01 A at an accuracy of plus/minus 2.0 percent.
 - a. With the grounding infrastructure completed and the communications system electronics operating, measure the current in every conductor connected to the TMGB. Maximum acceptable ac current level is 1 A.
- D. Excessive Ground Resistance: If resistance to ground at the BCT exceeds 5 ohms, notify Architect promptly and include recommendations to reduce ground resistance.
- E. Grounding system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 27 0526

SECTION 27 0528 - PATHWAYS FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Metal conduits and fittings.
 - 2. Nonmetallic conduits and fittings.
 - 3. Optical-fiber-cable pathways and fittings.
 - 4. Metallic surface pathways.
 - 5. Nonmetallic surface pathways.
 - 6. Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. ARC: Aluminum rigid conduit.
- B. GRC: Galvanized rigid conduit.
- C. IMC: Intermediate metal conduit.
- D. RTRC: Reinforced thermosetting resin conduit.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product data for the following:
 - 1. Surface pathways
 - 2. Wireways and fittings.
 - 3. Tele-power poles.
 - 4. Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets.
 - 5. Underground handholes and boxes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For custom enclosures and cabinets. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Pathway routing plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of items involved:

1. Structural members in paths of pathway groups with common supports.
 2. HVAC and plumbing items and architectural features in paths of conduit groups with common supports.
 3. Underground ducts, piping, and structures in location of underground enclosures and handholes.
- B. Qualification Data: For professional engineer.
- C. Seismic Qualification Data: Provide seismic bracing for all pathway racks, enclosures, cabinets, equipment racks, and their mounting provisions, including those for internal components, from manufacturer.
1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which certification is based and their installation requirements.
 4. Detailed description of conduit support devices and interconnections on which certification is based and their installation requirements.
- D. Source quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL CONDUITS AND FITTINGS

- A. Description: Metal raceway of circular cross section with manufacturer-fabricated fittings.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Allied Tube & Conduit; a part of Atkore International.
 2. Southwire Company.
 3. Thomas & Betts Corporation; A Member of the ABB Group.
- C. General Requirements for Metal Conduits and Fittings:
1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a nationally recognized testing laboratory, and marked for intended location and application.
 2. Comply with TIA-569-D.
- D. GRC: Comply with ANSI C80.1 and UL 6.
- E. ARC: Comply with ANSI C80.5 and UL 6A.
- F. IMC: Comply with ANSI C80.6 and UL 1242.
- G. EMT: Comply with ANSI C80.3 and UL 797.

- H. Fittings for Metal Conduit: Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 514B.
 - 1. Conduit Fittings for Hazardous (Classified) Locations: Comply with UL 1203 and NFPA 70.
 - 2. Fittings for EMT:
 - a. Material: die cast.
 - b. Type: compression.
 - 3. Expansion Fittings: PVC or steel to match conduit type, complying with UL-467, rated for environmental conditions where installed, and including flexible external bonding jumper.
 - 4. Coating for Fittings for PVC-Coated Conduit: Minimum thickness of 0.040 inch (1 mm), with overlapping sleeves protecting threaded joints.
- I. Joint Compound for IMC, GRC, or ARC: Approved, as defined in NFPA 70, by authorities having jurisdiction for use in conduit assemblies, and compounded for use to lubricate and protect threaded conduit joints from corrosion and to enhance their conductivity.

2.2 NONMETALLIC CONDUITS AND FITTINGS

- A. Description: Nonmetallic raceway of circular section with manufacturer-fabricated fittings.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Allied Tube & Conduit; a part of Atkore International.
 - 2. Arnco Corporation.
 - 3. Hubbell Incorporated (Commercial and Industrial Group - RACO).
- C. General Requirements for Nonmetallic Conduits and Fittings:
 - 1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and application.
 - 2. Comply with TIA-569-D.
- D. RNC: Type EPC-40-PVC, complying with NEMA TC 2 and UL 651 unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Rigid HDPE: Comply with UL 651A.
- F. Continuous HDPE: Comply with UL 651A.
- G. RTRC: Comply with UL 2515A and NEMA TC 14.
- H. Fittings: Comply with NEMA TC 3; match to conduit or tubing type and material.
- I. Solvents and Adhesives: As recommended by conduit manufacturer.

1. VOC Content: 490 g/L or less for PVC conduit and fittings.

2.3 OPTICAL-FIBER-CABLE PATHWAYS AND FITTINGS

- A. Description: Comply with UL 2024; flexible-type pathway with a circular cross section, approved for plenum riser installation unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Alpha Wire.
 2. Carlon; a brand of Thomas & Betts Corporation.
 3. Dura-Line.
- C. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and application.
- D. Comply with TIA-569-D.

2.4 BOXES, ENCLOSURES, AND CABINETS

- A. Description: Enclosures for communications.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Hoffman; a brand of nVent.
 2. Hubbell Incorporated (Commercial and Industrial Group - RACO).
 3. Thomas & Betts Corporation; A Member of the ABB Group.
 4. Wiremold / Legrand.
- C. General Requirements for Boxes, Enclosures, and Cabinets:
 1. Comply with TIA-569-D.
 2. Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets installed in wet locations shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for use in wet locations.
 3. Box extensions used to accommodate new building finishes shall be of same material as recessed box.
 4. Device Box Dimensions: 4 inches square by 2-1/8 inches deep (100 mm square by 60 mm deep).
 5. Gangable boxes are allowed.
- D. Sheet Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 1 and UL 514A.
- E. Cast-Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1, aluminum, Type FD, with gasketed cover.
- F. Small Sheet Metal Pull and Junction Boxes: NEMA OS 1.

- G. Cast-Metal Access, Pull, and Junction Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 1773, cast aluminum with gasketed cover.
- H. Nonmetallic Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 2 and UL 514C.
- I. Hinged-Cover Enclosures: Comply with UL 50 and NEMA 250, Type 1, with continuous-hinge cover with flush latch unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Metal Enclosures: Steel, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
 - 2. Nonmetallic Enclosures:
 - a. Material: Fiberglass.
 - b. Finished inside with radio-frequency-resistant paint.
 - 3. Interior Panels: Steel; all sides finished with manufacturer's standard enamel.
- J. Cabinets:
 - 1. NEMA 250, Type 1 galvanized-steel box with removable interior panel and removable front, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
 - 2. Hinged door in front cover with flush latch and concealed hinge.
 - 3. Key latch to match panelboards.
 - 4. Metal barriers to separate wiring of different systems and voltage.
 - 5. Accessory feet where required for freestanding equipment.
 - 6. Nonmetallic cabinets shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.5 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL FOR UNDERGROUND ENCLOSURES

- A. Indoors: Apply pathway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Exposed, Not Subject to Physical Damage: EMT.
 - 2. Exposed, Not Subject to Severe Physical Damage: EMT.
 - 3. Exposed and Subject to Severe Physical Damage: GRC. Pathway locations include the following:
 - a. Mechanical rooms.
 - 4. Concealed in Ceilings and Interior Walls and Partitions: EMT.
 - 5. Damp or Wet Locations: GRC.
 - 6. Pathways for Optical-Fiber or Communications Cable in Spaces Used for Environmental Air: EMT.
 - 7. Pathways for Optical-Fiber or Communications-Cable Risers in Vertical Shafts: EMT.
 - 8. Pathways for Concealed General-Purpose Distribution of Optical-Fiber or Communications Cable: EMT.
 - 9. Boxes and Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1, except use NEMA 250, Type 4 nonmetallic units in institutional and commercial kitchens and damp or wet locations.

- B. Minimum Pathway Size: 3/4-inch (21-mm) trade size for copper and aluminum cables, and 1 inch (25 mm) for optical-fiber cables.
- C. Pathway Fittings: Compatible with pathways and suitable for use and location.
 - 1. Rigid and Intermediate Steel Conduit: Use threaded rigid steel conduit fittings unless otherwise indicated. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
 - 2. PVC Externally Coated, Rigid Steel Conduits: Use only fittings listed for use with this type of conduit. Patch and seal all joints, nicks, and scrapes in PVC coating after installing conduits and fittings. Use sealant recommended by fitting manufacturer and apply in thickness and number of coats recommended by manufacturer.
 - 3. EMT: Use compression cast-metal fittings. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
- D. Do not install aluminum conduits, boxes, or fittings in contact with concrete or earth.
- E. Install surface pathways only where indicated on Drawings.
- F. Do not install nonmetallic conduit where ambient temperature exceeds 120 deg F (49 deg C).

2.6 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with the following standards for installation requirements except where requirements on Drawings or in this Section are stricter:
 - 1. NECA 1.
 - 2. NECA/BICSI 568.
 - 3. TIA-569-D.
 - 4. NECA 101
 - 5. NECA 102.
 - 6. NECA 105.
 - 7. NECA 111.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70 limitations for types of pathways allowed in specific occupancies and number of floors.
- C. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping materials and installation for penetrations through fire-rated walls, ceilings, and assemblies.
- D. Comply with requirements in Section 270529 "Hangers and Supports for Communications Systems" for hangers and supports.
- E. Comply with requirements in Section 270544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Communications Pathways and Cabling" for sleeves and sleeve seals for communications.
- F. Keep pathways at least 6 inches (150 mm) away from parallel runs of flues and steam or hot-water pipes. Install horizontal pathway runs above water and steam piping.

- G. Complete pathway installation before starting conductor installation.
- H. Arrange stub-ups so curved portions of bends are not visible above finished slab.
- I. Install no more than the equivalent of two 90-degree bends in any pathway run. Support within 12 inches (300 mm) of changes in direction. Utilize long radius ells for all optical-fiber cables.
- J. Conceal rigid conduit within finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated. Install conduits parallel or perpendicular to building lines.
- K. Support conduit within 12 inches (300 mm) of enclosures to which attached.
- L. Pathways Embedded in Slabs:
 - 1. Run conduit larger than 1-inch (27-mm) trade size, parallel or at right angles to main reinforcement. Where at right angles to reinforcement, place conduit close to slab support. Secure pathways to reinforcement at maximum 10-foot (3-m) intervals.
 - 2. Arrange pathways to cross building expansion joints at right angles with expansion fittings. Comply with requirements for expansion joints specified in this article.
 - 3. Arrange pathways to keep a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) of concrete cover in all directions.
 - 4. Do not embed threadless fittings in concrete unless specifically approved by Architect for each specific location.
 - 5. Change from nonmetallic conduit and fittings to GRC and fittings before rising above floor.
- M. Stub-ups to Above Recessed Ceilings:
 - 1. Use EMT, IMC, or RMC for pathways.
 - 2. Use a conduit bushing or insulated fitting to terminate stub-ups not terminated in hubs or in an enclosure.
- N. Threaded Conduit Joints, Exposed to Wet, Damp, Corrosive, or Outdoor Conditions: Apply listed compound to threads of pathway and fittings before making up joints. Follow compound manufacturer's written instructions.
- O. Coat field-cut threads on PVC-coated pathway with a corrosion-preventing conductive compound prior to assembly.
- P. Terminate threaded conduits into threaded hubs or with locknuts on inside and outside of boxes or cabinets. Install insulated bushings on conduits terminated with locknuts.
- Q. Install pathways square to the enclosure and terminate at enclosures with locknuts. Install locknuts hand tight plus one additional quarter-turn.

- R. Do not rely on locknuts to penetrate nonconductive coatings on enclosures. Remove coatings in the locknut area prior to assembling conduit to enclosure, to assure a continuous ground path.
- S. Cut conduit perpendicular to the length. For conduits of 2-inch (50-mm) trade size and larger, use roll cutter or a guide to ensure cut is straight and perpendicular to the length.
- T. Install pull wires in empty pathways. Use polypropylene or monofilament plastic line with not less than 200-lb (90-kg) tensile strength. Leave at least 12 inches (300 mm) of slack at each end of pull wire. Secure pull wire, so it cannot fall into conduit. Cap pathways designated as spare alongside pathways in use.
- U. Surface Pathways:
 - 1. Install surface pathway for surface telecommunications outlet boxes only where indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. Install surface pathway with a minimum 2-inch (50-mm) radius control at bend points.
 - 3. Secure surface pathway with screws or other anchor-type devices at intervals not exceeding 48 inches (1200 mm) and with no less than two supports per straight pathway section. Support surface pathway according to manufacturer's written instructions. Tape and glue are not acceptable support methods.
- V. Pathways for Optical-Fiber and Communications Cable: Install pathways, metal and nonmetallic, rigid and flexible, as follows:
 - 1. 3/4-Inch (21-mm) Trade Size and Smaller: Install pathways in maximum lengths of 50 feet (15 m).
 - 2. 1-Inch (25-mm) Trade Size and Larger: Install pathways in maximum lengths of 75 feet (23 m).
 - 3. Install with a maximum of two 90-degree bends or equivalent for each length of pathway unless Drawings show stricter requirements. Separate lengths with pull or junction boxes or terminations at distribution frames or cabinets where necessary to comply with these requirements.
- W. Install pathway-sealing fittings at accessible locations according to NFPA 70 and fill them with listed sealing compound. For concealed pathways, install each fitting in a flush steel box with a blank cover plate having a finish similar to that of adjacent plates or surfaces. Install pathway-sealing fittings according to NFPA 70.
- X. Install devices to seal pathway interiors at accessible locations. Locate seals, so no fittings or boxes are between the seal and the following changes of environments. Seal the interior of all pathways at the following points:
 - 1. Where conduits pass from warm to cold locations, such as boundaries of refrigerated spaces.
 - 2. Where an underground service pathway enters a building or structure.
 - 3. Where otherwise required by NFPA 70.

- Y. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for solvent welding PVC conduit and fittings.
- Z. Expansion-Joint Fittings:
 - 1. Install in each run of aboveground RNC that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed 30 deg F (17 deg C), and that has straight-run length that exceeds 25 feet (7.6 m). Install in each run of aboveground RMC and EMT that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed 100 deg F (55 deg C), and that has straight-run length that exceeds 100 feet (30 m).
 - 2. Install type and quantity of fittings that accommodate temperature change listed for each of the following locations:
 - a. Indoor Spaces Connected with Outdoors without Physical Separation: 125 deg F (70 deg C) temperature change.
 - 3. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.00041 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F (0.06 mm per meter of length of straight run per deg C) of temperature change for PVC conduits. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.000078 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F (0.0115 mm per meter of length of straight run per deg C) of temperature change for metal conduits.
 - 4. Install expansion fittings at all locations where conduits cross building or structure expansion joints.
 - 5. Install each expansion-joint fitting with position, mounting, and piston setting selected according to manufacturer's written instructions for conditions at specific location at time of installation. Install conduit supports to allow for expansion movement.
- AA. Mount boxes at heights indicated on Drawings. If mounting heights of boxes are not individually indicated, give priority to ADA requirements. Install boxes with height measured to center of box unless otherwise indicated.
- BB. Horizontally separate boxes mounted on opposite sides of walls, so they are not in the same vertical channel.
- CC. Support boxes of three gangs or more from more than one side by spanning two framing members or mounting on brackets specifically designed for the purpose.
- DD. Fasten junction and pull boxes to or support from building structure. Do not support boxes by conduits.
- EE. Set metal floor boxes level and flush with finished floor surface.
- FF. Set nonmetallic floor boxes level. Trim after installation to fit flush with finished floor surface.

2.7 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION FOR COMMUNICATIONS
PENETRATIONS

- A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 270544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Communications Pathways and Cabling."

2.8 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Install firestopping at penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

2.9 PROTECTION

- A. Protect coatings, finishes, and cabinets from damage or deterioration.
 - 1. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer.
 - 2. Repair damage to PVC coatings or paint finishes with matching touchup coating recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 27 0528

SECTION 27 0529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Steel slotted support systems for communication raceways.
2. Aluminum slotted support systems for communication raceways.
3. Nonmetallic slotted support systems for communication raceways.
4. Conduit and cable support devices.
5. Support for conductors in vertical conduit.
6. Structural steel for fabricated supports and restraints.
7. Mounting, anchoring, and attachment components, including powder-actuated fasteners, mechanical expansion anchors, concrete inserts, clamps, through bolts, toggle bolts, and hanger rods.
8. Fabricated metal equipment support assemblies.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 270548 "Seismic Controls for Communications Systems" for products and installation requirements necessary for compliance with seismic criteria.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for the following:
 - a. Slotted support systems, hardware, and accessories.
 - b. Clamps.
 - c. Hangers.
 - d. Sockets.
 - e. Eye nuts.
 - f. Fasteners.
 - g. Anchors.
 - h. Saddles.
 - i. Brackets.
2. Include rated capacities and furnished specialties and accessories.

- B. Shop Drawings: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer. For fabrication and installation details for communications hangers and support systems.
 - 1. Trapeze hangers. Include product data for components.
 - 2. Steel slotted-channel systems.
 - 3. Aluminum slotted-channel systems.
 - 4. Nonmetallic slotted-channel systems.
 - 5. Equipment supports.
 - 6. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication, including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plan(s) and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
 - 1. Suspended ceiling components.
 - 2. Ductwork, piping, fittings, and supports.
 - 3. Structural members to which hangers and supports will be attached.
 - 4. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
 - 5. Items penetrating finished ceiling, including the following:
 - a. Luminaires.
 - b. Air outlets and inlets.
 - c. Speakers.
 - d. Sprinklers.
 - e. Access panels.
 - f. Projectors.
- B. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates, for hangers and supports for communications equipment and systems, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
 - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- C. Welding certificates.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
 - 1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

2. AWS D1.2/D1.2M.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design hanger and support system.
- B. Seismic Performance: Hangers and supports shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
 - 1. The term "withstand" means "the supported equipment and systems will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified.
 - 2. Component Importance Factor: 1.0.
- C. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E 84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Flame Rating: Class 1.
 - 2. Self-extinguishing according to ASTM D 635.

2.2 SUPPORT, ANCHORAGE, AND ATTACHMENT COMPONENTS

- A. Steel Slotted Support Systems: Preformed steel channels and angles with minimum 13/32-inch- (10-mm-) diameter holes at a maximum of 8 inches (200 mm) o.c. in at least one surface.
 - 1. <Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>
 - 2. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4 factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
 - 3. Material for Channel, Fittings, and Accessories: [Galvanized steel] [Plain steel] [Stainless Steel, Type 304] [Stainless Steel, Type 316].
 - 4. Channel Width: [Selected for applicable load criteria] [1-5/8 inches (41.25 mm)] [1-1/4 inches (31.75 mm)] [13/16 inches (20.64 mm)] <Insert size>.
 - 5. Metallic Coatings: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and applied according to MFMA-4.
 - 6. Nonmetallic Coatings: Manufacturer's standard PVC, polyurethane, or polyester coating applied according to MFMA-4.
 - 7. Painted Coatings: Manufacturer's standard painted coating applied according to MFMA-4.
 - 8. Protect finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
 - 9. Channel Dimensions: Selected for applicable load criteria.
- B. Aluminum Slotted Support Systems: Extruded aluminum channels and angles with minimum 13/32-inch- (10-mm-) diameter holes at a maximum of 8 inches (200 mm) o.c. in at least one surface.

1. <Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>
 2. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4 factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
 3. Channel Material: 6063-T6 aluminum alloy.
 4. Fittings and Accessories Material: 5052-H32 aluminum alloy.
 5. Channel Width: [Selected for applicable load criteria] [1-5/8 inches (41.25 mm)] [1-1/4 inches (31.75 mm)] [13/16 inches (20.64 mm)] <Insert size>.
 6. Nonmetallic Coatings: Manufacturer's standard PVC, polyurethane, or polyester coating applied according to MFMA-4.
 7. Painted Coatings: Manufacturer's standard painted coating applied according to MFMA-4.
 8. Protect finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
 9. Channel Dimensions: Selected for applicable load criteria.
- C. Nonmetallic Slotted Support Systems: Structural-grade, factory-formed, glass-fiber-resin channels and angles with minimum 13/32-inch- (10-mm-) diameter holes at a maximum of 8 inches (200 mm) o.c., in at least one surface.
1. <Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>
 2. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4 factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
 3. Channel Width: [Selected for applicable load criteria] [1-5/8 inches (41.25 mm)] [1-1/4 inches (31.75 mm)] [13/16 inches (20.64 mm)] <Insert size>.
 4. Fittings and Accessories: Products provided by channel and angle manufacturer and designed for use with those items.
 5. Fitting and Accessory Materials: Same as those for channels and angles[, except metal items may be stainless steel].
 6. Rated Strength: Selected to suit applicable load criteria.
 7. Protect finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- D. Conduit and Cable Support Devices: [Steel] [Steel and malleable-iron] [Stainless-steel] [Glass-fiber-resin] clamps, hangers, and associated fittings, designed for types and sizes of raceway or cable to be supported.
- E. Support for Conductors in Vertical Conduit: Factory-fabricated assembly consisting of threaded body and insulating wedging plug or plugs for nonarmored communications conductors or cables in riser conduits. Plugs shall have number, size, and shape of conductor gripping pieces as required to suit individual conductors or cables supported. Body shall be made of malleable iron.
- F. Structural Steel for Fabricated Supports and Restraints: ASTM A 36/A 36M steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- G. Mounting, Anchoring, and Attachment Components: Items for fastening electrical items or their supports to building surfaces include the following:

1. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud for use in hardened portland cement concrete, steel, or wood, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
 - a. <Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>
2. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type [zinc-coated steel] [stainless steel] for use in hardened portland cement concrete, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
 - a. <Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>
3. Concrete Inserts: Steel or malleable-iron, slotted support system units are similar to MSS Type 18 units and comply with MFMA-4 or MSS SP-58.
4. Clamps for Attachment to Steel Structural Elements: MSS SP-58 units are suitable for attached structural element.
5. Through Bolts: Structural type, hex head, and high strength. Comply with ASTM F 3125/F 3125M, Grade A325 (Grade A325M).
6. Toggle Bolts: [All-steel] [Stainless-steel] springhead type.
7. Hanger Rods: Threaded steel.

2.3 FABRICATED METAL EQUIPMENT SUPPORT ASSEMBLIES

- A. Description: Welded or bolted structural-steel shapes, shop or field fabricated to fit dimensions of supported equipment.
- B. Materials: Comply with requirements in Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for steel shapes and plates.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATION

- A. Comply with the following standards for application and installation requirements of hangers and supports, except where requirements on Drawings or in this Section are stricter:
 1. NECA 1.
 2. NECA/BICSI 568.
 3. TIA-569-D.
 4. NECA 101.
 5. NECA 102.
 6. NECA 105.
 7. NECA 111.
- B. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping materials and installation for penetrations through fire-rated walls, ceilings, and assemblies.

- C. Comply with requirements for pathways specified in Section 270528 "Pathways for Communications Systems."
- D. Maximum Support Spacing and Minimum Hanger Rod Size for Raceway: Space supports for EMTs, IMCs, and RMCs as [required by] [scheduled in NECA 1, where its Table 1 lists maximum spacings that are less than those stated in] NFPA 70. Minimum rod size shall be 1/4 inch (6 mm) in diameter.
- E. Multiple Raceways or Cables: Install trapeze-type supports fabricated with steel slotted [or other] support system, sized so capacity can be increased by at least [25] <Insert number> percent in future without exceeding specified design load limits.
 - 1. Secure raceways and cables to these supports with [two-bolt conduit clamps] [single-bolt conduit clamps] [single-bolt conduit clamps, using spring friction action for retention in support channel].
- F. Spring-steel clamps designed for supporting single conduits without bolts may be used for 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) and smaller raceways serving branch circuits and communication systems above suspended ceilings and for fastening raceways to trapeze supports.

3.2 SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Raceway Support Methods: In addition to methods described in NECA 1, [EMT] [IMC] [and] [RMC] may be supported by openings through structure members, according to NFPA 70.
- B. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components, so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus 200 lb (90 kg).
- C. Mounting and Anchorage of Surface-Mounted Equipment and Components: Anchor and fasten communications items and their supports to building structural elements by the following methods unless otherwise indicated by code:
 - 1. To Wood: Fasten with lag screws or through bolts.
 - 2. To New Concrete: Bolt to concrete inserts.
 - 3. To Masonry: Use approved toggle-type bolts on hollow masonry units and expansion anchor fasteners on solid masonry units.
 - 4. To Existing Concrete: Use expansion anchor fasteners.
 - 5. Instead of expansion anchors, powder-actuated-driven threaded studs, provided with lock washers and nuts, may be used in existing standard-weight concrete 4 inches (100 mm) thick or greater. Do not use for anchorage to lightweight-aggregate concrete or for slabs less than 4 inches (100 mm) thick.
 - 6. To Steel: [Welded threaded studs complying with AWS D1.1/D1.1M, with lock washers and nuts] [Beam clamps (MSS SP-58, Type 19, 21, 23, 25, or 27), complying with MSS SP-69] [Spring-tension clamps].
 - 7. To Light Steel: Sheet metal screws.

8. Items Mounted on Hollow Walls and Nonstructural Building Surfaces: Mount cabinets, panelboards, disconnect switches, control enclosures, pull and junction boxes, transformers, and other devices on slotted-channel racks attached to substrate[by means that comply with seismic-restraint strength and anchorage requirements].

- D. Drill holes for expansion anchors in concrete at locations and to depths that avoid the need for reinforcing bars.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF FABRICATED METAL SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with installation requirements in Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for site-fabricated metal supports.
- B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor communications materials and equipment.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

3.4 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils (0.05 mm).
- B. Touchup: Comply with requirements in [Section 099113 "Exterior Painting"] [Section 099123 "Interior Painting"] [and] [Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings"] <Insert other painting Sections> for cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal.
- C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas, and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

END OF SECTION 27 0529

SECTION 27 0536 - CABLE TRAYS FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Ladder cable tray.
 - 2. Cable tray accessories.
 - 3. Warning signs.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 260536 "Cable Trays for Electrical Systems" for cable trays and accessories serving electrical systems.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of cable tray.
 - 1. Include data indicating dimensions and finishes for each type of cable tray indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each type of cable tray.
 - 1. Show fabrication and installation details of cable trays, including plans, elevations, and sections of components and attachments to other construction elements. Designate components and accessories, including clamps, brackets, hanger rods, splice-plate connectors, expansion-joint assemblies, straight lengths, and fittings.
 - 2. Cable tray layout, showing cable tray route to scale, with relationship between the tray and adjacent structural, electrical, and mechanical elements. Include the following:
 - a. Vertical and horizontal offsets and transitions.
 - b. Clearances for access above and to sides of cable trays.
 - c. Vertical elevation of cable trays above the floor or bottom of ceiling structure.
 - d. Load calculations to show dead and live loads as not exceeding manufacturer's rating for tray and its support elements.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For seismic restraints.

1. Seismic-Restraint Details: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer, licensed in the state where Project is located, who is responsible for their preparation.
2. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting seismic restraints.
3. Detail fabrication, including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported cable trays.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Floor plans and sections, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
 1. Scaled cable tray layout and relationships between components and adjacent structural, electrical, and mechanical elements.
 2. Vertical and horizontal offsets and transitions.
 3. Clearances for access above and to side of cable trays.
 4. Vertical elevation of cable trays above the floor or below bottom of ceiling structure.
- B. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates, for cable trays, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design cable tray supports and seismic bracing.
- B. Seismic Performance: Cable trays and supports shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
 1. The term "withstand" means "the cable trays will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified."
 2. Component Importance Factor: 1.5.
- C. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes in cable tray installed outdoors.

1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient;

2.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR CABLE TRAYS

- A. Cable Trays and Accessories: Identified as defined in NFPA 70 and marked for intended location, application, and grounding.
 1. Source Limitations: Obtain cable trays and components from single manufacturer.
- B. Sizes and Configurations: See the Cable Tray Schedule on Drawings for specific requirements for types, materials, sizes, and configurations.
- C. Structural Performance: See articles for individual cable tray types for specific values for the following parameters:
 1. Uniform Load Distribution: Capable of supporting a uniformly distributed load on the indicated support span when supported as a simple span and tested according to NEMA VE 1.
 2. Concentrated Load: A load applied at midpoint of span and centerline of tray.
 3. Load and Safety Factors: Applicable to both side rails and rung capacities.

2.3 LADDER CABLE TRAY

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. B-line, an Eaton business.
 2. MP Husky USA Cable Tray & Cable Bus.
 3. Thomas & Betts Corporation; A Member of the ABB Group.
- B. Description:
 1. Configuration: Two longitudinal side rails with transverse rungs swaged or welded to side rails, complying with NEMA VE 1.
 2. Width: 12 inches (300 mm) unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
 3. Minimum Usable Load Depth: 4 inches (100 mm).
 4. Straight Section Lengths: 20 feet (6.0 m), except where shorter lengths are required to facilitate tray assembly.
 5. Rung Spacing: 9 inches (225 mm) o.c.
 6. Radius-Fitting Rung Spacing: 9 inches (225 mm) at center of tray's width.
 7. Minimum Cable-Bearing Surface for Rungs: 7/8-inch (22-mm) width with radius edges.
 8. No portion of the rungs shall protrude below the bottom plane of side rails.
 9. Structural Performance of Each Rung: Capable of supporting a maximum cable load, with a safety factor of 1.5, plus a 200-lb (90-kg) concentrated load, when tested according to NEMA VE 1.
 10. Fitting Minimum Radius: 12 inches (300 mm).
 11. Class Designation: Comply with NEMA VE 1, Class 8AA.
 12. Splicing Assemblies: Bolted type using serrated flange locknuts.

13. Splice-Plate Capacity: Splices located within support span shall not diminish rated loading capacity of cable tray.

C. Materials and Finishes:

1. Steel:
 - a. Straight Section and Fitting Side Rails and Rungs: Steel complies with the minimum mechanical properties of ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Grade 33, Type 2.
 - b. Steel Tray Splice Plates: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, HSLAS, Grade 50, Class 1.
 - c. Fasteners: Steel complies with the minimum mechanical properties of ASTM A 510/A 510M, Grade 1008.
 - d. Finish: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication, complying with ASTM A123/A123 M, Class B2.

2.4 CABLE TRAY ACCESSORIES

- A. Fittings: Tees, crosses, risers, elbows, and other fittings as indicated, of same materials and finishes as cable tray.
- B. Barrier Strips: Same materials and finishes as for cable tray.
- C. Cable tray supports and connectors, including bonding jumpers, as recommended by cable tray manufacturer.

2.5 WARNING SIGNS

- A. Comply with requirements for identification in Section 270553 "Identification for Communications Systems."
- B. Lettering: 1-1/2-inch- (40-mm-) high, black letters on yellow background with legend "Warning! Not To Be Used as Walkway, Ladder, or Support for Ladders or Personnel."

2.6 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing: Test and inspect cable trays according to NEMA VE 1.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CABLE TRAY INSTALLATION

- A. Install cable trays according to NEMA VE 2.
- B. Install cable trays as a complete system, including fasteners, hold-down clips, support systems, barrier strips, adjustable horizontal and vertical splice plates, elbows, reducers, tees, crosses, cable dropouts, adapters, covers, and bonding.
- C. Install cable trays so that the tray is accessible for cable installation and all splices are accessible for inspection and adjustment.

- D. Remove burrs and sharp edges from cable trays.
- E. Join aluminum cable tray with splice plates; use four square neck-carriage bolts and locknuts.
- F. Fasten cable tray supports to building structure.
- G. Design fasteners and supports to carry cable tray, the cables, and a concentrated load of 200 lb (90 kg). Comply with requirements in Section 270529 "Hangers and Supports for Communications Systems."
- H. Place supports so that spans do not exceed maximum spans on schedules and provide clearances shown on Drawings. Install intermediate supports when cable weight exceeds the load-carrying capacity of the tray rungs.
- I. Construct supports from channel members, threaded rods, and other appurtenances furnished by cable tray manufacturer. Arrange supports in trapeze or wall-bracket form as required by application.
- J. Support bus assembly to prevent twisting from eccentric loading.
- K. Locate and install supports according to NEMA VE 2. Do not install more than one cable tray splice between supports.
- L. Make connections to equipment with flanged fittings fastened to cable trays and to equipment. Support cable trays independent of fittings. Do not carry weight of cable trays on equipment enclosure.
- M. Install expansion connectors where cable trays cross building expansion joints and in cable tray runs that exceed dimensions recommended in NEMA VE 2. Space connectors and set gaps according to applicable standard.
- N. Make changes in direction and elevation using manufacturer's recommended fittings.
- O. Make cable tray connections using manufacturer's recommended fittings.
- P. Seal penetrations through fire and smoke barriers. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."
- Q. Install capped metal sleeves for future cables through firestop-sealed cable tray penetrations of fire and smoke barriers.
- R. Install cable trays with enough workspace to permit access for installing cables.
- S. Install permanent covers, if used, after installing cable. Install cover clamps according to NEMA VE 2.
- T. Clamp covers on cable trays installed outdoors with heavy-duty clamps.

- U. Install warning signs in visible locations on or near cable trays after cable tray installation.

3.2 CABLE TRAY GROUNDING

- A. Ground cable trays according to NFPA 70 unless additional grounding is specified. Comply with requirements in Section 270526 "Grounding and Bonding for Communications Systems."
- B. Cable trays shall be bonded together with splice plates listed for grounding purposes or with listed bonding jumpers.
- C. Cable trays with single-conductor power conductors shall be bonded together with a grounding conductor run in the tray along with the power conductors and bonded to the tray at 72-inch (1800-mm) intervals. The grounding conductor shall be sized according to NFPA 70, Article 250.122, "Size of Equipment Grounding Conductors," and Article 392, "Cable Trays."
- D. Bond cable trays to power source for cables contained within with bonding conductors sized according to NFPA 70, Article 250.122, "Size of Equipment Grounding Conductors."

3.3 CABLE INSTALLATION

- A. Install cables only when each cable tray run has been completed and inspected.
- B. Fasten cables on horizontal runs with cable clamps or cable ties according to NEMA VE 2. Tighten clamps only enough to secure the cable, without indenting the cable jacket. Install cable ties with a tool that includes an automatic pressure-limiting device.
- C. Fasten cables on vertical runs to cable trays every 18 inches (450 mm).
- D. Fasten and support cables that pass from one cable tray to another or drop from cable trays to equipment enclosures. Fasten cables to the cable tray at the point of exit and support cables independent of the enclosure. The cable length between cable trays or between cable tray and enclosure shall be no more than 72 inches (1800 mm).
- E. In existing construction, remove inactive or dead cables from cable trays.

3.4 CONNECTIONS

- A. Remove paint from all connection points before making connections. Repair paint after the connections are completed.
- B. Connect pathways to cable trays according to requirements in NEMA VE 2 and NEMA FG 1.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
1. After installing cable trays and after electrical circuitry has been energized, survey for compliance with requirements.
 2. Visually inspect cable insulation for damage. Correct sharp corners, protuberances in cable trays, vibrations, and thermal expansion and contraction conditions, which may cause or have caused damage.
 3. Verify that the number, size, and voltage of cables in cable trays do not exceed that permitted by NFPA 70. Verify that communications or data-processing circuits are separated from power circuits by barriers or are installed in separate cable trays.
 4. Verify that there are no intruding items such as pipes, hangers, or other equipment in the cable tray.
 5. Remove dust deposits, industrial process materials, trash of any description, and any blockage of tray ventilation.
 6. Visually inspect each cable tray joint and each ground connection for mechanical continuity. Check bolted connections between sections for corrosion. Clean and retorquing in suspect areas.
 7. Check for improperly sized or installed bonding jumpers.
 8. Check for missing, incorrect, or damaged bolts, bolt heads, or nuts. When found, replace with specified hardware.
 9. Perform visual and mechanical checks for adequacy of cable tray grounding; verify that all takeoff raceways are bonded to cable trays. Test entire cable tray system for continuity. Maximum allowable resistance is 1 ohm.
- B. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed cable trays and cables.
1. Install temporary protection for cables in open trays to safeguard exposed cables against falling objects or debris during construction. Temporary protection for cables and cable tray can be constructed of wood or metal materials and shall remain in place until the risk of damage is over.
 2. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by cable tray manufacturer.
 3. Repair damage to paint finishes with matching touchup coating recommended by cable tray manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 27 0536

SECTION 27 0543 - UNDERGROUND PATHWAYS AND STRUCTURES FOR COMMUNICATION SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Rigid nonmetallic duct.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Direct-Buried: Duct or a duct bank that is buried in the ground, without any additional casing materials, such as concrete.
- B. Duct: A single duct or multiple ducts. Duct may be either installed singly or as component of a duct bank.
- C. Duct Bank:
 - 1. Two or more ducts installed in parallel, with or without additional casing materials.
 - 2. Multiple duct banks.
- D. GRC: Galvanized rigid conduit.
- E. IMC: Intermediate metal conduit.
- F. RNC: Rigid nonmetallic conduit.
- G. Trafficways: Locations where vehicular or pedestrian traffic is a normal course of events.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include duct-bank materials, including spacers and miscellaneous components.
 - 2. Include duct and conduits and their accessories, including elbows, end bells, bends, fittings, duct spacers and solvent cement.
 - 3. Include accessories for other utility structures.
 - 4. Include underground-line warning tape.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Precast or Factory-Fabricated Underground Utility Structures:
 - a. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, attachments to other work, and accessories.
 - b. Include duct entry provisions, including location and duct size.
 - c. Include reinforcement details.
 - d. Include frame and cover design and manhole chimneys.

C. Sustainable Design Submittals:

1. Product Data: For adhesives and sealants, indicating VOC content.
2. Laboratory Test Reports: For adhesives and sealants, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Duct and Duct-Bank Coordination Drawings: Show duct profiles and coordination with other utilities and underground structures.

1. Include plans and sections, drawn to scale, and show bends and locations of expansion fittings.
2. Drawings shall be signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.

B. Qualification Data: For professional engineer and testing agency responsible for testing nonconcrete handholes and boxes.

C. Source quality-control reports.

D. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIALS SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Interruption of Existing Communications Service: Do not interrupt communications service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions, and then only after arranging to provide temporary communications service according to requirements indicated:

1. Notify Construction Manager no fewer than twodays in advance of proposed interruption of communications service.

2. Do not proceed with interruption of communications service without Owner's written permission.
- B. Ground Water: Assume ground-water level is at grade level unless a lower water table is noted on Drawings.
- C. Ground Water: Assume ground-water level is 36 inches (900 mm) below ground surface unless a higher water table is noted on Drawings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 RIGID NONMETALLIC DUCTS

- A. Underground Plastic Utilities Duct: Type EPC-40-PVC RNC, complying with NEMA TC 2 and UL 651, with matching fittings complying with NEMA TC 3 by same manufacturer as duct.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. ARNCO Corp.
 2. ElecSys, Inc.
 3. Spiraduct/AFC Cable Systems, Inc.
- C. General Requirements for Nonmetallic Ducts and Fittings:
 1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a nationally recognized testing laboratory, and marked for intended location and application.
 2. Comply with TIA-569-C and TIA-758-C.
- D. Solvents and Adhesives: As recommended by duct manufacturer.
 1. VOC Content: 510 g/L or less for PVC conduit and fittings.

2.2 DUCT ACCESSORIES

- A. Duct Spacers: Factory-fabricated rigid PVC interlocking spacers, sized for type and size of duct with which used, and selected to provide minimum duct spacing indicated while supporting duct during concreting or backfilling.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Allied Tube & Conduit; a part of Atkore International.
 - b. Cantex Inc.
 - c. Carlon; a brand of Thomas & Betts Corporation.
- B. Underground-Line Warning Tape: Underground-line warning tape specified in Section 270553 "Identification for Communications Systems."

2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Test and inspect precast concrete utility structures according to ASTM C 1037.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of duct, duct bank, and boxes with final arrangement of other utilities, site grading, and surface features as determined in the field. Notify Architect if there is a conflict between areas of excavation and existing structures or archaeological sites to remain.
- B. Coordinate elevations of duct and duct-bank entrances into manholes, handholes, and boxes with final locations and profiles of duct and duct banks, as determined by coordination with other utilities, underground obstructions, and surface features. Revise locations and elevations as required to suit field conditions and to ensure that duct runs drain to manholes and handholes, and as approved by Architect.
- C. Clear and grub vegetation to be removed, and protect vegetation to remain according to Section 311000 "Site Clearing." Remove and stockpile topsoil for reapplication according to Section 311000 "Site Clearing."

3.2 UNDERGROUND DUCT APPLICATION

- A. Duct for Communications: Type EPC-40-PVC RNC, in concrete-encased duct bank unless otherwise indicated.

3.3 UNDERGROUND ENCLOSURE APPLICATION

- A. Handholes and Boxes for Communications:
 - 1. Reuse existing manholes. Coordinate buried depth of duct bank with existing manhole.

3.4 EARTHWORK

- A. Excavation and Backfill: Comply with Section 312000 "Earth Moving," but do not use heavy-duty, hydraulic-operated, compaction equipment.
- B. Restoration: Replace area after construction in immediate area is complete.
- C. Restore surface features at areas disturbed by excavation, and re-establish original grades unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Restore areas disturbed by trenching, storing of dirt, cable laying, and other work. Restore vegetation and include necessary topsoiling, fertilizing, liming, seeding, sodding, sprigging, and mulching. Comply with Section 329200 "Turf and Grasses" and Section 329300 "Plants."

- E. Cut and patch existing pavement in the path of underground duct, duct bank, and utility structures according to the "Cutting and Patching" Article in Section 017300 "Execution."

3.5 DUCT AND DUCT-BANK INSTALLATION

- A. Where indicated on Drawings, install duct, spacers, and accessories into the duct configuration shown. Duct installation requirements in this Section also apply to duct bank.
- B. Install duct and duct bank according to NEMA TCB 2 and TIA-758-C.
- C. Slope: Pitch duct and duct bank a minimum slope of 1:100 down toward manholes and handholes and away from buildings and equipment. Slope duct and duct bank from a high point in runs between two manholes, to drain in both directions.
- D. Curves and Bends: Use 5-degree angle couplings for small changes in direction. Use manufactured long sweep bends with a minimum radius of 25 feet (7.5 m), both horizontally and vertically, at other locations unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Duct and duct banks shall have maximum of two 90-degree bends, or the total of all bends shall be no more 180 degrees between pull points.
- E. Joints: Use solvent-cemented joints in duct and fittings, and make watertight according to manufacturer's written instructions. Stagger couplings, so those of adjacent ducts do not lie in same plane.
- F. Installation Adjacent to High-Temperature Steam Lines: Where duct or duct banks are installed parallel to underground steam lines, perform calculations showing the duct or duct bank will not be subject to environmental temperatures above 40 deg C. Where environmental temperatures are calculated to rise above 40 deg C, and anywhere the duct or duct bank crosses above an underground steam line, install insulation blankets listed for direct burial to isolate the duct bank from the steam line.
- G. End-Bell Entrances to Manholes and Concrete and Polymer Concrete Handholes: Use end bells, spaced approximately 6 inches (150 mm) o.c. for 4-inch (100-mm) duct, and vary proportionately for other duct sizes.
 - 1. Begin change from regular spacing to end-bell spacing 10 feet (3 m) from the end bell without reducing duct slope and without forming a trap in the line.
 - 2. Expansion and Deflection Fittings: Install an expansion and deflection fitting in each duct in the area of disturbed earth adjacent to manhole or handhole. Install an expansion fitting near the center of all straight-line direct-buried duct and duct banks, with calculated expansion of more than 3/4 inch (19 mm).
 - 3. Grout end bells into structure walls from both sides to provide watertight entrances.
- H. Terminator Entrances to Manholes and Concrete and Polymer Concrete Handholes: Use manufactured, cast-in-place duct terminators, with entrances into structure spaced

approximately 6 inches (150 mm) o.c. for 4-inch (100-mm) duct, and vary proportionately for other duct sizes.

1. Begin change from regular spacing to terminator spacing 10 feet (3 m) from the terminator without reducing duct slope and without forming a trap in the line.
 2. Expansion and Deflection Fittings: Install an expansion and deflection fitting in each duct in the area of disturbed earth adjacent to manhole or handhole. Install an expansion fitting near the center of all straight-line duct or duct bank, with calculated expansion of more than 3/4 inch (19 mm).
- I. Building Wall Penetrations: Make a transition from underground duct to GRC at least 10 feet (3 m) outside the building wall, without reducing duct slope away from the building or forming a trap in the duct. Use fittings manufactured for RNC duct-to-GRC conduit transition. Install GRC penetrations of building walls as specified in Section 270544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Communications Pathways and Cabling."
- J. Sealing: Provide temporary closure at terminations of duct that has cables pulled. Seal spare ducts at terminations. Use sealing compound and plugs to withstand at least 15-psig (1.03-MPa) hydrostatic pressure.
- K. Concrete-Encased Duct and Duct Bank:
1. Excavate trench bottom to provide firm and uniform support for duct or duct bank. Prepare trench bottoms as specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for pipes less than 6 inches (150 mm) in nominal diameter.
 2. Width: Excavate trench 12 inches (300 mm) wider than duct or duct bank on each side.
 3. Width: Excavate trench 3 inches (75 mm) wider than duct or duct bank on each side.
 4. Depth: Install top of duct and duct bank at least 24 inches (600 mm) below finished grade in areas not subject to deliberate traffic, and at least 30 inches (750 mm) below finished grade in deliberate traffic paths for vehicles unless otherwise indicated.
 5. Support duct and duct bank on duct spacers coordinated with duct size, duct spacing, and outdoor temperature.
 6. Minimum Space Between Duct: 3 inches (75 mm) between edge of duct and exterior envelope wall, 2 inches (50 mm) between ducts for like services, and 4 inches (100 mm) between power and communications ducts.
 7. Spacer Installation: Place spacers close enough to prevent sagging and deforming of duct, with not less than four spacers per 20 feet (6 m) of duct. Place spacers within 24 inches (600 mm) of duct ends. Stagger spacers approximately 6 inches (150 mm) between tiers. Secure spacers to earth and duct to prevent floating during concreting. Tie entire assembly together using fabric straps; do not use tie wires or reinforcing steel that may form conductive or magnetic loops around duct or duct bank.
 8. Elbows: Use manufactured duct elbows for stub-ups, at building entrances, and at changes of direction in duct run unless otherwise indicated. Extend concrete encasement throughout length of elbow.

9. Elbows: Use manufactured GRC elbows for stub-ups, at building entrances, and at changes of direction in duct run.
 - a. Couple GRC to duct with adapters designed for this purpose, and encase coupling with 3 inches (75 mm) of concrete.
 - b. Stub-Ups to Outdoor Equipment: Extend concrete-encased GRC horizontally a minimum of 60 inches (1500 mm) from edge of base. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.
 - 1) Stub-ups shall be minimum 4 inches (100 mm) above finished floor and minimum 3 inches (75 mm) from conduit side to edge of slab.
 - c. Stub-Ups to Indoor Equipment: Extend concrete-encased GRC horizontally a minimum of 60 inches (1500 mm) from edge of wall. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.
 - 1) Stub-ups shall be minimum 4 inches (100 mm) above finished floor and no less than 3 inches (75 mm) from conduit side to edge of wall.
10. Reinforcement: Reinforce concrete-encased duct and duct bank where they cross disturbed earth and where indicated. Arrange reinforcing rods and ties without forming conductive or magnetic loops around ducts or duct groups.
11. Forms: Use trench walls to form side walls of duct and duct bank where soil is self-supporting and concrete envelope can be poured without soil inclusions; otherwise, use forms.
12. Concrete Cover: Install a minimum of 3 inches (75 mm) of concrete cover between edge of duct to exterior envelope wall, 2 inches (50 mm) between ducts, and 4 inches (100 mm) between power and communications duct.
13. Concreting Sequence: Pour each run of envelope between manholes or other terminations in one continuous operation.
 - a. Start at one end and finish at the other, allowing for expansion and contraction of duct as its temperature changes during and after the pour. Use expansion fittings installed according to manufacturer's written recommendations, or use other specific measures to prevent expansion-contraction damage.
 - b. If more than one pour is necessary, terminate each pour in a vertical plane and install 3/4-inch (19-mm) reinforcing-rod dowels extending a minimum of 18 inches (450 mm) into concrete on both sides of joint near corners of envelope.
14. Pouring Concrete: Comply with requirements in "Concrete Placement" Article in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete." Place concrete carefully during pours to prevent voids under and between ducts and at exterior surface of envelope. Do not allow a heavy mass of concrete to fall directly onto duct. Allow concrete to flow to center of bank and rise up in middle, uniformly filling all open spaces. Do not use power-driven agitating equipment unless specifically designed for duct-bank application.

3.6 GROUNDING

- A. Ground underground duct, duct bank, and utility structures according to Section 270526 "Grounding and Bonding for Communications Systems."

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
 - 1. Demonstrate capability and compliance with requirements on completion of installation of underground duct, duct bank, and utility structures.
 - 2. Pull solid aluminum or wood test mandrel through duct to prove joint integrity and adequate bend radii, and test for out-of-round duct. Provide a minimum 12-inch- (300-mm-) long mandrel equal to duct size minus 1/4 inch (6 mm). If obstructions are indicated, remove obstructions and retest.
 - 3. Test manhole grounding to ensure electrical continuity of grounding and bonding connections. Measure and report ground resistance as specified in Section 270526 "Grounding and Bonding for Communications Systems."
- B. Correct deficiencies and retest as specified above to demonstrate compliance.

3.8 CLEANING

- A. Pull leather-washer-type duct cleaner, with graduated washer sizes, through full length of duct until duct cleaner indicates that duct is clear of dirt and debris.
- B. Clean internal surfaces of manholes, including sump.
 - 1. Sweep floor, removing dirt and debris.
 - 2. Remove foreign material.

END OF SECTION 27 0543

SECTION 27 0544 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR COMMUNICATIONS PATHWAYS AND CABLING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Sleeves for pathway and cable penetration of non-fire-rated construction walls and floors.
 - 2. Sleeve-seal systems.
 - 3. Sleeve-seal fittings.
 - 4. Grout.
 - 5. Silicone sealants.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for penetration firestopping installed in fire-resistance-rated walls, horizontal assemblies, and smoke barriers, with and without penetrating items.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
 - 1. Product Data: For paints and coatings, indicating VOC content.
 - 2. Laboratory Test Reports: For paints and coatings, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SLEEVES

- A. Wall Sleeves:
 - 1. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, plain ends.
 - 2. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.

- B. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Non-Fire-Rated Gypsum Board Assemblies: Galvanized-steel sheet; 0.0239-inch (0.6-mm) minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint, with tabs for screw-fastening the sleeve to the board.
- C. PVC-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.
- D. Molded-PVC Sleeves: With nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- E. Molded-PE or -PP Sleeves: Removable, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- F. Sleeves for Rectangular Openings:
 - 1. Material: Galvanized-steel sheet.
 - 2. Minimum Metal Thickness:
 - a. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches (1270 mm) and with no side larger than 16 inches (400 mm), thickness shall be 0.052 inch (1.3 mm).
 - b. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter 50 inches (1270 mm) or more and one or more sides larger than 16 inches (400 mm), thickness shall be 0.138 inch (3.5 mm).

2.2 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and pathway or cable.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
 - b. CALPICO, Inc.
 - c. HOLDRITE; Reliance Worldwide Company.
 - 2. Sealing Elements: Nitrile (Buna N) rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
 - 3. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel.
 - 4. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating, of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS

- A. Description: Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly made for embedding in concrete slab or wall. Unit shall have plastic or rubber waterstop collar with center opening to match piping OD.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - a. HOLDRITE; Reliance Worldwide Company.

2.4 GROUT

- A. Description: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior sealing openings in non-fire-rated walls or floors.
- B. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

2.5 SILICONE SEALANTS

- A. Silicone Sealants: Single-component, silicone-based, neutral-curing elastomeric sealants of grade indicated below.
 - 1. Grade: Pourable (self-leveling) formulation for openings in floors and other horizontal surfaces that are not fire rated.
 - 2. Sealant shall have a VOC content of 100 g/L or less.
- B. Silicone Foams: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, nonshrinking foam.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR NON-FIRE-RATED ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Comply with NEMA VE 2 for cable tray and cable penetrations.
- C. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Above-Grade Non-Fire-Rated Concrete and Masonry-Unit Floors and Walls:
 - 1. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors:
 - a. Seal annular space between sleeve and pathway or cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
 - b. Seal space outside of sleeves with mortar or grout. Pack sealing material solidly between sleeve and wall so no voids remain. Tool exposed surfaces smooth; protect material while curing.
 - 2. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
 - 3. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and pathway or cable unless sleeve seal is to be installed or unless seismic criteria require different clearance.

4. Install sleeves for wall penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of walls. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls. Deburr after cutting.
 5. Install sleeves for floor penetrations. Extend sleeves installed in floors 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level. Install sleeves during erection of floors.
- D. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Non-Fire-Rated Gypsum Board Assemblies:
1. Use circular metal sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
 2. Seal space outside of sleeves with approved joint compound for gypsum board assemblies.
- E. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual pathways and cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.
- F. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using cast-iron pipe sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
- G. Underground, Exterior-Wall and Floor Penetrations: Install cast-iron pipe sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pathway or cable and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.

3.2 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at pathway entries into building.
- B. Install type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for pathway or cable material and size. Position pathway or cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pathway or cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal fittings in new walls and slabs as they are constructed.
- B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.
- C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.
- D. Using grout, seal the space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

END OF SECTION 27 0544

SECTION 27 0553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Color and legend requirements for labels and signs.
 - 2. Labels.
 - 3. Bands and tubes.
 - 4. Tapes.
 - 5. Signs.
 - 6. Cable ties.
 - 7. Fasteners for labels and signs.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for communications identification products.
- B. Samples: For each type of label and sign to illustrate composition, size, colors, lettering style, mounting provisions, and graphic features of identification products.
- C. Identification Schedule:
 - 1. Outlets: Scaled drawings indicating location and proposed designation.
 - 2. Backbone Cabling: Riser diagram showing each communications room, backbone cable, and proposed backbone cable designation.
 - 3. Racks: Scaled drawings indicating location and proposed designation.
 - 4. Patch Panels: Enlarged scaled drawings showing rack row, number, and proposed designations.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NFPA 70 and TIA 606-B.
- B. Comply with ANSI Z535.4 for safety signs and labels.

- C. Adhesive-attached labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers, shall comply with UL 969.
- D. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes.
 - 1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.

2.2 COLOR AND LEGEND REQUIREMENTS

- A. Equipment Identification Labels:
 - 1. Black letters on a white field.

2.3 LABELS

- A. Self-Adhesive Wraparound Labels: Preprinted, 3-mil- (0.08-mm-) thick, polyester flexible labels with acrylic pressure-sensitive adhesive.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Brady Corporation.
 - b. Brother International Corporation.
 - c. Panduit Corp.
 - 2. Self-Lamination: Clear; UV-, weather- and chemical-resistant; self-laminating protective shields over the legend. Labels sized such that the clear shield overlaps the entire printed legend.
 - 3. Marker for Labels: Permanent, waterproof black ink marker recommended by tag manufacturer.
 - 4. Marker for Labels: Machine-printed, permanent, waterproof black ink recommended by printer manufacturer.
- B. Self-Adhesive Labels: Polyester, thermal, transfer-printed, 3-mil- (0.08-mm-) thick, multicolor, weather- and UV-resistant, pressure-sensitive adhesive labels, configured for intended use and location.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Brady Corporation.
 - b. Brother International Corporation.
 - c. Panduit Corp.
 - 2. Minimum Nominal Size:
 - a. 1-1/2 by 6 inches (37 by 150 mm) for raceway and conductors.
 - b. 3-1/2 by 5 inches (76 by 127 mm) for equipment.
 - c. As required by authorities having jurisdiction.

2.4 UNDERGROUND-LINE WARNING TAPE

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Brady Corporation.
 - 2. Brimar Industries, Inc.
 - 3. Seton Identification Products; a Brady Corporation company.
- B. Tape:
 - 1. Recommended by manufacturer for the method of installation and suitable to identify and locate underground communications utility lines.
 - 2. Printing on tape shall be permanent and shall not be damaged by burial operations.
 - 3. Tape material and ink shall be chemically inert and not subject to degradation when exposed to acids, alkalis, and other destructive substances commonly found in soils.
- C. Color and Printing:
 - 1. Comply with ANSI Z535.1, ANSI Z535.2, ANSI Z535.3, and ANSI Z535.4.
 - 2. Inscriptions for Orange-Colored Tapes: "TELEPHONE CABLE, CATV CABLE, COMMUNICATIONS CABLE, OPTICAL-FIBER CABLE".
 - 3. Pigmented polyolefin, bright colored, continuous-printed on one side compounded for direct-burial service.
 - 4. Width: 3 inches (75 mm).
 - 5. Thickness: 4 mils (0.1 mm).
 - 6. Weight: 18.5 lb/1000 sq. ft. (9.0 kg/100 sq. m).
 - 7. Tensile according to ASTM D 882: 30 lbf (133.4 N) and 2500 psi (17.2 MPa).

2.5 CABLE TIES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. HellermannTyton.
 - 2. Ideal Industries, Inc.
 - 3. Panduit Corp.
- B. Plenum-Rated Cable Ties: Self-extinguishing, UV stabilized, one piece, and self-locking.
 - 1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch (5 mm).
 - 2. Tensile Strength at 73 deg F (23 deg C) according to ASTM D 638: 7000 psi (48.2 MPa).
 - 3. UL 94 Flame Rating: 94V-0.
 - 4. Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 284 deg F (Minus 46 to plus 140 deg C).
 - 5. Color: Black.

2.6 MISCELLANEOUS IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

- A. Paint: Comply with requirements in painting Sections for paint materials and application requirements. Retain paint system applicable for surface material and location (exterior or interior).
- B. Fasteners for Labels and Signs: Self-tapping, stainless-steel screws or stainless-steel machine screws with nuts and flat and lock washers.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Self-Adhesive Identification Products: Before applying communications identification products, clean substrates of substances that could impair bond, using materials and methods recommended by manufacturer of identification product.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Verify and coordinate identification names, abbreviations, colors, and other features with requirements in other Sections requiring identification applications, Drawings, Shop Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and operation and maintenance manual. Use consistent designations throughout Project.
- B. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.
- C. Verify identity of each item before installing identification products.
- D. Coordinate identification with Project Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and operation and maintenance manual.
- E. Apply identification devices to surfaces that require finish after completing finish work.
- F. Install signs with approved legend to facilitate proper identification, operation, and maintenance of communications systems and connected items.
- G. Elevated Components: Increase sizes of labels, signs, and letters to those appropriate for viewing from the floor.
- H. Self-Adhesive Wraparound Labels:
 - 1. Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
 - 2. Provide label 6 inches (150 mm) from cable end.
- I. Self-Adhesive Labels:
 - 1. On each item, install unique designation label that is consistent with wiring diagrams, schedules, and operation and maintenance manual.

2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) high letters on 1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-) high label; where two lines of text are required, use labels 2 inches (50 mm) high.
- J. Snap-Around, Color-Coding Bands: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- K. Underground-Line Warning Tape:
 1. During backfilling of trenches, install continuous underground-line warning tape directly above cable or raceway at 6 to 8 inches (150 to 200 mm) below finished grade. Use multiple tapes where width of multiple lines installed in a common trench or concrete envelope exceeds 16 inches (400 mm) overall.
 2. Limit use of underground-line warning tape to direct-buried cables.
 3. Install underground-line warning tape for direct-buried cables and cables in raceways.
- L. Cable Ties: General purpose, except as listed below:
 1. Outdoors: UV-stabilized nylon.
 2. In Spaces Handling Environmental Air: Plenum rated.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION SCHEDULE

- A. Install identification materials and devices at locations for most convenient viewing without interference with operation and maintenance of equipment. Install access doors or panels to provide view of identifying devices.
- B. Identify conductors, cables, and terminals in enclosures and at junctions, terminals, pull points, and locations with high visibility. Identify by system and circuit designation.
- C. Accessible Fittings for Raceways and Cables within Buildings: Identify covers of each junction and pull box with self-adhesive labels containing wiring system legend.
 1. System legends shall be as follows:
 - a. Telecommunications.
- D. Faceplates: Label individual faceplates with self-adhesive labels. Place label at top of faceplate. Each faceplate shall be labeled with its individual, sequential designation, composed of the following, in the order listed:
 1. Wiring closet designation.
 2. Colon.
 3. Faceplate number.
- E. Equipment Room Labeling:
 1. Racks, Frames, and Enclosures: Identify front and rear of each with self-adhesive labels containing equipment designation.

2. Patch Panels: Label individual rows in each rack, starting at top and working down, with self-adhesive labels.
3. Data Outlets: Label each outlet with a self-adhesive label indicating the following, in the order listed:
 - a. Room number being served.
 - b. Colon.
 - c. Faceplate number.
- F. Backbone Cables: Label each cable with a self-adhesive wraparound label indicating the location of the far or other end of the backbone cable. Patch panel or punch down block where cable is terminated should be labeled identically.
- G. Horizontal Cables: Label each cable with a self-adhesive wraparound label indicating the following, in the order listed:
 1. Room number.
 2. Colon.
 3. Faceplate number.
- H. Locations of Underground Lines: Underground-line warning tape for copper, coaxial, hybrid copper/fiber, and optical-fiber cable.
- I. Instructional Signs: Self-adhesive labels.
- J. Warning Labels for Indoor Cabinets, Boxes, and Enclosures: Self-adhesive labels.
 1. Apply to exterior of door, cover, or other access.
- K. Equipment Identification Labels:
 1. Indoor Equipment: Self-adhesive label.
 2. Outdoor Equipment: Laminated-acrylic or melamine-plastic sign.
 3. Equipment to Be Labeled:
 - a. Communications cabinets.
 - b. Uninterruptible power supplies.
 - c. Computer room air conditioners.
 - d. Fire-alarm and suppression equipment.
 - e. Egress points.
 - f. Power distribution components.

END OF SECTION 27 0553

SECTION 27 1100 - COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT ROOM FITTINGS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Backboards.
 - 2. Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets.
 - 3. Power strips.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 270536 "Cable Trays for Communications Systems" for cable trays and accessories.
 - 2. Section 271323 "Communications Optical Fiber Backbone Cabling" for optical-fiber data cabling associated with system panels and devices.
 - 3. Section 271513 "Communications Copper Horizontal Cabling" for copper data cabling associated with system panels and devices.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Access Provider: An operator that provides a circuit path or facility between the service provider and user. An access provider can also be a service provider.
- B. BICSI: Building Industry Consulting Service International.
- C. RCDD: Registered communications distribution designer.
- D. Service Provider: The operator of a telecommunications transmission service delivered through access provider facilities.
- E. TGB: Telecommunications grounding bus bar.
- F. TMGB: Telecommunications main grounding bus bar.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for equipment racks and cabinets.

2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: For communications equipment room fittings. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 2. Equipment Racks and Cabinets: Include workspace requirements and access for cable connections.
 3. Grounding: Indicate location of grounding bus bar and its mounting detail showing standoff insulators and wall mounting brackets.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified layout technician, installation supervisor, and field inspector.
- B. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates, from manufacturer.
 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions. Base certification on the maximum number of components capable of being mounted in each rack type. Identify components on which certification is based.
 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Cabling installer must have personnel certified by BICSI on staff.
 1. Layout Responsibility: Preparation of Shop Drawings shall be under direct supervision of RCDD.
 2. Installation Supervision: Installation shall be under direct supervision of Technician, who shall be present at all times when Work of this Section is performed at Project site.
 3. Field Inspector: Currently registered by BICSI as RCDD to perform the on-site inspection.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Equipment shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.

1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified"

2.2 BACKBOARDS

- A. Backboards: Plywood, fire-retardant treated, 3/4 by 48 by 96 inches (19 by 1220 by 2440 mm).
- B. Backboard Paint: Light-colored fire-retardant paint.

2.3 BOXES, ENCLOSURES, AND CABINETS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Hoffman; a brand of nVent.
 2. Hubbell Incorporated (Commercial and Industrial Group - Wiring Device-Kellems).
 3. Thomas & Betts Corporation; A Member of the ABB Group.
 4. Wiremold / Legrand.
- B. General Requirements for Boxes, Enclosures, and Cabinets: Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets shall be listed and labeled for intended location and use.
- C. Sheet Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 1 and UL 514A.
- D. Cast-Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1, Type FD, aluminum with gasketed cover.
- E. Small Sheet Metal Pull and Junction Boxes: NEMA OS 1.
- F. Box extensions used to accommodate new building finishes shall be of same material as recessed box.
- G. Device Box Dimensions: 4 inches square by 2-1/8 inches deep (100 mm square by 60 mm deep).
- H. Hinged-Cover Enclosures: Comply with UL 50 and NEMA 250, Type 1 with continuous-hinge cover with flush latch unless otherwise indicated.
 1. Metal Enclosures: Steel, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
 2. Interior Panels: Steel; all sides finished with manufacturer's standard enamel.
- I. Cabinets:
 1. NEMA 250, Type 1 galvanized-steel box with removable interior panel and removable front, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
 2. Hinged door in front cover with flush latch and concealed hinge.
 3. Key latch to match panelboards.

4. Metal barriers to separate wiring of different systems and voltage.
5. Accessory feet where required for freestanding equipment.
6. Nonmetallic cabinets shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.4 POWER STRIPS

- A. Provided by owner, as part of the rack equipment.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 ENTRANCE FACILITIES

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 270528 "Pathways for Communications Systems" for materials and installation requirements for underground pathways.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Comply with BICSI's "Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual" for layout of communications equipment spaces.
- C. Comply with BICSI's "Information Technology Systems Installation Methods Manual" for installation of equipment in communications equipment spaces.
- D. Bundle, lace, and train conductors and cables to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.
- E. Coordinate layout and installation of communications equipment in tracks and in room. Coordinate service entrance configuration with service provider.
 1. Meet jointly with systems providers, equipment suppliers, and Owner to exchange information and agree on details of equipment configurations and installation interfaces.
 2. Record agreements reached in meetings and distribute them to other participants.
 3. Adjust configurations and locations of distribution frames, cross-connects, and patch panels in equipment rooms to accommodate and optimize configurations and space requirements of communications equipment.
 4. Adjust configurations and locations of equipment with distribution frames, cross-connects, and patch panels of cabling systems of other communications, electronic safety and security, and related systems that share space in equipment room.
- F. Coordinate location of power raceways and receptacles with locations of communications equipment requiring electrical power to operate.
- G. Backboards:

1. Install from 6 inches (150 mm) to 8 feet, 6 inches (2588 mm) above finished floor. If plywood is fire rated, ensure that fire-rating stamp is visible after installation.
2. Paint all sides of backboard with two coats of paint, leaving fire rating stamp visible.
3. Comply with requirements for backboard installation in BICSI's "Information Technology Systems Installation Methods Manual" and TIA-569-D.

3.3 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE SEAL INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 270544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Communications Pathways and Cabling."

3.4 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."
- B. Comply with TIA-569-D, Annex A, "Firestopping."
- C. Comply with BICSI's "Information Technology Systems Installation Methods Manual," "Firestopping Practices" Ch.

END OF SECTION 27 1100

SECTION 27 1116 - COMMUNICATIONS RACKS, FRAMES, AND ENCLOSURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Grounding.
- 2. Labeling.
- 3. Equipment racks to be furnished by Campus and installed by Contractor

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 271110 "Communications Equipment Room Fittings" for backboards and accessories.
- 2. Section 270526 "Grounding and Bonding for Telecommunications Equipment" for TMGBs and TGBs.
- 3. Section 270536 "Cable Trays for Communications Systems" for cable trays and cable tray accessories.
- 4. Section 271323 "Communications Optical Fiber Backbone Cabling" for optical-fiber data cabling associated with system panels and devices.
- 5. Section 271513 "Communications Copper Horizontal Cabling" for copper data cabling associated with system panels and devices.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Access Provider: An operator that provides a circuit path or facility between the service provider and user. An access provider can also be a service provider.
- B. BICSI: Building Industry Consulting Service International.
- C. LAN: Local area network.
- D. RCDD: Registered communications distribution designer.
- E. Service Provider: The operator of a telecommunications transmission service delivered through access provider facilities.
- F. TGB: Telecommunications grounding bus bar.
- G. TMGB: Telecommunications main grounding bus bar.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for equipment racks and cabinets.
 - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, certifications, standards compliance, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: For communications racks, frames, and enclosures. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 2. Equipment Racks and Cabinets: Include workspace requirements and access for cable connections.
 - 3. Grounding: Indicate location of TGB and its mounting detail showing standoff insulators and wall-mounting brackets.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: RCDD for qualified layout technician, installation supervisor, and field inspector.
- B. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates, from manufacturer.
 - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions. Base certification on the maximum number of components capable of being mounted in each rack type. Identify components on which certification is based.
 - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Cabling installer must have personnel certified by BICSI on staff.
 - 1. Layout Responsibility: Preparation of Shop Drawings shall be under direct supervision of RCDD.
 - 2. Installation Supervision: Installation shall be under direct supervision of Technician, who shall be present at all times when Work of this Section is performed at Project site.
 - 3. Field Inspector: Currently registered by BICSI as RCDD to perform on-site inspection.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Equipment shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
 - 1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified"
- B. UL listed.
- C. RoHS compliant.
- D. Compliant with requirements of the Payment Card Industry Data Security Standard.

2.2 EQUIPMENT RACKS

- A. Description: Furnished by Campus and installed by Contractor.

2.3 POWER STRIPS

- A. Power Strips: Furnished by Campus and installed by Contractor.

2.4 GROUNDING

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 270526 "Grounding and Bonding for Communications Systems" for grounding conductors and connectors. Contractor to coordinate with owner if TGB within racks and cabinets are part of the Campus furnishing equipment. If TGB are not part of the furnishing equipment, Contractor shall provide TGBs, accordingly.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Chatsworth Products, Inc.
 - 2. Harger Lightning & Grounding.
 - 3. Panduit Corp.
- C. Rack and Cabinet TGBs: Rectangular bars of hard-drawn solid copper, accepting conductors ranging from No. 14 to No. 2/0 AWG, NRTL listed as complying with UL 467, and complying with TIA-606-B. Predrilling shall be with holes for use with lugs specified in this Section.
 - 1. Cabinet-Mounted TGB: Terminal block, with stainless-steel or copper-plated hardware for attachment to cabinet.
 - 2. Rack-Mounted Horizontal TGB: Designed for mounting in 19- or 23-inch (482.6- or 584.2-mm) equipment racks. Include a copper splice bar for transitioning to an adjoining rack, and stainless-steel or copper-plated hardware for attachment to the rack.

3. Rack-Mounted Vertical TGB: 72 or 36 inches (1828.8 or 914.4 mm) long, with stainless-steel or copper-plated hardware for attachment to rack.

2.5 LABELING

- A. Comply with TIA-606-B and UL 969 for a system of labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Comply with BICSI TDMM for layout of communications equipment spaces.
- C. Comply with BICSI ITSIMM for installation of communications equipment spaces.
- D. Bundle, lace, and train conductors and cables to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.
- E. Coordinate layout and installation of communications equipment in racks and room. Coordinate service entrance configuration with service provider.
 1. Meet jointly with system providers, equipment suppliers, and Owner to exchange information and agree on details of equipment configurations and installation interfaces.
 2. Record agreements reached in meetings and distribute them to other participants.
 3. Adjust configurations and locations of distribution frames, cross-connects, and patch panels in equipment spaces to accommodate and optimize configuration and space requirements of telecommunications equipment.
 4. Adjust configurations and locations of equipment with distribution frames, cross-connects, and patch panels of cabling systems of other communications, electronic safety and security, and related systems that share space in equipment room.
- F. Coordinate location of power raceways and receptacles with locations of communications equipment requiring electrical power to operate.

3.2 GROUNDING

- A. Comply with NECA/BICSI 607.
- B. Install grounding according to BICSI ITSIMM, "Bonding, Grounding (Earthing) and Electrical Protection" Ch.
- C. Locate TGB to minimize length of bonding conductors. Fasten to wall, allowing at least 2 inches (50 mm) of clearance behind TGB. Connect TGB with a minimum No. 4 AWG

grounding electrode conductor from TGB to suitable electrical building ground. Connect rack TGB to near TGB or the TMGB.

1. Bond the shield of shielded cable to patch panel, and bond patch panel to TGB or TMGB.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Coordinate system components, wiring, and cabling complying with TIA-606-B. Comply with requirements in Section 270553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Comply with requirements in Section 099123 "Interior Painting" for painting backboards. For fire-resistant plywood, do not paint over manufacturer's label.
- C. Paint and label colors for equipment identification shall comply with TIA-606-B for Class 2 level of administration.
- D. Labels shall be machine printed. Type shall be 1/4 inch (6 mm) in height.

END OF SECTION 27 1116

SECTION 27 1323 - COMMUNICATIONS OPTICAL FIBER BACKBONE CABLING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. 9/125 micrometer single-mode, indoor-outdoor optical fiber cable (OS1).
 - 2. 9/125 micrometer single-mode, indoor-outdoor optical fiber cable (OS2).
 - 3. 9/125 micrometer single-mode, inside plant optical fiber cable (OS1).
 - 4. 9/125 micrometer single-mode, inside plant optical fiber cable (OS2).
 - 5. 9/125 micrometer single-mode, outside plant optical fiber cable (OS1).
 - 6. 9/125 micrometer single-mode, outside plant optical fiber cable (OS2).
 - 7. Optical fiber cable connecting hardware, patch panels, and cross-connects.
 - 8. Cabling identification products.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. BICSI: Building Industry Consulting Service International.
- B. Cross-Connect: A facility enabling the termination of cable elements and their interconnection or cross-connection.
- C. RCDD: Registered Communications Distribution Designer.

1.4 OPTICAL FIBER BACKBONE CABLING DESCRIPTION

- A. Optical fiber backbone cabling system shall provide interconnections between communications equipment rooms, main terminal space, and entrance facilities in the telecommunications cabling system structure. Cabling system consists of backbone cables, intermediate and main cross-connects, mechanical terminations, and patch cords or jumpers used for backbone-to-backbone cross-connection.
- B. Backbone cabling cross-connects may be located in communications equipment rooms or at entrance facilities. Bridged taps and splitters shall not be used as part of backbone cabling.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Reviewed and stamped by RCDD.

1. System Labeling Schedules: Electronic copy of labeling schedules, in software and format selected by Owner.
2. System Labeling Schedules: Electronic copy of labeling schedules that are part of the cabling and asset identification system of the software.
3. Cabling administration drawings and printouts.
4. Wiring diagrams to show typical wiring schematics including the following:
 - a. Telecommunications rooms plans and elevations.(to be coordinated with owner)
 - b. Telecommunications pathways.
 - c. Telecommunications system access points.
 - d. Telecommunications grounding system.
 - e. Cross-connects. (to be coordinated with owner)
 - f. Patch panels. (to be coordinated with owner)
 - g. Patch cords. (to be coordinated with owner)
5. Cross-connects and patch panels. Detail mounting assemblies, and show elevations and physical relationship between the installed components.

C. Optical fiber cable testing plan.

D. Sustainable Design Submittals:

1. Product Data: For each conductor and cable indicating lead content.
2. Environmental Product Declaration: For each product.
3. Health Product Declaration: For each product.
4. Sourcing of Raw Materials: Corporate sustainability report for each manufacturer.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For RCDD, installation supervisor, and field inspector.
- B. Source quality-control reports.
- C. Product Certificates: For each type of product.
- D. Field quality-control reports.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For optical fiber cable, splices, and connectors to include in maintenance manuals.

1.8 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 1. Plugs: Ten of each type.
 2. Jacks: Ten of each type.

1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Cabling Installer must have personnel certified by BICSI on staff.
 - 1. Layout Responsibility: Preparation of Shop Drawings and Cabling Administration Drawings by an RCDD.
 - 2. Installation Supervision: Installation shall be under the direct supervision of Technician, who shall be present at all times when Work of this Section is performed at Project site.
 - 3. Testing Supervisor: Currently certified by BICSI as an RCDD to supervise on-site testing.
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Testing agency must have personnel certified by BICSI on staff.
 - 1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by BICSI as an RCDD.

1.10 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Test cables upon receipt at Project site.
 - 1. Test optical fiber cable to determine the continuity of the strand end to end. Use optical loss test set.
 - 2. Test optical fiber cable while on reels. Use an optical time domain reflectometer to verify the cable length and locate cable defects, splices, and connector, including the loss value of each. Retain test data and include the record in maintenance data.

1.11 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install cables and connecting materials until wet work in spaces is complete and dry, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.

1.12 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of telecommunications pathways and cabling with Owner's telecommunications and LAN equipment and service suppliers.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Backbone cabling system shall comply with transmission standards in TIA-568-C.1, when tested according to test procedures of this standard.

- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
 - 2. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.
 - 3. Coordinate exact number, type and specifications of fiber optic cable with owner before purchasing. Coordination shall be done for outdoor fiber optic cable to be installed through the existing duct bank infrastructure from Yang Hall as well as for the backbone fiber optic cable from the manhole to the telecommunication closets.
- C. Telecommunications Pathways and Spaces: Comply with TIA-569-D.
- D. Grounding: Comply with TIA-607-B.
- 2.2 9/125 MICROMETER SINGLE-MODE, INDOOR-OUTDOOR OPTICAL FIBER CABLE (OS1)
 - A. Description: Single mode, 9/125-micrometer, 6 fibers (unless specified other by owner), single loose tube, armored optical fiber cable.
 - B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. 3M.
 - 2. Belden CDT Networking Division/NORDX.
 - 3. Corning Cable Systems.
 - 4. General Cable; General Cable Corporation.
 - C. Standards:
 - 1. Comply with TIA-492CAAA for detailed specifications.
 - 2. Comply with TIA-568-C.3 for performance specifications.
 - 3. Comply with ICEA S-104-696 for mechanical properties.
 - D. Armored cable shall be steel armored type.
 - E. Maximum Attenuation: 0.5 dB/km at 1310 nm; 0.5 dB/km at 1550 nm.
 - F. Jacket:
 - 1. Jacket Color: Yellow.
 - 2. Cable cordage jacket, fiber, unit, and group color shall be according to TIA-598-D.
 - 3. Imprinted with fiber count, fiber type, and aggregate length at regular intervals not to exceed 40 inches (1000 mm).
 - G. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with UL 444, UL 1651, and NFPA 70 for the following types:

1. Plenum Rated, Nonconductive: Type OFNP in listed plenum communications raceway.
 2. Plenum Rated, Armored (Conductive): Type OFCP or Type OFNP in listed plenum communications raceway.
- 2.3 9/125 MICROMETER, SINGLE-MODE, INDOOR-OUTDOOR OPTICAL FIBER CABLE (OS2)
- A. Description: Single mode, 9/125-micrometer, 6 (unless specified other by owner) fibers, single loose tube, armored optical fiber cable.
 - B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. 3M.
 2. Belden CDT Networking Division/NORDX.
 3. Berk-Tek Leviton; a Nexans/Leviton alliance.
 4. CommScope, Inc.
 - C. Standards:
 1. Comply with TIA-492CAAB for detailed specifications.
 2. Comply with TIA-568-C.3 for performance specifications.
 3. Comply with ICEA S-104-696 for mechanical properties.
 - D. Armored cable shall be steel armored type.
 - E. Maximum Attenuation: 0.4 dB/km at 1310 nm; 0.4 dB/km at 1550 nm.
 - F. Jacket:
 1. Jacket Color: Yellow.
 2. Cable cordage jacket, fiber, unit, and group color shall be according to TIA-598-D.
 3. Imprinted with fiber count, fiber type, and aggregate length at regular intervals not to exceed 40 inches (1000 mm).
 - G. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with UL 444, UL 1651, and NFPA 70 for the following types:
 1. Plenum Rated, Nonconductive: Type OFNP in listed plenum communications raceway.
 2. Riser Rated, Nonconductive: Type OFNP or Type OFNR in listed riser or plenum communications raceway.
- 2.4 9/125 MICROMETER, SINGLE-MODE, INSIDE PLANT OPTICAL FIBER CABLE (OS1)
- A. Description: Single mode, 9/125-micrometer, 6 (unless otherwise specified by owner) fibers, tight buffered, optical fiber cable.

- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. 3M.
 - 2. Belden CDT Networking Division/NORDX.
 - 3. Corning Cable Systems.
 - C. Standards:
 - 1. Comply with TIA-492CAAA for detailed specifications.
 - 2. Comply with TIA-568-C.3 for performance specifications.
 - 3. Comply with ICEA S-83-596 for mechanical properties.
 - D. Conductive cable shall be steel armored type.
 - E. Maximum Attenuation: 1.0 dB/km at 1310 nm; 1.0 dB/km at 1550 nm.
 - F. Jacket:
 - 1. Jacket Color: Yellow.
 - 2. Cable cordage jacket, fiber, unit, and group color shall be according to TIA-598-D.
 - 3. Imprinted with fiber count, fiber type, and aggregate length at regular intervals not to exceed 40 inches (1000 mm).
 - G. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with UL 444, UL 1651, and NFPA 70 for the following types:
 - 1. Plenum Rated, Nonconductive: Type OFNP in listed plenum communications raceway.
 - 2. Plenum Rated, Nonconductive: Type OFNP, complying with NFPA 262; Type OFNP in listed plenum communications raceway; or Type OFN, Type OFNG, Type OFNP, or Type OFNR in metallic conduit.
- 2.5 9/125 MICROMETER SINGLE-MODE, INSIDE PLANT OPTICAL FIBER CABLE (OS2)
- A. Description: Single mode, 9/125-micrometer, 6 (unless otherwise specified by owner) fibers, single loose tube, optical fiber cable.
 - B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. 3M.
 - 2. Belden CDT Networking Division/NORDX.
 - 3. General Cable; General Cable Corporation.
 - C. Standards:
 - 1. Comply with TIA-492CAAB for detailed specifications.
 - 2. Comply with TIA-568-C.3 for performance specifications.

3. Comply with ICEA S-83-596 for mechanical properties.
 - D. Maximum Attenuation: 0.4 dB/km at 1310 nm; 0.4 dB/km at 1550 nm.
 - E. Jacket:
 1. Jacket Color: Yellow.
 2. Cable cordage jacket, fiber, unit, and group color shall be according to TIA-598-D.
 3. Imprinted with fiber count, fiber type, and aggregate length at regular intervals not to exceed 40 inches (1000 mm).
 - F. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with UL 444, UL 1651, and NFPA 70 for the following types:
 1. Plenum Rated, Nonconductive: Type OFNP in listed plenum communications raceway.
 2. Riser Rated, Nonconductive: Type OFNP or Type OFNR in listed riser or plenum communications raceway.
- 2.6 9/125 MICROMETER SINGLE-MODE, OUTSIDE PLANT OPTICAL FIBER CABLE (OS1)
- A. Description: Single mode, 9/125-micrometer, 6 (unless otherwise specified by owner) fibers, tight buffered, optical fiber cable.
 - B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. 3M.
 2. Belden CDT Networking Division/NORDX.
 3. Berk-Tek Leviton; a Nexans/Leviton alliance.
 4. CommScope, Inc.
 - C. Standards:
 1. Comply with TIA-492CAAA for detailed specifications.
 2. Comply with TIA-568-C.3 for performance specifications.
 3. Comply with ICEA S-87-640 for mechanical properties.
 - D. Maximum Attenuation: 0.5 dB/km at 1310 nm; 0.5 dB/km at 1550 nm.
 - E. Jacket:
 1. Jacket Color: Black.
 2. Cable cordage jacket, fiber, unit, and group color shall be according to TIA-598-D.
 3. Imprinted with fiber count, fiber type, and aggregate length at regular intervals not to exceed 40 inches (1000 mm).

2.7 9/125 MICROMETER SINGLE-MODE, OUTSIDE PLANT OPTICAL FIBER CABLE (OS2)

- A. Description: Single mode, 9/125-micrometer, 6 (unless otherwise specified by owner) fibers, single loose tube, optical fiber cable.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. 3M.
 - 2. Belden CDT Networking Division/NORDX.
 - 3. CommScope, Inc.
 - 4. Corning Cable Systems.
- C. Standards:
 - 1. Comply with TIA-492CAAB for detailed specifications.
 - 2. Comply with TIA-568-C.3 for performance specifications.
 - 3. Comply with ICEA S-87-640 for mechanical properties.
- D. Maximum Attenuation: 0.4 dB/km at 1310 nm; 0.4 dB/km at 1550 nm.
- E. Jacket:
 - 1. Jacket Color: Black.
 - 2. Cable cordage jacket, fiber, unit, and group color shall be according to TIA-598-D.
 - 3. Imprinted with fiber count, fiber type, and aggregate length at regular intervals not to exceed 40 inches (1000 mm).

2.8 OPTICAL FIBER CABLE HARDWARE

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - 1. American Technology Systems Industries, Inc.
 - 2. Belden CDT Networking Division/NORDX.
 - 3. Berk-Tek Leviton; a Nexans/Leviton alliance.
 - 4. Corning Cable Systems.
 - 5. Hubbell Premise Wiring.
- B. Standards:
 - 1. Comply with Fiber Optic Connector Intermateability Standard (FOCIS) specifications of the TIA-604 series.
 - 2. Comply with TIA-568-C.3.
- C. Cross-Connects and Patch Panels: Modular panels housing multiple-numbered, duplex cable connectors.

1. Number of Connectors per Field: One for each fiber of cable or cables assigned to field, plus spares and blank positions adequate to suit specified expansion criteria.
- D. Patch Cords: Factory-made, dual-fiber cables in 36-inch (900-mm) lengths.
- E. Connector Type: Type SC complying with TIA-604-3-B unless otherwise specified by owner.
- F. Plugs and Plug Assemblies:
 1. Male; color-coded modular telecommunications connector designed for termination of a single optical fiber cable.
 2. Insertion loss not more than 0.25 dB.
 3. Marked to indicate transmission performance.
- G. Jacks and Jack Assemblies:
 1. Female; quick-connect, simplex and duplex; fixed telecommunications connector designed for termination of a single optical fiber cable.
 2. Insertion loss not more than 0.25 dB.
 3. Marked to indicate transmission performance.
 4. Designed to snap-in to a patch panel or faceplate.

2.9 GROUNDING

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 270526 "Grounding and Bonding for Communications Systems" for grounding conductors and connectors.
- B. Comply with TIA-607-B.

2.10 IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

- A. Comply with TIA-606-B and UL 969 for a system of labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers.

2.11 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to evaluate cables.
- B. Factory test multimode optical fiber cables according to TIA-526-14-B and TIA-568-C.3.
- C. Factory test pre-terminated optical fiber cable assemblies according to TIA-526-14-B and TIA-568-C.3.
- D. Cable will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 ENTRANCE FACILITIES

- A. Coordinate backbone cabling with the protectors and demarcation point provided by communications service provider.

3.2 WIRING METHODS

- A. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways and cable trays except within consoles, cabinets, desks, and counters. Conceal raceway and cables except in unfinished spaces.
 - 1. Install plenum cable in environmental air spaces, including plenum ceilings.
 - 2. Comply with requirements for pathways specified in Section 270528 "Pathways for Communications Systems."
- B. Wiring Method: Conceal conductors and cables in accessible ceilings, walls, and floors where possible.
- C. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train cables within enclosures. Connect to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Provide and use lacing bars and distribution spools.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF OPTICAL FIBER BACKBONE CABLES

- A. Comply with NECA 1, NECA 301, and NECA/BICSI 568.
- B. General Requirements for Optical Fiber Cabling Installation:
 - 1. Comply with TIA-568-C.1 and TIA-568-C.3.
 - 2. Comply with BICSI ITSIMM, Ch. 6, "Cable Termination Practices."
 - 3. Terminate all cables; no cable shall contain unterminated elements. Make terminations only at indicated outlets, terminals, cross-connects, and patch panels.
 - 4. Cables may not be spliced. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding 30 inches (760 mm) and not more than 6 inches (150 mm) from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.
 - 5. Install lacing bars to restrain cables, to prevent straining connections, and to prevent bending cables to smaller radii than minimums recommended by manufacturer.
 - 6. Bundle, lace, and train cable to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii, but not less than radii specified in BICSI ITSIMM, "Cabling Termination Practices" Chapter. Use lacing bars and distribution spools.
 - 7. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Do not splice cable between termination, tap, or junction points. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation and replace it with new cable.
 - 8. Cold-Weather Installation: Bring cable to room temperature before dereeling. Heat lamps shall not be used for heating.

9. In the communications equipment room, provide a 10-foot- (3-m-) long service loop on each end of cable.
10. Pulling Cable: Comply with BICSI ITSIMM, Ch. 4, "Pulling Cable." Monitor cable pull tensions.
11. Cable may be terminated on connecting hardware that is rack or cabinet mounted.

C. Open-Cable Installation:

1. Install cabling with horizontal and vertical cable guides in telecommunications spaces with terminating hardware and interconnection equipment.
2. Cable shall not be run through structural members or in contact with pipes, ducts, or other potentially damaging items.

3.4 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."
- B. Comply with TIA-569-D, Annex A, "Firestopping."
- C. Comply with BICSI ITSIMM, "Firestopping" Chapter.

3.5 GROUNDING

- A. Install grounding according to BICSI ITSIMM, "Grounding (Earthing), Bonding, and Electrical Protection" Chapter.
- B. Comply with TIA-607-B and NECA/BICSI-607.
- C. Locate grounding bus bar to minimize the length of bonding conductors. Fasten to wall allowing at least 2-inch (50-mm) clearance behind the grounding bus bar. Connect grounding bus bar with a minimum No. 4 AWG grounding electrode conductor from grounding bus bar to suitable electrical building ground.
- D. Bond metallic equipment to the grounding bus bar, using not smaller than No. 6 AWG equipment grounding conductor.

3.6 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, and cabling complying with TIA-606-B. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 270553 "Identification for Communications Systems."
 1. Administration Class: Class 2.
 2. Color-code cross-connect fields and apply colors to voice and data service backboards, connections, covers, and labels.
- B. Paint and label colors for equipment identification shall comply with TIA-606-B for Class 2 level of administration.

- C. Comply with requirements in Section 271523 "Communications Optical Fiber Horizontal Cabling" for cable and asset management software.
- D. Cable Schedule: Install in a prominent location in each equipment room and wiring closet. List incoming and outgoing cables and their designations, origins, and destinations. Protect with rigid frame and clear plastic cover. Furnish an electronic copy of final comprehensive schedules for Project.
- E. Cabling Administration Drawings: Show building floor plans with cabling administration-point labeling. Identify labeling convention and show labels for telecommunications closets, entrance pathways and cables, terminal hardware and positions, horizontal cables, work areas and workstation terminal positions, grounding buses and pathways, and equipment grounding conductors.
- F. Cable and Wire Identification:
 - 1. Label each cable within 4 inches (100 mm) of each termination and tap, where it is accessible in a cabinet or junction or outlet box, and elsewhere as indicated.
 - 2. Each wire connected to building-mounted devices is not required to be numbered at device if color of wire is consistent with associated wire connected and numbered within panel or cabinet.
 - 3. Exposed Cables and Cables in Cable Trays and Wire Troughs: Label each cable at intervals not exceeding 15 feet (4.5 m).
 - 4. Label each unit and field within distribution racks and frames.
 - 5. Identification within Connector Fields in Equipment Rooms and Wiring Closets: Label each connector and each discrete unit of cable-terminating and connecting hardware. Where similar jacks and plugs are used for both voice and data communication cabling, use a different color for jacks and plugs of each service.
- G. Labels shall be preprinted or computer-printed type with printing area and font color that contrasts with cable jacket color but still complies with requirements in TIA 606-B, for the following:
 - 1. Flexible vinyl or polyester that flexes as cables are bent.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- C. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- D. Perform tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative.
- E. Tests and Inspections:

1. Visually inspect optical fiber jacket materials for NRTL certification markings. Inspect cabling terminations in communications equipment rooms for compliance with color-coding for pin assignments, and inspect cabling connections for compliance with TIA-568-C.1.
 2. Visually inspect cable placement, cable termination, grounding and bonding, equipment and patch cords, and labeling of all components.
 3. Optical Fiber Cable Tests:
 - a. Test instruments shall meet or exceed applicable requirements in TIA-568-C.1. Use only test cords and adapters that are qualified by test equipment manufacturer for channel or link test configuration.
 - b. Link End-to-End Attenuation Tests:
 - 1) Horizontal and multimode backbone link measurements: Test at 850 or 1300 nm in one direction according to TIA-526-14-B, Method B, One Reference Jumper.
 - 2) Attenuation test results for backbone links shall be less than 2.0 dB. Attenuation test results shall be less than those calculated according to equation in TIA-568-C.1.
- F. Data for each measurement shall be documented. Data for submittals shall be printed in a summary report that is formatted similar to Table 10.1 in BICSI TDMM, or transferred from the instrument to the computer, saved as text files, and printed and submitted.
- G. Remove and replace cabling where test results indicate that it does not comply with specified requirements.
- H. End-to-end cabling will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- I. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 27 1323

SECTION 27 1513 - COMMUNICATIONS COPPER HORIZONTAL CABLING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Category 6 twisted pair cable.
 - 2. Cabling identification products.
 - 3. Grounding provisions for twisted pair cable.
 - 4. Source quality control requirements for twisted pair cable.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 270513 "Conductors and Cables for Communications Systems" for data cabling associated with system panels and devices.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Cross-Connect: A facility enabling the termination of cable elements and their interconnection or cross-connection.
- B. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.
- C. FTP: Shielded twisted pair.
- D. F/FTP: Overall foil screened cable with foil screened twisted pair.
- E. F/UTP: Overall foil screened cable with unscreened twisted pair.
- F. IDC: Insulation displacement connector.
- G. LAN: Local area network.
- H. Jack: Also commonly called an "outlet," it is the fixed, female connector.
- I. Plug: Also commonly called a "connector," it is the removable, male telecommunications connector.
- J. RCDD: Registered Communications Distribution Designer.
- K. Screen: A metallic layer, either a foil or braid, placed around a pair or group of conductors.

- L. Shield: A metallic layer, either a foil or braid, placed around a pair or group of conductors.
- M. S/FTP: Overall braid screened cable with foil screened twisted pair.
- N. S/UTP: Overall braid screened cable with unscreened twisted pairs.
- O. UTP: Unscreened (unshielded) twisted pair.

1.4 COPPER HORIZONTAL CABLING DESCRIPTION

- A. Horizontal cable cabling system shall provide interconnections between Distributor A, Distributor B, or Distributor C, and the equipment outlet, otherwise known as "Cabling Subsystem 1," in the telecommunications cabling system structure. Cabling system consists of horizontal cables, intermediate and main cross-connects, mechanical terminations, and patch cords or jumpers used for horizontal-to-horizontal cross-connection.
 - 1. Horizontal cabling shall contain no more than one transition point or consolidation point between the horizontal cross-connect and the telecommunications equipment outlet.
 - 2. Bridged taps and splices shall not be installed in the horizontal cabling.
- B. The maximum allowable horizontal cable length is 295 feet (90 m). This maximum allowable length does not include an allowance for the length of 16 feet (4.9 m) to the workstation equipment or in the horizontal cross-connect.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Reviewed and stamped by RCDD.
 - 1. System Labeling Schedules: Electronic copy of labeling schedules, in software and format selected by Owner.
 - 2. System Labeling Schedules: Electronic copy of labeling schedules that are part of the cabling and asset identification system of the software.
 - 3. Cabling administration Drawings and printouts.
 - 4. Wiring diagrams and installation details of telecommunications equipment, to show location and layout of telecommunications equipment, including the following:
 - a. Telecommunications rooms plans and elevations. (coordinate with owner)
 - b. Telecommunications pathways.
 - c. Telecommunications system access points.
 - d. Telecommunications grounding system.
 - e. Telecommunications conductor drop locations.
 - f. Typical telecommunications details.
 - g. Mechanical, electrical, and plumbing systems.
- C. Twisted pair cable testing plan.

D. Sustainable Design Submittals:

1. Product Data: For each conductor and cable indicating lead content.
2. Environmental Product Declaration: For each product.
3. Health Product Declaration: For each product.
4. Sourcing of Raw Materials: Corporate sustainability report for each manufacturer.

E. Samples: For telecommunications jacks and plugs.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For RCDD installation supervisor, and field inspector.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of product.
- C. Source quality-control reports.
- D. Field quality-control reports.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For splices and connectors to include in maintenance manuals.
- B. Software and Firmware Operational Documentation:
 1. Software operating and upgrade manuals.
 2. Program Software Backup: On USB media or compact disk, complete with data files.
 3. Device address list.
 4. Printout of software application and graphic screens.

1.8 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 1. Connecting Blocks: One of each type.
 2. Faceplates: One of each type.
 3. Jacks: Ten of each type.
 4. Plugs: Ten of each type.

1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Cabling Installer must have personnel certified by BICSI on staff.
 1. Layout Responsibility: Preparation of Shop Drawings and cabling administration Drawings by an RCDD.

2. Installation Supervision: Installation shall be under the direct supervision of Technician, who shall be present at all times when Work of this Section is performed at Project site.
 3. Testing Supervisor: Currently certified by BICSI as an RCDD to supervise on-site testing.
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Testing agency must have personnel certified by BICSI on staff.
1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by BICSI as an RCDD.
- 1.10 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
- A. Test cables upon receipt at Project site.
1. Test each pair of twisted pair cable for open and short circuits.
- 1.11 PROJECT CONDITIONS
- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install cables and connecting materials until wet work in spaces is complete and dry, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
- 1.12 COORDINATION
- A. Coordinate layout and installation of telecommunications pathways and cabling with Owner's telecommunications and LAN equipment and service suppliers.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Horizontal cabling system shall comply with transmission standards in TIA-568-C.1, when tested according to test procedures of this standard.
- B. Telecommunications Pathways and Spaces: Comply with TIA-569-D.
- C. Grounding: Comply with TIA-607-B.

2.2 GENERAL CABLE CHARACTERISTICS

- A. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with the applicable standard and NFPA 70 for the following types:
1. Communications, Plenum Rated: Type CMP complying with UL 1685.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E 84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
2. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.

C. RoHS compliant.

2.3 CATEGORY 6 TWISTED PAIR CABLE

- A. Description: Four-pair, balanced-twisted pair cable, with internal spline, certified to meet transmission characteristics of Category 6 cable at frequencies up to 250MHz.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. 3M.
 2. AMP NETCONNECT; a TE Connectivity Ltd. company.
 3. Belden CDT Networking Division/NORDX.
 4. Berk-Tek Leviton; a Nexans/Leviton alliance.
- C. Standard: Comply with NEMA WC 66/ICEA S-116-732 and TIA-568-C.2 for Category 6 cables.
- D. Conductors: 100-ohm, 23 AWG solid copper.
1. Lead Content: Less than 300 parts per million.
- E. Shielding/Screening: Unshielded twisted pairs (UTP).
- F. Cable Rating: Plenum.
- G. Jacket: Blue thermoplastic.

2.4 TWISTED PAIR CABLE HARDWARE

- A. Description: Hardware designed to connect, splice, and terminate twisted pair copper communications cable.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. 3M.
 2. American Technology Systems Industries, Inc.
 3. AMP NETCONNECT; a TE Connectivity Ltd. company.
 4. Belden CDT Networking Division/NORDX.
 5. Hubbell Premise Wiring.
- C. General Requirements for Twisted Pair Cable Hardware:
1. Comply with the performance requirements of Category 6.
 2. Comply with TIA-568-C.2, IDC type, with modules designed for punch-down caps or tools.

3. Cables shall be terminated with connecting hardware of same category or higher.
- D. Source Limitations: Obtain twisted pair cable hardware from single source from single manufacturer.]
- E. Connecting Blocks:
 1. 110-style IDC for Category 6.
 2. Provide blocks for the number of cables terminated on the block, plus 25 percent spare, integral with connector bodies, including plugs and jacks where indicated.
- F. Cross-Connect: Modular array of connecting blocks arranged to terminate building cables and permit interconnection between cables.
 1. Number of Terminals per Field: One for each conductor in assigned cables.
- G. Patch Panel: Modular panels housing numbered jack units with IDC-type connectors at each jack location for permanent termination of pair groups of installed cables.
 1. Features:
 - a. Universal T568A and T568B wiring labels.
 - b. Labeling areas adjacent to conductors.
 - c. Replaceable connectors.
 - d. 24 or 48 ports.
 2. Construction: 16-gauge steel and mountable on 19-inch (483 mm) equipment racks.
 3. Number of Jacks per Field: One for each four-pair cable indicated, plus spares and blank positions adequate to suit specified expansion criteria.
- H. Patch Cords: Factory-made, four-pair cables in [36-inch (900-mm)] lengths; terminated with an eight-position modular plug at each end.
 1. Patch cords shall have bend-relief-compliant boots and color-coded icons to ensure performance. Patch cords shall have latch guards to protect against snagging.
 2. Patch cords shall have color-coded boots for circuit identification.
- I. Plugs and Plug Assemblies:
 1. Male; eight position; color-coded modular telecommunications connector designed for termination of a single four-pair, 100-ohm, unshielded or shielded twisted pair cable.
 2. Standard: Comply with TIA-568-C.2.
 3. Marked to indicate transmission performance.
- J. Jacks and Jack Assemblies:
 1. Female; eight position; modular; fixed telecommunications connector designed for termination of a single four-pair, 100-ohm, unshielded or shielded twisted pair cable.

2. Designed to snap-in to a patch panel or faceplate.
3. Standard: Comply with TIA-568-C.2.
4. Marked to indicate transmission performance.

K. Faceplate:

1. Two port, vertical single gang faceplates designed to mount to single gang wall boxes.
2. Plastic Faceplate: High-impact plastic. Coordinate color with Section 262726 "Wiring Devices."
3. Metal Faceplate: Brass complying with requirements in Section 262726 "Wiring Devices."
4. For use with snap-in jacks accommodating any combination of twisted pair, optical fiber, and coaxial work area cords.
 - a. Flush mounting jacks, positioning the cord at a 45-degree angle.

L. Legend:

1. Machine printed, in the field, using adhesive-tape label.
2. Snap-in, clear-label covers and machine-printed paper inserts.

2.5 IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

- A. Comply with TIA-606-B and UL 969 for a system of labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers.

2.6 GROUNDING

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 270526 "Grounding and Bonding for Communications Systems" for grounding conductors and connectors.
- B. Comply with TIA-607-B.

2.7 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to evaluate cables.
- B. Factory test cables on reels according to TIA-568-C.1.
- C. Factory test twisted pair cables according to TIA-568-C.2.
- D. Cable will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 WIRING METHODS

- A. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways and cable trays, except within consoles, cabinets, desks, and counters. Conceal raceway and cables, except in unfinished spaces.
 - 1. Install plenum cable in environmental air spaces, including plenum ceilings.
 - 2. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Section 270528 "Pathways for Communications Systems."
- B. Wiring Method: Conceal conductors and cables in accessible ceilings, walls, and floors where possible.
- C. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train cables within enclosures. Connect to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Provide and use lacing bars and distribution spools. Install conductors parallel with or at right angles to sides and back of enclosure.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF PATHWAYS

- A. Comply with requirements for demarcation point, cabinets, and racks specified in Section 271100 "Communications Equipment Room Fittings."
- B. Comply with Section 270528 "Pathways for Communications Systems."
- C. Comply with Section 270529 "Hangers and Supports for Communications Systems."
- D. Comply with Section 270536 "Cable Trays for Communications Systems."
- E. Drawings indicate general arrangement of pathways and fittings.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF TWISTED-PAIR HORIZONTAL CABLES

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA/BICSI 568.
- B. General Requirements for Cabling:
 - 1. Comply with TIA-568-C.0, TIA-568-C.1, and TIA-568-C.2.
 - 2. Comply with BICSI's "Information Transport Systems Installation Methods Manual (ITSIMM), Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems," "Cable Termination Practices" Section.
 - 3. Install 110-style IDC termination hardware unless otherwise indicated.
 - 4. Do not untwist twisted pair cables more than 1/2 inch (12 mm) from the point of termination to maintain cable geometry.
 - 5. Terminate all conductors; no cable shall contain unterminated elements. Make terminations only at indicated outlets, terminals, cross-connects, and patch panels.

6. Consolidation points may be used only for making a direct connection to equipment outlets:
 - a. Do not use consolidation point as a cross-connect point, as a patch connection, or for direct connection to workstation equipment.
 - b. Locate consolidation points for twisted-pair cables at least 49 feet (15 m) from communications equipment room.
 7. Cables may not be spliced. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding 30 inches (760 mm) and not more than 6 inches (150 mm) from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.
 8. Install lacing bars to restrain cables, prevent straining connections, and prevent bending cables to smaller radii than minimums recommended by manufacturer.
 9. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii, but not less than radii specified in BICSI Information Transport Systems Installation Methods Manual, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems," "Cable Termination Practices" Section. Use lacing bars and distribution spools.
 10. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Do not splice cable between termination, tap, or junction points. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation, and replace it with new cable.
 11. Cold-Weather Installation: Bring cable to room temperature before dereeling. Heat lamps shall not be used for heating.
 12. In the communications equipment room, install a 10-foot- (3-m-) long service loop on each end of cable.
 13. Pulling Cable: Comply with BICSI Information Transport Systems Installation Methods Manual, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems," "Pulling and Installing Cable" Section. Monitor cable pull tensions.
- C. Group connecting hardware for cables into separate logical fields.
- D. Separation from EMI Sources:
1. Comply with recommendations from BICSI's "Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual" and TIA-569-D for separating unshielded copper communication cable from potential EMI sources, including electrical power lines and equipment.
 2. Separation between open communications cables or cables in nonmetallic raceways and unshielded power conductors and electrical equipment shall be as follows:
 - a. Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of 5 inches (127 mm).
 - b. Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 12 inches (300 mm).
 - c. Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 24 inches (600 mm).
 3. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways and unshielded power lines or electrical equipment shall be as follows:
 - a. Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of 2-1/2 inches (64 mm).

- b. Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches (150 mm).
 - c. Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 12 inches (300 mm).
- 4. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways, power lines, and electrical equipment located in grounded metallic conduits or enclosures shall be as follows:
 - a. Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: No requirement.
 - b. Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 3 inches (76 mm).
 - c. Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches (150 mm).
- 5. Separation between Communications Cables and Electrical Motors and Transformers, 5 kVA or HP and Larger: A minimum of 48 inches (1200 mm).
- 6. Separation between Communications Cables and Fluorescent Fixtures: A minimum of 5 inches (127 mm).

3.4 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."
- B. Comply with TIA-569-D, Annex A, "Firestopping."
- C. Comply with "Firestopping Systems" Article in BICSI's "Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual."

3.5 GROUNDING

- A. Install grounding according to the "Grounding, Bonding, and Electrical Protection" chapter in BICSI's "Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual."
- B. Comply with TIA-607-B and NECA/BICSI-607.
- C. Locate grounding bus bar to minimize the length of bonding conductors. Fasten to wall, allowing at least a 2-inch (50-mm) clearance behind the grounding bus bar. Connect grounding bus bar to suitable electrical building ground, using a minimum No. 4 AWG grounding electrode conductor.
- D. Bond metallic equipment to the grounding bus bar, using not smaller than a No. 6 AWG equipment grounding conductor.

3.6 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, and cabling complying with TIA-606-B. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 270553 "Identification for Communications Systems."
- 1. Administration Class: Class 2.

2. Color-code cross-connect fields and apply colors to voice and data service backboards, connections, covers, and labels.
- B. Paint and label colors for equipment identification shall comply with TIA-606-B for Class 2 level of administration.
- C. Cable Schedule: Install in a prominent location in each equipment room and wiring closet. List incoming and outgoing cables and their designations, origins, and destinations. Protect with rigid frame and clear plastic cover. Furnish an electronic copy of final comprehensive schedules for Project.
- D. Cabling Administration Drawings: Show building floor plans with cabling administration-point labeling. Identify labeling convention and show labels for telecommunications closets, terminal hardware and positions, horizontal cables, work areas and workstation terminal positions, grounding buses and pathways, and equipment grounding conductors.
- E. Cable and Wire Identification:
 1. Label each cable within 4 inches (100 mm) of each termination and tap, where it is accessible in a cabinet or junction or outlet box, and elsewhere as indicated.
 2. Each wire connected to building-mounted devices is not required to be numbered at the device if wire color is consistent with associated wire connected and numbered within panel or cabinet.
 3. Exposed Cables and Cables in Cable Trays and Wire Troughs: Label each cable at intervals not exceeding 15 feet (4.5 m).
 4. Label each terminal strip, and screw terminal in each cabinet, rack, or panel.
 - a. Individually number wiring conductors connected to terminal strips, and identify each cable or wiring group, extended from a panel or cabinet to a building-mounted device, with the name and number of a particular device.
 - b. Label each unit and field within distribution racks and frames.
 5. Identification within Connector Fields in Equipment Rooms and Wiring Closets: Label each connector and each discrete unit of cable-terminating and -connecting hardware. Where similar jacks and plugs are used for both voice and data communication cabling, use a different color for jacks and plugs of each service.
- F. Labels shall be preprinted or computer-printed type, with a printing area and font color that contrast with cable jacket color but still comply with TIA-606-B requirements for the following:
 1. Cables use flexible vinyl or polyester that flexes as cables are bent.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

- C. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- D. Perform tests and inspections.
- E. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Visually inspect jacket materials for NRTL certification markings. Inspect cabling terminations in communications equipment rooms for compliance with color-coding for pin assignments, and inspect cabling connections for compliance with TIA-568-C.1.
 - 2. Visually inspect cable placement, cable termination, grounding and bonding, equipment and patch cords, and labeling of all components.
 - 3. Test twisted pair cabling for DC loop resistance, shorts, opens, intermittent faults, and polarity between conductors. Test operation of shorting bars in connection blocks. Test cables after termination but not cross-connection.
 - a. Test instruments shall meet or exceed applicable requirements in TIA-568-C.2. Perform tests with a tester that complies with performance requirements in "Test Instruments (Normative)" Annex, complying with measurement accuracy specified in "Measurement Accuracy (Informative)" Annex. Use only test cords and adapters that are qualified by test equipment manufacturer for channel or link test configuration.
- F. Data for each measurement shall be documented. Data for submittals shall be printed in a summary report that is formatted similarly to Table 10.1 in BICSI's "Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual," or shall be transferred from the instrument to the computer, saved as text files, printed, and submitted.
- G. Remove and replace cabling where test results indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
- H. End-to-end cabling will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- I. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 27 1513

SECTION 273000 – TWO-WAY COMMUNICATION SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Base Station
 - 2. Call Boxes
 - 3. Signage
 - 4. Battery backup power unit.
 - 5. Conductors and cables.
 - 6. Pathways.
- B. The system will consist of Call Boxes located on all floors above and below the first floor, next to elevator landing on each floor. All call boxes will be connected via a Cisco switch to the Campus Police Department Existing Base Station.
- C. The emergency communication hardware shall comply with the Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA). The Call Box shall have the ability to be programmed with up to 5 emergency phone numbers. Upon activation of the emergency push button, a call will be automatically placed to the Base Station. If no one answers at the Base Station, the Call Box must dial a secondary location outside the building to activate two-way off-site person to person voice communication via landline, cellular device or IP.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include operation manual.
- B. Shop Drawings: Power, detail wiring schematics and cabling.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For base station, call boxes and signage, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For two-way communication systems to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved for installation of units required for this Project.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - 1. GAI-Tronics – Red Alert Surface Mount Emergency Phone Box: (Basis of Design – Product accepted by Owner) Any changes shall be written approved by owner before bid and order.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain two-way communication system from single source from single manufacturer.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- D. Comply with NFPA 70.

2.2 CONSTRUCTION

- A. The Call Boxes must be in full compliance with ADA requirements. Call Boxes require a hands-free speakerphone with an LED to indicate status of call.
- B. The Call Boxes must allow the programming in of a specific location message of the Call Box. This allows rescue personnel to know the location of the activated Call Box.
- C. The Call Boxes are to be located no higher than 48” front reach, or 54” side reach to the center of the push button above ground level to ensure conformance with the ADA requirements.
- D. The Call Boxes must have a Braille face plate to ensure conformance with the ADA requirements.

- E. The Call Boxes is to be mounted on a wall, surface mounted, unless directed otherwise by owner.
- F. The Cisco switch shall be provided by owner.

2.3 ELECTRICAL

- A. Call Boxes are to be powered over Ethernet (POE).
- B. Wiring from the switch to the Call Boxes shall be CAT6, plenum rated..
- C. Call Boxes must have built-in battery backup and include a rechargeable battery to maintain backup power for a minimum of 4 hours of talk time.
- D. System shall be in compliance with all state and local electrical codes.

2.4 COMMUNICATIONS

- A. The Call Boxes shall have an ADA compliant and vandal resistant speakerphone.
- B. The Call Boxes shall be hands-free and be a push-button-once to talk system. Once the button has been pushed, the Call Box will call the Base Station. If no answer at the Base Station, it will automatically call pre-programmed emergency numbers. The Call Box must be capable of being programmed with up to 5 emergency numbers.
- C. Call Box shall have location message capability. Call Box must have a minimum 18 second recordable message capability, programmable to play 1 or 2 times. Call Box shall notify called party of the location of the call upon being received at the emergency dispatch center.
- D. Call Box shall be capable of allowing the called party to replay the location message if necessary to ensure an understanding of the caller location.
- E. Once call has been made (button pushed), the call can only be terminated by the called party.
- F. Call Box must have a red LED that will light up upon push of the button. The light shall be a solid color when the Call Box is activated and will flash when call has been answered.
- G. The Call Box must be capable of being programmed and re-programmed on-site and remotely.
- H. Standard Call Box features:
 - 1. Five number programming.
 - 2. Operating temperature of between -40°F to +150°F (-40° to + 65° C). 6.9.3 Programmable passwords.
 - 3. On-site or remote programmable.
 - 4. EEPROM memory to protect programming.

2.5 SIGNAGE

- A. System shall consist of a minimum of one "location" and "instruction" sign to clearly indicate location of designated area. A tactile sign with raised letter and Braille shall be located at each area.

2.6 GRAPHICS

- A. Base Station must include wording identifying the location of each Call Box and light an LED when a particular Call Box has been activated.
- B. Call Box wording must include "Emergency Phone", International Phone Symbol and raised Braille lettering.

2.7 WARRANTY

- A. The Base Station and Call Boxes shall be warranted for a period of three years.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 WIRING METHODS

- A. Wiring Method: Install cables in pathways. Conceal pathway and cables except in unfinished spaces.
- B. Wiring Method: Conceal conductors and cables in accessible ceilings, walls, and floors where possible.
- C. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train cables to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Provide and use lacing bars and distribution spools.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF PATHWAYS

- A. Comply with requirements in other section for "Pathways for Communications Systems." for installation of conduits and wireways.
- B. Install manufactured conduit sweeps and long-radius elbows whenever possible.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF CABLES

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. General Cable Installation Requirements:

1. Terminate conductors; no cable shall contain unterminated elements. Make terminations only at outlets and terminals.
2. Splices, Taps, and Terminations: Arrange on numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes; terminal cabinets; and equipment enclosures. Cables may not be spliced.
3. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding 30 inches (760 mm) and not more than 6 inches (150 mm) from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.
4. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.
5. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Do not splice cable between termination, tap, or junction points. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation and replace it with new cable.
6. Cold-Weather Installation: Bring cable to room temperature before dereeling. Heat lamps shall not be used.

C. Open-Cable Installation:

1. Install cabling with horizontal and vertical cable guides in spaces with terminating hardware and interconnection equipment.
2. Cable shall not be run through structural members or be in contact with pipes, ducts, or other potentially damaging items.

D. Separation of Wires: Separate communication, and power wiring runs. Install in separate pathways or, where exposed or in same enclosure, separate conductors at least 12 inches (300 mm) apart for communication and adjacent parallel power wiring. Separate other communication equipment conductors as recommended by equipment manufacturer.

3.4 INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of system components and suspension system with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, fire-suppression system, and partition assemblies.
- B. Match input and output impedances and signal levels at signal interfaces. Provide matching networks where required.
- C. Identification of Conductors and Cables: Color-code conductors and apply wire and cable marking tape to designate wires and cables so they identify media in coordination with system wiring diagrams.

3.5 GROUNDING

- A. Ground cable shields and equipment to eliminate shock hazard and to minimize ground loops, common-mode returns, noise pickup, cross talk, and other impairments.

- B. Signal Ground Terminal: Locate at main equipment cabinet. Isolate from power system and equipment grounding.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Schedule tests with at least seven days' advance notice of test performance.
 - 2. After installing two-way communication system and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
 - 3. Operational Test: Perform tests that include originating program and page messages at call station program inputs, and other inputs. Verify proper routing and volume levels and that system is free of noise and distortion.
- C. Inspection: Verify that units and controls are properly labeled and interconnecting wires and terminals are identified. Prepare a list of final tap settings of paging speaker-line matching transformers.
- D. Two-way communication system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 273000

SECTION 28 1500 - ACCESS CONTROL HARDWARE DEVICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Card readers, credential cards, and keypads
 - 2. Cables
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 281300 "Access Control System Software and Database Management" for control and monitoring applications, workstations, and interfaces.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Credential: Data assigned to an entity and used to identify that entity.
- B. DTS: Digital Termination Service. A microwave-based, line-of-sight communication provided directly to the end user.
- C. Identifier: A credential card; keypad personal identification number; or code, biometric characteristic, or other unique identification entered as data into the entry-control database for the purpose of identifying an individual. Where this term is presented with an initial capital letter, this definition applies.
- D. Location: A Location on the network having a PC-to-controller communications link, with additional controllers at the Location connected to the PC-to-controller link with a TIA 485-A communications loop. Where this term is presented with an initial capital letter, this definition applies.
- E. PC: Personal computer. Applies to the central station, workstations, and file servers.
- F. RAS: Remote access services.
- G. RF: Radio frequency.
- H. ROM: Read-only memory. ROM data are maintained through losses of power.
- I. TCP/IP: Transport control protocol/Internet protocol.

- J. TWAIN: Technology without an Interesting Name. A programming interface that lets a graphics application, such as an image editing program or desktop publishing program, activate a scanner, frame grabber, or other image-capturing device.
- K. WMP: Windows media player.
- L. Wiegand: Patented magnetic principle that uses specially treated wires embedded in the credential card.
- M. WYSIWYG: What You See Is What You Get. Text and graphics appear on the screen the same as they will in print.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories. Reference each product to a location on Drawings.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Diagrams for cable management system.
 - 2. System labeling schedules, including electronic copy of labeling schedules that are part of the cable and asset identification system of the software specified in Parts 2 and 3.
 - 3. Wiring Diagrams. For power, signal, and control wiring. Show typical wiring schematics including the following:
 - a. Workstation outlets, jacks, and jack assemblies.
 - b. Patch cords.
 - c. Patch panels.
 - 4. Cable Administration Drawings: As specified in "Identification" Article.
 - 5. Battery and charger calculations for central station, workstations, and controllers.
- C. Product Schedules.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For security system to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
 - 1. Hard copies of manufacturer's specification sheets, operating specifications, design guides, user's guides for software and hardware, and PDF files on USB media of the hard-copy submittal.

2. System installation and setup guides with data forms to plan and record options and setup decisions.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers trained and approved by manufacturer.
 1. Cable installer must have on staff an RCDD certified by Building Industry Consulting Service International.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain central station, workstations, controllers, Identifier readers, and all software through one source from single manufacturer.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store in temperature- and humidity-controlled environment in original manufacturer's sealed containers. Maintain ambient temperature between 50 and 85 deg F (10 and 30 deg C), and not more than 80 percent relative humidity, noncondensing.
- B. Open each container; verify contents against packing list; and file copy of packing list, complete with container identification, for inclusion in operation and maintenance data.
- C. Mark packing list with the same designations assigned to materials and equipment for recording in the system labeling schedules that are generated by software specified in "Cable and Asset Management Software" Article.
- D. Save original manufacturer's containers and packing materials and deliver as directed under provisions covering extra materials.

1.9 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Conditions: System shall be capable of withstanding the following environmental conditions without mechanical or electrical damage or degradation of operating capability:
 1. Control Station: Rated for continuous operation in ambient conditions of 60 to 85 deg F (16 to 30 deg C) and a relative humidity of 20 to 80 percent, noncondensing.
 2. Indoor, Controlled Environment: NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosure. System components, except the central-station control unit, installed in air-conditioned indoor environments shall be rated for continuous operation in ambient conditions of 36 to 122 deg F (2 to 50 deg C) dry bulb and 20 to 90 percent relative humidity, noncondensing.
 3. Outdoor Environment: NEMA 250, NEMA 250, Type 3 enclosures. System components installed in locations exposed to weather shall be rated for continuous operation in ambient conditions of minus 30 to plus 122 deg F (minus 34 to plus 50 deg C) dry bulb and 20 to 90 percent relative humidity, condensing. Rate for continuous operation where exposed to rain as specified in NEMA 250, winds up to 85 mph (137 km/h) and snow cover up to 24 inches (610 mm) thick.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 OPERATION

- A. Security access system hardware shall be furnished by Campus and installed by Contractor.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70, "National Electrical Code."

2.3 CARD READERS, CREDENTIAL CARDS, AND KEYPADS

- A. Furnished by Campus, installed by Contractor

2.4 PUSH-BUTTON SWITCHES

- A. Push-Button Switches: Furnished by Campus and installed by Contractor
- B. Electrical Ratings:
 - 1. Minimum continuous current rating of 10 A at 120-V ac.
 - 2. Contacts that will make 720 VA at 60A and that will break at 720 VA at 10 A.
- C. Enclosures: Flush or surface mounting. Push buttons shall be suitable for flush mounting in the switch enclosures.
- D. Enclosures shall additionally be suitable for installation in the following locations:
 - 1. Indoors, controlled environment.
 - 2. Indoors, uncontrolled environment.
 - 3. Outdoors.
- E. Power: Push-button switches shall be powered from their associated controller, using dc control.

2.5 CABLES

- A. General Cable Requirements: Comply with requirements in Section 270513 "Conductors and Cables for Communications Systems" and as recommended by system manufacturer for integration requirement.
- B. Paired, Plenum-Type, Reader and Wiegand Keypad Cables:
 - 1. Three pairs, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned copper conductors, plastic insulation, individual aluminum-foil/polypropylene-tape shielded pairs each with

- No. 22 AWG, stranded tinned copper drain wire, 100 percent shield coverage, and fluorinated-ethylene-propylene jacket.
- 2. NFPA 70, Type CMP.
- 3. Flame Resistance: NFPA 262 flame test.

C. LAN Cabling:

- 1. Comply with requirements in Section 271513 "Communications Copper Horizontal Cabling."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine pathway elements intended for cables. Check raceways, cable trays, and other elements for compliance with space allocations, installation tolerances, hazards to cable installation, and other conditions affecting installation.
- B. Examine roughing-in for LAN and control cable conduit systems to PCs, controllers, card readers, and other cable-connected devices to verify actual locations of conduit and back boxes before device installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with recommendations in SIA CP-01.
- B. Comply with TIA 606-B, "Administration Standard for Commercial Telecommunications Infrastructure."
- C. Product Schedules: Obtain detailed product schedules from manufacturer of access-control system or develop product schedules to suit Project. Fill in all data available from Project plans and specifications and publish as Product Schedules for review and approval.
- D. In meetings with Architect and Owner, present Product Schedules and review, adjust, and prepare final setup documents. Use approved, final Product Schedules to set up system software.

3.3 CABLING

- A. Comply with NECA 1, "Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction."
- B. Install cables and wiring according to requirements in Section 270513 "Conductors and Cables for Communications Systems."
- C. Wiring Method: Install wiring in raceway and cable tray except within consoles, cabinets, desks, and counters. Conceal raceway and wiring except in unfinished spaces.

- D. Wiring Method: Install wiring in raceway and cable tray except within consoles, cabinets, desks, and counters and except in accessible ceiling spaces and in gypsum board partitions where unenclosed wiring method may be used. Use NRTL-listed plenum cable in environmental airspaces, including plenum ceilings. Conceal raceway and cables except in unfinished spaces.
- E. Install LAN cables using techniques, practices, and methods that are consistent with Category 5e rating of components and optical fiber rating of components, and that ensure Category 6 and optical fiber performance of completed and linked signal paths, end to end.
- F. Boxes and enclosures containing security-system components or cabling, and which are easily accessible to employees or to the public, shall be provided with a lock. Boxes above ceiling level in occupied areas of the building shall not be considered accessible. Junction boxes and small device enclosures below ceiling level and easily accessible to employees or the public shall be covered with a suitable cover plate and secured with tamperproof screws.
- G. Install end-of-line resistors at the field device location and not at the controller or panel location.

3.4 CABLE APPLICATION

- A. Comply with TIA 569-D, "Commercial Building Standard for Telecommunications Pathways and Spaces."
- B. Cable application requirements are minimum requirements and shall be exceeded if recommended or required by manufacturer of system hardware.
- C. TIA 232-F Cabling: Install at a maximum distance of 50 ft. (15 m) between terminations.
- D. TIA 485-A Cabling: Install at a maximum distance of 4000 ft. (1220 m) between terminations.
- E. Card Readers and Keypads:
 - 1. Install number of conductor pairs recommended by manufacturer for the functions specified.
 - 2. Unless manufacturer recommends larger conductors, install No. 22 AWG wire if maximum distance from controller to the reader is 250 ft. (75 m), and install No. 20 AWG wire if maximum distance is 500 ft. (150 m).
 - 3. For greater distances, install "extender" or "repeater" modules recommended by manufacturer of the controller.
 - 4. Install minimum No. 18 AWG shielded cable to readers and keypads that draw 50 mA or more.

3.5 GROUNDING

- A. Comply with Section 270526 "Grounding and Bonding for Communications Systems."

- B. Comply with IEEE 1100, "Recommended Practice for Power and Grounding Electronic Equipment."
- C. Ground cable shields, drain conductors, and equipment to eliminate shock hazard and to minimize ground loops, common-mode returns, noise pickup, cross talk, and other impairments.
- D. Bond shields and drain conductors to ground at only one point in each circuit.
- E. Signal Ground:
 - 1. Terminal: Locate in each equipment room and wiring closet; isolate from power system and equipment grounding.
 - 2. Bus: Mount on wall of main equipment room with standoff insulators.
 - 3. Backbone Cable: Extend from signal ground bus to signal ground terminal in each equipment room and wiring closet.

3.6 INSTALLATION

- A. Install card readers, keypads, push buttons, and biometric readers.

3.7 IDENTIFICATION

- A. In addition to requirements in this article, comply with applicable requirements in Section 270553 "Identification for Communications Systems" and with TIA 606-B.
- B. Using software specified in "Cable and Asset Management Software" Article, develop cable administration drawings for system identification, testing, and management. Use unique, alphanumeric designation for each cable, and label cable and jacks, connectors, and terminals to which it connects with the same designation. Use logical and systematic designations for facility's architectural arrangement.
- C. Label each terminal strip and screw terminal in each cabinet, rack, or panel.
 - 1. All wiring conductors connected to terminal strips shall be individually numbered, and each cable or wiring group being extended from a panel or cabinet to a building-mounted device shall be identified with the name and number of the particular device as shown.
 - 2. Each wire connected to building-mounted devices is not required to be numbered at the device if the color of the wire is consistent with the associated wire connected and numbered within the panel or cabinet.
- D. At completion, cable and asset management software shall reflect as-built conditions.

3.8 SYSTEM SOFTWARE AND HARDWARE

- A. Develop, install, and test software and hardware, and perform database tests for the complete and proper operation of systems involved. Assign software license to Owner.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.

B. Tests and Inspections:

1. LAN Cable Procedures: Inspect for physical damage and test each conductor signal path for continuity and shorts. Use tester approved for type and kind of installed cable. Test for faulty connectors, splices, and terminations. Test according to TIA 568-C.1, "Commercial Building Telecommunications Cabling Standards - Part 1: General Requirements." Link performance for balanced twisted-pair cables must comply with minimum criteria in TIA 568-C.1.
2. Test each circuit and component of each system. Tests shall include, but are not limited to, measurements of power-supply output under maximum load, signal loop resistance, and leakage to ground where applicable. System components with battery backup shall be operated on battery power for a period of not less than 10 percent of the calculated battery operating time. Provide special equipment and software if testing requires special or dedicated equipment.
3. Operational Test: After installation of cables and connectors, demonstrate product capability and compliance with requirements. Test each signal path for end-to-end performance from each end of all pairs installed. Remove temporary connections when tests have been satisfactorily completed.

C. Devices and circuits will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.10 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to supervise and assist with startup service.

1. Complete installation and startup checks according to approved procedures that were developed in "Preparation" Article and with manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Enroll and prepare badges and access cards for Owner's operators, management, and security personnel.

3.11 DEMONSTRATION

A. Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain security access system. See Section 017900 "Demonstration and Training."

B. Develop separate training modules for the following:

1. Computer system administration personnel to manage and repair the LAN and databases and to update and maintain software.
2. Operators who prepare and input credentials to man the control station and workstations and to enroll personnel.
3. Security personnel.
4. Hardware maintenance personnel.
5. Corporate management.

END OF SECTION 28 1500

SECTION 28 2000 - VIDEO SURVEILLANCE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes a video surveillance system consisting of cameras, digital video recorder, data transmission wiring, and a control station with its associated equipment.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. AGC: Automatic gain control.
- B. BNC: Bayonet Neill-Concelman - type of connector.
- C. B/W: Black and white.
- D. CCD: Charge-coupled device.
- E. FTP: File transfer protocol.
- F. IP: Internet protocol.
- G. LAN: Local area network.
- H. MPEG: Moving picture experts group.
- I. NTSC: National Television System Committee.
- J. PC: Personal computer.
- K. PTZ: Pan-tilt-zoom.
- L. RAID: Redundant array of independent disks.
- M. TCP: Transmission control protocol - connects hosts on the Internet.
- N. UPS: Uninterruptible power supply.
- O. WAN: Wide area network.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include dimensions and data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For video surveillance. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 2. Functional Block Diagram: Show single-line interconnections between components for signal transmission and control. Show cable types and sizes.
 - 3. Dimensioned plan and elevations of equipment racks, control panels, and consoles. Show access and workspace requirements.
 - 4. UPS: Sizing calculations.
 - 5. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Design Data: Include an equipment list consisting of every piece of equipment by model number, manufacturer, serial number, location, and date of original installation. Add pretesting record of each piece of equipment, listing name of person testing, date of test, set points of adjustments, name and description of the view of preset positions, description of alarms, and description of unit output responses to an alarm.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates, for cameras, camera-supporting equipment, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
 - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- B. Field quality-control reports.
- C. Product Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For cameras, power supplies, infrared illuminators, monitors, videotape recorders, digital video recorders, video switches, and control-station components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
 - 1. Lists of spare parts and replacement components recommended to be stored at the site for ready access.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Conditions: Capable of withstanding the following environmental conditions without mechanical or electrical damage or degradation of operating capability:
1. Control Station: Rated for continuous operation in ambient temperatures of 60 to 85 deg F (16 to 29 deg C) and a relative humidity of 20 to 80 percent, noncondensing.
 2. Interior, Controlled Environment: System components, except central-station control unit, installed in air-conditioned interior environments shall be rated for continuous operation in ambient temperatures of 36 to 122 deg F (2 to 50 deg C) dry bulb and 20 to 90 percent relative humidity, noncondensing. Use NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosures.
 3. Exterior Environment: System components installed in locations exposed to weather shall be rated for continuous operation in ambient temperatures of minus 30 to plus 122 deg F (minus 34 to plus 50 deg C) dry bulb and 20 to 90 percent relative humidity, condensing. Rate for continuous operation when exposed to rain as specified in NEMA 250, winds up to 85 mph (137 km/h) and snow cover up to 24 inches (610 mm) thick. Use NEMA 250, Type 3R enclosures.
 4. Hazardous Environment: System components located in areas where fire or explosion hazards may exist because of flammable gases or vapors, flammable liquids, combustible dust, or ignitable fibers shall be rated, listed, and installed according to NFPA 70.
 5. Security Environment: Camera housing for use in high-risk areas where surveillance equipment may be subject to physical violence.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

- A. Video-signal format: Coordinate with Campus requirements.
- B. Surge Protection: Protect components from voltage surges originating external to equipment housing and entering through power, communication, signal, control, or sensing leads. Include surge protection for external wiring of each conductor's entry connection to components.
1. Minimum Protection for Power Connections 120 V and More: Auxiliary panel suppressors complying with requirements in Section 264313 "Surge Protection for Low-Voltage Electrical Power Circuits."
 2. Minimum Protection for Communication, Signal, Control, and Low-Voltage Power Connections: Comply with requirements in Section 264313 "Surge Protection for Low-Voltage Electrical Power Circuits" as recommended by manufacturer for type of line being protected.
- C. Tamper Protection: Tamper switches on enclosures, control units, pull boxes, junction boxes, cabinets, and other system components shall initiate a tamper-alarm signal when unit is opened or partially disassembled. Control-station, control-unit alarm display shall identify tamper alarms and indicate locations.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Video surveillance system shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
 - 1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified"
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Comply with NECA 1.
- D. Comply with NFPA 70.
- E. Electronic data exchange between video surveillance system with an access-control system shall comply with SIA TVAC.

2.3 STANDARD CAMERAS

- A. Cameras to be furnished by Campus and installed by Contractor.

2.4 CAMERA-SUPPORTING EQUIPMENT

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Bosch Security Systems, Inc.
 - 2. COP-USA.
 - 3. Honeywell Security Products- Americas.
- B. Minimum Load Rating: Rated for load in excess of the total weight supported times a minimum safety factor of two.
- C. Mounting Brackets for Fixed Cameras: Type matched to items supported and mounting conditions. Include manual pan-and-tilt adjustment.
- D. Protective Housings for Fixed and Movable Cameras: As indicated by Campus.

2.5 SECURITY ACCESS PANEL

- A. Furnished BY Campus, installed by Contractor

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine pathway elements intended for cables. Check raceways and other elements for compliance with space allocations, installation tolerance, hazards to camera installation, and other conditions affecting installation.
- B. Examine roughing-in for LAN, WAN, and IP network before device installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 WIRING

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 270528 "Pathways for Communications Systems."
- B. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Except raceways are not required in accessible indoor ceiling spaces and attics.
 - 2. Except raceways are not required in hollow gypsum board partitions.
 - 3. Conceal raceways and wiring except in unfinished spaces.
- C. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Provide and use lacing bars and distribution spools.
- D. Splices, Taps, and Terminations: For power and control wiring, use numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes; terminal cabinets; and equipment enclosures. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A-486B.
- E. For communication wiring, comply with the following:
 - 1. Section 271323 "Communications Optical Fiber Backbone Cabling."
 - 2. Section 271513 "Communications Copper Horizontal Cabling."
- F. Grounding: Provide independent-signal circuit grounding recommended in writing by manufacturer.

3.3 VIDEO SURVEILLANCE SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install cameras and infrared illuminators level and plumb.
- B. Install cameras with 84-inch- (2134-mm-) minimum clear space below cameras and their mountings. Change type of mounting to achieve required clearance.
- C. Set pan unit and pan-and-tilt unit stops to suit final camera position and to obtain the field of view required for camera. Connect all controls and alarms, and adjust.

- D. Install tamper switches on components indicated to receive tamper switches, arranged to detect unauthorized entry into system-component enclosures and mounted in self-protected, inconspicuous positions.
- E. Avoid ground loops by making ground connections only at the control station.
 - 1. For 12- and 24-V dc cameras, connect the coaxial cable shields only at the monitor end.
- F. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals according to Section 270553 "Identification for Communications Systems."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- C. Perform tests and inspections.
 - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- D. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Inspection: Verify that units and controls are properly installed, connected, and labeled, and that interconnecting wires and terminals are identified.
 - 2. Pretesting: Align and adjust system and pretest components, wiring, and functions to verify that they comply with specified requirements. Conduct tests at varying lighting levels, including day and night scenes as applicable. Prepare video-surveillance equipment for acceptance and operational testing as follows:
 - a. Prepare equipment list described in "Informational Submittals" Article.
 - b. Verify operation of auto-iris lenses.
 - c. Set back-focus of fixed focal length lenses. At focus set to infinity, simulate nighttime lighting conditions by using a dark glass filter of a density that produces a clear image. Adjust until image is in focus with and without the filter.
 - d. Set back-focus of zoom lenses. At focus set to infinity, simulate nighttime lighting conditions by using a dark glass filter of a density that produces a clear image. Additionally, set zoom to full wide angle and aim camera at an object 50 to 75 feet (17 to 23 m) away. Adjust until image is in focus from full wide angle to full telephoto, with the filter in place.
 - e. Set and name all preset positions; consult Owner's personnel.
 - f. Set sensitivity of motion detection.
 - g. Connect and verify responses to alarms.
 - h. Verify operation of control-station equipment.

3. Test Schedule: Schedule tests after pretesting has been successfully completed and system has been in normal functional operation for at least 14 days. Provide a minimum of 10 days' notice of test schedule.
 4. Operational Tests: Perform operational system tests to verify that system complies with Specifications. Include all modes of system operation. Test equipment for proper operation in all functional modes.
- E. Video surveillance system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose. Tasks shall include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Check cable connections.
 2. Check proper operation of cameras and lenses. Verify operation of auto-iris lenses and adjust back-focus as needed.
 3. Adjust all preset positions; consult Owner's personnel.
 4. Recommend changes to cameras, lenses, and associated equipment to improve Owner's use of video surveillance system.
 5. Provide a written report of adjustments and recommendations.

3.6 CLEANING

- A. Clean installed items using methods and materials recommended in writing by manufacturer.
- B. Clean video-surveillance-system components, including camera-housing windows, lenses, and monitor screens.

3.7 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain video-surveillance equipment.

END OF SECTION 28 2000

SECTION 28 4621.11 - ADDRESSABLE FIRE-ALARM SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Fire-alarm control unit.
 - 2. Manual fire-alarm boxes.
 - 3. System smoke detectors.
 - 4. Heat detectors.
 - 5. Notification appliances.
 - 6. Device guards.
 - 7. Magnetic door holders.
 - 8. Remote annunciator.
 - 9. Graphic annunciator.
 - 10. Addressable interface device.
 - 11. Digital alarm communicator transmitter.
 - 12. Network communications.
 - 13. System printer.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. EMT: Electrical Metallic Tubing.
- B. FACP: Fire Alarm Control Panel.
- C. HLI: High Level Interface.
- D. NICET: National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies.
- E. PC: Personal computer.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product, including furnished options and accessories.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions, profiles, and finishes.
 - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and electrical characteristics.
- B. Shop Drawings: For fire-alarm system.

1. Comply with recommendations and requirements in the "Documentation" section of the "Fundamentals" chapter in NFPA 72.
2. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
3. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and locations. Indicate conductor sizes, indicate termination locations and requirements, and distinguish between factory and field wiring.
4. Detail assembly and support requirements.
5. Include voltage drop calculations for notification-appliance circuits.
6. Include battery-size calculations.
7. Include input/output matrix.
8. Include statement from manufacturer that all equipment and components have been tested as a system and meet all requirements in this Specification and in NFPA 72.
9. Include performance parameters and installation details for each detector.
10. Verify that each duct detector is listed for complete range of air velocity, temperature, and humidity possible when air-handling system is operating.
11. Include plans, sections, and elevations of heating, ventilating, and air-conditioning ducts, drawn to scale; coordinate location of duct smoke detectors and access to them.
 - a. Show critical dimensions that relate to placement and support of sampling tubes, detector housing, and remote status and alarm indicators.
 - b. Show field wiring required for HVAC unit shutdown on alarm.
 - c. Show field wiring and equipment required for HVAC unit shutdown on alarm and override by firefighters' smoke-evacuation system.
 - d. Locate detectors according to manufacturer's written recommendations.
12. Include voice/alarm signaling-service equipment rack or console layout, grounding schematic, amplifier power calculation, and single-line connection diagram.
13. Include floor plans to indicate final outlet locations showing address of each addressable device. Show size and route of cable and conduits and point-to-point wiring diagrams.

C. General Submittal Requirements:

1. Submittals shall be approved by authorities having jurisdiction prior to submitting them to Architect.
2. Shop Drawings shall be prepared by persons with the following qualifications:
 - a. Trained and certified by manufacturer in fire-alarm system design.
 - b. NICET-certified, fire-alarm technician; Level III minimum.
 - c. Licensed or certified by authorities having jurisdiction.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates, for fire-alarm control unit, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

C. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fire-alarm systems and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1. In addition to items specified in other section for "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following and deliver copies to authorities having jurisdiction:
 - a. Comply with the "Records" section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
 - b. Provide "Fire Alarm and Emergency Communications System Record of Completion Documents" according to the "Completion Documents" Article in the "Documentation" section of the "Fundamentals" chapter in NFPA 72.
 - c. Complete wiring diagrams showing connections between all devices and equipment. Each conductor shall be numbered at every junction point with indication of origination and termination points.
 - d. Riser diagram.
 - e. Device addresses.
 - f. Record copy of site-specific software.
 - g. Provide "Inspection and Testing Form" according to the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72, and include the following:
 - 1) Equipment tested.
 - 2) Frequency of testing of installed components.
 - 3) Frequency of inspection of installed components.
 - 4) Requirements and recommendations related to results of maintenance.
 - 5) Manufacturer's user training manuals.
 - h. Manufacturer's required maintenance related to system warranty requirements.
 - i. Abbreviated operating instructions for mounting at fire-alarm control unit and each annunciator unit.

B. Software and Firmware Operational Documentation:

1. Software operating and upgrade manuals.
2. Program Software Backup: On magnetic media or compact disk, complete with data files.
3. Device address list.
4. Printout of software application and graphic screens.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Installation shall be by personnel certified by NICET as fire-alarm Level II technician.
- B. NFPA Certification: Obtain certification according to NFPA 72 by an NRTL (nationally recognized testing laboratory).

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace fire-alarm system equipment and components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Extent: All equipment and components not covered in the Maintenance Service Agreement.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Five (5) years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Source Limitations for Fire-Alarm System and Components: Components shall be compatible with, and operate as an extension of, existing system. Provide system manufacturer's certification that all components provided have been tested as, and will operate as, a system.
- B. Noncoded, UL-certified addressable system, with multiplexed signal transmission and voice/strobe evacuation.
- C. Automatic sensitivity control of certain smoke detectors.
- D. All components provided shall be listed for use with the selected system.
- E. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.2 SYSTEMS OPERATIONAL DESCRIPTION

- A. Fire-alarm signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following devices and systems:
 - 1. Manual stations.
 - 2. Heat detectors.
 - 3. Smoke detectors.
 - 4. Duct smoke detectors.
 - 5. Carbon monoxide detectors.
 - 6. Automatic sprinkler system water flow.
 - 7. Fire-extinguishing system operation.

8. Fire standpipe system.
9. Dry system pressure flow switch.
10. Fire pump running.

B. Fire-alarm signal shall initiate the following actions:

1. Continuously operate alarm notification appliances, including voice evacuation notices.
2. Identify alarm and specific initiating device at fire-alarm control unit and remote annunciators.
3. Transmit an alarm signal to the remote alarm receiving station.
4. Unlock electric door locks in designated egress paths.
5. Release fire and smoke doors held open by magnetic door holders.
6. Activate voice/alarm communication system.
7. Switch heating, ventilating, and air-conditioning equipment controls to fire-alarm mode.
8. Close smoke dampers in air ducts of designated air-conditioning duct systems.
9. Recall elevators to primary or alternate recall floors.
10. Activate elevator power shunt trip.
11. Record events in the system memory.
12. Record events by the system printer.
13. Indicate device in alarm on the graphic annunciator.

C. Supervisory signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following devices and actions:

1. Valve supervisory switch.
2. High- or low-air-pressure switch of a dry-pipe or preaction sprinkler system.
3. Elevator shunt-trip supervision.
4. Fire pump running.
5. Fire-pump loss of power.
6. Fire-pump power phase reversal.
7. Independent fire-detection and -suppression systems.
8. User disabling of zones or individual devices.
9. Loss of communication with any panel on the network.

D. System trouble signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following devices and actions:

1. Open circuits, shorts, and grounds in designated circuits.
2. Opening, tampering with, or removing alarm-initiating and supervisory signal-initiating devices.
3. Loss of communication with any addressable sensor, input module, relay, control module, remote annunciator, printer interface, or Ethernet module.
4. Loss of primary power at fire-alarm control unit.
5. Ground or a single break in internal circuits of fire-alarm control unit.
6. Abnormal ac voltage at fire-alarm control unit.
7. Break in standby battery circuitry.
8. Failure of battery charging.
9. Abnormal position of any switch at fire-alarm control unit or annunciator.

10. Voice signal amplifier failure.
11. Hose cabinet door open.

E. System Supervisory Signal Actions:

1. Initiate notification appliances.
2. Identify specific device initiating the event at fire-alarm control unit and remote annunciators.
3. Record the event on system printer.
4. After a time delay of 200 seconds, transmit a trouble or supervisory signal to the remote alarm receiving station.
5. Transmit system status to building management system.
6. Display system status on graphic annunciator.

2.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Seismic Performance: Fire-alarm control unit and raceways shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.

1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified."

2.4 FIRE-ALARM CONTROL UNIT

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. SimplexGrinnell LP.

B. General Requirements for Fire-Alarm Control Unit:

1. Field-programmable, microprocessor-based, modular, power-limited design with electronic modules, complying with UL 864.
 - a. System software and programs shall be held in nonvolatile flash, electrically erasable, programmable, read-only memory, retaining the information through failure of primary and secondary power supplies.
 - b. Include a real-time clock for time annotation of events on the event recorder and printer.
 - c. Provide communication between the FACP and remote circuit interface panels, annunciators, and displays.
 - d. The FACP shall be listed for connection to a central-station signaling system service.
 - e. Provide nonvolatile memory for system database, logic, and operating system and event history. The system shall require no manual input to initialize in the event of a complete power down condition. The FACP shall provide a minimum 500-event history log.
2. Addressable Initiation Device Circuits: The FACP shall indicate which communication zones have been silenced and shall provide selective silencing of alarm notification appliance by building communication zone.

3. Addressable Control Circuits for Operation of Notification Appliances and Mechanical Equipment: The FACP shall be listed for releasing service.
- C. Alphanumeric Display and System Controls (for medium and large projects): Arranged for interface between human operator at fire-alarm control unit and addressable system components including annunciation and supervision. Display alarm, supervisory, and component status messages and the programming and control menu.
1. Annunciator and Display: Liquid-crystal type, three lines of 80 characters, minimum.
 2. Keypad: Arranged to permit entry and execution of programming, display, and control commands and to indicate control commands to be entered into the system for control of smoke-detector sensitivity and other parameters.
- D. Initiating-Device, Notification-Appliance, and Signaling-Line Circuits:
1. Pathway Class Designations: NFPA 72, Class A.
 2. Pathway Survivability: Level 1.
 3. Install no more than 50 addressable devices on each signaling-line circuit.
 4. Serial Interfaces:
 - a. One dedicated RS 485 port for central-station/remote station operation using point ID DACT.
 - b. One RS 485 port for remote annunciators, Ethernet module, or multi-interface module (printer port).
 - c. One RS 232 port for PC configuration.
 - d. One RS 232 port for voice evacuation interface.
- E. Smoke-Alarm Verification:
1. Initiate audible and visible indication of an "alarm-verification" signal at fire-alarm control unit.
 2. Activate an approved "alarm-verification" sequence at fire-alarm control unit and detector.
 3. Record events by the system printer.
 4. Sound general alarm if the alarm is verified.
 5. Cancel fire-alarm control unit indication and system reset if the alarm is not verified.
- F. Notification-Appliance Circuit:
1. Audible appliances shall sound in a three-pulse temporal pattern, as defined in NFPA 72.
 2. Where notification appliances provide signals to sleeping areas, the alarm signal shall be a 520-Hz square wave with an intensity 15 dB above the average ambient sound level or 5 dB above the maximum sound level, or at least 75 dBA, whichever is greater, measured at the pillow.
 3. Visual alarm appliances shall flash in synchronization where multiple appliances are in the same field of view, as defined in NFPA 72.
- G. Elevator Recall:

1. Elevator recall shall be initiated only by one of the following alarm-initiating devices:
 - a. Elevator lobby detectors except the lobby detector on the designated floor.
 - b. Smoke detector in elevator machine room.
 - c. Smoke detectors in elevator hoistway.
 2. Elevator controller shall be programmed to move the cars to the alternate recall floor if lobby detectors located on the designated recall floors are activated.
 3. Heat Detectors in an elevator shaft and elevator machine room shall shut down elevators associated with the location. Time delay is permitted for the time it takes for the elevator cab to travel from the top floor to the lowest recall level.
- H. Door Controls: Door hold-open devices that are controlled by smoke detectors at doors in smoke-barrier walls shall be connected to fire-alarm system.
- I. Remote Smoke-Detector Sensitivity Adjustment: Controls shall select specific addressable smoke detectors for adjustment, display their current status and sensitivity settings, and change those settings. Allow controls to be used to program repetitive, time-scheduled, and automated changes in sensitivity of specific detector groups. Record sensitivity adjustments and sensitivity-adjustment schedule changes in system memory, and print out the final adjusted values on system printer.
- J. Transmission to Remote Alarm Receiving Station: Automatically transmit alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals to a remote alarm station.
- K. Voice/Alarm Signaling Service: Central emergency communication system with redundant microphones, preamplifiers, amplifiers, and tone generators provided as a special module that is part of fire-alarm control unit.
1. Indicate number of alarm channels for automatic, simultaneous transmission of different announcements to different zones or for manual transmission of announcements by use of the central-control microphone. Amplifiers shall comply with UL 1711.
 - a. Allow the application of, and evacuation signal to, indicated number of zones and, at the same time, allow voice paging to the other zones selectively or in any combination.
 - b. Programmable tone and message sequence selection.
 - c. Standard digitally recorded messages for "Evacuation" and "All Clear."
 - d. Generate tones to be sequenced with audio messages of type recommended by NFPA 72 and that are compatible with tone patterns of notification-appliance circuits of fire-alarm control unit.
 2. Status Annunciator: Indicate the status of various voice/alarm speaker zones.
 3. Preamplifiers, amplifiers, and tone generators shall automatically transfer to backup units, on primary equipment failure.
- L. Printout of Events: On receipt of signal, print alarm, supervisory, and trouble events. Identify zone, device, and function. Include type of signal (alarm, supervisory, or trouble) and date and time of occurrence. Differentiate alarm signals from all other printed indications. Also, print system reset event, including same information for

device, location, date, and time. Commands initiate the printing of a list of existing alarm, supervisory, and trouble conditions in the system and a historical log of events.

- M. Primary Power: 24-V dc obtained from 120-V ac service and a power-supply module. Initiating devices, notification appliances, signaling lines, trouble signals, supervisory and digital alarm communicator transmitters shall be powered by 24-V dc source.
 - 1. Alarm current draw of entire fire-alarm system shall not exceed 80 percent of the power-supply module rating.
- N. Secondary Power: 24-V dc supply system with batteries, automatic battery charger, and automatic transfer switch. The secondary power supply for in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications service shall be capable of operating the system under quiescent load for a minimum of 24-hours and then shall be capable of operating the system during a fire or other emergency condition for a period of 15 minutes at maximum connected load.
 - 1. Batteries: Sealed lead calcium.
 - 2. Battery calculation shall include a minimum 20 percent safety margin above the calculated amp-hour capacity required.
- O. Instructions: Computer printout or typewritten instruction card mounted behind a plastic or glass cover in a stainless-steel or aluminum frame. Include interpretation and describe appropriate response for displays and signals. Briefly describe the functional operation of the system under normal, alarm, and trouble conditions.

2.5 MANUAL FIRE-ALARM BOXES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Fire-Lite Alarms, Inc.; a Honeywell International company.
 - 2. Gamewell - FCI by Honeywell.
 - 3. Notifier.
 - 4. Siemens Industry, Inc.; Fire Safety Division.
 - 5. Silent Knight.
- B. General Requirements for Manual Fire-Alarm Boxes: Comply with UL 38. Boxes shall be finished in red with molded, raised-letter operating instructions in contrasting color; shall show visible indication of operation; and shall be mounted on recessed outlet box. If indicated as surface mounted, provide manufacturer's surface back box.
 - 1. Double-action mechanism requiring two actions to initiate an alarm, pull-lever type; with integral addressable module arranged to communicate manual-station status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.
 - 2. Station Reset: Key- or wrench-operated switch.
 - 3. Indoor Protective Shield: Factory-fabricated, clear plastic enclosure hinged at the top to permit lifting for access to initiate an alarm. Lifting the cover actuates an integral battery-powered audible horn intended to discourage false-alarm operation.

4. Weatherproof Protective Shield: Factory-fabricated, clear plastic enclosure hinged at the top to permit lifting for access to initiate an alarm.

2.6 SYSTEM SMOKE DETECTORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Simplex Grinnell

- B. General Requirements for System Smoke Detectors:

1. Comply with UL 268; operating at 24-V dc, nominal.
2. Detectors shall be four-wire type.
3. Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.
4. Self-Restoring: Detectors do not require resetting or readjustment after actuation to restore them to normal operation.
5. Integral Visual-Indicating Light: LED type, indicating detector has operated and power-on status.
6. Remote Control: Unless otherwise indicated, detectors shall be digital-addressable type, individually monitored at fire-alarm control unit for calibration, sensitivity, and alarm condition and individually adjustable for sensitivity by fire-alarm control unit.
 - a. Rate-of-rise temperature characteristic of combination smoke- and heat-detection units shall be selectable at fire-alarm control unit for 15 or 20 deg F (8 or 11 deg C) per minute.
 - b. Fixed-temperature sensing characteristic of combination smoke- and heat-detection units shall be independent of rate-of-rise sensing and shall be settable at fire-alarm control unit to operate at 135 or 155 deg F (57 or 68 deg C).
 - c. Multiple levels of detection sensitivity for each sensor, as recommended by manufacturer.

- C. Photoelectric Smoke Detectors:

1. Detector address shall be accessible from fire-alarm control unit and shall be able to identify the detector's location within the system and its sensitivity setting.
2. An operator at fire-alarm control unit, having the designated access level, shall be able to manually access the following for each detector:
 - a. Primary status.
 - b. Device type.
 - c. Present average value.
 - d. Present sensitivity selected.
 - e. Sensor range (normal, dirty, etc.).

- D. Duct Smoke Detectors: Photoelectric type complying with UL 268A.

1. Detector address shall be accessible from fire-alarm control unit and shall be able to identify the detector's location within the system and its sensitivity setting.

2. An operator at fire-alarm control unit, having the designated access level, shall be able to manually access the following for each detector:
 - a. Primary status.
 - b. Device type.
 - c. Present average value.
 - d. Present sensitivity selected.
 - e. Sensor range (normal, dirty, etc.).
3. Weatherproof Duct Housing Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4X; NRTL listed for use with the supplied detector for smoke detection in HVAC system ducts.
4. Each sensor shall have multiple levels of detection sensitivity as recommended by manufacturer.
5. Sampling Tubes: Design and dimensions as recommended by manufacturer for specific duct size, air velocity, and installation conditions where applied.
6. Relay Fan Shutdown: Fully programmable relay rated to interrupt fan motor-control circuit.

2.7 CARBON MONOXIDE DETECTORS

- A. General: Carbon monoxide detector listed for connection to fire-alarm system.
 1. Mounting: Adapter plate for outlet box mounting.
 2. Testable by introducing test carbon monoxide into the sensing cell.
 3. Detector shall provide alarm contacts and trouble contacts.
 4. Detector shall send trouble alarm when nearing end-of-life, power supply problems, or internal faults.
 5. Comply with UL 2075.
 6. Locate, mount, and wire according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 7. Provide means for addressable connection to fire-alarm system.
 8. Test button simulates an alarm condition.

2.8 MULTICRITERIA DETECTORS

- A. Mounting: Twist-lock base interchangeable with smoke-detector bases.
- B. Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.
- C. Automatically adjusts its sensitivity by means of drift compensation and smoothing algorithms. The detector shall send trouble alarm if it is incapable of compensating for existing conditions.
- D. Test button tests all sensors in the detector.
- E. An operator at fire-alarm control unit, having the designated access level, shall be able to manually access the following for each detector:
 1. Primary status.
 2. Device type.
 3. Present sensitivity selected.

4. Sensor range (normal, dirty, etc.).

- F. Sensors: The detector shall be comprised of four sensing elements including a smoke sensor, a carbon monoxide sensor, an infrared sensor, and a heat sensor.

1. Smoke sensor shall be photoelectric type as described in "System Smoke Detectors" Article.
2. Carbon monoxide sensor shall be as described in "Carbon Monoxide Detectors" Article.
3. Heat sensor shall be as described in "Heat Detectors" Article.
4. Each sensor shall be separately listed according to requirements for its detector type.

2.9 HEAT DETECTORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. SimplexGrinnell LP.

- B. General Requirements for Heat Detectors: Comply with UL 521.

1. Temperature sensors shall test for and communicate the sensitivity range of the device.

- C. Heat Detector, Combination Type: Actuated by either a fixed temperature of 135 deg F (57 deg C) or a rate of rise that exceeds 15 deg F (8 deg C) per minute unless otherwise indicated.

1. Mounting: Twist-lock base interchangeable with smoke-detector bases.
2. Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.

2.10 NOTIFICATION APPLIANCES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. SimplexGrinnell LP.

- B. General Requirements for Notification Appliances: Connected to notification-appliance signal circuits, zoned as indicated, equipped for mounting as indicated, and with screw terminals for system connections.

1. Combination Devices: Factory-integrated audible and visible devices in a single-mounting assembly, equipped for mounting as indicated, and with screw terminals for system connections.

- C. Visible Notification Appliances: Xenon strobe lights complying with UL 1971, with clear or nominal white polycarbonate lens mounted on an aluminum faceplate. The word "FIRE" is engraved in minimum 1-inch- (25-mm-) high letters on the lens.

1. Rated Light Output:
 - a. 15/30/75/110 cd, selectable in the field.
2. Mounting: Wall mounted unless otherwise indicated.
3. For units with guards to prevent physical damage, light output ratings shall be determined with guards in place.
4. Flashing shall be in a temporal pattern, synchronized with other units.
5. Strobe Leads: Factory connected to screw terminals.
6. Mounting Faceplate: Factory finished, red.

D. Voice/Tone Notification Appliances:

1. Comply with UL 1480.
2. Speakers for Voice Notification: Locate speakers for voice notification to provide the intelligibility requirements of the "Notification Appliances" and "Emergency Communications Systems" chapters in NFPA 72.
3. Low-Range Units: Rated 1 to 2 W.
4. Mounting: Flush.
5. Matching Transformers: Tap range matched to acoustical environment of speaker location.

2.11 MAGNETIC DOOR HOLDERS

- A. Description: Units are equipped for wall or floor mounting as indicated and are complete with matching doorplate.

1. Electromagnets: Require no more than 3 W to develop 25-lbf (111-N) holding force.
2. Wall-Mounted Units: Flush mounted unless otherwise indicated.
3. Rating: 120-V ac.

- B. Material and Finish: Match door hardware.

2.12 GRAPHIC ANNUNCIATOR

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. SimplexGrinnell LP.

- B. Graphic Annunciator Panel: Mounted in an aluminum frame with nonglare, minimum 3/16-inch- (4.76-mm-) thick, clear acrylic cover over graphic representation of the facility. Detector locations shall be represented by red LED lamps. Normal system operation shall be indicated by a lighted, green LED. Trouble and supervisory alarms shall be represented by an amber LED.

1. Comply with UL 864.
2. Operating voltage shall be 24-V dc provided by a local 24-V power supply provided with the annunciator.

3. Include built-in voltage regulation, reverse polarity protection, RS 232/422 serial communications, and a lamp test switch.
4. Semiflush mounted in a NEMA 250, Type 1 cabinet, with key lock and no exposed screws or hinges.
5. Graphic representation of the facility shall be a CAD drawing and each detector shall be represented by an LED in its actual location. CAD drawing shall be at 1/8-inch per foot (10-mm per meter) scale or larger.
6. The LED representing a detector shall flash two times per second while detector is an alarm.

2.13 REMOTE ANNUNCIATOR

- A. Description: Annunciator functions shall match those of fire-alarm control unit for alarm, supervisory, and trouble indications. Manual switching functions shall match those of fire-alarm control unit, including acknowledging, silencing, resetting, and testing.
 1. Mounting: Flush cabinet, NEMA 250, Type 1.
- B. Display Type and Functional Performance: Alphanumeric display and LED indicating lights shall match those of fire-alarm control unit. Provide controls to acknowledge, silence, reset, and test functions for alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals.

2.14 ADDRESSABLE INTERFACE DEVICE

- A. General:
 1. Include address-setting means on the module.
 2. Store an internal identifying code for control panel use to identify the module type.
 3. Listed for controlling HVAC fan motor controllers.
- B. Monitor Module: Microelectronic module providing a system address for alarm-initiating devices for wired applications with normally open contacts.
- C. Integral Relay: Capable of providing a direct signal to elevator controller to initiate elevator recall or to circuit-breaker shunt trip for power shutdown.
 1. Allow the control panel to switch the relay contacts on command.
 2. Have a minimum of two normally open and two normally closed contacts available for field wiring.
- D. Control Module:
 1. Operate notification devices.
 2. Operate solenoids for use in sprinkler service.

2.15 DIGITAL ALARM COMMUNICATOR TRANSMITTER

- A. Digital alarm communicator transmitter shall be acceptable to the remote central station and shall comply with UL 632.

- B. Functional Performance: Unit shall receive an alarm, supervisory, or trouble signal from fire-alarm control unit and automatically capture two telephone lines and dial a preset number for a remote central station. When contact is made with central station(s), signals shall be transmitted. If service on either line is interrupted for longer than 45 seconds, transmitter shall initiate a local trouble signal and transmit the signal indicating loss of telephone line to the remote alarm receiving station over the remaining line. Transmitter shall automatically report telephone service restoration to the central station. If service is lost on both telephone lines, transmitter shall initiate the local trouble signal.
- C. Local functions and display at the digital alarm communicator transmitter shall include the following:
 - 1. Verification that both telephone lines are available.
 - 2. Programming device.
 - 3. LED display.
 - 4. Manual test report function and manual transmission clear indication.
 - 5. Communications failure with the central station or fire-alarm control unit.
- D. Digital data transmission shall include the following:
 - 1. Address of the alarm-initiating device.
 - 2. Address of the supervisory signal.
 - 3. Address of the trouble-initiating device.
 - 4. Loss of ac supply.
 - 5. Loss of power.
 - 6. Low battery.
 - 7. Abnormal test signal.
 - 8. Communication bus failure.
- E. Secondary Power: Integral rechargeable battery and automatic charger.
- F. Self-Test: Conducted automatically every 24 hours with report transmitted to central station.

2.16 DOCUMENTATION CABINET

- A. All record documentation shall be stored in a documentation cabinet. Where the documentation cabinet is not in the same location as the main fire alarm control panel, the location shall be clearly identified at the main fire alarm control panel.
- B. The cabinet shall be painted red and labeled "Fire Alarm System Record Documents".
- C. The record documentations shall size and housed at minimum the following list of documents:
 - 1. Written brief narrative providing intent and system description.
 - 2. Record as-built drawings.
 - 3. Equipment technical data sheets.

4. Manufacturer's published instructions, including operation and maintenance instructions.
5. Battery and voltage drop calculations.
6. For software-based system, a copy of site-specific software including specific instructions on how to obtain the means of system and software access (password).
7. Completed record of completion in accordance with NFPA 72.
8. Completed record of inspection and testing in accordance with NFPA 72.

2.17 NETWORK COMMUNICATIONS

- A. Provide network communications pathway per manufacturer's written requirements and requirements in NFPA 72 and NFPA 70.
- B. Provide integration gateway using BACnet for connection to building automation system.

2.18 SYSTEM PRINTER

- A. Printer shall be listed and labeled as an integral part of fire-alarm system.

2.19 DEVICE GUARDS

- A. Description: Welded wire mesh of size and shape for the manual station, smoke detector, gong, or other device requiring protection.
 1. Factory fabricated and furnished by device manufacturer.
 2. Finish: Paint of color to match the protected device.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions for compliance with requirements for ventilation, temperature, humidity, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 1. Verify that manufacturer's written instructions for environmental conditions have been permanently established in spaces where equipment and wiring are installed, before installation begins.
- B. Examine roughing-in for electrical connections to verify actual locations of connections before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NFPA 72, NFPA 101, and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for installation and testing of fire-alarm equipment. Install all electrical wiring to comply

with requirements in NFPA 70 including, but not limited to, Article 760, "Fire Alarm Systems."

1. Devices placed in service before all other trades have completed cleanup shall be replaced.
 2. Devices installed but not yet placed in service shall be protected from construction dust, debris, dirt, moisture, and damage according to manufacturer's written storage instructions.
- B. Install wall-mounted equipment, with tops of cabinets not more than 78 inches (1980 mm) above the finished floor.
1. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in other section for "Seismic Controls for Communications Systems."
- C. Manual Fire-Alarm Boxes:
1. Install manual fire-alarm box in the normal path of egress within 60 inches (1520 mm) of the exit doorway.
 2. Mount manual fire-alarm box on a background of a contrasting color.
 3. The operable part of manual fire-alarm box shall be between 42 inches (1060 mm) and 48 inches (1220 mm) above floor level. All devices shall be mounted at the same height unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Smoke- or Heat-Detector Spacing:
1. Comply with the "Smoke-Sensing Fire Detectors" section in the "Initiating Devices" chapter in NFPA 72, for smoke-detector spacing.
 2. Comply with the "Heat-Sensing Fire Detectors" section in the "Initiating Devices" chapter in NFPA 72, for heat-detector spacing.
 3. Smooth ceiling spacing shall not exceed 30 feet (9 m).
 4. Spacing of detectors for irregular areas, for irregular ceiling construction, and for high ceiling areas shall be determined according to Annex A in NFPA 72.
 5. HVAC: Locate detectors not closer than 36 inches (910 mm) from air-supply diffuser or return-air opening.
 6. Lighting Fixtures: Locate detectors not closer than 12 inches (300 mm) from any part of a lighting fixture and not directly above pendant mounted or indirect lighting.
- E. Install a cover on each smoke detector that is not placed in service during construction. Cover shall remain in place except during system testing. Remove cover prior to system turnover.
- F. Duct Smoke Detectors: Comply with NFPA 72 and NFPA 90A. Install sampling tubes so they extend the full width of duct. Tubes more than 36 inches (9100 mm) long shall be supported at both ends.
1. Do not install smoke detector in duct smoke-detector housing during construction. Install detector only during system testing and prior to system turnover.

- G. Elevator Shafts: Coordinate temperature rating and location with sprinkler rating and location. Do not install smoke detectors in sprinklered elevator shafts.
- H. Remote Status and Alarm Indicators: Install in a visible location near each smoke detector, sprinkler water-flow switch, and valve-tamper switch that is not readily visible from normal viewing position.
- I. Audible Alarm-Indicating Devices: Install not less than 6 inches (150 mm) below the ceiling. Install speakers on flush-mounted back boxes with the device-operating mechanism concealed behind a grille. Install all devices at the same height unless otherwise indicated.
- J. Visible Alarm-Indicating Devices: Install adjacent to each alarm speaker and at least 6 inches (150 mm) below the ceiling. Install all devices at the same height unless otherwise indicated.
- K. Device Location-Indicating Lights: Locate in public space near the device they monitor.

3.3 PATHWAYS

- A. Pathways shall be installed in EMT.
- B. Exposed EMT shall be painted red enamel.

3.4 CONNECTIONS

- A. For fire-protection systems related to doors in fire-rated walls and partitions and to doors in smoke partitions, comply with requirements in other section for "Door Hardware." Connect hardware and devices to fire-alarm system.
 - 1. Verify that hardware and devices are listed for use with installed fire-alarm system before making connections.
- B. Make addressable connections with a supervised interface device to the following devices and systems. Install the interface device less than 36 inches (910 mm) from the device controlled. Make an addressable confirmation connection when such feedback is available at the device or system being controlled.
 - 1. Alarm-initiating connection to smoke-control system (smoke management) at firefighters' smoke-control system panel.
 - 2. Smoke dampers in air ducts of designated HVAC duct systems.
 - 3. Magnetically held-open doors.
 - 4. Electronically locked doors and access gates.
 - 5. Alarm-initiating connection to elevator recall system and components.
 - 6. Alarm-initiating connection to activate emergency lighting control.
 - 7. Alarm-initiating connection to activate emergency shutoffs for gas and fuel supplies.
 - 8. Supervisory connections at valve supervisory switches.
 - 9. Supervisory connections at low-air-pressure switch of each dry-pipe sprinkler system.

10. Supervisory connections at elevator shunt-trip breaker.
11. Data communication circuits for connection to building management system.
12. Data communication circuits for connection to mass notification system.
13. Supervisory connections at fire-extinguisher locations.
14. Supervisory connections at fire-pump power failure including a dead-phase or phase-reversal condition.
15. Supervisory connections at fire-pump engine control panel.

3.5 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in other section for "Identification for Communications Systems."
- B. Install framed instructions in a location visible from fire-alarm control unit.

3.6 GROUNDING

- A. Ground fire-alarm control unit and associated circuits; comply with IEEE 1100. Install a ground wire from main service ground to fire-alarm control unit.
- B. Ground shielded cables at the control panel location only. Insulate shield at device location.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field tests shall be witnessed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- C. Perform tests and inspections.
- D. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 1. Visual Inspection: Conduct visual inspection prior to testing.
 - a. Inspection shall be based on completed record Drawings and system documentation that is required by the "Completion Documents, Preparation" table in the "Documentation" section of the "Fundamentals" chapter in NFPA 72.
 - b. Comply with the "Visual Inspection Frequencies" table in the "Inspection" section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72; retain the "Initial/Reacceptance" column and list only the installed components.
 2. System Testing: Comply with the "Test Methods" table in the "Testing" section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.

3. Test audible appliances for the public operating mode according to manufacturer's written instructions. Perform the test using a portable sound-level meter complying with Type 2 requirements in ANSI S1.4.
 4. Test audible appliances for the private operating mode according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 5. Test visible appliances for the public operating mode according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 6. Factory-authorized service representative shall prepare the "Fire Alarm System Record of Completion" in the "Documentation" section of the "Fundamentals" chapter in NFPA 72 and the "Inspection and Testing Form" in the "Records" section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
- E. Reacceptance Testing: Perform reacceptance testing to verify the proper operation of added or replaced devices and appliances.
- F. Fire-alarm system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- G. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- H. Annual Test and Inspection: One year after date of Substantial Completion, test fire-alarm system complying with visual and testing inspection requirements in NFPA 72. Use forms developed for initial tests and inspections.

3.8 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain fire-alarm system.

END OF SECTION 28 4621.11

SECTION 31 1000 – SITE CLEARING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. General protection and pruning of existing trees and plants that are affected by execution of the Work, whether temporary or permanent construction.
2. Removing existing vegetation.
3. Clearing and grubbing.
4. Stripping and stockpiling topsoil.
5. Stripping and stockpiling rock.
6. Removing above and below-grade site improvements.
7. Temporary erosion and sediment controls.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Division 31 Section 2000 "Earth Moving Operations".
2. Division 31 Section 2513 "Erosion and Sediment Controls".

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Caliper: Diameter of a trunk measured by a diameter tape at a height 6 inches above the ground for trees up to and including 4-inch size at this height and as measured at a height of 12 inches above the ground for trees larger than 4-inch size.
- B. Caliper (DBH): Diameter breast height; diameter of a trunk as measured by a diameter tape at a height 54 inches above the ground line.
- C. Plant-Protection Zone: Area surrounding individual trees, groups of trees, shrubs, or other vegetation to be protected during construction and indicated on Drawings.
- D. Subsoil: Soil beneath the level of subgrade; soil beneath the topsoil layers of a naturally occurring soil profile, typified by less than 1 percent organic matter and few soil organisms.
- E. Surface Soil: Soil that is present at the top layer of the existing soil profile. In undisturbed areas, surface soil is typically called "topsoil," but in disturbed areas such as urban environments, the surface soil can be subsoil.
- F. Topsoil: Top layer of the soil profile consisting of existing native surface topsoil or existing in-place surface soil; the zone where plant roots grow.
- G. Tree-Protection Zone: Area surrounding individual trees or groups of trees to be protected during construction and indicated on Drawings.
- H. Vegetation: Trees, shrubs, groundcovers, grass, and other plants.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
- B. Review methods and procedures related to temporary tree and plant protection including, but not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Tree-service firm's personnel, and equipment needed to make progress and avoid delays.
 - 2. Arborist's responsibilities.
 - 3. Quality-control program.
 - 4. Coordination of Work and equipment movement with the locations of protection zones.
 - 5. Trenching by hand or with air spade within protection zones.
 - 6. Field quality control.

1.4 MATERIAL OWNERSHIP

- A. Except for materials indicated to be stockpiled or otherwise remain Owner's property, cleared materials shall become Contractor's property and shall be removed from Project site.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Existing Conditions: Documentation of existing trees and plantings, adjoining construction, and site improvements that establishes preconstruction conditions that might be misconstrued as damage caused by site clearing.
 - 1. Use sufficiently detailed photographs or video recordings.
 - 2. Include plans and notations to indicate specific wounds and damage conditions of each tree or other plant designated to remain.
 - 3. Detail fabrication and assembly of protection-zone fencing and signage.
- B. Tree Pruning Schedule: Written schedule detailing scope and extent of pruning of trees to remain that interfere with or are affected by construction.
 - 1. Species and size of tree.
 - 2. Location on site plan. Include unique identifier for each.
 - 3. Reason for pruning.
 - 4. Description of pruning to be performed.
 - 5. Description of maintenance following pruning.
- C. Topsoil stripping and stockpiling program.
- D. Rock stockpiling program.
- E. Record Drawings: Identifying and accurately showing locations of capped utilities and other subsurface structural, electrical, and mechanical conditions.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Tree Service Firm Qualifications: An experienced tree service firm that has successfully completed temporary tree and plant protection work similar to that required for this Project and that will assign an experienced, qualified arborist to Project site during execution of the Work.
- B. Topsoil Stripping and Stockpiling Program: Prepare a written program to systematically demonstrate the ability of personnel to properly follow procedures and handle materials and equipment during the Work. Include dimensioned diagrams for placement and protection of stockpiles.
- C. Rock Stockpiling Program: Prepare a written program to systematically demonstrate the ability of personnel to properly follow procedures and handle materials and equipment during the Work. Include dimensioned diagrams for placement and protection of stockpiles.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Traffic: Minimize interference with adjoining roads, streets, walks, and other adjacent occupied or used facilities during site-clearing operations.
 - 1. Do not close or obstruct streets, walks, or other adjacent occupied or used facilities without permission from Owner and authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 2. Provide alternate routes around closed or obstructed trafficways if required by Owner or authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Improvements on Adjoining Property: Authority for performing site clearing indicated on property adjoining Owner's property will be obtained by Owner before award of Contract.
 - 1. Do not proceed with work on adjoining property until directed by Architect.
- C. Salvageable Improvements: Carefully remove items indicated to be salvaged and store on Owner's premises in a location designated by the Owner. Avoid damaging materials designated for salvage.
- D. Utility Locator Service: Notify Call Before You Dig for area where Project is located before site clearing.
- E. Do not commence site clearing operations until temporary erosion- and sedimentation-control tree protection measures are in place.
- F. Soil Stripping, Handling, and Stockpiling: Perform only when the soil is dry or slightly moist.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Satisfactory Soil Material: Requirements for satisfactory soil material are specified in Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving Operations."

1. Obtain approved borrow soil material off-site when satisfactory soil material is not available on-site.
- B. Protection-Zone Fencing: Fencing fixed in position and meeting the following requirements:
 1. Chain-Link Protection-Zone Fencing: Galvanized-steel fencing fabricated from minimum 2-inch (50-mm) opening, 0.148-inch- (3.76-mm-) diameter wire chain-link fabric; with pipe posts, minimum 2-3/8-inch- (60-mm-) OD line posts, and 2-inch- (73-mm-) OD corner and pull posts; with 1-5/8-inch- (42-mm-) OD top rails; with 0.177-inch- (4.5-mm-) diameter top tension wire and 0.177-inch- (4.5-mm-) diameter bottom tension wire; with tie wires, hog ring ties, and other accessories for a complete fence system.
 - a. Height: 96 inches.
 - b. Retain "Polymer-Coating Color" Subparagraph below if retaining polymer coating.
 2. Retain one or more of four fencing subparagraphs below for protection-zone fencing. Fence materials are listed in order of strongest to weakest. Retain stronger fencing where damage potential to an individual tree, group of trees, or plantings is higher. Revise post and rail diameters to suit fence height and strength required. The more expensive polymer coating may have better appearance but may be less visible to workers.
 3. Revise "Plywood Protection-Zone Fencing" Subparagraph below to suit Project; coordinate with details shown on Drawings. Insert requirements for paint and color if required.
 4. Revise "Wood Protection-Zone Fencing" Subparagraph below to suit Project; coordinate with details shown on Drawings. Insert requirements for paint and color if required.
 5. Wood Protection-Zone Fencing: Constructed of two 2-by-4-inch horizontal rails, with 2-by-4-inch preservative-treated wood posts spaced not more than 96 inches) apart, and lower rail set halfway between top rail and ground. See Temporary Wooden Tree Guard detail in contract drawings.
 - a. Height: 48 inches.
 - b. Lumber: Yellow Pine, Douglas Fir or Spruce.
 6. Plastic Protection-Zone Fencing: Plastic construction fencing constructed of high-density extruded and stretched polyethylene fabric with 2-inch maximum opening in pattern and weighing a minimum of 0.4 lb/ft.; remaining flexible from minus 60 to plus 200 deg F; inert to most chemicals and acids; minimum tensile yield strength of 2000 psi and ultimate tensile strength of 2680 psi; secured with plastic bands or galvanized-steel or stainless-steel wire ties; and supported by tubular or T-shape galvanized-steel posts spaced not more than 96 inches apart.
 - a. Height: 48 inches.
 - b. Color: High-visibility orange, nonfading.
 7. Protection-Zone Signage: Shop-fabricated, rigid plastic or metal sheet with attachment holes prepunched and reinforced; legibly printed with nonfading lettering and as follows:
 - a. Size and Text: As shown on Drawings

- b. Lettering: 3-inch-(75-mm) high minimum, black characters on white background.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Protect and maintain benchmarks and survey control points from disturbance during construction.
- B. Revise first paragraph below to suit regional standards or office practices; coordinate with Section 015639 "Temporary Tree and Plant Protection."
- C. Protect tree root systems from damage caused by runoff or spillage of noxious materials while mixing, placing, or storing construction materials. Protect root systems from ponding, eroding, or excessive wetting caused by dewatering operations.
- D. Tree-Protection Zones: Mulch areas inside tree-protection zones and other areas indicated. Do not exceed indicated thickness of mulch.
 - 1. Apply 2-inch uniform thickness of organic mulch unless otherwise indicated. Do not place mulch within 6 inches of tree trunks.
- E. Protect existing site improvements to remain from damage during construction.
 - 1. Restore damaged improvements to their original condition, as acceptable to Owner.

3.2 EROSION AND SEDIMENT CONTROLS

- A. Provide temporary erosion and sediment controls according to the requirements of the Erosion and Sediment Control plans and Section 31 2500 "Erosion and Sediment Controls". Prevent soil erosion and discharge of soil-bearing water runoff or airborne dust to adjacent properties and walkways, according to erosion- and sedimentation-control Drawings and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Verify that flows of water redirected from construction areas or generated by construction activity do not enter or cross protection zones.
- C. Inspect, maintain, and repair erosion- and sedimentation-control measures during construction until permanent vegetation has been established.
- D. Remove erosion and sedimentation controls and restore and stabilize areas disturbed during removal.

3.3 TREE AND PLANT PROTECTION ZONES

- A. Protection-Zone Fencing: Install protection-zone fencing along edges of protection zones before materials or equipment are brought on the site and construction operations begin in a manner that will prevent people and animals from easily entering

protected areas except by entrance gates. Construct fencing so as not to obstruct safe passage or visibility at vehicle intersections where fencing is located adjacent to pedestrian walkways or in close proximity to street intersections, drives, or other vehicular circulation.

1. Retain "Chain-Link Fencing" Subparagraph below if required.
 2. Chain-Link Fencing: Install to comply with ASTM F567 and with manufacturer's written instructions.
 3. Posts: Set or drive posts into ground one-third the total height of the fence without concrete footings. Where a post is located on existing paving or concrete to remain, provide appropriate means of post support acceptable to Architect.
 4. Access Gates: Install where indicated; adjust to operate smoothly, easily, and quietly; free of binding, warp, excessive deflection, distortion, nonalignment, misplacement, disruption, or malfunction throughout entire operational range. Confirm that latches and locks engage accurately and securely without forcing or binding.
- B. Protection-Zone Signage: Install protection-zone signage in visibly prominent locations in a manner approved by Architect. Install one sign spaced approximately every 20 feet on protection-zone fencing, but no fewer than four signs with each facing a different direction.
- C. Maintain protection zones free of weeds and trash.
- D. Maintain protection-zone fencing and signage in good condition as acceptable to Architect and remove when construction operations are complete, and equipment has been removed from the site.
1. Do not remove protection-zone fencing, even temporarily, to allow deliveries or equipment access through the protection zone.
 2. Temporary access is permitted subject to preapproval in writing by arborist if a root buffer effective against soil compaction is constructed as directed by arborist. Maintain root buffer so long as access is permitted.

3.4 CLEARING AND GRUBBING

- A. Remove obstructions, trees, shrubs, and other vegetation to permit installation of new construction as indicated on the Drawings.
1. Do not remove trees, shrubs, and other vegetation indicated to remain or to be relocated.
 2. Grind down stumps and remove roots larger than 2 inches in diameter, obstructions, and debris to a depth of 36 inches below exposed subgrade.
 3. Use only hand methods or air spade for grubbing within protection zones.
 4. Chip removed tree branches and dispose of off-site.
- B. Fill depressions caused by clearing and grubbing operations with satisfactory soil material unless further excavation or earthwork is indicated.

1. Place fill material in horizontal layers not exceeding a loose depth of 8 inches and compact each layer to a density equal to adjacent original ground.

3.5 EXCAVATION

- A. General: Excavate at edge of protection zones and for trenches indicated within protection zones according to requirements in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Trenching within Protection Zones: Where utility trenches are required within protection zones, excavate under or around tree roots by hand or with air spade, or tunnel under the roots by drilling, auger boring, or pipe jacking. Do not cut main lateral tree roots or taproots; cut only smaller roots that interfere with installation of utilities. Cut roots as required for root pruning. If excavating by hand, use narrow-tine spading forks to comb soil and expose roots.
- C. Redirect roots in backfill areas where possible. If encountering large, main lateral roots, expose roots beyond excavation limits as required to bend and redirect them without breaking. If encountered immediately adjacent to location of new construction and redirection is not practical, cut roots approximately 3 inches back from new construction and as required for root pruning.
- D. Do not allow exposed roots to dry out before placing permanent backfill. Provide temporary earth cover or pack with peat moss and wrap with burlap. Water and maintain in a moist condition. Temporarily support and protect roots from damage until they are permanently relocated and covered with soil.

3.6 ROOT PRUNING

- A. Prune tree roots that are affected by temporary and permanent construction. Prune roots as follows:
 1. Cut roots manually by digging a trench and cutting exposed roots with sharp pruning instruments; do not break, tear, chop, or slant the cuts. Do not use a backhoe or other equipment that rips, tears, or pulls roots.
 2. Cut Ends: Do not paint cut root ends.
 3. Temporarily support and protect roots from damage until they are permanently redirected and covered with soil.
 4. Cover exposed roots with burlap and water regularly.
 5. Backfill as soon as possible according to requirements in Section 31 2000 "Earth Moving Operations".

3.7 TOPSOIL STRIPPING AND STOCKPILING

- A. Remove sod and grass before stripping topsoil.
- B. Strip topsoil as indicated on the Drawings to depth of 6 inches in a manner to prevent intermingling with underlying subsoil or other waste materials.

1. Remove subsoil and non-soil materials from topsoil, including clay lumps, gravel, and other objects larger than 2 inches in diameter; trash, debris, weeds, roots, and other waste materials.
- C. Stockpile topsoil away from edge of excavations without intermixing with subsoil or other materials. Grade and shape stockpiles to drain surface water. Cover to prevent windblown dust and erosion by water. Install silt fence 10 feet from the toe of the slope per Section 31 2500 "Erosion and Sediment Controls".
 1. Limit height of topsoil stockpiles to 72 inches.
 2. Limit slope of topsoil stockpiles to 2:1.
 3. Do not stockpile topsoil within protection zones.
 4. Dispose of surplus topsoil. Surplus topsoil is that which exceeds quantity indicated to be stockpiled or reused.
 5. Stockpile surplus topsoil to allow for respreading deeper topsoil.

3.8 STOCKPILING ROCK

- A. Remove from construction area naturally formed rocks that measure more than 1 foot across in least dimension. Do not include excavated or crushed rock.
 1. Separate or wash off non-rock materials from rocks, including soil, clay lumps, gravel, and other objects larger than 2 inches in diameter; trash, debris, weeds, roots, and other waste materials.
- B. Stockpile rock away from edge of excavations without intermixing with other materials. Cover to prevent windblown debris from accumulating among rocks.
 1. Limit height of rock stockpiles to 36 inches.
 2. Do not stockpile rock within protection zones.
 3. Dispose of surplus rock. Surplus rock is that which exceeds quantity indicated to be stockpiled or reused.
 4. Stockpile surplus rock to allow later use by the Owner.

3.9 DISPOSAL OF SURPLUS AND WASTE MATERIALS

- A. Remove surplus soil material, unsuitable topsoil, obstructions, demolished materials, and waste materials including trash and debris, and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.
- B. Separate recyclable materials produced during site clearing from other nonrecyclable materials. Store or stockpile without intermixing with other materials and transport them to recycling facilities. Do not interfere with other Project work.

END OF SECTION 31 1000

SECTION 31 2000 – EARTH-MOVING OPERATIONS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Excavating and filling for rough and final grading the site.
 - 2. Dewatering.
 - 3. Preparing subgrades for walks, pavements, turf and grasses and plants.
 - 4. Excavating and backfilling for building and structures.
 - 5. Drainage course for concrete slabs on-grade.
 - 6. Subbase course and base course for asphalt paving.
 - 7. Subsurface drainage backfills for walls and trenches.
 - 8. Excavating and backfilling trenches for all utilities, utility vaults and test pits.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Division 31 Section 1000 "Site Clearing" for site stripping, grubbing, stripping and stockpiling topsoil, and removal of above and below-grade improvements and utilities.
 - 2. Division 32 Section 2500 "Erosion and Sediment Control".
 - 3. Division 32 Section 1216 "Asphalt Paving".
 - 4. Division 32 Section 1313 "Concrete Paving".
 - 5. Division 32 Section 1623 "Sidewalks".
 - 6. Division 32 Section 9113 "Soil Preparation"
 - 7. Division 32 Section 9200 "Turf and Grasses" for finish grading in turf and grass areas, including preparing and placing planting soil for turf areas.
 - 8. Division 32 Section 9300 "Plants" for finish grading in planting areas and tree and shrub pit excavation and planting.
 - 9. Division 33 Section 1417 "Site Water Utility Distribution Piping and Valves".
 - 10. Division 33 Section 3113 "Sanitary Sewage Gravity Piping".
 - 11. Division 33 Section 4200 "Site Stormwater Conveyance".

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Backfill: Soil material or controlled low-strength material used to fill an excavation.
 - 1. Initial Backfill: Backfill placed beside and over pipe in a trench, including haunches to support sides of pipe.
 - 2. Final Backfill: Backfill placed over initial backfill to fill a trench.
- B. Base Course: Aggregate layer placed between the subbase course and hot-mix asphalt paving.
- C. Bedding Course: Aggregate layer placed over the excavated subgrade in a trench before laying pipe.

- D. Borrow Soil: Satisfactory soil imported from off-site for use as fill or backfill.
- E. Drainage Course: Aggregate layer supporting the slab-on-grade that also minimizes upward capillary flow of pore water.
- F. Excavation: Removal of material encountered above subgrade elevations and to lines and dimensions indicated.
 - 1. Authorized Additional Excavation: Excavation below subgrade elevations or beyond indicated lines and dimensions as directed by Engineer.
 - 2. Bulk Excavation: Excavation more than 10 feet in width and more than 30 feet in length.
 - 3. Unauthorized Excavation: Excavation below subgrade elevations or beyond indicated lines and dimensions without direction by Engineer. Unauthorized excavation, as well as remedial work directed by the Engineer, shall be without additional compensation.
- G. Fill: Soil materials used to raise existing grades
- H. Rock: Rock material in beds, ledges, unstratified masses, conglomerate deposits, and boulders of rock material that exceed 1 cu. yd. for bulk excavation or 3/4 cu. yd. for footing, trench, and pit excavation that cannot be removed by rock-excavating equipment equivalent to the following in size and performance ratings, without systematic drilling, ram hammering, ripping, or blasting, when permitted:
 - 1. Equipment for Footing, Trench, and Pit Excavation: Late-model, track-mounted hydraulic excavator; equipped with a 42-inch- maximum-width, short-tip-radius rock bucket; rated at not less than 138-hp flywheel power with bucket-curling force of not less than 28,700 lbf and stick-crowd force of not less than 18,400 lbf with extra-long reach boom.
 - 2. Equipment for Bulk Excavation: Late-model, track-mounted loader; rated at not less than 230-hp flywheel power and developing a minimum of 47,992-lbf breakout force with a general-purpose bare bucket.
- I. Structures: Buildings, footings, foundations, retaining walls, slabs, tanks, curbs, mechanical and electrical appurtenances, or other man-made stationary features constructed above or below the ground surface.
- J. Subbase Course: Aggregate layer placed between the subgrade and base course for hot-mix asphalt pavement, or aggregate layer placed between the subgrade and a cement concrete pavement or a cement concrete, or hot-mix asphalt walk, or aggregate layer placed below a permeable grass roadway pavers (PCG).
- K. Subgrade: Uppermost surface of an excavation or the top surface of a fill or backfill immediately below subbase, drainage fill, drainage course, or topsoil materials.
- L. Utilities: On-site underground pipes, conduits, ducts, and cables as well as underground services within buildings.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct pre-excavation conference at Tabler Hall Project Site on Stony Brook University Campus.
 - 1. Review methods and procedures related to earthmoving, including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Personnel and equipment needed to make progress and avoid delays.
 - b. Coordination of Work with utility locator service.
 - c. Coordination of Work and equipment movement with the locations of tree- and plant-protection zones.
 - d. Extent of trenching by hand or with air spade.
 - e. Field quality control.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Required for each type of the following manufactured products:
 - 1. Geotextiles.
 - 2. Controlled low-strength material, including design mixture.
 - 3. Warning tapes.
- B. Samples for Verification: For the following products, in sizes indicated below:
 - 1. Geotextile: 12 by 12 inches
 - 2. Warning Tape: 12-inches long; of each color.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: From qualified geotechnical testing agency
- B. Material Test Reports: For each on-site and borrow soil material proposed for fill and backfill as follows:
 - 1. Classification according to ASTM D2487.
 - 2. Laboratory compaction curve according to ASTM D698 or ASTM D1557.
 - 3. Gradation curve according to ASTM C136.
- C. Pre-excavation Photographs or Videotape: Show existing conditions of adjoining construction and site improvements, including finish surfaces that might be misconstrued as damage caused by earth-moving operations. Submit before the earth begins.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Geotechnical Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E329 and ASTM D3740 for testing indicated.

- B. Material Testing Laboratory: New York State material testing certification/license.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Traffic: Minimize interference with adjoining roads, streets, walks, and other adjacent occupied or used facilities during earth-moving operations.
 - 1. Do not close or obstruct streets, walks, or other adjacent occupied or used facilities without permission from Owner and authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 2. Provide alternate routes around closed or obstructed traffic ways if required by Owner or authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Improvements on Adjoining Property: Authority for performing earth moving indicated on property adjoining Owner's property will be obtained by Owner before award of Contract.
 - 1. Do not proceed with work on adjoining property until directed by Engineer.
- C. Utility Locator Service: Notify Call Before You Dig for area where Project is located before beginning earth-moving operations.
- D. Do not commence earth-moving operations until temporary site fencing, plant-protection measures, and erosion and sedimentation-control measures specified in Section 31 1000 "Site Clearing" are in place.
- E. The following practices are prohibited within limits of work:
 - 1. Storage of construction materials, debris, or excavated material.
 - 2. Parking vehicles or equipment.
 - 3. Foot traffic.
 - 4. Erection of sheds or structures.
 - 5. Impoundment of water.
 - 6. Excavation or other digging unless otherwise indicated.
 - 7. Attachment of signs to or wrapping materials around trees or plants unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Do not direct vehicle or equipment exhaust towards limits of work.
- G. Prohibit heat sources, flames, ignition sources, and smoking within or near limits of work.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOIL MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide borrow soil materials when there is not a sufficient satisfactory soil material available from excavations, or when unsatisfactory soils are found during excavations.

- B. Satisfactory Soils: Soil Classification Groups GW, GP, GM, SW, SP, and SM according to ASTM D2487 Groups A-1, A-2-4, A-2-5, and A-3 according to AASHTO M 145], or a combination of these groups; free of rock or gravel larger than 3-inches in any dimension, debris, waste, frozen materials, vegetation, and other deleterious matter.
 - 1. Liquid Limit: 25%.
 - 2. Plasticity Index: 10% Unsatisfactory Soils: Soil Classification Groups GC, SC, CL, ML, OL, CH, MH, OH, and PT according to ASTM D2487 Groups A-2-6, A-2-7, A-4, A-5, A-6, and A-7 according to AASHTO M 145, or a combination of these groups.
 - 3. Unsatisfactory soils also include satisfactory soils not maintained within 2 percent of optimum moisture content at time of compaction.
- C. Sand: ASTM C33/C33M; fine aggregate.
- D. Subbase Material: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D2940/D2940M; with at least 90 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch sieve and not more than 12 percent passing a No. 200 sieve.
- E. Base Course: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D2940/D2940M; with at least 95 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch sieve and not more than 8 percent passing a No. 200 sieve.
- F. Engineered Fill: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D2940/D2940M; with at least 90 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch sieve and not more than 12 percent passing a No. 200 sieve.
- G. Bedding Course: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D2940/D2940M; except with 100 percent passing a 1-inch sieve and not more than 8 percent passing a No. 200 sieve.
- H. Drainage Course: Narrowly graded mixture of washed crushed stone or crushed or uncrushed gravel; ASTM D448; coarse-aggregate grading Size 57; with 100 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch sieve and zero to 5 percent passing a No. 8 sieve.
- I. Impervious Fill: Clayey gravel and sand mixture capable of compacting to a dense state.

2.2 GEOTEXTILES

- A. Subsurface Drainage Geotextile: Nonwoven needle-punched geotextile, manufactured for subsurface drainage applications, made from polyolefins or polyesters; with elongation greater than 50 percent; complying with AASHTO M 288 and the following, measured per test methods referenced:

1. Survivability: Class 2; AASHTO M 288
 2. Survivability: As follows:
 - a. Grab Tensile Strength: 157 lbf (700 N); ASTM D4632.
 - b. Sewn Seam Strength: 142 lbf (630 N); ASTM D4632.
 - c. Tear Strength: 56 lbf (250 N); ASTM D4533.
 - d. Puncture Strength: 309 lbf (250 N); ASTM D4833.
 3. Apparent Opening Size: No. 70 sieve, maximum; ASTM D4751.
 4. Permittivity: [0.2] per second, minimum; ASTM D4491.
 5. UV Stability: 50 percent after 500 hours' exposure; ASTM D4355.
- B. Separation Geotextile: Woven geotextile fabric, manufactured for separation applications, made from polyolefins or polyesters; with elongation less than 50 percent; complying with AASHTO M 288 and the following, measured per test methods referenced:
1. Survivability: Class 2; AASHTO M 288.
 2. Survivability: As follows:
 - a. Grab Tensile Strength: 247 lbf (1100 N); ASTM D4632.
 - b. Sewn Seam Strength: 222 lbf (990 N); ASTM D4632.
 - c. Tear Strength: 90 lbf (400 N); ASTM D4533.
 - d. Puncture Strength: 495 lbf (400 N); ASTM D4833.
 3. Apparent Opening Size: No. 30 sieve, maximum; ASTM D4751.
 4. Permittivity: 0.02 per second, minimum; ASTM D4491.
 5. UV Stability: 50 percent after 500 hours' exposure; ASTM D4355
- ## 2.3 CONTROLLED LOW-STRENGTH MATERIAL
- A. Controlled Low-Strength Material: Self-compacting, low-density, flowable concrete material produced from the following.
1. Portland Cement: ASTM C150/C150M, Type or Type II.
 2. Fly Ash: ASTM C618, Class C or F.
 3. Normal-Weight Aggregate: ASTM C33/C33M, 3/8-inch nominal maximum aggregate size.
 4. Water: ASTM C94/C94M.
 5. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C260/C260M.
- B. Produce low-density, controlled low-strength material with the following physical properties:
1. As-Cast Unit Weight: to 42 lb/cu. ft. at point of placement, when tested according to ASTM C138/C138M.

2. Compressive Strength: 140 psi, when tested according to ASTM C495/C495M.

C. Produce conventional-weight, controlled low-strength material with 140-psi compressive strength when tested according to ASTM C495/C495M.

2.4 ACCESSORIES

A. Warning Tape: Acid- and alkali-resistant, polyethylene film warning tape manufactured for marking and identifying underground utilities, 6-inches wide and 4 mils thick, continuously inscribed with a description of the utility; colored as follows:

1. Red: Electric.
2. Yellow: Gas, oil, steam, and dangerous materials.
3. Orange: Telephone and other communications.
4. Blue: Water systems.
5. Green: Sewer systems.

B. Detectable Warning Tape: Acid- and alkali-resistant, polyethylene film warning tape manufactured for marking and identifying underground utilities, a minimum of 6-inches wide and 4 mils thick, continuously inscribed with a description of the utility, with metallic core encased in a protective jacket for corrosion protection, detectable by metal detector when tape is buried up to 30-inches deep; colored as follows:

1. Red: Electric.
2. Yellow: Gas, oil, steam, and dangerous materials.
3. Orange: Telephone and other communications.
4. Blue: Water systems.
5. Green: Sewer systems

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities from damage caused by settlement, lateral movement, undermining, washout, and other hazards created by earth-moving operations.

B. Protect and maintain erosion and sedimentation controls during earth-moving operations.

C. Protect subgrades and foundation soils from freezing temperatures and frost. Remove temporary protection before placing subsequent materials.

3.2 DEWATERING

- A. Provide dewatering system of sufficient scope, size, and capacity to control hydrostatic pressures and to lower, control, remove, and dispose of ground water and permit excavation and construction to proceed on dry, stable subgrades.
- B. Prevent surface water and ground water from entering excavations, from ponding on prepared subgrades, and from flooding Project site and surrounding area.
- C. Protect subgrades from softening, undermining, washout, and damage by rain or water accumulation.
 - 1. Reroute surface water runoff away from excavated areas. Do not allow water to accumulate in excavations. Do not use excavated trenches as temporary drainage ditches.
- D. Dispose of water removed by dewatering in a manner that avoids endangering public health, property, and portions of work under construction or completed. Dispose of water and sediment in a manner that avoids inconvenience to others.

3.3 EXPLOSIVES

- A. Explosives: The use of explosives is not permitted.

3.4 EXCAVATION, GENERAL

- A. Unclassified Excavation: Excavate to subgrade elevations regardless of the character of surface and subsurface conditions encountered. Unclassified excavated materials may include rock, soil materials, brick, concrete, glass, manmade materials and other obstructions.
 - 1. If excavated materials intended for fill and backfill include unsatisfactory soil materials and rock, replace with satisfactory soil materials.
 - 2. Remove rock to lines and grades indicated to permit installation of permanent construction.
- B. Classified Excavation: Excavate to subgrade elevations. Material to be excavated will be classified as earth and rock. Do not excavate rock until it has been classified and cross sectioned by Engineer.
 - 1. Earth excavation includes excavating pavements and obstructions visible on surface; underground structures, utilities, and other items indicated to be removed; and soil, boulders, and other materials not classified as rock or unclassified excavation.
 - a. Intermittent drilling: blasting, if permitted; ram hammering; or ripping of material not classified as rock excavation is earth excavation.

2. Rock excavation includes removal and disposal of rock. Remove rock to lines and subgrade elevations indicated to permit installation of permanent construction.

3.5 EXCAVATION FOR STRUCTURES

- A. Excavate to indicated elevations and dimensions within a tolerance of plus or minus 1-inch. If applicable, extend excavations a sufficient distance from structures for placing and removing concrete formwork, for installing services and other construction, and for inspections.
 1. Excavations for Footings and Foundations: Do not disturb bottom of excavation. Excavate by hand to final grade just before placing concrete reinforcement. Trim bottoms to required lines and grades to leave solid base to receive other work.
 2. Pile Foundations: Stop excavations 6 to 12-inches above bottom of pile cap before piles are placed. After piles have been driven, remove loose and displaced material. Excavate to final grade, leaving solid base to receive concrete pile caps.
 3. Excavation for Underground Tanks, Basins, and Mechanical or Electrical Utility Structures: Excavate to elevations and dimensions indicated within a tolerance of plus or minus 1-inch. Do not disturb the bottom of excavations intended as bearing surfaces.
- B. Excavations at Edges of Tree and Plant Protection Zones:
 1. Excavate by hand or with an air spade to indicated lines, cross sections, elevations, and subgrades. If excavating by hand, use narrow tine spading forks to comb soil and expose roots. Do not break, tear, or chop exposed roots. Do not use mechanical equipment that rips, tears, or pulls roots.
 2. Cut and protect roots according to requirements in Section 311000 "Site Clearing".

3.6 EXCAVATION FOR WALKS AND PAVEMENTS

- A. Excavate surfaces under walks and pavements to indicated lines, cross sections, elevations, and subgrades.

3.7 EXCAVATION FOR SEWER AND UTILITY TRENCHES

- A. Excavate trenches to indicated gradients, lines, depths, and elevations.
 1. Beyond building perimeter, excavate trenches to allow installation of top of pipe below frost line.
- B. Excavate trenches to uniform widths to provide the following clearance on each side of pipe or conduit. Excavate trench walls vertically from trench bottom to 12-inches higher than top of pipe or conduit unless otherwise indicated.

1. Clearance for sewer piping: 12-inches minimum on each side of sanitary and storm sewer pipe and conduit.
 2. Clearance for water piping: 2 x pipe diameter minimum for trench width for water pipes.
 3. Clearance for telecommunication and electrical duct banks: 12-inches minimum on each side of concrete encasement for duct bank, or as required in plans.
 4. Clearance for high temperature hot water line: 12-inches minimum from trench wall to outer conduit. Trench width to be 24' maximum or as required in plans.
- C. Trench Bottoms: Excavate and shape trench bottoms to provide uniform bearing and support of pipes and conduit. Shape subgrades to provide continuous support for bells, joints, and barrels of pipes and for joints, fittings, and bodies of conduits. Remove projecting stones and sharp objects along trench subgrade.
1. For pipes and conduits less than 6-inches in nominal diameter, hand-excavate trench bottoms and support pipe and conduit on an undisturbed subgrade.
 2. For pipes and conduit 6-inches or larger in nominal diameter, shape bottom of trench to support bottom 90 degrees of pipe or conduit circumference. Fill depressions with tamped sand backfill.
 3. For flat-bottomed, multiple-duct conduit units, hand-excavate trench bottoms and support conduit on an undisturbed subgrade.
 4. Excavate trenches 6-inches deeper than bottom of pipe and conduit elevations to allow for bedding course. Hand-excavate deeper for bells of pipe.
 5. Excavate trenches 6-inches deeper than elevation required in rock or other unyielding bearing material to allow for bedding course.
- D. Trenches in Tree- and Plant-Protection Zones:
1. Hand-excavate to indicated lines, cross sections, elevations, and subgrades. Use narrow-tine spading forks to comb soil and expose roots. Do not break, tear, or chop exposed roots. Do not use mechanical equipment that rips, tears, or pulls roots.
 2. Do not cut main lateral roots or taproots; cut only smaller roots that interfere with installation of utilities.
 3. Cut and protect roots according to requirements in Section 311000 "Site Clearing".

3.8 SUBGRADE INSPECTION

- A. Notify Engineer when excavations have reached required subgrade.
- B. If Engineer determines that unsatisfactory soil is present, continue excavation and replace it with compacted backfill or borrow soil fill material as directed.

- C. Proof-roll subgrade below the building slabs and pavements with a pneumatic-tired and loaded 10-wheel, tandem-axle dump truck weighing not less than 15 tons to identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding. Do not proof-roll wet or saturated subgrades.
 - 1. Completely proof-roll subgrade in one direction, Limit vehicle speed to 3 mph.
 - 2. Excavate soft spots, unsatisfactory soils, and areas of excessive pumping or rutting, as determined by the Engineer, and replace with compacted backfill or borrow soil fill as directed.
- D. Reconstruct subgrades damaged by freezing temperatures, frost, rain, accumulated water, or construction activities, as directed by Engineer, without additional compensation.

3.9 UNAUTHORIZED EXCAVATION

- A. Fill unauthorized excavation under foundations or wall footings by extending bottom elevation of concrete foundation or footing to excavation bottom, without altering top elevation. Lean concrete fill, with 28-day compressive strength of 2500 psi, may be used when approved by Engineer.
 - 1. Fill unauthorized excavations under other construction, pipe, or conduit as directed by Engineer.

3.10 STORAGE OF SOIL MATERIALS

- A. Stockpile borrow soil materials and excavated satisfactory soil materials without intermixing. Place, grade, and shape stockpiles to drain surface water. Cover to prevent windblown dust.
 - 1. Stockpile soil materials away from edge of excavations. Do not store within drip line of remaining trees.

3.11 BACKFILL

- A. Place and compact backfill in excavations promptly, but not before completing the following:
 - 1. Construction below finish grade including, where applicable, subdrainage, damp proofing, waterproofing, and perimeter insulation.
 - 2. Surveying locations of underground utilities for Record Documents.
 - 3. Testing and inspecting underground utilities.
 - 4. Removing concrete formwork.
 - 5. Removing trash and debris.
 - 6. Removing temporary shoring, bracing, and sheeting.
 - 7. Installing permanent or temporary horizontal bracing on horizontally supported walls.

- B. Place backfill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.

3.12 SEWER TRENCH BACKFILL

- A. Place backfill for HDPE and PVC sewer pipes according to the following:
 - 1. Trench width shall be a minimum of 12" each side plus the outside diameter of the pipe. Trench width shall not exceed that required for proper installation backfill and compaction operations. Trench walls to conform to O.S.H.A. regulations.
 - 2. Provide 6" thick of $\frac{3}{4}$ " stone bedding at the bottom of the pipe and compact to pipe manufacturer's recommendations.
 - 3. Provide suitable pipe backfill material 12" above the top of the pipe, in 8" layers and compact to within 95% of the maximum dry density per ASTM D 1557 (Modified Proctor Density).
 - 4. Provide suitable trench backfill material from subgrade or ground surface to 12" above the top of the pipe. Compact in 8" lifts to within 95% of the maximum dry density per ASTM D 1557 (Modified Proctor Density).
 - 5. All suitable backfill and stone bedding shall be as per specifications and approved by the geotechnical engineer prior to installation.
 - 6. Where trench passes through existing pavement, the pavement shall be mechanically cut. Patching shall consist of tacking edges of existing pavement and installing new pavement compaction in accordance with specifications.
- B. Place backfill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.
- C. Trenches under Roadways: Provide 4-inch-thick, concrete-base slab support for piping or conduit less than 30-inches below surface of roadways. After installing and testing, completely encase piping or conduit in a minimum of 4-inches of concrete before backfilling or placing roadway subbase course.

3.13 WATER MAIN TRENCH BACKFILL

- A. Place backfill for ductile iron water main pipes according to the following:
 - 1. Provide trench width minimum 2 x of the pipe outside diameter. Trench walls to conform to O.S.H.A. regulations.
 - 2. Provide clean sand from 6" of the bottom of the water main to 12" above the top of the water main. Compact to within 95% of the maximum dry density per ASTM D 1557 (Modified Proctor Density).
 - 3. Provide suitable backfill completed to 95% of the maximum dry density per ASTM D 1557 (Modified Proctor Density).
 - 4. Provide final backfill and finish surface.
- B. Place backfill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.
- C. Warning Tape: Install warning tape directly above utilities, 18-inches below finished grade, except 6-inches below subgrade under pavements and slabs.

3.14 UTILITY TRENCH BACKFILL

- A. Place backfill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.
- B. Place and compact bedding course on trench bottoms and where indicated. Shape bedding course to provide continuous support for bells, joints, and barrels of pipes and for joints, fittings, and bodies of conduits.
- C. Trenches under Footings: Backfill trenches excavated under footings and within 18-inches of bottom of footings with satisfactory soil; fill with concrete to elevation of bottom of footings.
- D. Trenches under Roadways: Provide 4-inch-thick, concrete- for piping or conduit less than 30-inches below surface of roadways. After installing and base slab support testing, completely encase piping or conduit in a minimum of 4-inches of concrete before backfilling or placing roadway subbase course.
- E. Backfill voids with satisfactory soil while removing shoring and bracing.
- F. Initial Backfill:
 - 1. Soil Backfill: Place and compact initial backfill of subbase material satisfactory soil, free of particles larger than 1-inch in any dimension, to a height of 12-inches over the pipe or conduit.
 - a. Carefully compact initial backfills under pipe haunches and compact evenly up on both sides and along the full length of piping or conduit to avoid damage or displacement of piping or conduit. Coordinate backfilling with utilities testing.
 - 2. Controlled Low-Strength Material: Place initial backfill of controlled low-strength material to a height of 12-inches over the pipe or conduit. Coordinate backfilling with utilities testing.
- G. Final Backfill:
 - 1. Soil Backfill: Place and compact final backfill of satisfactory soil to final subgrade elevation.
 - 2. Controlled Low-Strength Material: Place final backfill of controlled low-strength material to final subgrade elevation.
- H. Warning Tape: Install warning tape directly above utilities, 18-inches below finished grade, except 6-inches below subgrade under pavements and slabs.

3.15 SOIL FILL

- A. Plow, scarify, bench, or break up sloped surfaces steeper than 1 vertical to 4 horizontal so fill material will bond with existing material.
- B. Place and compact fill material in layers to required elevations as follows:

1. Under grass and planted areas, use satisfactory soil material.
2. Under walks and pavements, use satisfactory soil material.
3. Under steps and ramps, use engineered fill.
4. Under building slabs, use engineered fill.
5. Under footings and foundations, use engineered fill.

C. Place soil fill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.

3.16 SOIL MOISTURE CONTROL

A. Uniformly moisten or aerate subgrade and each subsequent fill or backfill soil layer before compaction to within 2 percent of optimum moisture content.

1. Do not place backfill or fill soil material on surfaces that are muddy, frozen, or contain frost or ice.
2. Remove and replace, or scarify and air dry, otherwise satisfactory soil material that exceeds optimum moisture content by 2 percent and is too wet to compact to specified dry unit weight.

3.17 COMPACTION OF SOIL BACKFILLS AND FILLS

A. Place backfill and fill soil materials in layers not more than 8-inches in loose depth for material compacted by heavy compaction equipment and not more than 4-inches in loose depth for material compacted by hand-operated tampers.

B. Place backfill and fill soil materials evenly on all sides of structures to required elevations and uniformly along the full length of each structure.

C. Compact soil materials to not less than the following percentages of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D698

1. Under structures, building slabs, steps, and pavements, scarify and recompact top 12-inches of existing subgrade. All structural fill and backfill should be placed in maximum nine-inch loose lifts and compacted to 95 percent of the maximum dry density within 2 percent of the optimum moisture content as determined by ASTM D 1557 (Modified Proctor Test).
2. Use vibratory drum roller to compact on-site soil or a small hand-held vibratory compactor within excavations.
3. Under walkways, scarify and recompact top 6-inches below subgrade and compact each layer of backfill or fill soil material at 92 percent.
4. Under turf or unpaved areas, scarify and recompact top 6-inches below subgrade and compact each layer of backfill or fill soil material at 85 percent.
5. For utility trenches, compact each layer of initial and final backfill soil material at 85 percent.

3.18 GRADING

- A. General: Uniformly grade areas to a smooth surface, free of irregular surface changes. Comply with compaction requirements and grade to cross sections, lines, and elevations indicated.
 - 1. Provide a smooth transition between adjacent existing grades and new grades.
 - 2. Cut out soft spots, fill low spots, and trim high spots to comply with required surface tolerances.
- B. Site Rough Grading: Slope grades to direct water away from buildings and to prevent ponding. Finish subgrades to elevations required to achieve indicated finish elevations, within the following subgrade tolerances:
 - 1. Turf or Unpaved Areas: Plus or minus 1-inch.
 - 2. Walks: Plus or minus 1-inch.
 - 3. Pavements: Plus, or minus 1/2 inch.
- C. Final Grading:
 - 1. Final grading shall conform to elevations required to ensure finished elevations as indicated on contract drawings.
 - 2. Provide a smooth transition between adjacent existing grades and new grades.
- D. Grading inside Building Lines: Finish subgrade to a tolerance of 1/2 inch when tested with a 10-foot straightedge.

3.19 SUBBASE AND BASE COURSES UNDER PAVEMENT AND WALKS

- A. Place subbase course and base course on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.
- B. On prepared subgrade, place subbase course and base course under pavements and walks as follows:
 - 1. Place base course material over subbase course under hot-mix asphalt pavement.
 - 2. Shape subbase course and base course required crown elevations and cross-slope grades.
 - 3. Place the subbase course and base course 6 inches (150 mm) or less in compacted thickness in a single layer.
 - 4. Place subbase course and base course that exceeds 6 inches (150 mm) in compacted thickness in layers of equal thickness, with no compacted layer more than 6 inches (150 mm) thick or less than 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
Compact subbase course and base course at optimum moisture content to required grades, lines, cross sections, and thickness to not less than 95 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D698 ASTM D1557.

Pavement Shoulders: Place shoulders along edges of subbase course and base course to prevent lateral movement. Construct shoulders, at least 12-inches wide, of satisfactory soil materials and compact simultaneously with each subbase and base layer to not less than 95 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D698.

3.20 DRAINAGE COURSE UNDER CONCRETE SLABS-ON-GRADE

- A. Place drainage courses on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.
- B. On prepared subgrade, place and compact drainage course under cast-in-place concrete slabs-on-grade as follows:
 - 1. Install subdrainage geotextile on prepared subgrade according to manufacturer's written instructions, overlapping sides and ends.
 - 2. Place drainage course 6-inches or less in compact thickness in a single layer.
 - 3. Place drainage course that exceeds 6-inches in compacted thickness in layers of equal thickness, with no compacted layer more than 6-inches thick or less than 3-inches thick.
 - 4. Compact each layer of drainage course to required cross sections and thicknesses to not less than 95 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D698.

3.21 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Special Inspections: Owner will engage a qualified special inspector to perform the following special inspections:
 - 1. Determine prior to placement of fill that site has been prepared in compliance with requirements.
 - 2. Determine that fill material classification and maximum lift thickness comply with requirements.
 - 3. Determine, during placement and compaction, that in-place density of compacted fill complies with requirements.
- B. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified geotechnical engineering testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- C. Allow the testing agency to inspect and test subgrades and each fill or backfill layer. Proceed with subsequent earth moving only after test results for previously completed work comply with requirements.
- D. Footing Subgrade: At footing subgrades, at least one test of each soil stratum will be performed to verify design bearing capacities. Subsequent verification and approval of other footing subgrades may be based on a visual comparison of subgrade with tested subgrade when approved by Engineer.
- E. Testing agency will test compaction of soils in place according to ASTM D1556, ASTM D2167, ASTM D2937, and ASTM D6938, as applicable. Tests will be performed at the following locations and frequencies:
 - 1. Paved and Building Slab Areas: At subgrade and at each compacted fill and backfill layer, at least one test for every 2000 sq. ft. or less of paved area or building slab but in no case fewer than three tests.

2. Foundation Wall Backfill: At each compacted backfill layer, at least one test for every 100 feet or less of wall length but no fewer than two tests.
 3. Trench Backfill: At each compacted initial and final backfill layer, at least one test for every 150 feet or less of trench length but no fewer than two tests.
- F. When testing agency reports that subgrades, fills, or backfills have not achieved degree of compaction specified, scarify, and moisten or aerate, or remove and replace soil materials to depth required; recompact and retest until specified compaction is obtained.

3.22 PROTECTION

- A. Protecting Graded Areas: Protect newly graded areas from traffic, freezing, and erosion. Keep free of trash and debris.
- B. Repair and reestablish grades to specified tolerances where completed or partially completed surfaces become eroded, rutted, settled, or where they lose compaction due to subsequent construction operations or weather conditions.
1. Scarify or remove and replace soil material to depth as directed by Engineer; reshape and recompact.
- C. Where settling occurs before Project correction period elapses, remove finished surfacing, backfill with additional soil material, compact, and reconstruct surfacing.
1. Restore appearance, quality, and condition of finished surfacing to match adjacent work, and eliminate evidence of restoration to the greatest extent possible.

3.23 DISPOSAL OF SURPLUS AND WASTE MATERIALS

- A. Remove surplus satisfactory soil and waste materials, including unsatisfactory soil, trash, and debris, and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.
- B. Transport surplus satisfactory soil to designated storage areas on Owner's property. Stockpile or spread soil as directed by Engineer.
1. Remove waste materials, including unsatisfactory soil, trash, and debris, and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 31 2000

SECTION 31 2301 - EXCAVATION, BACKFILL, AND COMPACTION (BUILDING AREA)

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of contract, including general and supplementary conditions and Division 1 specification sections, apply to this section.
 - 1. Refer to Division 1 for applicable local codes and regulations.
 - 2. Geotechnical Report by Whitestone Associates, Inc. dated September 6, 2019, Whitestone Project No.: GJ1916425.000

1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. This section pertains to an area bounded by 20-feet-minimum outside of and parallel to the exterior walls of the building, including canopies, loading docks, and other structures attached to the building.
- B. This work includes the following:
 - 1. Preparing subgrade for building slabs, walks, and pavements.
 - 2. Preparing subbase for support of building slabs.
 - 3. Excavating and backfilling for building structure.
 - 4. Excavating and backfilling of trenches within building lines.
 - 5. Excavating and backfilling for underground mechanical and electrical utilities and buried mechanical and electrical appurtenances.
 - 6. Excavating and backfilling for Mechanical/Electrical Work. Refer to mechanical and electrical sections for excavation and backfill required in conjunction with underground mechanical and electrical utilities and buried mechanical and electrical appurtenances.
 - 7. Final grading and placement and preparation for topsoil for lawns and planting are specified in Division 31 0000 – Site Earthwork.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with: New York State Department of Transportation (NYSDOT) "Standard Specifications for Construction and Materials."
- B. Routine testing of existing soils and compacted material for compliance with these specifications will be performed as part of Special Inspections.
 - 1. Compacted material not meeting density requirements shall be removed or recompacted and retested at Contractor's expense.

1.4 SPECIAL INSPECTIONS

- A. Refer to Specification Section 01 4533 and Schedule of Special Inspections.

1.5 MATERIAL EVALUATION/QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Preconstruction Testing: Contractor shall employ Testing Agency acceptable to Engineer and Architect to perform the following services:
 - 1. Test materials proposed for use by Contractor to verify specified requirements.
 - a. Determine optimum moisture at which maximum density can be obtained in accordance with ASTM D 1557, Modified Proctor.
 - b. Perform particle size analysis in accordance with ASTM D 422.
- B. Submit Testing Agency qualifications demonstrating experience with similar types of projects.
- C. The RDP for Geotechnical Engineering shall perform the following:
 - 1. Identify soils requiring undercutting and replacement while observing proof rolling and when subgrade is exposed.
 - 2. Verify footing bearing strata.
 - 3. Review and accept materials proposed by Contractor for use as compacted fill based on test data and information submitted by preconstruction Testing Agency. Architect shall coordinate review of submittals.
 - 4. Observe and accept filling and compaction procedures.
 - 5. Review and approve preparation of slab-on-grade subgrade and subbase.
- D. Geotechnical Engineer shall submit copies of reports to Special Inspector, Engineer, Architect, Construction Manager, and Contractor. Include date of site visit, description of work observed, and summary of observations and recommendations.

1.6 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit to RDP for Geotechnical Engineering:
 - 1. Gradations for proposed fill materials and mix design proposed for flowable fill at least 15 days before start of backfilling. Flowable fill submittal shall include ASTM C 1260 test results.
 - 2. Product data, specifications, and installation instructions for proprietary materials.
 - 3. Material certifications for products specified to conform with NYSDOT references and ASTM references.
- B. Prior to placement of slab on grade, submit to Special Inspector and RDP for Structural Engineering a written protection program for vapor retarder, slab subbase, and slab on grade for record only.

1.7 DEFINITIONS

- A. Excavation: Removal of material encountered to subgrade elevations indicated and subsequent disposal of materials removed.

- B. Unauthorized Excavation: Removal of materials beyond indicated subgrade elevations or dimensions without specific direction of Architect. Unauthorized excavation and remedial work directed by Architect shall be at Contractor's expense.
 - 1. Under footings, foundation bases, or retaining walls, fill unauthorized excavation by extending indicated bottom elevation of footing or base to excavation bottom without altering required top elevation. Lean concrete fill may be used to bring elevations to proper position when acceptable to Architect.
 - 2. In locations other than those above, backfill and compact unauthorized excavations as specified for authorized excavations of same classification unless otherwise directed by Architect.
- C. Additional Excavation: If RDP for Geotechnical Engineering determines bearing materials at required subgrade elevations are unsuitable, continue excavation until suitable bearing materials are encountered. Replace excavated material as directed by Geotechnical Engineer.
 - 1. Removal of unsuitable material and replacement as directed will be paid on basis of conditions of contract relative to changes in work.
- D. Subgrade: Undisturbed earth or compacted soil layer immediately below granular subbase, base of structure, or topsoil materials.
- E. Structure: Buildings, foundations, slabs, tanks, curbs, or other man-made stationary features occurring above or below ground surface.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Site Information: Subsurface investigation reports were used for basis of design and are available to Contractor for information only. Conditions are not intended as representations or warranties of accuracy or continuity between soil borings. Owner will not be responsible for interpretations or conclusions drawn from this data by Contractor.
 - 1. Additional test borings and other exploratory operations may be performed by Contractor at Contractor's option; however, no change in contract sum will be authorized for additional exploration.
- B. Existing Utilities: Locate existing underground utilities in work area before starting earthwork operations. Where utilities are to remain in place, provide adequate means of protection during earthwork operations.
 - 1. If uncharted or incorrectly charted piping or other utilities are encountered during excavation, consult with utility owner and Architect immediately for directions. Cooperate with Owner and public and private utility companies to keep services and facilities in operation. Repair damaged utilities as required by utility owner.
 - 2. Do not interrupt existing utilities serving facilities occupied by Owner or others during occupied hours except when permitted in writing by Architect and then only after acceptable temporary utility services have been provided.

- a. Provide minimum 48-hours notice to Architect and receive written notice to proceed before interrupting utilities.
 3. Demolish and remove from site existing underground utilities indicated to be removed. Coordinate with utility companies for shutoff of services if lines are active.
- C. Use of Explosives: Do not bring explosives onto site or use in work.
- D. Protection of Property: Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities from damage caused by settlement, lateral movement, undermining, washout, and other hazards created by earthwork operations.
 1. Precondition Survey: Contractor shall perform a precondition survey of structures adjacent to planned excavation and foundation installation and submit to Architect for review. Survey shall include description and photographs of adjacent buildings, clearly identifying benchmarks relative to datum level sufficiently distant so as not be affected by project operations. Contractor shall be responsible for making repairs to existing structures to the Owner's satisfaction for damage caused by construction activities not in conformance with these specifications.
 2. Perform excavation by hand within drip line of large trees to remain. Protect root systems from damage and from drying out to greatest extent possible. Maintain moist condition for root system, and cover exposed roots with moistened burlap.

1.9 PRODUCT HANDLING

- A. Store materials so as to preserve their quality and fitness for work.

1.10 WORKMANSHIP

- A. Contractor shall be responsible for correction of work not conforming to specified requirements. Correct deficient work as directed by Architect.
- B. Remove work found to be defective. Replace with new acceptable work.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. General Fill Material: Soil materials free of clay, rock or gravel larger than 3 inches in any dimension, debris, waste, frozen materials, vegetation, and other deleterious matter.
- B. Flowable Fill Material: Cementitious, flowable, excavatable, backfill material having a compressive strength of 50 to 100 pounds per square inch (psi) at 28 days. Provide mix that minimizes shrinkage and is non-expansive.
- C. Structural Fill: Sound and durable sand and gravel, free of deleterious materials such as pyritic shale, organics, or contaminants of a chemical, mineral, or biological nature and conforming to New York State Department of Transportation, paragraph 304-2.02, Type

2 or 4 and the following limits of gradation:

Sieve		Percent Passing
Sieve Size	Size opening (mm)	
3 inch	76.20	100
2 inch	50.80	90 – 100
3/4 inch	19.00	75 – 90
1/4 inch	6.35	35 – 65
No. 40	0.42	5 – 40
No. 200	0.074	0 – 8

- D. Subbase Material: Sound and durable sand and gravel, free of organic and other deleterious materials, conforming to New York State Department of Transportation, paragraph 304-2.02, Type 2 or 4.
- E. Drainage Fill: Washed crushed stone or crushed or uncrushed gravel conforming to NYSDOT Section 703-04, Size 2.
- F. Cushion Sand: Comply with requirements of NYSDOT Section 703-06.
- G. Bedding: Comply with the requirements of NYSDOT Section 703-02, material requirements, crushed stone 703-0201, size No. 2.
- H. Filter Fabric: "Geotex 351" by Propex Geosynthetics; "Mirafi 140N" by Mirafi, Inc.; or accepted equivalent.
- I. Soil Stabilization Geotextile: "Geotex 315ST" by Propex Geosynthetics; "Mirafi 600X" by Mirafi, Inc.; or accepted equivalent.
- J. Excavated Materials: Do not use as structural fill or subbase material. Do not use as general fill material unless accepted by Geotechnical Engineer.
- K. Vapor Retarder: Provide vapor retarder cover over proof rolled subgrade where indicated below slabs on grade. Use only materials that are resistant to deterioration when tested in accordance with ASTM E 154 as follows:
 - 1. Polyolefin not less than 15 mils thick, in compliance with ASTM E 1745 Class A and with a perm rating less than 0.02 perms. "Stegowrap 15 mil Class A" by Stego Industries LLC; "Moistop Ultra 15" by Fortifiber Building Products; "Griffolyn 15 Mil Green" by Reef Industries, Inc.; or "Vapor Block 15" by Raven Industries.
 - 2. Provide manufacturer's-recommended, pressure-sensitive/water-resistant seam tape and mastic for vapor retarder selected.
- L. Foundation Drainage Pipe: Corrugated Polyethylene Pipe (Solid and Perforated).
 - 1. Pipe Classification: AASHTO M252 Type S.
 - 2. Material Classification: ASTM D 3350.
 - 3. Property Description: Cell Class 324420C.

4. Pipe Size: as indicated in Plans.
5. Perforation Size: 22 mm by 3 mm slotted Class II perforations with a minimum inlet area of 1 sq. inch per lineal foot of pipe.
6. Joint Couplings: External snap couplers with gaskets for solid wall; external snap couplers without gaskets for perforated pipe.
7. Acceptable Manufacturer: Hancor, Inc., P.O. Box 1047, Findlay, OH 45839, (419) 424-5200. Advanced Drainage Systems 4640 Trueman Blvd, Hilliard, OH 43026 800-821-6710.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 JOB CONDITIONS

- A. Examine substrates and conditions under which work shall be performed. Do not proceed with work until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected.
- B. Maintain drainage and restrict traffic within building area during construction to maintain integrity of subgrade. Failure to observe these precautions will require Contractor to remove disturbed areas and correct at his expense.

3.2 COLD-WEATHER PROTECTION

- A. Protect excavation bottoms against freezing when atmospheric temperature is less than 35 degrees F.

3.3 REMOVALS

- A. Clear, grub, and strip site of vegetation, topsoil, and other organic materials.
- B. Remove brick fragments and other construction debris. Plow-strip or break up sloped surfaces steeper than 1 vertical to 4 horizontal so fill material can bond with existing surface.
 1. When existing ground surface has a density less than that specified for a particular area classification, break up ground surface, pulverize, moisture-condition to optimum moisture content, and compact to required depth and percentage of maximum density.
- C. Removal from Owner's Property: Remove waste materials, including unacceptable excavated material, trash, and debris. Legally dispose off Owner's property.

A.4.1 PROOF ROLLING

- A. Following stripping and removing miscellaneous fill, grade and compact exposed subgrade by making five passes across building area in each orthogonal direction using smooth-drum vibrating roller having static weight of 10 tons minimum.
- B. If silt or clay soils are encountered, the roller shall be operated in static mode or a kneading "sheepsfoot" roller shall be used.

- C. Proof-roll the site with a loaded tandem axle track in the presence of the geotechnical engineer.
- D. At the direction of the Geotechnical Engineer, undercut soft spots that develop during proof rolling and replace with compacted structural fill. Contractor shall be paid for this work on unit cost basis.
- E. Do not perform proof rolling during or immediately after periods of inclement weather.

3.5 EXCAVATION

- A. Excavation shall be considered unclassified and understood to mean all materials encountered during excavation.
- C. Do not perform rock excavation work until material to be excavated has been cross-sectioned and classified by Architect. Such excavation will be paid on basis of Contract Conditions relative to changes in work.
- D. Potential rock payment lines are limited to the following:
 - 1. Two feet outside of concrete work for which forms are required, except footings.
 - 2. One foot outside perimeter of footings.
 - 3. In pipe trenches, 6 inches below invert elevation of pipe and 2 feet wider than inside diameter of pipe, but not less than 3-foot-minimum trench width.
 - 4. Outside dimensions of concrete work where no forms are required.
 - 5. Under slabs on grade, 6 inches below bottom of concrete slab.
- E. Excavations shall be laid back or sheeted and braced to prevent sloughing in of sides. Maintain sides and slopes of excavations in stable condition until completion of backfill. Incline cut slopes no steeper than permitted by OSHA standards for excavations in soil type(s) encountered.
- F. Hand trim foundation excavations to remove loose soil or ridges of materials left by equipment.
- G. Keep loose material and debris out of excavations.
- H. Shoring and Bracing: Provide materials for shoring and bracing, including sheet piling, uprights, stringers, and cross braces, in good serviceable condition. Maintain shoring and bracing in excavations regardless of time period excavations will be open. Extend shoring and bracing as excavation progresses.
 - 1. Provide permanent steel sheet piling or pressure-creosoted timber sheet piling wherever subsequent removal of sheet piling might permit lateral movement of soil under adjacent structures. Cut off tops minimum 2 feet 6 inches below final grade, and leave permanently in place.

3.6 DEWATERING

- A. Dewatering activities shall conform to Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPPP) implemented by site operator if required as a condition of construction permit.
- B. Perform excavation and filling in manner and sequence to provide proper drainage at all times.
- C. Prevent surface water and subsurface or groundwater from flowing into excavations and from flooding project site and surrounding area.
 - 1. Do not allow water to accumulate in excavations. Remove water to prevent softening of foundation bottoms, undercutting of footings, and soil changes detrimental to stability of subgrades and foundations. Provide and maintain pumps, well points, sumps, suction and discharge lines, and other dewatering system components necessary to convey water away from excavations.
 - 2. Establish and maintain temporary drainage ditches and other diversions outside excavation limits to convey rainwater and water removed from excavations to collecting or runoff areas. Do not use trench excavations as temporary drainage ditches.

3.7 STORAGE OF EXCAVATED MATERIALS

- A. On-site storage of excavated materials shall conform to Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPPP) implemented by site operator if required as condition of construction permit.
- B. Stockpile excavated materials acceptable for reuse. Place, grade, and shape stockpiles for proper drainage.
 - 1. Locate and retain soil materials away from edges of excavations. Do not store within drip lines of trees indicated to remain.
 - 2. Dispose of excess excavated soil material and materials not acceptable for use as general fill.

3.8 TRENCH EXCAVATION FOR PIPES AND CONDUIT

- A. Excavate trenches to uniform width sufficiently wide to provide ample working room and minimum of 6 to 9 inches of clearance on both sides of pipe or conduit.
- B. Do not locate trenches that are deeper than adjacent footings closer horizontally to footing than vertical distance separating bottom of trench and bottom of footing.
- C. Excavate trenches and conduit to depth indicated or required to establish indicated slope and invert elevations and to support bottom of pipe or conduit on undisturbed soil. Beyond building perimeter, excavate trenches to allow installation of top of pipe below frost line.
 - 1. Where rock is encountered, carry excavation 6 inches below required elevation and backfill with a 6-inch layer of bedding prior to installing pipe.
 - 2. For pipes or conduit less than 6 inches in nominal size and for flat-bottomed, multiple-duct conduit units, do not excavate beyond indicated depths. Hand-

excavate bottom cut to accurate elevations and support pipe or conduit on undisturbed soil.

3. For pipes and equipment 6 inches or larger in nominal size, shape bottom of trench to fit bottom of pipe for 90 degrees (bottom 1/4 of the circumference). Fill depressions with bedding or tamped cushion sand backfill. At each pipe joint, dig bell holes to relieve pipe bell of loads to ensure continuous bearing of pipe barrel on bearing surface.

3.9 VAPOR RETARDER INSTALLATION

- A. See Specification Section 03 3020.

3.10 FILLING, BACKFILLING, AND COMPACTION

- A. Do not place fill material on surfaces that are muddy, frozen, or contain frost or ice.
- B. Place soil stabilization geotextile below structural fill where shown in drawings after subgrade has been approved and before placement of fill material.
- C. Use structural fill to increase grades within building areas, as interior backfill against foundations and in trenches, as exterior backfill against walls with footing drains and as exterior backfill where pavement or walkways abut building.
- D. Contractor may use flowable fill to increase grades and as interior backfill against foundations and in trenches. Allow fill to cure for at least 7 days before setting forms for concrete foundations or placing slab on grade.
- E. Use subbase material directly below slabs and pavements as shown in drawings.
- F. Use general fill material to increase grades outside building area except as otherwise specified.
- G. Use drainage fill around footing drains as detailed in drawings. Wrap drainage fill with filter fabric.
- H. Backfill trenches with concrete where trench excavations pass within 18 inches of column or wall footings and are carried below bottom of such footings or pass under wall footings. Place concrete to level of bottom of adjacent footing.
- I. Backfill trenches with concrete or flowable fill where trench excavations pass within 18 inches of and are carried below bottom of installed or existing grade beams or pile caps or that pass under grade beams. Place concrete to level of bottom of adjacent grade beam.
- J. Backfill foundation excavations as soon as possible following construction of foundations and foundation walls.
- K. Backfill and fill against foundation walls evenly on both sides to prevent displacement of construction. For walls with fill on one side only, do not backfill until concrete has achieved

- 70 percent of its design strength and walls have been braced.
- L. Begin filling in lowest section of area.
 - M. Place fill materials in layers not more than 8 inches in loose depth for material compacted by heavy compaction equipment and not more than 4 inches in loose depth for material compacted by hand-operated tampers.
 - N. Lifts or portions thereof not compacted in accordance with specifications shall be recompacted or removed and replaced to meet compaction requirements.
 - O. Percentage of Maximum Density Requirements: Compact soil to not less than the following percentages of maximum density in accordance with ASTM D 1557, Modified Proctor:
 - 1. Under structures, footings, foundations, building slabs, and steps: Compact top 12 inches of subgrade and each layer of fill material to 95 percent.
 - 2. Under pavements: Compact top 12 inches of subgrade and each layer of fill material to 95 percent.
 - 3. Subbase Material: Compact to 95 percent with moisture content no greater than 2 percent wet of optimum.
 - 4. Under walkways: Compact top 6 inches of subgrade and each layer of fill material to 95 percent.
 - 5. Under lawn or unpaved areas: Compact top 6 inches of subgrade and each layer of fill material to 90 percent.
 - 6. Cushion sand: Compact to 100 percent.
 - 7. Drainage fill: Density testing is not applicable. Compact each layer to minimize voids.
 - P. Where a power roller is used for compaction, do not approach nearer than 10 feet from walls of new or existing construction.
 - Q. Moisture Control: Where subgrade or layer of soil material must be moisture- conditioned before compaction, uniformly apply water to surface of subgrade or layer of soil material. Apply water in minimum quantity as necessary to prevent free water from appearing on surface during or subsequent to compaction operations.
 - 1. Remove and replace or scarify and air dry soil material too wet to permit compaction to specified density.
 - 2. Stockpile or spread soil material that has been removed because it is too wet to permit compaction. Assist drying by discing, harrowing, or pulverizing until moisture content is reduced to satisfactory value.

3.11 TOLERANCES

- A. Excavation for structures shall conform to elevations and dimensions shown within a tolerance of plus or minus 0.10 foot except to facilitate drainage during construction stage.
- B. Surface of subbase under building slabs shall be graded smooth and even, free of voids,

and rolled to required elevation. Provide final grades within tolerance of 1/2 inch when tested with 10-foot straightedge.

END OF SECTION 31 2301

SECTION 31 2500 - EROSION AND SEDIMENT CONTROLS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This section includes temporary and permanent erosion and sediment control measures.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Division 31 Section 2000: Earth-Moving Operations.
- B. Division 32 Section 9113: Soil Preparation.
- C. Division 31 Section 9200: Turf and Grasses.

1.3 REFERENCES

- A. Erosion and Sediment Control Guidelines: Conform to the latest edition of "NEW YORK STANDARDS and SPECIFICATIONS for EROSION and SEDIMENT CONTROL" by NYS Department of Environmental Conservation DOW (i.e., Bluebook). Refer to these guidelines for construction and maintenance of all items (Temporary and Permanent Structural, Vegetative and Biotechnical) included in the Storm Water Pollution and Prevention Plan (SWPPP).
- B. Storm Water Management: Conform to the latest edition of "NEW YORK STATE STORMWATER MANAGEMENT DESIGN MANUAL" prepared by Center for Watershed Protection for NYS Department of Environmental Conservation.

1.4 RESPONSIBILITY

- A. Install and maintain the temporary storm water and diversion control items as shown on the drawings before starting any grading or excavation and maintain compliance of all Storm Water Pollution Plan/SPDES regulations. Provide any temporary sediment and erosion control measures that may be required within limits of the work, including any staging areas, throughout construction in conformance with the plan, and as directed by the Director's Representative. Place the permanent control practices required before the removal of the temporary storm water diversion and control items.
- B. During construction, conduct operations in such a manner as to prevent or reduce to a minimum any damage to any water body from pollution by debris, sediment, chemical or other foreign material, or from the manipulation of equipment and/or materials in or near a stream or ditch flowing directly to a stream. Any water which has been used for washing purposes or other similar operations which becomes polluted with sewage, silt, cement, concentrated chlorine, oil, fuels, lubricants, bitumens, or other impurities shall not be discharged into any water body.

- C. In the event of conflict between these specifications and the regulations of other Federal, State, or local jurisdictions, the more restrictive regulations shall apply.
- D. The Contractor shall adhere to all requirements of the Storm Water Pollution Prevention Plan as presented on Drawing No(s). C102 Removals & Erosion Control Plan & C508 Civil Details Erosion Control. Comply with all applicable NYSDEC regulatory requirements.
- E. The Contractor will submit copies of certificates documenting that on-site workers have completed a NYS Department of Environmental Conservation endorsed Erosion & Sediment Control training as required by General Permit GP-0-15-002.

1.5 DESCRIPTION

- A. The Work shall consist of furnishing, installing, inspecting, maintaining, and removing soil and erosion control measures as shown on the contract documents or as ordered by the Soil Erosion Director's Representative during the life of the contract to provide erosion and sediment control.
- B. Temporary structural measures provide erosion control protection to a critical area for an interim period. A critical area is any disturbed, denuded slope subject to erosion. These are used during construction to prevent offsite sedimentation. Temporary structural measures shall include construction road stabilization, stabilized construction entrance, dust control, level spreader, silt fence, storm drain inlet protection, straw/hay bale dike, or other erosion control devices or methods as required.
- C. Permanent structural measures also control protection to a critical area. They are used to convey runoff to a safe outlet. They remain in place and continue to function after completion of construction. Permanent structural measures shall include grade stabilization structure, land grading, paved channel, retaining wall, riprap, rock outlets, or other erosion control devices or methods as required.
- D. Vegetative measures shall include brush matting, dune stabilization, grassed waterway, vegetating waterway, mulching, protecting vegetation, seeding, sod, straw/hay bale dike, stream bank protection, temporary swale, topsoil, and vegetating waterways.
- E. Weekly inspections will be completed by the Soil Erosion Director's Representative. Comply with and correct all deficiencies found as a result of these inspections. At the end of the construction season when soil disturbance activities will be finalized or suspended until the following spring, the frequency of the inspections may be reduced. If soil disturbance is completely suspended and the site is properly stabilized, a minimum of monthly inspections must be maintained. The stabilization activities must be completed before snow covers or frozen ground. If vegetation is required, seeding, planting, and/or sodding must be scheduled to avoid die-off from fall frosts and allow for proper germination/establishment. Weekly inspections must resume no later than March 15.

1.6 DEFINITIONS – TEMPORARY STRUCTURAL MEASURES

- A. Check Dam: Small barrier or dam constructed of stone, bagged sand, or gravel to reduce velocity of flow.
- B. Construction Road Stabilization: Stabilization of construction roads to control erosion.
- C. Stabilized Construction Entrance: A stabilized pad of aggregate underlain with geo-textile where traffic enters a construction site to reduce or eliminate tracking of sediment to public roads.
- D. Dust Control: Prevent surface and air movement of dust from disturbed soil surfaces.
- E. Earth Dike: A temporary berm or ridge of compacted soil, located to channel water to a sediment trapping device.
- F. Level Spreader: A non-erosive outlet for concentrated runoff to disperse flow uniformly across a slope.
- G. Perimeter Dike/Swale: A temporary ridge of soil excavated from an adjoining swale located along the perimeter of the site or disturbed area to prevent runoff from entering a disturbed area and preventing sediment laden runoff from leaving a construction site.
- H. Pipe Slope Drain: A structure placed from the top of a slope to the bottom of a slope to convey runoff without causing erosion.
- I. Portable Sediment Tank: A compartment tank to which sediment laden water is pumped to retain sediment before pumping the water to adjoining drainage ways.
- J. Rock Dam: A rock embankment located to capture sediment.
- K. Sediment Basin: A barrier constructed across a drainage way to intercept and trap sediment.
- L. Sediment Traps: A control device formed by excavation to retain sediment at a storm inlet or other points of collection.
- M. Silt Fence: A barrier of geo-textile fabric installed on contours across the slope to intercept runoff by reducing velocity. Replace after 1 year.
- N. Storm Drain Inlet Protection: A semi-permeable barrier installed around storm inlets to prevent sediment from entering a storm drainage system.
- O. Straw/Hay Bale Dike: Intercept sediment laden runoff by reducing velocity. Replace after 3 months.
- P. Access Waterway Crossing: A structure placed across a waterway to provide circulation for construction purposes.

- Q. Storm Drain Diversion: The redirection of a storm drain line or outfall channel for discharge into a sediment trapping device.
- R. Temporary Swale: A temporary excavated drainage swale.
- S. Turbidity Curtain: A flexible, impenetrable barrier used to trap sediment when construction occurs within water bodies or along a shoreline.
- T. Water Bars: A ridge or channel constructed diagonally across a sloping road or right-of-way.

1.7 DEFINITIONS – PERMANENT STRUCTURAL MEASURES

- A. Diversion: A parabolic or trapezoidal swale with a supporting ridge on the lower side constructed across a slope to intercept and convey runoff to stable outlets at non-erosive velocities.
- B. Debris Basin: A barrier or dam constructed across a waterway to form a basin for catching and storing sediment or debris that gives protection downstream.
- C. Erosion Control Blanket: A woven or composite textile sheet that protects soil from erosion by reducing the impact of raindrops and slowing runoff
- D. Grade Stabilization Structure: A structure to stabilize the grade by providing channel linings that can withstand high velocities.
- E. Lined Waterway (rock): A waterway lined with stone to dispose of high velocity runoff.
- F. Paved Channel (concrete): A waterway lined with concrete to dispose of high velocity runoff.
- G. Paved Flume: A concrete lined channel to convey water down a steep slope.
- H. Retaining Wall: A structural wall constructed to prevent soil movement down steep slopes.
- I. Riprap: A layer of stone designed to protect slopes that are subject to erosion.
- J. Rock Outlets: Rock placed at the outlet end of culverts, conduits, or channels.
- K. Stream Bank Protection: Stabilization of eroding stream banks through use of riprap, gabions, or pre-cast concrete units.

1.8 DEFINITIONS – VEGETATIVE MATERIALS MEASURES

- A. Brush Matting: Hardwood brush layered along a stream bank with a grid of stakes and wire. This acts as a mulch for seedlings established in the bank.

- B. Dune Stabilization: Grassed or Vegetating Waterway: A parabolic or trapezoidal channel below adjacent ground level stabilized by vegetation to convey water without causing erosion.
- C. Grassed or Vegetating Waterway: A parabolic or trapezoidal channel below adjacent ground level stabilized by vegetation to convey water without causing erosion.
- D. Mulches: Hay, straw, wood cellulose, fiber mats, flexible growth medium and other materials approved by the Soil Erosion Director's Representative.
- E. Protecting Vegetation: Protecting trees, shrubs, ground cover and other vegetation from damage.
- F. Temporary Seeding: Erosion control protection to a critical area for an interim period. A critical area is any disturbed, denuded slope subject to erosion.
- G. Permanent Seeding: Grasses established and combined with shrubs to provide perennial vegetative cover on disturbed, denuded, slopes subject to erosion.
- H. Sod: Used where a quick vegetative cover is required.
- I. Straw/Hay Bale Dike: Intercept sediment laden runoff by reducing velocity. Replace after 3 months.
- J. Stream Bank Protection: Stabilization of eroding stream banks through use of vegetation.
- K. Temporary Swale: A temporary excavated drainage swale.
- L. Topsoil: Placed before permanent seeding or sod is installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 2.01 MATERIALS

- A. Plant Materials for biotechnical slope protection: Locate stands of specified species and obtain approval to harvest material from these stands or obtain from managed production beds that are maintained for commercial distribution. Install all plant materials within 8 hours of cutting or provide proper storage.
 - 1. Shrub willows: "Streamco" purpleosier willow, and "Bankers" dwarf willow.
 - 2. Redosier Dogwood.
- B. Turf and Grasses: Permanent see Section 32 9200.
- C. Erosion Control Blanket: The short-term double net erosion control blanket shall be a machine produced mat of 100% agricultural straw with a functional longevity of up to 12 months. (NOTE: functional longevity may vary depending upon climatic conditions, soil, geographical location, and elevation). The blanket shall be of consistent thickness

with the straw evenly distributed over the entire area of the mat. The blanket shall be covered on the top and bottom sides with a lightweight photodegradable polypropylene netting having an approximate 0.50 x 0.50 in. (1.27 x 1.27 cm) mesh. The blanket shall be sewn together on 1.50-inch (3.81 cm) centers with degradable thread. The blanket shall be manufactured with a colored thread stitched along both outer edges (approximately 2-5 inches [5-12.5 cm] from the edge) as an overlap guide for adjacent mats. The erosion control blanket shall meet Type 2.D specification requirements established by the Erosion Control Technology Council (ECTC) and Federal Highway Administration's (FHWA) FP-03 Section 713.17.

2.2 COMPANIES – TEMPORARY STRUCTURAL

- A. SILT FENCE - Mirafi, 365 South Holland Drive, Pendergrass, Ga, 30567, (888) 795-0808, www.mirafi.com.
- B. EROSION CONTROL BLANKET - North American Green, 14649 Highway 41 North, Evansville, IN 47725, (800) 772-2040, www.nagreen.com.
- C. TURBIDITY BARRIERS - Siltdam Inc., P.O. Box 960, Brockton MA, 02303, (800) 699-2374, www.spilldam.com.
- D. FIBER ROLL, EROSION CONTROL BLANKET - Nedia Enterprises, Inc., 22187 Vantage Pointe Place, Ashburn, VA 20148, (888) 725-6999, www.nedia.com.
- E. FIBER ROLL - Belton Industries, 5600 Oakbrook Parkway, Norcross GA., 30093, (800) 225-4099, www.beltonindustries.com
- F. FIBER ROLL - KriStar, 1219 Briggs Ave., Santa Rosa, CA 95401, (800) 579-8819, www.kristar.com.
- G. FIBER ROLL - Rolanka International Inc., 155 Andrew Drive, Stockbridge GA 30281, (800) 760-3215, www.rolanka.com.
- H. DUST ABATEMENT - Apex Resources Inc., 12910 Shelbyville Road, Louisville, KY 40243 (888) 677-2739, www.apexr.com.
- I. DUST ABATEMENT - MonoSol, LLC, 707 E. 80th PL., Merrillville, IN 46410 (800) 237-9552, www.terraloc.com.
- J. TURBIDITY CURTAIN - Brockton Equipment Inc., P.O. Box 960, Brockton, MA 02303 (800) 699-2374, www.spilldam.com.
- K. TURBIDITY CUTRAIN - Aer-Flo Inc., 4455 18th St. East, Bradenton, FL 34203 (800) 823-7356, www.aerflo.com.
- L. STREAM STABILIZATION - Contech Construction Products Inc., 9025 Centre Point Drive, Suite 400, West Chester, Ohio 45069, (800) 338-1122, www.contech-cpi.com.

2.3 COMPANIES – PERMANENT STRUCTURAL

- A. GABIONS, RETAINING WALLS, STONE MATTRESSES - Contech Construction Products Inc., 9025 Centre Point Drive, Suite 400, West Chester, Ohio 45069, (800) 338-1122, www.contech-cpi.com.

2.4 COMPANIES – VEGETATIVE

- A. THE FOLLOWING COMPANIES ARE MANUFACTURERS OF VEGETATIVE PRODUCTS. SEE HIGHLIGHTED NOTES TO DETERMINE THE SPECIFIC PRODUCTS MANUFACTURED BY EACH COMPANY.
- A. Nedia Enterprises, Inc., 22187 Vantage Pointe Place, Ashburn, VA 20148, (888) 725-6999, www.nedia.com.
- B. VEGETATIVE RETAINING WALLS, NATIVE PLANTS - Agrecol Corporation, 2918 Agriculture Drive, Madison, Wi, 53718, (608) 226-2544, www.agrecol.com.

2.5 COMPANIES – BIODEGRADABLE

- A. The following companies are manufacturers of biodegradable products. see highlighted notes to determine the specific products manufactured by each company.
 - 1. BIODEGRADABLE BLANKETS - Rolanka International Inc., 155 Andrew Drive, Stockbridge GA, 30281, (800) 760-3215, www.rolanka.com.
 - 2. FIBER ROLL - Nedia Enterprises, Inc., 22187 Vantage Pointe Place, Ashburn, VA 20148, (888) 725-6999, www.nedia.com

PART 3 - PRODUCTS

3.1 WORK AREAS

- A. The Soil Erosion Director's Representative has the authority to limit the surface area of erodible earth exposed by earthwork operations and to direct the Contractor to provide immediate temporary or permanent erosion measures to minimize damage to property and contamination of watercourses and water impoundments. Under no circumstances will the area of erodible earth material exposed at one time exceed 50,000 sq. ft. The Soil Erosion Director's Representative may increase or decrease this area of erodible earth material exposed at one time as determined by his analysis of project, weather, and other conditions. The Soil Erosion Director's Representative may limit the area of clearing and grubbing and earthwork operations in progress commensurate with the Contractor's demonstrated capability in protecting erodible earth surfaces with temporary, permanent, vegetative, or biotechnical erosion control measures.
- B. Schedule the work to minimize the time that earth areas will be exposed to erosive conditions. Provide temporary structural measures immediately to prevent any soil erosion.
- C. Provide temporary seeding on disturbed earth or soil stockpiles exposed for more than 7 days or for any temporary shutdown of construction. In spring, summer or early fall

apply rye grass at a rate of 1 lb/ 1000 sq.ft. In late fall or early spring, apply certified Aroostook Rye at a rate of 2.5 lbs./ 1000 sq. ft. Apply hay or straw at a rate of 2 bales/ 1000 sq. ft. or wood fiber hydromulch at the manufacturer's recommended rate. Hay or straw shall be anchored.

- D. Coordinate the use of permanent controls or finish materials shown with the temporary erosion measures.
- E. All erosion and sediment control devices must be maintained in working order until the site is stabilized. All preventative and remedial maintenance work, including clean out, repair, replacement, re-grading, re-seeding, or re-mulching, must be performed immediately.
- F. After final stabilization has been achieved temporary sediment and erosion controls must be removed. Areas disturbed during removal must be stabilized immediately.

END OF SECTION 31 2500

SECTION 32 1216 – ASPHALT PAVING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Hot-mix asphalt paving.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Division 31, Section 2000. "Earth Moving Operations" for subgrade preparation, fill material, separation geotextiles, unbound-aggregate subbase and base courses, and aggregate pavement shoulders.
2. Division 32, Section 1313. "Concrete Paving" for concrete pavement and for separate concrete curbs, joint sealants, and driveway aprons.
3. Division 32, Section 1413. "Precast Unit Paving" for bituminous setting bed for pavers and for stone and precast concrete curbs.
4. NYSDOT Standard Drawings and Specifications

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Hot-Mix Asphalt Paving Terminology:** Refer to ASTM D 8 for definitions of terms.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference:** Conduct conference at the Project site.

1. Review methods and procedures related to hot-mix asphalt porous paving including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Review proposed sources of paving materials, including capabilities and location of plant that will manufacture hot-mix asphalt porous paving.
 - b. Review requirements for protecting paving work, including restriction of traffic during installation period and for remainder of construction period and protecting paving work from sediment intrusion.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Include technical data and tested physical and performance properties.
2. Job-Mix Designs: Certification, by New York State Department of Transportation (NYSDOT), of approval of each job mix proposed for the Work.

B. Sustainable Design Submittals:

1. If applicable under Executive Order 22 for New York State contract over \$1M with 16,854 pounds (or 10 cubic yards or more of asphalt), submit an Environmental Product Declaration (EPD) from the manufacturer for Asphalt within this specification section, if available. A statement of the contractor's good faith effort to obtain the EPD shall be provided if not feasible.
 - a. Manufacturer provided EPD's must be Product Specific Type III (Third Party Reviewed), in adherence with ISO 14025 Environmental labels and declarations, ISO 14044 Environmental Management Life Cycle Assessment, and ISO 21930 Core rules for environmental product declarations of construction products and services.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For paving-mix manufacturer, installer, and testing agency.
- B. Material Certificates: Include statement that mixes containing recycled materials will perform equal to mixes produced from all new materials.
- C. Material Test Reports: For each paving material, by a qualified testing agency.
- D. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A paving-mix manufacturer registered with and approved by NYSDOT.
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified in accordance with ASTM D3666 for testing indicated.
- C. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with materials, workmanship, and other applicable requirements of the standards and specifications of NYSDOT for asphalt paving work.
 1. Measurement and payment provisions and safety program submittals included in NYSDOT standard specifications do not apply to this Section.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not apply asphalt materials if subgrade is wet or excessively damp, if rain is imminent or expected before time required for adequate cure, or if the following conditions are not met:
 1. Prime Coat: Minimum surface temperature of 60 deg F.
 2. Tack Coat: Minimum surface temperature of 60 deg F.

3. Asphalt Base Course: Minimum surface temperature of 40 deg F and rising at time of placement.
4. Asphalt Surface Course: Minimum surface temperature of 45 deg F at time of placement per NYDOT 404-3.01.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 AGGREGATES

- A. General: Use materials and gradations that have performed satisfactorily in previous installations.
- B. Coarse Aggregate: ASTM D692/D692M, sound; angular crushed stone, crushed gravel, or cured, crushed blast-furnace slag.
- C. Fine Aggregate: ASTM D1073 or AASHTO M 29, sharp-edged natural sand or sand prepared from stone, gravel, cured blast-furnace slag, or combinations thereof.
 1. For hot-mix asphalt, limit natural sand to a maximum of 20 percent by weight of the total aggregate mass.

2.2 ASPHALT MATERIALS

- A. Asphalt Binder: AASHTO M 332, binder designation PG 64-22
- B. Asphalt Cement: ASTM D3381/D3381M for viscosity-graded material.
- C. Cutback Prime Coat: ASTM D2027/D2027M, medium-curing cutback asphalt, MC-30, or MC-70.
- D. Emulsified Asphalt Prime Coat: ASTM D977 emulsified asphalt of suitable grade and consistency for application.
- A. Tack Coat: ASTM D 977 emulsified asphalt of suitable grade and consistency for application.
- B. Water: Potable.
- C. Undersealing Asphalt: ASTM D3141/D3141M; pumping consistency.

2.3 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. Recycled Materials for Hot-Mix Asphalt Mixes: Reclaimed asphalt pavement (RAP); reclaimed, unbound-aggregate base material; and recycled tires, asphalt shingles, or glass from sources and gradations that have performed satisfactorily in previous

installations, equal to performance of required hot-mix asphalt paving produced from all new materials.

- B. Sand: ASTM D1073, Grade No. 2 or No. 3.
- C. Joint Sealant: ASTM D6690, Type II or Type IV, hot-applied, single-component, polymer-modified bituminous sealant.

2.4 MIXES

- A. Hot-Mix Asphalt: NYSDOT Type 7, dense-graded, hot-laid, hot-mix asphalt plant mixes approved by NYSDOT; designed according to procedures in AI MS-2, "Mix Design Methods for Asphalt Concrete and Other Hot-Mix Types"; and complying with the following requirements:
 - 1. Provide mixes with a history of satisfactory performance in the geographical area where Project is located.
 - 2. Base Course: NYSDOT Type 3.
 - 3. Subbase Course: NYSDOT Type 2.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that subgrade is dry and in suitable condition to begin paving.
- B. Proceed with paving only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Protection: Provide protective materials, procedures, and worker training to prevent asphalt materials from spilling, coating, or building up on curbs, driveway aprons, manholes, and other surfaces adjacent to the Work.
- B. Proof-roll subgrade below pavements with heavy pneumatic-tired equipment to identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding. Do not proof-roll wet or saturated subgrades.
 - 1. Completely proof-roll subgrade in one direction, repeating proof-rolling in direction perpendicular to first direction. Limit vehicle speed to 3 mph.
 - 2. Proof-roll subgrade with a pneumatic-tired and loaded 10-wheel, tandem-axle dump truck weighing not less than 15 tons to identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding.
 - 3. Excavate soft spots, unsatisfactory soils, and areas of excessive pumping or rutting, as determined by Engineer, and replace with compacted backfill or borrow soil fill as directed.

3.3 COLD MILLING

- A. Clean existing pavement surface of loose and deleterious material immediately before cold milling. Remove existing asphalt pavement by cold milling to grades and cross sections indicated.
 - 1. Mill to a depth of 2-inches.
 - 2. Mill to a uniform finished surface free of excessive gouges, grooves, and ridges.
 - 3. Control rate of milling to prevent tearing of existing asphalt course.
 - 4. Repair or replace curbs, driveway aprons, manholes, and other construction damaged during cold milling.
 - 5. Excavate and trim unbound-aggregate base course, if encountered, and keep material separate from milled hot-mix asphalt.
 - 6. Patch surface depressions deeper than 1 inch after milling, before wearing course is laid.
 - 7. Handle milled asphalt material in accordance with approved waste management plan.
 - 8. Keep milled pavement surface free of loose material and dust.
 - 9. Do not allow milled materials to accumulate on-site.

3.4 PATCHING

- A. Asphalt Pavement: Saw cut perimeter of patch and excavate existing pavement section to sound base. Excavate rectangular or trapezoidal patches, extending 24 inches into perimeter of adjacent sound pavement, unless otherwise indicated. Cut excavation faces vertically. Remove excavated material. Recompact existing unbound-aggregate base course to form new subgrade.
- B. Portland Cement Concrete Pavement: Break cracked slabs and roll as required to reseat concrete pieces firmly.
 - 1. Undersealing: Pump hot undersealing asphalt under rocking slab until slab is stabilized or, if necessary, crack slab into pieces and roll to reseat pieces firmly.
 - 2. Remove disintegrated or badly cracked pavement. Excavate rectangular or trapezoidal patches, extending into perimeter of adjacent sound pavement, unless otherwise indicated. Cut excavation faces vertically. Recompact existing unbound-aggregate base course to form new subgrade.
- C. Tack Coat: Before placing patch material, apply tack coat uniformly to vertical asphalt surfaces abutting the patch. Apply at a rate of 0.05 to 0.15 gal./sq. yd.
 - 1. Allow tack coat to cure undisturbed before applying hot-mix asphalt paving.
 - 2. Avoid smearing or staining adjoining surfaces, appurtenances, and surroundings. Remove spillages and clean affected surfaces.
- D. Placing Single-Course Patch Material: Fill excavated pavement areas with hot-mix asphalt base mix for full thickness of patch and, while still hot, compact flush with adjacent surface.

- E. Placing Two-Course Patch Material: Partially fill excavated pavements with hot-mix asphalt base course mix and, while still hot, compact. Cover asphalt base course with compacted layer of hot-mix asphalt surface course, finished flush with adjacent surfaces.

3.5 REPAIRS

- A. Leveling Course: Install and compact leveling course consisting of hot-mix asphalt surface course to level sags and fill depressions deeper than 1 inch in existing pavements.
 - 1. Install leveling wedges in compacted lifts not exceeding 3 inches thick.
- B. Crack and Joint Filling: Remove existing joint filler material from cracks or joints to a depth of 1/4 inch.
 - 1. Clean cracks and joints in existing hot-mix asphalt pavement.
 - 2. Use hot-applied joint sealant to seal cracks and joints more than 1/4 inch (6 mm) wide. Fill flush with surface of existing pavement and remove excess.

3.6 SURFACE PREPARATION

- A. Ensure that prepared subgrade has been proof-rolled and is ready to receive paving. Immediately before placing asphalt materials, remove loose and deleterious material from substrate surfaces.
- B. Cutback Prime Coat: Apply uniformly over surface of compacted unbound-aggregate base course at a rate of 0.15 to 0.50 gal./sq. yd.. Apply enough material to penetrate and seal, but not flood, surface. Allow prime coat to cure.
 - 1. If prime coat is not entirely absorbed within 24 hours after application, spread sand over surface to blot excess asphalt. Use enough sand to prevent pickup under traffic. Remove loose sand by sweeping before pavement is placed and after volatiles have evaporated.
 - 2. Protect primed substrate from damage until ready to receive paving.
- C. Emulsified Asphalt Prime Coat: Apply uniformly over surface of compacted unbound-aggregate base course at a rate of 0.10 to 0.30 gal./sq. yd. per inch depth. Apply enough material to penetrate and seal, but not flood, surface. Allow prime coat to cure.
 - 1. If prime coat is not entirely absorbed within 24 hours after application, spread sand over surface to blot excess asphalt. Use enough sand to prevent pickup under traffic. Remove loose sand by sweeping before pavement is placed and after volatiles have evaporated.
 - 2. Protect primed substrate from damage until ready to receive paving.
- D. Tack Coat: Apply uniformly to surfaces of existing pavement at a rate of 0.03 to 0.06 gal./sq. yd.

1. Allow tack coat to cure undisturbed before applying hot-mix asphalt paving.
2. Avoid smearing or staining adjoining surfaces, appurtenances, and surroundings. Remove spillages and clean affected surfaces.

3.7 HOT-MIX ASPHALT PLACEMENT

- A. Machine place hot-mix asphalt on prepared surface, spread uniformly, and strike off. Place asphalt mix by hand in areas inaccessible to equipment in a manner that prevents segregation of mix. Place each course to required grade, cross section, and thickness when compacted.
 1. Place hot-mix asphalt base course in number of lifts and thicknesses indicated.
 2. Place hot-mix asphalt surface course in single lift.
 3. Spread mix at a minimum temperature of 250 deg F and a maximum temperature of 295 deg F per NYSDOT 404-3.06.
 4. Begin applying mix along centerline of crown for crowned sections and on high side of one-way slopes unless otherwise indicated.
 5. Regulate paver machine speed to obtain smooth, continuous surface free of pulls and tears in asphalt-paving mat.
- B. Place paving in consecutive strips not less than 10 feet wide unless infill edge strips of a lesser width are required.
 1. After the first strip has been placed and rolled, place succeeding strips and extend rolling to overlap previous strips. Overlap mix placement about 2 to 3 inches from strip to strip to ensure proper compaction of mix along longitudinal joints.
 2. Complete a section of asphalt base course before placing asphalt surface course.
- C. Promptly correct surface irregularities in paving course behind paver. Use suitable hand tools to remove excess material forming high spots. Fill depressions with hot-mix asphalt to prevent segregation of mix; use suitable hand tools to smooth surface.

3.8 JOINTS

- A. Construct joints to ensure a continuous bond between adjoining paving sections. Construct joints free of depressions, with same texture and smoothness as other sections of hot-mix asphalt course.
 1. Clean contact surfaces and apply tack coat to joints.
 2. Offset longitudinal joints, in successive courses, a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm).
 3. Offset transverse joints, in successive courses, a minimum of 24 inches (600 mm).
 4. Construct transverse joints at each point where paver ends a day's work and resumes work at a subsequent time. Construct these joints using either

"bulkhead" or "papered" method in accordance with AI MS-22, for both "Ending a Lane" and "Resumption of Paving Operations."

5. Compact joints as soon as hot-mix asphalt will bear roller weight without excessive displacement.
6. Compact asphalt at joints to a density within 2 percent of specified course density.

3.9 COMPACTION

- A. General: Begin compaction as soon as placed hot-mix paving will bear roller weight without excessive displacement. Compact hot-mix paving with hot hand tampers or with vibratory-plate compactors in areas inaccessible to rollers.
 1. Complete compaction before mix temperature cools to 185 deg F.
- B. Breakdown Rolling: Complete breakdown or initial rolling immediately after rolling joints and outside edge. Examine surface immediately after breakdown rolling for indicated crown, grade, and smoothness. Correct laydown and rolling operations to comply with requirements.
- C. Intermediate Rolling: Begin intermediate rolling immediately after breakdown rolling while hot-mix asphalt is still hot enough to achieve specified density. Continue rolling until hot-mix asphalt course has been uniformly compacted to the following density:
 1. Average Density, Marshall Test Method: 96 percent of reference laboratory density in accordance with ASTM D6927 but not less than 94 percent or greater than 100 percent.
 2. Average Density, Rice Test Method: 92 percent of reference maximum theoretical density in accordance with ASTM D2041, but not less than 90 percent or greater than 96 percent.
- D. Finish Rolling: Finish roll paved surfaces to remove roller marks while hot-mix asphalt is still warm.
- E. Edge Shaping: While surface is being compacted and finished, trim edges of pavement to proper alignment. Bevel edges while asphalt is still hot; compact thoroughly.
- F. Repairs: Remove paved areas that are defective or contaminated with foreign materials and replace them with fresh, hot-mix asphalt. Compact by rolling to specified density and surface smoothness.
- G. Protection: After final rolling, do not permit vehicular traffic on pavement until it has cooled and hardened.
- H. Erect barricades to protect paving from traffic until mixture has cooled enough not to become marked.

3.10 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES

- A. Pavement Thickness: Compact each course to produce thickness indicated within the following tolerances:
 - 1. Base Course: Plus or minus 1/2 inch.
 - 2. Surface Course: Plus 1/4 inch, no minus.
- B. Pavement Surface Smoothness: Compact each course to produce surface smoothness within the following tolerances as determined by using a 10-foot straightedge applied transversely or longitudinally to paved areas:
 - 1. Base Course: 1/4 inch.
 - 2. Surface Course: 1/8 inch.
 - 3. Crowned Surfaces: Test with crowned template centered and at right angle to crown. The maximum allowable variance from template is 1/4 inch.
- C. Asphalt Traffic-Calming Devices: Compact and form asphalt to the shapes indicated and within a tolerance of plus or minus 1/8 inch of height indicated above pavement surface.

3.11 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Thickness: In-place compacted thickness of hot-mix asphalt courses will be determined in accordance with ASTM D3549.
- C. Surface Smoothness: Finished surface of each hot-mix asphalt course will be tested for compliance with smoothness tolerances.
- D. Asphalt Traffic-Calming Devices: Finished height of traffic-calming devices above pavement will be measured for compliance with tolerances.
- E. In-Place Density: Testing agency will take samples of uncompacted paving mixtures and compacted pavement in accordance with ASTM D979 or AASHTO T 168.
 - 1. Reference maximum theoretical density will be determined by averaging results from four samples of hot-mix asphalt-paving mixture delivered daily to site, prepared in accordance with ASTM D2041, and compacted in accordance with job-mix specifications.
 - 2. In-place density of compacted pavement will be determined by testing core samples in accordance with ASTM D1188 or ASTM D2726.
 - a. One core sample will be taken for every 1000 sq. yd. or less of installed pavement, with no fewer than three cores taken.

- b. Field density of in-place compacted pavement may also be determined by nuclear method in accordance with ASTM D2950 and coordinated with ASTM D1188 or ASTM D2726.

F. Replace and compact hot-mix asphalt where core tests were taken.

G. Remove and replace or install additional hot-mix asphalt where test results or measurements indicate that it does not comply with specified requirements.

3.12 WASTE HANDLING

- A. General: Handle asphalt-paving waste in accordance with approved waste management plan required in Section 017419 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."

END OF SECTION 32 1216

SECTION 32 1313 – CONCRETE PAVING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes concrete paving for the following:
 - 1. Reinforced Concrete paving for driveway apron, roadway, generator/chiller pad, and trash enclosure areas.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Division 03, Section 3000 "Cast-In-Place Concrete"
 - 2. Division 31, Section 2000 "Earth Moving Operations".
 - 3. Division 32, Section 1623 "Sidewalks" (Includes Concrete Paving Joint Sealants).

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Cementitious Materials: Portland cement alone or in combination with one or more of blended hydraulic cement, fly ash, slag cement, and other pozzolans.
- B. Water-to-Cementitious Materials Ratio (w/c): A ratio representing quantity in pounds of free moisture available for cement hydration divided by quantity of cementitious materials in pounds per cubic yard concrete.

1.3 REFERENCES

- A. Comply with American Concrete Institute Specifications for Structural Concrete, ACI 301-16, for the Work of this Section unless otherwise indicated on the drawings or specified.
- B. New York State Department of Transportation Standard Specifications.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
 - 1. Concrete Design Mix: Submit proposed concrete design mix together with name and location of batching plant at least 28 days prior to the start of concrete work.
 - 2. Portland Cement: Brand and Manufacturer's name.
 - 3. Air-entraining Admixture: Brand and manufacturer's name.
 - 4. Water-reducing or High Range Water-reducing Admixture: Brand and manufacturer's name.
 - 5. Curing and Anti-Spalling Compound: Manufacturer's specifications and application instructions.
- B. Samples:
 - 1. Fibrous Concrete Reinforcement: One pound.
 - 2. Bar Supports: Full size.

3. Bar Reinforcement: 12 inch minimum.

- C. If applicable under Executive Order 22 for New York State contract over \$1M with 50 cubic yards or more of concrete, Submit an Environmental Product Declaration (EPD) from the manufacturer for concrete within this specification section, if available. A statement of the contractor's good faith effort to obtain the EPD shall be provided if not available.
1. Manufacturer provided EPDs must be Product Specific Type III (Third Party Reviewed), in adherence with ISO 14025 Environmental labels and declarations, ISO 14044 Environmental management Life cycle assessment, and ISO 21930 Core rules for environment product declarations of construction products and services.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Design Mixtures: For each concrete paving mixture. Include alternate design mixtures when characteristics of materials, Project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant adjustments.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Concrete batching plants shall be currently approved as concrete suppliers by the New York State Department of Transportation.
- B. Performance Criteria: The following criteria are required for the products included in this section:
1. Cast-in-place Concrete shall contain post-industrial and/or post-consumer recycled content as follows:
- a. Fly Ash: ASTM C618, including Table 1, except for foot note A, Class F, except loss on ignition shall not exceed 4.0 percent. Concrete shall incorporate fly ash as a replacement for 15 percent (by weight) of the Portland cement. All design mixes are subject to review and approval by the Director.
- b. GGBF (Ground Granulated Blast Furnace) Slag: Concrete shall incorporate GGBF slag as a replacement for at least 20 percent (by weight) of the Portland cement. All design mixes are subject to review and approval by the Director.
- c. Certification of recycled content shall be in accordance with the SUBMITTALS Article above.
- d. Recycled Steel: Reinforcing bar, steel wire, welded wire fabric, and miscellaneous steel accessories shall contain a minimum of 35 percent (combined) post-industrial/post-consumer recycled content (the percentage of recycled content is based on the weight of the component materials).
2. Concrete manufactured within 500 miles (by air) of the project site shall be documented in accordance with the SUBMITTALS Article above.

3. Steel reinforcement manufactured within 500 miles (by air) of the project site shall be documented in accordance with SUBMITTALS Article above.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Cement: ASTM C 150, Type II Portland cement.
- B. Concrete: NYSDOT Table 501-3, Class C.
- C. Wire Fabric for Concrete Reinforcement: DOT Section 709-02. (ASTM A 185).
- D. Rebar for 7" Concrete Pad Reinforcement: Deformed bars conforming to ASTM A 615, Grade 60.
- E. Remolded Resilient Joint Filler: DOT Section 705-07. (ASTM D 1751).
- F. Transverse Joint Supports: DOT Section 705-15
- G. Joint Sealants:
 1. Longitudinal Joints: 705-10.
 2. Transverse Joints: 705-12.
 3. Lubricant (for joint sealants): 705-13.
- H. Curing Materials:
 1. Quilted Covers: DOT 711-02.
 2. Plastic Coated Fiber Blankets: DOT 711-03. (ASTM C 171).
 3. Polyethylene Curing Covers: DOT 711-04. (ASTM C 171).
 4. Membrane Curing Compound: DOT 711-05.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Do not use items of aluminum for mixing, chuting, conveying, forming, or finishing concrete. However, magnesium alloy tools may be used for finishing.
- B. Set forms true to line and grade and anchor rigidly in position.
- C. Space expansion joints equally at not more than 50'-0" on center unless otherwise indicated. Place expansion joints to isolate sidewalk from other structures and fixed objects.
- D. Place joint filler at expansion joints and where new concrete abuts existing concrete paving and fixed structures or appurtenances. Protect the top edge of the joint filler

during concrete placement with a temporary cap and remove after concrete has been placed.

3.2 PLACING CONCRETE

- A. Consolidate concrete by spading, rodding, forking, or using an approved vibrator eliminating all air pockets, stone pockets, and honeycombing. Work and float concrete surface to produce a uniform texture.
- B. Locate construction joints, if any, at expansion joints.

3.3 FINISHING AND CURING

- A. Wait until bleeding is stopped before final finishing operations.
- B. Keep surface damp but not wet between initial strike off and final finish.
 - 1. Utilize a fog spray, evaporative inhibitor, or midrange water reducer that is compatible with supplementary cementing materials to help control the amount of surface drying of fresh concrete.
- C. Use minimal working of the surface during finishing.
- D. Utilize a magnesium or wood float.
- E. Avoid the use of steel finishing trowels and utilize a concrete finishing machine when possible.
- F. Finish edges of walk and expansion and control joints with a 1/4-inch radius edging tool.
- G. Provide broom finish for walking surfaces.
- H. Apply curing and anti-spalling compound in accordance with the manufacturer's printed instructions.
- I. Apply curing immediately after the final finish.
- J. Hot Weather Concreting: Comply with ACI 305R whenever the atmospheric temperature or the form surface temperature is at or above 90 degrees F., or climatic conditions of wind and/or low humidity will cause premature drying of the concrete.
- K. Curing Temperature: Maintain the temperature of the concrete at 55 degrees F. or above during the curing period. Keep the concrete temperature as uniform as possible and protect it from rapid atmospheric temperature changes. Do not subject the concrete to a temperature drop in excess of 50°F during the first 24 hours after removing the insulation
- L. Saw control joints (CJ) one inch deep after the concrete has set. Complete saw cuts within 18 hours after slab is placed. Space control joints equally between expansion

joints at approximately 20'-0" on center, except where a different spacing is shown on the drawings.

- M. Provide tooled control joints one inch deep. Space control joints equally between expansion joints approximately 20'-0" on center, except where a different spacing is shown on the drawings.

END OF SECTION 32 1313

SECTION 32 1413 – PRECAST CONCRETE UNIT PAVING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

- A. American Society of Testing and Materials (ASTM) (latest edition):
 - 1. C 33 Specification for Concrete Aggregates.
 - 2. C 136 Method for Sieve Analysis for Fine and Coarse Aggregate.
 - 3. C 140 Sampling and Testing Concrete Masonry Units.
 - 4. C 936 Specification for Solid Interlocking Concrete Paving Units.
 - 5. C 979 Specification for Pigments for Integrally Colored Concrete.

1.2 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installation shall be by a contractor and crew with at least one year of experience in placing interlocking concrete pavers on projects of similar nature.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop or product drawings and product data.
- B. Full size samples of concrete paving units shall be submitted to indicate color and shape selections.
- C. Sieve analyses for grading of bedding and joint sand.
- D. Test results shall be submitted from an independent testing laboratory for compliance of paving unit requirements to ASTM C 936 or other applicable requirements.
- E. The layout, pattern, and relationship of paving joints to fixtures and project formed details.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Concrete pavers shall be delivered to the site in steel banded, plastic banded, or plastic wrapped cubes capable of transfer by forklift or clamp lift. The pavers shall be unloaded at the job site in such a manner that no damage occurs to the product.
- B. Bedding and joint sand shall be covered with a secure waterproof covering to prevent exposure to rainfall or removal by wind.
- C. Delivery and paving schedules shall be coordinated to minimize interference with normal use of buildings adjacent to paving.

1.5 ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS

- A. Sand or pavers shall not be installed during heavy rain or snowfall.

B. Sand and pavers shall not be installed over frozen base materials.

C. Frozen sand shall not be installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONCRETE PAVERS

A. Manufacturer:

1. Unilock

- a. Uxbridge MA, Brewster NY
- b. Contact: New York - Mike Zengen – mike.zengen@unilock.com 845-538-7914

2. Concrete Pavers: Architectural Pavers Style – Rectangular Bond;

- a. Product: PROMENADE ECOTERRA™
- b. Size: 3 7/8 x 11 7/8 x 2 3/4" (100 x 300 x 70mm)
- c. Color: Light Opal blend
- d. Finish: Antiqued / Processed
- e. Edge: Rounded

B. Pavers shall meet the minimum material and physical properties set forth in ASTM C 936, Standard Specification for Interlocking Concrete Paving Units. Efflorescence shall not be a cause for rejection.

C. Pigment in concrete pavers shall conform to ASTM C 979. ACI Report No. 212.3R provides guidance on the use of pigments.

2.2 BEDDING AND JOINT SAND

A. Bedding and joint sand shall be clean, non-plastic, and free from deleterious or foreign matter. The sand shall be natural or manufactured from crushed rock. Limestone screenings or stone dust that do not conform to the grading requirements in Table 3 shall not be used.

B. The bedding sand shall conform to the grading requirements of ASTM C 33 as shown in Table 3.

TABLE 3
BEDDING SAND
GRADING REQUIREMENTS

ASTM C 33	
Sieve Size	Percent Passing
No. 4	95 to 100
No. 8	85 to 100
No. 16	50 to 85
No. 30	25 to 60
No. 50	10 to 30
No. 100	2 to 10

- C. The joint sand shall conform to the grading requirements of ASTM C 144 as shown in Table 4 below:

TABLE 4
JOINT SAND
GRADING REQUIREMENTS

ASTM C 144		
	Natural Sand	Manufactured Sand
Sieve Size	Percent Passing	Percent Passing
No. 4	100	100
No. 8	95 - 100	95 to 100
No. 16	70 - 100	70 to 100
No. 30	40 - 75	40 to 75
No. 50	10 - 35	20 to 40
No. 100	2 - 15	10 to 25
No. 200	0	0 to 10

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SITE PREPARATION

- A. Complete all underground utility work, curbing, trellis foundations, and wall construction prior to commencement of subbase construction.
- B. Compact the existing subgrade prior to placement of subbase material to at least 95% Standard Proctor Density per ASTM D 698.
- C. Under no circumstances shall further pavement construction proceed until the subgrade has been inspected and approved by the SBU and the Architect (or LA, Engineers etc.).

3.2 SUBBASE AND BASE INSTALLATION

- A. Place subbase materials in uniform lifts not exceeding 4 in., loose thickness and compacted to at least 100 percent Standard Proctor Maximum Dry Density as per ASTM 698.
- B. The upper surface of the subbase shall be sufficiently well graded and compacted to prevent infiltration of the bedding sand into the base both during construction and throughout its service life. Segregated areas of the granular base shall be blended by the application of crushed fines that have been watered and compacted into the surface.

- C. Before commencing the placement of the sand bedding course and the placement of the interlocking concrete pavers, the base shall be inspected by the Director's Representative.

3.3 PAVER INSTALLATION

- A. The sand shall be spread evenly over the base course and screeded to a nominal 1 in. (25 mm) thickness, not exceeding 1 ½ in. thickness. The screeded sand should not be disturbed. Sufficient sand shall be placed in order to stay ahead of the laid pavers. Bedding sand shall not be used to fill depressions in the base surface.
- B. Pavers shall be free of foreign material before installation.
- C. Pavers shall be inspected for color distribution and all chipped, damaged or discolored pavers shall be replaced.
- D. The pavers shall be laid in the layout pattern of rectangular bond as described by Unilock. Straight pattern lines shall be maintained.
- E. as described by Unilock. Straight pattern lines shall be maintained.
- F. Joints between the pavers on average shall be 1/16 in. wide, hand tight.
- G. Gaps at the edges of the paved area shall be filled with cut pavers or edge units.
- H. Pavers to be placed along the edge shall be cut with a double blade paver splitter or masonry saw.
- I. The paver surface shall be swept clean of all debris before compacting, in order to avoid damage from point loads.
- J. A low amplitude, high frequency plate compactor shall be used to compact the pavers into the sand. Use Table 5 below to select the size of compaction equipment:

TABLE 5
PAVER THICKNESS AND REQUIRED MINIMUM
COMPACTIVE EFFORT

Paver Thickness	Compactive Effort
2 3/4 in.	5,000 lbs.

- K. The pavers shall be compacted, and dry joint sand shall be swept into the joints until the joints are full. This will require at least two or three passes with the compactor. Do not compact within 3 ft. of the unrestrained edges of the paving units.
- L. All work to within 3 ft. of the laying face must be left fully compacted with sand-filled joints at the completion of each day.

- M. Excess joint sand shall be swept off when the job is complete.
- N. The surface elevation of pavers shall be 3" above adjacent area.

END OF SECTION 32 1413

SECTION 32 1613 – CONCRETE CURBS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

1. Division 03, Section 3000. "Cast-In-Place Concrete"
2. Division 31, Section 2000. "Earth Moving Operations"
3. Division 32, Section 1313. "Concrete Paving"
4. Division 32, Section 1623. "Sidewalks"

1.2 REFERENCES

- A. Except as shown or specified otherwise, the Work of this Section shall conform to the requirements of American Concrete Institute (ACI) and American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM) documents.
 1. ACI 304.2R-96: Placing Concrete by Pumping Methods.
 2. ACI 305R-10: Hot Weather Concreting.
 3. ACI 306R-10: Cold Weather Concreting.
 4. ACI 308.1-11: Standard Specification for Curing Concrete.
 5. ASTM C 94/C 94M – 11b: Standard Specification for Ready- Mixed Concrete.
 6. ASTM C 494/C 494M - 11: Standard Specification for Chemical Admixtures for Concrete.
- B. NYSDOT Standard Specifications
 1. Section 609 Curb and Curb & Gutter

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. ACI 301, Section 1.2 - Definitions
 1. Add the following definitions:
 - a. Cementitious Material: Cementitious materials include cement, ground blast furnace slag, and fly ash.
 - b. Pumped Concrete: Concrete that is conveyed by pumping pressure through rigid pipe or flexible hose.
 - c. Water-to-Cementitious Materials Ratio (w/c): A ratio representing quantity in pounds of free moisture available for cement hydration divided by quantity of cementitious materials in pounds per cubic yard concrete.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submittals Package: Submit product data for design mix(es) and materials for concrete specified below at the same time as a package.
- B. Product Data:
 1. Mix Design: Submit proposed concrete design mix(es) together with name and location of batching plant at least 28 days prior to the start of concrete work.

- a. Include test results of proposed concrete proportions based on previous field experience or laboratory trial batches in accordance with ACI 301, Section 4.
 - b. Pumped Concrete: Include test results of proposed design mix(es) tested under actual field conditions with the maximum horizontal run and vertical lift required for this project.
 2. Portland Cement: Brand and manufacturer's name.
 3. Fly Ash: Name and location of source, and DOT test numbers.
 4. Aggregates: Name and location of source, and DOT test numbers.
 5. Admixtures: Brand and manufacturer's name.
- C. If applicable under Executive Order 22 for New York State contract over \$1M with 50 cubic yards of more concrete, submit an Environmental Product Declaration (EPD) from the manufacturer for concrete within this specification section, if available. A statement of the contractor's good faith effort to obtain the EPD shall be provided if not available.
1. Manufacturer provided EPDs must be Product Specific Type III (Third Party Reviewed), in adherence with ISO 14025 Environmental labels and declarations, ISO 14044 Environmental management Life cycle assessment, and ISO 21930 Core rules for environment product declarations of construction products and services.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Qualifications of Crew Pumping Concrete: Workers pumping concrete shall have at least one year of experience pumping concrete.
- B. Concrete batching plants shall be currently approved as concrete suppliers by the New York State Department of Transportation.
- C. Truck mixers for concrete shall be currently approved by the New York State Department of Transportation.
- D. Pumping equipment for pumped concrete shall be subject to the approval of the Director.
- E. Fly ash supplier shall be on the New York State Department of Transportation's current "Approved List of Suppliers of Fly Ash."
- F. Source Quality Control: The Director reserves the right to inspect and approve the following items, at their own discretion, either with their own forces or with a designated inspection agency:
 1. Batching and mixing facilities and equipment.
 2. Sources of materials.
- G. ACI 301, Section 1.3 Reference standards and cited publications:
 1. Add the following to the list of ASTM Standards:
 - a. C 311-77 Standard Methods of Sampling and Testing Fly Ash or Natural Pozzolans for Use as A Mineral Admixture in Portland Cement Concrete.

- H. Performance Criteria: The following criteria are required for the products included in this section:
1. Cast-in-place Concrete shall contain post-industrial and/or post-consumer recycled content as follows:
 - a. Fly Ash: Concrete shall incorporate fly ash as a replacement for 15 percent (by mass) of the Portland cement. All design mixes are subject to review and approval by the Director.
 - b. GGBF (Ground Granulated Blast Furnace) Slag: Concrete shall incorporate GGBF slag as a replacement for at least 20 percent (by weight) of the Portland cement. All design mixes are subject to review and approval by the Director.
 - c. Certification of recycled content shall be in accordance with the SUBMITTALS Article above.
 2. Concrete manufactured within 500 miles (by air) of the project site shall be documented in accordance with the SUBMITTALS Article above.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Cement: ASTM C 150, Type II Portland cement.
- B. Aggregates: Use aggregate from a source on the NYSDOT Approved List of Sources of Fine and Coarse Aggregates. Concrete sand to conform to NYSDOT 703-07. Coarse Aggregate shall only be crushed stone, crushed slag or crushed gravel meeting the requirements of NYSDOT 703-02, and graded according to NYSDOT Table 501-2, Type CA 1.
- C. Water: Potable. Add water to obtain slump desired by the Engineer.
- D. Fly Ash: Fly Ash shall conform to the chemical and physical requirements for Mineral Admixture, Class F listed in AASHTO M 295 including Table 2 (except for Footnote A). Loss of Ignition shall not exceed 4.0%.
- E. Ground Granulated Blast Furnace Slag: Shall conform to NYSDOT 711-12.
- F. Air-entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260, and on the NYSDOT Approved List of Sources for Air-entraining Admixtures.
- G. Water-reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494 / C 494M-04 Type A and on the New York State Department of Transportation's current "Approved List".
- H. Reinforcement: Provide as noted in the plans.

2.2 PROPORTIONING OF CONCRETE MIXES

- A. Provide concrete mix design meeting requirements with Table 2 Concrete Mixtures of NYSDOT Materials Procedure 501-2, with a minimum compressive strength of 4000 psi and design air content percentage as indicated in MP 501-2.

- B. Provide mix design as determined by the Engineer unless otherwise indicated in the contract documents. Any concrete mix design not meeting the requirements will be subjected to approval by the Director.
- C. Air content: Desired range 5.0-10.0%
- D. Slump: Maximum 4 inches; minimum 2 inches before the addition of any water-reducing admixtures or high-range water-reducing admixtures (superplasticizers) at the site. Except when a water-reducing admixture is used, the maximum slump shall be 6 inches and when a high range water reducing admixture is used maximum slump shall be 8 inches.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Provide rebar as required, except where noted or directed by Engineer or the University.
- B. Forms shall be free from warp and of such construction that there will be no interference to inspection for grade and alignment. All forms shall extend to the full curb depth and be secured so no displacement will occur during the placement of concrete.
- C. Set approved forms true to line and grade. Cast curb in 10-foot-long sections. If curbs will abut existing pavement, locate construction joints opposite existing pavement joints as directed.
- D. Provide cut-to-size joint filler between 10-foot sections and where curb abuts existing concrete paving and fixed structures or appurtenances. The joints between segments are not to exceed $\frac{1}{4}$ " in width. Protect the top edge of the joint filler during concrete placement with a temporary cap and remove after concrete has been placed.
- E. Consolidate concrete by spading, rodding, forking, or using an approved vibrator eliminating all air pockets, stone pockets, and honeycombing. Remove forms and rub the exposed face of curb to a smooth rubbed finish. The forms are to be left in place until the concrete has hardened sufficiently to permit removal without damage to the curb. No plastering will be permitted.

3.2 JOINTS

- A. General: Construct control joints and construction joints true-to-line with face perpendicular to surface of the concrete, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Control Joints: Provide control joints, sectioning concrete into areas as shown on the drawings or every 10 ft for curbs. Construct control joints for a depth equal to at least $\frac{1}{4}$ of the concrete thickness.

- C. Sawed Joints: Form control joints using powered saws equipped with shatterproof abrasive or diamond-rimmed blades. Cut joints into hardened concrete as soon as the surface will not be torn, abraded or otherwise damaged by cutting action.
- D. Construction Joints: Place construction joints every 5' minimum and 20' maximum. Place construction joints at end of all pours and at locations where placement operations are stopped for a period of more than ½ hour, except where such pours terminate at expansion joints.

3.3 CONCRETE PLACING AND VIBRATING

- A. Concrete shall be placed in the forms and shall be compacted with an immersion type mechanical vibrator. The vibrator shall be of a size and weight capable of thoroughly vibrating the concrete without damaging or misaligning the forms. The forms shall be left in place until the concrete has hardened sufficiently to permit removal without damage to the curb. The front form may be removed before the other forms to facilitate finishing the curb and removal of the joint dividers. After removal of the forms, the exposed faces of the curb shall be immediately rubbed to a uniform surface. No plastering will be permitted.

3.4 CURING AND PROTECTION

- A. Hot Weather Concreting: Comply with ACI 305R whenever the atmospheric temperature or the form surface temperature is at or above 90 degrees F., or climatic conditions of wind and/or low humidity will cause premature drying of the concrete.
- B. Curing Temperature: Maintain the temperature of the concrete at 50 degrees F. or above during the curing period. Keep the concrete temperature as uniform as possible and protect it from rapid atmospheric temperature changes. Avoid temperature changes in concrete which exceed 5 degrees F. in any one hour and 50 degrees F. in any 24-hour period.
- C. Cover and cure for a minimum of seven days in accordance with ACI 301.

3.5 REPAIRS AND PROTECTIONS

- A. Repair or replace broken or defective concrete, as directed by the Director's Representative.

END OF SECTION 32 1613

SECTION 32 1623 – SIDEWALKS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Cast-in-place Concrete Sidewalks.
 - 2. ADA ramps.
 - 3. Detectable Warning Surface.
 - 4. Concrete Paving Joint Sealants.

1.2 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

- A. Division 03, Section 3000. "Cast-In-Place Concrete"
- B. Division 31, Section 2000. "Earth Moving Operations"
- C. Division 32, Section 1313. "Concrete Paving"
- D. Division 32, Section 1613. "Concrete Curbs"

1.3 REFERENCES

- A. Except as shown or specified otherwise, the Work of this Section shall conform to the requirements of American Concrete Institute (ACI) and American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM) documents.
 - 1. ACI 304.2R-96: Placing Concrete by Pumping Methods.
 - 2. ACI 305R-10: Hot Weather Concreting.
 - 3. ACI 306R-10: Cold Weather Concreting.
 - 4. ACI 308.1-11: Standard Specification for Curing Concrete.
 - 5. ASTM C 94/C 94M – 11b: Standard Specification for Ready- Mixed Concrete.
 - 6. ASTM C 494/C 494M - 11: Standard Specification for Chemical Admixtures for Concrete.
- B. NYSDOT Standard Specifications
 - 1. Section 608 Sidewalks, Driveways, Bicycle Paths, and Vegetation Control Strips

1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. Cementitious Materials: Portland cement alone or in combination with one or more of blended hydraulic cement, fly ash, slag cement, and other pozzolans.
- B. Water-to-Cementitious Materials Ratio (w/c): A ratio representing quantity in pounds of free moisture available for cement hydration divided by quantity of cementitious materials in pounds per cubic yard concrete.

1.5 REFERENCES

- A. Comply with American Concrete Institute Specifications for Structural Concrete, ACI 301-16, for the Work of this Section unless otherwise indicated on the drawings or specified.

1.6 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
 - 1. Concrete Design Mix: Submit proposed concrete design mix together with name and location of batching plant at least 28 days prior to the start of concrete work.
 - 2. Portland Cement: Brand and Manufacturer's name.
 - 3. Air-entraining Admixture: Brand and manufacturer's name.
 - 4. Water-reducing or High Range Water-reducing Admixture: Brand and manufacturer's name.
 - 5. Curing and Anti-Spalling Compound: Manufacturer's specifications and application instructions.
 - 6. ADA Detectable Warning Surface: Manufacturer's specifications, product data, test reports, method of installation, and maintenance instructions.
- B. Samples:
 - 1. ADA Detectable Warning Surface: Two samples, the same color as the material to be installed, 6 inches x 8 inches minimum.
- C. If applicable under Executive Order 22 for New York State contract over \$1M with 50 cubic yards of more of concrete Submit an Environmental Product Declaration (EPD) from the manufacturer for concrete within this specification section, if available. A statement of the contractor's good faith effort to obtain the EPD shall be provided if not available.
 - 1. Manufacturer provided EPDs must be Product Specific Type III (Third Party Reviewed), in adherence with ISO 14025 Environmental labels and declarations, ISO 14044 Environmental management Life cycle assessment, and ISO 21930 Core rules for environment product declarations of construction products and services.

1.7 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Design Mixtures: For each concrete paving mixture. Include alternate design mixtures when characteristics of materials, Project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant adjustments.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Concrete batching plants shall be currently approved as concrete suppliers by the New York State Department of Transportation.
- B. Performance Criteria: The following criteria are required for the products included in this section:
 - 1. Cast-in-place Concrete shall contain post-industrial and/or post-consumer recycled content as follows:

- a. Fly Ash: ASTM C618, including Table 1, except for foot note A, Class F, except loss on ignition shall not exceed 4.0 percent. Concrete shall incorporate fly ash as a replacement for 15 percent (by weight) of the Portland cement. All design mixes are subject to review and approval by the Director.
 - b. GGBF (Ground Granulated Blast Furnace) Slag: Concrete shall incorporate GGBF slag as a replacement for at least 20 percent (by weight) of the Portland cement. All design mixes are subject to review and approval by the Director.
 - c. Certification of recycled content shall be in accordance with the SUBMITTALS Article above.
2. Concrete manufactured within 500 miles (by air) of the project site shall be documented in accordance with the SUBMITTALS Article above.
 3. Steel reinforcement manufactured within 500 miles (by air) of the project site shall be documented in accordance with SUBMITTALS Article above.

1.9 DELIVERY

- A. Batch Ticket Information: Indicate on the delivery ticket the type, brand, and amount of concrete reinforcement material added to each batch of concrete.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Cast-In-Place Concrete: Provide concrete mix design meeting requirements with Table 2 Concrete Mixtures of NYSDOT Materials Procedure 501-2, with a minimum compressive strength of 4000 psi and design air content percentage as indicated in MP 501-2.
 1. Air content: Desired range 5.0-10.0%
 2. Cement: ASTM C 150, Type II Portland cement.
 3. Maximum water/cement ratio = 0.44.
 4. Aggregates: Use aggregate from a source on the NYSDOT Approved List of Sources of Fine and Coarse Aggregates.
 5. Water: Potable.
 6. Slump: Maximum 4 inches; minimum 2 inches before the addition of any water-reducing admixtures or high-range water-reducing admixtures (superplasticizers) at the site. Except when a water-reducing admixture is used, the maximum slump shall be 6 inches and when a high range water reducing admixture is used maximum slump shall be 8 inches.
 7. Water-reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494 / C 494M-04 Type A and on the New York State Department of Transportation's current "Approved List".
 8. High Range Water-reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494 / C 494M-04 Type F and on the New York State Department of Transportation's current "Approved List".
 9. Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type D, Water-reducing, and retarding, for use in hot weather concreting, and on the New York State Department of Transportation's current "Approved List".

- B. Chemical Curing and Anti-Spalling Compound: ASTM C-309, Type 1D, Class B, with minimum 18 percent total solids content. No thinning of material allowed. The volatile organic compound (VOC) content of concrete curing compounds shall meet the requirements of the EPA national AIM VOC regulations.
 - 1. SureCure Emulsion, Kaufman Products, Inc. 3811 Curtis Avenue, Baltimore, MD 21226, (800) 637-6372.
 - 2. Cure & Seal by Symons Corp., 200 East Touhy Ave., PO Box 5018, Des Plaines, IL 60017-5018, (847) 298-3200.
 - 3. Kure-N-Seal by Sonneborn/ BASF Building Systems, 889 Valley Park Dr., Shakopee, MN 55379, (800) 433-9517.
 - 4. Day-Chem Cure & Seal UV 26 percent (J-22 UV) by Dayton Superior Corp., 721 Richard St., Miamisburg, OH 45342, (800) 745-3700.
Acrylseal HS by Master Builders/ BASF Building Systems, 23700 Chagrin Blvd., Cleveland, OH 44122, (800) 628-9990.
- C. Reinforcement: W2.9 wire at 6"x6", or approved equal.
- D. ADA Detectable Warning Surface: Precast or prefabricated paving units or detectable Warning plate with a non-slip texture on the travel surface. The color shall be a shade of red brick. There shall be a minimum of 70 percent contrast in light reflectance between the detectable warning surface and the adjoining surfaces. Material used to provide visual warnings shall be an integral part of the detectable warning surface. Visual contrast to meet the existing ADAAG A4.2.9.2.
 - 1. Detectable Warning Plate Model R-4984 by Neenah Foundry, 2121 Brooks Avenue, Neenah, WI 54956, (800) 558-5075, www.nfco.com.
 - 2. ADA Pavers by Whiteacre-Greer, 1400 S. Mahoning Avenue, Alliance, OH 44601, (800) 947-2837, www.wgpaver.com.
 - 3. Detectable Warning Surface System by Detecto-Tile, 10133 State Highway 7, Worcester, NY 12197, (607) 397-9381, www.detectotile.com.
 - 4. Classic Dot Detectable Warning Pavers by Oaks Concrete Products, 1900 Vulcan Blvd., Bartlett, IL 60103, (800) 263-4162, www.oakspavers.com.
 - 5. Granite Truncated Dome Pavers by Cold Spring Granite Company, 202 S. Third Avenue, Cold Spring, MN 56320-2593, (800) 551-7502, www.coldspringgranite.com.

2.2 JOINTS AND EMBEDDED ITEMS (Amendments to ACI 301, Section 5.3.2.6):

- A. Obtain bond at construction joints by using bonding agent (adhesive) in accordance w/ ACI 301 Section 5.2.1.7 or the use of cement grout.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Do not use items of aluminum for mixing, chuting, conveying, forming, or finishing concrete. However, magnesium alloy tools may be used for finishing.
- B. Use welded wire mesh for reinforcement.

- C. Use concrete forms free from warp and that extend to the full depth of the sidewalk or driveway. Ensure forms are secured so no displacement will occur during the placement of concrete. Set forms true to line and grade and anchor rigidly in position.
- D. Space expansion joints equally at not more than 20'-0" on center unless otherwise indicated. Place expansion joints to isolate sidewalk from other structures and fixed objects.
- E. Place joint filler at expansion joints and where new concrete abuts existing concrete paving and fixed structures or appurtenances. Protect the top edge of the joint filler during concrete placement with a temporary cap and remove after concrete has been placed.

3.2 PLACING WIRE MESH

- A. At the time concrete is placed, reinforcement shall be free of mud, oil, loose rust, loose mill scale, and other materials or coatings that may adversely affect or reduce the bond.
- B. Unless otherwise shown differently on the Drawings, all reinforcement to be placed per ACI 301-16. Embed wire mesh at mid-depth in slab.

3.3 CONCRETE

- A. Consolidate concrete by spading, rodding, forking, or using an approved vibrator eliminating all air pockets, stone pockets, and honeycombing. Work and float concrete surface to produce a uniform texture.
- B. Locate construction joints, if any, at expansion joints.

3.4 PLACING ADA DETECTABLE WARNING SURFACE

- A. The ADA detectable warning surface shall be installed behind the edge of the curb.
- B. Domes shall be aligned on a square grid in the predominant direction of travel to permit wheels to roll between the domes.
- C. The curb, ADA detectable warning surface, and sidewalk shall be flush with the elevation of the road surface.

3.5 FINISHING AND CURING

- A. Wait until bleeding is stopped before final finishing operations.
- B. Keep surface damp but not wet between initial strike off and final finish.
 - 1. Utilize a fog spray, evaporative inhibitor, or midrange water reducer that is compatible with supplementary cementing materials to help control the amount of surface drying of fresh concrete.

- C. Use minimal working of the surface during finishing.
- D. Utilize a magnesium or wood float.
- E. Avoid the use of steel finishing trowels and utilize a concrete finishing machine when possible.
- F. Finish edges of walk and expansion and control joints with a 1/4-inch radius edging tool.
- G. Provide broom finish for walking surfaces.
- H. Apply curing and anti-spalling compound in accordance with the manufacturer's printed instructions.
- I. Apply curing immediately after the final finish.
- J. Hot Weather Concreting: Comply with ACI 305R whenever the atmospheric temperature or the form surface temperature is at or above 90 degrees F., or climatic conditions of wind and/or low humidity will cause premature drying of the concrete.
- K. Curing Temperature: Maintain the temperature of the concrete at 50 degrees F. or above during the curing period. Keep the concrete temperature as uniform as possible and protect it from rapid atmospheric temperature changes. Avoid temperature changes in concrete which exceed 5 degrees F. in any one hour and 50 degrees F. in any 24-hour period.
- L. Saw control joints (CJ) one inch deep after the concrete has set. Complete saw cuts within 18 hours after slab is placed. Space control joints equally between expansion joints at approximately 5'-0" on center, except where a different spacing is shown on the drawings.
- M. Provide tooled control joints one inch deep. Space control joints equally between expansion joints approximately 5'-0" on center, except where a different spacing is shown on the drawings.

END OF SECTION 32 1623

SECTION 32 1723 – PAVEMENT MARKINGS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Painted markings applied to asphalt paving.
2. Painted markings applied to concrete surfaces.

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Review methods and procedures related to marking asphalt paving or concrete surfaces including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Asphalt-paving or concrete-surface aging period before application of pavement markings.
 - b. Review requirements for protecting pavement markings, including restriction of traffic during installation period.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Include technical data and tested physical and performance properties.

1. Pavement-marking paint, acrylic.
2. Pavement-marking paint, latex.
3. Pavement marking, thermoplastic.
4. Glass beads.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Indicate pavement markings, colors, lane separations, defined parking spaces, and dimensions to adjacent work.
2. Indicate, with NYS symbol of accessibility, spaces allocated for people with disabilities.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Regulatory requirements

Comply with materials, workmanship, and other applicable requirements of NYS DOT for pavement-marking work.

1. Measurement and payment provisions and safety program submittals included in standard specifications do not apply to this Section.

1.3 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Perform the painting operations after working hours, on weekends or at such times so as not to interfere with the flow of traffic. Provide temporary barriers to prevent vehicles from driving over newly painted areas.
- B. Apply paint on dry pavement surface when the air temperature is above 40 degrees F.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIALS

- A. Thermoplastic, As Per NYSDOT Specifications
 - 1. Color: As indicated.
- B. Glass Beads: As Per NYSDOT Specifications, to be set into NYSDOT specificities Thermoplastic
 - 1. Roundness: Minimum 75 percent true spheres by weight.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that pavement-marking substrate is dry and in suitable condition to begin pavement marking in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Proceed with pavement marking only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PAVEMENT MARKING

- A. Do not apply pavement-marking paint until layout, colors, and placement have been verified with engineer.
- B. Allow asphalt paving or concrete surfaces to age for a minimum of 30 days before starting pavement marking.
- C. Sweep and clean the surface to eliminate loose material and dust.
- D. Apply paint with mechanical equipment to produce pavement markings, of dimensions indicated, with uniform, straight edges. Apply at manufacturer's recommended rates to provide a minimum wet film thickness of 15 mils (0.4 mm).

1. Apply graphic symbols and lettering with paint-resistant, die-cut stencils, firmly secured to asphalt paving or concrete surface. Mask an extended area beyond edges of each stencil to prevent paint application beyond stencil. Apply paint so that it cannot run beneath the stencil.
2. Broadcast glass beads uniformly into wet markings at a rate of 6 lb/gal. (0.72 kg/L).

3.3 PROTECTING AND CLEANING

- A. Protect pavement markings from damage and wear during the remainder of construction period.
- B. Clean spillage and soiling from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

END OF SECTION 32 1723

SECTION 32 3113 - CHAIN LINK FENCES AND GATES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Decorative Chain-link fences.
 - 2. Swing gates.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for cast-in-place concrete post footings.

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 - 1. Inspect and discuss preparatory work specified elsewhere.
 - 2. Review required testing, inspecting, and certifying procedures.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for the following:
 - a. Fence and gate posts, rails, and fittings.
 - b. Chain-link fabric, reinforcements, and attachments.
 - c. Gates and hardware.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each type of fence and gate assembly.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 2. Include accessories and hardware.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of factory-applied finish.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each type of component with factory-applied finish, prepared on Samples of size indicated below:
 - 1. Polymer-Coated Components: In 6-inch (150-mm) lengths for components and on full-sized units for accessories.

- E. Delegated-Design Submittal: For structural performance of chain-link fence and gate frameworks, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For professional engineer
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of chain-link fence, and gate.
- C. Product Test Reports: For framework strength according to ASTM F1043, for tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency or a qualified testing agency.
- D. Field quality-control reports.
- E. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Mockups: Build mockups to set quality standards for fabrication and installation.
 - 1. Build mockup for typical chain-link fence and gate, including accessories.
 - a. Size: 10-foot length of fence.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify layout information for chain-link fences and gates shown on Drawings in relation to property survey and existing structures. Verify dimensions by field measurements.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of chain-link fences and gates that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Failure to comply with performance requirements.
 - b. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design chain-link fence and gate frameworks.
- B. Structural Performance: Chain-link fence and gate frameworks shall withstand the design wind loads and stresses for fence height(s) and under exposure conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7.
- C. Lightning Protection System: Maximum resistance-to-ground value of 25 ohms at each grounding location along fence under normal dry conditions.

2.2 CHAIN-LINK FENCE FABRIC

- A. General: Provide fabric in one-piece heights measured between top and bottom of outer edge of selvage knuckle or twist according to "CLFMI Product Manual" and requirements indicated below:
 - 1. Fabric Height: As indicated on Drawings
 - 2. Steel Wire for Fabric: Wire diameter of 0.192 inch (4.88 mm)
 - a. Mesh Size: 2 inches (50 mm)
 - b. Polymer-Coated Fabric: ASTM F668, Class 1.
 - 1) Color: Black according to ASTM F934.

2.3 FENCE FRAMEWORK

- A. Posts and Rails ASTM F1043 for framework, including rails, braces, and line; terminal; and corner posts. Provide members with minimum dimensions and wall thickness according to ASTM F1043 or ASTM F1083 based on the following:
 - 1. Fence Height: 48 inches (1830 mm) for retaining wall fence. 96 inches (2440 mm) for chiller fence. See contract drawings for fence locations.
 - 2. Post: Galvanized-steel
 - a. According to ASTM F1043, first two options in "Line Post" Subparagraph below are for both types of round pipe, third option is for Schedule 40 pipe only, and fourth option is for roll-formed-steel C-section shapes.
 - b. Line Post: 2 3/8 inches (60 mm) in diameter
 - c. End, Corner: 2 3/8 inches (60 mm) in diameter
 - 3. Always retain first option for intermediate rails in "Horizontal Framework Members" Subparagraph below if fence height is 12 feet (3.66 m) or higher. According to ASTM F1553, all fences should have top framework, either a rail or tension wire. Bottom horizontal members enhance security; use them also on

fences constructed with slats. Consider retaining last option below or, alternatively, specify tension wire.

4. Rails: top rails according to ASTM F1043.
 - a. Top Rail: 1.5 inches (38 mm) in diameter
5. Polymer coating:
 - a. Color: Black according to ASTM F934.

2.4 ACCESSORIES

A. Tension bar:

1. Material: Galvanized steel, conforming to ASTM A123/A123M.
2. Size: 3/16 inches x 3/4 inches x length to match fabric height.
3. Quantity: Provide one tension bar for each end post, corner post, and gate post.

B. Tension bands:

1. Material: Galvanized steel, conforming to ASTM A123/A123M.
2. Size: 3/4 inches wide, 12 gauge thick.

C. Truss Rods and Turnbuckles

1. Material: Galvanized steel.
2. Size: Minimum 5/16 inch (8 mm) diameter rod with turnbuckle for adjustment.
3. Application: Provide truss rods for each end, gate, and corner post to the nearest line post, or as shown on the drawings.

2.5 SWING GATES

A. General: ASTM F900 for gate posts and double swing gate types.

1. Gate Leaf Width: 60 inches (1524 mm)
2. Height: Match the height of the surrounding fence.
3. Materials: Galvanized steel pipe, conforming to ASTM F1043.
4. Hardware:
 - a. Hinges: Galvanized, 360-degree inward and outward swing
 - b. Latch: Industrial-grade latch with provision for padlocking.
 - c. Drop Rods: Galvanized steel, used to secure the gate leaves in the closed position.
 - d. Truss Rods: Galvanized steel truss rods for additional support and stability.
5. Accessories:
 - a. Tension Bars: Galvanized steel, conforming to ASTM A123/A123M, 3/16 inches x 3/4 inches x length to match fabric height.
 - b. Tension Bands: Galvanized steel, 3/4 inches wide, 12 gauge thick.
 - c. Tie Wires: Galvanized steel, 9 gauge.

- d. Truss Rods and Turnbuckles: Minimum 5/16 inch (8 mm) diameter rod with turnbuckle for adjustment.
- 6. Finish: Polymer coating:
 - a. Color: Black according to ASTM F934.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for a certified survey of property lines and legal boundaries, site clearing, earthwork, pavement work, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. Do not begin installation before final grading is completed unless otherwise permitted by Architect.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Stake locations of fence lines, gates, and terminal posts. Do not exceed intervals of 500 feet (152 m) or line of sight between stakes. Indicate locations of utilities, lawn sprinkler system, underground structures, benchmarks, and property monuments.

3.3 CHAIN-LINK FENCE INSTALLATION

- A. Install chain-link fencing according to ASTM F567 and more stringent requirements specified.
 - 1. Install fencing on established boundary lines inside property line.
- B. Post Excavation: Drill or hand-excavate holes for posts to diameters and spacings indicated, in firm, undisturbed soil.
- C. Post Setting: Set posts in concrete at indicated spacing into firm, undisturbed soil as shown in contract drawings.
 - 1. Verify that posts are set plumb, aligned, and at correct height and spacing, and hold in position during setting with concrete or mechanical devices.
 - 2. Concrete Fill: Place concrete around posts to dimensions indicated and vibrate or tamp for consolidation. Protect aboveground portion of posts from concrete splatter.
 - a. Exposed Concrete: Extend 2 inches (50 mm) above grade; shape and smooth to shed water.

- b. Posts Set into Sleeves in Concrete: Use steel pipe sleeves preset and anchored into concrete for installing posts. After posts are inserted into sleeves, fill annular space between post and sleeve with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout or anchoring cement, mixed and placed according to anchoring material manufacturer's written instructions. Finish anchorage joint to slope away from post to drain water.
- D. Terminal Posts: Install terminal end, corner, and gate posts according to ASTM F567 and terminal pull posts at changes in horizontal or vertical alignment of 15 degrees or more 30 degrees or more as indicated on Drawings <Insert requirement>. For runs exceeding 500 feet (152 m), space pull posts an equal distance between corner or end posts.
- E. Line Posts: Space line posts uniformly maximum 10 feet O.C. approved in shop drawing submission.
- F. Post Bracing and Intermediate Rails: Install according to ASTM F567, maintaining plumb position and alignment of fence posts. Diagonally brace terminal posts to adjacent line posts with truss rods and turnbuckles. Install braces at end and gate posts and at both sides of corner and pull posts.
 - 1. Locate horizontal braces at midheight of fabric 72 inches (1830 mm) or higher, on fences with top rail, Install so posts are plumb when diagonal rod is under proper tension.
- G. Top Rail: Install according to ASTM F567, maintaining plumb position and alignment of fence posts. Run rail continuously through line post caps, bending to radius for curved runs and terminating into rail end attached to posts or post caps fabricated to receive rail at terminal posts. Provide expansion couplings as recommended in writing by fencing manufacturer.
- H. Chain-Link Fabric: Apply fabric to outside of enclosing framework. Leave a max of 4" bottom clearance between finish grade or surface and bottom selvage unless otherwise indicated. Pull fabric taut and tie to posts, and rails. Anchor to framework so fabric remains under tension after pulling force is released.
- I. Tension or Stretcher Bars: Thread through fabric and secure to end, corner, pull, and gate posts, with tension bands spaced not more than 15 inches (380 mm) o.c.
- J. Line post tie: Use wire of proper length to firmly secure fabric to line posts and rails. Attach wire at one end to chain-link fabric, wrap wire around post a minimum of 180 degrees, and attach other end to chain-link fabric according to ASTM F626. Bend ends of wire to minimize hazard to individuals and clothing.
 - 1. Maximum Spacing: Tie fabric to line posts at 12 inches (300 mm) o.c. and to braces at 24 inches (610 mm) o.c.
- K. Fasteners: Install nuts for tension bands and carriage bolts on the side of fence opposite the fabric side.

3.4 GATE INSTALLATION

- A. Install gates according to manufacturer's written instructions, level, plumb, and secure for full opening without interference. Attach fabric as for fencing. Attach hardware using tamper-resistant or concealed means. Install ground-set items in concrete for anchorage. Adjust hardware for smooth operation.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Gates: Adjust gates to operate smoothly, easily, and quietly, free of binding, warp, excessive deflection, distortion, nonalignment, misplacement, disruption, or malfunction, throughout entire operational range. Confirm that latches and locks engage accurately and securely without forcing or binding.
- B. Lubricate hardware and other moving parts.

3.6 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain chain-link fences and gates.

END OF SECTION 32 3113

SECTION 32 3129 - WOOD FENCES AND GATES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. The requirements for the construction of an 8-foot-tall shadowbox wood fence with specified materials and installation methods.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for cast-in-place concrete post footings.

1.2 References

- A. ASTM A123/A123M: Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products
- B. ASTM F537-01: Standard Specification for Design, Fabrication, and Installation of Fences Constructed of Wood and Related Materials
- C. AWWA U1: Use Category System: User Specification for Treated Wood

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Inspect and discuss preparatory work specified elsewhere.
2. Review required testing, inspecting, and certifying procedures.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for the following:
 - a. Fence posts, rails, and fittings.
 - b. Chain-link material, reinforcements, and attachments.

B. Shop Drawings: For each type of fence and gate assembly.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

2. Include accessories and hardware.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of factory-applied finish.
- D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For structural performance of wood fence and frameworks, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
- E. Sustainable Design Submittals:
 1. Submit an Environmental Product Declaration (EPD) from the manufacturer for steel within this specification section, if available. A statement of the contractor's good faith effort to obtain the EPD shall be provided if not feasible.
 - a. Manufacturer provided EPD's must be Product Specific Type III (Third Party Reviewed), in adherence with ISO 14025 Environmental labels and declarations, ISO 14044 Environmental Management Life Cycle Assessment, and ISO 21930 Core rules for environmental product declarations of construction products and services.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For professional engineer
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of wood.
- C. Product Test Reports: For framework strength according to ASTM F1043, for tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency or a qualified testing agency.
- D. Field quality-control reports.
- E. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Mockups: Installer Qualifications: Minimum of 3 years' experience in installing fences of similar type and scope.
- B. Mockups: Build mockups to set quality standards for fabrication and installation.
 1. Build mockup for typical wood fence, including accessories.
 - a. Size: 10-foot length of fence.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify layout information for wood fences shown on Drawings in relation to property survey and existing structures. Verify dimensions by field measurements.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of wood fences that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Failure to comply with performance requirements.
 - b. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance: Wood fence frameworks shall withstand the design wind loads and stresses for fence height(s) and under exposure conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7.

2.2 WOOD FENCE MATERIAL

- A. Pickets (Vertical Boards):
 - 1. Exterior Pickets: 1x6 treated wood, length to match fence height.
 - 2. Interior Pickets: 1x2 treated wood, length to match fence height.
- B. Rails (Horizontal Beams):
 - 1. 2x4 treated wood, located at top, middle, and bottom with a 6-inch offset from the top and bottom of the pickets.
- C. Posts (Vertical Supports):
 - 1. 2-inch diameter galvanized steel posts with rounded dome caps.
 - 2. Posts to be installed with a minimum depth of 3 feet into concrete footings.
- D. Fasteners:
 - 1. Galvanized steel or stainless steel nails and screws, suitable for exterior use.
- E. Brackets:

1. Steel to wood brackets for 180-degree and 90-degree attachments to the rails, galvanized or stainless steel.

2.3 FABRICATION

- A. Fence panels to be assembled in the field.
- B. Pre-drill holes for screws and bolts to prevent wood splitting.

2.4 FINISHES

- A. Wood to be pressure-treated with a preservative suitable for ground contact.
- B. Metal components to be hot-dip galvanized.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for site clearing, earthwork, pavement work, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 1. Do not begin installation before final grading is completed unless otherwise permitted by Architect.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Stake locations of fence lines, gates, and terminal posts. Do not exceed intervals of 500 feet (152 m) or line of sight between stakes. Indicate locations of utilities, lawn sprinkler system, underground structures, benchmarks, and property monuments.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install wood fencing according to ASTM F537-01 and more stringent requirements specified.
 1. Install fencing on established boundary lines inside property line.
- B. Post Excavation: Drill or hand-excavate holes for posts to diameters and spacings indicated, in firm, undisturbed soil.
- C. Post Setting: Set posts in concrete at indicated spacing into firm, undisturbed soil.

1. Verify that posts are set plumb, aligned, and at correct height and spacing, and hold in position during setting with concrete or mechanical devices.
2. Concrete Fill: Place concrete around posts to dimensions indicated and vibrate or tamp for consolidation. Protect aboveground portion of posts from concrete splatter.
 - a. Exposed Concrete: Extend 2 inches (50 mm) above grade; shape and smooth to shed water.
 - b. Concealed Concrete: Place top of concrete below concrete pad as indicated on Drawings to allow covering with surface material.
 - c. Posts Set into Holes in Concrete: Form or core drill holes not less than 5 inches (127 mm) deep and 3/4 inch (20 mm) larger than OD of post. Clean holes of loose material, insert posts, and fill annular space between post and concrete with anchoring cement, mixed and placed according to anchoring material manufacturer's written instructions. Finish anchorage joint to slope away from post to drain water.
- D. Rails: Attach 2x4 rails to metal posts using steel to wood brackets at top, middle, and bottom locations.
- E. Pickets: Attach 1x6 pickets vertically to the exterior side of the rails using galvanized nails or screws, ensuring a 1-inch gap between each 1x6 picket. Attach 1x2 pickets to the interior side of the rails, aligning in center with the 1-inch gaps between the 1x6 pickets ensuring they are evenly spaced to create the shadowbox effect.
- F. Intermediate and Bottom Rails: Secure to posts with fittings.
- G. Fasteners: Install nuts for tension bands and carriage bolts on the side of fence opposite the fabric side. Peen ends of bolts or score threads to prevent removal of nuts.

3.4 GATE INSTALLATION

- A. Install gates according to manufacturer's written instructions, level, plumb, and secure for full opening without interference. Attach fabric as for fencing. Attach hardware using tamper-resistant or concealed means. Install ground-set items in concrete for anchorage. Adjust hardware for smooth operation.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Gates: Adjust gates to operate smoothly, easily, and quietly, free of binding, warp, excessive deflection, distortion, nonalignment, misplacement, disruption, or malfunction, throughout entire operational range. Confirm that latches and locks engage accurately and securely without forcing or binding.
- B. Lubricate hardware and other moving parts.

3.6 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain wood fences.

END OF SECTION 32 3129

SECTION 32 3200 - LANDSCAPE BOULDERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Landscape boulders.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Division 31 Section 1000 "Site Clearing".

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference:** Conduct conference at Project site.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Landscape Boulders:** Contractor shall submit digital photographs of proposed landscape boulders. Landscape Architect may request to visit site to review landscape boulders for the Project.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Landscape Boulders:** Shall be sourced locally and shall be granite, gneiss, schist or approved equal as approved by the Landscape Architect.
1. Sizing:
 - a. Minimum size shall be: 3'-0" x 2'-0" x 1'-6"
 - b. Maximum size shall be: 5'-0" x 3'-0" x 2'-0"
 2. Boulder shall be identified as granite, gneiss, or schist and shall be free from jagged or sharp edges.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A.** The Landscape Architect shall be notified two weeks before the boulders are delivered to the Project site.
- B.** Contractor shall stockpile materials at an approved location. The boulders shall be approved prior to placement.
- C.** Contractor shall notify Landscape Architect when boulder placement site is complete and ready to receive boulders.

- D. After the arrangement of boulders is approved, the Contractor shall set the boulders in place and backfill around them with specified bedding material as shown in the contract documents. The placed boulders shall be clean, free from marks or scars caused by construction equipment and in a stable position that prevents future removal or displacement.

END OF SECTION 32 3200

SECTION 32 3216 – PRECAST CONCRETE RETAINING WALLS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 DESCRIPTION

A. This section includes precast cantilever retaining walls.

1. Precast Cantilever Retaining Wall: This work shall consist of the design, manufacture and construction of a precast concrete cantilever retaining wall structure in accordance with this specification and in close conformity with the lines, grades, design, and dimensions shown in the Construction Documents and Plans.

1.02 APPLICABLE CODES, STANDARDS, AND SPECIFICATIONS

A. AASHTO LRFD Bridge Design Specifications – 9th Edition 2020.

B. American Concrete Institute (ACI):

1. 211.1, Selecting Proportions for Normal and Heavy Weight and Mass Concrete.
2. 301, Specification for Structural Concrete.
3. 309R, Guide for Consolidation of Concrete.
4. 318, Building Code Requirements for Reinforced Concrete.
5. 347R, Guide to Formwork for Concrete.

C. American Institute of Steel Construction (AISC) – Steel Construction Manual 14th Edition.

D. ASTM International (ASTM):

1. C31, Making and Curing Concrete Test Specimens in the Field.
2. C33, Concrete Aggregates.
3. C39, Standard Method of Test for Compressive Strength of Cylindrical Concrete Specimens.
4. C88, Test Method for Soundness of Aggregate by Use of Sodium Sulfate or Magnesium Sulfate.
5. C94, Specification for Ready-mixed Concrete.
6. C136, Method for Sieve Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregates
7. C138, Test Method for Density (Unit Weight), Yield, and Air Content (Gravimetric) of Concrete.

8. C143, Test Method for Slump of Hydraulic Cement Concrete.
9. C150, Specification for Portland cement.
10. C171, Specification for Sheet Materials for Curing Concrete.
11. C192, Test Method of Making and Curing Concrete Test Specimens in the Laboratory.
12. C231, Standard Test Method for Air Content of Freshly Mixed Concrete by the Pressure Method.
13. C260, Specification for Air-Entraining Admixtures for Concrete.
14. C309, Specification for Liquid Membrane-Forming Compounds for Curing Concrete.
15. C494, Specification for Chemical Admixtures for Concrete.
16. C1017, Standard Specification for Chemical Admixtures for Use in Producing Flowing Concrete.

E. American Welding Society (AWS):

1. D1.1, Structural Welding Code.
2. D12.1, Welding Reinforcing Steel.

F. Precast/Prestressed Concrete Institute (PCI):

1. MNL-116, Manual for Quality Control for Plants and Production of Structural Precast Concrete Products.
2. MNL-120, PCI Design Handbook Precast and Prestressed Concrete.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Delegated-Design Submittal:

1. For Precast Cantilever Retaining Walls: Retaining wall geometry (stem height, stem thickness, footing thickness, toe length, heel length, and shear key) shall be as indicated on the construction drawings. Contractor may, at his own expense, provide calculations sealed by a Professional Engineer licensed in the State of New York for alternative wall geometries. Calculations shall include (at a minimum) checks for overturning, sliding, and bearing capacity in both the static condition and under seismic loading. It shall be the Contractor's responsibility to verify any proposed wall geometry is compliant with all provisions of the design-build contract requirements.

C. Concrete Design Mixtures:

1. For each concrete mixture, include the following:

- a. Mixture identification.
- b. Minimum 28-day compressive strength.
- c. Durability exposure class.
- d. Maximum w/cm.
- e. Slump limit.
- f. Air content.
- g. Nominal maximum aggregate size.
- h. Indicate amounts of mixing water to be withheld for later addition at project site if permitted.
- i. Submit alternate design mixtures when characteristics of materials, project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant adjustments.

D. Qualification Data:

1. For the following:

- a. Installer: Include copies of applicable ACI certificates.
- b. Ready-mixed concrete manufacturer.
- c. Testing Agency: Include copies of applicable ACI certificates.

E. Material Certificates:

1. For each of the following, signed by manufacturers:

- a. Cementitious materials.
- b. Admixtures.
- c. Curing compounds.
- d. Bonding agents.
- e. Adhesives.
- f. Vapor retarders.
- g. Semirigid joint filler.
- h. Joint-filler strips.
- i. Repair materials.

F. Material Test Reports:

1. For the following, from a qualified testing agency:

- a. Portland cement.
- b. Fly ash.
- c. Slag cement.

- d. Blended hydraulic cement.
- e. Silica fume.
- f. Performance-based hydraulic cement.
- g. Aggregates.
- G. Field quality-control reports.
- H. Qualification Data: For fabricator.
- I. Welding Certificates.
- J. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. For Precast Cantilever Retaining Walls:
 - a. Include member locations, plans, elevations, dimensions, shapes and sections, openings, support conditions, and types of reinforcement, including special reinforcement.
 - b. Detail fabrication and installation of precast structural concrete units, including connections at member ends and to adjoining construction.
 - c. Indicate joints, reveals, drips, chamfers, and extent and location of each surface finish.
 - d. Indicate type, size, and length of welded connections by AWS standard symbols.
 - e. Detail loose and cast-in hardware, lifting and erection inserts, connections, and joints.
 - f. Indicate locations, tolerances, and details of anchorage devices to be embedded in or attached to structure or other construction.
 - g. Include and locate all openings.
 - h. Indicate location of each precast structural concrete unit by same identification mark placed on panel.
 - i. Indicate relationship of precast structural concrete units to adjacent materials.
 - j. If design modifications are proposed to meet performance requirements and field conditions, submit design calculations and shop drawings. Do not adversely affect the appearance, durability, or strength of units when modifying details or materials and maintain the general design concept.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Precast Concrete Installer Qualifications: A precast concrete erector qualified and designated by PCI's Certificate of Compliance, to erect Structural Systems.

Post-Installed Concrete Anchors Installers: ACI-certified Adhesive Anchor Installer.

- B. Ready-Mixed Concrete Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing ready-mixed concrete products and that complies with ASTM C94/C94M requirements for production facilities and equipment.
- C. Laboratory Testing Agency Qualifications: A testing agency qualified in accordance with ASTM C1077 and ASTM E329 for testing indicated and employing an ACI-certified Concrete Quality Control Technical Manager.
- D. Field Quality Control Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, qualified in accordance with ASTM C1077 and ASTM E329 for testing indicated.
 - 1. Personnel conducting field tests shall be qualified as an ACI Concrete Field-Testing Technician, Grade 1, in accordance with ACI CPP 610.1 or an equivalent certification program.
- E. Precast Concrete Fabricator Qualifications: A firm that assumes responsibility for engineering precast structural concrete units to comply with performance requirements. Responsibility includes preparation of shop drawings and comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer.
 - 1. Designated as a PCI-certified plant as follows:
 - a. For Retaining Walls: Group C, Category C1.

1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. None.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 CONCRETE, GENERAL

- A. ACI Publications: Comply with ACI 301 unless modified by requirements in the Construction Documents.

2.02 CONCRETE MATERIALS

- A. Source Limitations:
 - 1. Obtain all concrete mixtures from a single ready-mixed concrete manufacturer for entire project.
 - 2. Obtain each type or class of cementitious material of the same brand from the same manufacturer's plant.
 - 3. Obtain aggregate from single source.
 - 4. Obtain each type of admixture from single source from single manufacturer.

B. Cementitious Materials:

1. Portland Cement: ASTM C150, Type I/II.
2. Fly Ash: ASTM C618, Class C or F.
3. Slag Cement: ASTM C989, Grade 100 or 120.
4. Normal-Weight Aggregates: ASTM C33, Class 3M coarse aggregate or better, graded. Provide aggregates from a single source.
5. Maximum Coarse-Aggregate Size: 3/4 inch nominal.
6. Fine Aggregate: Free of materials with deleterious reactivity to alkali in cement.
7. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C260.
8. Chemical Admixtures: Certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures that do not contribute water-soluble chloride ions exceeding those permitted in hardened concrete. Do not use calcium chloride or admixtures containing calcium chloride.
 - a. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C494, Type A.
 - b. Retarding Admixture: ASTM C494, Type B.
 - c. Water-Reducing and -Retarding Admixture: ASTM C494, Type D.
 - d. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C494, Type F.
 - e. High-Range, Water-Reducing and -Retarding Admixture: ASTM C494, Type G.
 - f. Plasticizing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C1017, Type II.
9. Color Pigment: ASTM C979, synthetic mineral-oxide pigments, color stable, nonfading, and resistant to lime and other alkalis.
 - a. Manufacturer: TBD.
 - b. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
10. Water and Water Used to Make Ice: ASTM C94, potable.

2.03 CURING MATERIALS

- A. Evaporation Retarder: Waterborne, monomolecular film forming, manufactured for application to fresh concrete.
- B. Absorptive Cover: AASHTO M 182, Class 2, burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf.
- C. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C171, polyethylene film burlap-polyethylene sheet.
 1. Color:

- a. Ambient Temperature Below 50 degrees F: Black.
- b. Ambient Temperature between 50 degrees F and 85 degrees F: Any color.
- c. Ambient Temperature Above 85 degrees F: White.
- D. Water: Potable or complying with ASTM C1602.

2.04 REPAIR MATERIALS

- A. Cement-based, polymer-modified, self-leveling product that can be applied in thicknesses from 1/4 inch and that can be filled in over a scarified surface to match adjacent surfaces.
 - 1. Cement Binder: ASTM C150/C150M Portland cement or hydraulic or blended hydraulic cement, as defined in ASTM C219.
 - 2. Primer: Product of topping manufacturer recommended for substrate, conditions, and application.
 - 3. Aggregate: Well-graded, washed gravel, 1/8 inch to 1/4 inch or coarse sand as recommended by topping manufacturer.
 - 4. Compressive Strength: Not less than 5,000 psi at 28 days when tested in accordance with ASTM C109.

2.05 CONCRETE MIXTURES, GENERAL

- A. Prepare design mixtures for each type and strength of concrete, proportioned on the basis of laboratory trial mixture or field test data, or both, in accordance with ACI 301.
 - 1. Use a qualified testing agency for preparing and reporting proposed mixture designs, based on laboratory trial mixtures.
- B. Cementitious Materials:
 - 1. Limit percentage, by weight, of cementitious materials other than Portland cement in concrete as follows:
 - a. Fly Ash or Other Pozzolans: 25 percent by mass.
 - b. Slag Cement: 50 percent by mass.
 - c. Silica Fume: 10 percent by mass.
 - d. Total of Fly Ash or Other Pozzolans, Slag Cement, and Silica Fume: 50 percent by mass, with fly ash or pozzolans not exceeding 25 percent by mass and silica fume not exceeding 10 percent by mass.

- e. Total of Fly Ash or Other Pozzolans and Silica Fume: 35 percent by mass with fly ash or pozzolans not exceeding 25 percent by mass and silica fume not exceeding 10 percent by mass.
- C. Admixtures: Use admixtures in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Color Pigment: Add color pigment to concrete mixture in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions and to result in hardened concrete color consistent with approved mockup.

2.06 CONCRETE MIXTURES

- A. Class A: Normal-weight concrete used for retaining walls.
 - 1. Exposure Class: ACI 318, F2.
 - 2. Minimum Compressive Strength: 5,000 psi at 28 days.
 - 3. Maximum w/cm: 0.45.
 - 4. Air Content:
 - a. Exposure Class F2: 6 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for concrete containing 2/4-inch nominal maximum aggregate size.

2.07 CONCRETE MIXING

- A. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, mix, and deliver concrete in accordance with ASTM C94, and furnish batch ticket information.
- B. Project Site Mixing: Measure, batch, and mix concrete materials and concrete in accordance with ASTM C94. Mix concrete materials in appropriate drum-type batch machine mixer.

2.08 PRE-FABRICATED COMPOSITE STRUCTURAL DRAIN

- A. Drainage Board: SITEDRAIN DS-186 or approved equal. Product shall be on the NYSDOT approved list.

2.09 EXPANDED POLYSTYRENE GEOFOAM

- A. Structural Fill at OCS-Wall Interface: ASTM D6817.

2.10 REINFORCING MATERIALS

- A. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A615, Grade 60, deformed.
- B. Epoxy-Coated Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A615, Grade 60 epoxy coated, with less than 2 percent damaged coating in each 12-inch bar length.

- C. Supports: Suspend reinforcement from back of mold or use bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars and welded wire reinforcement in place according to PCI MNL-116.

2.11 MOLD FABRICATION

- A. Precast Concrete Molds: Accurately construct molds, mortar tight, of sufficient strength to withstand pressures due to concrete-placement operations and temperature changes. Coat contact surfaces of molds with release agent before reinforcement is placed. Avoid contamination of reinforcement by release agent.

2.12 PRECAST CONCRETE FABRICATION

- A. Cast-in Anchors, Inserts, Plates, Angles, and Other Anchorage Hardware: Fabricate anchorage hardware with sufficient anchorage and embedment to comply with design requirements. Accurately position for attachment of loose hardware, and secure in place during precasting operations. Locate anchorage hardware where it does not affect position of main reinforcement or concrete placement.
 - 1. Weld-headed studs and deformed bar anchors used for anchorage according to AWS D1.1 and AWS C5.4, "Recommended Practices for Stud Welding."
- B. Furnish loose hardware items including steel plates, clip angles, seat angles, anchors, dowels, cramps, hangers, and other hardware shapes for securing precast structural concrete units to supporting and adjacent construction.
- C. Cast-in openings larger than 10 inches in any dimension. Do not drill or cut openings without Engineer's approval.
- D. Reinforcement: Comply with recommendations in PCI MNL-116 for fabricating, placing, and supporting reinforcement.
 - 1. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, and other materials that reduce or destroy the bond with concrete. When damage to epoxy-coated reinforcement exceeds limits specified in ASTM A775, repair with patching material compatible with coating material and epoxy coat bar ends after cutting.
 - 2. Accurately position, support, and secure reinforcement against displacement during concrete-placement and consolidation operations. Completely conceal support devices to prevent exposure on finished surfaces.
 - 3. Place reinforcing steel and prestressing strand to maintain at least 3/4-inch minimum concrete cover. Increase cover requirements for reinforcing steel to 1-1/2 inches when units are exposed to weather. Arrange, space, and securely tie bars and bar supports to hold reinforcement in position

while placing concrete. Direct wire tie ends away from finished, exposed concrete surfaces.

- E. Reinforce precast structural concrete units to resist handling, transportation, and erection stresses and specified in-place loads.
- F. Comply with requirements in PCI MNL-116 and in this Section for measuring, mixing, transporting, and placing concrete. After concrete batching, no additional water may be added.
- G. Place architectural face mixture to a minimum thickness after consolidation of the greater of 1 inch or 1.5 times the maximum aggregate size, but not less than the minimum reinforcing cover specified.
- H. Place concrete in a continuous operation to prevent cold joints or planes of weakness from forming in precast concrete units.
- I. Thoroughly consolidate placed concrete by vibration without dislocating or damaging reinforcement and built-in items, and minimize pour lines, honeycombing, or entrapped air voids on surfaces. Use equipment and procedures complying with PCI MNL-116.
 - 1. Place self-consolidating concrete without vibration according to PCI TR-6, "Interim Guidelines for the Use of Self-Consolidating Concrete in Precast/Prestressed Concrete Institute Member Plants." Ensure adequate bond between face and backup concrete, if used.
 - 2. Comply with PCI MNL-116 procedures for hot- and cold-weather concrete placement.
 - 3. Identify pickup points of precast structural concrete units and orientation in structure with permanent markings, complying with markings indicated on shop drawings. Imprint or permanently mark casting date on each precast structural concrete unit on a surface that does not show in finished structure.
 - 4. Cure concrete, according to requirements in PCI MNL-116, by moisture retention without heat or by accelerated heat curing using live steam or radiant heat and moisture. Cure units until compressive strength is high enough to ensure that stripping does not effect performance or appearance of final product.
 - 5. Discard and replace precast structural concrete units that do not comply with requirements, including structural, manufacturing tolerance, and appearance, unless repairs meet requirements in PCI MNL-116 and meet Engineer's approval.

2.13 FABRICATION TOLERANCES

- A. Fabricate precast structural concrete units to shapes, lines, and dimensions indicated so each finished unit complies with PCI MNL-116 product dimension tolerances as well as position tolerances for cast-in items.

2.14 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Engage a qualified professional engineer licensed in the State of New York to design precast structural concrete units.
- B. Design Standards: Comply with ACI 318 and with design recommendations in PCI MNL-120, "PCI Design Handbook - Precast and Prestressed Concrete," applicable to types of precast structural concrete units indicated.
- C. Structural Performance: Precast structural concrete units and connections shall withstand design loads indicated on the construction drawings within limits and under conditions indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 JOINTS

- A. Construct joints true to line, with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete.

3.02 INSTALLATION OF MISCELLANEOUS CONCRETE ITEMS

A. Filling In:

1. Fill in holes and openings left in concrete structures after Work of other trades is in place unless otherwise indicated.
2. Mix, place, and cure concrete, as specified, to blend with in-place construction.
3. Provide other miscellaneous concrete filling indicated or required to complete the Work.

3.03 TOLERANCES

- A. Conform to ACI 117.

3.04 CONCRETE SURFACE REPAIRS

A. Defective Concrete:

1. Repair and patch defective areas when approved by Engineer.

2. Remove and replace concrete that cannot be repaired and patched to Engineer's approval.
- B. Patching Mortar: Mix dry-pack patching mortar, consisting of 1 part Portland cement to 2-1/2 parts fine aggregate passing a No. 16 sieve, using only enough water for handling, and placing.
- C. Repairing Formed Surfaces: Surface defects include color and texture irregularities, cracks, spalls, air bubbles, honeycombs, rock pockets, fins and other projections on the surface, and stains and other discolorations that cannot be removed by cleaning.
 1. Immediately after form removal, cut out honeycombs, rock pockets, and voids more than 1/2 inch in any dimension to solid concrete.
 - a. Limit cut depth to 3/4 inch.
 - b. Make edges of cuts perpendicular to concrete surface.
 - c. Clean, dampen with water, and brush-coat holes and voids with bonding agent.
 - d. Fill and compact with patching mortar before bonding agent has dried.
 - e. Fill form-tie voids with patching mortar or cone plugs secured in place with bonding agent.
 2. Repair defects on surfaces exposed to view by blending white Portland cement and standard Portland cement, so that, when dry, patching mortar matches surrounding color.
 - a. Patch a test area at inconspicuous locations to verify mixture and color match before proceeding with patching.
 - b. Compact mortar in place and strike off slightly higher than surrounding surface.
 3. Repair defects on concealed formed surfaces that will affect concrete's durability and structural performance as determined by Engineer.

3.05 EXCAVATION

- A. Scope of excavation shall be builder's responsibility.

END OF SECTION 32 3216

SECTION 32 3223 - SEGMENTAL RETAINING WALLS

PART 1: GENERAL

1.01 SCOPE

- A. Work includes furnishing and installing modular concrete block retaining wall units to the lines and grades designated on the construction drawings and as specified herein.

1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM C1372 Standard Specification for Segmental Retaining Wall Units.
- B. ASTM C1262 Evaluating the Freeze thaw Durability of Manufactured CMU's and Related concrete Units.
- C. ASTM D698 Moisture Density Relationship for Soils, Standard Method
- D. ASTM D422 Gradation of Soils
- E. ASTM C140 Sample and Testing concrete Masonry Units
- F. AB Spec Book Doc. # R0901

1.03 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Contractor shall check the materials upon delivery to assure the proper material has been received.
- B. Contractor shall prevent excessive mud, cementitious material, and construction debris from coming in contact with the materials.
- C. Contractor shall protect the materials from damage. Damaged material shall not be incorporated in the project (ASTM C1372).

1.04 CONTRACTOR REQUIREMENTS

- A. Contractors shall be trained and certified by a local manufacturer or equivalent accredited organization.
- B. Allan Block and NCMA have certification programs that are accredited. Identify when advanced certification levels are appropriate based on complexity and criticality of project application.
- C. Contractors shall provide a list of projects they have completed.

PART 2: MATERIALS

2.01 MODULAR WALL UNITS

- A. Wall units shall be Allan Block Retaining Wall units as produced by a licensed manufacturer.
- B. Wall units shall have minimum 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi (20.7 MPa) in accordance with ASTM C1372. The concrete units shall have adequate freeze-thaw protection with an average absorption rate in accordance with

ASTM C1372 or an average absorption rate of 7.5 lb./ft³ (120 kg/m³) for northern climates and 10 lb./ft³ (160 kg/m³) for southern climates.

- C. Exterior dimensions shall be uniform and consistent. Maximum dimensional deviations on the height of any two units shall be 0.125 in. (3 mm).
- D. Wall units shall provide a minimum of 110 lbs. total weight per square foot of wall face area (555 kg/m²). Hollow cores to be filled with wall rock and compacted by using plate compactor on top of wall units (see section 3.4). Unit weight of wall rock in cores may be less than 100% depending on compaction levels.
- E. Exterior face shall be textured. Color as specified by owner.
- F. Freeze Thaw Durability: Like all concrete products, dry-cast concrete SRW units are susceptible to freeze-thaw degradation with exposure to de-icing salts and cold temperature. This is a concern in northern tier states or countries that use deicing salts. Based on good performance experience by several agencies, ASTM C1372, or equivalent governing standard or public authority, Standard Specification for Segmental Retaining Wall Units should be used as a model, except that, to increase durability, the compressive strength for the units should be increased to a minimum of 4,000 – 5,800 psi (28 - 40 MPa) unless local requirements dictate higher levels. Also, maximum water absorption should be reduced and requirements for freeze-thaw testing increased.
 - a. Require a current passing ASTM C1262 or equivalent governing standard or public authority, test report from material supplier in northern or cold weather climates.
 - b. See the Best Practices for SRW Design document for detailed information on freeze thaw durability testing criteria and regional temperature and exposure severity figures and tables to define the appropriate zone and requirements for the project.

2.02 WALL ROCK

- A. Material must be well-graded compactable aggregate, 0.25 in. to 1.5 in., (6 mm - 38 mm) with no more than 10% passing the #200 sieve. (ASTM D422)
- B. Material behind and within the blocks may be the same material.

2.03 INFILL SOIL

- A. Infill material shall be excavated soils when approved by the on-site soils engineer unless otherwise specified in the drawings. Unsuitable soils for backfill (heavy clays or organic soils) shall not be used in the reinforced soil mass. Fine grained cohesive soils (ϕ less than 31° (Ref)) may be used in wall construction, but additional backfilling, compaction and water management efforts are required. Poorly graded sands, expansive clays, and/or soils with a plasticity index (PI) greater than 20 or a liquid limit (LL) greater than 40 should not be used in wall construction.
- B. The infill soil used must meet or exceed the designed friction angle and description noted on the design cross sections, and must be free of debris and consist of one

of the following inorganic USCS soil types: GP, GW, SW, SP, GP-GM or SP-SM meeting the following gradation as determined in accordance with ASTM D422.

C. Where	<u>Sieve Size</u>	<u>Percent Passing</u>
	1 inch (25 mm)	100 – 75
	No. 4 (4.75 mm)	100 – 20
	No. 40 (0.425 mm)	0 - 60
	No. 200 (0.075 mm)	0 - 35

additional fill is required, contractor shall submit sample and specifications to the wall design engineer or the onsite soils engineer for approval and the approving engineer must certify that the soils proposed for use has properties meeting or exceeding original design standards.

PART 3: WALL CONSTRUCTION

3.01 EXCAVATION

- A. Contractor shall excavate to the lines and grades shown on the construction drawings. Contractor shall use caution not to over-excavate beyond the lines shown, or to disturb the base elevations beyond those shown.
- B. Contractor shall verify locations of existing structures and utilities prior to excavation. Contractor shall ensure all surrounding structures are protected from the effects of wall excavation.

3.02 FOUNDATION SOIL PREPARATION

- A. Foundation soil shall be defined as any soil located beneath a wall.
- B. Foundation soil shall be excavated as dimensioned on the plans and compacted to a minimum of 95% of Standard Proctor (ASTM D698) prior to placement of the base material.
- C. Foundation soil shall be examined by the on-site soils engineer to ensure that the actual foundation soil strength meets or exceeds assumed design strength. Soil not meeting the required strength shall be removed and replaced with acceptable material.

3.03 BASE

- A. The base material shall be the same as the Wall Rock material or a low permeable granular material.
- B. Base material shall be placed as shown on the construction drawing. The top of base shall be located to allow bottom wall units to be buried to proper depths as per wall heights and specifications.
- C. Base material shall be installed on undisturbed native soils or suitable replacement fills compacted to a minimum of 95% Standard Proctor (ASTM D698).
- D. Base shall be compacted at 95% Standard Proctor (ASTM D698) to provide a level hard surface on which to place the first course of blocks. The base shall be constructed to ensure proper wall embedment and the final elevation shown on

the plans. Well-graded sand can be used to smooth the top 1/2 in. (13 mm) on the base material.

- E. Base material shall be a 4 in. (100 mm) minimum depth for walls under 4 ft. (1.2 m) and a 6 in. (150 mm) minimum depth for walls over 4 ft. (1.2 m).
- F. Base material should be installed to allow for a minimum of one buried block to be extended into the slope to prevent erosion.

3.04 UNIT INSTALLATION

- A. Install units in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and recommendations for the specific concrete retaining wall unit, and as specified herein.
- B. Ensure that units are in full contact with the base. Proper care shall be taken to develop straight lines and smooth curves on base course as per wall layout.
- C. Fill all cores and cavities and a minimum of 12 in. (300 mm) behind the base course with wall rock. Use infill soils behind the wall rock and approved soils in front of the base course to firmly lock in place. Check again for level and alignment. Use a plate compactor to consolidate the area behind the base course. All excess material shall be swept from top of units.
- D. Install the next course of wall units on top of base course. Position blocks to be offset from seams of blocks below. Perfect "running bond" is not essential, but a 3 in. (75 mm) minimum offset is recommended. Check each block for proper alignment and level. Fill all cavities in and around wall units and to a minimum of 12 in. (300 mm) depth behind block with wall rock. Block, wall rock and infill soil placed in uniform lifts not exceeding 8 in. (200 mm). Compaction requirements for all soils in areas in, around and behind the reinforced mass shall be compacted to 95% of maximum Standard Proctor dry density (ASTM D698) with a moisture content control of +1% to -3% of optimum.
- E. For taller wall applications, structural fill should be specified for a minimum bottom 1/3 to 1/2 of the reinforced fill. If structural fill is not utilized in the reinforced mass, the depth of wall rock behind the block should be increased. See the Best Practices for SRW Design document for more information.
- F. The consolidation zone shall be defined as 3 ft (0.9 m) behind the wall. Compaction within the consolidation zone shall be accomplished by using a hand operated plate compactor and shall begin by running the plate compactor directly on the block and then compacting in parallel paths from the wall face until the entire consolidation zone has been compacted. A minimum of two passes of the plate compactor are required with maximum lifts of 8 in. (200 mm). Expansive or fine-grained soils may require additional compaction passes and/or specific compaction equipment such as a sheepsfoot roller. Maximum lifts of 4 in. (100 mm) may be required to achieve adequate compaction within the consolidation zone. Employ methods using lightweight compaction equipment that will not

disrupt the stability or batter of the wall. Final compaction requirements in the consolidation zone shall be established by the engineer of record.

- G. Install each subsequent course in a similar manner. Repeat procedure to the extent of wall height. Individual course height may vary due to allowable block manufacturing tolerances per ATSM C1372. Contractor must verify wall height, if noted as being critical, prior to completion of construction to ensure the elevation of the top of the wall or the controlling elevation matches desired plan elevation, if noted as critical. Contractor must follow this method for single walls or walls that branch off into a terraced orientation.
- H. As with any construction work, some deviation from construction drawing alignments will occur. Variability in construction of SRWs is approximately equal to that of cast-in-place concrete retaining walls. As opposed to cast-in-place concrete walls, alignment of SRWs can be simply corrected or modified during construction. Based upon examination of numerous completed SRWs, the following recommended minimum tolerances can be achieved with good construction techniques.
 - a. Vertical Control - ± 1.25 in. (32 mm) max. over 10 ft (3 m) distance
 - b. Horizontal Location Control - straight lines ± 1.25 in. (32 mm) over a 10 ft (3 m) distance.
 - c. Rotation - from established plan wall batter: $\pm 2.0^\circ$

3.05 ADDITIONAL CONSTRUCTION NOTES

- A. When one wall branches into two terraced walls, it is important to note that the soil behind the lower wall is also the foundation soil beneath the upper wall. This soil shall be compacted to a minimum of 95% of Standard Proctor (ASTM D698) prior to placement of the base material. Achieving proper compaction in the soil beneath an upper terrace prevents settlement and deformation of the upper wall. One way is to replace the soil with wall rock and compact in 8 in. (200 mm) lifts. When using on-site soils, compact in maximum lifts of 4 in. (100 mm) or as required to achieve specified compaction.
- B. Vertical filter fabric use is not suggested for use with cohesive soils. Clogging of such fabric creates unacceptable hydrostatic pressures in soil reinforced structures. When filtration is deemed necessary in cohesive soils, use a three-dimensional filtration system of clean sand or filtration aggregate. Vertical filter fabric may be used to separate wall rock zone from fine grained, sandy infill soils if the design engineer deems it necessary based on potential water migration from above or below grade, through the reinforced zone into the wall rock on the project. Horizontal filter fabric should be placed above the wall rock column to prevent soils from migrating into the wall rock column.
- C. Embankment protection fabric is used to stabilize rip rap and foundation soils in water applications and to separate infill materials from the retained soils. This fabric should permit the passage of fines to preclude clogging of the material. Embankment protection fabric shall be a high strength polypropylene monofilament material

designed to meet or exceed NTPEP specifications; stabilized against ultraviolet (UV) degradation and typically exceeding the values in Section 3, Table 1 in the AB Spec Book.

- D. Water management is of extreme concern during and after construction. Steps must be taken to ensure that drain pipes are properly installed and vented to daylight or connected to an underground drainage system and a grading plan has been developed that routes water away from the retaining wall location. Site water management is required both during construction of the wall and after completion of construction.

PART 4: GENERAL DRAINAGE

4.01 SURFACE DRAINAGE

- A. Rainfall or other water sources such as irrigation activities collected by the ground surface atop the retaining wall can be defined as surface water. Retaining wall design shall take into consideration the management of this water.
- B. At the end of each day's construction and at final completion, grade the backfill to avoid water accumulation behind the wall or in the reinforced zone.
- C. Surface water must not be allowed to pond or be trapped in the area above the wall or at the toe of the wall.
- D. Existing slopes adjacent to retaining wall or slopes created during the grading process shall include drainage details so that surface water will not be allowed to drain over the top of the slope face and/or wall. This may require a combination of berms and surface drainage ditches.
- E. Irrigation activities at the site shall be done in a controlled and reasonable manner. If an irrigation system is employed, the design engineer or irrigation manufacturer shall provide details and specification for required equipment to ensure against over irrigation which could damage the structural integrity of the retaining wall system.
- F. Surface water that cannot be diverted from the wall must be collected with surface drainage swales and drained laterally in order to disperse the water around the wall structure. Construction of a typical swale system shall be in accordance with Design Detail 5: Swales, of the AB Spec Book.

4.02 GRADING

- A. The shaping and re-contouring of land in order to prepare it for site development is grading. Site grading shall be designed to route water around the walls.
- B. Establish final grade with a positive gradient away from the wall structure. Concentrations of surface water runoff shall be managed by providing necessary structures, such as paved ditches, drainage swales, catch basins, etc.
- C. Grading designs must divert sources of concentrated surface flow, such as parking lots, away from the wall.

4.03 DRAINAGE SYSTEM

- A. The internal drainage systems of the retaining wall can be described as the means of eliminating the buildup of incidental water which infiltrates the soil behind the wall. Drainage system design will be a function of the water conditions on the site. Possible drainage facilities include Toe and Heel drainage collection pipes and blanket or chimney rock drains or others. Design engineer shall determine the required drainage facilities to completely drain the retaining wall structure for each particular site condition.
- B. All walls will be constructed with a minimum of 12 in. (300 mm) of wall rock directly behind the wall facing. The material shall meet or exceed the specification for wall rock outlined in Section 1, 2.2 Wall Rock.
- C. The drainage collection pipe, drain pipe, shall be a 4 in. (100 mm) perforated or slotted PVC, or corrugated HDPE pipe as approved by engineer of record.
- D. All walls will be constructed with a 4 in. (100 mm) diameter drain pipe placed at the lowest possible elevation within the 12 in. (300 mm) of wall rock. This drain pipe is referred to as a toe drain.
- E. Geogrid Reinforced Walls shall be constructed with an additional 4 in. (100 mm) drain pipe at the back bottom of the reinforced soil mass. This drain pipe is referred to as a heel drain.

4.04 TOE DRAIN

- A. A toe drain pipe should be located at the back of the wall rock behind the wall as close to the bottom of the wall as allowed while still maintaining a positive gradient for drainage to daylight, or a storm water management system. Toe drains are installed for incidental water management not as a primary drainage system.
- B. For site configurations with bottoms of the base on a level plane it is recommended that a minimum one percent gradient be maintained on the placement of the pipe with outlets on 50 ft (15 m) centers, or 100 ft (30 m) centers if pipe is crowned between the outlets. This would provide for a maximum height above the bottom of the base in a flat configuration of no more than 6 in. (150 mm).
- C. For rigid drain pipes with drain holes the pipes should be positioned with the holes located down. Allan Block does not require that toe drain pipes be wrapped when installed into base rock complying with the specified wall rock material.
- D. Pipes shall be routed to storm drains where appropriate or through or under the wall at low points when the job site grading and site layout allows for routing. Appropriate details shall be included to prevent pipes from being crushed, plugged, or infested with rodents.
- E. On sites where the natural drop in grade exceeds the one percent minimum, drain pipes outlets shall be on 100 foot (30 m) centers, maximum. This will provide outlets in the event that excessive water flow exceeds the capacity of pipe over long stretches.
- F. Drain pipe must be raised to accommodate outlets through the wall face when daylighting below grade is not possible. Refer to the Design Detail 4: Alternate

Drain, of the AB Spec Book.

4.05 HEEL DRAIN

- A. The purpose of the heel drain is to pick up any water that migrates from behind the retaining wall structure at the cut and route the water away from the reinforced mass during the construction process and for incidental water for the life of the structure.
- B. The piping used at the back of the reinforced mass shall have a one percent minimum gradient over the length, but it is not critical for it to be positioned at the very bottom of the cut. The heel drain should be vented at 100ft (30 m) intervals along the entire length of the wall and should not be tied into the toe drain system.
- C. The pipe may be a rigid pipe with holes at the bottom with an integral sock encasing the pipe or a corrugated perforated flexible pipe with a sock to filter out fines when required based on soil conditions. For infill soils with a high percentage of sand and/or gravel the heel drain pipe does not need to be surrounded by wall rock. When working with soils containing fine grained cohesive soils having a PI of greater than 6 and LL of 30 or greater, 1 ft³ (.03 m³) of drainage rock is required around the pipe for each 1 ft (30 cm) of pipe length.

4.06 GROUND WATER

- A. Ground water can be defined as water that occurs within the soil. It may be present because of surface infiltration or water table fluctuation. Ground water movement must not be allowed to come in contact with the retaining wall.
- B. If water is encountered in the area of the wall during excavation or construction, a drainage system (chimney, composite, or blanket) must be installed as directed by the wall design engineer.
- C. Standard retaining wall designs do not include hydrostatic forces associated with the presence of ground water. If adequate drainage is not provided the retaining wall design must consider the presence of the water.
- D. When non-free draining soils (soils with friction angles less than 30 degrees) are used in the reinforced zone, the incorporation of a chimney and blanket drain should be added to minimize the water penetration into the reinforced mass. Refer to Design Detail 6: Chimney and Blanket Drain, of the AB Spec Book.
 - a. Drain material to be consistent with wall rock material. For more information on wall rock material see Specification Guidelines: Allan Block Modular Retaining Wall Systems, section 2.1.
 - b. Manufactured chimney and blanket drains to be approved by the geotechnical and/or the local engineer of record prior to use.

4.07 CONCENTRATED WATER SOURCES

- A. All collection devices such as roof downspouts, storm sewers, and curb gutters are concentrated water sources. They must be designed to accommodate maximum flow rates and to vent outside of the wall area.
- B. All roof downspouts of nearby structures shall be sized with adequate capacity to carry storm water from the roof away from the wall area. They shall be connected to a drainage system in closed pipe and routed around the retaining wall area.
- C. Site layout must take into account locations of retaining wall structures and all site drainage paths. Drainage paths should always be away from retaining wall structures.
- D. Storm sewers and catch basins shall be located away from retaining wall structures and designed so as not to introduce any incidental water into the reinforced soil mass.
- E. A path to route storm sewer overflow must be incorporated into the site layout to direct water away from the retaining wall structure.

4.08 WATER APPLICATION

- A. Retaining walls constructed in conditions that allow standing or moving water to come in contact with the wall face are considered water applications. These walls require specific design and construction steps to ensure performance. Refer to Design Detail 7 and 8: Water Applications, of the AB Spec Book.
- B. The wall rock should be placed to the limits of the geogrid lengths up to a height equal to 12 inches (30 cm) higher than the determined high water mark. If the high water mark is unknown, the entire infill zone should be constructed with wall rock.
- C. The drain pipe should be raised to the low water elevation to aid in the evacuation of water from the reinforced mass as water level fluctuates.

Table 1: Embankment Protection Fabric Specifications

Mechanical Property	Determination Method
Tensile Strength = 225 lbs. (39.4 kN/m)	ASTM D-4595
Puncture Strength = 950 lbs. (4228 N)	ASTM D-6241
Apparent Opening Size (AOS) = U.S. Sieve #70 (0.212 mm)	ASTM D-4751
Trapezoidal Tear = 100 lbs. (445 N)	ASTM D-4533
Percent Open Area = 4%	COE-02215
Permeability = 0.01 cm/sec	ASTM D-4491

- D. Embankment protection fabric should be used under the infill mass and up the back of the infill mass to a height of 12 inches (30 cm) higher than the determined high-water mark.
 - a. Embankment protection fabric is used to stabilize rip rap and foundation soils in water applications and to separate infill materials from the retained soils. This fabric should permit the passage of fines to preclude clogging of the material. Embankment protection fabric shall be a high strength polypropylene monofilament material designed to meet or exceed typical NTPEP specifications; stabilized against ultraviolet (UV) degradation and typically needs or exceeds the values in Table 1.
- E. Infill walls having moving water or wave action, natural or manufactured riprap in front of the wall to protect the toe of the wall from scour effects is recommended.

END OF SECTION 32 32 23

SECTION 32 3300 – SITE FURNISHINGS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Bicycle racks
2. Bike Shelter

B. Related Requirements:

1. Division 03 Section 3000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for installing pipe sleeves cast in concrete footings.
2. Division 31 Section 2000 "Earth Moving Operations" for excavation for installing concrete footings.

C. REFERENCES

1. The Aluminum Association – Aluminum Design Manual 2010
2. American Welding Society – AWS D1.2/D1.2M: 2020
3. ASCE 7 2010 Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures
4. ASTM B 209 Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum Alloy - Sheet and Plate / B209M-21
5. ASTM B221 Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum Alloy – Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Profiles, and Tubes
6. ANSI Z97.1-1975 Safety Glazing Materials Used in Buildings
7. Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990 (ADA)

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Manufacturer's brochures, specifications, and installation instructions.
2. Manufacturer's statement of certification that materials meet or exceed all applicable loadings (wind load, live load, dead load, snow load) for the project location in accordance with IBC 2006, and ASCE 7-05.
3. Submit structural engineering design documents bearing the seal of a structural engineer registered in the state of the project.

B. Shop drawings

1. Complete shelter layout includes cut section and connection details.

C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified.

D. Samples for Initial Selection: For units with factory-applied finishes.

- E. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish, not less than 6-inch- (152-mm-) long linear components and 4-inch- (102-mm-) square sheet components.
 - 1. Include full-size Samples of bicycle rack, and bike shelter. Approved samples may be incorporated into the Work.
- F. Product Schedule: For site furnishings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 BICYCLE RACK

- A. Bicycle Rack Construction:
 - 1. Frame: Hot dipped galvanized steel
 - a. Retain "(Pipe) (Tubing) OD" Subparagraph below or revise to suit Project. Not all bicycle racks are made from pipe or tubing and solid bars. Most manufacturers recommend Schedule 40 pipe, complying with ASTM A53/A53M, for heavy-duty applications.
 - b. Tubing OD: 2-3/8 inches (60 mm)
 - 2. Style:
 - a. Overall Height: 36 inches (914 mm)
 - b. Overall Width: 88 inches (2235 mm)
 - c. Overall Depth: 2-3/8 inches (60 mm)
 - d. Capacity: Designed to accommodate no fewer than nine bicycles.
 - 3. Installation Method: Cast in concrete
- B. Steel Finish: Galvanized

2.2 BIKE SHELTER

- A. Shelter shall be model: AX-0910-0-0-BA-PB-0-0-0-0 as manufactured by Brasco International, Inc.
- B. Bike Shelter Construction
 - 1. All extruded aluminum components shall be 6063-T5 or 6061-T6 alloy.
 - 2. Components shall be sized to comply with the load requirement for the project and shall not be less than the dimensions shown on the plan and indicated in this specification.
- C. Columns
 - 1. All columns shall be 6' x 6" square aluminum with welded aluminum spoke roof hub assembly. Hub assembly is separate from column.
- D. Barral roof

1. Barrel Roof shall be fully factory assembled and require no field assembly.
2. Barrel Roof shall include aluminum spoke assembly with purlins for roof support.
3. Roof sheet shall be 8 mm structured polycarbonate sheet.
 - a. Color: clear.

E. Fasteners

1. All fasteners shall be stainless steel, aluminum, or a combination of both. Zinc plated fasteners will not be accepted.

F. Finishes

1. All aluminum surfaces shall be polyester powder coat painted finish.
 - a. Color: RAL 3001

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for correct and level finished grade, mounting surfaces, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions unless more stringent requirements are indicated. Complete field assembly of site furnishings where required.
- B. Unless otherwise indicated, install site furnishings after landscaping and paving have been completed.
- C. Install site furnishings level, plumb, true, and positioned at locations indicated on Drawings.
- D. Posts Set into Voids in Concrete: Form or core-drill holes for installing posts in concrete to depth recommended in writing by manufacturer of site furnishings and 3/4 inch (19 mm) larger than OD of post. Clean holes of loose material, insert posts, and fill annular space between post and concrete with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout mixed and placed to comply with anchoring material manufacturer's written instructions, with top smoothed and shaped to shed water.

END OF SECTION 32 3300

SECTION 32 3913 - IMPACT RESISTANT METAL BOLLARD

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. DESCRIPTION:

1. This section includes material, plant and installation incidentals necessary to furnish and install bollards in accordance with the plans, the specifications, and the directions of the Engineer.

1.2 MATERIALS:

A. Manufacturer: Reliance Foundry Co. Ltd.

1. 6450 148th St, Unit 207 Surrey, BC, Canada V3S7G7 Phone: 604-547-0460 or 1-877-789-3245
Fax: 604-590-8875.
Website: <http://www.reliance-foundry.com/bollard>
Email: info@reliance-foundry.com
Or approved equal. (Refer to sustainable design submittals).
2. Steel Pipe:
 - a. Model: Reliance Foundry; **R-1007-08.**
 - b. Material: ASTM 500 B Structural Grade Steel.
 - c. Height: Not to exceed the top of the hydrant bonnet.
 - d. Diameter: 8-5/8 in.
 - e. Weight: 200 lbs.
 - f. Design: Cylindrical.
 - g. Finish: Grey primer or as instructed by Owner.
 - h. Country of Origin: United States.
 - i. Installation: Direct embedment.
3. Concrete for collars and fill shall comply with the requirements for Class "C" concrete as per M.03 Portland Cement Concrete.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product literature.
- B. Shop drawings.
- C. Made in the USA Statement.
- D. Proprietary information.
- E. Samples – submit manufacturer's color sample, standard or custom.

- F. Warranty – submit manufacturer's standard warranty.
- G. Submit an Environmental Product Declaration (EPD) from the manufacturer for concrete and steel within this specification section, if available. A statement of the contractor's good faith effort to obtain the EPD shall be provided if not feasible.
 - 1. Manufacturer provided EPD's must be Product Specific Type III (Third Party Reviewed), in adherence with ISO 14025 Environmental labels and declarations, ISO 14044 Environmental Management Life Cycle Assessment, and ISO 21930 Core rules for environmental product declarations of construction products and services.

1.4 CONSTRUCTION DETAILS:

- A. Examination:
 - 1. Examine paving or other substrates for compliance with manufacturer's requirements for placement and location of embedded items, condition of substrate, and other conditions affecting installation of bollards.
 - 2. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- B. Installation
 - 1. General: Comply with manufacturer's installation instructions and follow the Plans, Specifications and/or directions of the Engineer.
 - 2. Do not install damaged, cracked, chipped, deformed, or marred bollards. Field touch-up minor imperfections in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Replace bollards that cannot be field repaired.
 - 3. On damaged powder coated surfaces, touch-up finishes in conformance with manufacturer's recommendations. Provide touch-up such that repair is not visible from a distance of 6 (six) feet in daylight.
 - 4. Install interior steel post as shown on Plans, Specifications and/as ordered by Engineer.
 - 5. Install interior steel post as shown on Plans, Specifications and/as ordered by Engineer.
 - 6. Secure exterior bollard – one per each steel post – and secure following the manufacturer's instructions and Plans and Details.

END OF SECTION 32 3913

SECTION 32 9113 – SOIL PREPARATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This section includes the requirements for furnishing all labor, materials, tools, and equipment, and performing all operations necessary for the placement of topsoil for plantings shown in Contract Drawings.
- B. Section Includes:
 - 1. Topsoil
- C. Related Sections
 - 1. Division 32 Section 9300 – Plants
 - 2. Division 32 Section 9200 - Turf and Grasses

1.2 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Topsoil used on this project shall be tested and approved before placement.
- B. Topsoil Analysis: Furnish analysis made by a qualified independent soil-testing laboratory stating percentages of organic matter, inorganic matter (silt, clay, and sand), deleterious material, pH, electrical conductivity by the saturated paste method, and mineral and plant-nutrient content.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include recommendations for application and use.
 - 2. Include test data substantiating that products comply with requirements.
 - 3. Include sieve analyses for aggregate materials.
 - 4. Material Certificates: For each type of soil, soil amendment and fertilizer before delivery to the site, according to the following:
 - a. Manufacturer's qualified testing agency's certified analysis of standard products.
 - b. Analysis of fertilizers, by a qualified testing agency, made according to AAPFCO methods for testing and labeling and according to AAPFCO's SU1P #25.
 - c. Analysis of nonstandard materials, by a qualified testing agency, made according to SSSA methods, where applicable.
- B. Samples: For each bulk-supplied material, 1-quart volume of each in sealed containers labeled with content, source, and date obtained. Each Sample shall be typical of the lot of material to be furnished; provide an accurate representation of composition, color, and texture.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For each testing agency.
- B. Preconstruction Test Reports: For preconstruction soil analyses specified in "Preconstruction Testing" Article.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Topsoil used on this project shall be tested, and approved before placement.
- B. Topsoil Analysis: Furnish analysis made by a qualified independent soil-testing laboratory stating percentages of organic matter, inorganic matter (silt, clay, and sand), deleterious material, pH, electrical conductivity by the saturated paste method, and mineral and plant-nutrient content.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Topsoil
 - 1. Source: Provide topsoil from areas from which no topsoil has been taken previously and from areas which are producing, or have produced fair to good yield farm crops without unusual fertilization for a minimum period of 10 years, or from arable or cultivable areas supplied with good normal drainage.
 - 2. Source: Existing topsoil stripped and reclaimed from sites within the contract limits. The general limits and depth of the material to be utilized for topsoil will be indicated in the Contract documents. Where no depth is indicated it shall be 4 inches. Topsoil shall be stored on site. Based on visual inspection by the Engineer, topsoil may require screening to meet this requirement.
 - 3. Provide topsoil conforming to the following:
 - a. Original loam topsoil, well drained homogeneous texture and of uniform grade, without the admixture of subsoil material and entirely free of dense material, hardpan, sod, or any other objectionable foreign material.
 - b. Containing not less than 4 percent nor more than 15 percent organic matter in that portion of a sample passing a 1/4-inch sieve when determined by the wet combustion method on a sample dried at 105 degrees C.
 - c. Containing a pH value within the range of 5.5 to 7 on that portion of the sample which passes a 1/4-inch sieve.
 - d. Containing the following gradations:

SIEVE DESIGNATION	PERCENT PASSING
1 inch	100
1/4 inch	97 - 100
No. 200	20 - 65 (of the 1/4 inch sieve)

B. Limestone

1. Provide ground limestone in the producer's standard bags containing not less than 90 percent of calcium and magnesium carbonates equivalent to not less than 45 percent of the mixed oxides of calcium and magnesium and conforming to the following gradations:

SIEVE DESIGNATION	PERCENT PASSING
No. 100	50 - 100
No. 20	100

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Grub out and remove all vegetation in the area of the approved topsoil source.

3.2 SPREADING TOPSOIL

- A. Perform topsoil spreading operations only during dry weather.
- B. To ensure a proper bond with the topsoil, harrow or otherwise loosen the subgrade to a depth of 4 inches before spreading topsoil.
- C. Spread topsoil directly upon prepared subgrade to a minimum depth measuring 4 inches after natural settlement in areas to be seeded. In sodded areas the thickness of the topsoil after natural settlement plus the sod shall equal 4 inches. Smooth out unsightly variations, bumps, ridges, and depressions which will hold water. Remove stones, litter, or other objectionable material. Finished surfaces shall conform to the contour lines and elevations indicated on the contract drawings.

3.3 SPREADING LIMESTONE

- A. Spread ground limestone evenly over the topsoiled surface. Incorporate limestone within the top 2 inches of soil prior to finish raking.
- B. Apply limestone at the following rate per 1000 sq ft of topsoil area, corresponding to the hydrogen ion concentration (pH) shown by the soil chemical analysis:

PH	RATE (pounds)
4.5 to 5.0	150
5.0 to 5.5	100
5.5 to 6.0	50
6.0 to 6.8	25
over 6.8	0

END OF SECTION 32 9113

SECTION 32 9200 TURF AND GRASSES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. In accordance with the contract documents or as directed by the Landscape Architect, this work shall consist of furnishing and placing topsoil to establish grade; preparing ground surfaces with soil amendments for seeding; and furnishing and installing fertilizer, seed, mulch, and mulch anchorage on areas indicated in the contract documents or where directed by the Landscape Architect. The work also consists of producing a satisfactorily established turf and caring for the turf as specified. The work may include furnishing and applying limestone as specified in the contract documents.
- B. Section Includes:
 - 1. Section 015639 – Temporary Tree and Plant Protection
 - 2. Section 329113 - Soil Preparation

1.2 REFERENCES

- A. New York State Department of Transportation Standard Specifications, Construction and Materials" dated January 1, 2019 with current additions and modifications.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Topsoil and Compost Analysis: Furnish analysis made by a qualified independent soil-testing Agency/Laboratory stating percentages of organic matter, inorganic matter (silt, clay, and sand), deleterious material, pH, electrical conductivity by the saturated paste method, and mineral and plant-nutrient content.

1.4 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Disposal of woodchips, tree trunks, branches, roots, and debris in accordance with the rules and regulations of the New York State Department of Environmental Conservation (NYSDEC). Burning is not allowed. Provide valid NYSDEC permit numbers for landfills, transfer stations, compost facilities, or all other disposal facilities to be used.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

The contractor shall submit the following items to the Landscape Architect:

- A. Product Data for Hydro Mulch.
- B. Product Data for Erosion Control Blanket

- C. Material test reports from a qualified independent testing Agency/Company indicating and interpreting test results relative to compliance of the following materials with requirements indicated:
 - 1. Topsoil
 - 2. Compost
 - 3. Turf Seed Mix
 - 4. Wood Mulch
 - 5. Straw Mulch
- D. Samples, 1 lb bag of each:
 - 1. Topsoil
 - 2. Compost
 - 3. Turf Seed Mix
- E. Supplier invoices indicating quantity of material at time of delivery.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver fertilizer in manufacturer's standard size bags or cartons showing weight, analysis, and the name of the manufacturer. Store as approved by Landscape Architect.
- B. Store all seed at the site in a cool dry place as approved by the Landscape Architect. Replace any seed damaged during storage.
- C. Deliver seeds, 30 days in advance of anticipated use, in vendor's unopened packages bearing labels showing vendor's name and seed analysis by weight.
- D. Deliver erosion control blanket in manufacturer's standard packing material, showing the name of the manufacturer. Store as approved by the Landscape Architect.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Utilities: Determine location of above grade and underground utilities and perform work in a manner which will avoid damage. Hand excavate, as required. Maintain any grade stakes until removal is mutually agreed upon by parties concerned.
- B. Excavation: When conditions detrimental to turf growth are encountered, such as rubble fill, adverse drainage conditions, contamination, or obstructions, notify the Landscape Architect and the Authority. Proceed with seeding only when conditions are rectified or an alternate location is selected.

1.8 COORDINATION AND SCHEDULING

- A. Coordinate seeding during normal seeding seasons.

- B. Time for seeding: Sow grass seed between April 1st and May 15th or between August 15th and October 1st, except as otherwise approved in writing by the Landscape Architect.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Seeding: The soil surface of seeded turf areas shall be kept constantly and evenly moist during a six-week (minimum) germination period following seeding. Each watering during these germination periods shall be 3 inches deep and shall be evenly distributed over the entire seeded area. Following the germination period(s), seeded areas shall receive a 1-foot deep (minimum) watering evenly distributed over the entire seeded area at each watering. Frequency of these waterings shall be as necessary to keep the soil 1 foot below the surface evenly moist for a full growing season following germination. A light sprinkling or light spray technique which does not erode the soil or wash away the seed shall be used.
- B. Watering schedule and methods to be used shall be approved by the Landscape Architect.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. The materials shall meet the requirements of the following subsections of section 700-Materials Details of the NYSDOT Standard Specifications and/or as further specified below or in the contract documents.

Limestone	713-02
Straw	713-19
Mulch anchorage	713-12, Type A
Wood fiber	713-11
Fertilizer	713-03 Type No. 3 10-6-4 (50% N-UF)
Seeds	713-04 and as follows:

WOODLAND SEED MIX (20,000 SF)			
COMMON NAME	BOTANICAL NAME	VARIETY	MIX
Annual Ryegrass	<i>Lolium multiflorum</i>	Commercial	5%
Northern Red Oak	<i>Quercus rubra</i>	Conservation Seeds	25%
White Oak	<i>Quercus alba</i>	Conservation Seeds	25%
Red Maple	<i>Acer rubrum</i>	Conservation Seeds	25%
Dogwood	<i>Cornus florida</i>	Commercial	10%
Arrow Wood	<i>Viburnum dentatum</i>	Commercial	10%

LAWN SEED MIX (48,000 SF)			
COMMON NAME	BOTANICAL NAME	VARIETY	MIX
Creeping Red Fescue	<i>Festuca rubra trichophylla</i>	Ensylva	40%
Kentucky Bluegrass	<i>Poa pratensis</i>	Baron, Flyking, Glade, or an approved equal	15%
Perennial Ryegrass	<i>Lolium perenne</i>	Manhattan II, Pennfine, Yorktown II, or an approved equal	40%
Annual Ryegrass	<i>Lolium multiflorum</i>	Commercial	5%

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas to receive seeding for compliance with requirements and for conditions affecting performance of work of this Section. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected and approved by Landscape Architect. Secure written approval of any substitutions before seeding.
- B. Contractor shall meet with the Consulting Arborist, Landscape Architect, and Engineer to determine the soil treatment required for each work area. Soil Treatment shall conform to the requirements described on Drawing number LP-16 of the contract plans.

3.2 ESTABLISHING TURF

- A. Rates: Applications rates for turf establishment materials shall be as follows:

Limestone: As required to raise the pH of the soil to 6.8:

<u>pH of Soil</u>	<u>ounces of Limestone per square foot of Turf</u>
6.5-7.0	0
6.0-6.5	1.3
5.5-6.0	2.6

Fertilizer - 800 lbs/acre

Seed – see table above

Wood Mulch - 2 tons/acre (2" thick over entire seed bed per Landscape Architect)

Hay or Straw Mulch – loose covering 1 foot thick over entire seed bed

Mulch Anchorage - Manufacturer's recommended rate

Compost: 6 cubic inches per 1 cubic foot

- B. Limitations: The contractor shall notify the Landscape Architect at least 1 week before the start of any seeding operation and shall not begin the work until the Landscape Architect has given permission. Contractor shall assume all risks if seed is sowed before approval of seed analysis. When wildflower and turf establishment are to be done in the same general areas, the seeding shall be done first, and equipment used during turf establishment shall not damage the seeded areas.
- C. Inoculation of Leguminous Seeds: All seeds of leguminous plants requiring inoculation shall be inoculated prior to mixing or sowing unless otherwise specified or approved or unless accompanied by a certificate of pre-inoculation. When seeds requiring inoculation are to be sown dry, the inoculant shall be applied in accordance with its accompanying instructions and the seeds allowed to dry sufficiently for proper handling. Seeds shall be sown within thirty hours after this treatment. When seeds requiring inoculation are to be sown by water pressure, the inoculant may be added to the water and seed mixture, together with limestone and/or fertilizer as specified, providing the pH of the solution does not exceed 8.
- D. Ground Preparation and Seeding:
1. All turf establishment areas shall be approved by the Landscape Architect prior to seeding.
 2. Areas to be seeded with turf seeds shall be maintained at approved grades and irregularities that will hold water shall be eliminated.
 3. Weed and invasive growth (mugwort, poison ivy, false bamboo, kudza, phragmites, ailanthus, wisteria, bittersweet, English ivy etc.) that, in the Landscape Architect's judgment, may adversely affect germination or growth shall be removed or controlled as approved or as directed by the Landscape Architect prior to seeding.
 4. Areas to be seeded shall be harrowed, disked, or otherwise completely pulverized to a depth of 6", to a state of tillage acceptable to the Landscape Architect. All stones and other undesirable material over 1 inch in greatest dimension or other sizes as specified shall be removed and disposed of as approved.
 5. 2" of a compost, limestone, and fertilizer mix in the amounts specified shall be evenly distributed on the areas to be seeded. Fertilizer and/or limestone as specified shall be uniformly distributed on the area to be seeded. All mechanical equipment used for soil
 6. Preparation for seeding shall be as approved. Equipment shall pass parallel to the contours unless otherwise approved except that crawler tractors shall pass at right angles to the contours.
 7. The finished surface of any area that is seeded shall not be rougher, more uneven or have more or larger stones, clods, roots, or other foreign materials than the area it adjoins.
 8. Seeds shall be distributed uniformly by any approved method that does not injure the seeds in the process of spreading. Following distribution, seeds shall be incorporated into the soil to a depth not exceeding 0.2 inches by raking, rolling brush or chair harrowing, or any other approved method.

E. Hydroseeding Option:

1. Apply seeding materials with an approved hydroseeder.
2. Fill tank with water and agitate while adding seeding materials. Use sufficient fertilizer, mulch, and seed to obtain the specified application rate. Maintain constant agitation to keep contents in homogeneous suspension. Prolonged delays in application or agitation that may be injurious to the seed will be the basis of rejection of material remaining in tank.
3. Distribute uniformly a slurry mixture of water, seed, fertilizer, and mulch at a minimum rate of 57 gallons per 1000 sq. ft. (2500 gallons per acre). The Landscape Architect may order the amount of water increased if distribution of seeding materials is not uniform.

F. Mulching: Mulch shall be spread uniformly in a continuous blanket of sufficient thickness to hide the soil from view, taking care not to over apply. Mulch may be spread by hand or by machinery. Mulch shall not be spread before seeding turf unless otherwise approved or directed. Anchorage for straw mulch is required unless otherwise specified in the Contract Documents. Mulch and mulch anchorage shall be applied separately from seeds unless otherwise specified in the Contract Documents. When use of wood fiber mulch is specified, it shall be spread in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and/or recommendations.

1. Dry Application: Within one day after seeding, cover the seeded areas with a uniform blanket of straw mulch at a rate of 100 pounds per 1000 sq. ft. of seeded area.
2. Hydro Application: Apply approved mulch in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and recommended rates of application.

G. Erosion Control Blanket:

1. Erosion Control Blanket: North American Green (Product – SC150), 14644 Highway 41 North, Evansville, IN 47711, or approved equal, as approved by Landscape Architect. Within one day after broadcast seeding and fertilizing, cover sloped areas uniformly with erosion control blanket. Apply approved blanket in accordance with the manufacturer's written instructions. Then apply second course of seed via hydroseed on top of erosion control blanket. Do not apply straw mulch in area that erosion control blanket will be covering.
2. Stakes: Install approved stakes in accordance with the manufacturer's written instructions.

H. Liability: When the Landscape Architect determines that any seeded area has failed for any reason to produce a satisfactorily established turf after a suitable period of time has elapsed, the Contractor shall repeat all the work required by the Section until a satisfactory growth of turf has been established. Any work to be corrected shall be at the Contractor's expense. The contract will not be accepted until a satisfactory turf has been established, as approved in writing by the Landscape Architect.

- I. Care During Construction: The Contractor shall care for seeded turf areas until final acceptance of the contract. Care shall consist of providing protection against traffic by providing approved warning signs or barricades; and shall consist of repairs to any seeded turf areas damaged by wind, water, fire, traffic or other causes. Damaged areas shall be repaired to re-establish the condition and grade of the area prior to seeding and shall then be re-fertilized, reseeded and remulched as specified herein.
- J. Mowing: The Contractor shall mow all turf establishment areas seeded on 1 to 3 or flatter slopes unless otherwise specified or directed by the Landscape Architect. Such turf areas shall be mowed to a height of 4 inches when growth reaches 8 inches and thereafter as directed by the Landscape Architect.

END OF SECTION 32 9200

SECTION 32 9300 - PLANTS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. This section includes Requirements for furnishing all labor, materials, tools, and equipment, and performing all operations necessary for planting as shown on the Contract Drawings.
 - 1. The work includes the following:
 - a. Excavation of all tree pits including saw cutting asphalt and removal of asphalt from tree pits. Plant, dig, transplant, transport, maintain, and replace all plant materials specified in the following plant schedule shown on the Contract Drawings.
 - b. In Excavating tree pits, the Design-Builder shall remove and dispose of all concrete footings, pavements, pipe, conduit and rubble.
 - c. The Design-Builder shall be liable for any damages caused by planting and/or transplanting operations. All areas disturbed shall be restored to their original condition to the satisfaction of the Engineer of Record (EOR).
 - d. Removal and disposal of all dead trees up to and including four (4) inches in caliper for tree replacements.
 - e. Remove and dispose of roots, stumps, trunks, and branches.
 - f. All topsoil shall be restored to the existing finished grade (6" deep).
 - g. All damaged sidewalks, curbs, road pavements and grass shall be restored to the satisfaction of the EOR.
 - h. Plant the new tree as close as possible to the removed tree.

1.02 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 02200 – Excavation and Fill
- B. Section 02911 - Topsoil

1.03 REFERENCES

- A. Plant Nomenclature: Conform to the latest edition of "Standardized Plant Names" as adopted by the American Joint Committee of Horticultural Nomenclature.

- B. Size and Grading Standards: Conform to the current edition of "American Standard for Nursery Stock" - Sponsor - the American Association of Nurserymen Inc., unless otherwise specified.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Worker's Qualifications: The persons performing the planting and their supervisor shall be personally experienced in the planting and caring of plant material and shall have been regularly employed by a company engaged in the planting and caring of plant material for a minimum of 2 years
- B. Caliper trees up to 4 inches in caliber at a point 6 inches above ground and trees over 4 inches in caliber 12 inches above ground.
- C. Do not use woody plant material from regions south of latitude 39 degrees unless such material has been lined out in nurseries located north of latitude 39 degrees for at least 2 growing seasons. Latitude 39 degrees is approximately a line from Annapolis, MD to Cincinnati, OH.

1.05 SUBMITTALS FOR APPROVAL

- A. List of Plants: Before plant material is shipped to the project site, submit a complete itemized list of all plants including the source of supply.
- B. Product Data: Furnish the following with each planting material delivery.
 - 1. Invoice indicating sizes and variety of plant material
 - 2. Invoice indicating sizes and variety of plant material.
 - 3. Certificates of inspection required by State and Federal agencies.
 - 4. Labels for each plant or bundles of plants indicating name and size.
- C. Quality Control Submittals:
 - 1. Worker's Qualifications Data: Names and addresses of 5 similar projects that each person has worked on during the past 2 years.

1.06 SUBMITTALS FOR INFORMATION (NOT USED)

1.07 JOB CONDITIONS

- A. Water will be furnished by the State from existing facilities. Furnish hoses and connections required to adequately water plants.

1.08 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING:

- A. Plant deciduous, woody plants between October 1 and May 15 whenever temperature is above 32 degrees F and soil is in workable condition, unless otherwise approved in writing by the EOR.

- B. Plant evergreens between August 15 and September 15 or during April or May before start of new growth.

1.09 PLANTING GUARANTEE

- A. The Design-Builder shall guarantee the work for a period of one year from the date of physical completion. Physical completion for the work of this Section is the date or dates when all the planting operations, or seasonal portions of the planting operations, or replacement planting operations have been completed and are accepted by the EOR.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIALS

- A. Plants

- 1. Shrubs and Trees:

- a. Nursery grown stock unless otherwise indicated on the contract drawings.
 - b. Nursery grown stock unless otherwise indicated on the contract drawings.
 - c. Acclimated plants true to genus and species.
 - d. Well-developed root and branch systems. Do not prune branches before delivery.
 - e. Free of disease, insect eggs, bark abrasions, and disfiguring knots.
 - f. Buds intact and reasonably closed at time of planting.
 - g. Balled and burlapped from soil which will hold a natural ball. Manufactured balls are unacceptable.
 - h. Conform to size indicated or larger, or within the minimum maximum size when so indicated. Larger plants cut back to specified dimensions will not be accepted.

- B. Trees

- 1. Single erect leader from ground to top, surrounded with uniformly arranged branches.
 - 2. Free from frost cracks, broken bark, and dead or broken branches.
 - 3. Transplanted, or root pruned 360 degrees at least once during the previous 3 years.

- C. Planting Soil

- 1. Topsoil for Planting Soil: In accordance with Section 02911.
 - 2. Soil Amendments (For every 4 cu yd of topsoil):

- a. Peat Moss: 7-1/2 cu ft bale or 15 bushels (loose measure).
- b. Fertilizer: 5 lb.
- c. Bonemeal: 80 lb.

2.02 FERTILIZER

- A. Bonemeal: Commercial, steamed finely ground material containing not less than 1.0 percent nitrogen and 11 percent phosphoric acid.
- B. Commercial Fertilizer (10-6-4): Containing not less than 10 percent nitrogen, 6 percent available phosphoric acid and 4 percent water soluble potash.

2.03 MULCH

- A. Peat Moss: Finely granulated material, passing a 1/2 inch sieve, free of sticks, woody roots, stones and other objectionable material, and of such physical condition that it can be readily incorporated with the topsoil. Furnish material conforming to the following criteria:
 - 1. pH value: 3.0 to 5.0.
 - 2. Moisture: Not less than 25 percent nor more than 50 percent.
 - 3. Organic Material: Not less than 47 percent (90 percent dry basis).
- B. Wood Chips: Hardwood or softwood chips produced by a standard wood chipping machine, free of leaves, young green growth, wood shavings, sawdust, or any foreign material. Chips shall not exceed 3 inches in greatest dimension.
- C. Shredded Wood: Wood fiber produced from either hardwood or softwood trees, free of tannic acid, leaves, young green growth, wood shavings, sawdust or other objectionable foreign material.

2.04 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Stakes, Deadman and Guy Stakes: Sound, durable White or Red Cedar, or other approved wood, free of insect or fungus infestation.
- B. Guy Wire or Cable: No. 12 galvanized iron wire or cable.
- C. Tree Wrapping: 4-inch-wide strips of jute burlap or waterproof paper 30-30-30 Krinklecraft by Eaton Brothers Corp., P.O. Box 60, Hamburg, NY 14075, (800) 433-3244.
- D. Protective Hose: 2-ply garden hose cut to required lengths to protect tree trunk's from damage by wires.

- E. Anti-desiccants: Wilt-Pruf by Wilt-Pruf Products, Inc., P.O. Box 469, Essex, CT 06426, (203) 767-7033.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 INSPECTION

- A. Do not plant material until after inspection and approval in writing of plant shipments. Secure written approval of any substitutions before planting. Remove rejected material from planting areas.

3.02 PREPARATION

A. Planting Layout:

1. Stake out tree locations and planting areas.
2. Obtain layout approval from the EOR prior to excavations of plant pits and beds.
 - B. Plant Pit Dimensions: Minimum width 12 inches, measured at the ground surface.
1. Balled and Burlapped Plants:
 - a. Pit Depth: Not to exceed the ball depth.
 - b. Pit Width: Measured at the ground surface, 3 times the width of the ball or as indicated.
2. Container Grown Plants: 2 times the diameter of the container measured at the ground surface.
3. Ground Cover Beds: Excavate entire bed to a depth of 4 inches.
4. Bare Root Plants: Diameter equal to width of roots spread to natural position plus 24 inches, measured at the ground surface.
5. Hedge Trenches: 18 inches wide and 18 inches deep.

- C. Excavation: Excavate pits to the dimensions specified on the contract drawings.
- D. Place the soil amendments over the topsoil piles and turn over the combined elements a minimum of 3 times until thoroughly mixed.

3.03 PLANTING

A. Setting Plants:

1. Backfill pits with planting soil and firm to the level upon which plants were previously growing. Set plants plumb. Plant budded or grafted plants 2 inches below bud or graft line. Complete backfilling with planting soil and settle continually with water.

2. Balled Plants: Set plants in position and backfill 1/3 depth of ball. Remove burlap from top and adjust to eliminate air pockets. Complete backfill and settle with water.
 3. Bare-root Plants: Set plant in position and place planting soil around roots settling with water. Use care to avoid bruising or breaking roots when firming soil. Prune bruised or broken roots.
- B. Wrapping: Wrap deciduous trees within 4 days after planting from the ground line to the height of the second branches. Wrap in a single layer wound spirally starting from base and overlapping 1-1/2 inches. Secure wrapping in place by use of approved staples or other approved methods and materials.
- C. Staking: Set tree stakes into solid ground below bottom of plant before backfilling. Place stakes at the outer edge of the roots or ball in line with the prevailing wind at a 10 degree angle from the tree trunk.
- D. Anti-Desiccant: Apply anti-desiccant spray to broadleaved ericaceous plants planted in the Fall season.
- E. Landscape Fabric: Install over the planting area to limits indicated. Cut fabric as required to avoid shrubs.
- F. Surface Finish: Form saucer as indicated on Drawings. Grade soil to form a basin on lower side of slope plantings, which will catch and retain water. Top dress basins with fertilizer spread evenly at the rate of 1-1/2 pounds per square yard of plant pit surface. Break saucers and basins before ground freezes.
- G. Mulching:
1. Spread mulch over finished surface of each plant, plant bed and hedge trench in the following amounts:
 - a. Wood Chips: 3 inches.
 - b. Peat Moss: 3 inches.
 - c. Shredded Wood: 2 inches.
 2. Water plants thoroughly after mulching.
- H. Pruning: Prune immediately after planting using sharp tools approved by the Engineer. Remove approximately 1/3 of the wood of deciduous plants, maintaining the natural habit of the plant. Cut no leaders. Paint pruning cuts 3 inches in diameter or over with tree wound paint.

- I. Guying: Guy deciduous trees 4 inches and over in caliber; trees over 6 feet high with 3 or more stems; and evergreens 6 feet or over in height, with 3 guys immediately after planting. Attach guys to stakes and trees as indicated. Connect multi-stem trees with protected connecting wires maintaining each stems relationship to one another.
- J. Establishment of Planting: Maintain plantings immediately following planting operations and continue throughout the guarantee period. Establishment of plantings shall consist of keeping plants in healthy, growing conditions by watering, weeding, cultivating, pruning, spraying, tightening of guys, remulching and by any other necessary operations of establishment. Water all plants at least once a week between April 1 and October 31 with approximately 5 gallons per square yard (1 inch layer of water) per watering. Provide additional watering during periods of dry weather when required. Treat plants with good horticultural preventative or remedial measures to control insects, diseases or rodents.

3.04 COMPLETION INSPECTIONS AND REPLACEMENTS

- A. Physical Completion Inspection and Replacements: The Design-Builder shall notify the EOR at least ten days prior to requested date of physical completion inspection. Remove and replace dead, unhealthy or badly impaired plants according to the original specification. Replace plants during the next planting season if this inspection is not within a planting season.
- B. End of Guarantee Inspection and Replacements: Remove stakes, guy wires and tree wrapping at the end of the one year guarantee period unless otherwise directed. Remove and replace dead, unhealthy or impaired plants according to original specification. Replace plantings during the next planting season if end of guarantee period is not within a planting season.

END OF SECTION 32 9300

SECTION 33 0132 – MANHOLE REHABILITATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SCOPE

- A. This section covers repair, structural restoration and rehabilitation of existing manholes (damaged concrete, missing brick work, reconstruction of benches and inverts, replacement of manhole covers, repair or replacement of manhole rings) as required to eliminate infiltration and exfiltration, restore structural integrity and protect the manhole structure from future deterioration.
- B. The Contractor shall provide the Engineer with preconstruction and post construction report with digital photo files of the manholes indicated for rehabilitation. Provide a list correlating the report and photos with the manhole's approximate location. All photographs shall have sufficient detail of the interior of each manhole to reveal conditions of existing defects and rehabilitated features.

1.2 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

- A. Division 31, Section 2000: "Earth Moving Operations".

1.3 REQUIREMENTS OF REGULATORY AGENCIES

- A. Obtain necessary permits from local authorities. Ascertain and comply with local requirements for materials and construction covering restoration of pavement.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication details and connections to existing pipes.
- B. Product Data: Manufacturer's catalog cuts, specifications, and installation instructions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Grade Extension Rings: The Fort Miller Co., Inc., P.O. Box 98, Schuylerville, NY 12871, (518) 695-5000.
- B. PVC Sewer Pipe: CertainTeed Corp., 750 E. Swedesford Rd., Valley Forge, PA 19482, (610) 341-6820.
- C. Manhole Frames and Covers:
 - 1. Neenah Foundry Company, P.O. Box 729, Neenah, WI 54957, (414) 729-3661.
 - 2. East Jordan Iron Works, P.O. Box 190, South Bay Rd., Cicero, NY 13039, (315) 699-2601. Corporate Headquarters, 301 Spring Street, East Jordan, MI 49727, (800) 874-4100.

- D. Mortar Mix (channel and bench repair): E-poxy Engineered Materials, L.L.C., 10 Broadway, Albany, NY 12202, (518) 463-3271.

2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Grade Extension Rings:
1. Designed for AASHTO H-20 loading, 30 percent impact.
 2. Dimensions:
 - a. Minimum 6-inch-wide radial bearing.
 - b. Thickness (height) as required.
 3. Concrete: 4000 psi.
 4. Reinforcement: ASTM A615, Grade 60 or ASTM A185, Grade 65.
 5. Entrained Air: 5.0 to 9.0 percent.
- B. Frames and Covers:
1. The design of each shall be the same throughout the project unless otherwise specified or indicated on the drawings.
 2. Units shall meet AASHTO H-20-wheel loading requirements. Manufacture, workmanship and certified proof-load tests shall conform to AASHTO M306-89 - Standard Specification for Drainage Structure Castings.
 3. Material:
 - a. Cast iron: ASTM A48, Class 30B or 35B.
 - b. Delivered to the Site free of any coatings, unless otherwise specified.
 4. Frames:
 - a. Round, 6-1/2 inches high with a 30-inch clear opening.
 - b. Minimum 3-7/8-inch-wide flange with integral stiffeners.
 - c. Minimum 3/8-inch wall thickness above the cover seat.
 - d. Minimum weight: 135 lbs.
 5. Covers:
 - a. Round, 1-1/2 inches thick at the perimeter bearing surface.
 - b. Minimum 7/8-inch-wide perimeter bearing surface.
 - c. Minimum plate thickness:
 - 1) Platen Lid: 1 inch.
 - 2) Parabolic Lid: 1/2 inch.
 - d. The top surface checkered and provided with suitable lifting notches.
 - e. Minimum weight: 125 lbs.
 6. Provide frames and covers of the locking type when indicated on the Drawings.
 - a. Acceptable Locking Devices: Type J or Type H by Neenah Foundry Company; Type A or Type B by Syracuse Casting Sales Corporation.
 7. Acceptable Manhole Frames and Covers: Pattern R-1557-A with platen cover by Neenah Foundry Company; Pattern 1012A with platen cover by Syracuse Casting Sales Corporation.
- C. Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Pipe: ASTM D3034, SDR 26.
- D. Epoxy Mortar Mix for channel and bench repair:
1. Two components, 100 percent solids.
 2. Non-shrink.
 3. Chemically resistant.

4. Moisture insensitive.
5. Acceptable Epoxy Mortar Mix: Eva-Pox No. 3 by E-poxy Engineered Materials, L.L.C.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Excavate an area around the upper part of the existing manhole sufficiently wide and deep to allow removal of old castings (frame and cover) and conical top section.
 1. Place a covering over the manhole floor to collect debris and to prevent solids from entering the connecting sewer lines.
 2. Remove existing step irons as necessary to allow installation of the liner.
- B. Restore existing channels and bench to original configuration with epoxy mortar mix.
 1. Chip out unsound concrete and thoroughly remove all bond-limiting contaminants by pressure washing and mechanical abrading.
 2. Build up new surfaces to original contours with a mix of epoxy and No. 1 silica sand as recommended by the manufacturer.
- C. Prepare and install liner as directed by the engineer and in accordance with printed instructions of the manufacturer.
 1. Make precise cut-outs to accommodate existing pipe connections.
 2. Provide uniform bearing of the bottom edge of the liner with the manhole bench.
- D. Extend existing pipe inlets and outlets through the liner wall with PVC pipe longitudinally slit and cut as necessary to reduce diameter. Insert PVC pipe at least 6 inches into existing pipe with a tight fit.
- E. Seal pipe insertions through the liner, plus the bottom edge of the liner at the manhole bench, with an epoxy grout recommended by the liner manufacturer.
- F. Install grade extension rings on a leveling bed of epoxy mortar atop the flat shoulder of the manway reducer.
- G. Backfill the annular space between the liner and the existing manhole wall with concrete stabilized sand having a Proctor Density of at least 90 percent.

END OF SECTION 33 0132

SECTION 33 1219 – WATER UTILITY DISTRIBUTION FIRE HYDRANTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

- A. Division 31, Section 2000. "Earth Moving Operations"
- B. Division 33 Section 1101. "Site Water Utility Distribution Piping and Valves"

1.2 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Approved Manufacturers:
 - 1. Mueller Company, Super Centurion A-421

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Catalog cuts of fire hydrants and appurtenances.
- B. Certificate: Furnish written certification indicating the AWWA C-502 required tests on materials and completed hydrants have been accomplished.

1.4 REFERENCES

- A. Two (2) Hydrant Flow Tests dated September 10, 2024.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 FIRE HYDRANTS

- A. Six-inch Class 52, Ductile Iron pipe connections with a 4'-6" minimum depth below finished grade.
- B. 1/2" main valve opening, 3-way: two (2) hose hubs and one (1) 1 pumper hub.
- C. Thread type shall be two (2) 2-1/2" N.Y. Corp. thread hose hubs and one (1) 4-1/2" N.C. thread pumper hub.
- D. An "arrow" and the word "open" cast in relief on top of hydrant.
- E. Stem nuts shall open by turning to the left.
- F. Lugs in the bell of the elbow when required for harnessing the hydrant to the main
- G. 250 psi working pressure and 500psig test pressure.
- H. Anti-freezing and equipped with automatic drip valves.

- I. Bronze mounted working parts and bronze valve seats.
- J. Breakable and easily replaceable barrel and operating system in the event of damage or accident. Main valve shall remain closed and reasonable tight against leakage in the event of damage or accident.
- K. Connections and nozzles shall conform to the "Standard for Screw Threads and Gaskets for Fire Hose Connections, NFPA 1963" unless otherwise required to match the existing hydrants at the Facility or the threads and fittings of the local fire department.

2.2 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Paint: Hydrant manufacturer's standard primer and 2 finish coats of rust inhibitive, high gloss alkyd enamel. Match color of other hydrants at the Facility.
- B. Crushed Stone: NYS DOT No. 3A; comply with the material requirements of DOT Section 703-02.
- C. Tools: Furnish 2 wrenches to fit fire hydrants. Deliver wrenches to the Director's Representative.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SETTING

- A. All hydrants shall have 3'-0" clear space around as per NYS Fire Code with vehicle impact protection where applicable (bollards). Locate fire hydrants 2 feet from the curb or gutter unless indicated otherwise. Position hub connections to face the road.
- B. Set fire hydrants plumb with hub centerline elevations 19 inches above finished grade, or match grade line indicated on barrel of hydrants with finished grade. Provide thrust blocks at the tee connection and at the hydrant to keep the branching pipe together. Install gate valve at the branching line to the hydrant for maintenance and repair purposes.
- C. Clean and paint all parts of the hydrants above the ground with two finished coats of paint. Color shall be as per university requirements.

END OF SECTION 33 1219

SECTION 33 1417 – SITE WATER UTILITY DISTRIBUTION PIPING AND VALVES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

- A. Division 33, Section 3000. "Cast-In-Place Concrete"
- B. Division 31, Section 2000. "Earth Moving Operations"
- C. Division 33, Section 1219. "Water Utility Distribution Hydrants"

1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Manufacturer's specifications including dimensions and coatings.
- B. Quality Control Submittals: Statement of compliance with ANSI/AWWA Specifications.
- C. Valve Schedule: Submit the valve schedule listing type of valve, manufacturer's model number and size, for each valve type required.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Identification: In addition to body markings, furnish each valve with an attached nameplate with markings in accordance with the MSS Standard Marking System No. SP-25. On valves over 3 inches in size the tag shall be mounted on the yoke arm, bonnet or other location where the tag information will be readily visible after the valve is installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ACCEPTABLE PIPE MANUFACTURERS

- A. U.S. Pipe, 1101 East Pearl Street Burlington, New Jersey 08016 (609)387-6122.
- B. American Pipe, 1614-0 Union Valley Road, Suite 304, West Milford, New Jersey 07480 (973)853-4288
- C. EBAA Iron Sales, Inc., P.O. Box 857 Eastland, TX 76448 (800) 433-1716 www.ebaa.com

2.2 DUCTILE IRON PIPE

- A. Centrifugally cast, in accordance with ANSI/AWWA C151/A21.51.
 - 1. Working Pressure: 100 psi.

2. Thickness Class: Under 6 inch - 51; 6 inch and larger - 50.
3. Restrained joints: Boltless integral restraining system rated for a working pressure of 350 psi in accordance with the performance requirements of ANSI/AWWA C111/A21.1.
 - a. Field LOK 350 by U.S. Pipe
 - b. Flex-Ring by American Pipe
4. Laying Lengths: 18 or 20 feet.

B. Coating and Lining:

1. Outside Coating: Bituminous enamel, minimum thickness 1 mil.
2. Inside Lining: Cement mortar; ANSI/AWWA C104/A21.4.
3. Ductile Iron (3 Inch – 48 Inches): ANSI/AWWA C110/A21.10.

2.3 FITTINGS

A. Joints: Match pipe furnished.

B. Coating and Lining:

1. Outside Coating: Bituminous enamel, minimum thickness 1 mil.
2. Inside Lining: Cement mortar; ANSI/AWWA C104/A21.4.

2.4 GATE VALVE

A. Where required:

1. All gate/isolation valves shall be resilient wedge gate valve manufactured in accordance with AWWA C-515. Gate valves shall be manufactured by the Mueller Corp. or approved equal.
2. The valve shall be restrained to full lengths of pipe on both ends.
3. Gray- or ductile-iron body and bonnet; with bronze or gray- or ductileiron gate, resilient seats, bronze stem, and stem nut.
4. Minimum Pressure Rating: 200 psig.
5. End Connections: Mechanical joint.
6. Interior Coating: Complying with AWWA C550.
7. Valve stem extensions shall be attached to the operating nut by pin connection and have a guide ring. They shall be as manufactured by Bingham and Taylor or approved equal.

2.5 ISOLATION VALVE

A. Where required:

1. All isolation valves shall be gray or ductile iron installed as per the campus standards.

2.6 VALVE BOXES

A. Where required, valve boxes shall:

1. Comply with AWWA M44 for cast-iron valve boxes.

2. Include top section, adjustable extension of length required for depth of burial of valve, plug with lettering "WATER," and bottom section with base that fits over valve and with a barrel approximately 5 inches in diameter.
3. Operating Wrenches: Steel, tee-handle with one pointed end, stem of length to operate deepest buried valve, and socket matching valve operating nut.

2.7 FLEXIBLE EXPANSION JOINTS

- A. Retain materials in this article or revise to suit Project.
- B. Single ball flexible expansion joint designed for protection against bending moments.
 1. EBAA Iron Sales, Inc.
- C. Double ball flexible expansion joint designed for protection against shear and ground movement.
 1. EBAA Iron Sales, Inc.
- D. Construction:
 1. Manufactured of 65-45-12 ductile iron conforming to the material requirements of ASTM A536 and ANSI/AWWA C153/A21.53.
 2. Working Pressure: 350 psi for flexible joints 3 inch through 24 inch in size; 250 psi for flexible joints 30 inch and over in size.
 3. Expansion joint designed and cast as an integral part of a ball and socket type flexible joint; 4-inch minimum expansion capability.
 4. Each ball and socket capable of at least 15 degrees deflection.
 5. Coating and Lining:
 - a. Outside Coating: Coat tar epoxy, minimum thickness 5 mils.
 - b. Inside Lining and Seal Contact Surfaces: NSF approved fusion-bonded epoxy conforming to the material requirements of and tested in accordance with ANSI/AWWA C213.
 6. Joints (Mechanical Joint or Flanged Ends): Match joints of pipe furnished.
 7. Pressure tested against its own restraint at rated working pressure.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSPECTION

- A. Inspect pipe and fittings prior to installation to preclude installation of defective materials.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Unless otherwise shown, or specified, install the Work of this Section in accordance with ANSI/AWWA Standard C600 and the manufacturer's printed instructions.
- B. LAYING PIPE

1. Lay pipe to line and grade with joints close and even. Excavate adequate bell holes to facilitate joint assembly and to permit a uniform bearing on undisturbed earth for the pipe barrel. Unless otherwise noted, the minimum depth of pipe shall be 4'-6" measured from the top of the pipe to the finished or existing grade, whichever is lower.
 2. Keep the trench free from water. Do not lay or test pipe in a wet trench.
 3. Lay water pipe on a continuously rising grade from low points to high points at service lines, hydrants, or air valves.
 4. Construct concrete thrust blocks behind bends, tees, caps, and plugs, as shown in the drawings. Cast concrete against undisturbed earth and place support so it will not interfere with making joints.
 5. Use clamps, tie-rods, lugged pipe, etc., for anchorage when required and as approved.
- C. Push-on Joints: Make joints with a rubber ring and sterile lubricant. The materials used shall be free of water, oil, tar, grease, or other foreign substances.
- D. Mechanical Joints: conform strictly to the manufacturer's instructions with reference to gland alignment and the tightening of the bolts.
- E. Cutting: Cut pipe at right angles to the axis with sharp tools. Prepare ends for proper connections. Do not lay cut pipes within three lengths of a bend or the end of a line without written approval.
- F. Protecting Pipes:
1. Keep pipe clean from all sediment, debris, packing material and other foreign material.
 2. Close all open ends of pipes and fittings securely with removable plugs at end of each workday, during storms, and when the Work is left at any time.
- G. Valve installation:
1. Provide valves of first quality, free from all imperfections and defects, with body markings indicating manufacturer and rating. Valve parts of the same manufacturer, size and type shall be interchangeable. Manually operated valves shall open in a counterclockwise direction, and in general, round ventilated type handwheels shall be provided. All valves that use packing (except butterfly, cone, and ball valves) shall be capable of being packed when wide open and under full working pressure.
 2. Valve ends, unless otherwise indicated, shall be:
 - a. Threaded or flanged ends in steel and brass piping under 4 inches in size; flanged ends in steel and brass piping 4 inches and larger in size.
 - b. Brazing or screwed ends with adapters in threadless copper pipe (Type TP).
 - c. Solder or screwed ends with adapters in copper water tubing.
 - d. Mechanical joint, rubber ring joint, or flanged joint in cast iron/ductile iron piping to match joints of pipe furnished.
 - e. Grooved ends to match joints of pipe furnished.
 3. Valve flanges shall be of a class to mate with pipe flanges

3.3 PRESSURE AND LEAKAGE TESTS

- A. Before backfilling, fill the pipe with water to expel all air. Conduct as directed concurrent pressure and leakage tests for two hours at 1-1/2 times the specified working pressure. Maximum variation in test pressures shall not exceed plus or minus 5 psi.
- B. Pipe installations will be rejected when the additional water required to maintain pressure during the test period exceeds the allowable leakage in the following formula.

$$L = (SD \times \text{THE SQUARE ROOT OF } P / 148,000)$$

in which:

L = allowable leakage in gallons per hour

S = length of pipeline tested, in feet

D = nominal diameter of pipe, in inches

P = average test pressure during the leakage test, psi (gage)

- C. All pressure and leakage tests shall be conducted in the presence of the Director's Representative.
- D. Locate and repair or replace all pipe and fittings showing visible leaks. Repeat Pressure and Leakage Tests as specified.

3.4 CONNECTIONS

- A. When other connecting pipe or other connecting structures have not yet been installed, lay pipe to a point where directed and plug or cap the end. Identify the terminal point with a stake extending above ground, marked to indicate size and service. Provide temporary thrust restraint as directed.

3.5 CONCRETE CRADLE AT PIPE CROSSINGS

- A. Where required vertical and horizontal separation between water pipes and sewer pipes are not provided, or when called for by the Engineer, concrete cradle shall be constructed as directed. The trench shall be prepared, and the pipe supported in the same manner as described in this specification and shall be constructed in accordance with details shown on the plans.
- B. The concrete for the full width of the foundation shall be deposited continuously to the height of the outside bottom of the pipe. Before this concrete is set, the pipe shall be evenly bedded therein, to have a uniform support for its entire length, and the remainder of the concrete shall be immediately deposited in such a manner as to avoid changing the position of the pipe. Concrete shall be a minimum of 3,000 psi.

- C. Concrete cradle shall be allowed to harden sufficiently to prevent consolidation of backfill, and wet concrete cradle shall be allowed to cure 24 hours before vehicle loads can be applied to that area of the trench. Steel plates may be used to cover the trench to protect the cradle from vehicle loads if the 24-hour undisturbed cure period cannot be provided.
- D. Each pipe shall be laid so as to form a close joint with the next adjoining pipe and bring the inverts continuously to the required line and grade.

END OF SECTION 33 1417

SECTION 33 3113 - SITE SANITARY SEWERAGE GRAVITY SYSTEM

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES:

1. Sanitary Gravity piping (Ductile Iron & PVC-SDR-26).
2. Cleanouts.
3. Sanitary Manholes.
4. Frames and covers for sanitary manholes.

1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK:

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for the site sanitary system. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be required to support the work.

1.3 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

- A. Division 31, Section 2000. "Earth Moving Operations"
- B. Division 33, Section 0132. "Manhole Rehabilitation"

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. If applicable, under Executive Order 22 for New York State contract over \$1M, submit an Environmental Product Declaration (EPD) from the manufacturer for concrete and steel within this specification section, if available. A statement of the contractor's good faith effort to obtain the EPD shall be provided if not feasible.
 - 1) Manufacturer provided EPD's must be Product Specific Type III (Third Party Reviewed), in adherence with ISO 14025 Environmental labels and declarations, ISO 14044 Environmental Management Life Cycle Assessment, and ISO 21930 Core rules for environmental product declarations of construction products and services.
- B. Product Data: For each type of product. Include construction details, materials, individual components and profiles.
- C. Shop Drawings:
 1. Manholes: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, frames, covers, and attachments to other work.
- D. Coordination Drawings: Show pipe sizes, locations, and elevations. Show other piping in same trench and clearances from sanitary drainage system piping. Indicate interface and spatial relationship between manholes, piping, and proximate structures.

- E. Product Certifications: For each type of cast-iron soil pipe and fitting, from manufacturer.
 - 1. Precast structures:
 - a. Manufacturer certification showing structures delivered meets all requirements of Suffolk County Department of Public Works (SCDPW) specifications.
 - b. All precast structures must be manufactured at an ACI certified plant. A copy of the certification must be submitted to E.I.C.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE & HANDLING

- A. Do not store plastic manholes, pipe, and fittings in direct sunlight.
- B. Protect pipe, pipe fittings, and seals from dirt and damage.
- C. Handle manholes according to manufacturer's written rigging instructions.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Sanitary Service: Do not interrupt service to facilities occupied by the Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary service according to requirements indicated:
 - 1. Notify the Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of service.
 - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of service without the Owner written permission

PART 2 - MATERIALS

2.1 SANITARY GRAVITY PIPING

- A. Pipe material to be Ductile Iron Pipe:
 - 1. From building connection to first Manhole.
 - 2. At crossings with other utilities within 18" of vertical clearance.
- B. Ductile iron, pipe and fittings
 - 1. PIPE: ANSI/ASTM A-746, Class 50 or ASTM A 716 for push-on joints.
 - 2. Standard Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile or gray iron, for push-on joints.
 - 3. Compact Fittings: AWWA C153, for push-on joints.
 - 4. Gaskets: AWWA C111, rubber.
- C. PVC pipe and fittings
 - 1. Pipe material to be PVC-SDR-26 where ductile iron pipe conditions are not met and 4' of cover is provided.

2. All pipes and fittings shall meet the requirements of ASTM D3034 for 4" through 15" SDR 26 and F679 for 18" through 36" 46ps/115ps sewer pipe. The pipes shall be colored green for in-ground identification as sewer pipe. All pipes shall be made from quality PVC resin, compounded to provide physical and mechanical properties that equal or exceed cell class 12454 as defined in ASTM D1784.

D. PREINSULATED PVC GRAVITY SEWER PIPE

1. Pipe material to be pre-insulated gravity sewer pipe where ductile iron pipe conditions are not met and 4' of cover is not provided.
2. Pre-insulated Gravity Sewer: PVC Carrier Pipe - 160 psi (SDR 26) PVC pipe meeting ASTM D1784; PVC Casing Pipe - Material ASTM D1784, Pipe - SDR 1 or heavier - ASTM D2241; Rubber sealing rings (gaskets) - molded solid compression type seal; Foam - polyurethane - 1.5 to 2.5 lb./cu. Ft., 90 percent closed cell content, K value - 0.14 Btu/inch/hr./degree F/sq. ft.
 - a. Acceptable Manufacturer: Thermal Pipe Systems, Inc., 5205 W. Woodmill Dr., Suite 33, Wilmington, DE 19808, (302) 999-1588, www.thermalpipesystems.com.
 - b. Provide rubber end seals on all full and cut-down sections to protect insulation.
 - c. Utilize SDR 26 gasketed PVC fittings. Encase in concrete following leakage testing.

2.2 CLEANOUTS (SANITARY)

- A. Ductile Iron Cleanouts: To be used in roadways and to meet H-20 loading requirements.
- B. Plastic Cleanouts (DR18/SDR35): PVC body with PVC threaded plug. Include PVC sewer pipe fitting and riser to clean out of same material as sewer piping. Plastic cleanout to only be used in non-paved areas.

2.3 SANITARY MANHOLES

- A. Standard Precast Concrete Manholes as per Suffolk County Department of Public Works.
- B. Description: ASTM C 478 (ASTM C 478M), precast, reinforced concrete, of depth indicated, with provision for sealant joints.
- C. Diameter: 4' diameter for 4' manhole, 5' diameter for 5' manhole only where drop manhole is required. 5' Diameter drop manholes should be used only where the invert elevations differ by more than 2'. Refer to SCDPW standard sewer details.
 1. Outside drop:
 - a. Ductile Iron Pipe: ANSI/ASTM A-746, Class 50.
 - b. Polyvinyl Chloride Pipe: PVC compound ASTM D1784, Pipe ASTM D-3034, SDR-26.
 2. Inside drop:
 - a. Polyvinyl Chloride Pipe: PVC compound ASTM D1784, Pipe ASTM D-3034, SDR-26.
- D. Manhole specifications:

1. Base Section: 8" minimum thickness for floor slab and 5" minimum thickness for walls and base riser section. The base riser section is 3' and is integral with floor slab.
2. Riser Sections: 5" minimum thickness, and lengths to be provided in increments of 1', from 1' through 4' heights as required.
3. Joint Sealant: ASTM C 990 (ASTM C 990M), self-sealing butyl rubber.
4. Resilient Pipe Connectors: ASTM C 923 (ASTM C 923M), cast or fitted into manhole walls, for each pipe connection. Flexible sleeve shall be Trelleborg AB "Kor-N-Seal" flexible sleeve or approved equal.
5. Steps: SCDPW standard manhole steps, stainless steel or steel-reinforced copolymer propylene at 12" on center.
6. Adjustment Rings: Brick adjustment to grade shall be with all-weather red clay brick with Type 2 mortar, minimum of 2 courses and maximum of 12" thickness. Diameter to match diameter of manhole frame and cover, and height as required to adjust manhole frame and cover to indicated elevation and slope.
7. Concrete: Concrete to be 4000psi at 28 days.
8. Rebar: Rebar to conform to ASTM A-615-60, $F_s=60,000\text{psi}$.
9. Welded Wire Mesh (WWM): WWM shall conform to ASTM A185, $F_s=65,000\text{psi}$.
10. Load rating: Loading shall conform to AASHTO H-20 loading with 30% impact and 130 lb./cf. equivalent soil pressure.
11. Material shall conform to ASTM A48 Class 30B or 35 specifications.
12. Refer to sections 2.4 for frames and cover castings for manholes.
13. Sanitary manholes shall not contain any sumps.

2.4 SANITARY MANHOLE FRAMES AND COVERS.

- A. Standard Precast Concrete Manholes described in section 2.3.
- B. Frames and Cover:
 1. Material shall conform to ASTM A48 Class 30B or 35 specifications.
 2. Manhole Frame shall be round with 24-inch clear openings.
 3. Casting diameter shall match precast opening, with 2 inches of casting resting on the concrete precast.
 4. Covers: shall be round solid lid, top surface checkered and provided with suitable concealed lifting notches, and lettering cast into cover to indicate type of structure. Provide "SANITARY" custom marking on casting for sanitary sewer manholes where stated in plans.
 5. Load rating: Loading shall conform to AASHTO HS-20 loading.
 6. Provide Campbell Foundry castings as shown on plans or approved equal.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSPECTION

- A. Inspect all pipes and fittings before installation. Remove defective pipes and fittings from the site.
- B. Do not backfill before installation is inspected by the Director's Representative.

3.2 GENERAL

- A. Install pipe in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations and as specified in ASTM D 2321.
- B. Join PVC pipe with solvent cemented joints as recommended by ASTM D 2855.
- C. Use Cushion Material for bedding and backfill to the depth shown on the drawings for solid pipe.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Laying Pipe: Lay pipe to indicated line and grade with a firm uniform bearing for the entire length of the pipe. Excavate sufficient clearance at each bell or coupling to allow uniform bearing along the pipe barrel. Fill excess excavation with suitable material and tamp.
- B. Joints:
 - 1. Wipe the inside of sockets and outside of pipe to be jointed, clean and dry.
 - 2. Install rubber gaskets in accordance with the manufacturer's specifications.
- C. Connections:
 - 1. Make connections to existing manholes by cutting into the floor or bench of the manhole and forming a new channel.
 - 2. If the pipe, manholes or other structures with which connection is to be made has not yet been installed, install the pipe to a point directed by the Director's Representative and plug or cap the end in a satisfactory manner.
- D. Temporary Conductor Outlets: If required, remove existing temporary conductor outlets and deliver them to the Facility Authorities as directed.
- E. Cleanouts:
 - 1. Plastic Cleanouts (DR18/SDR35): PVC body with PVC threaded plug. Include PVC sewer pipe fitting and riser to clean out of same material as sewer piping. Plastic cleanout to only be used in non-paved areas.
 - 2. Use PVC wyes, bends and pipe as indicated.
 - 3. Extend cleanout piping to grade and terminate with deck plug installed in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
 - 4. Install deck plug flush with grade with grade and encase with 2500 psi - concrete pad as shown.

3.4 CONCRETE CRADLE AT PIPE CROSSINGS

- A. Where required vertical and horizontal separation between water pipes and sewer pipes are not provided, or when called for by the Engineer, concrete cradle shall be constructed as directed. The trench shall be prepared, and the pipe supported in the same manner as described in this specification and shall be constructed in accordance with details shown on the plans.
- B. The concrete for the full width of the foundation shall be deposited continuously to the height of the outside bottom of the pipe. Before this concrete is set, the pipe shall be

evenly bedded therein, to have a uniform support for its entire length, and the remainder of the concrete shall be immediately deposited in such a manner as to avoid changing the position of the pipe. Concrete shall be a minimum of 3,000 psi.

- C. Concrete cradle shall be allowed to harden sufficiently to prevent consolidation of backfill, and wet concrete cradle shall be allowed to cure 24 hours before vehicle loads can be applied to that area of the trench. Steel plates may be used to cover the trench to protect the cradle from vehicle loads if the 24-hour undisturbed cure period cannot be provided.
- D. Each pipe shall be laid so as to form a close joint with the next adjoining pipe and bring the inverts continuously to the required line and grade.

3.5 LEAKAGE TESTS

- A. Prior to backfilling and laying additional pipe, test the first 100 feet of sewer construction for leakage.
 - 1. Fill the sewer with water and maintain a head two feet above the highest section of Work being tested. Measure the quantity of leakage. When the sewer being tested is constructed in water bearing soil, the leakage test may, at the discretion of the Director's Representative, be made by measuring the quantity of infiltration into the sewer. The allowable leakage or infiltration shall not exceed 10 gallons per 24 hours per inch pipe diameter per 1000 feet of sewer being tested.
 - 2. If air testing is used, conform to the procedure described in ASTM F1417.
- B. Additional leakage tests and a final test shall be performed as directed. Insert Access Door Schedule here if required.

END OF SECTION 33 3113

SECTION 33 4200 – SITE STORMWATER CONVEYANCE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. SECTION INCLUDES:

1. Stormwater Gravity piping (Ductile Iron & HDPE).
2. Cleanouts.
3. Stormwater Manholes.
4. Stormwater Area Drains and Inlets. (Open Grate/Dome Grate Manholes)
5. Stormwater Drains and Inlets (Catch Basins).
6. Grates and Frames for Stormwater Drainage Inlets.
7. Stormwater Leaching Pools.

B. DESCRIPTION OF WORK:

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for storm drainage. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be required to support the work.

C. RELATED REQUIREMENTS:

1. Division 31, Section 2000. "Earth Moving Operations"
2. Division 33, Section 0132. "Manhole Rehabilitation"

1.2 SUBMITTALS

- ##### **A.**
- If applicable under Executive Order 22 for New York State contract over \$1M, submit an Environmental Product Declaration (EPD) from the manufacturer for concrete and steel within this specification section, if available. A statement of the contractor's good faith effort to obtain the EPD shall be provided if not feasible.

1.
 - a) Manufacturer-provided EPD's must be Product Specific Type III (Third Party Reviewed), in adherence with ISO 14025 Environmental labels and declarations, ISO 14044 Environmental Management Life Cycle Assessment, and ISO 21930 Core rules for environmental product declarations of construction products and services.

- ##### **B.**
- Product Data: For each type of product. Include construction details, materials, individual components and profiles.

C. Shop Drawings:

1. Stormwater manholes: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, frames, covers, and attachments to other work.
2. Stormwater drains and inlets (catch basins): Include plans, elevations, sections, details, frames, grates, and attachments to other work.

3. Stormwater leaching pools: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, frames, grates, and attachments to other work.
 - D. Coordination Drawings: Show pipe sizes, locations, and elevations. Show other piping in same trench and clearances from storm drainage system piping. Indicate interface and spatial relationship between manholes, piping, and proximate structures.
 - E. Product Certifications: For each type of cast-iron soil pipe and fitting, from manufacturer.
 1. Precast structures:
 - a. Manufacturer certification showing structures delivered meets all requirements of Suffolk County Department of Public Works (SCDPW) specifications.
 - b. All precast structures must be manufactured at an ACI certified plant. A copy of the certification must be submitted to the E.I.C.
 - F. Percolation Tests:
 1. Unless otherwise stated, provide soil percolation tests in accordance with 10NYCR, Appendix 75-A, and the NYSDOH "Residential Onsite Wastewater Treatment Systems Design Handbook".
 2. Soil percolation test results must be certified by a Licensed Professional Engineer.
 3. Percolation test shall be performed at the depth equivalent to the bottom of the proposed leaching structure.
 - a.
- 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- 1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE & HANDLING
- A. Do not store plastic manholes, pipe, and fittings in direct sunlight.
 - B. Protect pipe, pipe fittings, and seals from dirt and damage.
 - C. Handle manholes, catch basins, and stormwater inlets according to manufacturer's written rigging instructions.
- 1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS
- A. Interruption of Existing Storm Drainage Service: Do not interrupt service to facilities occupied by the Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary service according to requirements indicated:
 1. Notify the Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of service.
 2. Do not proceed with interruption of service without the Owner's written permission.

3. If severe weather conditions are forecast, ensure that the temporary drainage system within the project limit of work, including the existing drainage system within Tabler Road, is cleaned of leaves, debris or any other materials that would interfere with the temporary drainage system.

PART 2 - MATERIALS

2.1 STORMWATER GRAVITY PIPING

- A. Pipe material to be Ductile Iron Pipe:
 1. From building connection to first manhole.
 2. At crossings with other utilities within 18" of vertical clearance.
- B. Ductile iron, pipe and fittings
 1. Pipe: ANSI/ASTM A-746, Class 50 or ASTM A-716 for push-on joints.
 2. Standard Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile or gray iron, for push-on joints.
 3. Compact Fittings: AWWA C153, for push-on joints.
 4. Gaskets: AWWA C111, rubber.
- C. Pipe material to be High Density Corrugated Polyethylene (HDPE) where ductile iron pipe conditions are not met.
- D. The HDPE pipe and fittings shall have a smooth interior and annular exterior corrugations. The pipe shall conform to the following American Association of State Highway and Transportation (AASHTO) standard specifications:
 1. Pipe (4" to 10" dia.): M252, Standard Specification for Corrugated Polyethylene Drainage Pipe.
 2. Pipe (12" to 60" dia.): M294, Standard Specification for Corrugated Polyethylene Pipe
 3. Fittings: D3350, Standard Specification for Polyethylene Plastics Pipe and Fittings Materials.
 4. Joints: F477, Standard Specification for Elastomeric Seals (Gaskets) for Joining Plastic Pipe.
 5. F2306, Standard Specification for 12 in. to 60 in. Annular Corrugated Profile-Wall Polyethylene (PE) Pipe and Fittings for Non-Pressure Gravity-Flow Storm Sewer and Subsurface Drainage Applications.
 6. Installation: D2321, Standard Practice for Underground Installation of Thermoplastic Pipe for Sewers and Other Gravity-Flow Applications.
 7. Other pipe standard specifications:
 - a. Advance Drainage Systems (ADS) Incorporated, Drainage Handbook
 - b. Manning's "n" value for use in design shall be 0.012.
 - c. Provide HDPE pipes as manufactured by Advanced Drainage Systems, Inc. or approved equal.

2.2 CLEANOUTS (STORMWATER)

- A. Ductile Iron Cleanouts: To be used in roadways and to meet H-20 loading requirements.

- B. Plastic Cleanouts (DR18/SDR35): PVC body with PVC threaded plug. Include PVC sewer pipe fitting and riser to clean out of same material as sewer piping. Plastic cleanout to only be used in non-paved areas.

2.3 STORMWATER MANHOLES

- A. Standard Precast Concrete Manholes as per Suffolk County Department of Public Works.
- B. Description: ASTM C 478 (ASTM C 478M), precast, reinforced concrete, of depth indicated, with provision for sealant joints.
- C. Diameter: 5' diameter.
- D. 5' Diameter drop manholes should be used only where the invert elevations differ by more than 2' or where larger manhole is required for adequate vertical or horizontal separation between storm pipe connections into the manhole structure. Refer to SCDPW standard sewer details.
 - 1. Outside drop:
 - a. Ductile Iron Pipe: ANSI/ASTM A-746, Class 50.
 - b. Polyvinyl Chloride Pipe: PVC compound ASTM D1784, Pipe ASTM D-3034, SDR-26.
 - 2. Inside drop:
 - a. Polyvinyl Chloride Pipe: PVC compound ASTM D1784, Pipe ASTM D-3034, SDR-26.
 - 3. Base Section: 8" minimum thickness for floor slab and 5" minimum thickness for walls and base riser section. The base riser section is 3' and is integral with floor slab.
 - 4. Riser Sections: 5" minimum thickness, and lengths to be provided in increments of 1', from 1' through 4' heights as required.
 - 5. Sump: Show 12" of sump typical in all storm sewer manholes.
 - 6. Joint Sealant: ASTM C 990 (ASTM C 990M), self-sealing butyl rubber.
 - 7. Resilient Pipe Connectors: ASTM C 923 (ASTM C 923M), cast or fitted into manhole walls, for each pipe connection. Flexible sleeve shall be Trelleborg AB "Kor-N-Seal" flexible sleeve or approved equal.
 - 8. Steps: SCDPW standard manhole steps, stainless steel or steel-reinforced copolymer propylene at 12" on center.
 - 9. Adjustment Rings: Brick adjustment to grade shall be with all-weather red clay brick with Type 2 mortar, minimum of 2 courses and maximum of 12" thickness. Diameter to match diameter of manhole frame and cover, and height as required to adjust manhole frame and cover to indicated elevation and slope.
 - 10. Concrete: Concrete to be 4000psi at 28 days.
 - 11. Rebar: Rebar to conform to ASTM A-615-60, $F_s=60,000\text{psi}$.
 - 12. Welded Wire Mesh (WWM): WWM shall conform to ASTM A185, $F_s=65,000\text{psi}$.
 - 13. Load rating: Loading shall conform to AASHTO H-20 loading with 30% impact and 130 lb./cf. equivalent soil pressure.
 - 14. Material shall conform to ASTM A48 Class 30B or 35 specifications.
 - 15. Refer to sections 2.4 for frames and inlet castings for manholes.
 - 16. Stormwater manholes shall contain a minimum sump depth of 12-inches.

E. Frame and cover:

1. Material shall conform to ASTM A48 Class 30B or 35 specifications.
2. Manhole Frame shall be round with 24-inch clear openings.
3. Grates shall be round and bicycle safe.
4. Casting diameter shall match precast opening, with 2 inches of casting resting on the concrete precast.
5. Solid Covers: shall be round solid lid, top surface checkered and provided with suitable concealed lifting notches, and lettering cast into cover to indicate type of structure. Provide "STORM" custom marking on casting for storm sewer manholes with solid cover, as stated in plans.
6. Load rating: Loading shall conform to AASHTO HS-20 loading.
7. Provide Campbell Foundry castings as shown on plans or approved equal.

2.4 STORMWATER AREA DRAINS AND INLETS (OPEN GRATE/DOME GRATE MANHOLES)

A. Standard Precast Concrete Manholes described in section 2.3.

B. Open Grate and Frame:

1. Material shall conform to ASTM A48 Class 30B or 35 specifications.
2. Manhole Frame shall be round with 24-inch clear openings.
3. Grates shall be round and bicycle safe.
4. Casting diameter shall match precast opening, with 2 inches of casting resting on the concrete precast.
5. Covers: shall be round open grate and provided with suitable concealed lifting notches.
6. Load rating: Loading shall conform to AASHTO HS-20 loading.
7. Provide Campbell Foundry castings as shown on plans or approved equal.

C. Dome Grate and Frame:

1. Material shall conform to ASTM A48 Class 30B or 35 specifications.
2. Manhole Frame shall be round with 24-inch clear openings.
3. Grates shall be round.
4. Casting diameter shall match precast opening, with 2 inches of casting resting on the concrete precast.
5. Covers: shall be round dome grate.
6. Load rating: Loading shall conform to AASHTO HS-20 loading.
7. Provide EJ Iron Works castings as shown on plans or approved equal.

2.5 STORMWATER CURBSIDE DRAINS AND INLETS (CATCH BASINS TYPE 1)

A. Precast structure:

1. The design of each shall be the same throughout the project unless otherwise specified or indicated on the drawings.
2. Base Section: 8" minimum thickness for floor slab and 6" minimum thickness for walls and base riser section. The base riser section is integral with floor slab.
3. Riser Sections: 6" minimum thickness, 30" minimum diameter, and lengths to provide depth indicated.
4. Joint Sealant: Joint sealant to be 1" butyl rubber meeting the requirements of Federal Specification and AASHTO M198.

5. Adjusting Rings: Provide 2 courses (minimum) of concrete brick or concrete collar, 6" min. thickness.
6. Concrete: Precast concrete to have compressive strength at 4500 psi (28 days) and must meet ACI code and specifications.
7. Steps: Provide galvanized or rubberized steps.
8. Rebar: Rebar to conform to ASTM A-615-60, $F_s=60,000\text{psi}$.
9. Welded Wire Mesh (WWM): WWM shall conform to ASTM A185, $F_s=65,000\text{psi}$.
10. Pipe openings: Parge inside and outside of pipe with mortar.
11. Load rating: Shall meet AASHTO H-20 wheel loading requirements. Manufacture, workmanship and certified proof-load tests shall conform to AASHTO M306-89-Standard Specification for Drainage Structure Castings.
12. Exterior surface to receive a seal of tar or asphaltic pitch.
13. Catch basins shall contain a minimum sump depth of 12-inches.
14. Provide 8" thick of gravel or crushed stone below floor slab.

B. Frame and grate:

1. Material shall conform to ASTM A48 Class 30B or 35B specifications. Delivered to site free of any coatings, unless otherwise specified.
2. Load Rating shall conform to AASHTO HS-20 loading.
3. Casting dimensions shall match precast opening, with 2 inches of casting resting on the concrete precast.
4. Provide Campbell Foundry castings as shown on plans or approved equal. Other Acceptable Curb Inlets: Pattern R-3010 with Type A grate by Neenah Foundry Company, P. O. Box 729, Neenah, WI 54957, (414) 729-3661; Pattern 2640 by East Jordan Iron Works, P.O. Box 190, South Bay Rd., Cicero, NY 13039, (315) 699-2601. Corporate Headquarters, 301 Spring Street, East Jordan, MI 49727, (800) 874-4100.
5. Grates:
 - a. Round.
 - b. Bicycle safe.

2.6 PATIO AREA INLETS, 12"X12" CATCH BASIN (CATCH BASINS TYPE 2)

A. Catch basin structure:

1. Provide NDS 12" Square Tapered Polypropylene Catch Basin with U.V. inhibitors or approved equal.
2. Provide $\frac{3}{4}$ " gravel base 4" to 6" thick below catch basin to prevent standing water.

B. Grate: Provide 12" square polyolefin grate with U.V. inhibitors, or bronze grate.

2.7 STORMWATER LEACHING POOLS

A. Precast structure:

1. Precast inner diameter: 8', 10' or 12' diameter.
2. Leaching opening: 6" x $\frac{3}{4}$ " openings
3. Concrete: Precast concrete to have compressive strength at 4500 psi (28 days) and must meet ACI code and specifications. Top concrete slab should conform to AASHTO H-20 loading unless otherwise noted.

4. Reinforcement: Continuous reinforcement, 6"x12"-10 gauge welded wire mesh conforming to ASTM A 185.
 5. Wall thickness: 4" minimum wall thickness.
 6. Chimney: Provide 2' maximum precast concrete collar.
 7. Drainage rings: Provide 4' minimum sections, wrapped with geotextile fabric.
 8. Geotextile fabric: Provide Phillips Petroleum Co. Supac 4NP or an approved equal.
 9. Concrete footing: Provide when required by engineer or inspector and when backfill is required.
- B. Open Grate and Frame:
1. Material shall conform to ASTM A48 Class 30B or 35 specifications.
 2. Manhole Frame shall be round with 24-inch clear openings.
 3. Grates shall be round and bicycle safe.
 4. Casting diameter shall match precast opening, with 2 inches of casting resting on the concrete precast.
 5. Covers: shall be round open grate and provided with suitable concealed lifting notches.
 6. Load rating: Loading shall conform to AASHTO HS-20 loading.
 7. Provide Campbell Foundry castings as shown on plans or approved equal.
- C. Dome Grate and Frame:
1. Material shall conform to ASTM A48 Class 30B or 35 specifications.
 2. Manhole Frame shall be round with 24-inch clear openings.
 3. Grates shall be round.
 4. Casting diameter shall match precast opening, with 2 inches of casting resting on the concrete precast.
 5. Covers: shall be round dome grate.
 6. Load rating: Loading shall conform to AASHTO HS-20 loading.
 7. Provide EJ Iron Works castings as shown on plans or approved equal.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSPECTION

- A. Examine all the pipes and fittings before installation.
- B. Remove defective pipe and fittings from the Site.
- C. Do not backfill until inspected by the Director's Representative.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Earthwork, Excavating, trenching and backfilling are specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving Operations"
- B. Laying Pipe:
 1. General Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans and details indicate general location and arrangement of underground storm drainage piping. Location and

arrangement of piping layout take into account design considerations. Install piping as indicated, to an extent practical. Where specific installation is not indicated, follow the piping manufacturer's written instructions. Minimum pipe slopes of 0.5 percent shall not be exceeded.

2. Install piping beginning at low point, true to grades and alignment indicated with unbroken continuity of invert. Place bell ends of piping facing upstream. Install gaskets, seals, sleeves, and couplings according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements.
3. Install manholes for changes in direction unless fittings are indicated. Use fittings for branch connections unless direct tap into existing sewer is indicated.
4. Install proper size increasers, reducers, and couplings where different sizes or materials of pipes and fittings are connected. Reducing the size of piping in the direction of flow is prohibited.
5. Installation of non-pressure, gravity flow HDPE shall be in accordance with ASTM D2321, and ADS recommended installation guidelines, with the exception that minimum cover in trafficked areas for 4-inch through 48-inch (100-mm to 1,200 mm) diameters shall be 1 foot (0.3 m) and for 60-inch (1,500-mm) diameter the minimum cover shall be 2 feet (0.6 meter) in single run applications. Backfill for minimum cover situations shall consist of Class 1 (compacted), Class 2 (minimum 90 percent SPD), or Class 3 (minimum 95 percent SPD) material.

C. Joints:

1. Ductile Iron Piping and Fittings: Pipe shall be joined according to AWWA C600 or AWWA M41.
2. Corrugated HDPE: Pipe shall be joined using a bell & spigot joint meeting the requirements of AASHTO M252, AASHTO M294, or ASTM F2306. The joint shall be soil-tight and gaskets for diameters 12- through 30-inch (300-750 mm), shall meet the requirements of ASTM F477. For diameters 4- through 10-inch, the joint shall be soil-tight using an engaging dimple connection. Gaskets shall be installed by the pipe manufacturer and covered with a removable, protective wrap to ensure the gasket is free from debris. A joint lubricant available from the manufacturer shall be used on the gasket and bell during assembly.
3. Join dissimilar pipe materials with non-pressure-type flexible couplings.

D. Connections:

1. Connect non-pressure, gravity-flow drainage piping in building's storm building drains specified in Plumber's specifications for building storm piping.
2. Make connections to existing underground manholes.
 - a. Use concrete that will attain a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 4500 psi unless otherwise indicated.
 - b. Core drill wall and install non-shrink grout as required and in accordance with pipe manufacturer's recommendations. Use flexible sleeves by Link Seal as an interface between new and existing concrete and piping materials.
 - c. Protect existing piping, manholes, and structures to prevent concrete or debris from entering while making tap connections. Remove debris or other extraneous material that may accumulate.
 - d. Pipe connections to manholes or catch basins shall be flushed with inside face for ease of maintenance.

E. Closing Abandoned Storm Drainage Systems.

1. Abandoned Piping: Close open ends of abandoned underground piping indicated to remain in place. Include closures strong enough to withstand hydrostatic and earth pressures that may result after ends of abandoned piping have been closed. Use either procedure below:
 - a. Close abandoned storm piping by forming and filling with concrete.
 - b. Fill abandoned pipe with flowable fill.
 - c. Close open ends of piping with threaded metal caps, plastic plugs, or other acceptable methods suitable for size and type of material being closed. Do not use wood plugs.
2. Abandoned Manholes and Structures: Excavate around manholes and structures as required and use one procedure below:
 - a. Remove manhole or structure and close open ends of remaining piping.
 - b. Remove top of manhole or structure down to at least 36 inches (915 mm) below final grade. Fill to within 12 inches (300 mm) of top with stone, rubble, gravel, or compacted dirt. Fill the top with concrete.
 - c. Backfill to grade according to Division 31 Section "Earth Moving".

F. Identification

Materials and their installation are specified in Division 31 Section 2000, "Earth Moving". Arrange for installation of green warning tape directly over piping and at outside edge of underground structures.

1. Use warning tape OR detectable warning tape, as directed, over ferrous piping.
2. Use detectable warning tape over nonferrous piping and over edges of underground structures.

3.3 CONCRETE CRADLE AT PIPE CROSSINGS

- A. Where required vertical and horizontal separation between water pipes and sewer pipes are not provided, or when called for by the Engineer, concrete cradle shall be constructed as directed. The trench shall be prepared, and the pipe supported in the same manner as described in this specification and shall be constructed in accordance with details shown on the plans.
- B. The concrete for the full width of the foundation shall be deposited continuously to the height of the outside bottom of the pipe. Before this concrete is set, the pipe shall be evenly bedded therein, to have a uniform support for its entire length, and the remainder of the concrete shall be immediately deposited in such a manner as to avoid changing the position of the pipe. Concrete shall be a minimum of 3,000 psi.
- C. Concrete cradle shall be allowed to harden sufficiently to prevent consolidation of backfill, and wet concrete cradle shall be allowed to cure 24 hours before vehicle loads can be applied to that area of the trench. Steel plates may be used to cover the trench to protect the cradle from vehicle loads if the 24-hour undisturbed cure period cannot be provided.
- D. Each pipe shall be laid so as to form a close joint with the next adjoining pipe and bring the inverts continuously to the required line and grade.

3.4 LEAKAGE TESTS

1. Inspect the interior of piping to determine whether line displacement or other damage has occurred. Inspect after approximately 24 inches (610 mm) of backfill is in place, and again at completion of Project.
 - a. Submit separate reports for each system inspection.
 - b. Defects requiring correction include the following:
 - a) Alignment: Less than full diameter of inside of pipe is visible between structures.
 - b) Deflection: Flexible piping with deflection that prevents passage of ball or cylinder of size not less than 92.5 percent of piping diameter.
 - c) Damage: Crushed, broken, cracked, or otherwise damaged piping.
 - d) Infiltration: Water leakage into piping.
 - e) Exfiltration: Water leakage from or around piping.
 - c. Replace defective piping using new materials and repeat inspections until defects are within allowances specified.
 - d. Reinspect and repeat the procedure until the results are satisfactory.
2. Test new piping systems, and parts of existing systems that have been altered, extended, or repaired, for leaks and defects.
 - a. Do not enclose, cover, or put into service before inspection and approval.
 - b. Test completed piping systems according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - c. Schedule tests and inspections by authorities having jurisdiction with at least 24 hours' advance notice.
 - d. Submit a separate report for each test.
 - e. Gravity-Flow Storm Drainage Piping: Test according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, UNI-B-6, and the following:
 - a) Exception: Piping with soil-tight joints unless required by authorities having jurisdiction.
 - b) Option: Test plastic piping according to ASTM F 1417.
3. Leaks and losses in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
4. Replace leaking piping using new materials and repeat testing until leakage is within allowances specified.

3.5 CLEANING

- A. Clean interior of piping of dirt and superfluous materials. Flush with potable water OR Flush with water, as directed.

END OF SECTION 33 4200

SECTION 33 4236 - TRENCH DRAINS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following types of trench drains:
 - 1. Shallow depth precast polymer trench drain with grate
 - 2. Solid cover for trench drain..

1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and frames, covers, and grates.
- B. Product Data: For each type of trench drain and all components of system.

1.3 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect trench drain units from dirt and damage.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PRECAST POLYMER TRENCH DRAIN SYSTEM

- A. Description, General: Modular system of interconnecting precast, polymer channel sections and appurtenances. Include number of units required to form total lengths indicated.
- B. Fiber-Reinforced Polymer Trench Drains: Pre-engineered trench drain system with 18" wide, 18" deep secondary containment utility trench with integral channel struts cast from polyester fiber reinforced polymer concrete; a heavy duty black powder coated steel frame, solid steel plate grating cover; anchor studs and rigid metal installation brackets.
 - 1. Trench Body Lengths: 96" long, straight configuration, with 2" receiving flange on upstream end and a square bottom profile.
 - 2. Frame: Z-profile frame constructed of 3/16" thick structural steel to accept 1-1/2" thick grates, with anchors 18" o.c. and rigid metal installation brackets.
 - 3. Grating: Solid cover fabricated from structural steel tread plate 20"w x 24"l x 1.5" thick; black powder paint finish; DIN Class D load rating..
 - 4. Grate Locks: Not required.
 - 5. Outlets: Trench drain open on both ends
 - 6. Invert: 18" both ends
 - 7. Provide plywood covering for top of trench to keep drains clean during construction, and all required hardware

8. Basis of Design Product: Provide Dura Trench 18" Precast Trench Drain DTUTPF18-20AF24BPD-HDBP15ZSA-GLNR-NSR-NONEo by Eric'sons or equal.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. General Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans and details indicate general location and arrangement of trench drains. Install as indicated, following manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Provide concrete encasement on 3 sides to provide support on both sides as well as beneath channel. Top of channel shall be evenly aligned to the surface of the surrounding slab.
- C. Install channel sections from the outlet or catch basins. Insert channels from above to allow ends to interconnect. Channel sections shall be placed to obtain correct finished elevation. Cutting if required, shall be made using masonry or concrete saw. Use plywood insert to protect top surface of channel from concrete splash during concrete pour. Place concrete in a manner that will not dislodge the channels.
- D. Following final set of concrete, remove protection covering the top of channel and thoroughly flush system to remove debris.
- E. Fasten grates to drains.

3.2 FINAL CLEANING

- A. Clean interior of trench drains of dirt and superfluous materials at conclusion of all work.

END OF SECTION 33 4236